

Salt Lake Mosquito Abatement District

2215 N. 2200 W.
Salt Lake City, Utah

design west | architects



February 2018

SECTION 00 01 02
PROJECT INFORMATION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 PROJECT IDENTIFICATION

- A. Project Name: Salt Lake Mosquito Abatement District, located at 2215 North 2200 West, Salt Lake City, Utah.
- B. SLC Mosquito Abatement District's Project Manager: Construction Control Corporation.
 - 1. Address: 307 West 200 South, Suite 4006.
 - 2. City, State, Zip: Salt Lake City, Utah 84101.
 - 3. Phone/Fax: 801-578-1201.
 - 4. E-mail: _____.

1.02 NOTICE TO PROSPECTIVE BIDDERS

- A. These documents constitute an Invitation to Bid to General Contractors for the construction of the project described below.

1.03 PROJECT DESCRIPTION

- A. Summary Project Description: 6 buildings of various size to include, Administration, Vehicle Storage, Vehicle Maintenance, and material storage.
- B. Contract Terms: Lump sum (fixed price).

1.04 PROJECT CONSULTANTS

- A. The Architect, hereinafter referred to as Architect: Architectural Design West.
 - 1. Address: 795 N 400 W.
 - 2. City, State, Zip: Salt Lake City, Utah 84103.
 - 3. Phone/Fax: 801-539-8221.

1.05 PROCUREMENT TIMETABLE

- A. Last Request for Substitution Due: 8 days prior to due date of bids, Wednesday, February 28, 2018.
- B. Last Request for Information Due: 8 days prior to due date of bids, Wednesday, February 28, 2018.
- C. Bid Due Date: March 8, 2018, before 1:00 pm local time.
- D. Bid Opening: closed bid.
- E. Bids May Not Be Withdrawn Until: 60 days after due date.
- F. Contract Time: To be stated in bid documents.
- G. Desired Construction Start: Not later than April 2, 2018.
- H. Desired Substantial Completion Date: April 3, 2019. _____.
- I. The SLC Mosquito Abatement District reserves the right to change the schedule or terminate the entire procurement process at any time.

1.06 PROCUREMENT DOCUMENTS

- A. Availability of PDF Documents: Complete sets of procurement documents may be obtained:
 - 1. From SLC Mosquito Abatement District at the Project Manager's address listed above.

1.07 BID SECURITY

- A. Bids shall be accompanied by a security deposit as follows:
 - 1. Bid Bond of a sum no less than 5 percent of the Bid Amount on AIA A310 Bid Bond Form.

PART 2 PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION 00 01 02

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

SECTION 00 01 10
TABLE OF CONTENTS

PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS

1.01 DIVISION 00 -- PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. 00 01 02 - Project Information
- B. 00 01 10 - Table of Contents
- C. 00 21 13 - Instructions to Bidders
- D. 00 03 00 - Available Project Information
- E. 00 50 00 - Contracting Forms and Supplements
- F. 00 72 00 - General Conditions

SPECIFICATIONS

2.01 DIVISION 01 -- GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. 01 10 00 - Summary
- B. 01 20 00 - Price and Payment Procedures
- C. 01 22 00 - Unit Prices
- D. 01 23 00 - Alternates
- E. 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements
- F. 01 32 16 - Construction Progress Schedule
- G. 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements
- H. 01 50 00 - Temporary Facilities and Controls
- I. 01 58 13 - Temporary Project Signage
- J. 01 60 00 - Product Requirements
- K. 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements
- L. 01 74 19 - Construction Waste Management and Disposal
- M. 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals

2.02 DIVISION 02 -- EXISTING CONDITIONS

2.03 DIVISION 03 -- CONCRETE

- A. 03 24 00 - Macromesh Reinforcement
- B. 03 24 01 - Micromesh Reinforcement
- C. 03 25 10 - Expansion, Construction and Control Joints
- D. 03 30 00 - Cast-in-Place Concrete
- E. 03 70 00 - Precast Concrete Vaults, Manholes, and Boxes
- F. 03 93 60 - Water Leakage Test for Concrete Structures

2.04 DIVISION 04 -- MASONRY

2.05 DIVISION 05 -- METALS

- A. 05 12 00 - Structural Steel Framing
- B. 05 21 00 - Steel Joist Framing
- C. 05 31 00 - Steel Decking
- D. 05 40 00 - Cold-Formed Metal Framing
- E. 05 51 00 - Metal Stairs
- F. 05 53 05 - Metal Gratings and Floor Plates

2.06 DIVISION 06 -- WOOD, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITES

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- A. 06 20 00 - Finish Carpentry
- B. 06 41 00 - Architectural Wood Casework
- C. 06 61 00 - Simulated Stone Fabrications
- D. 06 83 16 - Fiberglass Reinforced Paneling

2.07 DIVISION 07 -- THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

- A. 07 05 33 - Fire and Smoke Assembly Identification
- B. 07 11 13 - Bituminous Dampproofing
- C. 07 19 00 - Water Repellents
- D. 07 21 00 - Thermal Insulation
- E. 07 25 00 - Weather Barriers
- F. 07 41 13 - Metal Roof Panels
- G. 07 42 13.23 - Metal Composite Material Wall Panels
- H. 07 54 00 - Thermoplastic Membrane Roofing
- I. 07 62 00 - Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim
- J. 07 72 00 - Roof Accessories
- K. 07 92 00 - Joint Sealants

2.08 DIVISION 08 -- OPENINGS

- A. 08 11 13 - Hollow Metal Doors and Frames
- B. 08 14 16 - Flush Wood Doors
- C. 08 17 00 - Integrated Door Opening Assemblies
- D. 08 31 00 - Access Doors and Panels
- E. 08 33 23 - Overhead Coiling Doors
- F. 08 42 29 - Automatic Entrances
- G. 08 43 13 - Aluminum-Framed Storefronts
- H. 08 51 13 - Aluminum Windows
- I. 08 62 00 - Unit Skylights
- J. 08 71 00 - Door Hardware
- K. 08 80 00 - Glazing
- L. 08 91 00 - Louvers
- M. 08 92 00 - Louvered Equipment Enclosures

2.09 DIVISION 09 -- FINISHES

- A. 09 21 16 - Gypsum Board Assemblies
- B. 09 22 16 - Non-Structural Metal Framing
- C. 09 30 00 - Tiling
- D. 09 51 00 - Acoustical Ceilings
- E. 09 65 00 - Resilient Flooring
- F. 09 68 13 - Tile Carpeting
- G. 09 84 30 - Sound-Absorbing Wall and Ceiling Units
- H. 09 91 23 - Interior Painting
- I. 09 97 23 - Concrete and Masonry Coatings

2.10 DIVISION 10 -- SPECIALTIES

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- A. 10 11 01 - Visual Display Boards
- B. 10 14 00 - Signage
- C. 10 21 13.13 - Metal Toilet Compartments
- D. 10 22 39 - Folding Panel Partitions
- E. 10 26 01 - Wall and Corner Guards
- F. 10 28 00 - Toilet, Bath, and Laundry Accessories
- G. 10 44 00 - Fire Protection Specialties
- H. 10 71 13.43 - Fixed Sun Screens
- I. 10 75 00 - Flagpoles

2.11 DIVISION 11 -- EQUIPMENT

- A. 11 52 13 - Projection Screens
- B. 11 53 00 - Laboratory Equipment

2.12 DIVISION 12 -- FURNISHINGS

- A. 12 93 13 - Bicycle Racks

2.13 DIVISION 13 -- SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION

2.14 DIVISION 14 -- CONVEYING EQUIPMENT

2.15 DIVISION 21 -- FIRE SUPPRESSION

2.16 DIVISION 22 -- PLUMBING

- A. 22 05 00 - Common Work Results for Plumbing
- B. 22 05 17 - Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping
- C. 22 05 18 - Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping
- D. 22 05 19 - Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping
- E. 22 05 23 - General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping
- F. 22 05 29 - Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment
- G. 22 05 48 - Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment
- H. 22 05 53 - Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment
- I. 22 07 00 - Plumbing Insulation
- J. 22 11 13 - Water Distribution Utilities
- K. 22 11 16 - Domestic Water Piping
- L. 22 11 19 - Domestic Water Piping Specialties
- M. 22 13 13 - Facility Sanitary Sewers
- N. 22 13 16 - Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping
- O. 22 13 19 - Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties
- P. 22 14 11 - Disinfecting Water Supply System
- Q. 22 14 13 - Facility Storm Drainage Piping
- R. 22 14 23 - Storm Drainage Piping Specialties
- S. 22 15 13 - General Service Compressed Air Piping
- T. 22 15 19 - General Service Packaged Air Compressors and Receivers
- U. 22 31 00 - Domestic Water Softeners
- V. 22 34 00 - Fuel-Fired Domestic Water Heaters 2015-09-01
- W. 22 40 00 - Plumbing Fixtures

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- X. 22 45 00 - Emergency Plumbing Fixtures
- Y. 22 47 00 - Drinking Fountains and Water Coolers

2.17 DIVISION 23 -- HEATING, VENTILATING, AND AIR-CONDITIONING (HVAC)

- A. 23 01 00 - Mechanical Requirements
- B. 23 05 00 - Common Work Result for HVAC
- C. 23 05 14 - Variable Frequency Motor Drives
- D. 23 05 16 - Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping
- E. 23 05 17 - Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping
- F. 23 05 18 - Escutcheons for HVAC Piping
- G. 23 05 19 - Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping
- H. 23 05 23 - General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping
- I. 23 05 29 - Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment
- J. 23 05 48 - Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment
- K. 23 05 50 - Operation and Maintenance of HVAC Systems
- L. 23 05 53 - Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment
- M. 23 05 93 - Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC
- N. 23 07 13 - Duct Insulation
- O. 23 07 19 - HVAC Piping Insulation
- P. 23 09 00 - Building Automation System
- Q. 23 09 93 - Sequence of Operations for HVAC Controls
- R. 23 11 23 - Facility Natural-Gas Piping
- S. 23 13 23 - Above Ground Fuel Storage Tanks
- T. 23 21 13 - Hydronic Piping
- U. 23 21 16 - Hydronic Piping Specialties
- V. 23 25 13 - Water Treatment for Closed-Loop Hydronic Systems
- W. 23 30 01 - Common Duct Requirements
- X. 23 31 13 - Metal Ducts
- Y. 23 33 00 - Air Duct Accessories
- Z. 23 34 23 - HVAC Power Ventilators
- AA. 23 34 33 - Air Curtains
- AB. 23 36 00 - Air Terminal Units
- AC. 23 37 13 - Diffusers_ Registers_ and Grilles
- AD. 23 37 14 - Fixed Louvers
- AE. 23 37 23 - HVAC Gravity Ventilators (1)
- AF. 23 52 14 - Finned Water-Tube Boilers
- AG. 23 52 16 - Condensing Boilers
- AH. 23 54 00 - Furnaces
- AI. 23 55 23 - Gas Fired Radiant Heaters
- AJ. 23 55 24 - Gas Fired Radiant Tube Heaters
- AK. 23 72 00 - Air-To-Air Energy Recovery Equipment
- AL. 23 73 10 - AAON Roof-top Air Conditioners
- AM. 23 74 13 - Packaged Outdoor Central-Station Air-Handling Units

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- AN. 23 76 13 - Direct Evaporative Air Coolers
- AO. 23 81 26 - Split System Air-Conditioners
- AP. 23 82 39.19 - Wall and Ceiling Unit Heater
- AQ. 23 83 20 - Underfloor Heating System

2.18 DIVISION 26 -- ELECTRICAL

- A. 26 05 19 - Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables
- B. 26 05 26 - Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems
- C. 26 05 29 - Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems
- D. 26 05 33 - Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems
- E. 26 05 36 - Cable Trays for Electrical Systems
- F. 26 05 39 - Underfloor Raceways for Electrical Systems
- G. 26 05 44 - Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling
- H. 26 05 48.16 - Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems
- I. 26 05 53 - Identification for Electrical Systems
- J. 26 09 23 - Lighting Control Devices
- K. 26 12 00 - Medium-Voltage Transformers
- L. 26 13 00 - Medium-Voltage Switchgear
- M. 26 22 13 - Low-Voltage Distribution Transformers
- N. 26 24 16 - Panelboards
- O. 26 27 26 - Wiring Devices
- P. 26 28 13 - Fuses
- Q. 26 28 16 - Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers
- R. 26 31 00 - Photovoltaic Collectors
- S. 26 32 13.17 - Gaseous Engine Generators
- T. 26 36 00 - Transfer Switches
- U. 26 51 19 - LED Interior Lighting
- V. 26 52 13 - Emergency and Exit Lighting
- W. 26 56 13 - Lighting Poles and Standards
- X. 26 56 19 - LED Exterior Lighting

2.19 DIVISION 27 -- COMMUNICATIONS

- A. 27 05 26 - Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems
- B. 27 05 28 - Pathways for Communications Systems
- C. 27 05 29 - Hangers and Supports for Communications Systems
- D. 27 05 36 - Cable Trays for Communications Systems
- E. 27 05 43 - Underground Pathways and Structures for Communication Systems
- F. 27 05 44 - Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Communications Pathways and Cabling
- G. 27 0548.16 FL - Seismic Controls for Communications Systems
- H. 27 05 53 - Identification for Communications Systems
- I. 27 11 00 - Communications Equipment Room Fittings
- J. 27 11 16 - Communications Racks_ Frames_ and Enclosures

2.20 DIVISION 28 -- ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- A. 28 15 00 - Access Control Hardware Devices
- B. 28 20 00 - Video Surveillance
- C. 28 46 21 - Addressable Fire-Alarm Systems

2.21 DIVISION 31 -- EARTHWORK

- A. 31 07 00 - General Site Construction Requirements
- B. 31 20 00 - Earth Moving

2.22 DIVISION 32 -- EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS

- A. 32 12 16 - Asphalt Paving
- B. 32 13 13 - Concrete Paving
- C. 32 13 73 - Concrete Paving Joint Sealants
- D. 32 20 00 Site Signage
- E. 32 31 13 - Chain Link Fences and Gates
- F. 32 84 00 - Planting Irrigation
- G. 32 91 13 - Soil Preparation
- H. 32 92 00 - Turf and Grasses
- I. 32 93 00 - Plants

2.23 DIVISION 33 -- UTILITIES

- A. 33 05 00 - Common Work Results for Utilities
- B. 33 4111 - Site Storm Utility Drainage Piping

2.24 DIVISION 46 -- WATER AND WASTEWATER EQUIPMENT

END OF SECTION 00 01 10

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

SECTION 00 03 00

BID FORM

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SEE ENCLOSED DOCUMENT.

END OF SECTION 00 03 00

SALT LAKE CITY MOSQUITO ABATEMENT DISTRICT
NEW FACILITIES

SECTION 00 0300 – BID FORM

PROJECT: SALT LAKE CITY MOSQUITO ABATEMENT DISTRICT
2215 NORTH 2200 WEST
SALT LAKE CITY, UTAH 84116

NAME OF BIDDER: _____

ADDRESS: _____

DATE: _____

The undersigned, in compliance with your invitation for bids, having examined the Drawings and Specifications and related documents and the site of the proposed work and being familiar with all of the conditions surrounding the construction of the proposed project, including the availability of labor, hereby propose to furnish all labor, materials and supplies as required for the Project in accordance with the Contract Documents as specified and within the time set forth and at the price stated below. This price is to cover all expenses incurred in performing the work required under the Contract Documents of which this proposal is a part.

ADDENDA:

The named bidder acknowledges receipt of the following addenda: ___/___/___/___/

BID BOND:

Enclosed is bid bond, as required, in the sum of \$ _____

BASE BID – The Salt Lake City Mosquito Abatement District Project

For work of the Agreement listed above and shown on the drawings and described in the Project Manual, the undersigned agrees to perform for the sum of:

Dollars (\$ _____)

SALT LAKE CITY MOSQUITO ABATEMENT DISTRICT
NEW FACILITIES

ALTERNATES:

Deductive Alternate #1:

Remove Fish Hatchery Building in its entirety from the project. (Utility Stubs to remain)

DEDUCT: \$ _____

Alternate #2:

DEDUCT: \$ _____

ALLOWANCE:

Allowance No. 1 – Water Feature/Fish Tank Display in Display 1102

VALUE: \$ 75,000 _____

UNIT PRICING:

Unit Price #1: Placed/Compacted Structural Fill Material _____ Per Cubic Yard

Unit Price #2: Excavation/Removal of Unsuitable Material _____ Per Cubic Yard

Unit Price #3: Asphalt Paving and Roadbase (All Inclusive) _____ Per Square Foot

Unit Price #4: Concrete Paving and Roadbase (All Inclusive) _____ Per Square Foot

COMPLETION DATE:

SALT LAKE CITY MOSQUITO ABATEMENT DISTRICT
NEW FACILITIES

Upon award of the project, the undersigned guarantees to complete the work not later than the completion dates scheduled in the Advertisement for Bids following receipt of Notice to Proceed.

This bid shall remain good for 60 days after bid opening.

Liquidated damages for each portion of the work is **\$500 per calendar day**.

The undersigned Contractor's License Number for Utah is _____

BONDS:

Upon receipt of notice of acceptance of this bid, the undersigned agrees to execute the Agreement within ten (10) days and deliver Performance and Payment Bond in the form prescribed in the Agreement.

Respectfully Submitted,

Name of Bidder _____

Authorized Signature _____

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 00 21 13
SUPPLEMENTAL INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS**

SUMMARY

THESE SUPPLEMENTAL INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS SHALL BE USED IN CONJUNCTION WITH THE AIA DOCUMENT A701-1997- INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS. IN THE EVENT OF A DISCREPANCY BETWEEN THE AIA DOCUMENT AND THE SUPPLEMENTAL INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS, THE SUPPLEMENTAL INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS WILL PREVAIL.

3.1 BIDDING DOCUMENTS:

Each general contractor will receive an electronic copy of the plans and specifications. Any print copies will be the responsibility of the bidder.

4.2 BID SECURITY:

Bid Bonds will be required at 5% of the stated bid amount. A payment and performance bond will be required from the successful bidder and should be included in the cost of your bid.

4.3 SUBMISSION OF BIDS:

Bids are due at 1:00 p.m. on Thursday, March 8, 2018, at the Project Manager's office at:
Construction Control Corporation
307 West 200 South, Ste. 4006
Salt Lake City, UT 84101

Bids shall be sealed, and clearly marked on the envelope the project name and the submitting party.

The bid opening shall be private.

Faxed or electronic bids may not be accepted.

5.3 ACCEPTANCE OF BIDS:

The Owner reserves the right to waive any formality in the bid process, and may reject a statement of qualification if the Owner determines that the firm submitting the statement of qualifications: (a) is not responsible; (b) is in violation of a provision of the Act; (c) has engaged in unethical conduct; or (d) receives a performance rating below the satisfactory performance threshold specified in the RFQ. The Owner may also reject the statement of qualifications or, as applicable, revoke the firm's status on the short list if there is a change in a firm's circumstances after the firm submits a statement of qualifications that if the change had been known when the statement of qualifications was evaluated, would have caused the statement of qualifications not to have received a qualifying score; or if the statement of qualifications is not responsive or does not meet the mandatory minimum requirements, evaluation criteria, or applicable score threshold stated in the RFQ. If a statement of qualifications is rejected, the Owner will make written findings stating the reasons for the rejection and provide a copy of the findings to the Contractor that submitted the rejected statement of qualifications.

6.2 BID FORM:

THE BID FORM WILL BE REISSUED BY ADDENDUM. A CSI BREAKDOWN WILL NOT BE REQUIRED ON BID DAY. A SCHEDULE OF VALUES AND A SUBCONTRACTOR LIST WILL BE REQUIRED WITHIN 24 HOURS FOLLOWING NOTIFICATION FROM THE PROJECT MANAGER.

END OF SECTION 00 21 13

**SECTION 00 50 00
CONTRACTING FORMS AND SUPPLEMENTS**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 AGREEMENT AND CONDITIONS OF THE CONTRACT

- A. See Section 00 52 00 - Agreement Form for the Agreement form to be executed.
- B. See Section 00 72 00 - General Conditions for the General Conditions.
- C. The Agreement is based on AIA A101.
- D. The General Conditions are based on AIA A201.

1.02 FORMS

- A. Use the following forms for the specified purposes unless otherwise indicated elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AIA A101 - Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Contractor where the basis of Payment is a Stipulated Sum; 2017.
- B. AIA A201 - General Conditions of the Contract for Construction; 2017.

PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED

PART 3 EXECUTION - NOT USED

END OF SECTION 00 50 00

**SECTION 00 72 00
GENERAL CONDITIONS**

FORM OF GENERAL CONDITIONS

1.01 THE GENERAL CONDITIONS APPLICABLE TO THIS CONTRACT IS ATTACHED FOLLOWING THIS PAGE.

RELATED REQUIREMENTS

2.01 SECTION 00 73 00 - SUPPLEMENTARY CONDITIONS.

END OF SECTION 00 72 00

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

**SECTION 00 73 00
SUPPLEMENTARY CONDITIONS**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SEE ENCLOSED DOCUMENT.

END OF SECTION 00 73 00

SUPPLEMENTAL GENERAL CONDITIONS

SALT LAKE CITY MOSQUITO ABATEMENT DISTRICT

These supplemental general conditions are to be used in conjunction with the attached AIA Document A201-2017 General Conditions of the Contract for Construction. In the event of a conflict between the General Conditions (A201) and the Supplemental Conditions, the supplemental conditions will prevail.

- 3.7 **Permits, Fees & Notices:** The Contractor will secure all permits. The Owner will pay for them. Permit costs and impact fees should not be included in the bid cost.
- 3.10 **Contractor's Construction Schedules:** The contractor will submit the time frame they will require to reach substantial completion (see bid form). The owner and the contractor will agree upon the schedule as part of the contract. Following substantial completion, the contractor will be allowed 90 calendar days to reach final completion. \$500/calendar day liquidated damages will be assessed for every day that substantial completion is not reached.
- 7.1 **Change Orders:** The Owner will pay R.S. Means costs adjusted for Salt Lake City for all change orders.

The general contractor shall receive 5% overhead and profit for all subcontractor change order work. The general contractor and all subcontractors shall receive 15% overhead and profit on all self performed work under \$5,000, 10% on all work from \$5-10,000, and 5% on all work over \$10,000.

- 11.1 **Insurance:**
- a. The general contractor shall maintain, and shall require all subcontractors and other entities or persons who perform work on the project to maintain, Workers' Compensation and Employers' Liability insurance meeting statutory limits mandated by Utah State law and federal law.
 - b. Commercial General Liability, including coverage for Premises-Operations, Independent Contractors' Protective, Products Completed Operations, Contractual Liability, Personal Injury, and Broad Form Property Damage (including coverage for Explosion, Collapse, and Underground hazards), shall be purchased and maintained as follows: \$3,000,000 Each Occurrence \$5,000,000 General Aggregate, \$1,000,000 Personal and Advertising Injury \$5,000,000 Products – Completed Operations Aggregate, Fire Damage (any one fire) \$500,000, Medical Expenses (any one person) \$5,000.
 - c. The coverage required in Subparagraph 7.1.2 (the "Policy") shall name Salt Lake City Mosquito Abatement District, Construction Control Corporation, and Design West Architects as additional insured's. If, during any phase of the Project, the minimum General Aggregate of the Policy available to cover claims relative to the Project arising under this agreement is decreased or is in any way compromised such that coverage for the Project, under the Policy is in any manner adversely (10) days following the occurrence of the event or the receipt of the

claim, whichever occurs first; (2) the General Contractor shall provide alternate coverage of a scope and nature consistent with the terms of this Agreement of the agreement or the receipt of the claim; and (3) should the General Contractor fail to provide such alternate coverage within the prescribed time period, the Owner shall be entitled to procure alternate coverage and deduct the cost for such from any monies or payment then due. Or in the future due, to the General Contractor from the Owner.

- d. Products and Completed Operations insurance shall be maintained for a minimum period of at least one (1) year either after ninety (90) days following Final Completion, or final payment, whichever is earlier.
 - e. The Contractual Liability insurance shall include coverage sufficient to meet the obligations under Paragraph 3.18 of AIA Document A201, as amended.
 - f. Automobile Liability (owned, non-owned and hired vehicles) for bodily injury and property damage shall be maintained with a minimum limit of liability per occurrence of \$1 million.
 - g. During the Construction Phase of the Project, the General Contractor shall purchase and maintain property insurance (Builder's Risk), including waivers of subrogation, as set forth in Paragraph 11.2 of AIA Document A201, as amended.
- 11.5 **Performance Bond & Payment Bond:** Payment and performance bonds will be required at the owner's request. The cost of the performance and payment bond is to be included in the contractors bid.
- 13.5 **Tests and Inspections:** The Owner will hire an independent materials testing firm for all on-site inspections and materials testing.

**SECTION 01 10 00
SUMMARY**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 PROJECT

- A. Project Name: SLC Mosquito Abatement District
- B. Architect's Name: Architectural Design West.
- C. The Project consists of the construction of 6 buildings including, Administration, Storage, Maintenance and general storage..

1.02 CONTRACT DESCRIPTION

- A. Contract Type: A single prime contract based on a Stipulated Price as described in Document 00 52 00 - Agreement Form.

1.03 WORK BY OWNER

- A. Items noted NIC (Not in Contract) will be supplied and installed by SLC Mosquito Abatement District before Substantial Completion. Some items include:
 - 1. Movable cabinets.
 - 2. Furnishings.
 - 3. Small equipment.

1.04 OWNER OCCUPANCY

- A. SLC Mosquito Abatement District intends to occupy the Project upon Substantial Completion.
- B. Cooperate with SLC Mosquito Abatement District to minimize conflict and to facilitate SLC Mosquito Abatement District's operations.
- C. Schedule the Work to accommodate SLC Mosquito Abatement District occupancy.

1.05 CONTRACTOR USE OF SITE

- A. Arrange use of site to allow:
 - 1. Work by Others.
- B. Provide access to and from site as required by law and by SLC Mosquito Abatement District:
 - 1. Emergency Building Exits During Construction: Keep all exits required by code open during construction period; provide temporary exit signs if exit routes are temporarily altered.
 - 2. Do not obstruct roadways, sidewalks, or other public ways without permit.

PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED

PART 3 EXECUTION - NOT USED

END OF SECTION 01 10 00

**SECTION 01 20 00
PRICE AND PAYMENT PROCEDURES**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Procedures for preparation and submittal of applications for progress payments.
- B. Documentation of changes in Contract Sum and Contract Time.

1.02 SCHEDULE OF VALUES

- A. Use Schedule of Values Form: AIA G702 & AIA G703, edition stipulated in the Agreement.
- B. Electronic media printout including equivalent information will be considered in lieu of standard form specified; submit draft to Architect for approval.
- C. Forms filled out by hand will not be accepted.

1.03 APPLICATIONS FOR PROGRESS PAYMENTS

- A. Payment Period: Submit at intervals stipulated in the Agreement.
- B. Electronic media printout including equivalent information will be considered in lieu of standard form specified; submit sample to Architect for approval.
- C. Forms filled out by hand will not be accepted.
- D. For each item, provide a column for listing each of the following:
 - 1. Item Number.
 - 2. Description of work.
 - 3. Scheduled Values.
 - 4. Previous Applications.
 - 5. Work in Place and Stored Materials under this Application.
 - 6. Authorized Change Orders.
 - 7. Total Completed and Stored to Date of Application.
 - 8. Percentage of Completion.
 - 9. Balance to Finish.
 - 10. Lien Waviers.
 - 11. Retainage.
- E. Execute certification by signature of authorized officer.
- F. Submit one electronic and three hard-copies of each Application for Payment.

1.04 MODIFICATION PROCEDURES

- A. For minor changes not involving an adjustment to the Contract Sum or Contract Time, Architect will issue instructions directly to Contractor.
- B. For other required changes, Architect will issue a document signed by SLC Mosquito Abatement District instructing Contractor to proceed with the change, for subsequent inclusion in a Change Order.
 - 1. The document will describe the required changes and will designate method of determining any change in Contract Sum or Contract Time.
 - 2. Promptly execute the change.
- C. For changes for which advance pricing is desired, Architect will issue a document that includes a detailed description of a proposed change with supplementary or revised drawings and specifications, a change in Contract Time for executing the change with a stipulation of any overtime work required and the period of time during which the requested price will be considered valid. Contractor shall prepare and submit a fixed price quotation within ____ days.
- D. Computation of Change in Contract Amount: As specified in the Agreement and Conditions of the Contract.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

1.05 APPLICATION FOR FINAL PAYMENT

- A. Prepare Application for Final Payment as specified for progress payments, identifying total adjusted Contract Sum, previous payments, and sum remaining due.

PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED

PART 3 EXECUTION - NOT USED

END OF SECTION 01 20 00

SECTION 01 22 00

UNIT PRICES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. List of unit prices, for use in preparing Bids.

1.02 COSTS INCLUDED

- A. Unit Prices included on the Bid Form shall include full compensation for all required labor, products, tools, equipment, plant, transportation, services and incidentals; erection, application or installation of an item of the Work; overhead and profit.

1.03 UNIT QUANTITIES SPECIFIED

- A. Quantities indicated in the Bid Form are for bidding and contract purposes only. Quantities and measurements of actual Work will determine the payment amount.

1.04 MEASUREMENT OF QUANTITIES

- A. Assist by providing necessary equipment, workers, and survey personnel as required.

1.05 PAYMENT

- A. Payment for Work governed by unit prices will be made on the basis of the actual measurements and quantities of Work that is incorporated in or made necessary by the Work and accepted by the Architect and Owner's Project Manager, multiplied by the unit price.
- B. Payment will not be made for any of the following:
 1. Products wasted or disposed of in a manner that is not acceptable.
 2. Products determined as unacceptable before or after placement.
 3. Products not completely unloaded from the transporting vehicle.
 4. Products placed beyond the lines and levels of the required Work.
 5. Products remaining on hand after completion of the Work.
 6. Loading, hauling, and disposing of rejected Products.

1.06 DEFECT ASSESSMENT

- A. Replace Work, or portions of the Work, not conforming to specified requirements.
- B. The authority of SLC Mosquito Abatement District and its Representative to assess the defect and identify payment adjustment is final.

1.07 SCHEDULE OF UNIT PRICES

- A. Item: 1; Section Imported, Placed & Compacted Structural Fill.
- B. Item: 2; Section Excavation & Removal of Unsuitable Soils & Materials.
- C. Item: 3; Section Asphalt Paving.
- D. Item: 4; Section Concrete Paving.

PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED

PART 3 EXECUTION - NOT USED

END OF SECTION 01 22 00

**SECTION 01 23 00
ALTERNATES**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Description of Alternates.
- B. Procedures for pricing Alternates.
- C. Documentation of changes to Contract Price and Contract Time.

1.02 ACCEPTANCE OF ALTERNATES

- A. Alternates quoted on Bid Forms will be reviewed and accepted or rejected at SLC Mosquito Abatement District's option. Accepted Alternates will be identified in the Owner-Contractor Agreement.
- B. Coordinate related work and modify surrounding work to integrate the Work of each Alternate.

1.03 SCHEDULE OF ALTERNATES

- A. Alternate No. 1 - A6 - Fish Hatchery:
 - 1. Alternate Item: Sections of the specifications and Drawing numbers A6-101 thru A6-501 including associated details shown on various general sheets, mechanical, plumbing, and electrical sheets.

PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED

PART 3 EXECUTION - NOT USED

END OF SECTION 01 23 00

SECTION 01 30 00
ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. General administrative requirements.
- B. Electronic document submittal service.
- C. Preconstruction meeting.
- D. Site mobilization meeting.
- E. Progress meetings.
- F. Construction progress schedule.
- G. Contractor's daily reports.
- H. Coordination drawings.
- I. Submittals for review, information, and project closeout.
- J. Number of copies of submittals.
- K. Requests for Information (RFI) procedures.
- L. Submittal procedures.

1.02 GENERAL ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to requirements of Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements for coordination of execution of administrative tasks with timing of construction activities.
- B. Make the following types of submittals to Architect:
 - 1. Requests for Information (RFI).
 - 2. Requests for substitution.
 - 3. Shop drawings, product data, and samples.
 - 4. Test and inspection reports.
 - 5. Design data.
 - 6. Manufacturer's instructions and field reports.
 - 7. Applications for payment and change order requests.
 - 8. Progress schedules.
 - 9. Coordination drawings.
 - 10. Correction Punch List and Final Correction Punch List for Substantial Completion.
 - 11. Closeout submittals.

1.03 PROJECT COORDINATOR

- A. Project Coordinator: Construction Manager.
- B. Cooperate with the Project Coordinator in allocation of mobilization areas of site; for field offices and sheds, for _____ access, traffic, and parking facilities.
- C. During construction, coordinate use of site and facilities through the Project Coordinator.
- D. Comply with Project Coordinator's procedures for intra-project communications; submittals, reports and records, schedules, coordination drawings, and recommendations; and resolution of ambiguities and conflicts.
- E. Comply with instructions of the Project Coordinator for use of temporary utilities and construction facilities. Responsibility for providing temporary utilities and construction facilities is identified in Section 01 10 00 - Summary.
- F. Coordinate field engineering and layout work under instructions of the Project Coordinator.
- G. Make the following types of submittals to Architect through the Project Coordinator:
 - 1. Requests for Information.
 - 2. Requests for substitution.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

3. Shop drawings, product data, and samples.
4. Test and inspection reports.
5. Design data.
6. Manufacturer's instructions and field reports.
7. Applications for payment and change order requests.
8. Progress schedules.
9. Coordination drawings.
10. Correction Punch List and Final Correction Punch List for Substantial Completion.
11. Closeout submittals.

PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 ELECTRONIC DOCUMENT SUBMITTAL SERVICE

- A. All documents transmitted for purposes of administration of the contract are to be in electronic (PDF, MS Word, or MS Excel) format, as appropriate to the document, and transmitted via an Internet-based submittal service that receives, logs and stores documents, provides electronic stamping and signatures, and notifies addressees via email.
 1. Besides submittals for review, information, and closeout, this procedure applies to Requests for Information (RFIs), progress documentation, contract modification documents (e.g. supplementary instructions, change proposals, change orders), applications for payment, field reports and meeting minutes, Contractor's correction punchlist, and any other document any participant wishes to make part of the project record.
 2. Contractor and Architect are required to use this service.
 3. It is Contractor's responsibility to submit documents in allowable format.
 4. Subcontractors, suppliers, and Architect's consultants are to be permitted to use the service at no extra charge.
 5. Users of the service need an email address, internet access, and PDF review software that includes ability to mark up and apply electronic stamps (such as Adobe Acrobat, www.adobe.com, or Bluebeam PDF Revu, www.bluebeam.com), unless such software capability is provided by the service provider.
 6. Paper document transmittals will not be reviewed; emailed electronic documents will not be reviewed.
 7. All other specified submittal and document transmission procedures apply, except that electronic document requirements do not apply to samples or color selection charts.
- B. Training: One, one-hour, web-based training session will be arranged for all participants, with representatives of Architect and Contractor participating; further training is the responsibility of the user of the service.
- C. Project Closeout: Architect will determine when to terminate the service for the project and is responsible for obtaining archive copies of files for SLC Mosquito Abatement District.

3.02 PRECONSTRUCTION MEETING

- A. Project Coordinator will schedule a meeting after Notice of Award.
- B. Attendance Required:
 1. SLC Mosquito Abatement District.
 2. Owner's Representative.
 3. Architect.
 4. Contractor.
- C. Agenda:
 1. Execution of SLC Mosquito Abatement District-Contractor Agreement.
 2. Submission of executed bonds and insurance certificates.
 3. Distribution of Contract Documents.
 4. Submission of list of subcontractors, list of products, schedule of values, and progress schedule.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

5. Submission of initial Submittal schedule.
 6. Designation of personnel representing the parties to Contract, _____ and Architect.
 7. Procedures and processing of field decisions, submittals, substitutions, applications for payments, proposal request, Change Orders, and Contract closeout procedures.
 8. Scheduling.
- D. Record minutes and distribute copies within two days after meeting to participants, with two copies to Architect, SLC Mosquito Abatement District, participants, and those affected by decisions made.

3.03 SITE MOBILIZATION MEETING

- A. Project Coordinator will schedule meeting at the Project site prior to Contractor occupancy.
- B. Attendance Required:
1. Contractor.
 2. SLC Mosquito Abatement District.
 3. Owner's Representative.
 4. Architect.
 5. Contractor's superintendent.
 6. Major subcontractors.
- C. Agenda:
1. Use of premises by SLC Mosquito Abatement District and Contractor.
 2. SLC Mosquito Abatement District's requirements and occupancy prior to completion.
 3. Construction facilities and controls provided by SLC Mosquito Abatement District.
 4. Temporary utilities provided by SLC Mosquito Abatement District.
 5. Survey and building layout.
 6. Security and housekeeping procedures.
 7. Schedules.
 8. Application for payment procedures.
 9. Procedures for testing.
 10. Procedures for maintaining record documents.
 11. Requirements for start-up of equipment.
 12. Inspection and acceptance of equipment put into service during construction period.
- D. Record minutes and distribute copies within two days after meeting to participants, with two copies to Architect, SLC Mosquito Abatement District, participants, and those affected by decisions made.

3.04 PROGRESS MEETINGS

- A. Project Coordinator will make arrangements for meetings, prepare agenda with copies for participants, preside at meetings.
- B. Attendance Required:
1. Contractor.
 2. SLC Mosquito Abatement District.
 3. Owner's Representative.
 4. Architect.
 5. Contractor's superintendent.
 6. Major subcontractors.
- C. Agenda:
1. Review minutes of previous meetings.
 2. Review of work progress.
 3. Field observations, problems, and decisions.
 4. Identification of problems that impede, or will impede, planned progress.
 5. Review of submittals schedule and status of submittals.
 6. Review of RFIs log and status of responses.
 7. Maintenance of progress schedule.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

8. Corrective measures to regain projected schedules.
 9. Planned progress during succeeding work period.
 10. Maintenance of quality and work standards.
 11. Effect of proposed changes on progress schedule and coordination.
 12. Other business relating to work.
- D. Record minutes and distribute copies within two days after meeting to participants, with two copies to Architect, SLC Mosquito Abatement District, participants, and those affected by decisions made.

3.05 CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS SCHEDULE

- A. If preliminary schedule requires revision after review, submit revised schedule within 10 days.
- B. Within 20 days after review of preliminary schedule, submit draft of proposed complete schedule for review.
 1. Include written certification that major contractors have reviewed and accepted proposed schedule.
- C. Within 10 days after joint review, submit complete schedule.
- D. Submit updated schedule with each Application for Payment.

3.06 DAILY CONSTRUCTION REPORTS

- A. Include only factual information. Do not include personal remarks or opinions regarding operations and/or personnel.
- B. In addition to transmitting electronically a copy to SLC Mosquito Abatement District, Owner's Representative, and Architect, submit two printed copies at weekly intervals.
- C. Prepare a daily construction report recording the following information concerning events at Project site and project progress:
 1. Date.
 2. High and low temperatures, and general weather conditions.
 3. Safety, environmental, or industrial relations incidents.
 4. Meetings and significant decisions.
 5. Stoppages, delays, shortages, and losses. Include comparison between scheduled work activities (in Contractor's most recently updated and published schedule) and actual activities. Explain differences, if any. Note days or periods when no work was in progress and explain the reasons why.
 6. Testing and/or inspections performed.
 7. Signature of Contractor's authorized representative.

3.07 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

- A. Provide information required by Project Coordinator for preparation of coordination drawings.
- B. Review drawings prior to submission to Architect.

3.08 REQUESTS FOR INFORMATION (RFI)

- A. Definition: A request seeking one of the following:
 1. An interpretation, amplification, or clarification of some requirement of Contract Documents arising from inability to determine from them the exact material, process, or system to be installed; or when the elements of construction are required to occupy the same space (interference); or when an item of work is described differently at more than one place in the Contract Documents.
 2. A resolution to an issue which has arisen due to field conditions and affects design intent.
- B. Whenever possible, request clarifications at the next appropriate project progress meeting, with response entered into meeting minutes, rendering unnecessary the issuance of a formal RFI.
- C. Preparation: Prepare an RFI immediately upon discovery of a need for interpretation of the Contract Documents. Failure to submit a RFI in a timely manner is not a legitimate cause for claiming additional costs or delays in execution of the work.
 1. Prepare a separate RFI for each specific item.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

2. Combine RFI and its attachments into a single electronic file. PDF format is preferred.
- D. Reason for the RFI: Prior to initiation of an RFI, carefully study all Contract Documents to confirm that information sufficient for their interpretation is definitely not included.
- E. RFI Log: Prepare and maintain a tabular log of RFIs for the duration of the project.
- F. Review Time: Architect will respond and return RFIs to Contractor within seven calendar days of receipt. For the purpose of establishing the start of the mandated response period, RFIs received after 12:00 noon will be considered as having been received on the following regular working day.
- G. Responses: Content of answered RFIs will not constitute in any manner a directive or authorization to perform extra work or delay the project. If in Contractor's belief it is likely to lead to a change to Contract Sum or Contract Time, promptly issue a notice to this effect, and follow up with an appropriate Change Order request to SLC Mosquito Abatement District.

3.09 SUBMITTAL SCHEDULE

- A. Submit to Architect for review a schedule for submittals in tabular format.
 1. Coordinate with Contractor's construction schedule and schedule of values.

3.10 SUBMITTALS FOR REVIEW

- A. When the following are specified in individual sections, submit them for review:
 1. Product data.
 2. Shop drawings.
 3. Samples for selection.
 4. Samples for verification.
- B. Submit to Architect for review for the limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and the design concept expressed in the contract documents.
- C. Samples will be reviewed for aesthetic, color, or finish selection.
- D. After review, provide copies and distribute in accordance with SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES article below.

3.11 SUBMITTALS FOR INFORMATION

- A. When the following are specified in individual sections, submit them for information:
 1. Design data.
 2. Certificates.
 3. Test reports.
 4. Inspection reports.
 5. Manufacturer's instructions.
 6. Manufacturer's field reports.
 7. Other types indicated.
- B. Submit for Architect's knowledge as contract administrator or for SLC Mosquito Abatement District.

3.12 SUBMITTALS FOR PROJECT CLOSEOUT

- A. Submit Correction Punch List for Substantial Completion.
- B. Submit Final Correction Punch List for Substantial Completion.
- C. When the following are specified in individual sections, submit them at project closeout in conformance to requirements of Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals:
 1. Project record documents.
 2. Operation and maintenance data.
 3. Warranties.
 4. Bonds.
 5. Other types as indicated.
- D. Submit for SLC Mosquito Abatement District's benefit during and after project completion.

3.13 NUMBER OF COPIES OF SUBMITTALS

- A. Electronic Documents: Submit one electronic copy in PDF format; an electronically-marked up file will be returned. Create PDFs at native size and right-side up; illegible files will be rejected.
- B. Samples: Submit the number specified in individual specification sections; one of which will be retained by Architect.
 - 1. After review, produce duplicates.
 - 2. Retained samples will not be returned to Contractor unless specifically so stated.

3.14 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

- A. General Requirements:
 - 1. Use a separate transmittal for each item.
 - 2. Transmit using approved form.
 - a. Use Contractor's form, subject to prior approval by Architect.
 - 3. Sequentially identify each item. For revised submittals use original number and a sequential numerical suffix.
 - 4. Identify: Project; Contractor; subcontractor or supplier; pertinent drawing and detail number; and specification section number and article/paragraph, as appropriate on each copy.
 - 5. Apply Contractor's stamp, signed or initialed certifying that review, approval, verification of products required, field dimensions, adjacent construction work, and coordination of information is in accordance with the requirements of the work and Contract Documents.
 - a. Submittals from sources other than the Contractor, or without Contractor's stamp will not be acknowledged, reviewed, or returned.
 - 6. Schedule submittals to expedite the Project, and coordinate submission of related items.
 - a. For each submittal for review, allow 15 days excluding delivery time to and from the Contractor.

3.15 SUBMITTAL REVIEW

- A. Submittals for Review: Architect will review each submittal, and approve, or take other appropriate action.
- B. Submittals for Information: Architect will acknowledge receipt and review. See below for actions to be taken.
- C. Architect's actions will be reflected by marking each returned submittal using virtual stamp on electronic submittals.
- D. Architect's and his consultants' actions on items submitted for review:
 - 1. Authorizing purchasing, fabrication, delivery, and installation:
 - a. "Approved", or language with same legal meaning.
 - b. "Approved as Noted, Resubmission not required", or language with same legal meaning.
 - 1) At Contractor's option, submit corrected item, with review notations acknowledged and incorporated.
 - c. "Approved as Noted, Resubmit for Record", or language with same legal meaning.
 - 2. Not Authorizing fabrication, delivery, and installation:
 - a. "Revise and Resubmit".
 - 1) Resubmit revised item, with review notations acknowledged and incorporated.
 - b. "Rejected".
 - 1) Submit item complying with requirements of Contract Documents.
- E. Architect's and his consultants' actions on items submitted for information:
 - 1. Items for which no action was taken:
 - a. "Received" - to notify the Contractor that the submittal has been received for record only.
 - 2. Items for which action was taken:

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- a. "Reviewed" - no further action is required from Contractor.

END OF SECTION 01 30 00

SECTION 01 32 16
CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS SCHEDULE

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Preliminary schedule.
- B. Construction progress schedule, bar chart type.

1.02 SUBMITTALS

- A. Within 10 days after date of Agreement, submit preliminary schedule.
- B. If preliminary schedule requires revision after review, submit revised schedule within 10 days.
- C. Within 20 days after review of preliminary schedule, submit draft of proposed complete schedule for review.

1.03 SCHEDULE FORMAT

- A. Listings: In chronological order according to the start date for each activity. Identify each activity with the applicable specification section number.
- B. Sheet Size: 11" x 17".

PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 PRELIMINARY SCHEDULE

- A. Prepare preliminary schedule in the form of a horizontal bar chart.

3.02 BAR CHARTS

- A. Include a separate bar for each major portion of Work or operation.
- B. Identify the first work day of each week.

3.03 UPDATING SCHEDULE

- A. Maintain schedules to record actual start and finish dates of completed activities.
- B. Indicate progress of each activity to date of revision, with projected completion date of each activity.
- C. Annotate diagrams to graphically depict current status of Work.
- D. Identify activities modified since previous submittal, major changes in Work, and other identifiable changes.
- E. Indicate changes required to maintain Date of Substantial Completion.
- F. Submit reports required to support recommended changes.

3.04 DISTRIBUTION OF SCHEDULE

- A. Distribute copies of updated schedules to Contractor's project site file, to subcontractors, suppliers, Architect, SLC Mosquito Abatement District, and other concerned parties.
- B. Instruct recipients to promptly report, in writing, problems anticipated by projections indicated in schedules.

END OF SECTION 01 32 16

**SECTION 01 40 00
QUALITY REQUIREMENTS**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Submittals.
- B. Quality assurance.
- C. Testing and inspection agencies and services.
- D. Control of installation.
- E. Manufacturers' field services.
- F. Defect Assessment.

1.02 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.

1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications:
 - 1. Prior to start of Work, submit agency name, address, and telephone number, and names of full time registered Engineer and responsible officer.

1.04 TESTING AND INSPECTION AGENCIES AND SERVICES

- A. SLC Mosquito Abatement District will employ and pay for services of an independent testing agency to perform other specified testing.
- B. Employment of agency in no way relieves Contractor of obligation to perform Work in accordance with requirements of Contract Documents.

PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 CONTROL OF INSTALLATION

- A. Monitor quality control over suppliers, manufacturers, products, services, site conditions, and workmanship, to produce Work of specified quality.
- B. Comply with manufacturers' instructions, including each step in sequence.
- C. Should manufacturers' instructions conflict with Contract Documents, request clarification from Architect before proceeding.
- D. Comply with specified standards as minimum quality for the Work except where more stringent tolerances, codes, or specified requirements indicate higher standards or more precise workmanship.
- E. Have Work performed by persons qualified to produce required and specified quality.
- F. Verify that field measurements are as indicated on shop drawings or as instructed by the manufacturer.
- G. Secure products in place with positive anchorage devices designed and sized to withstand stresses, vibration, physical distortion, and disfigurement.

3.02 TESTING AND INSPECTION

- A. Testing Agency Duties:
 - 1. Provide qualified personnel at site. Cooperate with Architect and Contractor in performance of services.
 - 2. Perform specified sampling and testing of products in accordance with specified standards.
 - 3. Ascertain compliance of materials and mixes with requirements of Contract Documents.
 - 4. Promptly notify Architect and Contractor of observed irregularities or non-conformance of Work or products.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

5. Perform additional tests and inspections required by Architect.
 6. Submit reports of all tests/inspections specified.
- B. Limits on Testing/Inspection Agency Authority:
1. Agency may not release, revoke, alter, or enlarge on requirements of Contract Documents.
 2. Agency may not approve or accept any portion of the Work.
 3. Agency may not assume any duties of Contractor.
 4. Agency has no authority to stop the Work.
- C. Contractor Responsibilities:
1. Deliver to agency at designated location, adequate samples of materials proposed to be used that require testing, along with proposed mix designs.
 2. Cooperate with laboratory personnel, and provide access to the Work and to manufacturers' facilities.
 3. Provide incidental labor and facilities:
 - a. To provide access to Work to be tested/inspected.
 - b. To obtain and handle samples at the site or at source of Products to be tested/inspected.
 - c. To facilitate tests/inspections.
 - d. To provide storage and curing of test samples.
 4. Notify Architect and laboratory 24 hours prior to expected time for operations requiring testing/inspection services.
 5. Employ services of an independent qualified testing laboratory and pay for additional samples, tests, and inspections required by Contractor beyond specified requirements.
 6. Arrange with SLC Mosquito Abatement District's agency and pay for additional samples, tests, and inspections required by Contractor beyond specified requirements.
- D. Re-testing required because of non-conformance to specified requirements shall be performed by the same agency on instructions by Architect.
- E. Re-testing required because of non-conformance to specified requirements shall be paid for by Contractor.

3.03 MANUFACTURERS' FIELD SERVICES

- A. When specified in individual specification sections, require material or product suppliers or manufacturers to provide qualified staff personnel to observe site conditions, conditions of surfaces and installation, quality of workmanship, start-up of equipment, test, adjust and balance of equipment and _____ as applicable, and to initiate instructions when necessary.
- B. Report observations and site decisions or instructions given to applicators or installers that are supplemental or contrary to manufacturers' written instructions.

3.04 DEFECT ASSESSMENT

- A. Replace Work or portions of the Work not conforming to specified requirements.

END OF SECTION 01 40 00

SECTION 01 50 00
TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Temporary utilities.
- B. Temporary sanitary facilities.
- C. Vehicular access and parking.
- D. Waste removal facilities and services.
- E. Project identification sign.
- F. Field offices.

1.02 TEMPORARY UTILITIES

- A. Provide and pay for all electrical power, lighting, water, heating and cooling, and ventilation required for construction purposes.
- B. New permanent facilities may not be used.

1.03 TEMPORARY SANITARY FACILITIES

- A. Provide and maintain required facilities and enclosures. Provide at time of project mobilization.
- B. Maintain daily in clean and sanitary condition.

1.04 BARRIERS

- A. Provide barriers to prevent unauthorized entry to construction areas, to prevent access to areas that could be hazardous to workers or the public, to allow for owner's use of site and to protect existing facilities and adjacent properties from damage from construction operations and demolition.
- B. Provide barricades and covered walkways required by governing authorities for public rights-of-way and for public access to existing building.
- C. Protect non-owned vehicular traffic, stored materials, site, and structures from damage.

1.05 FENCING

- A. Provide 6 foot high fence around construction site; equip with vehicular and pedestrian gates with locks.

1.06 VEHICULAR ACCESS AND PARKING

- A. Comply with regulations relating to use of streets and sidewalks, access to emergency facilities, and access for emergency vehicles.
- B. Coordinate access and haul routes with governing authorities and SLC Mosquito Abatement District.
- C. Provide and maintain access to fire hydrants, free of obstructions.
- D. Provide means of removing mud from vehicle wheels before entering streets.
- E. Provide temporary parking areas to accommodate construction personnel. When site space is not adequate, provide additional off-site parking.

1.07 WASTE REMOVAL

- A. Provide waste removal facilities and services as required to maintain the site in clean and orderly condition.
- B. Provide containers with lids. Remove trash from site periodically.
- C. If materials to be recycled or re-used on the project must be stored on-site, provide suitable non-combustible containers; locate containers holding flammable material outside the structure unless otherwise approved by the authorities having jurisdiction.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- D. Open free-fall chutes are not permitted. Terminate closed chutes into appropriate containers with lids.

1.08 PROJECT IDENTIFICATION

- A. Provide project identification sign of design and construction indicated on Drawings.
- B. Erect on site at location established by Architect.
- C. No other signs are allowed without SLC Mosquito Abatement District permission except those required by law.

1.09 FIELD OFFICES

- A. Office: Weathertight, with lighting, electrical outlets, heating, cooling equipment, and equipped with sturdy furniture, drawing rack, and drawing display table.
- B. Provide space for Project meetings, with table and chairs to accommodate 8 persons.
- C. Locate offices a minimum distance of 30 feet from existing and new structures.

1.10 REMOVAL OF UTILITIES, FACILITIES, AND CONTROLS

- A. Remove temporary utilities, equipment, facilities, materials, prior to Date of Substantial Completion inspection.
- B. Remove underground installations to a minimum depth of 2 feet. Grade site as indicated.
- C. Clean and repair damage caused by installation or use of temporary work.

PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED

PART 3 EXECUTION - NOT USED

END OF SECTION 01 50 00

SECTION 01 58 13
TEMPORARY PROJECT SIGNAGE

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Project identification sign.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. FHWA (SHS) - Standard Highway Signs; Federal Highway Administration; 2004.

1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Design sign and structure to withstand 50 miles/hr wind velocity.
- B. Sign Painter: Experienced as a professional sign painter for minimum three years.
- C. Finishes, Painting: Adequate to withstand weathering, fading, and chipping for duration of construction.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Shop Drawing: Show content, layout, lettering, color, foundation, structure, sizes and grades of members.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 SIGN MATERIALS

- A. Structure and Framing: New, wood, structurally adequate.
- B. Sign Surfaces: Exterior grade plywood with medium density overlay, minimum 3/4 inch thick, standard large sizes to minimize joints.
- C. Rough Hardware: Galvanized.
- D. Paint and Primers: Exterior quality, two coats; sign background of white color.
- E. Lettering: Exterior quality paint, contrasting colors. or
- F. Lettering: Pre-cut vinyl self-adhesive products, white.

2.02 PROJECT IDENTIFICATION SIGN

- A. One painted sign of construction, design, and content indicated on drawings, location designated.
- B. Content:
 - 1. Project title, logo and name of SLC Mosquito Abatement District as indicated on Contract Documents.
 - 2. Names and titles of authorities.
 - 3. Names and titles of Architect and Consultants.
 - 4. Name of Prime Contractor.
- C. Graphic Design, Colors, Style of Lettering: Designated by Architect.
- D. Lettering: Standard Alphabet Series C, as specified in FHWA (SHS).

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

- A. Install project identification sign within 30 days after date fixed by Notice to Proceed.
- B. Erect at designated location.
- C. Erect supports and framing on secure foundation, rigidly braced and framed to resist wind loadings.
- D. Install sign surface plumb and level, with butt joints. Anchor securely.
- E. Paint exposed surfaces of sign, supports, and framing.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

3.02 MAINTENANCE

- A. Maintain signs and supports clean, repair deterioration and damage.

3.03 REMOVAL

- A. Remove signs, framing, supports, and foundations at completion of Project and restore the area.

END OF SECTION 01 58 13

**SECTION 01 60 00
PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Transportation, handling, storage and protection.
- B. Product option requirements.
- C. Substitution limitations.
- D. Procedures for SLC Mosquito Abatement District-supplied products.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. EN 15804 - Sustainability of construction works - Environmental product declarations - Core rules for the product category of construction products; 2012.
- B. GreenScreen (LIST) - GreenScreen for Safer Chemicals List Translator; Clean Production Action; www.greenscreenchemicals.org.
- C. GreenScreen (METH) - GreenScreen for Safer Chemicals Method v1.2; Clean Production Action; www.greenscreenchemicals.org.
- D. ISO 14025 - Environmental labels and declarations -- Type III environmental declarations -- Principles and procedures; 2006.
- E. ISO 14040 - Environmental management -- Life cycle assessment -- Principles and framework; 2006.
- F. ISO 14044 - Environmental management -- Life cycle assessment -- Requirements and guidelines; 2006.
- G. ISO 21930 - Sustainability in building construction -- Environmental declaration of building products; 2007.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data Submittals: Submit manufacturer's standard published data. Mark each copy to identify applicable products, models, options, and other data. Supplement manufacturers' standard data to provide information specific to this Project.
- B. Shop Drawing Submittals: Prepared specifically for this Project; indicate utility and electrical characteristics, utility connection requirements, and location of utility outlets for service for functional equipment and appliances.
- C. Sample Submittals: Illustrate functional and aesthetic characteristics of the product, with integral parts and attachment devices. Coordinate sample submittals for interfacing work.
 - 1. For selection from standard finishes, submit samples of the full range of the manufacturer's standard colors, textures, and patterns.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Environmental Product Declaration (EPD): Publicly available, critically reviewed life cycle analysis having at least a cradle-to-gate scope.
 - 1. Good: Product-specific; compliant with ISO 14044.
 - 2. Better: Industry-wide, generic; compliant with ISO 21930, or with ISO 14044, ISO 14040, ISO 14025, and EN 15804; Type III third-party certification with external verification, in which the manufacturer is recognized as the program operator.
 - 3. Best: Commercial-product-specific; compliant with ISO 21930, or with ISO 14044, ISO 14040, ISO 14025, and EN 15804; Type III third-party certification with external verification, in which the manufacturer is recognized as the program operator.
 - 4. Where demonstration of impact reduction below industry average is required, submit both industry-wide and commercial-product-specific declarations; or submit at least 5 declarations for products of the same type by other manufacturers in the same industry.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- B. GreenScreen Chemical Hazard Analysis: All ingredients of 100 parts-per-million or greater evaluated using GreenScreen (METH).
 - 1. Good: GreenScreen (LIST) evaluation to identify Benchmark 1 hazards; a Health Product Declaration includes this information.
 - 2. Better: GreenScreen Full Assessment.
 - 3. Best: GreenScreen Full Assessment by GreenScreen Licensed Profiler.
 - 4. Acceptable Evidence: GreenScreen report.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 NEW PRODUCTS

- A. Provide new products unless specifically required or permitted by the Contract Documents.
- B. DO NOT USE products having any of the following characteristics:
 - 1. Made outside the United States, its territories, Canada, or Mexico.
 - 2. Made using or containing CFC's or HCFC's.
 - 3. Made of wood from newly cut old growth timber.
 - 4. Containing lead, cadmium, asbestos.
- C. Where all other criteria are met, Contractor shall give preference to products that:
 - 1. If used on interior, have lower emissions, as defined in Section 01 61 16.
 - 2. If wet-applied, have lower VOC content, as defined in Section 01 61 16.
 - 3. Are extracted, harvested, and/or manufactured closer to the location of the project.
 - 4. Have a published GreenScreen Chemical Hazard Analysis.

2.02 PRODUCT OPTIONS

- A. Products Specified by Reference Standards or by Description Only: Use any product meeting those standards or description.
- B. Products Specified by Naming One or More Manufacturers: Use a product of one of the manufacturers named and meeting specifications, no options or substitutions allowed.
- C. Products Specified by Naming One or More Manufacturers with a Provision for Substitutions: Submit a request for substitution for any manufacturer not named.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 SUBSTITUTION LIMITATIONS

- A. See Section 01 25 00 - Substitution Procedures.

3.02 OWNER-SUPPLIED PRODUCTS

- A. SLC Mosquito Abatement District's Responsibilities:
 - 1. Arrange for and deliver SLC Mosquito Abatement District reviewed shop drawings, product data, and samples, to Contractor.
 - 2. Arrange and pay for product delivery to site.
 - 3. On delivery, inspect products jointly with Contractor.
 - 4. Submit claims for transportation damage and replace damaged, defective, or deficient items.
 - 5. Arrange for manufacturers' warranties, inspections, and service.
- B. Contractor's Responsibilities:
 - 1. Review SLC Mosquito Abatement District reviewed shop drawings, product data, and samples.
 - 2. Receive and unload products at site; inspect for completeness or damage jointly with SLC Mosquito Abatement District.
 - 3. Handle, store, install and finish products.
 - 4. Repair or replace items damaged after receipt.

3.03 TRANSPORTATION AND HANDLING

- A. Package products for shipment in manner to prevent damage; for equipment, package to avoid loss of factory calibration.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- B. If special precautions are required, attach instructions prominently and legibly on outside of packaging.
- C. Coordinate schedule of product delivery to designated prepared areas in order to minimize site storage time and potential damage to stored materials.
- D. Transport and handle products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- E. Transport materials in covered trucks to prevent contamination of product and littering of surrounding areas.
- F. Promptly inspect shipments to ensure that products comply with requirements, quantities are correct, and products are undamaged.
- G. Provide equipment and personnel to handle products by methods to prevent soiling, disfigurement, or damage, and to minimize handling.
- H. Arrange for the return of packing materials, such as wood pallets, where economically feasible.

3.04 STORAGE AND PROTECTION

- A. Designate receiving/storage areas for incoming products so that they are delivered according to installation schedule and placed convenient to work area in order to minimize waste due to excessive materials handling and misapplication.
- B. Store and protect products in accordance with manufacturers' instructions.
- C. Store with seals and labels intact and legible.
- D. Store sensitive products in weather tight, climate controlled, enclosures in an environment favorable to product.
- E. For exterior storage of fabricated products, place on sloped supports above ground.
- F. Protect products from damage or deterioration due to construction operations, weather, precipitation, humidity, temperature, sunlight and ultraviolet light, dirt, dust, and other contaminants.
- G. Comply with manufacturer's warranty conditions, if any.
- H. Do not store products directly on the ground.
- I. Cover products subject to deterioration with impervious sheet covering. Provide ventilation to prevent condensation and degradation of products.
- J. Prevent contact with material that may cause corrosion, discoloration, or staining.
- K. Provide equipment and personnel to store products by methods to prevent soiling, disfigurement, or damage.
- L. Arrange storage of products to permit access for inspection. Periodically inspect to verify products are undamaged and are maintained in acceptable condition.

END OF SECTION 01 60 00

SECTION 01 70 00
EXECUTION AND CLOSEOUT REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Examination, preparation, and general installation procedures.
- B. Pre-installation meetings.
- C. Cutting and patching.
- D. Surveying for laying out the work.
- E. Cleaning and protection.
- F. Starting of systems and equipment.
- G. Demonstration and instruction of SLC Mosquito Abatement District personnel.
- H. Closeout procedures, including Contractor's Correction Punch List, except payment procedures.
- I. General requirements for maintenance service.

1.02 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Survey work: Submit name, address, and telephone number of Surveyor before starting survey work.
 - 1. On request, submit documentation verifying accuracy of survey work.
 - 2. Submit a copy of site drawing signed by the Land Surveyor, that the elevations and locations of the work are in conformance with Contract Documents.
 - 3. Submit surveys and survey logs for the project record.
- C. Cutting and Patching: Submit written request in advance of cutting or alteration that affects:
 - 1. Structural integrity of any element of Project.
 - 2. Integrity of weather exposed or moisture resistant element.
 - 3. Efficiency, maintenance, or safety of any operational element.
 - 4. Visual qualities of sight exposed elements.
 - 5. Work of SLC Mosquito Abatement District or separate Contractor.

1.03 QUALIFICATIONS

- A. For survey work, employ a land surveyor registered in the State in which the Project is located and acceptable to Architect. Submit evidence of Surveyor's Errors and Omissions insurance coverage in the form of an Insurance Certificate.

1.04 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Use of explosives is not permitted.
- B. Grade site to drain. Maintain excavations free of water. Provide, operate, and maintain pumping equipment.
- C. Ventilate enclosed areas to assist cure of materials, to dissipate humidity, and to prevent accumulation of dust, fumes, vapors, or gases.
- D. Dust Control: Execute work by methods to minimize raising dust from construction operations. Provide positive means to prevent air-borne dust from dispersing into atmosphere and over adjacent property.
- E. Erosion and Sediment Control: Plan and execute work by methods to control surface drainage from cuts and fills, from borrow and waste disposal areas. Prevent erosion and sedimentation.

1.05 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate scheduling, submittals, and work of the various sections of the Project Manual to ensure efficient and orderly sequence of installation of interdependent construction elements, with provisions for accommodating items installed later.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- B. Notify affected utility companies and comply with their requirements.
- C. Verify that utility requirements and characteristics of new operating equipment are compatible with building utilities. Coordinate work of various sections having interdependent responsibilities for installing, connecting to, and placing in service, such equipment.
- D. Coordinate space requirements, supports, and installation of mechanical and electrical work that are indicated diagrammatically on drawings. Follow routing indicated for pipes, ducts, and conduit, as closely as practicable; place runs parallel with lines of building. Utilize spaces efficiently to maximize accessibility for other installations, for maintenance, and for repairs.
- E. In finished areas except as otherwise indicated, conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring within the construction. Coordinate locations of fixtures and outlets with finish elements.
- F. Coordinate completion and clean-up of work of separate sections.
- G. After SLC Mosquito Abatement District occupancy of premises, coordinate access to site for correction of defective work and work not in accordance with Contract Documents, to minimize disruption of SLC Mosquito Abatement District's activities.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 PATCHING MATERIALS

- A. New Materials: As specified in product sections; match existing products and work for patching and extending work.
- B. Type and Quality of Existing Products: Determine by inspecting and testing products where necessary, referring to existing work as a standard.
- C. Product Substitution: For any proposed change in materials, submit request for substitution described in Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that existing site conditions and substrate surfaces are acceptable for subsequent work. Start of work means acceptance of existing conditions.
- B. Verify that existing substrate is capable of structural support or attachment of new work being applied or attached.
- C. Examine and verify specific conditions described in individual specification sections.
- D. Take field measurements before confirming product orders or beginning fabrication, to minimize waste due to over-ordering or misfabrication.
- E. Verify that utility services are available, of the correct characteristics, and in the correct locations.
- F. Prior to Cutting: Examine existing conditions prior to commencing work, including elements subject to damage or movement during cutting and patching. After uncovering existing work, assess conditions affecting performance of work. Beginning of cutting or patching means acceptance of existing conditions.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrate surfaces prior to applying next material or substance.
- B. Seal cracks or openings of substrate prior to applying next material or substance.
- C. Apply manufacturer required or recommended substrate primer, sealer, or conditioner prior to applying any new material or substance in contact or bond.

3.03 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. When required in individual specification sections, convene a preinstallation meeting at the site prior to commencing work of the section.
- B. Require attendance of parties directly affecting, or affected by, work of the specific section.
- C. Notify Architect four days in advance of meeting date.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- D. Prepare agenda and preside at meeting:
 - 1. Review conditions of examination, preparation and installation procedures.
 - 2. Review coordination with related work.
- E. Record minutes and distribute copies within two days after meeting to participants, with two copies to Architect, SLC Mosquito Abatement District, participants, and those affected by decisions made.

3.04 LAYING OUT THE WORK

- A. Verify locations of survey control points prior to starting work.
- B. Promptly notify Architect of any discrepancies discovered.
- C. Contractor shall locate and protect survey control and reference points.
- D. Protect survey control points prior to starting site work; preserve permanent reference points during construction.
- E. Promptly report to Architect the loss or destruction of any reference point or relocation required because of changes in grades or other reasons.
- F. Replace dislocated survey control points based on original survey control. Make no changes without prior written notice to Architect.
- G. Utilize recognized engineering survey practices.
- H. Establish elevations, lines and levels. Locate and lay out by instrumentation and similar appropriate means:
 - 1. Site improvements including pavements; stakes for grading, fill and topsoil placement; utility locations, slopes, and invert elevations.
 - 2. Grid or axis for structures.
 - 3. Building foundation, column locations, ground floor elevations.
- I. Periodically verify layouts by same means.
- J. Maintain a complete and accurate log of control and survey work as it progresses.

3.05 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install products as specified in individual sections, in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations, and so as to avoid waste due to necessity for replacement.
- B. Make vertical elements plumb and horizontal elements level, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install equipment and fittings plumb and level, neatly aligned with adjacent vertical and horizontal lines, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Make consistent texture on surfaces, with seamless transitions, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Make neat transitions between different surfaces, maintaining texture and appearance.

3.06 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Whenever possible, execute the work by methods that avoid cutting or patching.
- B. Perform whatever cutting and patching is necessary to:
 - 1. Complete the work.
 - 2. Fit products together to integrate with other work.
 - 3. Provide openings for penetration of mechanical, electrical, and other services.
 - 4. Match work that has been cut to adjacent work.
 - 5. Repair areas adjacent to cuts to required condition.
 - 6. Repair new work damaged by subsequent work.
 - 7. Remove samples of installed work for testing when requested.
 - 8. Remove and replace defective and non-conforming work.
- C. Execute work by methods that avoid damage to other work and that will provide appropriate surfaces to receive patching and finishing. In existing work, minimize damage and restore to original condition.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- D. Employ original installer to perform cutting for weather exposed and moisture resistant elements, and sight exposed surfaces.
- E. Cut rigid materials using masonry saw or core drill. Pneumatic tools not allowed without prior approval.
- F. Restore work with new products in accordance with requirements of Contract Documents.
- G. Fit work air tight to pipes, sleeves, ducts, conduit, and other penetrations through surfaces.
- H. At penetrations of fire rated walls, partitions, ceiling, or floor construction, completely seal voids with fire rated material in accordance with Section 07 84 00, to full thickness of the penetrated element.
- I. Patching:
 - 1. Finish patched surfaces to match finish that existed prior to patching. On continuous surfaces, refinish to nearest intersection or natural break. For an assembly, refinish entire unit.
 - 2. Match color, texture, and appearance.
 - 3. Repair patched surfaces that are damaged, lifted, discolored, or showing other imperfections due to patching work. If defects are due to condition of substrate, repair substrate prior to repairing finish.

3.07 PROGRESS CLEANING

- A. Maintain areas free of waste materials, debris, and rubbish. Maintain site in a clean and orderly condition.
- B. Remove debris and rubbish from pipe chases, plenums, attics, crawl spaces, and other closed or remote spaces, prior to enclosing the space.
- C. Broom and vacuum clean interior areas prior to start of surface finishing, and continue cleaning to eliminate dust.
- D. Collect and remove waste materials, debris, and trash/rubbish from site periodically and dispose off-site; do not burn or bury.

3.08 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED WORK

- A. Protect installed work from damage by construction operations.
- B. Provide special protection where specified in individual specification sections.
- C. Provide temporary and removable protection for installed products. Control activity in immediate work area to prevent damage.
- D. Provide protective coverings at walls, projections, jambs, sills, and soffits of openings.
- E. Protect finished floors, stairs, and other surfaces from traffic, dirt, wear, damage, or movement of heavy objects, by protecting with durable sheet materials.
- F. Prohibit traffic or storage upon waterproofed or roofed surfaces. If traffic or activity is necessary, obtain recommendations for protection from waterproofing or roofing material manufacturer.
- G. Remove protective coverings when no longer needed; reuse or recycle coverings if possible.

3.09 SYSTEM STARTUP

- A. Coordinate schedule for start-up of various equipment and systems.
- B. Verify that each piece of equipment or system has been checked for proper lubrication, drive rotation, belt tension, control sequence, and for conditions that may cause damage.
- C. Verify tests, meter readings, and specified electrical characteristics agree with those required by the equipment or system manufacturer.
- D. Verify that wiring and support components for equipment are complete and tested.
- E. Execute start-up under supervision of applicable Contractor personnel and manufacturer's representative in accordance with manufacturers' instructions.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- F. Submit a written report that equipment or system has been properly installed and is functioning correctly.

3.10 DEMONSTRATION AND INSTRUCTION

- A. See Section 01 79 00 - Demonstration and Training.

3.11 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust operating products and equipment to ensure smooth and unhindered operation.

3.12 FINAL CLEANING

- A. Use cleaning materials that are nonhazardous.
- B. Clean interior and exterior glass, surfaces exposed to view; remove temporary labels, stains and foreign substances, polish transparent and glossy surfaces, vacuum carpeted and soft surfaces.
- C. Remove all labels that are not permanent. Do not paint or otherwise cover fire test labels or nameplates on mechanical and electrical equipment.
- D. Clean equipment and fixtures to a sanitary condition with cleaning materials appropriate to the surface and material being cleaned.
- E. Clean filters of operating equipment.
- F. Clean debris from roofs, gutters, downspouts, scuppers, overflow drains, area drains, drainage systems, and _____.
- G. Clean site; sweep paved areas, rake clean landscaped surfaces.
- H. Remove waste, surplus materials, trash/rubbish, and construction facilities from the site; dispose of in legal manner; do not burn or bury.

3.13 CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

- A. Make submittals that are required by governing or other authorities.
- B. Accompany Project Coordinator on preliminary inspection to determine items to be listed for completion or correction in the Contractor's Correction Punch List for Contractor's Notice of Substantial Completion.
- C. Notify Architect when work is considered ready for Architect's Substantial Completion inspection.
- D. Submit written certification containing Contractor's Correction Punch List, that Contract Documents have been reviewed, work has been inspected, and that work is complete in accordance with Contract Documents and ready for Architect's Substantial Completion inspection.
- E. Conduct Substantial Completion inspection and create Final Correction Punch List containing Architect's and Contractor's comprehensive list of items identified to be completed or corrected and submit to Architect.
- F. Correct items of work listed in Final Correction Punch List and comply with requirements for access to SLC Mosquito Abatement District-occupied areas.
- G. Notify Architect when work is considered finally complete and ready for Architect's Substantial Completion final inspection.
- H. Complete items of work determined by Architect listed in executed Certificate of Substantial Completion.

3.14 MAINTENANCE

- A. Provide service and maintenance of components indicated in specification sections.
- B. Maintenance Period: As indicated in specification sections or, if not indicated, not less than one year from the Date of Substantial Completion or the length of the specified warranty, whichever is longer.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- C. Examine system components at a frequency consistent with reliable operation. Clean, adjust, and lubricate as required.
- D. Include systematic examination, adjustment, and lubrication of components. Repair or replace parts whenever required. Use parts produced by the manufacturer of the original component.
- E. Maintenance service shall not be assigned or transferred to any agent or subcontractor without prior written consent of the SLC Mosquito Abatement District.

END OF SECTION 01 70 00

SECTION 01 74 19

CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 WASTE MANAGEMENT REQUIREMENTS

- A. SLC Mosquito Abatement District requires that this project generate the least amount of trash and waste possible.
- B. Employ processes that ensure the generation of as little waste as possible due to error, poor planning, breakage, mishandling, contamination, or other factors.
- C. Minimize trash/waste disposal in landfills; reuse, salvage, or recycle as much waste as economically feasible.
- D. Contractor shall submit periodic Waste Disposal Reports; all landfill disposal, recycling, salvage, and reuse must be reported regardless of to whom the cost or savings accrues; use the same units of measure on all reports.
- E. Methods of trash/waste disposal that are not acceptable are:
 - 1. Burning on the project site.
 - 2. Burying on the project site.
 - 3. Dumping or burying on other property, public or private.
 - 4. Other illegal dumping or burying.
- F. Regulatory Requirements: Contractor is responsible for knowing and complying with regulatory requirements, including but not limited to Federal, state and local requirements, pertaining to legal disposal of all construction and demolition waste materials.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. Clean: Untreated and unpainted; not contaminated with oils, solvents, caulk, or the like.
- B. Construction and Demolition Waste: Solid wastes typically including building materials, packaging, trash, debris, and rubble resulting from construction, remodeling, repair and demolition operations.
- C. Hazardous: Exhibiting the characteristics of hazardous substances, i.e., ignitibility, corrosivity, toxicity or reactivity.
- D. Nonhazardous: Exhibiting none of the characteristics of hazardous substances, i.e., ignitibility, corrosivity, toxicity, or reactivity.
- E. Nontoxic: Neither immediately poisonous to humans nor poisonous after a long period of exposure.
- F. Recyclable: The ability of a product or material to be recovered at the end of its life cycle and remanufactured into a new product for reuse by others.
- G. Recycle: To remove a waste material from the project site to another site for remanufacture into a new product for reuse by others.
- H. Recycling: The process of sorting, cleansing, treating and reconstituting solid waste and other discarded materials for the purpose of using the altered form. Recycling does not include burning, incinerating, or thermally destroying waste.
- I. Return: To give back reusable items or unused products to vendors for credit.
- J. Reuse: To reuse a construction waste material in some manner on the project site.
- K. Salvage: To remove a waste material from the project site to another site for resale or reuse by others.
- L. Sediment: Soil and other debris that has been eroded and transported by storm or well production run-off water.
- M. Source Separation: The act of keeping different types of waste materials separate beginning from the first time they become waste.
- N. Toxic: Poisonous to humans either immediately or after a long period of exposure.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- O. Trash: Any product or material unable to be reused, returned, recycled, or salvaged.
- P. Waste: Extra material or material that has reached the end of its useful life in its intended use. Waste includes salvageable, returnable, recyclable, and reusable material.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 PRODUCT SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements for substitution submission procedures.
- B. For each proposed product substitution, submit the following information in addition to requirements specified in Section 01 60 00:
 - 1. Relative amount of waste produced, compared to specified product.
 - 2. Cost savings on waste disposal, compared to specified product, to be deducted from the Contract Sum.
 - 3. Proposed disposal method for waste product.
 - 4. Markets for recycled waste product.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 WASTE MANAGEMENT PLAN IMPLEMENTATION

- A. Manager: Designate an on-site person or persons responsible for instructing workers and overseeing and documenting results of the Waste Management Plan.
- B. Communication: Distribute copies of the Waste Management Plan to job site foreman, each subcontractor, SLC Mosquito Abatement District, and Architect.
- C. Instruction: Provide on-site instruction of appropriate separation, handling, and recycling, salvage, reuse, and return methods to be used by all parties at the appropriate stages of the project.
- D. Meetings: Discuss trash/waste management goals and issues at project meetings.
 - 1. Pre-bid meeting.
 - 2. Pre-construction meeting.
 - 3. Regular job-site meetings.
- E. Facilities: Provide specific facilities for separation and storage of materials for recycling, salvage, reuse, return, and trash disposal, for use by all contractors and installers.
 - 1. Provide containers as required.
 - 2. Provide adequate space for pick-up and delivery and convenience to subcontractors.
 - 3. Keep recycling and trash/waste bin areas neat and clean and clearly marked in order to avoid contamination of materials.
- F. Hazardous Wastes: Separate, store, and dispose of hazardous wastes according to applicable regulations.
- G. Recycling: Separate, store, protect, and handle at the site identified recyclable waste products in order to prevent contamination of materials and to maximize recyclability of identified materials. Arrange for timely pickups from the site or deliveries to recycling facility in order to prevent contamination of recyclable materials.
- H. Reuse of Materials On-Site: Set aside, sort, and protect separated products in preparation for reuse.
- I. Salvage: Set aside, sort, and protect products to be salvaged for reuse off-site.

END OF SECTION 01 74 19

**SECTION 01 78 00
CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Project Record Documents.
- B. Operation and Maintenance Data.
- C. Warranties and bonds.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements: Submittals procedures, shop drawings, product data, and samples.
- B. Individual Product Sections: Specific requirements for operation and maintenance data.
- C. Individual Product Sections: Warranties required for specific products or Work.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. Project Record Documents: Submit documents to Architect with claim for final Application for Payment.
- B. Operation and Maintenance Data:
 - 1. For equipment, or component parts of equipment put into service during construction and operated by SLC Mosquito Abatement District, submit completed documents within ten days after acceptance.
 - 2. Submit one copy of completed documents 15 days prior to final inspection. This copy will be reviewed and returned after final inspection, with Architect comments. Revise content of all document sets as required prior to final submission.
 - 3. Submit two sets of revised final documents in final form within 10 days after final inspection.
- C. Warranties and Bonds:
 - 1. For equipment or component parts of equipment put into service during construction with SLC Mosquito Abatement District's permission, submit documents within 10 days after acceptance.
 - 2. Make other submittals within 10 days after Date of Substantial Completion, prior to final Application for Payment.
 - 3. For items of Work for which acceptance is delayed beyond Date of Substantial Completion, submit within 10 days after acceptance, listing the date of acceptance as the beginning of the warranty period.

PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Maintain on site one set of the following record documents; record actual revisions to the Work:
 - 1. Drawings.
 - 2. Addenda.
 - 3. Change Orders and other modifications to the Contract.
- B. Ensure entries are complete and accurate, enabling future reference by SLC Mosquito Abatement District.
- C. Store record documents separate from documents used for construction.
- D. Record information concurrent with construction progress.
- E. Record Drawings: Legibly mark each item to record actual construction including:
 - 1. Field changes of dimension and detail.
 - 2. Details not on original Contract drawings.

3.02 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

- A. Source Data: For each product or system, list names, addresses and telephone numbers of Subcontractors and suppliers, including local source of supplies and replacement parts.
- B. Product Data: Mark each sheet to clearly identify specific products and component parts, and data applicable to installation. Delete inapplicable information.
- C. Drawings: Supplement product data to illustrate relations of component parts of equipment and systems, to show control and flow diagrams. Do not use Project Record Documents as maintenance drawings.
- D. Typed Text: As required to supplement product data. Provide logical sequence of instructions for each procedure, incorporating manufacturer's instructions.

3.03 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA FOR EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS

- A. For Each Item of Equipment and Each System:
 - 1. Description of unit or system, and component parts.
 - 2. Identify function, normal operating characteristics, and limiting conditions.
 - 3. Include performance curves, with engineering data and tests.
 - 4. Complete nomenclature and model number of replaceable parts.
- B. Where additional instructions are required, beyond the manufacturer's standard printed instructions, have instructions prepared by personnel experienced in the operation and maintenance of the specific products.
- C. Panelboard Circuit Directories: Provide electrical service characteristics, controls, and communications; typed.
- D. Operating Procedures: Include start-up, break-in, and routine normal operating instructions and sequences. Include regulation, control, stopping, shut-down, and emergency instructions. Include summer, winter, and any special operating instructions.
- E. Maintenance Requirements: Include routine procedures and guide for preventative maintenance and trouble shooting; disassembly, repair, and reassembly instructions; and alignment, adjusting, balancing, and checking instructions.
- F. Provide servicing and lubrication schedule, and list of lubricants required.
- G. Include manufacturer's printed operation and maintenance instructions.
- H. Include sequence of operation by controls manufacturer.
- I. Provide original manufacturer's parts list, illustrations, assembly drawings, and diagrams required for maintenance.
- J. Additional Requirements: As specified in individual product specification sections.

3.04 WARRANTIES AND BONDS

- A. Obtain warranties and bonds, executed in duplicate by responsible Subcontractors, suppliers, and manufacturers, within 10 days after completion of the applicable item of work. Except for items put into use with SLC Mosquito Abatement District's permission, leave date of beginning of time of warranty until Date of Substantial completion is determined.
- B. Verify that documents are in proper form, contain full information, and are notarized.
- C. Co-execute submittals when required.
- D. Retain warranties and bonds until time specified for submittal.

END OF SECTION 01 78 00

SECTION 01 79 00
DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Demonstration of products and systems where indicated in specific specification sections.
- B. Training of SLC Mosquito Abatement District personnel in operation and maintenance is required for:
 - 1. All software-operated systems.
 - 2. HVAC systems and equipment.
 - 3. Plumbing equipment.
 - 4. Electrical systems and equipment.
 - 5. Landscape irrigation.
 - 6. Items specified in individual product Sections.
- C. Training of SLC Mosquito Abatement District personnel in care, cleaning, maintenance, and repair is required for:
 - 1. Finishes, including flooring, wall finishes, ceiling finishes.

1.02 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Training Plan: SLC Mosquito Abatement District will designate personnel to be trained; tailor training to needs and skill-level of attendees.
 - 1. Submit to Architect for transmittal to SLC Mosquito Abatement District.
 - 2. Submit not less than four weeks prior to start of training.
 - 3. Revise and resubmit until acceptable.
 - 4. Provide an overall schedule showing all training sessions.
 - 5. Include at least the following for each training session:
 - a. Identification, date, time, and duration.
 - b. Description of products and/or systems to be covered.
 - c. Name of firm and person conducting training; include qualifications.
 - d. Intended audience, such as job description.
 - e. Objectives of training and suggested methods of ensuring adequate training.
 - f. Methods to be used, such as classroom lecture, live demonstrations, hands-on, etc.
 - g. Media to be used, such as slides, hand-outs, etc.
 - h. Training equipment required, such as projector, projection screen, etc., to be provided by Contractor.
- C. Training Manuals: Provide training manual for each attendee; allow for minimum of two attendees per training session.
 - 1. Include applicable portion of O&M manuals.
 - 2. Include copies of all hand-outs, slides, overheads, video presentations, etc., that are not included in O&M manuals.
 - 3. Provide one extra copy of each training manual to be included with operation and maintenance data.
- D. Training Reports:
 - 1. Identification of each training session, date, time, and duration.
 - 2. Sign-in sheet showing names and job titles of attendees.
 - 3. List of attendee questions and written answers given, including copies of and references to supporting documentation required for clarification; include answers to questions that could not be answered in original training session.

1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Instructor Qualifications: Familiar with design, operation, maintenance and troubleshooting of the relevant products and systems.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

1. Provide as instructors the most qualified trainer of those contractors and/or installers who actually supplied and installed the systems and equipment.
2. Where a single person is not familiar with all aspects, provide specialists with necessary qualifications.

PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 DEMONSTRATION - GENERAL

- A. Demonstrations conducted during system start-up do not qualify as demonstrations for the purposes of this section, unless approved in advance by SLC Mosquito Abatement District.
- B. Demonstration may be combined with SLC Mosquito Abatement District personnel training if applicable.
- C. Operating Equipment and Systems: Demonstrate operation in all modes, including start-up, shut-down, seasonal changeover, emergency conditions, and troubleshooting, and maintenance procedures, including scheduled and preventive maintenance.
 1. Perform demonstrations not less than two weeks prior to Substantial Completion.
 2. For equipment or systems requiring seasonal operation, perform demonstration for other season within six months.
- D. Non-Operating Products: Demonstrate cleaning, scheduled and preventive maintenance, and repair procedures.
 1. Perform demonstrations not less than two weeks prior to Substantial Completion.

3.02 TRAINING - GENERAL

- A. Conduct training on-site unless otherwise indicated.
- B. SLC Mosquito Abatement District will provide classroom and seating at no cost to Contractor.
- C. Provide training in minimum two hour segments.
- D. Training schedule will be subject to availability of SLC Mosquito Abatement District's personnel to be trained; re-schedule training sessions as required by SLC Mosquito Abatement District; once schedule has been approved by SLC Mosquito Abatement District failure to conduct sessions according to schedule will be cause for SLC Mosquito Abatement District to charge Contractor for personnel "show-up" time.
- E. Review of Facility Policy on Operation and Maintenance Data: During training discuss:
 1. The location of the O&M manuals and procedures for use and preservation; backup copies.
 2. Typical contents and organization of all manuals, including explanatory information, system narratives, and product specific information.
 3. Typical uses of the O&M manuals.
- F. Product- and System-Specific Training:
 1. Review the applicable O&M manuals.
 2. For systems, provide an overview of system operation, design parameters and constraints, and operational strategies.
 3. Review instructions for proper operation in all modes, including start-up, shut-down, seasonal changeover and emergency procedures, and for maintenance, including preventative maintenance.
 4. Provide hands-on training on all operational modes possible and preventive maintenance.
 5. Emphasize safe and proper operating requirements; discuss relevant health and safety issues and emergency procedures.
 6. Discuss common troubleshooting problems and solutions.
 7. Discuss any peculiarities of equipment installation or operation.
 8. Discuss warranties and guarantees, including procedures necessary to avoid voiding coverage.
 9. Review recommended tools and spare parts inventory suggestions of manufacturers.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

10. Review spare parts and tools required to be furnished by Contractor.
 11. Review spare parts suppliers and sources and procurement procedures.
- G. Be prepared to answer questions raised by training attendees; if unable to answer during training session, provide written response within three days.

END OF SECTION 01 79 00

SECTION 03 24 00

MACRO FILAMENT SYNTHETIC FIBER REINFORCEMENT

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Polypropylene/polyethylene macro-monofilament fibers used as concrete secondary reinforcement.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 03 20 00 – Concrete Reinforcement.
- B. Section 03 30 00 – Cast In Place Concrete
- C. Section 32 13 13 – Concrete Paving

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. ASTM C 1116 - Standard Specification for Fiber-Reinforced Concrete and Shotcrete.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Comply with Section 01 33 00 Submittal Procedures.
- B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product data, including application rate and mixing instructions.
- C. Samples: Submit manufacturer's sample of synthetic fiber reinforcement.
- D. Manufacturer's Certification:
 - 1. Submit manufacturer's certification that synthetic fiber reinforcement complies with specified requirements.
 - 2. Submit evidence of satisfactory performance history of synthetic fiber reinforcement.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer's Qualifications: Must provide satisfactory performance history of specified synthetic fiber reinforcement.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery: Deliver synthetic fiber reinforcement in manufacturer's original, unopened, undamaged containers and packaging, with labels clearly identifying product name, unique identification number, code approvals, directions for use, manufacturer, and weight of fibers.
- B. Storage:
 - 1. Store synthetic fiber reinforcement in clean, dry, cool area indoors in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
 - 2. Do not store synthetic fiber reinforcement in direct sunlight.
 - 3. Keep packaging sealed until ready for use.
- C. Handling: Protect synthetic fiber reinforcement during handling to prevent contamination.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURER

- A. Propex Operating Company, LLC. PO Box 22788, Chattanooga, Tennessee 37422
Toll Free 800-621-1273. Website www.fibermesh.com. E-mail fibermesh@propexglobal.com or
engineer approved equal.

2.2 SYNTHETIC FIBER REINFORCEMENT

- A. Synthetic Fiber Reinforcement:
 - 1. Material: Polypropylene/polyethylene macro-monofilament fibers.
 - 2. Conformance: ASTM C 1116, Type III.
 - 3. Fiber Length: 2.0 inches (50 mm).
 - 4. Alkali Resistance: Alkali proof.
 - 5. Absorption: Nil.
 - 6. Specific Gravity: 0.91.
 - 7. Melt Point: 328 degrees F (164 degrees C).

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 MIXING

- A. Add synthetic fiber reinforcement to concrete mixture in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Add synthetic fiber reinforcement into concrete mixer after batching other concrete materials.
- C. Application Rate: Add synthetic fiber reinforcement at application rate of 5 pounds per cubic yard of concrete.
- D. Mix concrete after application of synthetic fiber reinforcement for sufficient time, with minimum of 5 minutes, to ensure uniform distribution of fibers throughout concrete.

3.2 PLACING AND FINISHING

- A. Placing and finishing concrete shall be as specified in Section 03 30 00.
- B. Place Macro Mesh in all exterior concrete pads subject to vehicular traffic including drive approaches.
- C. Place Micro Mesh in all exterior concrete not subject to vehicular traffic and curb and gutter.

END OF SECTION 03 24 00

SECTION 03 24 01

MICRO SYNTHETIC FIBER REINFORCEMENT

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Polypropylene fibers used as concrete secondary reinforcement.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 03 20 00 – Concrete Reinforcement.
- B. Section 03 30 00 – Cast In Place Concrete.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. ASTM C 94 - Standard Specification for Ready-Mixed Concrete.
- B. ASTM C 1116 - Standard Specification for Fiber-Reinforced Concrete and Shotcrete.
- C. Southwest Certification Services (SWCS), Omega Point Laboratories No. 8662-1.
- D. UL Report File No. R8534-11.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Comply with Section 01 33 00 - Submittal Procedures.
- B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product data, including application rate and mixing instructions.
- C. Samples: Submit manufacturer's sample of synthetic fiber reinforcement.
- D. Manufacturer's Certification:
 - 1. Submit manufacturer's certification that synthetic fiber reinforcement complies with specified requirements.
 - 2. Submit evidence of manufacturer's ISO 9001:2000 certification.
 - 3. Submit evidence of satisfactory performance history of synthetic fiber reinforcement.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer's Qualifications:
 - 1. Synthetic fiber reinforcement manufactured in ISO 9001:2000 certified facility.
 - 2. Minimum 10-year satisfactory performance history of specified synthetic fiber reinforcement.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery: Deliver synthetic fiber reinforcement in manufacturer's original, unopened, undamaged containers and packaging, with labels clearly identifying product name, unique identification number, code approvals, directions for use, manufacturer, and weight of fibers.
- B. Storage:
 - 1. Store synthetic fiber reinforcement in clean, dry area indoors in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
 - 2. Keep packaging sealed until ready for use.

- C. Handling: Protect synthetic fiber reinforcement during handling to prevent contamination.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURER

- A. Propex Operating Company, LLC. PO Box 22788, Chattanooga, Tennessee 37422. Toll Free 800-621-1273. Website www.fibermesh.com. E-mail fibermesh@propexglobal.com. Or engineer approved equal.

2.2 SYNTHETIC FIBER REINFORCEMENT

- A. Synthetic Fiber Reinforcement: Fibermesh.
 1. Material: 100 percent virgin homopolymer polypropylene fibrillated fibers, containing no reprocessed olefin materials.
 2. Conformance: ASTM C 1116, Type III.
 3. Fire Classifications:
 - a. UL Report File No. R8534-11.
 - b. Southwest Certification Services (SWCS), Omega Point Laboratories No. 8662-1.
 4. Fiber Length: [Graded] [Single-cut lengths].
 5. Alkali Resistance: Alkali proof.
 6. Absorption: Nil.
 7. Specific Gravity: 0.91.
 8. Melt Point: 324 degrees F (162 degrees C).

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 MIXING

- A. Add synthetic fiber reinforcement to concrete mixture in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Add synthetic fiber reinforcement into concrete mixer before, during, or after batching other concrete materials.
- C. Application Rate: Add synthetic fiber reinforcement at minimum application rate of 1.5 pounds per cubic yard of concrete.
- D. Mix synthetic fiber reinforcement in concrete mixer in accordance with mixing time and speed of ASTM C 94 to ensure uniform distribution and random orientation of fibers throughout concrete.

3.2 PLACING AND FINISHING

- A. Placing and finishing concrete shall be as specified in Section 03 30 00.
- B. Place micro mesh in all exterior concrete not subject to vehicular traffic and in curb and gutter.
- C. Place macro mesh in all exterior concrete pads subject to vehicular traffic.

END OF SECTION 03 24 01

**SECTION 03 25 10
EXPANSION, CONSTRUCTION, AND CONTROL JOINTS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Materials
- B. Preformed expansion joint material
- C. Bond breaker
- D. Preformed control joint
- E. Pourable joint fillers
- F. Steel expansion joint dowels
- G. Accessories

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 01 30 00 – “Submittal Procedure”
- B. Section 03 20 00 – “Concrete Reinforcement”
- C. Section 03 30 00 – “Cast-in-Place Concrete”
- D. Section 03 60 00 – “Grout”
- E. Section 07 90 00 – “Sealants”

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
 - 1. A 36 – Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel
 - 2. C 203 - Test Methods for Breaking Load and Flexural Properties of Block-Type Thermal Insulation.
 - 3. D 226 – Standard Specification for Asphalt-Saturated Organic Felt Used in Roofing and Waterproofing
 - 4. D 227 – Standard Specification for Coal-Tar-Saturated Organic Felt Used in Roofing and Waterproofing
 - 5. D 570 - Test Method for Water Absorption of Plastics.
 - 6. D 624 - Test Method for Tear Strength of Conventional Vulcanized Rubber and Thermoplastic Elastomers.
 - 7. D 638 - Test Method for Tensile Properties of Plastics.
 - 8. D 746 - Test Method for Brittleness Temperature of Plastics and Elastomers by Impact.
 - 9. D 747 - Test Method for Apparent Bending Modulus of Plastics by Means of a Cantilever Beam.
 - 10. D 792 - Test Methods for Density and Specific Gravity (Relative Density) of Plastics by Displacement.
 - 11. D 1751 – Standard Specification for Preformed Expansion Joint Filler for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction (Nonextruding and Resilient Bituminous Types)
 - 12. D 1752 – Standard Specification for Preformed Sponge Rubber and Cork Expansion Joint Fillers for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction
 - 13. 2240 - Test Method for Rubber Property—Durometer Hardness.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of Section 01 30 00- “Submittal Procedure.”
- B. Product Data:

1. Preformed Expansion Joint Material: Submit sufficient information on each type of material for review to determine conformance of material to requirements specified.

C. Quality Control Submittals:

1. Manufacturer's Instructions: Submit instructions for materials specified in this Section that are specified to be installed with such instructions.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery: Deliver materials to site in manufacturer's original, unopened containers and packaging, with labels clearly identifying product name and manufacturer.
- B. Storage: Store materials in clean, dry area in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Handling: Protect materials from damage during handling and installation in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Expanded Polystyrene Joint Filler:
 1. Type: Commercially available polystyrene board, having following minimum characteristics:
 - a. Flexural Strength, Minimum: 35 pounds per square inch in accordance with ASTM C 203.
 - b. Compressive Yield Strength: Between 16 and 40 pounds per square inch, at 5 percent compression.
- B. Hardboard: 1/8 inch minimum thickness, conforming to FS LLL-B-810, any type.

2.2 WATERSTOPS

- A. Manufacturers: One of the following or equivalent:
 1. Vinylex Corp., Knoxville, TN; Catalog No. 03250/VIN: No. R4-316 (4-inch by 3/16-inch) No. R6-38 (6-inch by 3/8-inch), and No. RB9-38H (9-inch by 3/8-inch).
 2. Greenstreak Plastic Products, St. Louis, MO; Style 679 (6-inch by 3/8-inch), and Style 735 (9-inch by 3/8-inch).
 3. Durajoint, Garrettsville, OH; Type 2 (4-inch by 3/16-inch), Type 11 (6-inch by 3/8-inch), and Type 10 (3/8-inch by 9-inch)
- B. Polyvinyl Chloride Waterstops:
 1. Material and Type: Provide polyvinyl chloride waterstops. Split type waterstops will not be allowed.
 2. Unless otherwise specified or indicated on the Drawings, provide following types:
 - a. 6 inch flat ribbed with hollow center bulb in construction and contraction joints.
 - b. 9 inch wide ribbed with hollow center bulb in expansion joints.
 3. Type: Flat or center bulb with a number of parallel ribs or protrusions on each side of strip center.
 4. Corrugated or tapered type waterstops are not acceptable.
 5. Thickness: Constant from bulb edge to the outside stop edge.
 6. Minimum Weight per Foot of Waterstop:
 - a. 0.39 pound for 3/16-inch by 4-inch.
 - b. 1.46 pounds for 3/8-inch by 6-inch.
 - c. 2.34 pounds for 3/8-inch by 9-inch.

7. Provide polyvinyl chloride waterstops complying with U.S. ACOE CRD-C-572 and the following requirements:

Physical Characteristics	Test Method	Required Results
Specific Gravity	ASTM D 792	Not less than 1.3
Hardness	ASTM D 2240	70 to 90 Type A Shore durometer
Tensile Strength	ASTM D 638	Not less than 2,000 pounds per square inch
Ultimate Elongation	ASTM D 638	Not less than 350 percent
Alkali Extraction	CRD-C-572	7 day weight change between minus 0.1 percent and plus 0.25 percent
Low Temperature Brittle Point	ASTM D 746	Not more than minus 35 degrees Fahrenheit
Water Absorption	ASTM D 570	Not more than 0.15 percent after 24 hours
Accelerated Extraction Tensile	CRD-C-572	Not less than 2,000 pounds per square inch
Stiffness in Flexure	ASTM D 747	Not less than 750 pounds per square inch
Tear Resistance	ASTM D 624	Not less than 300 pounds per inch

2.3 PREFORMED EXPANSION JOINT MATERIAL

- A. Material: Synthetic sponge rubber or bituminous fiber types.
- B. Use specific type in applications as indicated on the Drawings.
- C. Sponge Rubber Type: Meet ASTM D 1752
- D. Bituminous Fiber Type: Meet ASTM D 1751

2.4 BOND BREAKER

- A. Tape for Expansion Joints: Adhesive-backed glazed butyl ethylene or polyethylene tape, same width as the joint that will adhere to the premolded joint material or concrete surface.
- B. Use either bond breaker tape or a bond prevention material as specified in Section 03 30 00 – “Cast-in-Place Concrete,” except where a tape is specifically called for.

2.5 PREFORMED CONTROL JOINT

- A. One-Piece, Flexible, Polyvinyl Chloride Joint Former:
 - 1. Manufacturer and Product: Vinylex Corp., Knoxville, TN; Kold-Seal Zip-Per Strip KSF-150-50-50.
- B. One-Piece Steel Strip with Preformed Groove:
 - 1. Manufacturer and Product: Burke Concrete Accessories, Inc., San Mateo, CA; Keyed Kold Retained Kap.
- C. Furnish in full-length, unspliced pieces.

2.6 POURABLE JOINT FILLERS

- A. Filler for Nonpotable Water Structure:
 - 1. Specific Gravity: Greater than 1.0 for cured, in-place filler.
 - 2. Sloped Joints: Furnish Gun Grade material that will remain as placed in joints and will not run down slope.
 - 3. Manufacturers and Products:
 - a. W.R. Meadows, Inc., Elgin, IL: No. 164 Polymeric sealing compound, hot-pour, or Hi-Spec Polymeric joint sealing, hot-pour compound; or
 - b. A.C. Horn, Inc., North Bergen, NJ: No-Track two-component material (Code 2323), cold applied, self-leveling filler; or

- c. W.R. Meadows, Elgin, IL: Gardox, two-component, cold-applied compound filler.

2.7 ACCESSORIES

- A. Joint Sealants: As specified in Section 07 90 00 – “Sealants.”
- B. Non-shrink Grout:
 1. As specified in Section 03 60 00 – “Grout.”
 2. Compatible with joint sealant.
- C. Roofing Felt: ASTM D226, Type II, 30-pound asphalt-saturated or equal weight of ASTM D227 coal-tar saturated felt.
- D. Reinforcing Steel: As specified in Section 03 20 00 – “Concrete Reinforcement.”
- E. Nails: As required for securing bituminous type premolded joint filler.
- F. Masking Tape: As required to temporarily adhere to concrete at each side of joint to receive filler.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

- A. Construct straight joints; make vertical or horizontal, except where walls intersect sloping floors.
- B. Commence concrete placement after the joint preparation is complete.
- C. Time Between Concrete Pours: 10 days or as otherwise specified in Section 03 30 00 – “Cast-in-Place Concrete.”

3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. Construction Joints: Prior to placement of abutting concrete, clean contact surface:
 1. Remove laitance and spillage from reinforcing steel and dowels.
 2. Roughen surface to minimum of ¼-inch amplitude:
 - a. Sandblasts after the concrete has fully cured.
 - b. Water blast after the concrete has partially cured.
 - c. Green cut fresh concrete with high pressure water and hand tools.
- B. Expansion Joint with Pourable Filler:
 1. Use motorized wire brush or other motorized device to mechanically roughen and thoroughly clean concrete surfaces on each side of joint to the top of the joint.
 2. Use clean and dry high pressure air to remove dust and foreign material, and dry joint.
 3. Prime surfaces before placing joint filler.
- C. Expansion Joint without Pourable Filler:
 1. Coat concrete surfaces above and below joint with bond breaker.
- D. Control Joint:
 1. Coat concrete surfaces above and below joint with bond breaker.
 2. Furnish correct type and size of reinforcing and dowels.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF WATERSTOPS

- A. Waterstops, General:
1. Install PVC waterstops in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
 2. Install waterstops in concrete joints where indicated on the Drawings.
 3. Carry waterstops in walls into lower slabs and join to waterstops in slabs to provide a continuous seal.
 4. In Waterbearing Structures: Provide all joints with waterstops, whether indicated on the Drawings or not.
 5. Provide waterstops that are continuous.
 6. Set waterstops accurately to position and line as indicated on the Drawings. Center waterstop on joint unless dimensioned otherwise.
 7. Hold and securely fix edges in position at intervals of not more than 12 inches so that they do not move during placing of concrete.
 8. Do not drive nails, screws, or other fasteners through waterstops in vicinity of construction joints.
 9. Use wires at not more than 12 inches on centers near outer bulbs to tie waterstops into position.
 10. Special clips may be used in lieu of wires, at CONTRACTOR's option.
 11. Terminate waterstops 3 inches from top of finished surfaces of walls and slabs unless otherwise specified or indicated on the Drawings.
 12. Vibrate concrete thoroughly around waterstops to prevent honeycombs and to ensure complete contact between waterstop and concrete.
 13. Polyvinyl Chloride Waterstops:
 - a. Install waterstops so that joints are watertight.
 - b. For joints such as unions, crosses, elbows, and tees, field weld with thermostatically controlled equipment recommended by waterstop manufacturer.
 - c. Split type waterstop will not be permitted except where specifically indicated on the Drawings.
 14. Correct Unacceptable Waterstop Splicing Defects including:
 - a. Tensile strength less than 80 percent of parent section.
 - b. Free lap joints.
 - c. Misalignment of center bulb, ribs, and end bulbs greater than 1/16 inch.
 - d. Misalignment which reduces waterstop cross section more than 15 percent.
 - e. Bond failure at joint deeper than 1/16 inch or 15 percent of waterstop material thickness.
 - f. Misalignment of waterstop splice resulting in misalignment of waterstops greater than 1/2 inch in 10 feet.
 - g. Visible porosity in splice.
 - h. Charred or burnt waterstops.
 - i. Bubbles or inadequate bonding.
 - j. Visible signs of splice separation when cooled splice is bent at sharp angle by hand.
 15. Inspection: Notify ENGINEER for field approval of waterstop installation before placement of concrete.
 16. Protect installed waterstops from damage until completely encased in concrete.
 17. Repair or replace damaged waterstop.
 18. Joints in Footings and Slabs:
 - a. Ensure that space beneath plastic waterstop is completely filled with concrete.
 - b. During concrete placement, make a visual inspection of the entire waterstop area.
 - c. Limit concrete placement to elevation of waterstop in first pass, vibrate the concrete under the waterstop, lift the waterstop to confirm full consolidation without voids, then place remaining concrete to full height of slab.
 - d. Apply procedure to full length of plastic waterstops.

3.4 EXPANSION JOINT INSTALLATION

- A. General:
1. Pre-molded Joint Filler:
 - a. Sufficient in width to completely fill the joint space where shown.

2. Precut pre-molded joint filler to the required depth at locations where joint filler or sealant is to be applied.
 3. Form cavities for joint filler with either precut, premolded joint filler, or smooth removable accurately shaped material.
 4. Vibrate concrete thoroughly along the joint form to produce a dense, smooth surface.
- B. Bituminous Type Premolded Joint Filler:
1. Drive nails approximately 1-foot 6 inches on center through the filler, prior to installing, to provide anchorage embedment into the concrete during concrete placement.
 2. Secure pre-molded joint filler in forms before concrete is placed.
 3. Install filler in walkways, at changes in direction, at intersections, at each side of driveway entrances, and at 45-foot intervals, maximum.
- C. Pourable Joint Filler:
1. General: Install in accordance with the manufacturer's written instructions, except as specified below:
 - a. Apply primer prior to pouring joint filler.
 - b. Use masking tape on top of slabs at sides of joints; clean spillage. Remove masking tape afterwards.
 2. Rubber Asphalt Type, Hot-Applied:
 - a. Heat filler material in a double-walled boiler.
 - b. Place filler in the joint by means of a nozzle from a portable pouring type container to prevent spillage outside of the joint.
 - c. Begin pouring joint filler at the bottom of the horizontal joint and proceed upwards in a manner that will preclude the possibility of trapping air in the joint.
 3. Rubber Asphalt Type, Cold-Applied: Place cold-applied, two-component fillers in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Steel Expansion Joint Dowels:
1. Install coated and lubricated bars parallel to wall or slab surface and in true horizontal position perpendicular to the joint in both plan and section view, so as to permit joint to expand or contract without bending the dowels.
 2. Secure dowels tightly in forms with rigid ties.
 3. Install reinforcing steel in the concrete as shown to protect the concrete on each side of the dowels and to resist any forces created by joint movement.

3.5 CONTROL JOINT INSTALLATION

- A. Locate reinforcing and dowels as shown.
- B. Concrete surfaces shall be dense and smooth.
- C. Install bond breaker to concrete surfaces.

3.6 PREFORMED CONTROL JOINTS

- A. Use only where specifically shown; do not use in water-holding basins.
- B. Locate flush or slightly below the top of slab.
- C. Install in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions in straight, full-length un-spliced pieces.
- D. Steel Strip Type with Preformed Groove: Brace to withstand pressure of concrete during and after placement.

END OF SECTION 03 25 010

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

7. Discuss any peculiarities of equipment installation or operation.
 8. Discuss warranties and guarantees, including procedures necessary to avoid voiding coverage.
 9. Review recommended tools and spare parts inventory suggestions of manufacturers.
 10. Review spare parts and tools required to be furnished by Contractor.
 11. Review spare parts suppliers and sources and procurement procedures.
- G. Be prepared to answer questions raised by training attendees; if unable to answer during training session, provide written response within three days.

END OF SECTION 01 79 00

SECTION 03 30 00
CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Concrete formwork.
- B. Floors and slabs on grade.
- C. Concrete foundation walls.
- D. Concrete reinforcement.
- E. Miscellaneous concrete elements, including equipment pads, light pole bases, and flagpole bases.
- F. Concrete curing.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 03 35 11 - Concrete Floor Finishes: Densifiers, hardeners, applied coatings, and polishing.
- B. Section 07 92 00 - Joint Sealants: Products and installation for sealants for saw cut joints and isolation joints in slabs.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ACI 117 - Standard Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials; 2010.
- B. ACI 211.1 - Standard Practice for Selecting Proportions for Normal, Heavyweight, and Mass Concrete; 1991 (Reapproved 2009).
- C. ACI 301 - Specifications for Structural Concrete; 2016.
- D. ACI 302.1R - Guide for Concrete Floor and Slab Construction; 2004 (Errata 2007).
- E. ACI 304R - Guide for Measuring, Mixing, Transporting, and Placing Concrete; 2000.
- F. ACI 305R - Guide to Hot Weather Concreting; 2010.
- G. ACI 306R - Cold Weather Concreting; 2010.
- H. ACI 308R - Guide to Curing Concrete; 2001 (Reapproved 2008).
- I. ACI 318 - Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete and Commentary; 2014 (Errata 2016).
- J. ACI 347R - Guide to Formwork for Concrete; 2014.
- K. ASTM A615/A615M - Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Carbon-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement; 2016.
- L. ASTM A1064/A1064M - Standard Specification for Carbon-Steel Wire and Welded Wire Reinforcement, Plain and Deformed, for Concrete; 2017.
- M. ASTM C618 - Standard Specification for Coal Fly Ash and Raw or Calcined Natural Pozzolan for Use in Concrete; 2015.
- N. ASTM C1116/C1116M - Standard Specification for Fiber-Reinforced Concrete; 2010a (Reapproved 2015).

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Submit manufacturers' data on manufactured products showing compliance with specified requirements and installation instructions.
- C. Mix Design: Submit proposed concrete mix design.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

1. Indicate proposed mix design complies with requirements of ACI 301, Section 4 - Concrete Mixtures.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Perform work of this section in accordance with ACI 301 and ACI 318.
- B. Follow recommendations of ACI 305R when concreting during hot weather.
- C. Follow recommendations of ACI 306R when concreting during cold weather.

1.06 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 FORMWORK

- A. Formwork Design and Construction: Comply with guidelines of ACI 347R to provide formwork that will produce concrete complying with tolerances of ACI 117.
- B. Form Materials: Contractor's choice of standard products with sufficient strength to withstand hydrostatic head without distortion in excess of permitted tolerances.
 1. Earth Cuts: Do not use earth cuts as forms for vertical surfaces. Natural rock formations that maintain a stable vertical edge may be used as side forms.
 2. Form Coating: Release agent that will not adversely affect concrete or interfere with application of coatings.
 3. Form Ties: Cone snap type that will leave no metal within 1-1/2 inches of concrete surface.

2.02 REINFORCEMENT

- A. Reinforcing Steel: ASTM A615/A615M, Grade 60 (60,000 psi).
 1. See Structural notes on drawings.
- B. Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement (WWR): Galvanized, plain type, ASTM A1064/A1064M.
 1. See Structural Notes on drawings.

2.03 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. See Structural Notes on drawings.
- B. Fine and Coarse Aggregates: See Structural Notes on drawings..
- C. Fly Ash: ASTM C618, See Structural Notes on drawings..
- D. Structural Fiber Reinforcement: ASTM C1116/C1116M. See Structural Notes on drawings.

2.04 ADMIXTURES

- A. See Structural Notes on drawings.
- B. Do not use chemicals that will result in soluble chloride ions in excess of 0.1 percent by weight of cement.

2.05 CURING MATERIALS

- A. See Structural Notes on drawings.

2.06 CONCRETE MIX DESIGN

- A. See Structural Notes on drawings.
- B. Admixtures: Add acceptable admixtures as recommended in ACI 211.1 and at rates recommended or required by manufacturer.
- C. Fiber Reinforcement: Add to mix at rate of 1.5 pounds per cubic yard, or as recommended by manufacturer for specific project conditions.
- D. Normal Weight Concrete:
 1. See Structural Notes on drawings.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify lines, levels, and dimensions before proceeding with work of this section.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Formwork: Comply with requirements of ACI 301. Design and fabricate forms to support all applied loads until concrete is cured, and for easy removal without damage to concrete.
- B. Verify that forms are clean and free of rust before applying release agent.
- C. Coordinate placement of embedded items with erection of concrete formwork and placement of form accessories.
- D. Interior Slabs on Grade: Install vapor retarder under interior slabs on grade. Lap joints minimum 6 inches. Seal joints, seams and penetrations watertight with manufacturer's recommended products and follow manufacturer's written instructions. Repair damaged vapor retarder before covering.

3.03 INSTALLING REINFORCEMENT AND OTHER EMBEDDED ITEMS

- A. Comply with requirements of ACI 301. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, and accurately position, support, and secure in place to achieve not less than minimum concrete coverage required for protection.
- B. Install welded wire reinforcement in maximum possible lengths, and offset end laps in both directions. Splice laps with tie wire.

3.04 PLACING CONCRETE

- A. Place concrete in accordance with ACI 304R.
- B. Place concrete for floor slabs in accordance with ACI 302.1R.
- C. Finish floors level and flat, unless otherwise indicated, within the tolerances specified below.

3.05 SLAB JOINTING

- A. Locate joints as indicated on the drawings.
- B. Anchor joint fillers and devices to prevent movement during concrete placement.
- C. Isolation Joints: Use preformed joint filler with removable top section for joint sealant, total height equal to thickness of slab, set flush with top of slab.
- D. Saw Cut Contraction Joints: Saw cut joints before concrete begins to cool, within 4 to 12 hours after placing; use 3/16 inch thick blade and cut at least 1 inch deep but not less than one quarter (1/4) the depth of the slab. See Structural Notes on drawings.

3.06 FLOOR FLATNESS AND LEVELNESS TOLERANCES

- A. Correct defects by grinding or by removal and replacement of the defective work. Areas requiring corrective work will be identified. Re-measure corrected areas by the same process.

3.07 CONCRETE FINISHING

- A. Concrete Slabs: Finish to requirements of ACI 302.1R, and as follows:
 - 1. Surfaces to Receive Thick Floor Coverings: "Wood float" as described in ACI 302.1R; thick floor coverings include quarry tile, ceramic tile, and Portland cement terrazzo with full bed setting system.
 - 2. Surfaces to Receive Thin Floor Coverings: "Steel trowel" as described in ACI 302.1R; thin floor coverings include carpeting, resilient flooring, seamless flooring, resinous matrix terrazzo, thin set quarry tile, and thin set ceramic tile.
 - 3. Decorative Exposed Surfaces: Trowel as described in ACI 302.1R; use steel-reinforced plastic trowel blades instead of steel blades to avoid black-burnish marks; decorative exposed surfaces include surfaces to be stained or dyed, surfaces to receive liquid hardeners, surfaces to receive dry-shake hardeners, and surfaces to be polished.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

4. Other Surfaces to Be Left Exposed: Trowel as described in ACI 302.1R, minimizing burnish marks and other appearance defects.

3.08 CURING AND PROTECTION

- A. Comply with requirements of ACI 308R. Immediately after placement, protect concrete from premature drying, excessively hot or cold temperatures, and mechanical injury.
- B. Maintain concrete with minimal moisture loss at relatively constant temperature for period necessary for hydration of cement and hardening of concrete.
- C. Surfaces Not in Contact with Forms:
 1. Initial Curing: Start as soon as free water has disappeared and before surface is dry. Keep continuously moist for not less than three days by water ponding, water-saturated sand, water-fog spray, or saturated burlap.
 2. Final Curing: Begin after initial curing but before surface is dry.

3.09 DEFECTIVE CONCRETE

- A. Repair or replacement of defective concrete will be determined by the Architect. The cost of additional testing shall be borne by Contractor when defective concrete is identified.

3.10 PROTECTION

- A. Do not permit traffic over unprotected concrete floor surface until fully cured.

END OF SECTION 03 30 00

**SECTION 03 70 00
PRECAST CONCRETE VAULTS, MANHOLES, AND BOXES**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Manufacturers
- B. General
- C. Materials
- D. Quality assurance
- E. Installation

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 03 20 00 – “Concrete Reinforcement”

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. ASTM A 48 – Gray Iron Castings
- B. ASTM C 150 – Portland Cement
- C. ASTM C 478 – Specification for Precast Reinforced Concrete Manhole Section
- D. ASTM C 858 – Underground Precast Concrete Utility Structures
- E. ASTM C 990 – Joints for Concrete Pipe, Manholes and Precast Box Sections using Preformed Flexible Joint Sealants

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: CONTRACTOR shall furnish complete Shop Drawings for precast manhole sections, precast catch basins, grates, cast iron frames and covers, and appurtenances in accordance with Section 01 30 00 – “Submittal Procedure.”

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. The products covered by this Specification are intended to be standard products manufactured by reputable manufacturers having experience in the production of such products. The products furnished shall be designed, constructed, and installed in accordance with the best practices and methods. All products in this section shall be provided by the same manufacturer. Acceptable manufacturers are:
 - 1. AMCOR Inc.
 - 2. WR White Company
 - 3. Geneva Pipe Company
 - 4. Other approved manufacture approved prior to the bid.

2.2 GENERAL

- A. Design loads shall consist of dead load, live load, impact load, and loads due to water table and any other loads which may be imposed upon the structure. Live loads shall be for HS-20 per AASHTO standard specifications for highway bridges. Design wheel load shall be 16 kips. The live load shall be that which produces the maximum shears and bending moments in the structure.
- B. Minimum wall thickness shall be 8-inches unless noted otherwise.
- C. Openings or knockouts in precast concrete vaults shall be located as shown on the drawings and shall be sufficiently sized to permit passage of the largest dimension of pipe and/or flange.

2.3 MATERIALS

- A. Manholes: Manholes shall be constructed of precast concrete manhole sections as indicated with a minimum 4500 psi concrete and grade 60 reinforcing steel. Precast concrete sections shall be manufactured by a process that will produce a dense, homogeneous concrete ring of first quality and shall conform to the requirements as specified in ASTM C 478. The rings shall have a minimum wall thickness of 4 inches if steel-reinforced and 6 inches if not reinforced. Cement used in manufacturing shall be Type II Portland cement in accordance with ASTM C 150. Manhole sections shall be provided with plastic-encapsulated steel or fiber glass reinforced plastic steps cast in place, with maximum spacing of 12 inches. Joint sealants shall comply with ASTM C 990. No mortar or concrete coatings, fillings or packing shall be placed prior to water tightness test.
- B. Catch Basins: Precast catch basins shall be constructed with minimum 4500 psi concrete and grade 60 reinforcing steel. All catch basins shall be designed to comply with ASTM C 858 for AASHTO HS-20 loading.
- C. Castings
 - 1. Castings for manhole frames and covers shall be non-rocking and shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A 48, Class 30. Unless otherwise indicated, cast iron covers and frames shall be heavy traffic type, 30 inches in diameter, with embossed lettering. Frames, grates, and covers shall be designed for HS-20 traffic loading. Grates for catch basins shall be hot dip galvanized. Castings shall be as manufactured by D&L Supply, Neenah Foundry, or equal.
- D. Vault Access Doors: Access doors shall be fabricated aluminum, 4-feet wide by 4-feet long, unless otherwise shown. Access doors shall mount flush with the surrounding area, and all doors located within roadways shall be H-20 rated traffic doors. Doors shall be as specified in Section 05 53 00 – “Gratings, Access Hatches, and Access Doors.”

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Inspection: After installation, CONTRACTOR shall demonstrate that all manholes or catch basins have been properly installed, level, with tight joints, at the correct elevations and orientations, and that the backfilling has been carried out in accordance with the Contract Documents.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Precast concrete manholes or catch basins shall be installed in strict conformance with the manufacturer's written instruction, on a well compacted foundation as indicated in Section 31 22 00 – “Earthwork.”
- B. Upon completion of installation, all voids or openings in the vault walls around pipes shall be filled with 4,500 psi non-shrink grout.
- C. All joints between precast concrete vault sections shall be made watertight. The plastic joint sealing compound shall be installed according to the manufacturer's recommendations to provide a watertight joint which remains impermeable throughout the design life of the structure. The outside of the entire structure shall be coated with an approved waterproofing material.
- D. Access doors shall be built up such that the hatch is flush with the surrounding surface unless otherwise specified or shown. CONTRACTOR is responsible for placing the cover at the proper elevation where paving is to be installed and shall make all necessary adjustments so that the cover meets these requirements.

END OF SECTION 30 70 00

SECTION 03 93 60

WATER LEAKAGE TESTS FOR CONCRETE STRUCTURES

A. Water leakage test

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Section 01 91 00 – “Commissioning”

B. Section 03 30 00 – “Cast-in-Place Concrete”

1.3 REFERENCES

A. ACI 350.1-01 – Tightness Testing of Environmental Engineering Concrete Structures.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Shop Drawings:

1. Method of Calculating Water Loss and Adjustments for precipitation, evaporation, and temperature.
2. Measuring Equipment & Methods
3. Leak repair methods.

1.5 TEST REQUIREMENTS

A. Meet the requirements of ACI 350.1-01 for Hydrostatic Tests HST-VIO and HST-075.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS - NOT USED

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 WATER LEAKAGE TEST

A. Before Testing Water Holding Structures For Leakage:

1. Ensure the structure is complete with all attached equipment, walkways, stairways, or other structural elements. Do not perform testing on a partially complete structure.
2. Backfill excavations to the top of the structure foundations or floor slab. Do not place backfill against the vault walls.
3. Cure concrete and obtain the specified concrete compressive strength.
4. Clean the exposed concrete surfaces of the vault per ACI 350.1-01.
5. Inspect all openings, fittings and pipe penetrations in the vault shell at both faces.
6. Repair any defective or cracked concrete.
7. Do not apply facing or other materials that will cover concrete surfaces until after testing the water holding structures for leakage is complete.

B. Test Preparation

1. Securely seal all vault penetrations and outlets to prevent loss of water from the vault during the test. If certain equipment cannot be made watertight, measure leakage through the equipment by means acceptable to ENGINEER. Do not base leakage rate upon manufacturer’s estimates.
2. Provide a positive means to ensure that water does not enter or leave the vault through the inlet pipe if the inlet pipe is to be used to fill the vault for the test.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

3. Bring the groundwater elevation to a level below the top of the base slab and ensure that it is kept at that elevation or lower during the duration of testing if groundwater is encountered at the vault.
 4. Fill the vault with water at a maximum rate of 4 feet per hour. Fill the vault to the design maximum water elevation or 4 inches below any fixed overflow elevation, whichever is lower. Verify the fill elevation with ENGINEER prior to filling.
- C. Perform HST-VIO test:
1. Observe the exterior surfaces of the vault during filling and for 24 hours after the vault is filled to the test level. No flow or seepage of water from the vault shall be present on the exterior surfaces during the 24-hour period.
 2. When Leaks or Damps Spots appear on exposed surfaces:
 - a. Mark defects or cracks where water leakage is observed.
 - b. Drain vault after 24 hours of being full.
 - c. Repair any defects or cracks where water leakage is observed by epoxy injection on both interior and exterior of structure.
 - d. Repeat HST-VIO test in its entirety and repair any defects or cracks until no leakage or damp spots appear.
- D. Perform HST-075 test after a successful HST-VIO test:
1. Maintain the water at the test level for 72 hours prior to the HST-075 test to allow for water absorption, structural deflections, and temperature stabilization.
 2. Do not schedule test for periods when the forecast predicts any substantial change in the weather patterns.
 3. Do not schedule test for periods when the forecast predicts temperatures that will cause the water surface to be frozen.
 4. Restart the testing if a substantial change in weather occurs, freezing of the water surface elevation occurs, if water surface elevations are not recorded at the required time and interval, or if ENGINEER determines that other factors have nullified the accuracy of the test.
 5. Measure the water surface elevation from fixed points on the vault above the water surface. Record vault measurements at the start of the test and at 24-hour intervals. Take vault measurements at the same time of day at a minimum of two (2) locations, 180 degrees apart. Use a sharp pointed hook gauge and a fixed metal measure capable of reading to 1/100 of an inch. All measurements shall be visually verified by ENGINEER.
 6. Provide a floating, restrained, transparent, partially filled, calibrated, open top container for evaporation and precipitation measurements. Do not use a shallow pan type device. Record the initial water level in the container at the start of the test and at 24 hour intervals. Record container measurements immediately after the vault measurements. All measurements shall be visually verified by ENGINEER.
 7. Continue the test for a duration sufficient to cause a 3/8 inch loss in the water surface elevation assuming the loss of water is at the maximum specified volume loss rate of 0.075% per day.
 8. Calculate the daily loss of water in the vault and adjust for evaporation, precipitation, and temperature. Calculations shall be reviewed and approved by ENGINEER.
 9. The following constitute a failed test:
 - a. Loss of water exceeding 0.075% of the water volume per day during any 24-hour period of the test.
 - b. Flow or seepage of water from the exterior surface.
 - c. Moisture can be transferred from the exterior surface to a dry hand.
 10. CONTRACTOR shall be permitted to immediately retest a vault failing the test when no visible leakage is exhibited. If the vault fails the second test or if CONTRACTOR does not exercise the option of immediately retesting after the first test failure, the interior of the vault shall be inspected to determine probable areas of leakage. Retest the vault only after probable areas of leakage are repaired.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

11. Repair areas of leakage:
 - a. Determine cause of volume loss.
 - b. Drain vault of water.
 - c. Repair defects causing loss of water volume.
 - d. Refill and repeat the HST-075 test in its entirety. Retest the vault until it meets the test requirements. Repair probable areas of leakage prior to each retest.

END OF SECTION 03 93 60

THIS PAGE LEFT INTENTIONALLY BLANK

SECTION 05 12 00
STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Structural steel framing members and as noted on the Structural Drawings.
- B. Structural steel support members and struts.
- C. Base plates, shear stud connectors and expansion joint plates.
- D. Grouting under base plates.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AISC (MAN) - Steel Construction Manual; 2011.
- B. AISC 303 - Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges; 2016.
- C. ASTM A36/A36M - Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel; 2014.
- D. ASTM A108 - Standard Specification for Steel Bar, Carbon and Alloy, Cold Finished; 2013.
- E. ASTM A307 - Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts, Studs, and Threaded Rod 60 000 PSI Tensile Strength; 2014.
- F. ASTM A500/A500M - Standard Specification for Cold-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing in Rounds and Shapes; 2013.
- G. ASTM A563 - Standard Specification for Carbon and Alloy Steel Nuts; 2015.
- H. ASTM A563M - Standard Specification for Carbon and Alloy Steel Nuts (Metric); 2007 (Reapproved 2013).
- I. ASTM A992/A992M - Standard Specification for Structural Steel Shapes; 2011 (Reapproved 2015).
- J. ASTM A1011/A1011M - Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet and Strip, Hot-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, and Ultra-High Strength; 2015.
- K. ASTM E94 - Standard Guide for Radiographic Examination; 2004 (Reapproved 2010).
- L. ASTM E164 - Standard Practice for Contact Ultrasonic Testing of Weldments; 2013.
- M. ASTM E165/E165M - Standard Test Method for Liquid Penetrant Examination for General Industry; 2012.
- N. ASTM E709 - Standard Guide for Magnetic Particle Testing; 2015.
- O. ASTM F3125/F3125M - Standard Specification for High Strength Structural Bolts, Steel and Alloy Steel, Heat Treated, 120 ksi (830 MPa) and 150 ksi (1040 MPa) Minimum Tensile Strength, Inch and Metric Dimensions; 2015a.
- P. ASTM F436/F436M - Standard Specification for Hardened Steel Washers Inch and Metric Dimensions; 2016.
- Q. ASTM F1554 - Standard Specification for Anchor Bolts, Steel, 36, 55, and 105-ksi Yield Strength; 2015.
- R. AWS A2.4 - Standard Symbols for Welding, Brazing, and Nondestructive Examination; 2012.
- S. AWS D1.1/D1.1M - Structural Welding Code - Steel; 2015 (with March 2016 Errata).
- T. RCSC (HSBOLT) - Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts; Research Council on Structural Connections; 2014, with April 2015 Errata.
- U. SSPC-SP 3 - Power Tool Cleaning; 1982 (Ed. 2004).
- V. UL (FRD) - Fire Resistance Directory; current edition.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Indicate profiles, sizes, spacing, locations of structural members, openings, attachments, and fasteners.
 - 2. Connections not detailed.
 - 3. Indicate welded connections with AWS A2.4 welding symbols. Indicate net weld lengths.
- C. Manufacturer's Mill Certificate: Certify that products meet or exceed specified requirements.
- D. Fabricator Test Reports: Comply with ASTM A1011/A1011M.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricate structural steel members in accordance with AISC (MAN) "Steel Construction Manual."

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to UL (FRD) Assembly Design No. ____.

2.02 MATERIALS

- A. Steel Angles and Plates: ASTM A36/A36M.
- B. Steel W Shapes and Tees: ASTM A992/A992M.
- C. Rolled Steel Structural Shapes: ASTM A992/A992M.
- D. Cold-Formed Structural Tubing: ASTM A500/A500M, Grade B.
- E. Shear Stud Connectors: Made from ASTM A108 Grade 1015 bars.
- F. Structural Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, ASTM A307 and A325, Grade A.
- G. High-Strength Structural Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM F3125/F3125M, Type 1, with matching compatible ASTM A563 or ASTM A563M nuts and ASTM F436/F436M washers.
- H. Unheaded Anchor Rods: ASTM F1554, Grade 36, plain, with matching ASTM A563 or ASTM A563M nuts and ASTM F436/F436M Type 1 washers.
- I. Welding Materials: AWS D1.1/D1.1M; type required for materials being welded.
- J. Grout: ASTM C1107/C1107M; Non-shrink; premixed compound consisting of non-metallic aggregate, cement, water reducing and plasticizing agents.
 - 1. Minimum Compressive Strength at 48 Hours: 2,000 pounds per square inch.
 - 2. Minimum Compressive Strength at 28 Days: 7,000 pounds per square inch.

2.03 FABRICATION

- A. Shop fabricate to greatest extent possible.
- B. Space shear stud connectors at as noted on the Structural Drawings inches on center.
- C. Continuously seal joined members by continuous welds. Grind exposed welds smooth.
- D. Fabricate connections for bolt, nut, and washer connectors.
- E. Develop required camber for members.

2.04 FINISH

- A. Prepare structural component surfaces in accordance with SSPC-SP 3.

2.05 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Provide testing and verification of shop-bolted connections in accordance with RCSC (HSBOLT) "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts", testing at least ____ percent of bolts at each connection.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- B. Welded Connections: Visually inspect all shop-welded connections and test at least ____ percent of welds using one of the following:

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that conditions are appropriate for erection of structural steel and that the work may properly proceed.

3.02 ERECTION

- A. Erect structural steel in compliance with AISC 303.
- B. Allow for erection loads, and provide sufficient temporary bracing to maintain structure in safe condition, plumb, and in true alignment until completion of erection and installation of permanent bracing.
- C. Field weld components and shear studs indicated on shop drawings.
- D. Use carbon steel bolts only for temporary bracing during construction, unless otherwise specifically permitted on drawings. Install high-strength bolts in accordance with RCSC (HSBOLT) "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts".
- E. Do not field cut or alter structural members without approval of Architect.
- F. After erection, prime welds, abrasions, and surfaces not shop primed, except surfaces to be in contact with concrete.
- G. Grout solidly between column plates and bearing surfaces, complying with manufacturer's instructions for nonshrink grout. Trowel grouted surfaces smooth, splaying neatly to 45 degrees.

3.03 TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum Variation From Plumb: 1/4 inch per story, non-cumulative.
- B. Maximum Offset From True Alignment: 1/4 inch.

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. An independent testing agency will perform field quality control tests, as specified in Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements.
- B. High-Strength Bolts: Provide testing and verification of field-bolted connections in accordance with RCSC (HSBOLT) "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts", testing at least ____ percent of bolts at each connection.
- C. Welded Connections: Visually inspect all field-welded connections and test at least ____ percent of welds using one of the following:
 1. Radiographic testing performed in accordance with ASTM E94.
 2. Ultrasonic testing performed in accordance with ASTM E164.
 3. Liquid penetrant inspection performed in accordance with ASTM E165/E165M.
 4. Magnetic particle inspection performed in accordance with ASTM E709.

END OF SECTION 05 12 00

SECTION 05 21 00
STEEL JOIST FRAMING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Open web steel joists and shear stud connectors, with bridging, attached seats and anchors.
- B. Loose bearing members, such as plates or angles, and anchor bolts for site placement.
- C. Supplementary framing for floor and roof openings greater than 12 inches.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM A36/A36M - Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel; 2014.
- B. AWS B2.1/B2.1M - Specification for Welding Procedure and Performance Qualification; 2014.
- C. AWS D1.1/D1.1M - Structural Welding Code - Steel; 2015 (with March 2016 Errata).
- D. IAS AC172 - Accreditation Criteria for Fabricator Inspection Programs for Structural Steel; International Accreditation Service, Inc; 2015.
- E. SJI (SPEC) - Catalog of Standard Specifications Load Tables and Weight Tables for Steel Joists and Joist Girders; 2011.
- F. SJI Technical Digest No. 9 - Handling and Erection of Steel Joists and Joist Girders; 2008.
- G. SSPC-Paint 15 - Steel Joist Shop Primer/Metal Building Primer; 1999 (Ed. 2004).
- H. SSPC-SP 2 - Hand Tool Cleaning; 1982 (Ed. 2004).

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate standard designations, joist coding, configurations, sizes, spacings, cambers, locations of joists, joist leg extensions, bridging, connections, and attachments.
- C. Welders' Certificates: Submit manufacturer's certificates, certifying welders employed on the Work, verifying AWS qualification within the previous 12 months.
- D. Manufacturer's Qualification Statement: Provide documentation showing steel fabricator is accredited under IAS AC172.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Design connections not detailed on the drawings under direct supervision of a Professional Structural Engineer experienced in design of this work and licensed in the State in which the Project is located.
- B. Perform Work, including that for headers and other supplementary framing, in accordance with SJI (SPEC) Standard Specifications Load Tables and SJI Technical Digest No. 9.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

- A. Open Web Joists: SJI Type K Joists:
 - 1. Provide bottom and top chord extensions as indicated.
 - 2. Minimum End Bearing on Steel Supports: Comply with referenced SJI standard.
 - 3. Minimum End Bearing on Concrete or Masonry Supports: Comply with referenced SJI standard.
 - 4. Finish: Shop primed.
- B. Open Web Joists: SJI (SPEC) Type LH Joists:
 - 1. Provide bottom and top chord extensions as indicated.
 - 2. Minimum End Bearing on Steel Supports: Comply with referenced SJI standards.
 - 3. Finish: Shop primed.
- C. Open Web Joists: SJI (SPEC) Joist Girders:

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

1. Provide bottom and top chord extensions as indicated.
 2. Minimum End Bearing on Steel Supports: Comply with referenced SJI standards.
 3. Finish: Shop primed.
- D. Shear Stud Connectors: as noted on the Structural Drawings.
- E. Structural Steel For Supplementary Framing and Joist Leg Extensions: ASTM A36/A36M.
- F. Welding Materials: AWS D1.1/D1.1M; type required for materials being welded.
- G. Shop and Touch-Up Primer: SSPC-Paint 15, complying with VOC limitations of authorities having jurisdiction.

2.02 FABRICATION

- A. Frame special sized openings in joist web framing as detailed.

2.03 FINISH

- A. Shop prime joists as specified.
- B. Prepare surfaces to be finished in accordance with SSPC-SP 2.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify existing conditions prior to beginning work.

3.02 ERECTION

- A. Erect joists with correct bearing on supports.
- B. Allow for erection loads. Provide sufficient temporary bracing to maintain framing safe, plumb, and in true alignment.
- C. Coordinate the placement of anchors for securing loose bearing members furnished as part of the work of this section.
- D. After joist alignment and installation of framing, field weld joist seats to steel bearing surfaces.
- E. Install supplementary framing for floor and roof openings greater than 12 inches.
- F. Do not permit erection of decking until joists are braced, bridged, and secured or until completion of erection and installation of permanent bridging and bracing.
- G. Do not field cut or alter structural members without approval of joist manufacturer.
- H. After erection, prime welds, damaged shop primer, damaged galvanizing, and surfaces not shop primed, except surfaces specified not to be primed.

3.03 TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum Variation From Plumb: 1/4 inch.
- B. Maximum Offset From True Alignment: 1/4 inch.

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. An independent testing agency will perform field quality control tests, as specified in Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements.
- B. as noted on the Structural Drawings.

END OF SECTION 05 21 00

SECTION 05 31 00

STEEL DECKING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Roof deck.
- B. Composite floor deck.
- C. Bearing plates and angles.
- D. Stud shear connectors.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 05 12 00 - Structural Steel Framing: Support framing for openings larger than 12 inches and shear stud connectors.
- B. Section 05 21 00 - Steel Joist Framing: Support framing for openings larger than 12 inches.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM A36/A36M - Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel; 2014.
- B. ASTM A510/A510M - Standard Specification for General Requirements for Wire Rods and Coarse Round Wire, Carbon Steel, and Alloy Steel; 2013.
- C. ASTM A653/A653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process; 2015.
- D. ASTM A1008/A1008M - Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Cold-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, Solution Hardened, and Bake Hardenable; 2016.
- E. ASTM B633 - Standard Specification for Electrodeposited Coatings of Zinc on Iron and Steel; 2015.
- F. AWS D1.1/D1.1M - Structural Welding Code - Steel; 2015 (with March 2016 Errata).
- G. AWS D1.3/D1.3M - Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel; 2008.
- H. IAS AC172 - Accreditation Criteria for Fabricator Inspection Programs for Structural Steel; International Accreditation Service, Inc; 2015.
- I. ICC-ES AC43 - Acceptance Criteria for Steel Deck Roof and Floor Systems; ICC Evaluation Service, Inc; 2010 (R2013).
- J. ICC-ES AC70 - Acceptance Criteria for Fasteners Power Driven into Concrete, Steel and Masonry Elements; ICC Evaluation Service, Inc; 2013.
- K. SDI (DM) - Publication No.30, Design Manual for Composite Decks, Form Decks, and Roof Decks; 2007.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittals procedures.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate deck plan, support locations, projections, openings, reinforcement, pertinent details, and accessories.
- C. Product Data: Provide deck profile characteristics, dimensions, structural properties, and finishes.
- D. Certificates: Certify that products furnished meet or exceed specified requirements.
- E. Submit manufacturer's installation instructions.
- F. Welders Certificates: Certify welders employed on the Work, verifying AWS qualification within the previous 12 months.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Design deck layout, spans, fastening, and joints under direct supervision of a Professional Structural Engineer experienced in design of this work and licensed in the State in which the Project is located.
- B. Fabricator Qualifications: A qualified steel fabricator that is accredited by the International Accreditation Service (IAS) Fabricator Inspection Program for Structural Steel in accordance with IAS AC172.
- C. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the work of this Section with minimum 3 years of experience.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Cut plastic wrap to encourage ventilation.
- B. Separate sheets and store deck on dry wood sleepers; slope for positive drainage.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 STEEL DECK

- A. See Structural Notes on drawings.
- B. All Deck Types: Select and design metal deck in accordance with SDI Design Manual.
 - 1. Calculate to structural working stress design and structural properties specified.
 - 2. Maximum Vertical Deflection of Floor Deck: 1/360 of span.
 - 3. Maximum Vertical Deflection of Roof Deck: 1/240 of span.
 - 4. Maximum Vertical Deflection of Form Deck: 1/360 of span.
 - 5. Maximum Lateral Deflection of Diaphragms: 1/500 of the height of the wall.
- C. Roof Deck: Non-composite type, fluted steel sheet:
 - 1. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, Structural Steel (SS) Grade 33/230, with G90/Z275 galvanized coating.
 - 2. Primer: Shop coat of manufacturer's standard primer paint over cleaned and phosphatized substrate.
 - 3. Structural Properties:
 - a. See Structural Notes on drawings.
- D. Composite Floor Deck: Fluted steel sheet embossed to interlock with concrete:
 - 1. Ungalvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A1008/A1008M, Designation SS, Grade 33, Type 1.
 - 2. Structural Properties:
 - a. See Structural Notes on drawings.

2.02 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Bearing Plates and Angles: ASTM A36/A36M steel, galvanized per ASTM A123/A123M.
- B. Stud Shear Connectors: Made from ASTM A108 Grade 1015 bars.
- C. Welding Materials: AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- D. Fasteners: Galvanized hardened steel, self tapping.
- E. Powder Actuated Mechanical Fasteners: Steel; with knurled shank and forged ballistic point. Comply with applicable requirements of ICC-ES AC70.
 - 1. Design Requirements: Provide number and type of fasteners that comply with the applicable requirements of SDI (DM) design method for roof deck and floor deck applications and ICC-ES AC43.
 - 2. Material: Steel; ASTM A510/A510M, Grade 1077.
 - a. Hardness: Rockwell C 54.5, minimum.
 - b. Tensile Strength: 285 kips per square inch, minimum.
 - c. Shear Strength: 175 kips per square inch, minimum.
 - d. Washers:
 - 1) Steel Bar Joist Framing Applications: 0.472 inch diameter, minimum.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- 2) Exposed Roof Deck Applications: 0.591 inch diameter, minimum.
- e. Corrosion Resistance:
 - 1) Steel Bar Joist Framing Applications: ASTM B633, SC1, Type III zinc electroplate..
 - 2) Exposed Roof Deck Applications: Provide manufacturer's standard stainless steel sealing caps with bonded neoprene washer over each fastener.
- F. Mechanical Fasteners: Steel; hex washer head, self-drilling, self-tapping.
 - 1. Design Requirements for Sidelap Connections: Provide number and type of fasteners that comply with the applicable requirements of SDI (DM)SDI design method for roof deck and floor deck applications and ICC-ES AC43 and wind uplift resistance.
 - 2. Fasteners for Steel Roof Decks Protected with Waterproofing Membrane: ASTM B633, SC1, Type III zinc electroplate.
- G. Weld Washers: Mild steel, uncoated, 3/4 inch outside diameter, 1/8 inch thick.
- H. Flute Closures: Closed cell foam rubber, 1 inch thick; profiled to fit tight to the deck.

2.03 FABRICATED DECK ACCESSORIES

- A. Sheet Metal Deck Accessories: Metal closure strips, wet concrete stops, and cover plates, 22 gage, 0.0299 inch thick sheet steel; of profile and size as indicated; finished same as deck.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify existing conditions prior to beginning work.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Erect metal deck in accordance with SDI Design Manual and manufacturer's instructions. Align and level.
- B. On concrete and masonry surfaces provide minimum 4 inch bearing.
- C. On steel supports provide minimum 1-1/2 inch or 2 inch bearing.
- D. Fasten deck to steel support members at ends and intermediate supports, See Structural Notes on drawings.
- E. Drive mechanical sidelap connectors completely through adjacent lapped sheets; positively engage adjacent sheets with minimum three-thread penetration.
- F. Weld deck in accordance with AWS D1.3/D1.3M.
- G. At deck openings from 6 inches to 12 inches in size, provide reinforcement per the structural drawings. inch steel angle reinforcement. _____
- H. At deck openings greater than []2 inches in size, provide steel angle reinforcement. as specified in Section 05 12 00.
- I. Where deck (other than cellular deck electrical raceway) changes direction, install 6 inch minimum wide sheet steel cover plates, of same thickness as deck. Fusion weld 12 inches on center maximum.
- J. Close openings above walls and partitions perpendicular to deck flutes with single row of foam cell closures.
- K. Weld stud shear connectors through steel deck to structural members below.
- L. Immediately after welding deck and other metal components in position, coat welds, burned areas, and damaged surface coating, with touch-up primer.

END OF SECTION 05 31 00

SECTION 05 40 00
COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Formed steel stud exterior wall and interior wall framing.
- B. Exterior wall sheathing.
- C. Formed steel joist and purlin framing and bridging.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AISI S100-12 - North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members; American Iron and Steel Institute; 2012.
- B. ASTM A153/A153M - Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware; 2016a.
- C. ASTM A653/A653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process; 2015.
- D. ASTM A1008/A1008M - Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Cold-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, Solution Hardened, and Bake Hardenable; 2016.
- E. ASTM C955 - Standard Specification for Load-Bearing (Transverse and Axial) Steel Studs, Runners (Tracks), and Bracing or Bridging for Screw Application of Gypsum Panel Products and Metal Plaster Bases; 2015.
- F. ASTM C1007 - Standard Specification for Installation of Load Bearing (Transverse and Axial) Steel Studs and Related Accessories; 2011a (Reapproved 2015).
- G. SSPC-Paint 15 - Steel Joist Shop Primer/Metal Building Primer; 1999 (Ed. 2004).
- H. SSPC-Paint 20 - Zinc-Rich Primers (Type I, "Inorganic," and Type II, "Organic"); 2002 (Ed. 2004).

1.03 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate with work of other sections that is to be installed in or adjacent to the metal framing system, including but not limited to structural anchors, cladding anchors, utilities, insulation, and firestopping.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data on standard framing members; describe materials and finish, product criteria, limitations and _____.
- C. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's data on factory-made framing connectors, showing compliance with requirements.
- D. Shop Drawings: Indicate component details, framed openings, bearing, anchorage, loading, welds, and type and location of fasteners, and accessories or items required of related work.
 - 1. Indicate stud layout.
 - 2. Describe method for securing studs to tracks and for bolted or welded framing connections.
 - 3. Provide design engineer's stamp on shop drawings.
- E. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special procedures, conditions requiring special attention, and _____.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Designer Qualifications: Design framing system under direct supervision of a Professional Structural Engineer experienced in design of this Work and licensed in the State in which the Project is located.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the types of products specified in this section, and with minimum three years of documented experience.
- C. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the work of this section with minimum three years documented experience and approved by manufacturer.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 FRAMING SYSTEM

- A. Provide primary and secondary framing members, bridging, bracing, plates, gussets, clips, fittings, reinforcement, and fastenings as required to provide a complete framing system.
- B. Design Criteria: Provide completed framing system having the following characteristics:
 - 1. Design: Calculate structural characteristics of cold-formed steel framing members according to AISI S100-12.
 - 2. Structural Performance: Design, engineer, fabricate, and erect to withstand specified design loads for project conditions within required limits.
 - 3. Design Loads: In accordance with applicable codes. As noted on the Structural Drawings
 - 4. Live load deflection meeting the following, unless otherwise indicated:
 - a. Floors: Maximum vertical deflection under live load of 1/480 of span.
 - b. Roofs: Maximum vertical deflection under live load of 1/360 of span.
 - c. Exterior Walls: Maximum horizontal deflection under wind load of 1/240 of span.
 - d. Design non-axial loadbearing framing to accommodate not less than 1/2 in vertical deflection.
 - 5. Able to tolerate movement of components without damage, failure of joint seals, undue stress on fasteners, or other detrimental effects when subject to seasonal or cyclic day/night temperature ranges.
 - 6. Able to accommodate construction tolerances, deflection of building structural members, and clearances of intended openings.
- C. Shop fabricate framing system to the greatest extent possible.
- D. Deliver to site in largest practical sections.

2.02 FRAMING MATERIALS

- A. Studs and Track: ASTM C955; studs formed to channel, "C", or "Sigma" shape with punched web; U-shaped track in matching nominal width and compatible height.
 - 1. Galvanized in accordance with ASTM A653/A653M, G90/Z275 coating.
- B. Joists and Purlins: Fabricated from ASTM A1008/A1008M, Designation SS (structural steel) sheet, shop painted.
 - 1. Finish: Manufacturer's standard, rust-inhibitive paint.
- C. Framing Connectors: Factory-made, formed steel sheet.
 - 1. Material: ASTM A653/A653M SS Grade 33 (minimum), with G90/Z275 hot dipped galvanized coating for base metal thickness less than 10 gage, 0.1345 inch, and factory punched holes and slots.
 - 2. Structural Performance: Maintain load and movement capacity required by applicable code, when evaluated in accordance with AISI S100-12.
 - 3. Movement Connections: Provide mechanical anchorage devices that accommodate movement using slotted holes, shouldered screws and anti-friction or stepped bushings, while maintaining structural performance of framing. Provide movement connections where indicated on drawings.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- a. Where continuous studs bypass elevated floor slab, connect stud to slab in manner allowing vertical and horizontal movement of slab without affecting studs; allow for minimum movement of 1/2 inch.
 - b. Where top of stud wall terminates below structural floor or roof, connect studs to structure in manner allowing vertical movement of slab without affecting studs; allow for minimum movement of 1/2 inch.
 - c. Provide top track preassembled with connection devices spaced to fit stud spacing indicated on drawings; minimum track length of 10 feet.
4. Fixed Connections: Provide non-movement connections for tie-down to foundation, floor-to-floor tie-down, roof-to-wall tie-down, joist hangers, gusset plates, and stiffeners.
 5. Wall Stud Bridging Connections: Provide mechanical load-transferring devices that accommodate wind load torsion and weak axis buckling induced by axial compression loads. Provide bridging connections where indicated on the drawings.

2.03 ACCESSORIES

- A. Bracing, Furring, Bridging: Formed sheet steel, thickness determined for conditions encountered; finish to match framing components.
- B. Plates, Gussets, Clips: Sheet Steel, thickness determined for conditions encountered; finish to match framing components.
- C. Shop and Touch-Up Primer: SSPC-Paint 15, complying with VOC limitations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Touch-Up Primer for Galvanized Surfaces: SSPC-Paint 20, Type I - Inorganic, complying with VOC limitations of authorities having jurisdiction.

2.04 FASTENERS

- A. Self-Drilling, Self-Tapping Screws, Bolts, Nuts and Washers: Hot dip galvanized per ASTM A153/A153M.
- B. Anchorage Devices: Powder actuated.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that substrate surfaces are ready to receive work.
- B. Verify field measurements and adjust installation as required.

3.02 INSTALLATION OF STUDS

- A. Install components in accordance with manufacturers' instructions and ASTM C1007 requirements.
- B. Place studs at as noted on the Structural Drawings inches on center; not more than 2 inches from abutting walls and at each side of openings. Connect studs to tracks using clip and tie method.
- C. Construct corners using minimum of three studs. Install double studs at wall openings, door and window jambs.
- D. Install load bearing studs full length in one piece. Splicing of studs is not permitted.
- E. Install load bearing studs, brace, and reinforce to develop full strength and achieve design requirements.
- F. Coordinate placement of insulation in multiple stud spaces made inaccessible after erection.
- G. Install intermediate studs above and below openings to align with wall stud spacing.
- H. Provide deflection allowance in stud track, directly below horizontal building framing at non-load bearing framing.
- I. Attach cross studs to studs for attachment of fixtures anchored to walls.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- J. Install framing between studs for attachment of mechanical and electrical items, and to prevent stud rotation.
- K. Touch-up field welds and damaged galvanized surfaces with primer.

3.03 INSTALLATION OF JOISTS AND PURLINS

- A. Install framing components in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Make provisions for erection stresses. Provide temporary alignment and bracing.
- C. Place: as noted on the Structural Drawings.
- D. Set floor and ceiling joists parallel and level, with lateral bracing and bridging.
- E. Locate joist end bearing directly over load bearing studs or provide load distributing member to top of stud track.
- F. Provide web stiffeners at reaction points.
- G. Touch-up field welds and damaged primed surfaces with primer.

END OF SECTION 05 40 00

SECTION 05 51 00

METAL STAIRS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Stairs with grating treads.
- B. Structural steel stair framing and supports.
- C. Handrails and guards.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM A36/A36M - Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel; 2014.
- B. ASTM A53/A53M - Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless; 2012.
- C. ASTM A500/A500M - Standard Specification for Cold-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing in Rounds and Shapes; 2013.
- D. ASTM A501/A501M - Standard Specification for Hot-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing; 2014.
- E. AWS D1.1/D1.1M - Structural Welding Code - Steel; 2015 (with March 2016 Errata).
- F. NAAMM AMP 510 - Metal Stairs Manual; 1992, Fifth Edition.
- G. NAAMM MBG 531 - Metal Bar Grating Manual; 2009.
- H. NAAMM MBG 532 - Heavy Duty Metal Bar Grating Manual; 2009.
- I. SSPC-SP 2 - Hand Tool Cleaning; 1982 (Ed. 2004).

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate profiles, sizes, connection attachments, reinforcing, anchorage, size and type of fasteners, and accessories.
 - 1. Include the design engineer's stamp or seal on each sheet of shop drawings.
- C. Delegated Design Data: As required by authorities having jurisdiction.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural Designer Qualifications: Professional Structural Engineer experienced in design of this work and licensed in the State in which the Project is located, or personnel under direct supervision of such an engineer.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 METAL STAIRS - GENERAL

- A. Metal Stairs: Provide stairs of the design specified, complete with landing platforms, vertical and horizontal supports, railings, and guards, fabricated accurately for anchorage to each other and to building structure.
 - 1. Regulatory Requirements: Provide stairs and railings complying with the most stringent requirements of local, state, and federal regulations; where requirements of the contract documents exceed those of regulations, comply with the contract documents.
 - 2. Structural Design: Provide complete stair and railing assemblies complying with the applicable local code.
 - 3. Dimensions: As indicated on drawings.
 - 4. Shop assemble components; disassemble into largest practical sections suitable for transport and access to site.
 - 5. No sharp or rough areas on exposed travel surfaces and surfaces accessible to touch.
 - 6. Separate dissimilar metals using paint or permanent tape.
- B. Metal Jointing and Finish Quality Levels:

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

1. Industrial: All joints made neatly.
 - a. Welded Joints: Welded on back side wherever possible.
 - b. Welds Exposed to Touch: Ground smooth.
 - c. Bolts Exposed to Touch in Travel Area: No nuts or screw threads exposed to touch.
- C. Fasteners: Same material or compatible with materials being fastened; type consistent with design and specified quality level.
- D. Anchors and Related Components: Same material and finish as item to be anchored, except where specifically indicated otherwise; provide all anchors and fasteners required.

2.02 METAL STAIRS WITH GRATING TREADS

- A. Jointing and Finish Quality Level: Industrial, as defined above.
- B. Risers: Open.
- C. Treads: Steel bar grating.
 1. Grating Type: Welded.
 2. Bearing Bar Depth: 3/4 inch, minimum.
 3. Top Surface: Standard.
 4. Nosing: Checkered plate.
 5. Nosing Width: 1-1/4 inch, minimum.
 6. Anchorage to Stringers: End plates welded to grating, bolted to stringers.
- D. Stringers: Rolled steel channels.
 1. Stringer Depth: 10 inches.
 2. End Closure: Sheet steel of same thickness as risers welded across ends.
- E. Railings: Steel pipe railings.
- F. Finish: Shop- or factory-prime painted.

2.03 HANDRAILS AND GUARDS

- A. Rails: Round pipe or tube rails unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Outside Diameter: 1-1/4 inch, minimum, to 1-1/2 inches, maximum.
- B. Guards:
 1. Top Rails: Round pipe or tube rails unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Outside Diameter: 1-1/4 inch, minimum, to 1-1/2 inches, maximum.
 2. Infill at Pipe Railings: Pipe or tube rails sloped parallel to stair.
 - a. Outside Diameter: 1 inch.
 - b. Material: Steel pipe or tube, round.
 - c. Vertical Spacing: Maximum 4 inches on center.
 - d. Jointing: Welded and ground smooth and flush.
 3. End and Intermediate Posts: Same material and size as top rails.
 - a. Horizontal Spacing: As indicated on drawings.
 - b. Mounting: Welded to top surface of stringer.

2.04 MATERIALS

- A. Steel Sections: ASTM A36/A36M.
- B. Steel Tubing: ASTM A500/A500M or ASTM A501/A501M structural tubing, round and shapes as indicated.
- C. Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, Grade B Schedule 40, black finish.
- D. Gratings: Bar gratings complying with NAAMM MBG 531 or NAAMM MBG 532, whichever applies based on bar sizes.

2.05 SHOP FINISHING

- A. Clean surfaces of rust, scale, grease, and foreign matter prior to finishing.
- B. Do not prime surfaces in direct contact with concrete or where field welding is required.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- C. Prime Painting: Use specified shop- and touch-up primer.
 - 1. Preparation of Steel: In accordance with SSPC-SP 2, Hand Tool Cleaning.
 - 2. Number of Coats: One.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field conditions are acceptable and are ready to receive work.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install components plumb and level, accurately fitted, free from distortion or defects.
- B. Allow for erection loads, and for sufficient temporary bracing to maintain true alignment until completion of erection and installation of permanent attachments.
- C. Provide welded field joints where specifically indicated on drawings. Perform field welding in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- D. Other field joints may be either welded or bolted provided the result complies with the limitations specified for jointing quality levels.
- E. Obtain approval prior to site cutting or creating adjustments not scheduled.
- F. After erection, prime welds, abrasions, and surfaces not shop primed or galvanized, except surfaces to be in contact with concrete.

3.03 TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum Variation From Plumb: 1/4 inch per story, non-cumulative.
- B. Maximum Offset From True Alignment: 1/4 inch.

END OF SECTION 05 51 00

SECTION 05 53 05
GRATINGS AND FLOOR PLATES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Formed metal floor gratings at drains.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM B211 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Rolled or Cold Finished Bar, Rod, and Wire; 2012.
- B. ASTM B211M - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Rolled or Cold-Finished Bar, Rod, and Wire (Metric); 2012.
- C. NAAMM MBG 531 - Metal Bar Grating Manual; 2009.
- D. SSPC-Paint 15 - Steel Joist Shop Primer/Metal Building Primer; 1999 (Ed. 2004).
- E. SSPC-SP 2 - Hand Tool Cleaning; 1982 (Ed. 2004).

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide span and deflection tables.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate details of component supports, openings, perimeter construction details, and tolerances.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to applicable code for loading requirements.
- B. Maximum Allowable Deflection Under Live Load: 1/240 of span; size components by single support design.

2.02 MATERIALS

- A. Cross Bars: ASTM B211 (ASTM B211M) solid bars.
- B. Shop and Touch-Up Primer: SSPC-Paint 15, complying with VOC limitations of authorities having jurisdiction.

2.03 FABRICATION

- A. Grating Type: NAAMM MBG 531, Welded Type.

2.04 FINISHES

- A. Prepare surfaces to be primed in accordance with SSPC-SP 2.
- B. Clean surfaces of rust, scale, grease, and foreign matter prior to finishing.
- C. Prime paint items with one coat.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that opening sizes and dimensional tolerances are acceptable.
- B. Verify that supports are correctly positioned.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Place frames in correct position, plumb and level.
- B. Mechanically cut galvanized finish surfaces. Do not flame cut.
- C. Set perimeter closure flush with top of grating and surrounding construction.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

D. Secure to prevent movement.

END OF SECTION 05 53 05

**SECTION 06 20 00
FINISH CARPENTRY**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Finish carpentry items.
- B. Hardware and attachment accessories.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) - Architectural Woodwork Standards; 2014.
- B. AWMAC/WI (NAAWS) - North American Architectural Woodwork Standards, U.S. Version 3.0; 2016.
- C. AWPA U1 - Use Category System: User Specification for Treated Wood; 2017.
- D. BHMA A156.9 - American National Standard for Cabinet Hardware; 2015.
- E. NHLA G-101 - Rules for the Measurement & Inspection of Hardwood & Cypress; 2011.
- F. WDMA I.S. 4 - Industry Specification for Preservative Treatment for Millwork; 2013.

1.03 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate the work with plumbing rough-in, electrical rough-in, installation of associated and adjacent components, and _____.
- B. Sequence installation to ensure utility connections are achieved in an orderly and expeditious manner.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate materials, component profiles, fastening methods, jointing details, and accessories.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Company specializing in fabricating the products specified in this section with minimum five years of documented experience.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect work from moisture damage.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 FINISH CARPENTRY ITEMS

- A. Woodwork Items:
 - 1. Bench Seats: "PT" preservative treated.

2.02 WOOD-BASED COMPONENTS

- A. Wood fabricated from old growth timber is not permitted.

2.03 LUMBER MATERIALS

- A. Hardwood Lumber: _____ species, _____ sawn, maximum moisture content of 6 percent; with flat grain, of quality suitable for transparent finish.
 - 1. Grading: In accordance with NHLA G-101 Grading Rules; www.natlhardwood.org.

2.04 FASTENINGS

- A. Fasteners: Of size and type to suit application; _____ finish in concealed locations and _____ finish in exposed locations.

2.05 ACCESSORIES

- A. Primer: Alkyd primer sealer.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- B. Steel post supports. _____

2.06 HARDWARE

- A. Hardware: Comply with BHMA A156.9.

2.07 WOOD TREATMENT

- A. Factory-Treated Lumber: Comply with requirements of AWPA U1 - Use Category System for pressure impregnated wood treatments determined by use categories, expected service conditions, and specific applications.
- B. Water Repellent Preservative Treatment by Dipping Method: WDMA I.S. 4, with 0.25 percent retainage.

2.08 FABRICATION

- A. Shop assemble work for delivery to site, permitting passage through building openings.
- B. When necessary to cut and fit on site, provide materials with ample allowance for cutting. Provide trim for scribing and site cutting.

2.09 SHOP FINISHING

- A. Sand work smooth and set exposed nails and screws.
- B. Finish work in accordance with AWI/AWMA/WI (AWS) or AWMA/WI (NAAWS), Section 5 - Finishing for grade specified and as follows:
 - 1. Transparent:
 - a. System - 1, Lacquer, Nitrocellulose.
 - b. Stain: As selected by Architect.
 - c. Sheen: Satin.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify adequacy of backing and support framing.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Set and secure materials and components in place, plumb and level.
- B. Carefully scribe work abutting other components, with maximum gaps of 1/32 inch. Do not use additional overlay trim to conceal larger gaps.

3.03 TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum Variation from True Position: 1/16 inch.
- B. Maximum Offset from True Alignment with Abutting Materials: 1/32 inch.

END OF SECTION 06 20 00

SECTION 06 41 00
ARCHITECTURAL WOOD CASEWORK

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Specially fabricated cabinet units.
- B. Countertops.
- C. Cabinet hardware.
- D. Factory finishing.
- E. Preparation for installing utilities.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 12 36 00 - Countertops.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) - Architectural Woodwork Standards; 2014.
- B. AWI (QCP) - Quality Certification Program; current edition at www.awiqcp.org.
- C. AWMAC/WI (NAAWS) - North American Architectural Woodwork Standards, U.S. Version 3.0; 2016.
- D. BHMA A156.9 - American National Standard for Cabinet Hardware; 2015.
- E. NEMA LD 3 - High-Pressure Decorative Laminates; 2005.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate materials, component profiles, fastening methods, jointing details, and accessories.
- C. Product Data: Provide data for hardware accessories.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Company specializing in fabricating the products specified in this section with minimum five years of documented experience.
 - 1. Accredited participant in the specified certification program prior to the commencement of fabrication and throughout the duration of the project.
- B. Quality Certification:
 - 1. Comply with AWI (QCP) woodwork association quality certification service/program in accordance with requirements for work specified in this section.
 - 2. Provide certificates indicating that the installed work complies with AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) or AWMAC/WI (NAAWS) requirements for grade or grades specified.
 - 3. Submit certifications upon completion of installation that verifies this work is in compliance with specified requirements.
 - 4. Replace, repair, or rework all work for which certification is refused.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect units from moisture damage.

1.07 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. During and after installation of custom cabinets, maintain temperature and humidity conditions in building spaces at same levels planned for occupancy.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 CABINETS

- A. Quality Standard: Custom Grade, in accordance with AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) or AWMAC/WI (NAAWS), unless noted otherwise.
- B. Plastic Laminate Faced Cabinets: Custom grade.
- C. Breakroom Cabinets: Plastic laminate faced, Custom grade.
- D. Cabinets:
 - 1. Finish - Exposed Exterior Surfaces: Decorative laminate.
 - 2. Finish - Exposed Interior Surfaces: Decorative laminate.
 - 3. Finish - Semi-Exposed Surfaces: Decorative laminate
 - 4. Finish - Concealed Surfaces: Melamine.
 - 5. Door and Drawer Front Edge Profiles: Square edge with thin applied band.
 - 6. Adjustable Shelf Loading: 50 lbs. per sq. ft.
 - 7. Cabinet Style: Flush overlay.
 - 8. Cabinet Doors and Drawer Fronts: Flush style.
 - 9. Drawer Side Construction: Manufacturer's option.
 - 10. Drawer Construction Technique: Dovetail joints.

2.02 WOOD-BASED COMPONENTS

- A. Wood fabricated from old growth timber is not permitted.

2.03 LAMINATE MATERIALS

- A. Thermally Fused Laminate (TFL): Melamine resin, NEMA LD 3, Type VGL laminate panels.
- B. High Pressure Decorative Laminate (HPDL): NEMA LD 3, types as recommended for specific applications.

2.04 COUNTERTOPS

- A. Countertops are specified in Section 12 36 00.

2.05 ACCESSORIES

- A. Adhesive: Type recommended by fabricator to suit application.
- B. Plastic Edge Banding: Extruded PVC, convex shaped; smooth finish; self locking serrated tongue; of width to match component thickness.
 - 1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.
- C. Grommets: Standard plastic grommets for cut-outs, in color to match adjacent surface.

2.06 HARDWARE

- A. Hardware: BHMA A156.9, types as recommended by fabricator for quality grade specified.
- B. Drawer and Door Pulls: "U" shaped wire pull, steel with chrome finish, 4 inch centers.
- C. Cabinet Locks: Keyed cylinder, two keys per lock, master keyed, steel with chrome finish.
- D. Drawer Slides:
 - 1. Type: Full extension.
 - 2. Static Load Capacity: Commercial grade.
 - 3. Mounting: Side mounted.
 - 4. Stops: Integral type.
 - 5. Features: Provide self closing/stay closed type.
- E. Hinges: European style concealed self-closing type, steel with polished finish.

2.07 FABRICATION

- A. Assembly: Shop assemble cabinets for delivery to site in units easily handled and to permit passage through building openings.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- B. Edging: Fit shelves, doors, and exposed edges with specified edging. Do not use more than one piece for any single length.
- C. Plastic Laminate: Apply plastic laminate finish in full uninterrupted sheets consistent with manufactured sizes. Fit corners and joints hairline; secure with concealed fasteners. Slightly bevel arises. Locate counter butt joints minimum 2 feet from sink cut-outs.
- D. Mechanically fasten back splash to countertops as recommended by laminate manufacturer at 16 inches on center.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify adequacy of backing and support framing.
- B. Verify location and sizes of utility rough-in associated with work of this section.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install work in accordance with AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) or AWMAC/WI (NAAWS) requirements for grade indicated.
- B. Set and secure custom cabinets in place, assuring that they are rigid, plumb, and level.
- C. Use concealed joint fasteners to align and secure adjoining cabinet units.
- D. Carefully scribe casework abutting other components, with maximum gaps of 1/32 inch. Do not use additional overlay trim for this purpose.
- E. Secure cabinets to floor using appropriate angles and anchorages.

3.03 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust installed work.
- B. Adjust moving or operating parts to function smoothly and correctly.

3.04 CLEANING

- A. Clean casework, counters, shelves, hardware, fittings, and fixtures.

END OF SECTION 06 41 00

SECTION 06 61 00
SIMULATED STONE FABRICATIONS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Cast plastic shower stall.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 12 36 00 - Countertops: Solid surfacing countertops.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2016.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate dimensions, thicknesses, required clearances, tolerances, materials, colors, finishes, fabrication details, field jointing, adjacent construction, design load parameters, methods of support, integration of plumbing components, and anchorages.
- C. Product Data: Provide data on specified component products, electrical characteristics and connection requirements.
- D. Warranty Documentation: Submit manufacturer warranty and ensure that forms have been completed in SLC Mosquito Abatement District's name and registered with manufacturer.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years of documented experience.

1.06 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

- A. Provide finished products having flame spread index of 35 and smoke developed index of 15, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 in thickness of 3/4 inch.
- B. Resin: Polyester type, with integral coloring, stain resistant to domestic chemicals and cleaners.

2.02 FABRICATION

- A. Design _____ items with sufficient strength for handling and placement stresses.
- B. Radius corners and edges.

2.03 FINISH

- A. Color: _____ color as selected.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field measurements are as indicated.
- B. Verify that joint preparation and affected dimensions are acceptable.
- C. Verify mechanical, electrical, and building items affecting work of this section are placed and ready to receive this work.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Provide anchoring devices for installation and embedding.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- B. Provide templates and rough-in measurements.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Install components in accordance with shop drawings and manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Align work plumb and level.
- C. Rigidly anchor to substrate to prevent misalignment.

3.04 TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum Variation From True Dimension: 1/8 inch.
- B. Maximum Offset From True Position: 1/8 inch.

3.05 CLEANING

- A. Clean and polish surfaces in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.06 PROTECTION

- A. Do not permit construction near unprotected surfaces.

END OF SECTION 06 61 00

SECTION 06 83 16

FIBERGLASS REINFORCED PANELING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Fiberglass reinforced plastic panels.
- B. Trim.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. 9 CFR 416.2 - Regulatory Requirements Under the Federal Meat Inspection Act and the Poultry Products Inspection Act, Part 416-Sanitation; current edition.
- B. ASTM D256 - Standard Test Methods for Determining the Izod Pendulum Impact Resistance of Plastics; 2010.
- C. ASTM D2583 - Standard Test Method for Indentation Hardness of Rigid Plastics by Means of Barcol Impressor; 2013a.
- D. ASTM D5319 - Standard Specification for Glass-Fiber Reinforced Polyester Wall and Ceiling Panels; 2012.
- E. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2016.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data on specified products, describing physical and performance characteristics; including sizes, patterns and colors available; and installation instructions.
- C. Samples: Submit two samples 6 by 6 inch in size illustrating material and surface design of panels.

1.04 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store panels flat, indoors, on a clean, dry surface. Remove packaging and allow panels to acclimate to room temperature for 48 hours prior to installation.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 PANEL SYSTEMS

- A. Wall Panels:
 - 1. Panel Size: 4 by 8 feet.
 - 2. Panel Thickness: 0.10 inch.
 - 3. Surface Design: Smooth.
 - 4. Color: As selected by Architect.
 - 5. Attachment Method: Adhesive only, with trim and sealant in joints.

2.02 MATERIALS

- A. Panels: Fiberglass reinforced plastic (FRP), complying with ASTM D5319.
 - 1. Surface Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame spread index of 25 and smoke developed index of 450; when system tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
 - 2. Scratch Resistance: Barcol hardness score greater than 35, when tested in accordance with ASTM D2583.
 - 3. Impact Strength: Greater than 6 ft lb force per inch, when tested in accordance with ASTM D256.
 - 4. Sanitation and Cleanability: Comply with 9 CFR 416.2.
- B. Trim: Vinyl; color coordinating with panel.
- C. Adhesive: Type recommended by panel manufacturer.
- D. Sealant: Type recommended by panel manufacturer; color matching panel.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify existing conditions and substrate flatness before starting work.
- B. Verify that substrate conditions are ready to receive the work of this section.

3.02 INSTALLATION - WALLS

- A. Install panels in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Cut panels with carbide tipped saw blades, or snips.
- C. Apply adhesive to the back side of the panel using trowel as recommended by adhesive manufacturer.
- D. Apply panels to wall with seams plumb and pattern aligned with adjoining panels.
- E. Install panels with manufacturer's recommended gap for panel field and corner joints.
- F. Place trim on panel before fastening edges, as required.
- G. Fill channels in trim with sealant before attaching to panel.
- H. Install trim with adhesive as required.
- I. Seal gaps at floor, ceiling, and between panels with applicable sealant to prevent moisture intrusion.
- J. Remove excess sealant after paneling is installed and prior to curing.

END OF SECTION 06 83 16

SECTION 07 05 33

FIRE AND SMOKE ASSEMBLY IDENTIFICATION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Identification markings for fire and smoke rated partitions, and fire rated walls.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ICC (IBC) - International Building Code; 2015.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's printed product literature for each type of marking, indicating font, foreground and background colors, wording, and overall dimensions.
- C. Samples: Submit two samples of each type of marking proposed for use, of size similar to that required for project, illustrating font, wording, and method of application.

1.04 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not install adhered markings when ambient temperature is lower than recommended by label or sign manufacturer.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 FIRE AND SMOKE ASSEMBLY IDENTIFICATION

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with "Marking and Identification" requirements of "Fire-Resistance Ratings and Fire Tests" chapter of ICC (IBC).

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that substrate surfaces are ready to receive work.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Locate markings as required by ICC (IBC).
- B. Install adhered markings in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Install neatly, with horizontal edges level.
- D. Protect from damage until Substantial Completion; repair or replace damaged markings.

END OF SECTION 07 05 33

SECTION 07 11 13
BITUMINOUS DAMPPROOFING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Bituminous dampproofing.
- B. Protection boards.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 07 21 00 - Thermal Insulation: Rigid insulation board used as protection board.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM D41/D41M - Standard Specification for Asphalt Primer Used in Roofing, Dampproofing, and Waterproofing; 2011 (Reapproved 2016).
- B. ASTM D449/D449M - Standard Specification for Asphalt Used in Dampproofing and Waterproofing; 2003 (Reapproved 2014).
- C. ASTM D1187/D1187M - Standard Specification for Asphalt-Base Emulsions for Use as Protective Coatings for Metal; 1997 (Reapproved 2011).
- D. ASTM D1227 - Standard Specification for Emulsified Asphalt Used as a Protective Coating for Roofing; 2013.
- E. ASTM D4586/D4586M - Standard Specification for Asphalt Roof Cement, Asbestos-Free; 2007 (Reapproved 2012).

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide properties of primer, bitumen, and mastics.
- C. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special procedures and perimeter conditions requiring special attention.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the work of this section with at least three years of documented experience.

1.06 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures above 40 degrees F for 24 hours before and during application until dampproofing has cured.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 BITUMINOUS DAMPPROOFING

- A. Bituminous Dampproofing: Cold-applied water-based emulsion; asphalt with mineral colloid or chemical emulsifying agent; with or without fiber reinforcement; asbestos-free; suitable for application on vertical and horizontal surfaces.
 - 1. Composition - Vertical Application: ASTM D1227 Type III or ASTM D1187/D1187M Type I.
 - 2. Composition - Horizontal and Low-Slope Application: ASTM D1227 Type II or III.
 - 3. VOC Content: Not more than permitted by local, State, and federal regulations.
 - 4. Applied Thickness: 1/16 inch, minimum, wet film.
- B. Primers, Mastics, and Related Materials: Type as recommended by dampproofing manufacturer.

2.02 BITUMEN MATERIALS

- A. Hot Asphaltic Type:
 - 1. Bitumen: ASTM D449/D449M, Type I, asphalt.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

2. Primer: ASTM D41/D41M, compatible with substrate.
3. Sealing Mastic: Asphalt roof cement, ASTM D4586/D4586M, Type I, asbestos-free.

2.03 ACCESSORIES

- A. Protection Board: Rigid insulation specified in Section 07 21 00.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify existing conditions are acceptable prior to starting this work.
- B. Verify substrate surfaces are durable, free of matter detrimental to adhesion or application of dampproofing system.
- C. Verify that items penetrating surfaces to receive dampproofing are securely installed.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Protect adjacent surfaces not designated to receive dampproofing.
- B. Clean and prepare surfaces to receive dampproofing in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Do not apply dampproofing to surfaces unacceptable to manufacturer.
- D. Apply mastic to seal penetrations, small cracks, or minor honeycombs in substrate.

3.03 APPLICATION

- A. Foundation Walls: Apply two coats of asphalt dampproofing.
- B. Prime surfaces at a rate approved by manufacturer for application indicated, and allow primer to dry thoroughly.
- C. Apply bitumen by spray application.
- D. Apply from 2 inches below finish grade elevation down to top of footings.
- E. Seal items watertight with mastic, that project through dampproofing surface.
- F. Place protection board directly over dampproofing, butt joints, and adhere to tacky dampproofing.
- G. Scribe and cut boards around projections, penetrations, and interruptions.

END OF SECTION 07 11 13

**SECTION 07 19 00
WATER REPELLENTS**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Water repellents applied to exterior masonry surfaces.

1.02 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Preinstallation Meeting: Convene a meeting at least one week prior to starting work; require attendance of affected installers; invite Architect and SLC Mosquito Abatement District.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide product description.
- C. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special procedures and conditions requiring special attention; cautionary procedures required during application.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

1.05 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Protect liquid materials from freezing.
- B. Do not apply water repellent when ambient temperature is lower than 50 degrees F or higher than 100 degrees F.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

- A. Water Repellent: Non-glossy, colorless, penetrating, water-vapor-permeable, non-yellowing sealer, that dries invisibly leaving appearance of substrate unchanged.
 - 1. Applications: Vertical surfaces and non-traffic horizontal surfaces.
 - 2. Number of Coats: Two.
 - 3. Maintains dry appearance when wetted.
 - 4. Products: Silane, siloxane, silane-siloxane blend, or siliconate that reacts chemically with concrete and masonry; minimum 90 percent nonvolatile content.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify surfaces to be coated are dry, clean, and free of efflorescence, oil, or other matter detrimental to application of water repellent.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Protection of Adjacent Work:
 - 1. Protect adjacent landscaping, property, and vehicles from drips and overspray.
 - 2. Protect adjacent surfaces not intended to receive water repellent.
- B. Prepare surfaces to be coated as recommended by water repellent manufacturer for best results.
- C. Do not start work until masonry mortar substrate is cured a minimum of 60 days.
- D. Remove loose particles and foreign matter.
- E. Remove oil and foreign substances with a chemical solvent that will not affect water repellent.
- F. Scrub and rinse surfaces with water and let dry.
- G. Pressure wash surfaces to be coated:

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

1. Firm Masonry (Concrete Masonry Units, Brick, and Dense Stone): High pressure wash at 1500 to 4000 psi, at 6 to 12 inches from surface.

3.03 APPLICATION

- A. Apply water repellent in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, using procedures and application methods recommended as producing the best results.
- B. Apply two coats, minimum.
- C. Remove water repellent from unintended surfaces immediately by a method instructed by water repellent manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 07 19 00

**SECTION 07 21 00
THERMAL INSULATION**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Board insulation at cavity wall construction and perimeter foundation wall.
- B. Batt insulation and vapor retarder in exterior wall construction.
- C. Batt insulation for filling perimeter window and door shim spaces.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM C578 - Standard Specification for Rigid, Cellular Polystyrene Thermal Insulation; 2016.
- B. ASTM C665 - Standard Specification for Mineral-Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for Light Frame Construction and Manufactured Housing; 2012.
- C. ASTM C1289 - Standard Specification for Faced Rigid Cellular Polyisocyanurate Thermal Insulation Board; 2016.
- D. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2016.
- E. ASTM E136 - Standard Test Method for Behavior of Materials in a Vertical Tube Furnace At 750 Degrees C; 2016.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data on product characteristics, performance criteria, and product limitations.

1.04 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not install insulation adhesives when temperature or weather conditions are detrimental to successful installation.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 APPLICATIONS

- A. Insulation at Perimeter of Foundation: Expanded polystyrene board.
- B. Insulation Inside Masonry Cavity Walls: Expanded polystyrene board.
- C. Insulation Over Roof Deck: Polyisocyanurate board. See roofing specification for additional information.

2.02 FOAM BOARD INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Expanded Polystyrene (EPS) Board Insulation: ASTM C578, Type XI; with the following characteristics:
 - 1. Flame Spread Index (FSI): Class A - 0 to 25, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
 - 2. Smoke Developed Index (SDI): 450 or less, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
 - 3. Board Size: 48 by 96 inch.
 - 4. Board Thickness: 2 inches.
 - 5. Board Edges: Square.
 - 6. Water Absorption: 4 percent by volume, maximum.
 - 7. Compressive Resistance: 5 psi.
 - 8. Thermal Resistance: R-value of 3.1 per 1 inch at 75 degrees F mean temperature.
- B. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation with Facers Both Sides: Rigid cellular foam, complying with ASTM C1289; Type II, Class 1, cellulose felt or glass fiber mat both faces; Grade 1.
 - 1. Flame Spread Index (FSI): Class A - 0 to 25, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
 - 2. Smoke Developed Index (SDI): 450 or less, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
 - 3. Compressive Strength: 16 psi

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

4. Board Size: 48 by 96 inch.
5. Thermal Resistance: R-value of _____.
6. Board Edges: Square.

2.03 BATT INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Where batt insulation is indicated, either glass fiber or mineral fiber batt insulation may be used, at Contractor's option.
- B. Glass Fiber Batt Insulation: Flexible preformed batt or blanket, complying with ASTM C665; friction fit.
 1. Flame Spread Index: 75 or less, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
 2. Smoke Developed Index: 450 or less, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
 3. Combustibility: Non-combustible, when tested in accordance with ASTM E136, except for facing, if any.
 4. Formaldehyde Content: Zero.
 5. Thermal Resistance: R-value of _____.
 6. Facing: Aluminum foil, flame spread 25 rated; one side.

2.04 ACCESSORIES

- A. Tape: Reinforced polyethylene film with acrylic pressure sensitive adhesive.
 1. Application: Sealing of interior circular penetrations, such as pipes or cables.
 2. Width: Are required for application.
- B. Tape: Bright aluminum self-adhering type, mesh reinforced, 2 inch wide.
- C. Nails or Staples: Steel wire; electroplated or galvanized; type and size to suit application.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that substrate, adjacent materials, and insulation materials are dry and that substrates are ready to receive insulation.
- B. Verify substrate surfaces are flat, free of honeycomb, fins, irregularities, or materials or substances that may impede adhesive bond.

3.02 BOARD INSTALLATION AT FOUNDATION PERIMETER

- A. Install boards vertically on foundation perimeter.
 1. Place boards to maximize adhesive contact.
 2. Install in running bond pattern.
 3. Butt edges and ends tightly to adjacent boards and to protrusions.
- B. Cut and fit insulation tightly to protrusions or interruptions to the insulation plane.

3.03 BOARD INSTALLATION AT CAVITY WALLS

- A. Apply adhesive to back of boards:
 1. Three continuous beads per board length.
- B. Install boards vertically on walls.
 1. Place boards to maximize adhesive contact.
 2. Butt edges and ends tightly to adjacent boards and to protrusions.
- C. Cut and fit insulation tightly to protrusions or interruptions to the insulation plane.

3.04 BATT INSTALLATION

- A. Install insulation and vapor retarder in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install in exterior wall spaces without gaps or voids. Do not compress insulation.
- C. Trim insulation neatly to fit spaces. Insulate miscellaneous gaps and voids.
- D. Fit insulation tightly in cavities and tightly to exterior side of mechanical and electrical services within the plane of the insulation.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- E. Install with factory applied vapor retarder membrane facing warm side of building spaces. Lap ends and side flanges of membrane over framing members.
- F. Tape seal butt ends, lapped flanges, and tears or cuts in membrane.
- G. At metal framing, place vapor retarder on warm side of insulation; lap and seal sheet retarder joints over member face.
- H. Tape seal tears or cuts in vapor retarder.
- I. Extend vapor retarder tightly to full perimeter of adjacent window and door frames and other items interrupting the plane of the membrane. Tape seal in place.

3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements, for additional requirements.
- B. Coordination of Air Barrier Association of America (ABAA) Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Do not cover air barrier work until inspected, and accepted.

3.06 PROTECTION

- A. Do not permit installed insulation to be damaged prior to its concealment.

END OF SECTION 07 21 00

**SECTION 07 25 00
WEATHER BARRIERS**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Water-Resistive Barrier: Under exterior wall cladding, over sheathing or other substrate; not air tight or vapor retardant.
- B. Air Barriers: Materials that form a system to stop passage of air through exterior walls, joints between exterior walls and roof, and joints around frames of openings in exterior walls.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. Weather Barrier: Assemblies that form either water-resistive barriers, air barriers, or vapor retarders.
- B. Water-Resistive Barrier: Water-shedding barrier made of material that is moisture resistant, to the degree specified, intended to be installed to shed water without sealed seams.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ICC-ES AC38 - Acceptance Criteria for Water-Resistive Barriers; ICC Evaluation Service, Inc; 2013.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data on material characteristics.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 WEATHER BARRIER ASSEMBLIES

- A. Water-Resistive Barrier: Provide on exterior walls under exterior cladding.
 - 1. Use building paper unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Under siding, use two separate layers of building paper.
- B. Air Barrier:
 - 1. On outside surface of sheathing of exterior walls use air barrier coating.

2.02 WATER-RESISTIVE BARRIER MATERIALS (NEITHER AIR BARRIER NOR VAPOR RETARDER)

- A. Building Paper: Asphalt-saturated Kraft building paper complying with requirements of ICC-ES AC38 Grade D.

2.03 ACCESSORIES

- A. Sealants, Tapes, and Accessories for Sealing Weather Barrier and Sealing Weather Barrier to Adjacent Substrates: As specified or as recommended by weather barrier manufacturer.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that surfaces and conditions are ready to accept the work of this section.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Remove projections, protruding fasteners, and loose or foreign matter that might interfere with proper installation.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Install materials in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Water-Resistive Barriers: Install continuous barrier over surfaces indicated, with sheets lapped to shed water but with seams not sealed.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- C. Air Barriers: Install continuous air tight barrier over surfaces indicated, with sealed seams and with sealed joints to adjacent surfaces.
- D. Mechanically Fastened Sheets - On Exterior:
 - 1. Install sheets shingle-fashion to shed water, with seams generally horizontal.
 - 2. Overlap seams as recommended by manufacturer but at least 6 inches.
 - 3. Overlap at outside and inside corners as recommended by manufacturer but at least 12 inches.
 - 4. Install water-resistive barrier over jamb flashings.
 - 5. Install air barrier and vapor retarder UNDER jamb flashings.
 - 6. Install head flashings under weather barrier.
 - 7. At openings to be filled with frames having nailing flanges, wrap excess sheet into opening; at head, seal sheet over flange and flashing.
- E. Openings and Penetrations in Exterior Weather Barriers:
 - 1. Install flashing over sills, covering entire sill frame member, extending at least 5 inches onto weather barrier and at least 6 inches up jambs; mechanically fasten stretched edges.
 - 2. At openings to be filled with frames having nailing flanges, seal head and jamb flanges using a continuous bead of sealant compressed by flange and cover flanges with sealing tape at least 4 inches wide; do not seal sill flange.
 - 3. At openings to be filled with non-flanged frames, seal weather barrier to all sides of opening framing, using flashing at least 9 inches wide, covering entire depth of framing.
 - 4. At head of openings, install flashing under weather barrier extending at least 2 inches beyond face of jambs; seal weather barrier to flashing.
 - 5. At interior face of openings, seal gap between window/door frame and rough framing, using joint sealant over backer rod.
 - 6. Service and Other Penetrations: Form flashing around penetrating item and seal to weather barrier surface.

3.04 PROTECTION

- A. Do not leave materials exposed to weather longer than recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Do not leave paper- or felt-based barriers exposed to weather for longer than one week.

END OF SECTION 07 25 00

**SECTION 07 41 13
METAL ROOF PANELS**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Architectural roofing system of preformed steel panels.
- B. Attachment system.
- C. Finishes.
- D. Accessories.

1.02 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:
 - 1. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
 - 2. Installation methods.
 - 3. Specimen warranty.
- C. Shop Drawings: Include layouts of roof panels, details of edge and penetration conditions, spacing and type of connections, flashings, underlayments, and special conditions.
 - 1. Show work to be field-fabricated or field-assembled.
- D. Selection Samples: For each roofing system specified, submit color chips representing manufacturer's full range of available colors and patterns.
- E. Warranty: Submit specified manufacturer's warranty and ensure that forms have been completed in SLC Mosquito Abatement District's name and are registered with manufacturer.

1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section, with not less than three years of documented experience.

1.04 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store roofing panels on project site as recommended by manufacturer to minimize damage to panels prior to installation.

1.05 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Finish Warranty: Provide manufacturer's special warranty covering failure of factory-applied exterior finish on metal roof panels and agreeing to repair or replace panels that show evidence of finish degradation, including significant fading, chalking, cracking, or peeling within specified warranty period of five years from Date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Waterproofing Warranty: Provide manufacturer's warranty for weathertightness of roofing system, including agreement to repair or replace roofing that fails to keep out water within specified warranty period of five years from Date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 ARCHITECTURAL METAL ROOF PANELS

- A. Architectural Metal Roofing: Provide complete engineered system complying with specified requirements and capable of remaining weathertight while withstanding anticipated movement of substrate and thermally induced movement of roofing system.
- B. Metal Panels: Factory-formed panels with factory-applied finish.
 - 1. Steel Panels:
 - a. Steel Thickness: Minimum 24 gage (0.024 inch).
 - 2. Profile: Standing seam, with minimum 1.0 inch seam height; concealed fastener system for field seaming with special tool.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

3. Texture: Smooth, with intermediate ribs for added stiffness.
4. Length: Full length of roof slope, without lapped horizontal joints.
5. Width: Maximum panel coverage of 24 inches.

2.02 ATTACHMENT SYSTEM

- A. Concealed System: Provide manufacturer's standard stainless steel or nylon-coated aluminum concealed anchor clips designed for specific roofing system and engineered to meet performance requirements, including anticipated thermal movement.

2.03 FABRICATION

- A. Panels: Provide factory or field fabricated panels with applied finish and accessory items, using manufacturer's standard processes as required to achieve specified appearance and performance requirements.
- B. Joints: Provide captive gaskets, sealants, or separator strips at panel joints to ensure weathertight seals, eliminate metal-to-metal contact, and minimize noise from panel movements.

2.04 FINISHES

- A. Fluoropolymer Coating System: Manufacturer's standard multi-coat thermocured coating system, including minimum 70 percent fluoropolymer color topcoat with minimum total dry film thickness of 0.9 mil; color and gloss to match sample.
- B. Solar Reflectance Index (SRI): 113.

2.05 ACCESSORIES

- A. Miscellaneous Sheet Metal Items: Provide flashings, gutters, downspouts, trim, closure strips, and caps of the same material, thickness, and finish as used for the roofing panels. Items completely concealed after installation may optionally be made of stainless steel.
- B. Rib and Ridge Closures: Provide prefabricated, close-fitting components of steel with corrosion resistant finish or combination steel and closed-cell foam.
- C. Sealants:
 1. Concealed Sealant: Non-curing butyl sealant or tape sealant.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Do not begin installation of preformed metal roof panels until substrates have been properly prepared.
- B. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Broom clean wood sheathing prior to installation of roofing system.
- B. Coordinate roofing work with provisions for roof drainage, flashing, trim, penetrations, and other adjoining work to assure that the completed roof will be free of leaks.
- C. Separate dissimilar metals by applying a bituminous coating, self-adhering rubberized asphalt sheet, or other permanent method approved by roof panel manufacturer.
- D. Where metal will be in contact with wood or other absorbent material subject to wetting, seal joints with sealing compound and apply one coat of heavy-bodied bituminous paint.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Overall: Install roofing system in accordance with approved shop drawings and panel manufacturer's instructions and recommendations, as applicable to specific project conditions. Anchor all components of roofing system securely in place while allowing for thermal and structural movement.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

1. Install roofing system with concealed clips and fasteners, except as otherwise recommended by manufacturer for specific circumstances.
 2. Minimize field cutting of panels. Where field cutting is absolutely required, use methods that will not distort panel profiles. Use of torches for field cutting is absolutely prohibited.
- B. Accessories: Install all components required for a complete roofing assembly, including flashings, gutters, downspouts, trim, closure strips, caps, rib closures, ridge closures, and similar roof accessory items.
- C. Roof Panels: Install panels in strict accordance with manufacturers instructions, minimizing transverse joints except at junction with penetrations.

3.04 CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed sheet metal work at completion of installation. Remove grease and oil films, excess joint sealer, handling marks, and debris from installation, leaving the work clean and unmarked, free from dents, creases, waves, scratch marks, or other damage to the finish.

3.05 PROTECTION

- A. Do not permit storage of materials or roof traffic on installed roof panels. Provide temporary walkways or planks as necessary to avoid damage to completed work. Protect roofing until completion of project.
- B. Touch-up, repair, or replace damaged roof panels or accessories before Date of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 07 41 13

SECTION 07 42 13.23

METAL COMPOSITE MATERIAL WALL PANELS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Exterior cladding consisting of formed metal composite material (MCM) sheet, secondary supports, and anchors to structure, attached to solid backup.
- B. Matching flashing and trim.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 07 62 00 - Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Metal flashing components integrated with this wall system.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM A36/A36M - Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel; 2014.
- B. ASTM A123/A123M - Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products; 2015.
- C. ASTM A153/A153M - Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware; 2016a.
- D. ASTM A276/A276M - Standard Specification for Stainless Steel Bars and Shapes; 2016a.
- E. ASTM A480/A480M - Standard Specification for General Requirements for Flat-Rolled Stainless and Heat-Resisting Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip; 2016b.
- F. ASTM A653/A653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process; 2015.
- G. ASTM A666 - Standard Specification for Annealed or Cold-Worked Austenitic Stainless Steel Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bar; 2015.
- H. ASTM A792/A792M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, 55% Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process; 2010 (Reapproved 2015).
- I. ASTM C920 - Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants; 2014a.
- J. ASTM D523 - Standard Test Method for Specular Gloss; 2014.
- K. ASTM D1781 - Standard Test Method for Climbing Drum Peel for Adhesives; 1998 (Reapproved 2012).
- L. ASTM D1929 - Standard Test Method for Determining Ignition Temperature of Plastics; 2016.
- M. ASTM D2244 - Standard Practice for Calculation of Color Tolerances and Color Differences from Instrumentally Measured Color Coordinates; 2016.
- N. ASTM D4145 - Standard Test Method for Coating Flexibility of Prepainted Sheet; 2010.
- O. ASTM D4214 - Standard Test Methods for Evaluating the Degree of Chalking of Exterior Paint Films; 2007 (Reapproved 2015).
- P. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2016.

1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Pre-Installation Meeting: Convene one week before starting work of this section to verify project requirements, co-ordinate with installers of other work, establish condition and completeness of building substrate, and review manufacturers' installation instructions and warranty requirements.
 - 1. Require attendance by the installer and relevant sub-contractors.
 - 2. Include MCM sheet manufacturer's representative and wall system manufacturer's representative to review storage and handling procedures.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

3. Review in detail truck transportation, parking, vertical transportation, schedule, personnel, installation of adjacent materials and substrate.
4. Review procedures for protection of work and other construction.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data - MCM Sheets: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including thickness, physical characteristics, and finish, and:
 1. Finish manufacturer's data sheet showing physical and performance characteristics.
 2. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
 3. Fabrication instructions and recommendations.
 4. Specimen warranty for finish, as specified herein.
- C. Product Data - Wall System: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:
 1. Physical characteristics of components shown on shop drawings.
 2. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
 3. Installation instructions and recommendations.
 4. Specimen warranty for wall system, as specified herein.
- D. Shop Drawings: Show layout and elevations, dimensions and thickness of panels, connections, details and location of joints, sealants and gaskets, method of anchorage, exposed fasteners, number of anchors, supports, reinforcement, trim, flashings, and accessories.
 1. Indicate panel numbering system.
 2. Differentiate between shop and field fabrication.
 3. Indicate substrates and adjacent work with which the wall system must be coordinated.
 4. Include large-scale details of anchorages and connecting elements.
 5. Include large-scale details or schematic, exploded or isometric diagrams to fully explain flashing at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches.
- E. Manufacturer's Field Reports: Provide within 48 hours of field review. State what was observed and what changes, if any, were requested or required.
- F. Manufacturer's Qualification Statement.
- G. Installer's Qualification Statement.
- H. Maintenance Data: Care of finishes and warranty requirements.
- I. Executed Warranty: Submit warranty and ensure that forms have been completed in SLC Mosquito Abatement District's name and registered with manufacturer.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions by field measurement before fabrication; show recorded measurements on shop drawings.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing wall panel systems specified in this section.
 1. With not less than three years of documented experience.
 2. Approved by MCM sheet manufacturer.
- C. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of the type specified in this section.
 1. With minimum three years of documented experience.

1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver products in manufacturer's original, unopened, undamaged containers with identification labels intact.
 1. Protect finishes by applying heavy duty removable plastic film during production.
 2. Package for protection against transportation damage.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

3. Provide markings to identify components consistently with drawings.
 4. Exercise care in unloading, storing and installing panels to prevent bending, warping, twisting and surface damage.
- B. Store products protected from exposure to harmful weather conditions and at temperature conditions recommended by manufacturer.
1. Store in well ventilated space out of direct sunlight.
 2. Protect from moisture and condensation with tarpaulins or other suitable weather tight covering installed to provide ventilation.
 3. Store at a slope to ensure positive drainage of any accumulated water.
 4. Do not store in any enclosed space where ambient temperature can exceed 120 degrees F.
 5. Avoid contact with any other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.

1.08 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Wall System Warranty: Provide joint written warranty by manufacturer and installer, agreeing to correct defects in manufacturing or installation within a two year period after Date of Substantial Completion.
- C. MCM Sheet Manufacturer's Finish Warranty: Provide manufacturer's written warranty stating that the finish will perform as follows for minimum of 5 years:
1. Chalking: No more than that represented by a No. 8 rating based on ASTM D4214.
 2. Color Retention: No fading or color change in excess of 5 Hunter color difference units, calculated in accordance with ASTM D2244.
 3. Gloss Retention: Minimum of 30 percent gloss retention, when tested in accordance with ASTM D523.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Metal Composite Material (MCM) Sheet Manufacturers:
1. ALPOLIC Materials; ALPOLIC/PE (Polyethylene core): www.alpolic-america.com/#sle.
 2. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- B. Wall Panel System Manufacturers:
1. Mitsubishi Plastics Composites America, Inc.
 2. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.

2.02 WALL PANEL SYSTEM

- A. Wall Panel System: Metal panels, fasteners, and anchors designed to be supported by framing or other substrate provided by others; provide installed panel system capable of maintaining specified performance without defects, damage or failure.
1. Provide structural design by or under direct supervision of a Structural Engineer licensed in the State in which the Project is located.
 2. Provide panel jointing and weatherseal using reveal joints and gaskets but no sealant.
 3. Anchor panels to supporting framing without exposed fasteners.
- B. Performance Requirements:
1. Thermal Movement: Provide for free and noiseless vertical and horizontal thermal movement due to expansion and contraction under material temperature range of minus 20 degrees F to 180 degrees F without buckling, opening of joints, undue stress on fasteners, or other detrimental effects; allow for ambient temperature at time of fabrication, assembly, and erection procedures.
- C. Panels: One inch deep pans formed of metal composite material sheet by routing back edges of sheet, removing corners, and folding edges.
1. Reinforce corners with riveted aluminum angles.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

2. Provide concealed attachment to supporting structure by adhering attachment members to back of panel; attachment members may also function as stiffeners.
3. Maintain maximum panel bow of 0.8 percent of panel dimension in width and length; provide stiffeners of sufficient size and strength to maintain panel flatness without showing local stresses or read-through on panel face.
4. Secure members to back face of panels using structural silicone sealant approved by MCM sheet manufacturer.
5. Fabricate panels under controlled shop conditions.
6. Where final dimensions cannot be established by field measurement before commencement of manufacturing, make allowance for field adjustments without requiring field fabrication of panels.
7. Fabricate as indicated on drawings and as recommended by MCM sheet manufacturer.
 - a. Make panel lines, breaks, curves and angles sharp and true.
 - b. Keep plane surfaces free from warp or buckle.
 - c. Keep panel surfaces free of scratches or marks caused during fabrication.
8. Provide joint details providing a watertight and structurally sound wall panel system that allows no uncontrolled water penetration on inside face of panel system.
9. For "dry" jointing, secure extrusions to returned pan edges with stainless steel rivets; provide means of concealed drainage with baffles and weeps for water that might accumulate in members of system.

2.03 MATERIALS

- A. Metal Composite Material (MCM) Sheet: Two sheets of aluminum sandwiching a core of extruded thermoplastic material; no foamed insulation material content.
 1. Overall Sheet Thickness: 4 mm, minimum.
 2. Alloy: Manufacturer's standard, selected for best appearance and finish durability.
 3. Bond and Peel Strength: No adhesive failure of the bond between the core and the skin nor cohesive failure of the core itself below 22.4 inch-pound/inch with no degradation in bond performance, when tested in accordance with ASTM D1781, simulating resistance to panel delamination, after 8 hours of submersion in boiling water and after 21 days of immersion in water at 70 degrees F.
 4. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread index of 25, maximum; smoke developed index of 450, maximum; when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
 5. Flammability: Self-ignition temperature of 650 degrees F or greater, when tested in accordance with ASTM D1929.
 6. Factory Finish: One coat fluoropolymer resin coating, approved by the coating manufacturer for the length of warranty specified for the project, and applied by coil manufacturing facility that specializes in coil applied finishes.
 - a. Coating Flexibility: Pass ASTM D4145 minimum 1T-bend, at time of manufacturing.
 - b. Long-Term Performance: Not less than that specified under WARRANTY in PART 1.
- B. Metal Framing Members: Include sub-girts, zee-clips, base and sill angles and channels, hat-shaped and rigid channels, and furring channels required for complete installation.
 1. Provide material strength, dimensions, configuration as required to meet the applied loads applied and in compliance with applicable building code.
 2. Sheet Steel Components: ASTM A653/A653M galvanized to G90/Z275 or zinc-iron alloy-coated to A60/ZF180; or ASTM A792/A792M aluminum-zinc coated to AZ60/AZM180.
 3. Stainless Steel Sheet Components: ASTM A480/A480M.
- C. Flashing: Sheet aluminum; 0.040 inch thick, minimum; finish and color to match MCM sheet; refer to Section 07 62 00 for additional requirements.
- D. Anchors, Clips and Accessories: Use one of the following:
 1. Stainless steel complying with ASTM A276/A276M, ASTM A480/A480M, or ASTM A666.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

2. Steel complying with ASTM A36/A36M and hot-dipped galvanized to ASTM A153/A153M.
 3. Steel complying with ASTM A36/A36M and hot-dipped galvanized to ASTM A123/A123M Coating Grade 10.
- E. Fasteners:
1. Exposed Fasteners: Stainless steel; permitted only where absolutely unavoidable and subject to prior approval of the Architect.
 2. Screws: Self-drilling or self-tapping Type 410 stainless steel or zinc-alloy steel hex washer head, with EPDM or PVC washer under heads of fasteners bearing on weather side of metal wall panels.
 3. Bolts: Stainless steel.
 4. Fasteners for Flashing and Trim: Blind fasteners of high-strength aluminum or stainless steel.
- F. Joint Sealer: Provide color to match wall panels silicone sealant of type approved by MCM sheet manufacturer, and in compliance with ASTM C920.
- G. Provide panel system manufacturer's and installer's standard corrosion resistant accessories, including fasteners, clips, anchorage devices and attachments.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine dimensions, tolerances, and interfaces with other work.
- B. Examine substrate on-site to determine that conditions are acceptable for product installation in accordance with manufacturers written instructions.
- C. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.
- D. Notify Architect in writing of conditions detrimental to proper and timely completion of work, and do not proceed with erection until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Do not install products that are defective, including warped, bowed, dented, and broken members, and members with damaged finishes.
- B. Comply with instructions and recommendations of MCM sheet manufacturer and wall system manufacturer, as well as with approved shop drawings.
- C. Install wall system securely allowing for necessary thermal and structural movement; comply with wall system manufacturer's instructions for installation of concealed fasteners.
- D. Do not handle or tool products during erection in manner that damages finish, decreases strength, or results in visual imperfection or failure in performance. Return component parts that require alteration to shop for refabrication, if possible, or for replacement with new parts.
- E. Do not form panels in field unless required by wall system manufacturer and approved by the Architect; comply with MCM sheet manufacturer's instructions and recommendations for field forming.
- F. Separate dissimilar metals; use gasket fasteners, isolation shims, or isolation tape where needed to eliminate possibility of electrolytic action between metals.
- G. Install flashings as indicated on shop drawings. At flashing butt joints, provide a lap strap under flashing and seal lapped surfaces with a full bed of non-hardening sealant.
- H. Install square, plumb, straight, and true, accurately fitted, with tight joints and intersections maintaining the following installation tolerances:
 1. Variation From Plane or Location: 1/2 inch in 30 feet of length and up to 3/4 inch in 300 feet, maximum.
 2. Deviation of Vertical Member From True Line: 0.1 inch in 25 feet run, maximum.
 3. Deviation of Horizontal Member From True Line: 0.1 inch in 25 feet run, maximum.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

4. Offset From True Alignment Between Two Adjacent Members Abutting End To End, In Line: 0.03 inch, maximum.

- I. Replace damaged products.

3.03 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Wall System Manufacturer's Field Services: Provide field services consisting of product use recommendations and periodic site visits for inspection of product installation in accordance with instructions.

3.04 CLEANING

- A. Ensure weep holes and drainage channels are unobstructed and free of dirt and sealants.
- B. Remove protective film after installation of joint sealers, after cleaning of adjacent materials, and immediately prior to completion of work.
- C. Remove temporary coverings and protection of adjacent work areas.
- D. Clean installed products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.05 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed panel system from damage until Date of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 07 42 13.23

SECTION 07 54 00

THERMOPLASTIC MEMBRANE ROOFING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Adhered system with thermoplastic roofing membrane.
- B. Insulation, flat and tapered.
- C. Vapor retarder.
- D. Deck sheathing.
- E. Flashings.
- F. Roofing cant strips, stack boots, roofing expansion joints, and walkway pads.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM C1177/C1177M - Standard Specification for Glass Mat Gypsum Substrate for Use as Sheathing; 2013.
- B. ASTM C1289 - Standard Specification for Faced Rigid Cellular Polyisocyanurate Thermal Insulation Board; 2016.
- C. ASTM D4434/D4434M - Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) Sheet Roofing; 2015.
- D. ASTM E1980 - Standard Practice for Calculating Solar Reflectance Index of Horizontal and Low-Sloped Opaque Surfaces; 2011.
- E. FM DS 1-28 - Wind Design; 2007.
- F. NRCA (RM) - The NRCA Roofing Manual; 2017.

1.03 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Preinstallation Meeting: Convene one week before starting work of this section.
 - 1. Review preparation and installation procedures and coordinating and scheduling required with related work.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data indicating membrane materials, flashing materials, insulation, vapor retarder, surfacing, and fasteners.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate joint or termination detail conditions, conditions of interface with other materials, setting plan for tapered insulation, and paver layout.
- D. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that products meet or exceed specified requirements.
- E. Specimen Warranty: For approval.
- F. Warranty Documentation:
 - 1. Submit manufacturer warranty and ensure that forms have been completed in SLC Mosquito Abatement District's name and registered with manufacturer.
 - 2. Submit installer's certification that installation complies with warranty conditions for waterproof membrane.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years of documented experience.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver products in manufacturer's original containers, dry, undamaged, with seals and labels intact.
- B. Store products in weather protected environment, clear of ground and moisture.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- C. Protect foam insulation from direct exposure to sunlight.

1.07 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not apply roofing membrane during unsuitable weather.
- B. Do not apply roofing membrane when ambient temperature is below 40 degrees F or above manufacturer's recommended degrees F
- C. Do not apply roofing membrane to damp or frozen deck surface or when precipitation is expected or occurring.
- D. Do not expose materials vulnerable to water or sun damage in quantities greater than can be weatherproofed the same day.

1.08 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Material Warranty: Provide membrane manufacturer's warranty agreeing to replace material that shows manufacturing defects within 5 years after installation.
- C. System Warranty: Provide manufacturer's system warranty agreeing to repair or replace roofing that leaks or is damaged due to wind or other natural causes.
 - 1. Warranty Term: 20 years.
 - 2. For repair and replacement include costs of both material and labor in warranty.
 - 3. Exceptions NOT Permitted:

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Membrane Materials:
 - 1. Carlisle Roofing Systems, Inc; Sure-Flex PVC KEE: www.carlisle-syntec.com/#sle.
 - 2. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- B. Insulation:
 - 1. Carlisle SynTec; SecurShield Insulation: www.carlisle-syntec.com/#sle.
 - 2. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.

2.02 ROOFING

- A. Thermoplastic Membrane Roofing: One ply membrane, fully adhered, over vapor retarder and insulation.
- B. Roofing Assembly Requirements:
 - 1. Solar Reflectance Index (SRI): Minimum of 64 based on three-year aged value; if three-year aged data is not available, minimum of 82 initial value.
 - a. Calculate SRI in accordance with ASTM E1980.
 - b. Field applied coating may not be used to achieve specified SRI.
 - 2. Insulation Thermal Resistance (R-Value): 3 per inch, minimum; provide insulation of thickness required.
- C. Acceptable Insulation Types - Constant Thickness Application: Any of the types specified.
 - 1. Minimum 2 layers of perlite, molded polystyrene, polyisocyanurate, extruded polystyrene, or composite board.
 - 2. Bottom layer of polyisocyanurate, extruded polystyrene, or composite board covered with single layer of cellulose, perlite, molded polystyrene, polyisocyanurate, glass fiber, extruded polystyrene, or composite board.
- D. Acceptable Insulation Types - Tapered Application: _____.
 - 1. Tapered polyisocyanurate, perlite, or extruded polystyrene board.

2.03 ROOFING MEMBRANE AND ASSOCIATED MATERIALS

- A. Membrane:
 - 1. Material: Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) complying with ASTM D4434/D4434M.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

2. Reinforcing: Internal fabric.
 3. Thickness: 0.060 inch, minimum.
 4. Sheet Width: Factory fabricated into largest sheets possible.
 5. Color: White.
- B. Seaming Materials: As recommended by membrane manufacturer.
- C. Vapor Retarder: Material approved by roof manufacturer complying with requirements of fire rating classification; compatible with roofing and insulation materials.
1. Fire-retardant adhesive.
- D. Flexible Flashing Material: Same material as membrane.

2.04 DECK SHEATHING AND COVER BOARDS

- A. Deck Sheathing and Cover Board: Glass mat faced gypsum panels, ASTM C1177/C1177M, fire resistant type, 5/8 inch thick.

2.05 INSULATION

- A. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: Rigid cellular foam, complying with ASTM C1289, Type II, Class 1, cellulose felt or glass fiber mat both faces; Grade 1 and with the following characteristics:
1. Compressive Strength: 20 psi.
 2. Board Size: 48 by 96 inch.
 3. Board Thickness: 3.0 inch.
 4. Tapered Board: Slope as indicated; minimum thickness ____ inch; fabricate of fewest layers possible.
 5. Thermal Resistance: R-value of _____.
 6. Board Edges: Square.

2.06 ACCESSORIES

- A. Stack Boots: Prefabricated flexible boot and collar for pipe stacks through membrane; same material as membrane.
- B. Cant and Edge Strips: Wood fiberboard, compatible with roofing materials; cants formed to 45 degree angle.
- C. Sheathing Joint Tape: Paper type, ____ inch wide, self adhering.
- D. Insulation Joint Tape: Glass fiber reinforced type as recommended by insulation manufacturer, compatible with roofing materials; 6 inches wide; self adhering.
- E. Insulation Fasteners: Appropriate for purpose intended and approved by roofing manufacturer.
- F. Membrane Adhesive: As recommended by membrane manufacturer.
- G. Walkway Pads: Suitable for maintenance traffic, contrasting color or otherwise visually distinctive from roof membrane.
1. Composition: Roofing membrane manufacturer's standard.
 2. Size: 18 by 18 inch.
 3. Surface Color: White.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that surfaces and site conditions are ready to receive work.
- B. Verify deck is supported and secure.
- C. Verify deck is clean and smooth, flat, free of depressions, waves, or projections, properly sloped and suitable for installation of roof system.
- D. Verify deck surfaces are dry and free of snow or ice.
- E. Verify that roof openings, curbs, and penetrations through roof are solidly set, and cant strips are in place.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

3.02 CONCRETE DECK PREPARATION

- A. Fill surface honeycomb and variations with latex filler.
- B. Confirm dry deck by moisture meter with 12 percent moisture maximum.

3.03 METAL DECK PREPARATION

- A. Install deck sheathing on metal deck:
 - 1. Lay with long side at right angle to flutes; stagger end joints; provide support at ends.
 - 2. Cut sheathing cleanly and accurately at roof breaks and protrusions to provide smooth surface.
 - 3. Tape joints.
 - 4. Mechanically fasten sheathing to roof deck, in accordance with Factory Mutual recommendations and roofing manufacturer's instructions.
 - a. Over entire roof area, fasten sheathing using 6 fasteners with washers per sheathing board.
 - b. At roof perimeter to a distance of 4 ft in from edges, fasten sheathing using 6 fasteners with washers per board.

3.04 INSTALLATION - GENERAL

- A. Perform work in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and NRCA (RM) applicable requirements.
- B. Do not apply roofing membrane during unsuitable weather.
- C. Do not apply roofing membrane when ambient temperature is outside the temperature range recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Do not apply roofing membrane to damp or frozen deck surface or when precipitation is expected or occurring.
- E. Do not expose materials vulnerable to water or sun damage in quantities greater than can be weatherproofed the same day.

3.05 VAPOR RETARDER AND INSULATION APPLICATION - UNDER MEMBRANE

- A. Apply vapor retarder to deck surface with adhesive in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
 - 1. Extend vapor retarder under cant strips and blocking to deck edge.
 - 2. Install flexible flashing from vapor retarder to air seal material of wall construction, lap and seal to provide continuity of the air barrier plane.
- B. Ensure vapor retarder is clean and dry, continuous, and ready for application of insulation.
- C. Attachment of Insulation:
 - 1. Mechanically fasten insulation to deck in accordance with roofing manufacturer's instructions and Factory Mutual requirements.
- D. Lay subsequent layers of insulation with joints staggered minimum 6 inch from joints of preceding layer.
- E. Place tapered insulation to the required slope pattern in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- F. On metal deck, place boards parallel to flutes with insulation board edges bearing on deck flutes.
- G. Lay boards with edges in moderate contact without forcing. Cut insulation to fit neatly to perimeter blocking and around penetrations through roof.
- H. Tape joints of insulation in accordance with roofing and insulation manufacturers' instructions.
- I. At roof drains, use factory-tapered boards to slope down to roof drains over a distance of 18 inches.
- J. Do not apply more insulation than can be covered with membrane in same day.

3.06 MEMBRANE APPLICATION

- A. Roll out membrane, free from wrinkles or tears. Place sheet into place without stretching.
- B. Shingle joints on sloped substrate in direction of drainage.
- C. Fully Adhered Application: Apply adhesive to substrate at rate of ____ gal/sq ft. Fully embed membrane in adhesive except in areas directly over or within 3 inches of expansion joints. Fully adhere one roll before proceeding to adjacent rolls.
- D. Overlap edges and ends and seal seams by contact adhesive, minimum 3 inches. Seal permanently waterproof. Apply uniform bead of sealant to joint edge.
- E. At intersections with vertical surfaces:
 - 1. Extend membrane over cant strips and up a minimum of 6 inches onto vertical surfaces.
 - 2. Fully adhere flexible flashing over membrane and up to nailing strips.
- F. Around roof penetrations, seal flanges and flashings with flexible flashing.
- G. Coordinate installation of roof drains and sumps and related flashings.

3.07 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements, for general requirements for field quality control and inspection.
- B. Require site attendance of roofing and insulation material manufacturers daily during installation of the Work.

3.08 CLEANING

- A. See Section 01 74 19 - Construction Waste Management and Disposal, for additional requirements.
- B. Remove bituminous markings from finished surfaces.
- C. In areas where finished surfaces are soiled by work of this section, consult manufacturer of surfaces for cleaning advice and conform to their documented instructions.
- D. Repair or replace defaced or damaged finishes caused by work of this section.

3.09 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed roofing and flashings from construction operations.
- B. Where traffic must continue over finished roof membrane, protect surfaces using durable materials.

END OF SECTION 07 54 00

SECTION 07 62 00
SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Fabricated sheet metal items, including flashings, counterflashings, gutters, and downspouts.
- B. Sealants for joints within sheet metal fabrications.
- C. Precast concrete splash pads.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AAMA 2604 - Voluntary Specification, Performance Requirements and Test Procedures for High Performance Organic Coatings on Aluminum Extrusions and Panels (with Coil Coating Appendix); 2017a.
- B. ASTM B209 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate; 2014.
- C. ASTM B209M - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate (Metric); 2014.
- D. ASTM C920 - Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants; 2014a.
- E. ASTM D4586/D4586M - Standard Specification for Asphalt Roof Cement, Asbestos-Free; 2007 (Reapproved 2012).
- F. CDA A4050 - Copper in Architecture - Handbook; current edition.
- G. SMACNA (ASMM) - Architectural Sheet Metal Manual; 2012.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate material profile, jointing pattern, jointing details, fastening methods, flashings, terminations, and installation details.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Perform work in accordance with SMACNA (ASMM) and CDA A4050 requirements and standard details, except as otherwise indicated.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack material to prevent twisting, bending, and abrasion, and to provide ventilation. Slope metal sheets to ensure drainage.
- B. Prevent contact with materials that could cause discoloration or staining.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 SHEET MATERIALS

- A. Pre-Finished Aluminum: ASTM B209 (ASTM B209M); 20 gage, (0.032 inch) thick; plain finish shop pre-coated with modified silicone coating.
 - 1. Fluoropolymer Coating: High Performance Organic Finish, AAMA 2604; multiple coat, thermally cured fluoropolymer finish system.
 - 2. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard colors.

2.02 FABRICATION

- A. Form sections true to shape, accurate in size, square, and free from distortion or defects.
- B. Form pieces in longest possible lengths.
- C. Hem exposed edges on underside 1/2 inch; miter and seam corners.
- D. Form material with flat lock seams, except where otherwise indicated; at moving joints, use sealed lapped, bayonet-type or interlocking hooked seams.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- E. Fabricate corners from one piece with minimum 18 inch long legs; seam for rigidity, seal with sealant.

2.03 GUTTER AND DOWNSPOUT FABRICATION

- A. Gutters: SMACNA (ASMM), Rectangular profile.
- B. Downspouts: Rectangular profile.
- C. Gutters and Downspouts: Size for rainfall intensity determined by a storm occurrence of 1 in 10 years in accordance with SMACNA (ASMM). Provide calculations.
- D. Splash Pads: Precast concrete type, of size and profiles indicated; minimum 3000 psi at 28 days, with minimum 5 percent air entrainment.
- E. Seal metal joints.

2.04 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners: Galvanized steel, with soft neoprene washers.
- B. Primer: Zinc chromate type.
- C. Concealed Sealants: Non-curing butyl sealant.
- D. Exposed Sealants: ASTM C920; elastomeric sealant, with minimum movement capability as recommended by manufacturer for substrates to be sealed; color to match adjacent material.
- E. Plastic Cement: ASTM D4586/D4586M, Type I.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify roofing termination and base flashings are in place, sealed, and secure.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Secure flashings in place using concealed fasteners, and use exposed fasteners only where permitted..
- B. Apply plastic cement compound between metal flashings and felt flashings.
- C. Fit flashings tight in place; make corners square, surfaces true and straight in planes, and lines accurate to profiles.
- D. Secure gutters and downspouts in place with concealed fasteners.
- E. Slope gutters 1/4 inch per 10 feet, minimum.
- F. Set splash pads under downspouts.

END OF SECTION 07 62 00

SECTION 07 72 00
ROOF ACCESSORIES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Roof hatches.
- B. Snow guards.

1.02 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used.
 - 1. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
 - 2. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
 - 3. Installation methods.
 - 4. Maintenance requirements.
- C. Shop Drawings: Submit detailed layout developed for this project. Show dimensioned location and number for each type of roof accessory.
 - 1. Snow Guards: Submit design calculations for loadings and spacings based on manufacturer testing.
 - 2. Submit shop drawings sealed and signed by a Professional Engineer experienced in design of this type of work and licensed in the State in which the Project is located.
- D. Warranty Documentation:
 - 1. Submit manufacturer warranty.
 - 2. Ensure that forms have been completed in SLC Mosquito Abatement District's name and registered with manufacturer.

1.03 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging until ready for installation.
- B. Store products under cover and elevated above grade.

1.04 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 ROOF HATCHES

- A. Manufacturers - Roof Hatches:
 - 1. Bilco Company; Type TB (all types & special size): www.bilco.com/#sle.
 - 2. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- B. Roof Hatches, General: Factory-assembled steel frame and cover, complete with operating and release hardware.
 - 1. Style: Provide flat metal covers unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Mounting: Provide frames and curbs suitable for mounting conditions indicated on the drawings.
 - 3. For Ladder Access: Single leaf; 36 by 36 inches.
- C. Frames/Curbs: One-piece curb and frame with integral cap flashing to receive roof flashings; extended bottom flange to suit mounting.
 - 1. Material: Galvanized steel, 14 gage, 0.0747 inch thick.
 - 2. Finish: Factory prime paint.
 - 3. Insulation: Manufacturer's standard; 1 inch rigid glass fiber, located on outside face of curb.
 - 4. Curb Height: 8 inches from finished surface of roof, minimum.
- D. Metal Covers: Flush, insulated, hollow metal construction.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

1. Capable of supporting 40 psf live load.
 2. Material: Galvanized steel; outer cover 14 gage, 0.0747 inch thick, liner 22 gage, 0.03 inch thick.
 3. Finish: Factory prime paint.
 4. Insulation: Manufacturer's standard 1 inch rigid glass fiber.
 5. Gasket: Neoprene, continuous around cover perimeter.
- E. Hardware: Steel, zinc coated and chromate sealed, unless otherwise indicated or required by manufacturer.
1. Lifting Mechanisms: Compression or torsion spring operator with shock absorbers that automatically opens upon release of latch; capable of lifting covers despite 10 psf load.
 2. Hinges: Heavy duty pintle type.
 3. Hold open arm with vinyl-coated handle for manual release.
 4. Latch: Upon closing, engage latch automatically and reset manual release.
 5. Manual Release: Pull handle on interior.
 6. Locking: Padlock hasp on interior.

2.02 SNOW GUARDS

- A. Fence Type Snow Guard: Continuous snow guard; manufacturer's standard single pipe, bar, channel, or solid rod, set in brackets or posts, with optional plates and metal trim to match roof.
1. Brackets: Zinc plated steel.
 2. Pipe or Square Tube: Aluminum, mill finish.
 - a. Outside Diameter, Round: 1 inch, nominal.
 - b. Threaded Couplings: Match pipe or tube.
 - c. End Collars and Caps: Metal to match tube.
 3. Clamps for Standing Seam Roof: Aluminum clamps attached to standing seams of roof panels; for attachment of fence type snow guard.
 - a. Seam Profile: Selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range; match profile of metal roof.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Do not begin installation until substrates have been properly prepared.
- B. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Clean surfaces thoroughly prior to installation.
- B. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, in manner that maintains roofing weather integrity.

3.04 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products until completion of project.
- B. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Date of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 07 72 00

SECTION 07 92 00

JOINT SEALANTS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Nonsag gunnable joint sealants.
- B. Joint backings and accessories.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM C920 - Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants; 2014a.
- B. ASTM C1193 - Standard Guide for Use of Joint Sealants; 2016.
- C. ASTM C1248 - Standard Test Method for Staining of Porous Substrate by Joint Sealants; 2008 (Reapproved 2012).

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data for Sealants: Submit manufacturer's technical data sheets for each product to be used, that includes the following.
 - 1. Physical characteristics, including movement capability, VOC content, hardness, cure time, and color availability.
 - 2. List of backing materials approved for use with the specific product.
 - 3. Substrates that product is known to satisfactorily adhere to and with which it is compatible.
 - 4. Substrates the product should not be used on.
 - 5. Substrates for which use of primer is required.
- C. Color Cards for Selection: Where sealant color is not specified, submit manufacturer's color cards showing standard colors available for selection.

1.04 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Correct defective work within a five year period after Date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Warranty: Include coverage for installed sealants and accessories that fail to achieve watertight seal , exhibit loss of adhesion or cohesion, or do not cure.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Non-Sag Sealants: Permits application in joints on vertical surfaces without sagging or slumping.

2.02 JOINT SEALANT APPLICATIONS

- A. Scope:
 - 1. Exterior Joints: Seal open joints, whether or not the joint is indicated on the drawings, unless specifically indicated not to be sealed. Exterior joints to be sealed include, but are not limited to, the following items.
 - a. Wall expansion and control joints.
 - b. Joints between door, window, and other frames and adjacent construction.
 - c. Joints between different exposed materials.
 - d. Openings below ledge angles in masonry.
 - e. Other joints indicated below.
 - 2. Interior Joints: Do not seal interior joints unless specifically indicated to be sealed. Interior joints to be sealed include, but are not limited to, the following items.
 - a. Joints between door, window, and other frames and adjacent construction.
 - b. Other joints indicated below.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

3. Do not seal the following types of joints.
 - a. Intentional weepholes in masonry.
 - b. Joints indicated to be treated with manufactured expansion joint cover or some other type of sealing device.
 - c. Joints where sealant is specified to be provided by manufacturer of product to be sealed.
 - d. Joints where installation of sealant is specified in another section.
 - e. Joints between suspended panel ceilings/grid and walls.
- B. Exterior Joints: Use non-sag non-staining silicone sealant, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Interior Joints: Use non-sag polyurethane sealant, unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Joints between Fixtures in Wet Areas and Floors, Walls, and Ceilings: Mildew-resistant silicone sealant; white.
- D. Interior Wet Areas: Bathrooms, restrooms, and kitchens; fixtures in wet areas include plumbing fixtures, countertops, and cabinets.

2.03 JOINT SEALANTS - GENERAL

2.04 NONSAG JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Non-Staining Silicone Sealant: ASTM C920, Grade NS, Uses M and A; not expected to withstand continuous water immersion or traffic.
 1. Movement Capability: _____, minimum.
 2. Non-Staining To Porous Stone: Non-staining to light-colored natural stone when tested in accordance with ASTM C1248.
 3. Dirt Pick-Up: Reduced dirt pick-up compared to other silicone sealants.
 4. Color: To be selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.
- B. Mildew-Resistant Silicone Sealant: ASTM C920, Grade NS, Uses M and A; single component, mildew resistant; not expected to withstand continuous water immersion or traffic.
 1. Color: White.
- C. Polyurethane Sealant: ASTM C920, Grade NS, Uses M and A; single or multi-component; not expected to withstand continuous water immersion or traffic.
 1. Movement Capability: Plus and minus 25 percent, minimum.
 2. Color: To be selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.

2.05 ACCESSORIES

- A. Backer Rod: Cylindrical cellular foam rod with surface that sealant will not adhere to, compatible with specific sealant used, and recommended by backing and sealant manufacturers for specific application.
- B. Backing Tape: Self-adhesive polyethylene tape with surface that sealant will not adhere to and recommended by tape and sealant manufacturers for specific application.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that joints are ready to receive work.
- B. Verify that backing materials are compatible with sealants.
- C. Verify that backer rods are of the correct size.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Remove loose materials and foreign matter that could impair adhesion of sealant.
- B. Clean joints, and prime as necessary, in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Perform preparation in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and ASTM C1193.
- D. Mask elements and surfaces adjacent to joints from damage and disfigurement due to sealant work; be aware that sealant drips and smears may not be completely removable.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Perform work in accordance with sealant manufacturer's requirements for preparation of surfaces and material installation instructions.
- B. Perform installation in accordance with ASTM C1193.
- C. Install bond breaker backing tape where backer rod cannot be used.
- D. Install sealant free of air pockets, foreign embedded matter, ridges, and sags, and without getting sealant on adjacent surfaces.
- E. Do not install sealant when ambient temperature is outside manufacturer's recommended temperature range, or will be outside that range during the entire curing period, unless manufacturer's approval is obtained and instructions are followed.
- F. Nonsag Sealants: Tool surface concave, unless otherwise indicated; remove masking tape immediately after tooling sealant surface.

3.04 POST-OCCUPANCY

- A. Post-Occupancy Inspection: Perform visual inspection of entire length of project sealant joints at a time that joints have opened to their greatest width; i.e. at the low temperature in the thermal cycle. Report failures immediately and repair.

END OF SECTION 07 92 00

SECTION 08 11 13
HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Non-fire-rated hollow metal doors and frames.
- B. Hollow metal frames for wood doors.
- C. Thermally insulated hollow metal doors with frames.
- D. Hollow metal borrowed lites glazing frames.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 08 71 00 - Door Hardware.
- B. Section 08 80 00 - Glazing: Glass for doors and borrowed lites.

1.03 ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

- A. ANSI - American National Standards Institute.
- B. HMMA - Hollow Metal Manufacturers Association.
- C. NFPA - National Fire Protection Association.
- D. SDI - Steel Door Institute.
- E. UL - Underwriters Laboratories.

1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ADA Standards - Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Standards for Accessible Design; 2010.
- B. ANSI/SDI A250.4 - Test Procedure and Acceptance Criteria for Physical Endurance for Steel Doors, Frames and Frame Anchors; 2011.
- C. ANSI/SDI A250.8 - Specifications for Standard Steel Doors and Frames (SDI-100); 2014.
- D. ANSI/SDI A250.10 - Test Procedure and Acceptance Criteria for Prime Painted Steel Surfaces for Steel Doors and Frames; 2011.
- E. ASTM A653/A653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process; 2015.
- F. ASTM A1008/A1008M - Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Cold-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, Solution Hardened, and Bake Hardenable; 2016.
- G. ASTM A1011/A1011M - Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet and Strip, Hot-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, and Ultra-High Strength; 2015.
- H. BHMA A156.115 - American National Standard for Hardware Preparation in Steel Doors and Steel Frames; 2014.
- I. ICC A117.1 - Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities; 2017.
- J. NAAMM HMMA 830 - Hardware Selection for Hollow Metal Doors and Frames; 2002.
- K. NAAMM HMMA 831 - Hardware Locations for Hollow Metal Doors and Frames; 2011.
- L. NAAMM HMMA 840 - Guide Specifications for Installation and Storage of Hollow Metal Doors and Frames; 2007.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Materials and details of design and construction, hardware locations, reinforcement type and locations, anchorage and fastening methods, and finishes.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- C. Shop Drawings: Details of each opening, showing elevations, glazing, frame profiles, and any indicated finish requirements.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section, with not less than three years documented experience.
 - 1. Provide hollow metal frames from SDI Certified manufacturer.
- B. Maintain at project site copies of reference standards relating to installation of products specified.

1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with NAAMM HMMA 840 or ANSI/SDI A250.8 (SDI-100) in accordance with specified requirements.
- B. Protect with resilient packaging; avoid humidity build-up under coverings; prevent corrosion and adverse effects on factory applied painted finish.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 DESIGN CRITERIA

- A. Requirements for Hollow Metal Doors and Frames:
 - 1. Steel used for fabrication of doors and frames shall comply with one or more of the following requirements; Galvannealed steel conforming to ASTM A653/A653M, cold-rolled steel conforming to ASTM A1008/A1008M, or hot-rolled pickled and oiled (HRPO) steel conforming to ASTM A1011/A1011M, Commercial Steel (CS) Type B for each.
 - 2. Accessibility: Comply with ICC A117.1 and ADA Standards.
 - 3. Exterior Door Top Closures: Flush end closure channel, with top and door faces aligned.
 - 4. Door Edge Profile: Manufacturers standard for application indicated.
 - 5. Typical Door Face Sheets: Flush.
 - 6. Glazed Lights: Non-removable stops on non-secure side; sizes and configurations as indicated on drawings. Style: Manufacturers standard.
 - 7. Hardware Preparations, Selections and Locations: Comply with NAAMM HMMA 830 and NAAMM HMMA 831 or BHMA A156.115 and ANSI/SDI A250.8 (SDI-100) in accordance with specified requirements.
 - 8. Zinc Coating for Typical Interior and/or Exterior Locations: Provide metal components zinc-coated (galvanized) and/or zinc-iron alloy-coated (galvannealed) by the hot-dip process in accordance with ASTM A653/A653M, with manufacturer's standard coating thickness, unless noted otherwise for specific hollow metal doors and frames.
 - a. Based on SDI Standards: Provide at least A40/ZF120 (galvannealed) when necessary, coating not required for typical interior door applications, and at least A60/ZF180 (galvannealed) for corrosive locations.
- B. Combined Requirements: If a particular door and frame unit is indicated to comply with more than one type of requirement, comply with the specified requirements for each type; for instance, an exterior door that is also indicated as being sound-rated must comply with the requirements specified for exterior doors and for sound-rated doors; where two requirements conflict, comply with the most stringent.

2.02 HOLLOW METAL DOORS

- A. Exterior Doors: Thermally insulated.
 - 1. Based on SDI Standards: ANSI/SDI A250.8 (SDI-100).
 - a. Level 2 - Heavy-duty.
 - b. Physical Performance Level B, 500,000 cycles; in accordance with ANSI/SDI A250.4.
 - c. Model 1 - Full Flush.
 - d. Door Face Metal Thickness: 18 gage, 0.042 inch, minimum.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- e. Zinc Coating: A60/ZF180 galvanized coating; ASTM A653/A653M.
 2. Core Material: Manufacturers standard core material/construction and in compliance with requirements.
 3. Door Thermal Resistance: R-Value of ____.
 4. Door Thickness: 1-3/4 inch, nominal.
 5. Weatherstripping: Refer to Section 08 71 00.
 6. Door Finish: Factory primed and field finished.
- B. Interior Doors, Non-Fire Rated:
1. Based on SDI Standards: ANSI/SDI A250.8 (SDI-100).
 - a. Level 2 - Heavy-duty.
 - b. Physical Performance Level B, 500,000 cycles; in accordance with ANSI/SDI A250.4.
 - c. Model 1 - Full Flush.
 - d. Door Face Metal Thickness: 18 gage, 0.042 inch, minimum.
 2. Door Thickness: 1-3/4 inch, nominal.
 3. Door Finish: Factory primed and field finished.

2.03 HOLLOW METAL FRAMES

- A. Comply with standards and/or custom guidelines as indicated for corresponding door in accordance with applicable door frame requirements.
- B. Frame Finish: Factory primed and field finished.
- C. Exterior Door Frames: Full profile/continuously welded type.
 1. Galvanizing: Components hot-dipped zinc-iron alloy-coated (galvanized) in accordance with ASTM A653/A653M, with A40/ZF120 coating.
 2. Frame Metal Thickness: 18 gage, 0.042 inch, minimum.
 3. Weatherstripping: Separate, see Section 08 71 00.
- D. Interior Door Frames, Non-Fire Rated: Full profile/continuously welded type.
 1. Frame Metal Thickness: 18 gage, 0.042 inch, minimum.
- E. Frames for Wood Doors: Comply with frame requirements in accordance with corresponding door.
- F. Borrowed Lites Glazing Frames: Construction and face dimensions to match door frames, and as indicated on drawings.
- G. Provide mortar guard boxes for hardware cut-outs in frames to be installed in masonry or to be grouted.
- H. Frames in Masonry Walls: Size to suit masonry coursing with head member 4 inch high to fill opening without cutting masonry units.

2.04 FINISHES

- A. Primer: Rust-inhibiting, complying with ANSI/SDI A250.10, door manufacturer's standard.
- B. Bituminous Coating: Asphalt emulsion or other high-build, water-resistant, resilient coating.

2.05 ACCESSORIES

- A. Glazing: As specified in Section 08 80 00, factory installed.
- B. Removable Stops: Rolled steel bar, shape as indicated on drawings, mitered or butted corners; prepared for countersink style tamper proof screws.
- C. Grout for Frames: Portland cement grout with maximum 4 inch slump for hand troweling; thinner pumpable grout is prohibited.
- D. Silencers: Resilient rubber, fitted into drilled hole; provide three on strike side of single door, three on center mullion of pairs, and two on head of pairs without center mullions.
- E. Temporary Frame Spreaders: Provide for factory- or shop-assembled frames.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify existing conditions before starting work.
- B. Verify that opening sizes and tolerances are acceptable.
- C. Verify that finished walls are in plane to ensure proper door alignment.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Coat inside of frames to be installed in masonry or to be grouted, with bituminous coating, prior to installation.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Install doors and frames in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and related requirements of specified door and frame standards or custom guidelines indicated.
- B. Coordinate frame anchor placement with wall construction.
- C. Grout frames in masonry construction, using hand trowel methods; brace frames so that pressure of grout before setting will not deform frames.
- D. Install door hardware as specified in Section 08 71 00.
- E. Comply with glazing installation requirements of Section 08 80 00.
- F. Coordinate installation of electrical connections to electrical hardware items.

3.04 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust for smooth and balanced door movement.

3.05 SCHEDULE

- A. Refer to Door and Frame Schedule on the drawings.

END OF SECTION 08 11 13

SECTION 08 14 16
FLUSH WOOD DOORS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Flush wood doors; flush and flush glazed configuration; non-rated.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 08 11 13 - Hollow Metal Doors and Frames.
- B. Section 08 71 00 - Door Hardware.
- C. Section 08 80 00 - Glazing.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. 16 CFR 1201 - Safety Standard for Architectural Glazing Materials; current edition.
- B. AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) - Architectural Woodwork Standards; 2014.
- C. AWMAC/WI (NAAWS) - North American Architectural Woodwork Standards, U.S. Version 3.0; 2016.
- D. WDMA I.S. 1A - Interior Architectural Wood Flush Doors; 2013.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Indicate door core materials and construction; veneer species, type and characteristics.
- C. Shop Drawings: Show doors and frames, elevations, sizes, types, swings, undercuts, beveling, blocking for hardware, factory machining, factory finishing, cutouts for glazing and other details.
- D. Warranty, executed in SLC Mosquito Abatement District's name.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Maintain one copy of the specified door quality standard on site for review during installation and finishing.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section, with not less than three years of documented experience.
- C. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of the type specified in this section, with not less than three years of documented experience.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Package, deliver and store doors in accordance with specified quality standard.
- B. Accept doors on site in manufacturer's packaging. Inspect for damage.
- C. Protect doors with resilient packaging sealed with heat shrunk plastic. Do not store in damp or wet areas; or in areas where sunlight might bleach veneer. Seal top and bottom edges with tinted sealer if stored more than one week. Break seal on site to permit ventilation.

1.07 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Interior Doors: Provide manufacturer's warranty for the life of the installation.
- C. Include coverage for delamination of veneer, warping beyond specified installation tolerances, defective materials, and telegraphing core construction.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 DOORS

- A. Doors: Refer to drawings for locations and additional requirements.
 - 1. Quality Standard: Custom Grade, Heavy Duty performance, in accordance with AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) or AWMAC/WI (NAAWS), unless noted otherwise.
 - 2. Wood Veneer Faced Doors: 5-ply unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Interior Doors: 1-3/4 inches thick unless otherwise indicated; flush construction.
 - 1. Provide solid core doors at each location.

2.02 DOOR AND PANEL CORES

- A. Non-Rated Solid Core and 20 Minute Rated Doors: Type particleboard core (PC), plies and faces as indicated.

2.03 DOOR FACINGS

- A. Veneer Facing for Transparent Finish: Red oak, veneer grade in accordance with quality standard indicated, plain sliced (flat cut), with book match between leaves of veneer, running match of spliced veneer leaves assembled on door or panel face.
 - 1. Vertical Edges: Same species as face veneer.
- B. Facing Adhesive: Type I - waterproof.

2.04 DOOR CONSTRUCTION

- A. Fabricate doors in accordance with door quality standard specified.
- B. Cores Constructed with stiles and rails:
 - 1. Provide solid blocks at lock edge for hardware reinforcement.
- C. Factory machine doors for hardware other than surface-mounted hardware, in accordance with hardware requirements and dimensions.
- D. Factory fit doors for frame opening dimensions identified on shop drawings, with edge clearances in accordance with specified quality standard.
- E. Provide edge clearances in accordance with the quality standard specified.

2.05 FACTORY FINISHING - WOOD VENEER DOORS

- A. Finish work in accordance with AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) or AWMAC/WI (NAAWS), Section 5 - Finishing for grade specified and as follows:
 - 1. Transparent:
 - a. System - 1, Lacquer, Nitrocellulose.
 - b. Stain: As selected by Architect.
 - c. Sheen: Semigloss.
- B. Finish work in accordance with WDMA I.S. 1A for grade specified and as follows:
 - 1. Transparent:
 - a. System - TR-2, Catalyzed Lacquer.
 - b. Stain: As selected by Architect.
 - c. Sheen: Semigloss.
- C. Factory finish doors in accordance with approved sample.
- D. Seal door top edge with color sealer to match door facing.

2.06 ACCESSORIES

- A. Hollow Metal Door Frames: As specified in Section 08 11 13.
- B. Glazed Openings:
 - 1. Laminated Safety Glass: Comply with 16 CFR 1201 test requirements for Category II.
 - 2. Glazing: Single vision units, 1/4 inch thick glass.
 - 3. Tint: Clear.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- C. Glazing Stops: Wood, of same species as door facing, butted corners; prepared for countersink style tamper proof screws.
- D. Door Hardware: As specified in Section 08 71 00.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify existing conditions before starting work.
- B. Verify that opening sizes and tolerances are acceptable.
- C. Do not install doors in frame openings that are not plumb or are out-of-tolerance for size or alignment.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install doors in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and specified quality standard.
- B. Factory-Finished Doors: Do not field cut or trim; if fit or clearance is not correct, replace door.
- C. Use machine tools to cut or drill for hardware.
- D. Coordinate installation of doors with installation of frames and hardware.
- E. Coordinate installation of glazing.

3.03 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust doors for smooth and balanced door movement.
- B. Adjust closers for full closure.

END OF SECTION 08 14 16

SECTION 08 31 00
ACCESS DOORS AND PANELS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Ceiling access door and frame units.

1.02 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate exact position of each access door and/or panel unit.

1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 ACCESS DOORS AND PANELS ASSEMBLIES

- A. Ceiling-Mounted Units:
 - 1. Location: _____.
 - 2. Material: Steel.
 - 3. Size - Other Ceilings: 12 inch by 12 inch.
 - 4. Door/Panel: Hinged, standard duty, with tool-operated spring or cam lock and no handle.

2.02 CEILING-MOUNTED UNITS

- A. Ceiling-Mounted Units: Factory fabricated door and frame, fully assembled units with corner joints welded, filled and ground flush; square and without rack or warp; coordinate requirements with type of installation assembly being used for each unit.
 - 1. Door Style: Single thickness with rolled or turned in edges.
 - 2. Frames: 16 gage, 0.0598 inch, minimum thickness.
 - 3. Steel Finish: Primed.
 - 4. Primed and Factory Finish: Polyester powder coat; color as selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard colors.
 - 5. Hardware:
 - a. Hinges for Non-Fire-Rated Units: Concealed, constant force closure spring type.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that rough openings are correctly sized and located.
- B. Begin installation only after substrates have been properly prepared, and if the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Clean surfaces thoroughly prior to proceeding with this work.
- B. Prepare surfaces using methods recommended by manufacturer for applicable substrates in accordance with project conditions.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Install units in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install frames plumb and level in openings, and secure units rigidly in place.
- C. Position units to provide convenient access to concealed equipment when necessary.

END OF SECTION 08 31 00

**SECTION 08 33 23
OVERHEAD COILING DOORS**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Overhead coiling doors, operating hardware, non-fire-rated and exterior, electric operation.
- B. Wiring from electric circuit disconnect to operator to control station.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 26 05 83 - Wiring Connections: Power to disconnect.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM A36/A36M - Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel; 2014.
- B. ASTM A123/A123M - Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products; 2015.
- C. ASTM A653/A653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process; 2015.
- D. ITS (DIR) - Directory of Listed Products; current edition.
- E. NEMA 250 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum); 2014.
- F. NEMA ICS 2 - Industrial Control and Systems Controllers, Contactors and Overload Relays Rated 600 Volts; 2000 (R2005), with errata, 2008.
- G. NEMA MG 1 - Motors and Generators; 2016.
- H. UL (DIR) - Online Certifications Directory; current listings at database.ul.com.
- I. UL 325 - Standard for Door, Drapery, Gate, Louver, and Window Operators and Systems; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide general construction, electrical equipment, and component connections and details.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate pertinent dimensioning, anchorage methods, hardware locations, and installation details.
- D. Maintenance Data: Indicate lubrication requirements and frequency and periodic adjustments required.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Products Requiring Electrical Connection: Listed and classified by UL (DIR) as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 COILING DOORS

- A. Exterior Coiling Doors: Steel slat curtain.
 - 1. Capable of withstanding positive and negative wind loads of 20 psf, without undue deflection or damage to components.
 - 2. Sandwich slat construction with insulated core of foamed-in-place polyurethane insulation; minimum R-value of 8.1.
 - 3. Nominal Slat Size: 3 inches wide x required length.
 - 4. Finish: Anodized, color as selected.
 - 5. Guide, Angles: Galvanized steel.
 - 6. Hood Enclosure: Manufacturer's standard; primed steel.
 - 7. Electric operation.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

8. Mounting: Surface mounted.
- B. Non-Fire-Rated Interior Coiling Doors: Steel slat curtain.
 1. Nominal Slat Size: 3 inches wide x required length.
 2. Finish: Anodized, color as selected.
 3. Guides, Angles: Galvanized steel.
 4. Hood Enclosure: Manufacturer's standard; primed steel.
 5. Electric operation.
 6. Mounting: Surface mounted.

2.02 MATERIALS

- A. Curtain Construction: Interlocking slats.
 1. Slat Ends: Alternate slats fitted with end locks to act as wearing surface in guides and to prevent lateral movement.
 2. Curtain Bottom: Fitted with angles to provide reinforcement and positive contact in closed position.
 3. Weatherstripping: Moisture and rot proof, resilient type, located at jamb edges, bottom of curtain, and where curtain enters hood enclosure of exterior doors.
- B. Steel Slats: Minimum thickness, ___ gage, ___ inch; ASTM A653/A653M galvanized steel sheet.
- C. Guide Construction: Continuous, of profile to retain door in place, mounting brackets of same metal.
- D. Guides - Angle: ASTM A36/A36M metal angles, size as required for wind loading.
 1. Hot-dip galvanized in compliance with ASTM A123/A123M.
- E. Hood Enclosure: Internally reinforced to maintain rigidity and shape.
 1. Prime paint.
- F. Lock Hardware:
 1. For motor operated units, additional lock or latching mechanisms are not required.
- G. Roller Shaft Counterbalance: Steel pipe and helical steel spring system, capable of producing torque sufficient to ensure smooth operation of curtain from any position and capable of holding position at mid-travel; with adjustable spring tension; requiring 25 lb nominal force to operate.

2.03 ELECTRIC OPERATION

- A. Operator, Controls, Actuators, and Safeties: Comply with UL 325; provide products listed by ITS (DIR), UL (DIR), or testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 1. Provide interlock switches on motor operated units.
- B. Electric Operators:
 1. Mounting: Side mounted.
 2. Motor Enclosure:
 - a. Exterior Doors: NEMA MG 1, Type 4; open drip proof.
 - b. Interior Doors: NEMA MG 1, Type 1; open drip proof.
 3. Motor Rating: 1/2 hp; continuous duty.
 4. Motor Voltage: ___ volt, single phase, 60 Hz.
 5. Motor Controller: NEMA ICS 2, full voltage, reversing magnetic motor starter.
 6. Controller Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1.
 7. Opening Speed: 12 inches per second.
 8. Brake: Adjustable friction clutch type, activated by motor controller.
 9. Manual override in case of power failure.
- C. Control Station: Standard three button (OPEN-STOP-CLOSE) momentary control for each operator.
 1. 24 volt circuit.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

2. Surface mounted. Mounted on the left hand interior side of each door as facing the door.
- D. Safety Edge: Located at bottom of curtain, full width, electro-mechanical sensitized type, wired to stop operator upon striking object, hollow neoprene covered.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that opening sizes, tolerances and conditions are acceptable.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install units in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Use anchorage devices to securely fasten assembly to wall construction and building framing without distortion or stress.
- C. Securely and rigidly brace components suspended from structure. Secure guides to structural members only.
- D. Fit and align assembly including hardware; level and plumb, to provide smooth operation.
- E. Coordinate installation of electrical service with Section 26 05 83.
- F. Complete wiring from disconnect to unit components.
- G. Install perimeter trim, closures, and seals.

3.03 TOLERANCES

- A. Maintain dimensional tolerances and alignment with adjacent work.
- B. Maximum Variation From Plumb: 1/16 inch.
- C. Maximum Variation From Level: 1/16 inch.
- D. Longitudinal or Diagonal Warp: Plus or minus 1/8 inch per 10 ft straight edge.

3.04 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust operating assemblies for smooth and noiseless operation.

3.05 CLEANING

- A. Clean installed components.
- B. Remove labels and visible markings.

END OF SECTION 08 33 23

SECTION 08 42 29
AUTOMATIC ENTRANCES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Packaged power-operated door assemblies of following types:
 - 1. Swinging type.
- B. Operators for doors provided in other sections.
- C. Controllers, actuators and safety devices.
- D. Maintenance.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 26 05 83 - Wiring Connections.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ADA Standards - Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Standards for Accessible Design; 2010.
- B. BHMA A156.19 - American National Standard for Power Assist and Low Energy Power Operated Doors; 2013.
- C. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- D. NFPA 101 - Life Safety Code; 2015.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Indicate layout and dimensions; head, jamb, and sill conditions; elevations; components, anchorage, recesses, materials, and finishes, electrical characteristics and connection requirements.
- C. Product Data: Provide data on system components, sizes, features, and finishes.
- D. Warranty: Submit manufacturer warranty and ensure that forms have been completed in SLC Mosquito Abatement District's name and registered with manufacturer.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section, with not less than three years of documented experience, and a member of AAADM.

1.06 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Provide two year manufacturer warranty.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 POWER OPERATED DOORS

- A. Power Operated Doors: Provide products that comply with NFPA 101 and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction; provide equipment selected for actual door weight and for light pedestrian traffic, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Packaged Door Assemblies: Provide components by single manufacturer, factory-assembled, including doors, frames, operators, actuators, and safeties.
 - 2. Exterior Swinging Doors: Provide equipment capable of operating, closing, and holding doors closed under positive and negative differential pressure; if necessary, provide power closing.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

3. Exterior and Vestibule Doors: Provide equipment suitable for operating temperature range of minus 20 to plus 140 degrees F ambient.
- B. Swinging Doors with Low-Energy Power Operators: Comply with BHMA A156.19; operator activated by pushing or pulling the door or by a manual actuator, not a sensor; safeties not required.
 1. Force Required to Prevent Stopped Door From Opening or Closing: 15 pound-force, maximum, measured at 1 inch from the latch edge of the door at any point in the swing cycle.

2.02 AUTOMATIC ENTRANCE DOOR ASSEMBLIES

- A. Comply with ADA Standards for egress requirements.

2.03 OPERATORS FOR SWINGING DOORS PROVIDED BY OTHERS

- A. Door Operator: Electric, surface mounted overhead.
 1. Operation: Low-energy power open, spring close operation.
 2. Variable speed control for opening and closing cycles.
 3. Actuators and Safeties: As indicated on drawings.

2.04 CONTROLLERS, ACTUATORS, AND SAFETIES

- A. Controller: Provide microprocessor operated controller for each door.
- B. Push Plate Actuator: Standard wall mounted, surface mounted momentary contact type; satin stainless steel plate; _____ inches diameter; labeled PUSH.

2.05 ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS AND COMPONENTS

- A. Electrical Characteristics:
 1. Refer to Section 26 05 83: Electrical connections.
- B. Wiring Terminations: Provide terminal lugs to match branch circuit conductor quantities, sizes, and materials indicated. Enclose terminal lugs in terminal box sized to NFPA 70.
- C. Disconnect Switch: Factory mount disconnect switch in control panel.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that surfaces are ready to receive work and dimensions are as indicated on shop drawings.
- B. Verify that electric power is available and is of the correct characteristics.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install equipment in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.03 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust door equipment for correct function and smooth operation.

3.04 CLEANING

- A. Remove temporary protection, clean exposed surfaces.

3.05 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

- A. Demonstrate operation, operating components, adjustment features, and lubrication requirements.

3.06 MAINTENANCE

- A. Provide service and maintenance of operating equipment for one year from Date of Substantial Completion, at no extra charge to SLC Mosquito Abatement District.

END OF SECTION 08 42 29

SECTION 08 43 13

ALUMINUM-FRAMED STOREFRONTS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Aluminum-framed storefront, with vision glass.
- B. Aluminum doors and frames.
- C. Weatherstripping.
- D. Door hardware.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 08 42 29 - Automatic Entrances.
- B. Section 08 80 00 - Glazing: Glass and glazing accessories.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AAMA CW-10 - Care and Handling of Architectural Aluminum From Shop to Site; 2015.
- B. AAMA 611 - Voluntary Specification for Anodized Architectural Aluminum; 2014 (2015 Errata).
- C. ASCE 7 - Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures; 2010, with 2013 Supplements and Errata.
- D. ASTM B221 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes; 2014.
- E. ASTM B221M - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes (Metric); 2013.
- F. ASTM E283 - Standard Test Method for Determining the Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences Across the Specimen; 2004 (Reapproved 2012).
- G. ASTM E330/E330M - Standard Test Method for Structural Performance of Exterior Windows, Doors, Skylights and Curtain Walls by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference; 2014.
- H. ASTM E331 - Standard Test Method for Water Penetration of Exterior Windows, Skylights, Doors, and Curtain Walls by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference; 2000 (Reapproved 2016).

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate system dimensions, framed opening requirements and tolerances, affected related Work, expansion and contraction joint location and details, and field welding required.
- C. Design Data: Provide framing member structural and physical characteristics, engineering calculations, and dimensional limitations.
- D. Hardware Schedule: Complete itemization of each item of hardware to be provided for each door, cross-referenced to door identification numbers in Contract Documents.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Designer Qualifications: Design structural support framing components under direct supervision of a Professional Structural Engineer experienced in design of this Work and licensed in the State in which the Project is located.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of type specified and with at least three years of documented experience.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Handle products of this section in accordance with AAMA CW-10.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- B. Protect finished aluminum surfaces with wrapping. Do not use adhesive papers or sprayed coatings that bond to aluminum when exposed to sunlight or weather.

1.07 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not install sealants when ambient temperature is less than 40 degrees F. Maintain this minimum temperature during and 48 hours after installation.

1.08 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Provide five year manufacturer warranty against failure of glass seal on insulating glass units, including interpane dusting or misting. Include provision for replacement of failed units.
- C. Provide five year manufacturer warranty against excessive degradation of exterior finish. Include provision for replacement of units with excessive fading, chalking, or flaking.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 STOREFRONT

- A. Aluminum-Framed Storefront: Factory fabricated, factory finished aluminum framing members with infill, and related flashings, anchorage and attachment devices.
 - 1. Glazing Rabbet: For 1 inch insulating glazing.
 - 2. Glazing Position: Front-set.
 - 3. Vertical Mullion Dimensions: 2 inches wide by 4-1/2 inches deep.
 - 4. Finish: Class II color anodized.
 - a. Factory finish all surfaces that will be exposed in completed assemblies.
 - 5. Finish Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard line.
 - 6. Fabrication: Joints and corners flush, hairline, and weatherproof, accurately fitted and secured; prepared to receive anchors and hardware; fasteners and attachments concealed from view; reinforced as required for imposed loads.
 - 7. Construction: Eliminate noises caused by wind and thermal movement, prevent vibration harmonics, and prevent "stack effect" in internal spaces.
 - 8. System Internal Drainage: Drain to the exterior by means of a weep drainage network any water entering joints, condensation occurring in glazing channel, and migrating moisture occurring within system.
 - 9. Expansion/Contraction: Provide for expansion and contraction within system components caused by cycling temperature range of 170 degrees F over a 12 hour period without causing detrimental effect to system components, anchorages, and other building elements.
 - 10. Movement: Allow for movement between storefront and adjacent construction, without damage to components or deterioration of seals.
 - 11. Perimeter Clearance: Minimize space between framing members and adjacent construction while allowing expected movement.
- B. Performance Requirements:
 - 1. Wind Loads: Design and size components to withstand the specified load requirements without damage or permanent set, when tested in accordance with ASTM E330/E330M, using loads 1.5 times the design wind loads and 10 second duration of maximum load.
 - a. Design Wind Loads: Comply with requirements of ASCE 7.
 - b. Member Deflection: Limit member deflection to flexure limit of glass in any direction, with full recovery of glazing materials.
 - 2. Water Penetration Resistance: No uncontrolled water on interior face, when tested in accordance with ASTM E331 at pressure differential of 8 psf.
 - 3. Air Leakage: Maximum of 0.06 cu ft/min sq ft of wall area, when tested in accordance with ASTM E283 at 6.27 psf pressure differential across assembly.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

2.02 COMPONENTS

- A. Aluminum Framing Members: Tubular aluminum sections, thermally broken with interior section insulated from exterior, drainage holes and internal weep drainage system.
 - 1. Framing members for interior applications need not be thermally broken.
 - 2. Glazing Stops: Flush.
- B. Glazing: As specified in Section 08 80 00.
- C. Swing Doors: Glazed aluminum.
 - 1. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches.
 - 2. Top Rail: 4 inches wide.
 - 3. Vertical Stiles: 4-1/2 inches wide.
 - 4. Bottom Rail: 10 inches wide.
 - 5. Glazing Stops: Square.
 - 6. Finish: Same as storefront.

2.03 MATERIALS

- A. Extruded Aluminum: ASTM B221 (ASTM B221M).
- B. Fasteners: Stainless steel.
- C. Glazing Gaskets: Type to suit application to achieve weather, moisture, and air infiltration requirements.

2.04 FINISHES

- A. Class II Color Anodized Finish: AAMA 611 AA-M12C22A34 Electrolytically deposited colored anodic coating not less than 0.4 mils thick.
- B. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.

2.05 HARDWARE

- A. For each door, include weatherstripping, sill sweep strip, and threshold.
- B. Weatherstripping: Wool pile, continuous and replaceable; provide on all doors.
- C. Sill Sweep Strips: Resilient seal type, retracting, of neoprene; provide on all doors.
- D. Threshold: Extruded aluminum, one piece per door opening, ribbed surface; provide on all doors.
- E. Hinges: Butt type, swing clear; top and bottom.
 - 1. Provide on doors as indicated.
- F. Push/Pull Set: Standard configuration push/pull handles.
 - 1. Provide on doors as indicated.
- G. Exit Devices: Panic type.
 - 1. Provide on doors as indicated.
- H. Door Closers: Exposed overhead.
 - 1. Provide on doors as indicated.
- I. Locks: Dead latch with thumbturn inside; keyed cylinder outside.
 - 1. Provide on doors as indicated.
- J. Automatic Door Operators and Actuators: As specified in Section 08 42 29.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify dimensions, tolerances, and method of attachment with other work.
- B. Verify that wall openings and adjoining air and vapor seal materials are ready to receive work of this section.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install wall system in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Attach to structure to permit sufficient adjustment to accommodate construction tolerances and other irregularities.
- C. Provide alignment attachments and shims to permanently fasten system to building structure.
- D. Align assembly plumb and level, free of warp or twist. Maintain assembly dimensional tolerances, aligning with adjacent work.
- E. Provide thermal isolation where components penetrate or disrupt building insulation.
- F. Install sill flashings. Turn up ends and edges; seal to adjacent work to form water tight dam.
- G. Where fasteners penetrate sill flashings, make watertight by seating and sealing fastener heads to sill flashing.
- H. Pack fibrous insulation in shim spaces at perimeter of assembly to maintain continuity of thermal barrier.
- I. Set thresholds in bed of sealant and secure.
- J. Install hardware using templates provided.
 - 1. See Section 08 42 29 for operator and actuator installation requirements.
- K. Touch-up minor damage to factory applied finish; replace components that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.

3.03 TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum Variation from Plumb: 0.06 inches every 3 ft non-cumulative or 1/16 inches per 10 ft, whichever is less.
- B. Maximum Misalignment of Two Adjoining Members Abutting in Plane: 1/32 inch.

3.04 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust operating hardware and sash for smooth operation.

3.05 CLEANING

- A. Remove protective material from pre-finished aluminum surfaces.
- B. Wash down surfaces with a solution of mild detergent in warm water, applied with soft, clean wiping cloths. Take care to remove dirt from corners. Wipe surfaces clean.

3.06 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products from damage until Date of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 08 43 13

SECTION 08 51 13
ALUMINUM WINDOWS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Extruded aluminum windows with fixed sash.
- B. Factory glazing.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 07 92 00 - Joint Sealants: Sealing joints between window frames and adjacent construction.
- B. Section 08 80 00 - Glazing.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 - North American Fenestration Standard/Specification for windows, doors, and skylights; 2017.
- B. AAMA CW-10 - Care and Handling of Architectural Aluminum From Shop to Site; 2015.
- C. AAMA 611 - Voluntary Specification for Anodized Architectural Aluminum; 2014 (2015 Errata).
- D. ASTM B221 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes; 2014.
- E. ASTM B221M - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes (Metric); 2013.
- F. ASTM E2112 - Standard Practice for Installation of Exterior Windows, Doors and Skylights; 2007 (Reapproved 2016).

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide component dimensions, information on glass and glazing, internal drainage details, and descriptions of hardware and accessories.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate opening dimensions, elevations of different types, framed opening tolerances, method for achieving air and vapor barrier seal to adjacent construction, anchorage locations, _____, and installation requirements.
- D. Grade Substantiation: Prior to submitting shop drawings or starting fabrication, submit one of the following showing compliance with specified grade:
 - 1. Evidence of AAMA Certification.
 - 2. Evidence of WDMA Certification.
 - 3. Test report(s) by independent testing agency itemizing compliance and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- E. Test Reports: Prior to submitting shop drawings or starting fabrication, submit test report(s) by independent testing agency showing compliance with performance requirements in excess of those prescribed by specified grade.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section with minimum three years of documented experience.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with requirements of AAMA CW-10.
- B. Protect finished surfaces with wrapping paper or strippable coating during installation. Do not use adhesive papers or sprayed coatings that bond to substrate when exposed to sunlight or weather.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

1.07 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not install sealants when ambient temperature is less than 40 degrees F.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 WINDOWS

- A. Aluminum Windows: Extruded aluminum frame and sash, factory fabricated, factory finished, with operating hardware, related flashings, and anchorage and attachment devices.
 - 1. Frame Depth: 3-1/2 inches.
 - 2. Fabrication: Joints and corners flush, hairline, and weatherproof, accurately fitted and secured; prepared to receive anchors; fasteners and attachments concealed from view; reinforced as required for operating hardware and imposed loads.
 - 3. Perimeter Clearance: Minimize space between framing members and adjacent construction while allowing expected movement.
 - 4. Movement: Accommodate movement between window and perimeter framing and deflection of lintel, without damage to components or deterioration of seals.
 - 5. System Internal Drainage: Drain to the exterior by means of a weep drainage network any water entering joints, condensation occurring in glazing channel, and migrating moisture occurring within system.
- B. Performance Requirements: Provide products that comply with the following:
 - 1. Grade: AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 requirements for specific window type:
 - a. Performance Class (PC): CW.
 - 2. Design Pressure (DP): In accordance with applicable codes.
 - 3. Member Deflection: Limit member deflection to flexure limit of glass in any direction, with full recovery of glazing materials.
- C. Fixed, Non-Operable Type:
 - 1. Construction: Thermally broken.
 - 2. Glazing: Double; clear; transparent.

2.02 COMPONENTS

- A. Frames: ____ inch wide by ____ inch deep profile, of ____ inch thick section; thermally broken with interior portion of frame insulated from exterior portion; flush glass stops of snap-on type.
- B. Glazing: As specified in Section 08 80 00.
- C. Glazing Materials: As specified in Section 08 80 00.
- D. Sealant for Setting Sills and Sill Flashing: Non-curing butyl type.

2.03 MATERIALS

- A. Extruded Aluminum: ASTM B221 (ASTM B221M), 6063 alloy, T6 temper.

2.04 FINISHES

- A. Class II Color Anodized Finish: AAMA 611 AA-M12C22A34 Electrolytically deposited colored anodic coating not less than 0.4 mils thick.
- B. Finish Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.
- C. Apply 1 coat of bituminous coating to concealed aluminum and steel surfaces in contact with dissimilar materials.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that wall openings and adjoining air and vapor seal materials are ready to receive aluminum windows.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install windows in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install windows in accordance with ASTM E2112.
- C. Attach window frame and shims to perimeter opening to accommodate construction tolerances and other irregularities.
- D. Align window plumb and level, free of warp or twist. Maintain dimensional tolerances and alignment with adjacent work.
- E. Install sill and sill end angles.
- F. Provide thermal isolation where components penetrate or disrupt building insulation. Pack fibrous insulation in shim spaces at perimeter of assembly to maintain continuity of thermal barrier.
- G. Install glass in accordance with requirements specified in Section 08 80 00.

3.03 TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum Variation from Level or Plumb: 1/16 inches every 3 ft non-cumulative or 1/8 inches per 10 ft, whichever is less.

3.04 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust hardware for smooth operation and secure weathertight closure.

3.05 CLEANING

- A. Remove protective material from factory finished aluminum surfaces.
- B. Wash surfaces by method recommended and acceptable to window manufacturer; rinse and wipe surfaces clean.

END OF SECTION 08 51 13

SECTION 08 62 00

UNIT SKYLIGHTS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Thermoformed plastic skylights with integral frame.
- B. Integral insulated curb.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 - North American Fenestration Standard/Specification for windows, doors, and skylights; 2017.
- B. ASTM B221 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes; 2014.
- C. ASTM B221M - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes (Metric); 2013.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide structural, thermal, and daylighting performance values.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate configurations, dimensions, locations, fastening methods, and installation details.
- D. Grade Substantiation: Prior to submitting shop drawings or starting fabrication, submit one of the following showing compliance with specified grade:
 - 1. Evidence of AAMA Certification.
 - 2. Evidence of WDMA Certification.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with not less than three years documented experience.

1.05 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Provide five year manufacturer warranty, including coverage for leakage due to defective skylight materials or construction.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 UNIT SKYLIGHTS

- A. Unit Skylights: Factory-assembled glazing in aluminum frame, free of visual distortion, and weathertight.
 - 1. Shape: Square dome.
 - 2. Glazing: Double.
 - 3. Operation: None; fixed.
 - 4. Nominal Size: 48 by 48 inches.

2.02 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide unit skylights that comply with the following:
 - 1. Grade: AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 requirements for specific skylight type:
 - a. Performance Grade (PG): Equivalent to or greater than specified design pressure.
 - 2. Design Pressure (DP): In accordance with applicable codes.
 - 3. Allow for expansion and contraction within system components caused by a cycling surface temperature range of 170 degrees F without causing detrimental effects to system or components.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

2.03 COMPONENTS

- A. Double Glazing: Acrylic plastic; factory sealed.
 - 1. Outer Glazing: White translucent.
 - 2. Inner Glazing: Clear transparent.
 - 3. Thermal Transmittance (U-Value):.42, nominal.
 - 4. Visible Light Transmittance (VLT):.43 percent , minimum.
 - 5. Ultraviolet (UV) Light Transmission: 2 percent, maximum.
 - 6. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient (SHGC):.28 percent, nominal.
- B. Frames: ASTM B221 (ASTM B221M) Extruded aluminum thermally broken, reinforced and welded corner joints, integral curb frame mounting flange and counterflashing to receive roofing flashing system, with integral condensation collection gutter, glazing retainer; clear anodized finish.

2.04 ACCESSORIES

- A. Anchorage Devices: Type recommended by manufacturer, exposed to view.
- B. Counterflashings: Same metal type and finish as skylight frame.
- C. Sealant: Elastomeric, silicone or polyurethane, compatible with material being sealed .

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify existing conditions before starting work.
- B. Verify that openings and substrate conditions are ready to receive work of this section.
- C. Verify that curbs installed under other sections are complete.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install skylight units and mount securely to curb assembly; install counterflashing as required.
- B. Apply sealant to achieve watertight assembly.

3.03 CLEANING

- A. Remove protective material from prefinished aluminum surfaces.
- B. Wash down exposed surfaces; wipe surfaces clean.
- C. Remove excess sealant.

END OF SECTION 08 62 00

SECTION 08 71 00
DOOR HARDWARE

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Hardware for wood, aluminum, and hollow metal doors.
- B. Electrically operated and controlled hardware.
- C. Thresholds.
- D. Weatherstripping and gasketing.
- E. Gate locks.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 08 43 13 - Aluminum-Framed Storefronts: Door hardware, except as noted in section.
- B. Section 28 10 00 - Access Control: Electronic access control devices.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ADA Standards - Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Standards for Accessible Design; 2010.
- B. BHMA A156.1 - American National Standard for Butts and Hinges; 2013.
- C. BHMA A156.2 - American National Standard for Bored and Preassembled Locks & Latches; 2011.
- D. BHMA A156.3 - American National Standard for Exit Devices; 2014.
- E. BHMA A156.4 - American National Standard for Door Controls - Closers; 2013.
- F. BHMA A156.6 - American National Standard for Architectural Door Trim; 2010.
- G. BHMA A156.12 - American National Standard for Interconnected Locks; 2013.
- H. BHMA A156.13 - American National Standard for Mortise Locks & Latches Series 1000; 2012.
- I. BHMA A156.15 - American National Standard for Release Devices - Closer Holder, Electromagnetic and Electromechanical; 2011.
- J. BHMA A156.16 - American National Standard for Auxiliary Hardware; 2013.
- K. BHMA A156.21 - American National Standard for Thresholds; 2014.
- L. BHMA A156.22 - American National Standard for Door Gasketing and Edge Seal Systems, Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association; 2012.
- M. BHMA A156.23 - American National Standard for Electromagnetic Locks; 2010.
- N. BHMA A156.24 - American National Standard for Delayed Egress Locking Systems; 2012.
- O. BHMA A156.25 - American National Standard for Electrified Locking Devices; 2013.
- P. BHMA A156.28 - American National Standard for Recommended Practices for Mechanical Keying Systems; 2013.
- Q. BHMA A156.31 - American National Standard for Electric Strikes and Frame Mounted Actuators; 2013.
- R. BHMA A156.36 - American National Standard for Auxiliary Locks; 2014.
- S. DHI (LOCS) - Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Standard Steel Doors and Frames; 2004.
- T. DHI WDHS.3 - Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Flush Wood Doors; 1993; also in WDHS-1/WDHS-5 Series, 1996.
- U. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- V. UL (DIR) - Online Certifications Directory; current listings at database.ul.com.

1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate the manufacture, fabrication, and installation of products that door hardware is installed on.
- B. Preinstallation Meeting: Convene a preinstallation meeting one week prior to commencing work of this section; attendance is required by affected installers and the following:
 - 1. Architect.
 - 2. Installer's Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC).
 - 3. Hardware Installer.
 - 4. Owner's Security Consultant.
- C. Furnish templates for door and frame preparation to manufacturers and fabricators of products requiring internal reinforcement for door hardware.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's catalog literature for each type of hardware, marked to clearly show products to be furnished for this project, and includes construction details, material descriptions, finishes, and dimensions and profiles of individual components.
- C. Shop Drawings - Door Hardware Schedule: Submit detailed listing that includes each item of hardware to be installed on each door. Use door numbering scheme as included in Contract Documents.
 - 1. Prepared by or under supervision of Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC).
 - 2. Provide complete description for each door listed.
- D. Shop Drawings - Electrified Door Hardware: Submit diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring for electrified door hardware that include details of interface with building safety and security systems. Provide elevations and diagrams for each electrified door opening as follows:
 - 1. Prepared by or under supervision of Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC) and Electrified Hardware Consultant (EHC).
 - 2. Elevations: Submit front and back elevations of each door opening showing electrified devices with connections installed and an operations narrative describing how opening operates from either side at any given time.
 - 3. Diagrams: Submit point-to-point wiring diagram that shows each device in door opening system with related colored wire connections to each device.
- E. Warranty: Submit manufacturer's warranty and ensure that forms have been completed in SLC Mosquito Abatement District's name and registered with manufacturer.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section with minimum three years of documented experience.

1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Package hardware items individually; label and identify each package with door opening code to match door hardware schedule.

1.08 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Warranty against defects in material and workmanship for period indicated, from Date of Substantial Completion.
 - 1. Closers: Five years, minimum.
 - 2. Exit Devices: Three years, minimum.
 - 3. Locksets and Cylinders: Three years, minimum.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

4. Other Hardware: Two years, minimum.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 DESIGN AND PERFORMANCE CRITERIA

- A. Provide specified door hardware as required to make doors fully functional, compliant with applicable codes, and secure to extent indicated.
- B. Provide individual items of single type, of same model, and by same manufacturer.
- C. Provide door hardware products that comply with the following requirements:
 1. Applicable provisions of federal, state, and local codes.
 2. Products Requiring Electrical Connection: Listed and classified by UL (DIR) as suitable for the purpose specified.
- D. Electrically Operated and/or Controlled Hardware: Provide necessary power supplies, power transfer hinges, relays, and interfaces as required for proper operation; provide wiring between hardware and control components and to building power connection in compliance with NFPA 70.
 1. Refer to Section 28 10 00 for additional access control system requirements.
- E. Lock Function: Provide lock and latch function numbers and descriptions of manufacturer's series. Refer to Shop Drawing submittal of Door Hardware Schedule.
- F. Fasteners:
 1. Provide fasteners of proper type, size, quantity, and finish that comply with commercially recognized standards for proposed applications.
 - a. Aluminum fasteners are not permitted.
 - b. Provide phillips flat-head screws with heads finished to match door surface hardware unless otherwise indicated.

2.02 HINGES

- A. Hinges: Complying with BHMA A156.1, Grade 1.
 1. Provide hinges on every swinging door.
 2. Provide following quantity of butt hinges for each door:

2.03 FLUSH BOLTS

- A. Flush Bolts: Complying with BHMA A156.16, Grade 1.
 1. Flush Bolt Throw: 3/4 inch, minimum.

2.04 EXIT DEVICES

- A. Exit Devices: Complying with BHMA A156.3, Grade 1.
 1. Lever design to match lockset trim.
 2. Provide cylinder with cylinder dogging or locking trim.
 3. Provide exit devices properly sized for door width and height.
 4. Provide strike as recommended by manufacturer for application indicated.
 5. Provide UL (DIR) listed exit device assemblies for fire-rated doors and panic device assemblies for non-fire-rated doors.

2.05 ELECTRIC STRIKES

- A. Electric Strikes: Complying with BHMA A156.31, Grade 1.
 1. Provide UL (DIR) listed burglary-resistant electric strike; style to suit locks.
 2. Provide non-handed 24 VDC electric strike suitable for door frame material and scheduled lock configuration.

2.06 ELECTROMAGNETIC LOCKS

- A. Electromagnetic Locks: Complying with BHMA A156.23, Grade 1.
 1. Holding Force: 600 lbs, minimum.
 2. Voltage: 12 VDC, and provide power supplies by same manufacturer as locks.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

3. Mounting: Surface mounted to door and frame on secure side, with fasteners, brackets, and spacer bars as required for application.

2.07 DELAYED-EGRESS ELECTROMAGNETIC LOCKS

- A. Delayed-Egress Electromagnetic Locks: Complying with BHMA A156.24, Grade 1.
 1. Holding Force: 600 lbs, minimum.
 2. Voltage: 12 VDC, and provide power supplies by same manufacturer as locks.
 3. Mounting: Surface mounted to door and frame on secure side, with fasteners, brackets, and spacer bars as required for application.

2.08 LOCK CYLINDERS

- A. Lock Cylinders: Provide key access on outside of each lock, unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Provide cylinders from same manufacturer as locking device.
 2. Provide cams and/or tailpieces as required for locking devices.

2.09 CYLINDRICAL LOCKS

- A. Cylindrical Locks (Bored): Complying with BHMA A156.2, Grade 1, 4000 Series.
 1. Bored Hole: 2-1/8 inch diameter.
 2. Latchbolt Throw: 1/2 inch, minimum.
 3. Backset: 2-3/4 inch unless otherwise indicated.
 4. Strikes: Provide manufacturer's standard strike for each latchset or lockset with strike box and curved lip extending to protect frame in compliance with indicated requirements.
 - a. Finish: To match lock or latch.

2.10 MORTISE LOCKS

- A. Mortise Locks: Complying with BHMA A156.13, Grade 1, Security, 1000 Series.
 1. Latchbolt Throw: 3/4 inch, minimum.
 2. Deadbolt Throw: 1 inch, minimum.
 3. Backset: 2-3/4 inch unless otherwise indicated.
 4. Strikes: Provide manufacturer's standard strike for each latchset or lockset with strike box and curved lip extending to protect frame in compliance with indicated requirements.
 - a. Finish: To match lock or latch.

2.11 ELECTROMECHANICAL LOCKS

- A. Electromechanical Locks: Complying with BHMA A156.25, Grade 1.
 1. Provide motor-driven or solenoid-driven locks, with strike that is applicable to frame.
 2. Type: Mortise deadbolt.

2.12 INTERCONNECTED LOCKS

- A. Interconnected Locks: Complying with BHMA A156.12, Grade 1, 5000 Series.

2.13 AUXILIARY LOCKS (DEADLOCKS)

- A. Auxiliary Locks (Deadlocks): Complying with BHMA A156.36, Grade 1.

2.14 DOOR PULLS AND PUSH PLATES

- A. Door Pulls and Push Plates: Complying with BHMA A156.6.
 1. Pull Type: Straight, unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Push Plate Type: Flat, with square corners, unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Edges: Beveled, unless otherwise indicated.
 3. Material: Aluminum, unless otherwise indicated.

2.15 COORDINATORS

- A. Coordinators: Provide on doors having closers and self-latching or automatic flush bolts to ensure that inactive door leaf closes before active door leaf.
 1. Type: Bar, unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Material: Aluminum, unless otherwise indicated.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

3. Ensure that coordination of other door hardware affected by placement of coordinators and carry bar is applied properly for completely operable installation.

2.16 CLOSERS

- A. Closers: Complying with BHMA A156.4, Grade 1.
 1. Type: Surface mounted to door.
 2. Provide door closer on each exterior door.

2.17 PROTECTION PLATES

- A. Protection Plates: Complying with BHMA A156.6.
- B. Edges: Beveled, on four sides unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Fasteners: Countersunk screw fasteners.

2.18 KICK PLATES

- A. Kick Plates: Provide along bottom edge of push side of every door with closer, except aluminum storefront and glass entry doors, unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Size: 8 inch high by 2 inch less door width (LDW) on push side of door.

2.19 ELECTROMAGNETIC DOOR HOLDERS

- A. Electromagnetic Door Holders: Complying with BHMA A156.15.
 1. Type: Wall mounted, single unit, standard duty, with strike plate attached to door.
 2. Holding Force, Standard Duty: 40 lbs-force, minimum.
 3. Voltage: 12 VDC, and provide power supplies by same manufacturer as holders.
 4. Provide interface with fire detectors and fire-alarm system for fire-rated door assemblies.

2.20 WALL STOPS

- A. Wall Stops: Complying with BHMA A156.16, Grade 1 and Resilient Material Retention Test as described in this standard.
 1. Type: Bumper, concave, wall stop.
 2. Material: Aluminum housing with rubber insert.

2.21 ASTRAGALS

- A. Astragals: Complying with BHMA A156.22.
 1. Type: Split, two parts, and with sealing gasket.
 2. Material: Aluminum, with neoprene weatherstripping.
 3. Provide non-corroding fasteners at exterior locations.

2.22 THRESHOLDS

- A. Thresholds: Complying with BHMA A156.21.
 1. Provide threshold at each exterior door, unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Type: Flat surface.
 3. Material: Aluminum.
 4. Threshold Surface: Fluted horizontal grooves across full width.
 5. Field cut threshold to profile of frame and width of door sill for tight fit.
 6. Provide non-corroding fasteners at exterior locations.

2.23 WEATHERSTRIPPING AND GASKETING

- A. Weatherstripping and Gasketing: Complying with BHMA A156.22.
 1. Head and Jamb Type: Adjustable.
 2. Door Sweep Type: Encased in retainer.
 3. Material: Aluminum, with brush weatherstripping.

2.24 9. MISCELLANEOUS ITEMS (ON DOOR)

2.25 SILENCERS

- A. Silencers: Provide at equal locations on door frame to mute sound of door's impact upon closing.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

1. Single Door: Provide three on strike jamb of frame.
2. Pair of Doors: Provide two on head of frame, one for each door at latch side.
3. Material: Rubber, gray color.

2.26 KEY CONTROL SYSTEMS

2.27 KEY CABINET

- A. Key Cabinet: Sheet steel construction, piano hinged door with key lock; BHMA A156.28.
 1. Mounting: Wall-mounted.
 2. Capacity: Actual quantity of keys, plus 25 percent additional capacity.
 3. Size key hooks to hold 6 keys each.
 4. Finish: Baked enamel, manufacturer's standard color.
 5. Key cabinet lock to building keying system.

2.28 FIRE DEPARTMENT LOCK BOX

- A. Fire Department Lock Box:
 1. Heavy-duty, recessed, solid stainless-steel box with hinged door and interior gasket seal; single drill resistant lock with dust covers and tamper alarm.
 2. Capacity: Holds 10 keys.
 3. Finish: Manufacturer's standard dark bronze.

2.29 FINISHES

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that doors and frames are ready to receive this work; labeled, fire-rated doors and frames are properly installed, and dimensions are as indicated on shop drawings.
- B. Verify that electric power is available to power operated devices and of correct characteristics.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install hardware in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and applicable codes.
- B. Use templates provided by hardware item manufacturer.
- C. Door Hardware Mounting Heights: Distance from finished floor to center line of hardware item. As indicated in following list; unless noted otherwise in Door Hardware Schedule or on drawings.
 1. For Steel Doors and Frames: Install in compliance with DHI (LOCS) recommendations.
 2. For Aluminum-Framed Storefront Doors and Frames: Refer to Section 08 43 13.
 3. For Wood Doors: Install in compliance with DHI WDHS.3 recommendations.
 4. Mounting heights in compliance with ADA Standards:
 - a. Locksets: 40-5/16 inch.
 - b. Push Plates/Pull Bars: 42 inch.
 - c. Deadlocks (Deadbolts): 48 inch.
 - d. Exit Devices: 40-5/16 inch.
- D. Set exterior door thresholds with full-width bead of elastomeric sealant at each point of contact with floor providing a continuous weather seal; anchor thresholds with stainless steel countersunk screws.

3.03 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform field inspection and testing under provisions of Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements.

3.04 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust work under provisions of Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements.
- B. Adjust hardware for smooth operation.
- C. Adjust gasketing for complete, continuous seal; replace if unable to make complete seal.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

3.05 CLEANING

- A. Clean adjacent surfaces soiled by hardware installation.
- B. Replace items that cannot be cleaned to manufacturer's level of finish quality at no additional cost.

3.06 PROTECTION

- A. Protect finished Work under provisions of Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements.
- B. Do not permit adjacent work to damage hardware or finish.

END OF SECTION 08 71 00

SECTION 08 80 00

GLAZING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Insulating glass units.
- B. Glazing units.
- C. Glazing compounds and accessories.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. 16 CFR 1201 - Safety Standard for Architectural Glazing Materials; current edition.
- B. ANSI Z97.1 - American National Standard for Safety Glazing Materials Used in Buildings - Safety Performance Specifications and Methods of Test; 2015.
- C. ASCE 7 - Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures; 2010, with 2013 Supplements and Errata.
- D. ASTM C864 - Standard Specification for Dense Elastomeric Compression Seal Gaskets, Setting Blocks, and Spacers; 2005 (Reapproved 2015).
- E. ASTM C920 - Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants; 2014a.
- F. ASTM C1036 - Standard Specification for Flat Glass; 2016.
- G. ASTM C1048 - Standard Specification for Heat-Strengthened and Fully Tempered Flat Glass; 2012.
- H. ASTM C1193 - Standard Guide for Use of Joint Sealants; 2016.
- I. ASTM C1376 - Standard Specification for Pyrolytic and Vacuum Deposition Coatings on Flat Glass; 2015.
- J. ASTM E1300 - Standard Practice for Determining Load Resistance of Glass in Buildings; 2016.
- K. ASTM E2190 - Standard Specification for Insulating Glass Unit Performance and Evaluation; 2010.
- L. GANA (SM) - GANA Sealant Manual; 2008.
- M. NFRC 100 - Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product U-factors; 2014.
- N. NFRC 200 - Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product Solar Heat Gain Coefficient and Visible Transmittance at Normal Incidence; 2014.
- O. NFRC 300 - Test Method for Determining the Solar Optical Properties of Glazing Materials and Systems; 2014.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data on Insulating Glass Unit and Glazing Unit Glazing Types: Provide structural, physical and environmental characteristics, size limitations, special handling and installation requirements.
- C. Product Data on Glazing Compounds and Accessories: Provide chemical, functional, and environmental characteristics, limitations, special application requirements. Identify available colors.
- D. Samples: Submit two samples 12 by 12 inch in size of glass units.
- E. Certificate: Certify that products of this section meet or exceed specified requirements.
- F. Warranty Documentation: Submit manufacturer warranty and ensure that forms have been completed in SLC Mosquito Abatement District's name and registered with manufacturer.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years of documented experience.

1.05 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not install glazing when ambient temperature is less than 40 degrees F.
- B. Maintain minimum ambient temperature before, during and 24 hours after installation of glazing compounds.

1.06 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Insulating Glass Units: Provide a five (5) year manufacturer warranty to include coverage for seal failure, interpane dusting or misting, including providing products to replace failed units.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS - EXTERIOR GLAZING ASSEMBLIES

- A. Provide type and thickness of exterior glazing assemblies to support assembly dead loads, and to withstand live loads caused by positive and negative wind pressure acting normal to plane of glass.
 - 1. Design Pressure: Calculated in accordance with ASCE 7.
 - 2. Comply with ASTM E1300 for design load resistance of glass type, thickness, dimensions, and maximum lateral deflection of supported glass.
 - 3. Provide glass edge support system sufficiently stiff to limit the lateral deflection of supported glass edges to less than 1/175 of their lengths under specified design load.
 - 4. Glass thicknesses listed are minimum.
- B. Vapor Retarder and Air Barrier Seals: Provide completed assemblies that maintain continuity of building enclosure vapor retarder and air barrier.
 - 1. In conjunction with vapor retarder and joint sealer materials described in other sections.
- C. Thermal and Optical Performance: Provide exterior glazing products with performance properties as indicated. Performance properties are in accordance with manufacturer's published data as determined with the following procedures and/or test methods:
 - 1. Center of Glass U-Value: Comply with NFRC 100 using Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory (LBNL) WINDOW 6.3 computer program.
 - 2. Center of Glass Solar Heat Gain Coefficient (SHGC): Comply with NFRC 200 using Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory (LBNL) WINDOW 6.3 computer program.
 - 3. Solar Optical Properties: Comply with NFRC 300 test method.

2.02 GLASS MATERIALS

- A. Float Glass: Provide float glass based glazing unless noted otherwise.
 - 1. Annealed Type: ASTM C1036, Type I - Transparent Flat, Class 1 - Clear, Quality-Q3.
 - 2. Heat-Strengthened and Fully Tempered Types: ASTM C1048, Kind HS and FT.
 - 3. Fully Tempered Safety Glass: Complies with ANSI Z97.1 and 16 CFR 1201 criteria.
 - 4. Tinted Type: ASTM C1036, Class 2 - Tinted, Quality-Q3, color and performance characteristics as indicated.
 - 5. Thicknesses: As indicated; provide greater thickness as required for exterior glazing wind load design.

2.03 INSULATING GLASS UNITS

- A. Insulating Glass Units: Types as indicated.
 - 1. Durability: Certified by an independent testing agency to comply with ASTM E2190.
 - 2. Coated Glass: Comply with requirements of ASTM C1376 for pyrolytic (hard-coat) or magnetic sputter vapor deposition (soft-coat) type coatings on flat glass; coated vision glass, Kind CV; coated overhead glass, Kind CO; or coated spandrel glass, Kind CS.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

3. Warm-Edge Spacers: Polypropylene and stainless steel.
 - a. Spacer Width: As required for specified insulating glass unit.
 4. Spacer Color: Black.
 5. Edge Seal:
 6. Color: Black.
 7. Purge interpane space with dry air, hermetically sealed.
- B. Type IG-1 - Insulating Glass Units: Vision glass, double glazed.
1. Applications: Exterior glazing unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Space between lites filled with air.
 3. Outboard Lite: Annealed float glass, 1/4 inch thick, minimum.
 - a. Tint: Clear.
 - b. Coating: Low-E (passive type), on #2 surface.
 4. Inboard Lite: Annealed float glass, 1/4 inch thick, minimum.
 - a. Tint: Clear.
 5. Total Thickness: 1 inch.
 6. Thermal Transmittance (U-Value), _____: _____, nominal.
 7. Visible Light Transmittance (VLT): _____ percent, nominal.
 8. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient (SHGC): _____, nominal.
 9. Glazing Method: Dry glazing method, gasket glazing.

2.04 GLAZING UNITS

- A. Type G-2 - Monolithic Interior Vision Glazing:
1. Applications: Interior glazing unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Glass Type: Annealed float glass.
 3. Tint: Clear.
 4. Thickness: 1/4 inch, nominal.
 5. Glazing Method: Dry glazing method, gasket glazing.
- B. Type G-5 - Monolithic Safety Glazing: Non-fire-rated.
1. Applications:
 - a. Glazed lites in doors, except fire doors.
 - b. Glazed sidelights to doors, except in fire-rated walls and partitions.
 - c. Other locations required by applicable federal, state, and local codes and regulations.
 - d. Other locations indicated on drawings.
 2. Glass Type: Fully tempered safety glass as specified.
 3. Tint: Clear.
 4. Thickness: 1/4 inch, nominal.
 5. Glazing Method: Dry glazing method, gasket glazing.
 6. Glazing at offices to be butt glazed with clear silicone joint _____.

2.05 GLAZING COMPOUNDS

- A. Type GC-1 - Glazing Putty: Polymer modified latex recommended by manufacturer for outdoor use, knife grade consistency; _____ color.
- B. Type GC-5 - Silicone Sealant: Single component; neutral curing; capable of water immersion without loss of properties; non-bleeding, non-staining; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Uses M, A, and G; with cured Shore A hardness range of 15 to 25; _____ color.

2.06 ACCESSORIES

- A. Setting Blocks: Silicone, with 80 to 90 Shore A durometer hardness; ASTM C864 Option II. Length of 0.1 inch for each square foot of glazing or minimum 4 inch x width of glazing rabbet space minus 1/16 inch x height to suit glazing method and pane weight and area.
- B. Glazing Splines: Resilient silicone extruded shape to suit glazing channel retaining slot; ASTM C864 Option II; color black.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 VERIFICATION OF CONDITIONS

- A. Verify that openings for glazing are correctly sized and within tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners.
- B. Verify that surfaces of glazing channels or recesses are clean, free of obstructions that may impede moisture movement, weeps are clear, and support framing is ready to receive glazing system.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Clean contact surfaces with appropriate solvent and wipe dry within maximum of 24 hours before glazing. Remove coatings that are not tightly bonded to substrates.
- B. Seal porous glazing channels or recesses with substrate compatible primer or sealer.
- C. Prime surfaces scheduled to receive sealant where required for proper sealant adhesion.

3.03 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install glazing in compliance with written instructions of glass, gaskets, and other glazing material manufacturers, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in glazing referenced standards.
- B. Install glazing sealants in accordance with ASTM C1193, GANA (SM), and manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Set glass lites in proper orientation so that coatings face exterior or interior as indicated.

3.04 INSTALLATION - DRY GLAZING METHOD (GASKET GLAZING)

- A. Application - Exterior and/or Interior Glazed: Set glazing infills from either the exterior or the interior of the building.
- B. Place setting blocks at 1/4 points with edge block no more than 6 inch from corners.
- C. Rest glazing on setting blocks and push against fixed stop with sufficient pressure on gasket to attain full contact.
- D. Install removable stops without displacing glazing gasket; exert pressure for full continuous contact.

3.05 INSTALLATION - BUTT JOINT GLAZING METHOD (SEALANT ONLY)

- A. Application - Exterior and Interior Glazed: Set glazing infills from the exterior of the building.
- B. Temporarily brace glass in position for duration of glazing process. Mask edges of glass at adjoining glass edges and between glass edges and framing members.
- C. Temporarily secure a small diameter non-adhering foamed rod on back side of joint.
- D. Apply sealant to open side of joint in continuous operation; thoroughly fill the joint without displacing the foam rod. Tool the sealant surface smooth to concave profile.
- E. Permit sealant to cure then remove foam backer rod. Apply sealant to opposite side, tool smooth to concave profile.
- F. Remove masking tape.

3.06 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Glass and Glazing product manufacturers to provide field surveillance of the installation of their products.
- B. Monitor and report installation procedures and unacceptable conditions.

3.07 CLEANING

- A. Remove excess glazing materials from finish surfaces immediately after application using solvents or cleaners recommended by manufacturers.
- B. Remove non-permanent labels immediately after glazing installation is complete.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- C. Clean glass and adjacent surfaces after sealants are fully cured.
- D. Clean glass on both exposed surfaces not more than 4 days prior to Date of Substantial Completion in accordance with glass manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.08 PROTECTION

- A. After installation, mark pane with an 'X' by using removable plastic tape or paste.
- B. Remove and replace glass that is damaged during construction period prior to Date of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 08 80 00

SECTION 08 91 00

LOUVERS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Louvers, frames, and accessories.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AAMA 611 - Voluntary Specification for Anodized Architectural Aluminum; 2014 (2015 Errata).
- B. AMCA 511 - Certified Ratings Program for Air Control Devices; 2010.
- C. ASTM A653/A653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process; 2015.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data describing design characteristics, maximum recommended air velocity, design free area, materials and finishes.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate louver layout plan and elevations, opening and clearance dimensions, tolerances; head, jamb and sill details; blade configuration, screens, blankout areas required, and frames.
- D. Test Reports: Independent agency reports showing compliance with specified performance criteria.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products of the type specified in this section, with minimum three years of documented experience.

1.05 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Provide twenty year manufacturer warranty against distortion, metal degradation, and failure of connections.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 LOUVERS

- A. Louvers: Factory fabricated and assembled, complete with frame, mullions, and accessories; AMCA Certified in accordance with AMCA 511.
 - 1. Wind Load Resistance: Design to resist positive and negative wind load of 25 psf without damage or permanent deformation.
 - 2. Drainable Blades: Continuous rain stop at front or rear of blade aligned with vertical gutter recessed into both jambs of frame.
 - 3. Screens: Provide insect screens at intake louvers and bird screens at exhaust louvers.
- B. Stationary Louvers: Horizontal blade, formed galvanized steel sheet construction, with intermediate mullions matching frame.
 - 1. Free Area: 50 percent, minimum.
 - 2. Blades: Drainable.
 - 3. Frame: 4 inches deep, channel profile; corner joints mitered and, with continuous recessed caulking channel each side.
 - 4. Steel Thickness, Galvanized: Frame 16 gage, 0.0598 inch minimum base metal; blades 16 gage, 0.0598 inch minimum base metal.
 - 5. Steel Finish: Superior performing organic coatings, finished after fabrication.

2.02 MATERIALS

- A. Steel Sheet: Hot-dipped galvanized steel sheet, ASTM A653/A653M, with G90/Z275 coating.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

2.03 FINISHES

- A. Class II Color Anodized Finish: AAMA 611 AA-M12C22A32 Integrally colored anodic coating not less than 0.4 mils thick.
- B. Color: As selected from manufacturer's standard colors.

2.04 ACCESSORIES

- A. Screens: Frame of same material as louver, with reinforced corners; removable, screw attached; installed on inside face of louver frame.
- B. Insect Screen: 18 x 16 size aluminum mesh.
- C. Fasteners and Anchors: Galvanized steel.
- D. Sealant for Setting Sills and Sill Flashing: Non-curing butyl type.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that prepared openings and flashings are ready to receive this work and opening dimensions are as indicated on shop drawings.
- B. Verify that field measurements are as indicated.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install louver assembly in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install louvers level and plumb.
- C. Set sill members and sill flashing in continuous bead of sealant.
- D. Align louver assembly to ensure moisture shed from flashings and diversion of moisture to exterior.
- E. Secure louver frames in openings with concealed fasteners.

3.03 CLEANING

- A. Strip protective finish coverings.
- B. Clean surfaces and components.

END OF SECTION 08 91 00

SECTION 08 92 00
LOUVERED EQUIPMENT ENCLOSURES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Louvered aluminum screens for concealing rooftop equipment.
- B. Slatted aluminum screens for concealing rooftop equipment.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM B209 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate; 2014.
- B. ASTM B209M - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate (Metric); 2014.
- C. ASTM B221 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes; 2014.
- D. ASTM B221M - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes (Metric); 2013.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:
 - 1. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
 - 2. Installation methods.
- C. Shop Drawings: Include plans, sections, and details of connections and bracing.
- D. Selection Samples: For each finish product specified, two complete sets of color chips representing manufacturer's full range of available finishes, colors, and textures.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products of the type specified in this section, with not less than ten years of documented experience.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging until ready for installation.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's instructions for handling of grille and screen products.

1.06 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Submit manufacturer's standard ten-year finish warranty.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Wind Resistance: Design grilles and screens, including superstructure support system, to withstand positive and negative wind loading in accordance with applicable building code.

2.02 EXTRUDED HORIZONTAL LOUVERS

- A. Construction: Individual extruded aluminum louvers in inverted overlapping configuration, with blade supports attached to and supported by customized support structure.
- B. Louver Blades: Alloy 6063-T5 or T6 temper, or equivalent in accordance with ASTM B221 (ASTM B221M), 0.081 inch thick, 4 inch deep, spaced at 5 inch on center, and configured to totally block sightlines from grade.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- C. Aluminum Finish: Low gloss polyester enamel paint, roller coated over pretreated aluminum and baked at 400 degrees F.
 - 1. Color: As selected from manufacturer's standard colors.
- D. Overall Screen Configuration: Dimensions, details, and layout as indicated on the drawings.

2.03 ACCESSORIES

- A. Miscellaneous Trim: Aluminum sheet, alloy 3005-H25 temper, or equivalent in accordance with ASTM B209 (ASTM B209M), formed to shapes indicated and finished to match other components.
- B. Support Structure: As specified in requirements.
- C. Fasteners: Self-tapping stainless steel screws, as approved by manufacturer of rooftop equipment screens.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Do not begin installation until substrates have been properly prepared.
- B. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Install rooftop equipment screens in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions and as indicated on shop drawings.
- B. Form tight joints and fit exposed connections accurately.
- C. Provide necessary fastenings and anchors required for a complete installation, and install units plumb, level, and in proper alignment with adjacent work.

3.04 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products until completion of project.
- B. Protect metal surfaces from corrosion or galvanic action by application of a heavy coating of bituminous paint on surfaces that will be in contact with concrete, masonry or dissimilar metals.
- C. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Date of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 08 92 00

SECTION 09 21 16
GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Acoustic insulation.
- B. Gypsum wallboard.
- C. Joint treatment and accessories.
- D. Textured finish system.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 07 25 00 - Weather Barriers: Water-resistive barrier over sheathing.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM C475/C475M - Standard Specification for Joint Compound and Joint Tape for Finishing Gypsum Board; 2015.
- B. ASTM C665 - Standard Specification for Mineral-Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for Light Frame Construction and Manufactured Housing; 2012.
- C. ASTM C840 - Standard Specification for Application and Finishing of Gypsum Board; 2017.
- D. ASTM C954 - Standard Specification for Steel Drill Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Steel Studs From 0.033 in. (0.84 mm) to 0.112 in. (2.84 mm) in Thickness; 2015.
- E. ASTM C1002 - Standard Specification for Steel Self-Piercing Tapping Screws for Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Wood Studs or Steel Studs; 2016.
- F. ASTM C1047 - Standard Specification for Accessories For Gypsum Wallboard and Gypsum Veneer Base; 2014a.
- G. ASTM C1178/C1178M - Standard Specification for Coated Glass Mat Water-Resistant Gypsum Backing Panel; 2013.
- H. ASTM C1396/C1396M - Standard Specification for Gypsum Board; 2014a.
- I. ASTM C1629/C1629M - Standard Classification for Abuse-Resistant Nondecorated Interior Gypsum Panel Products and Fiber-Reinforced Cement Panels; 2015.
- J. ASTM C1658/C1658M - Standard Specification for Glass Mat Gypsum Panels; 2013.
- K. ASTM D3273 - Standard Test Method for Resistance to Growth of Mold on the Surface of Interior Coatings in an Environmental Chamber; 2016.
- L. GA-216 - Application and Finishing of Gypsum Board; 2016.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data on gypsum board, glass mat faced gypsum board, accessories, and joint finishing system.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing gypsum board installation and finishing, with minimum 3 years of experience.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES

- A. Provide completed assemblies complying with ASTM C840 and GA-216.

2.02 BOARD MATERIALS

- A. Gypsum Wallboard: Paper-faced gypsum panels as defined in ASTM C1396/C1396M; sizes to minimize joints in place; ends square cut.
 - 1. Application: Use for vertical surfaces and ceilings, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Glass mat faced gypsum panels as defined in ASTM C1658/C1658M, suitable for paint finish, of the same core type and thickness may be substituted for paper-faced board.
 - 3. Mold Resistance: Score of 10, when tested in accordance with ASTM D3273.
 - a. Mold resistant board is required in areas noted on the wall types..
 - 4. Thickness:
 - a. Vertical Surfaces: 5/8 inch.
 - b. Ceilings: 5/8 inch.
- B. Impact Resistant Wallboard:
 - 1. Application: High-traffic areas indicated.
 - 2. Surface Abrasion: Level 3, minimum, when tested in accordance with ASTM C1629/C1629M.
 - 3. Indentation: Level 1, minimum, when tested in accordance with ASTM C1629/C1629M.
 - 4. Soft Body Impact: Level 3, minimum, when tested in accordance with ASTM C1629/C1629M.
 - 5. Hard Body Impact: Level 2, minimum, when tested in accordance with ASTM C1629/C1629M.
 - 6. Mold Resistance: Score of 10, when tested in accordance with ASTM D3273.
 - 7. Paper-Faced Type: Gypsum wallboard as defined in ASTM C1396/C1396M.
 - 8. Glass Mat-Faced Type: Gypsum wallboard as defined in ASTM C1658/C1658M.
 - 9. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
 - 10. Edges: Tapered.
- C. Backing Board For Wet Areas: One of the following products:
 - 1. Application: Surfaces behind tile in wet areas including shower surrounds and ceilings.
 - 2. Mold Resistance: Score of 10, when tested in accordance with ASTM D3273.
 - 3. Glass Mat Faced Board: Coated glass mat water-resistant gypsum backing panel as defined in ASTM C1178/C1178M.
 - a. Standard Type: Thickness 5/8 inch.
- D. Ceiling Board: Special sag resistant gypsum ceiling board as defined in ASTM C1396/C1396M; sizes to minimize joints in place; ends square cut.
 - 1. Application: Ceilings, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
 - 3. Edges: Tapered.

2.03 ACCESSORIES

- A. Acoustic Insulation: ASTM C665; preformed glass fiber, friction fit type, unfaced. Thickness: 2 inch. See wall types for locations.
- B. Acoustic Sealant: Acrylic emulsion latex or water-based elastomeric sealant; do not use solvent-based non-curing butyl sealant.
- C. Water-Resistive Barrier: As specified in Section 07 25 00.
- D. Beads, Joint Accessories, and Other Trim: ASTM C1047, rigid plastic, galvanized steel, or rolled zinc, unless noted otherwise.
 - 1. Rigid Corner Beads: Low profile, for 90 degree outside corners.
- E. Joint Materials: ASTM C475/C475M and as recommended by gypsum board manufacturer for project conditions.
 - 1. Tape: 2 inch wide, coated glass fiber tape for joints and corners.
 - 2. Tape: 2 inch wide, creased paper tape for joints and corners, except as otherwise indicated.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

3. Ready-mixed vinyl-based joint compound.
4. Chemical hardening type compound.
- F. High Build Drywall Surfacers: Vinyl acrylic latex-based coating for spray application, designed to take the place of skim coating and separate paint primer in achieving Level 5 finish.
- G. Textured Finish Materials: Latex-based compound; plain.
- H. Screws for Fastening of Gypsum Panel Products to Cold-Formed Steel Studs Less than 0.033 inch in Thickness and Wood Members: ASTM C1002; self-piercing tapping screws, corrosion resistant.
- I. Screws for Fastening of Gypsum Panel Products to Steel Members from 0.033 to 0.112 inch in Thickness: ASTM C954; steel drill screws, corrosion resistant.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that project conditions are appropriate for work of this section to commence.

3.02 ACOUSTIC ACCESSORIES INSTALLATION

- A. Acoustic Insulation: Place tightly within spaces, around cut openings, behind and around electrical and mechanical items within partitions, and tight to items passing through partitions.
- B. Acoustic Sealant: Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
 1. Place continuous bead at perimeter of each layer of gypsum board.
 2. Seal around all penetrations by conduit, pipe, ducts, and rough-in boxes, except where firestopping is provided.

3.03 BOARD INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with ASTM C840, GA-216, and manufacturer's instructions. Install to minimize butt end joints, especially in highly visible locations.
- B. Single-Layer Non-Rated: Install gypsum board perpendicular to framing, with ends and edges occurring over firm bearing.

3.04 INSTALLATION OF TRIM AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Control Joints: Place control joints consistent with lines of building spaces and as indicated.
- B. Corner Beads: Install at external corners, using longest practical lengths.
- C. Edge Trim: Install at locations where gypsum board abuts dissimilar materials.

3.05 JOINT TREATMENT

- A. Glass Mat Faced Gypsum Board and Exterior Glass Mat Faced Sheathing: Use fiberglass joint tape, bedded and finished with chemical hardening type joint compound.
- B. Paper Faced Gypsum Board: Use paper joint tape, bedded with ready-mixed vinyl-based joint compound and finished with ready-mixed vinyl-based joint compound.
- C. Finish gypsum board in accordance with levels defined in ASTM C840, as follows:
 1. Level 5: Walls and ceilings to receive semi-gloss or gloss paint finish and other areas specifically indicated.
 2. Level 4: Walls and ceilings to receive paint finish or wall coverings, unless otherwise indicated.
 3. Level 1: Wall areas above finished ceilings, whether or not accessible in the completed construction.
- D. Tape, fill, and sand exposed joints, edges, and corners to produce smooth surface ready to receive finishes.
 1. Feather coats of joint compound so that camber is maximum 1/32 inch.
- E. Where Level 5 finish is indicated, spray apply high build drywall surfacer over entire surface after joints have been properly treated; achieve a flat and tool mark-free finish.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

3.06 TEXTURE FINISH

- A. Apply finish texture coating by means of spraying apparatus in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and to match approved sample.

END OF SECTION 09 21 16

SECTION 09 22 16
NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Metal partition, ceiling, and soffit framing.
- B. Framing accessories.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 07 21 00 - Thermal Insulation: Acoustic insulation.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM C645 - Standard Specification for Nonstructural Steel Framing Members; 2014.
- B. ASTM C754 - Standard Specification for Installation of Steel Framing Members to Receive Screw-Attached Gypsum Panel Products; 2017.
- C. ASTM C1002 - Standard Specification for Steel Self-Piercing Tapping Screws for Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Wood Studs or Steel Studs; 2016.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Indicate prefabricated work, component details, stud layout, framed openings, anchorage to structure, acoustic details, type and location of fasteners, accessories, and items of other related work.
 - 2. Describe method for securing studs to tracks, splicing, and for blocking and reinforcement of framing connections.
- C. Product Data: Provide data describing framing member materials and finish, product criteria, load charts, and limitations.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the work of this section with minimum five years documented experience and approved by manufacturer.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 FRAMING MATERIALS

- A. Non-Loadbearing Framing System Components: ASTM C645; galvanized sheet steel, of size and properties necessary to comply with ASTM C754 for the spacing indicated, with maximum deflection of wall framing of L/240 at 5 psf.
 - 1. Studs: C shaped with flat or formed webs with knurled faces.
 - 2. Runners: U shaped, sized to match studs.
 - 3. Ceiling Channels: C shaped.
 - 4. Furring: Hat-shaped sections, minimum depth of 7/8 inch.
- B. Ceiling Hangers: Type and size as specified in ASTM C754 for spacing required.
- C. Partition Head to Structure Connections: Provide track fastened to structure with legs of sufficient length to accommodate deflection, for friction fit of studs cut short and braced with continuous bridging on both sides.
- D. Deflection and Firestop Track: Intumescent strip factory-applied to track flanges expands when exposed to heat or flames to provide a perimeter joint seal.
- E. Preformed Top Track Firestop Seal:
 - 1. Provide components UL-listed for use in UL-listed fire-rated head of partition joint systems indicated on drawings.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- F. Tracks and Runners: Same material and thickness as studs, bent leg retainer notched to receive studs with provision for crimp locking to stud.
- G. Furring and Bracing Members: Of same material as studs; thickness to suit purpose; complying with applicable requirements of ASTM C754.
- H. Fasteners: ASTM C1002 self-piercing tapping screws.
- I. Sheet Metal Backing: 0.036 inch thick, galvanized.
- J. Anchorage Devices: Powder actuated.
- K. Acoustic Insulation: As specified in Section 07 21 00.

2.02 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate assemblies of framed sections to sizes and profiles required.
- B. Fit, reinforce, and brace framing members to suit design requirements.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify existing conditions before starting work.
- B. Verify that rough-in utilities are in proper location.

3.02 INSTALLATION OF STUD FRAMING

- A. Extend partition framing to structure where indicated and to ceiling in other locations.
- B. Partitions Terminating at Ceiling: Attach ceiling runner securely to ceiling track in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Partitions Terminating at Structure: Attach extended leg top runner to structure, maintain clearance between top of studs and structure, and brace both flanges of studs as indicated.
- D. Align and secure top and bottom runners at 24 inches on center.
- E. Fit runners under and above openings; secure intermediate studs to same spacing as wall studs.
- F. Install studs vertically at 16 inches on center.
- G. Align stud web openings horizontally.
- H. Secure studs to tracks using crimping method. Do not weld.
- I. Stud splicing is not permissible.
- J. Fabricate corners using a minimum of three studs.
- K. Double stud at wall openings, door and window jambs, not more than 2 inches from each side of openings.
- L. Brace stud framing system rigid.
- M. Coordinate erection of studs with requirements of door frames and window frames; install supports and attachments.
- N. Coordinate installation of bucks, anchors, and blocking with electrical, mechanical, and other work to be placed within or behind stud framing.
- O. Blocking: Use steel channels secured to studs. Provide blocking for support of plumbing fixtures, toilet partitions, wall cabinets, toilet accessories, hardware, and opening frames.
- P. Furring: Install at spacing and locations shown on drawings. Lap splices a minimum of 6 inches.

3.03 CEILING AND SOFFIT FRAMING

- A. Install furring after work above ceiling or soffit is complete. Coordinate the location of hangers with other work.
- B. Install furring independent of walls, columns, and above-ceiling work.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- C. Securely anchor hangers to structural members or embed in structural slab. Space hangers as required to limit deflection to criteria indicated. Use rigid hangers at exterior soffits.
- D. Space main carrying channels at maximum 72 inch on center, and not more than 6 inches from wall surfaces. Lap splice securely.
- E. Securely fix carrying channels to hangers to prevent turning or twisting and to transmit full load to hangers.
- F. Place furring channels perpendicular to carrying channels, not more than 2 inches from perimeter walls, and rigidly secure. Lap splices securely.

END OF SECTION 09 22 16

SECTION 09 30 00

TILING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Tile for floor applications.
- B. Tile for wall applications.
- C. Cementitious backer board as tile substrate.
- D. Coated glass mat backer board as tile substrate.
- E. Stone thresholds.
- F. Ceramic accessories.
- G. Ceramic trim.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ANSI A108/A118/A136.1 - American National Standard Specifications for the Installation of Ceramic Tile (Compendium); 2017.
- B. ANSI A108.1a - American National Standard Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile in the Wet-Set Method, with Portland Cement Mortar; 2014.
- C. ANSI A108.1b - American National Standard Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile on a Cured Portland Cement Mortar Setting Bed with Dry-Set or Latex-Portland Cement Mortar; 1999 (Reaffirmed 2010).
- D. ANSI A108.1c - Specifications for Contractors Option: Installation of Ceramic Tile in the Wet-Set Method with Portland Cement Mortar or Installation of Ceramic Tile on a Cured Portland Cement Mortar Bed with Dry-Set or Latex-Portland Cement; 1999 (Reaffirmed 2010).
- E. ANSI A108.4 - American National Standard Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile with Organic Adhesives or Water Cleanable Tile-Setting Epoxy Adhesive; 2009 (Revised).
- F. ANSI A108.5 - American National Standard Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile with Dry-Set Portland Cement Mortar or Latex-Portland Cement Mortar; 1999 (Reaffirmed 2010).
- G. ANSI A108.6 - American National Standard Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile with Chemical Resistant, Water Cleanable Tile-Setting and -Grouting Epoxy; 1999 (Reaffirmed 2010).
- H. ANSI A108.8 - American National Standard Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile with Chemical Resistant Furan Resin Mortar and Grout; 1999 (Reaffirmed 2010).
- I. ANSI A108.9 - American National Standard Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile with Modified Epoxy Emulsion Mortar/Grout; 1999 (Reaffirmed 2010).
- J. ANSI A108.10 - American National Standard Specifications for Installation of Grout in Tilework; 1999 (Reaffirmed 2010).
- K. ANSI A108.11 - American National Standard Specifications for Interior Installation of Cementitious Backer Units; 2010 (Reaffirmed 2016).
- L. ANSI A108.12 - American National Standard for Installation of Ceramic Tile with EGP (Exterior Glue Plywood) Latex-Portland Cement Mortar; 1999 (Reaffirmed 2010).
- M. ANSI A108.13 - American National Standard for Installation of Load Bearing, Bonded, Waterproof Membranes for Thin-Set Ceramic Tile and Dimension Stone; 2005 (Reaffirmed 2010).
- N. ANSI A118.3 - American National Standard Specifications for Chemical Resistant, Water Cleanable Tile-Setting and -Grouting Epoxy and Water Cleanable Tile-Setting Epoxy Adhesive; 2013 (Revised).

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- O. ANSI A118.4 - American National Standard Specifications for Modified Dry-Set Cement Mortar; 2012 (Revised).
- P. ANSI A118.6 - American National Standard Specifications for Standard Cement Grouts for Tile Installation; 2010 (Reaffirmed 2016).
- Q. ANSI A118.9 - American National Standard Specifications for Test Methods and Specifications for Cementitious Backer Units; 1999 (Reaffirmed 2016).
- R. ANSI A118.10 - American National Standard Specifications for Load Bearing, Bonded, Waterproof Membranes For Thin-Set Ceramic Tile And Dimension Stone Installation; 2014.
- S. ANSI A118.12 - American National Standard Specifications for Crack Isolation Membranes for Thin-Set Ceramic Tile and Dimension Stone Installation; 2014.
- T. ANSI A137.1 - American National Standard Specifications for Ceramic Tile; 2012.
- U. ASTM C1178/C1178M - Standard Specification for Coated Glass Mat Water-Resistant Gypsum Backing Panel; 2013.
- V. ASTM D4068 - Standard Specification for Chlorinated Polyethylene (CPE) Sheeting for Concealed Water-Containment Membrane; 2015.
- W. TCNA (HB) - Handbook for Ceramic, Glass, and Stone Tile Installation; 2016.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturers' data sheets on tile, mortar, grout, and accessories. Include instructions for using grouts and adhesives.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate tile layout, patterns, color arrangement, perimeter conditions, junctions with dissimilar materials, thresholds, ceramic accessories, and setting details.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Maintain one copy of and ANSI A108/A118/A136.1 and TCNA (HB) on site.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect adhesives from freezing or overheating in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

1.06 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient and substrate temperature of 50 degrees F during installation of mortar materials.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 TILE

- A. Manufacturers: All products by the same manufacturer.
- B. Glazed Wall Tile: ANSI A137.1, standard grade.
 - 1. Size: ____by____ inch, nominal.
 - 2. Edges: Cushioned.
 - 3. Surface Finish: _____.
 - 4. Color(s): To be selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.
 - 5. Pattern: as shown on the interior elevations.
 - 6. Trim Units: Matching bead, bullnose, cove, and base shapes in sizes coordinated with field tile.

2.02 TRIM AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Ceramic Accessories: Glazed finish, same color and finish as adjacent field tile; same manufacturer as tile.
- B. Ceramic Trim: Matching bullnose, double bullnose, cove base, and cove ceramic shapes in sizes coordinated with field tile.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Same as for tile.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- C. Thresholds: Marble, white or gray, honed finish; 2 inches wide by full width of wall or frame opening; 1/2 inch thick; beveled one long edge with radiused corners on top side; without holes, cracks, or open seams.

2.03 SETTING MATERIALS

- A. Latex-Portland Cement Mortar Bond Coat: ANSI A118.4.
 - 1. Applications: Use this type of bond coat where indicated and where no other type of bond coat is indicated.
- B. Epoxy Adhesive and Mortar Bond Coat: ANSI A118.3.
- C. Mortar Bed Materials: Pre-packaged mix of Portland cement, sand, latex additive, and water.

2.04 GROUTS

- A. Standard Grout: ANSI A118.6 standard cement grout.
 - 1. Applications: Use this type of grout where indicated and where no other type of grout is indicated.
 - 2. Use sanded grout for joints 1/8 inch wide and larger; use unsanded grout for joints less than 1/8 inch wide.
 - 3. Color(s): As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full line.
- B. Epoxy Grout: ANSI A118.3 chemical resistant and water-cleanable epoxy grout.
 - 1. Applications: Where indicated.
 - 2. Color(s): As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full line.

2.05 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Waterproofing Membrane: Specifically designed for bonding to cementitious substrate under thick mortar bed or thin-set tile; complying with ANSI A118.10.
 - 1. Crack Resistance: No failure at 1/16 inch gap, minimum; comply with ANSI A118.12.
 - 2. Fluid or Trowel Applied Type:
 - a. Material: Synthetic rubber or Acrylic.
 - b. Thickness: 25 mils, minimum, dry film thickness.
- B. Waterproofing Membrane at Showers and Tiled Tubs: Specifically designed for bonding to cementitious substrate under thick mortar bed or thin-set tile; complying with ANSI A118.10.
 - 1. Fluid or Trowel Applied Type:
 - a. Material: Synthetic rubber.
 - b. Material: Acrylic.
 - c. Thickness: 25 mils, minimum, dry film thickness.
- C. Waterproofing Membrane Under Thick Mortar Bed at Showers and Tiled Tubs:
 - 1. Material: Chlorinated polyethylene sheet, 40 mils thick, minimum; complying with ASTM D4068.
- D. Reinforcing Mesh: 2 by 2 inch size weave of 16/16 wire size; welded fabric, galvanized.
- E. Backer Board: Cementitious type complying with ANSI A118.9; high density, glass fiber reinforced, 1/2 inch thick; 2 inch wide coated glass fiber tape for joints and corners.
- F. Backer Board: Coated glass mat type complying with ASTM C1178/C1178M; inorganic fiberglass mat on both surfaces and integral acrylic coating vapor retarder.
 - 1. Standard Type: Thickness 5/8 inch.
- G. Mesh Tape: 2 inch wide self-adhesive fiberglass mesh tape.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that sub-floor surfaces are smooth and flat within the tolerances specified for that type of work and are ready to receive tile.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- B. Verify that wall surfaces are smooth and flat within the tolerances specified for that type of work, are dust-free, and are ready to receive tile.
- C. Verify that concrete sub-floor surfaces are ready for tile installation by testing for moisture emission rate and alkalinity; obtain instructions if test results are not within limits recommended by tile manufacturer and setting materials manufacturer.
- D. Verify that required floor-mounted utilities are in correct location.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Protect surrounding work from damage.
- B. Vacuum clean surfaces and damp clean.
- C. Seal substrate surface cracks with filler. Level existing substrate surfaces to acceptable flatness tolerances.
- D. Install backer board in accordance with ANSI A108.11 and board manufacturer's instructions. Tape joints and corners, cover with skim coat of setting material to a feather edge.

3.03 INSTALLATION - GENERAL

- A. Install tile, thresholds, and stair treads and grout in accordance with applicable requirements of ANSI A108.1a through ANSI A108.13, manufacturer's instructions, and TCNA (HB) recommendations.
- B. Lay tile to pattern indicated. Do not interrupt tile pattern through openings.
- C. Cut and fit tile to penetrations through tile, leaving sealant joint space. Form corners and bases neatly. Align floor joints.
- D. Place tile joints uniform in width, subject to variance in tolerance allowed in tile size. Make grout joints without voids, cracks, excess mortar or excess grout, or too little grout.
- E. Form internal angles square and external angles bullnosed.
- F. Install ceramic accessories rigidly in prepared openings.
- G. Install thresholds where indicated.
- H. Sound tile after setting. Replace hollow sounding units.
- I. Keep control and expansion joints free of mortar, grout, and adhesive.
- J. Prior to grouting, allow installation to completely cure; minimum of 48 hours.
- K. Grout tile joints unless otherwise indicated. Use standard grout unless otherwise indicated.
- L. At changes in plane and tile-to-tile control joints, use tile sealant instead of grout, with either bond breaker tape or backer rod as appropriate to prevent three-sided bonding.

3.04 INSTALLATION - FLOORS - THIN-SET METHODS

- A. Over interior concrete substrates, install in accordance with TCNA (HB) Method F113, dry-set or latex-Portland cement bond coat, with standard grout, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Where waterproofing membrane is indicated, install in accordance with TCNA (HB) Method F122, with latex-Portland cement grout.
 - 2. Where epoxy bond coat and grout are indicated, install in accordance with TCNA (HB) Method F131.

3.05 INSTALLATION - FLOORS - MORTAR BED METHODS

- A. Over interior concrete substrates, install in accordance with TCNA (HB) Method F111, with cleavage membrane, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Where waterproofing membrane is indicated, with standard grout or no mention of grout type, install in accordance with TCNA (HB) Method F121.
 - 2. Where epoxy bond coat and grout are indicated, install in accordance with TCNA (HB) Method F132, bonded.
- B. Mortar Bed Thickness: 1-1/4 inch, unless otherwise indicated.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

3.06 INSTALLATION - SHOWERS WALLS

- A. At tiled shower receptors install in accordance with TCNA (HB) Method B420, mortar bed floor, and W245, thin-set over coated glass mat backer board walls.
- B. Grout with standard grout as specified above.

3.07 INSTALLATION - WALL TILE

- A. Over coated glass mat backer board on studs, install in accordance with TCNA (HB) Method W245.
- B. Over interior concrete and masonry install in accordance with TCNA (HB) Method W202, thin-set with dry-set or latex-Portland cement bond coat.

3.08 CLEANING

- A. Clean tile and grout surfaces.

3.09 PROTECTION

- A. Do not permit traffic over finished floor surface for 4 days after installation.

END OF SECTION 09 30 00

SECTION 09 51 00
ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Suspended metal grid ceiling system.
- B. Acoustical units.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM C635/C635M - Standard Specification for the Manufacture, Performance, and Testing of Metal Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panel Ceilings; 2017.
- B. ASTM C636/C636M - Standard Practice for Installation of Metal Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-In Panels; 2013.
- C. ASTM E580/E580M - Standard Practice for Installation of Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panels in Areas Subject to Earthquake Ground Motions; 2017.
- D. ASTM E1264 - Standard Classification for Acoustical Ceiling Products; 2014.

1.03 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Sequence work to ensure acoustical ceilings are not installed until building is enclosed, sufficient heat is provided, dust generating activities have terminated, and overhead work is completed, tested, and approved.
- B. Do not install acoustical units until after interior wet work is dry.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate grid layout and related dimensioning.
- C. Product Data: Provide data on suspension system components.
- D. Samples: Submit two samples 12 by 12 inch in size illustrating material and finish of acoustical units.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Suspension System Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

1.06 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain uniform temperature of minimum 60 degrees F, and maximum humidity of 40 percent prior to, during, and after acoustical unit installation.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 ACOUSTICAL UNITS

- A. Acoustical Units - General: ASTM E1264, Class A.
- B. Acoustical Panels:
 - 1. Size: 24 by 48 inches.
 - 2. Light Reflectance: ____ percent, determined in accordance with ASTM E1264.
 - 3. NRC Range: ____ to ____, determined in accordance with ASTM E1264.
 - 4. Ceiling Attenuation Class (CAC): ____, determined in accordance with ASTM E1264.
 - 5. Panel Edge: Beveled.
 - 6. Surface Pattern: Perforated.
 - 7. Surface Color: White.
 - 8. Suspension System: Exposed grid.

2.02 SUSPENSION SYSTEM(S)

- A. Suspension Systems - General: Complying with ASTM C635/C635M; die cut and interlocking components, with stabilizer bars, clips, splices, perimeter moldings, and hold down clips as required.
- B. Exposed Aluminum Suspension System Type ____: Extruded aluminum; light-duty.
 - 1. Profile: Tee; 15/16 inch wide face.
 - 2. Finish: Painted white.

2.03 ACCESSORIES

- A. Support Channels and Hangers: Galvanized steel; size and type to suit application, seismic requirements, and ceiling system flatness requirement specified.
- B. Perimeter Moldings: Same material and finish as grid.
 - 1. At Exposed Grid: Provide L-shaped molding for mounting at same elevation as face of grid.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION - SUSPENSION SYSTEM

- A. Install suspension system in accordance with ASTM C636/C636M, ASTM E580/E580M, and manufacturer's instructions and as supplemented in this section.
- B. Rigidly secure system, including integral mechanical and electrical components, for maximum deflection of 1:360.
- C. Locate system on room axis according to reflected plan.
- D. Install after major above-ceiling work is complete. Coordinate the location of hangers with other work.
- E. Hang suspension system independent of walls, columns, ducts, pipes and conduit. Where carrying members are spliced, avoid visible displacement of face plane of adjacent members.
- F. Where ducts or other equipment prevent the regular spacing of hangers, reinforce the nearest affected hangers and related carrying channels to span the extra distance.
- G. Do not support components on main runners or cross runners if weight causes total dead load to exceed deflection capability.
- H. Support fixture loads using supplementary hangers located within 6 inches of each corner, or support components independently.
- I. Do not eccentrically load system or induce rotation of runners.
- J. Perimeter Molding: Install at intersection of ceiling and vertical surfaces and at junctions with other interruptions.
 - 1. Use longest practical lengths.
 - 2. Overlap and rivet corners.

3.02 INSTALLATION - ACOUSTICAL UNITS

- A. Install acoustical units in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Fit acoustical units in place, free from damaged edges or other defects detrimental to appearance and function.
- C. Fit border trim neatly against abutting surfaces.
- D. Install units after above-ceiling work is complete.
- E. Install acoustical units level, in uniform plane, and free from twist, warp, and dents.
- F. Cutting Acoustical Units:
 - 1. Make field cut edges of same profile as factory edges.
- G. Where round obstructions occur, provide preformed closures to match perimeter molding.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

3.03 TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum Variation from Flat and Level Surface: 1/8 inch in 10 feet.
- B. Maximum Variation from Plumb of Grid Members Caused by Eccentric Loads: 2 degrees.

END OF SECTION 09 51 00

**SECTION 09 65 00
RESILIENT FLOORING**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Resilient sheet flooring.
- B. Resilient tile flooring.
- C. Static control resilient tile flooring.
- D. Resilient base.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM F1861 - Standard Specification for Resilient Wall Base; 2008 (Reapproved 2012).

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data on specified products, describing physical and performance characteristics; including sizes, patterns and colors available; and installation instructions.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate seaming plans and floor patterns.
- D. Selection Samples: Submit manufacturer's complete set of color samples for Architect's initial selection.
- E. Concrete Testing Standard: Submit a copy of ASTM F710.

1.04 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store all materials off of the floor in an acclimatized, weather-tight space.
- B. Maintain temperature in storage area between 55 degrees F and 90 degrees F.
- C. Protect roll materials from damage by storing on end.

1.05 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Store materials for not less than 48 hours prior to installation in area of installation at a temperature of 70 degrees F to achieve temperature stability. Thereafter, maintain conditions above 55 degrees F.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 SHEET FLOORING

2.02 TILE FLOORING

- A. Static Control Tile: Homogeneous; color and pattern throughout thickness.

2.03 RESILIENT BASE

- A. Resilient Base: ASTM F1861, Type TS rubber, vulcanized thermoset; top set Style B, Cove.
 - 1. Height: 4 inch.
 - 2. Thickness: 0.125 inch.
 - 3. Finish: Satin.
 - 4. Length: Roll.
 - 5. Color: To be selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that surfaces are flat to tolerances acceptable to flooring manufacturer, free of cracks that might telegraph through flooring, clean, dry, and free of curing compounds, surface hardeners, and other chemicals that might interfere with bonding of flooring to substrate.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare floor substrates as recommended by flooring and adhesive manufacturers.

3.03 INSTALLATION - GENERAL

- A. Starting installation constitutes acceptance of sub-floor conditions.
- B. Install in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Spread only enough adhesive to permit installation of materials before initial set.
- D. Fit joints and butt seams tightly.
- E. Set flooring in place, press with heavy roller to attain full adhesion.
- F. Where type of floor finish, pattern, or color are different on opposite sides of door, terminate flooring under centerline of door.
- G. Install edge strips at unprotected or exposed edges, where flooring terminates, and where indicated.
- H. Scribe flooring to walls, columns, cabinets, floor outlets, and other appurtenances to produce tight joints.

3.04 INSTALLATION - SHEET FLOORING

- A. Lay flooring with joints and seams parallel to longer room dimensions, to produce minimum number of seams. Lay out seams to avoid widths less than 1/3 of roll width; match patterns at seams.

3.05 INSTALLATION - TILE FLOORING

- A. Mix tile from container to ensure shade variations are consistent when tile is placed, unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's installation instructions.

3.06 INSTALLATION - RESILIENT BASE

- A. Fit joints tightly and make vertical. Maintain minimum dimension of 18 inches between joints.
- B. Install base on solid backing. Bond tightly to wall and floor surfaces.

3.07 CLEANING

- A. Remove excess adhesive from floor, base, and wall surfaces without damage.
- B. Clean in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

3.08 PROTECTION

- A. Prohibit traffic on resilient flooring for 48 hours after installation.

END OF SECTION 09 65 00

SECTION 09 68 13

TILE CARPETING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Carpet tile, fully adhered.

1.02 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data on specified products, describing physical and performance characteristics; sizes, patterns, colors available, and method of installation.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate layout of joints.
- D. Samples: Submit two carpet tiles illustrating color and pattern design for each carpet color selected.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

- A. Tile Carpeting: Tufted, manufactured in one color dye lot.
 - 1. Tile Size: 18 by 18 inch, nominal.
 - 2. Thickness: ____ inch.
 - 3. Color: _____.
 - 4. Pattern: _____.

2.02 ACCESSORIES

- A. Edge Strips: Embossed aluminum, ____ color.
- B. Adhesives:
- C. Carpet Tile Adhesive: Recommended by carpet tile manufacturer; releasable type.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that sub-floor surfaces are smooth and flat within tolerances specified for that type of work and are ready to receive carpet tile.
- B. Cementitious Sub-floor Surfaces: Verify that substrates are dry enough and ready for flooring installation by testing for moisture and pH.
 - 1. Obtain instructions if test results are not within limits recommended by flooring material manufacturer and adhesive materials manufacturer.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare floor substrates as recommended by flooring and adhesive manufacturers.
- B. Apply, trowel, and float filler to achieve smooth, flat, hard surface. Prohibit traffic until filler is cured.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Starting installation constitutes acceptance of sub-floor conditions.
- B. Install carpet tile in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Blend carpet from different cartons to ensure minimal variation in color match.
- D. Cut carpet tile clean. Fit carpet tight to intersection with vertical surfaces without gaps.
- E. Lay carpet tile in square pattern, with pile direction parallel to next unit, set parallel to building lines.
- F. Fully adhere carpet tile to substrate.
- G. Trim carpet tile neatly at walls and around interruptions.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

H. Complete installation of edge strips, concealing exposed edges.

3.04 CLEANING

A. Remove excess adhesive without damage, from floor, base, and wall surfaces.

B. Clean and vacuum carpet surfaces.

END OF SECTION 09 68 13

SECTION 09 84 30

SOUND-ABSORBING WALL AND CEILING UNITS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Sound-absorbing panels.
- B. Mounting accessories.

1.02 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's printed data sheets for products specified.
- C. Shop Drawings: Fabrication and installation details, panel layout, and fabric orientation.
- D. Selection Samples: Manufacturer's color charts for fabric covering, indicating full range of fabrics, colors, and patterns available.

1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company with not less than five years of experience in manufacturing acoustical products similar to those specified.

1.04 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect acoustical units from moisture during shipment, storage, and handling. Deliver in factory-wrapped bundles; do not open bundles until units are needed for installation.
- B. Store units flat, in dry, well-ventilated space; do not stand on end.
- C. Protect edges from damage.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates for conditions detrimental to installation of acoustical units. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install acoustical units in locations as indicated, following manufacturer's installation instructions.
- B. Align panels accurately, with edges plumb and top edges level. Scribe to fit accurately at adjoining work and penetrations.
- C. Install acoustical units to construction tolerances of plus or minus 1/16 inch for the following:
 - 1. Plumb and level.
 - 2. Flatness.

3.03 CLEANING

- A. Clean fabric facing upon completion of installation from dust and other foreign materials, following manufacturer's instructions.

3.04 PROTECTION

- A. Provide protection of installed acoustical panels until Date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Replace panels that cannot be cleaned and repaired to satisfaction of the Architect.

END OF SECTION 09 84 30

SECTION 09 91 23
INTERIOR PAINTING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Surface preparation.
- B. Field application of paints.
- C. Scope: Finish interior surfaces exposed to view, unless fully factory-finished and unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Do Not Paint or Finish the Following Items:
 - 1. Items factory-finished unless otherwise indicated; materials and products having factory-applied primers are not considered factory finished.
 - 2. Items indicated to receive other finishes.
 - 3. Items indicated to remain unfinished.
 - 4. Fire rating labels, equipment serial number and capacity labels, bar code labels, and operating parts of equipment.
 - 5. Floors, unless specifically indicated.
 - 6. Glass.
 - 7. Concealed pipes, ducts, and conduits.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. MPI (APL) - Master Painters Institute Approved Products List; Master Painters and Decorators Association; current edition, www.paintinfo.com.
- B. MPI (APSM) - Master Painters Institute Architectural Painting Specification Manual; Current Edition, www.paintinfo.com.
- C. SSPC-SP 1 - Solvent Cleaning; 2015.
- D. SSPC-SP 6 - Commercial Blast Cleaning; 2007.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide complete list of products to be used, with the following information for each:
 - 1. Manufacturer's name, product name and/or catalog number, and general product category (e.g. "alkyd enamel").
 - 2. MPI product number (e.g. MPI #47).
 - 3. Cross-reference to specified paint system(s) product is to be used in; include description of each system.
- C. Samples: Submit three paper "draw down" samples, 8-1/2 by 11 inches in size, illustrating range of colors available for each finishing product specified.
 - 1. Where sheen is specified, submit samples in only that sheen.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified, with minimum three years documented experience.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver products to site in sealed and labeled containers; inspect to verify acceptability.
- B. Container Label: Include manufacturer's name, type of paint, brand name, lot number, brand code, coverage, surface preparation, drying time, cleanup requirements, color designation, and instructions for mixing and reducing.
- C. Paint Materials: Store at minimum ambient temperature of 45 degrees F and a maximum of 90 degrees F, in ventilated area, and as required by manufacturer's instructions.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

1.06 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not apply materials when surface and ambient temperatures are outside the temperature ranges required by the paint product manufacturer.
- B. Follow manufacturer's recommended procedures for producing best results, including testing of substrates, moisture in substrates, and humidity and temperature limitations.
- C. Provide lighting level of 80 ft candles measured mid-height at substrate surface.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Provide paints and finishes used in any individual system from the same manufacturer; no exceptions.

2.02 PAINTS AND FINISHES - GENERAL

- A. Paints and Finishes: Ready mixed, unless intended to be a field-catalyzed paint.
 - 1. Where MPI paint numbers are specified, provide products listed in Master Painters Institute Approved Product List, current edition available at www.paintinfo.com, for specified MPI categories, except as otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Provide paints and finishes of a soft paste consistency, capable of being readily and uniformly dispersed to a homogeneous coating, with good flow and brushing properties, and capable of drying or curing free of streaks or sags.
 - 3. Supply each paint material in quantity required to complete entire project's work from a single production run.
 - 4. Do not reduce, thin, or dilute paint or finishes or add materials unless such procedure is specifically described in manufacturer's product instructions.
- B. Sheens: Provide the sheens specified; where sheen is not specified, sheen will be selected later by Architect from the manufacturer's full line.
- C. Colors: As indicated in Color Schedule.

2.03 PAINT SYSTEMS - INTERIOR

- A. Interior Surfaces to be Painted, Unless Otherwise Indicated: Including gypsum board and shop primed steel.
 - 1. Two top coats and one coat primer.
 - 2. Top Coat(s): Interior Latex; MPI #43, 44, 52, 53, 54, or 114.
 - 3. Top Coat Sheen:
 - 4. Primer: As recommended by top coat manufacturer for specific substrate.
- B. Medium Duty Door/Trim: For surfaces subject to frequent contact by occupants, including metals:
 - 1. Medium duty applications include doors, door frames, railings, handrails, guardrails, and balustrades.
 - 2. Two top coats and one coat primer.
- C. Dry Fall: Metals; exposed structure and overhead-mounted services in utilitarian spaces, including shop primed steel deck, structural steel, metal fabrications, galvanized ducts, galvanized conduit, and galvanized piping.
 - 1. Shop primer by others.
 - 2. One top coat _____.
- D. Concrete Floors to be Painted.
 - 1. Two top coats and one coat primer.
 - 2. Top Coat(s): Alkyd Floor Enamel, Gloss; MPI #27.

2.04 PRIMERS

- A. Primers: Provide the following unless other primer is required or recommended by manufacturer of top coats.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that surfaces are ready to receive work as instructed by the product manufacturer.
- B. Examine surfaces scheduled to be finished prior to commencement of work. Report any condition that may potentially effect proper application.
- C. Test shop-applied primer for compatibility with subsequent cover materials.
- D. Measure moisture content of surfaces using an electronic moisture meter. Do not apply finishes unless moisture content of surfaces are below the following maximums:
 - 1. Gypsum Wallboard: 12 percent.
 - 2. Concrete Floors and Traffic Surfaces: 8 percent.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Clean surfaces thoroughly and correct defects prior to application.
- B. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.
- C. Remove or mask surface appurtenances, including electrical plates, hardware, light fixture trim, escutcheons, and fittings, prior to preparing surfaces or finishing.
- D. Seal surfaces that might cause bleed through or staining of topcoat.
- E. Concrete Floors and Traffic Surfaces: Remove contamination, acid etch, and rinse floors with clear water. Verify required acid-alkali balance is achieved. Allow to dry.
- F. Gypsum Board: Fill minor defects with filler compound. Spot prime defects after repair.
- G. Galvanized Surfaces:
- H. Ferrous Metal:
 - 1. Solvent clean according to SSPC-SP 1.
 - 2. Shop-Primed Surfaces: Sand and scrape to remove loose primer and rust. Feather edges to make touch-up patches inconspicuous. Clean surfaces with solvent. Prime bare steel surfaces. Re-prime entire shop-primed item.
 - 3. Remove rust, loose mill scale, and other foreign substances using using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer and blast cleaning according to SSPC-SP 6 "Commercial Blast Cleaning". Protect from corrosion until coated.
- I. Metal Doors to be Painted: Prime metal door top and bottom edge surfaces.

3.03 APPLICATION

- A. Apply products in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual".
- B. Do not apply finishes to surfaces that are not dry. Allow applied coats to dry before next coat is applied.
- C. Apply each coat to uniform appearance in thicknesses specified by manufacturer.
- D. Sand wood and metal surfaces lightly between coats to achieve required finish.
- E. Vacuum clean surfaces of loose particles. Use tack cloth to remove dust and particles just prior to applying next coat.
- F. Reinstall electrical cover plates, hardware, light fixture trim, escutcheons, and fittings removed prior to finishing.

3.04 CLEANING

- A. Collect waste material that could constitute a fire hazard, place in closed metal containers, and remove daily from site.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

3.05 PROTECTION

- A. Protect finishes until completion of project.

END OF SECTION 09 91 23

**SECTION 09 97 23
CONCRETE AND MASONRY COATINGS**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Moisture resistant smooth concrete and masonry coatings.

1.02 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data indicating coating materials and _____.
- C. Samples: Submit two samples ____ by ____ inch in size illustrating colors available for selection.

1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

1.04 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not install materials when temperature is below 55 degrees F or above 90 degrees F.
- B. Maintain this temperature range, 24 hours before, during, and 72 hours after installation of coating.
- C. Restrict traffic from area where coating is being applied or is curing.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

- A. Coatings - General: Provide complete systems formulated and recommended by manufacturer for the applications indicated, in the thicknesses indicated.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

- A. Clean surfaces of loose foreign matter.
- B. Remove substances that would bleed through finished coatings.
- C. Remove finish hardware, fixture covers, and accessories and store.
- D. Protect adjacent surfaces and materials not receiving coating from spatter and overspray; mask if necessary to provide adequate protection. Repair damage.

3.02 PRIMING

- A. Apply primer to all surfaces, unless specifically not required by coating manufacturer. Apply in accordance with coating manufacturer's instructions.

3.03 COATING APPLICATION

- A. Apply coatings in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, to thicknesses specified.
- B. Apply in uniform thickness coats, without runs, drips, pinholes, brush marks, or variations in color, texture, or finish. Finish edges, crevices, corners, and other changes in dimension with full coating thickness.

3.04 CLEANING

- A. Collect waste material that could constitute a fire hazard, place in closed metal containers, and remove daily from site.
- B. Clean surfaces immediately of overspray, splatter, and excess material.
- C. After coating has cured, clean and replace finish hardware, fixtures, and fittings previously removed.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

3.05 PROTECTION

- A. Protect finished work from damage.

END OF SECTION 09 97 23

**SECTION 10 11 01
VISUAL DISPLAY BOARDS**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Markerboards and Tackboards.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ANSI A208.1 - American National Standard for Particleboard; 2009.
- B. ASTM A424/A424M - Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, for Porcelain Enameling; 2009a (Reapproved 2016).
- C. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2016.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's data on chalkboard, markerboard, tackboard, tackboard surface covering, trim, and accessories.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate wall elevations, dimensions, joint locations, special anchor details.
- D. Samples: Submit color charts for selection of color and texture of chalkboard, markerboard, tackboard, tackboard surface covering, and trim.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

1.05 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Provide five year warranty for chalkboard and markerboard to include warranty against discoloration due to cleaning, crazing or cracking, and staining.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 VISUAL DISPLAY BOARDS

- A. Markerboards: Porcelain enamel on steel, laminated to core.
 - 1. Steel Face Sheet Thickness: 24 gage, 0.0239 inch .
 - 2. Core: Particleboard, manufacturer's standard thickness, laminated to face sheet.
 - 3. Backing: Aluminum foil, laminated to core.
 - 4. Size: As indicated on drawings.
 - 5. Frame: Extruded aluminum, with concealed fasteners.
 - 6. Frame Finish: Anodized, natural.
- B. Tackboards: Fine-grained, homogeneous natural cork.
 - 1. Cork Thickness: 1/4 inch.
 - 2. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread index of 25, maximum, and smoke developed index of 450, maximum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
 - 3. Size: As indicated on drawings.

2.02 MATERIALS

- A. Porcelain Enameled Steel Sheet: ASTM A424/A424M, Type I, Commercial Steel, with fired-on vitreous finish.
- B. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1; wood chips, set with waterproof resin binder, sanded faces.
- C. Foil Backing: Aluminum foil sheet, 0.005 inch thick.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

2.03 ACCESSORIES

- A. Tray: Aluminum, manufacturer's standard profile, one piece full length of chalkboard, molded ends, concealed fasteners, same finish as frame.
- B. Mounting Brackets: Concealed.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field measurements are as indicated.
- B. Verify that internal wall blocking is ready to receive work and positioning dimensions are as indicated on shop drawings.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install boards in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Secure units level and plumb.

3.03 CLEANING

- A. Clean board surfaces in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

END OF SECTION 10 11 01

SECTION 10 14 00

SIGNAGE

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Room and door signs.
- B. Building identification signs.
- C. Plaque.

1.02 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's printed product literature for each type of sign, indicating sign styles, font, foreground and background colors, locations, overall dimensions of each sign.
- C. Signage Schedule: Provide information sufficient to completely define each sign for fabrication, including room number, room name, other text to be applied, sign and letter sizes, fonts, and colors.
 - 1. Room numbering will be assigned after award of contract.
 - 2. When content of signs is indicated to be determined later, request such information from SLC Mosquito Abatement District through Architect at least 2 months prior to start of fabrication; upon request, submit preliminary schedule.
 - 3. Submit for approval by SLC Mosquito Abatement District through Architect prior to fabrication.
- D. Samples: Submit two samples of each type of sign, of size similar to that required for project, illustrating sign style, font, and method of attachment.
- E. Selection Samples: Where colors are not specified, submit two sets of color selection charts or chips.
- F. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for SLC Mosquito Abatement District's use in maintenance of project.
 - 1. Curved Sign Media Suction Cups: One for each 100 signs; for removing media.

1.03 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not install tape adhesive when ambient temperature is lower than recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Maintain this minimum temperature during and after installation of signs.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 SIGNAGE APPLICATIONS

- A. Accessibility Compliance: Signs are required to comply with ADA Standards and ICC A117.1 _____, unless otherwise indicated; in the event of conflicting requirements, comply with the most comprehensive and specific requirements.
- B. Room and Door Signs: Provide a sign for every doorway, whether it has a door or not, not including corridors, lobbies, and similar open areas.
 - 1. Sign Type: Flat signs with engraved panel media as specified.
 - 2. Provide "tactile" signage, with letters raised minimum 1/32 inch and Grade II braille.
 - 3. Character Height: 1 inch.
 - 4. Sign Height: 2 inches, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 5. Office Doors: Identify with room numbers to be determined later, not the numbers indicated on drawings; in addition, provide "window" section for replaceable occupant name.
 - 6. Conference and Meeting Rooms: Identify with room numbers to be determined later, not the numbers indicated on drawings; in addition, provide "window" section with sliding "In Use/Vacant" indicator.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

7. Service Rooms: Identify with room names and numbers to be determined later, not those indicated on drawings.
 8. Rest Rooms: Identify with pictograms, the names "MEN" and "WOMEN", room numbers to be determined later, and braille.
- C. Building Identification Signs:
- D. Plaque: See Allowance for details.

2.02 SIGN TYPES

- A. Flat Signs: Signage media without frame.
1. Edges: Square.
 2. Corners: Square.
 3. Wall Mounting of One-Sided Signs: Tape adhesive.
- B. Radius / Curved Signs: One-piece, curved extruded aluminum media holder securing flat, flexible sign media by curved lip on two sides; other two sides closed by end caps; concealed mounting attachment.
1. Sizes: As indicated on drawings.
 2. Finish: Natural (clear) anodized.
 3. Sign Orientation: Curved in horizontal section.
 4. Wall Mounting of One-Sided Signs: Mechanical anchorage, with predrilled holes, and set in clear silicone sealant.
- C. Color and Font: Unless otherwise indicated:
1. Character Font: Helvetica, Arial, or other sans serif font.
 2. Character Case: Upper case only.
 3. Background Color: Clear.
 4. Character Color: Contrasting color.

2.03 TACTILE SIGNAGE MEDIA

- A. Engraved Panels: Laminated colored plastic; engraved through face to expose core as background color:
1. Total Thickness: 1/16 inch.

2.04 PLAQUES

- A. Metal Plaques:
1. Metal: Aluminum casting.
 2. Metal Sheet Thickness: 1/8 inch, minimum.

2.05 DIMENSIONAL LETTERS

- A. Metal Letters:
1. Metal: Aluminum casting.
 2. Finish: Brushed, satin.
 3. Mounting: Concealed screws.

2.06 ACCESSORIES

- A. Concealed Screws: Stainless steel, galvanized steel, chrome plated, or other non-corroding metal.
- B. Tape Adhesive: Double sided tape, permanent adhesive.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that substrate surfaces are ready to receive work.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install neatly, with horizontal edges level.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- C. Locate signs and mount at heights indicated on drawings and in accordance with ADA Standards and ICC A117.1.
- D. Protect from damage until Substantial Completion; repair or replace damaged items.

END OF SECTION 10 14 00

SECTION 10 21 13.13
METAL TOILET COMPARTMENTS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Metal toilet compartments.
- B. Urinal screens.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM A653/A653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process; 2015.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate partition plan, elevation views, dimensions, details of wall, floor, and ceiling supports, door swings.
- C. Product Data: Provide data on panel construction, hardware, and accessories.
- D. Samples: Submit two samples of partition panels, ____x____ inch in size illustrating panel finish, color, and sheen.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

- A. Steel Sheet: Hot-dipped galvanized steel sheet, ASTM A653/A653M, with G90/Z275 coating.

2.02 COMPONENTS

- A. Toilet Compartments: Powder coated steel, ceiling-hung.
- B. Doors, Panels, and Pilasters: Sheet steel faces, pressure bonded to sound deadening core, formed and closed edges; corners made with corner clips or mitered, welded, and ground smooth.
 - 1. Panel Faces: 20 gage, 0.0359 inch.
 - 2. Door Faces: 22 gage, 0.0299 inch.
 - 3. Pilaster Faces: 20 gage, 0.0359 inch.
 - 4. Reinforcement: 12 gage, 0.1046 inch.
 - 5. Internal Reinforcement: Provide in areas of attached hardware and fittings. Mark locations of reinforcement for partition mounted washroom accessories.
- C. Door and Panel Dimensions:
 - 1. Thickness: 1 inch.
 - 2. Door Width: 24 inch.
 - 3. Door Width for Handicapped Use: 36 inch, out-swinging.
 - 4. Height: 58 inch.
- D. Pilasters: 1-1/4 inch thick, of sizes required to suit compartment width and spacing.
- E. Urinal Screens: Wall mounted with continuous panel brackets, and floor-to-ceiling vertical upright consisting of pilaster anchored to ceiling.

2.03 ACCESSORIES

- A. Brackets: Polished chrome-plated non-ferrous cast metal.
- B. Hardware: Polished chrome plated non-ferrous cast metal:
 - 1. Pivot hinges, gravity type, adjustable for door close positioning; two per door.
 - 2. Thumb turn or sliding door latch with exterior emergency access feature.
 - 3. Door strike and keeper with rubber bumper; mounted on pilaster in alignment with door latch.
 - 4. Coat hook with rubber bumper; one per compartment, mounted on door.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

5. Provide door pull for outswinging doors.

2.04 FINISHING

- A. Powder Coated Steel Compartments: Clean, degrease, and neutralize. Follow immediately with a phosphatizing treatment, prime coat and two finish coats powder coat enamel.
- B. Color: as selected.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify existing conditions before starting work.
- B. Verify that field measurements are as indicated.
- C. Verify correct spacing of and between plumbing fixtures.
- D. Verify correct location of built-in framing, anchorage, and bracing.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install partitions secure, rigid, plumb, and level in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Maintain 3/8 to 1/2 inch space between wall and panels and between wall and end pilasters.
- C. Attach panel brackets securely to walls using anchor devices.
- D. Attach panels and pilasters to brackets. Locate head rail joints at pilaster center lines.

3.03 TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum Variation From True Position: 1/4 inch.
- B. Maximum Variation From Plumb: 1/8 inch.

3.04 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust and align hardware to uniform clearance at vertical edge of doors, not exceeding 3/16 inch.
- B. Adjust hinges to position doors in partial opening position when unlatched. Return out swinging doors to closed position.
- C. Adjust adjacent components for consistency of line or plane.

END OF SECTION 10 21 13.13

**SECTION 10 22 39
FOLDING PANEL PARTITIONS**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Folding panel partitions.
- B. Ceiling track, ceiling guards, and operating hardware.
- C. Electric operator.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2016.
- B. ASTM E90 - Standard Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound Transmission Loss of Building Partitions and Elements; 2009 (Reapproved 2016).
- C. ASTM E413 - Classification for Rating Sound Insulation; 2016.
- D. ASTM E557 - Standard Guide for Architectural Design and Installation Practices for Sound Isolation between Spaces Separated by Operable Partitions; 2012.
- E. ASTM E596 - Standard Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of Noise Reduction of Sound-Isolating Enclosures; 1996 (Reapproved 2016).
- F. ASTM F793/F793M - Standard Classification of Wall Coverings by Use Characteristics; 2015.
- G. NEMA MG 1 - Motors and Generators; 2016.
- H. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- I. UL (FRD) - Fire Resistance Directory; current edition.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data on partition materials, operation, hardware and accessories, electric operating components, track switching components, colors and finishes available, and _____.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate opening sizes, track layout, details of track and required supports, static and dynamic loads, location and details of pass door and frame, adjacent construction and finish trim, stacking depth, and _____.
- D. Samples for Selection: Submit two samples of full manufacturer's color range for selection of colors.
- E. Samples for Review: Submit two samples of surface finish, 12 by 12 inches size, illustrating quality, colors selected, texture, and weight.
- F. Certificates: Certify that partition system meets or exceeds specified acoustic requirements.
- G. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate special procedures.
- H. Maintenance Data: Include recommended cleaning methods, cleaning materials, and stain removal methods. Describe cleaning materials detrimental to finish surfaces and hardware finish.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified this section with minimum three years of documented experience.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of the type specified and with at least three years of documented experience.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis of Design: Modernfold.
- B. Other Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - 1. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.

2.02 COMPONENTS

- A. Operable Panel Partition: Center opening; paired panels; center stacking; motor operated.
 - 1. Panel Finish: Vinyl coated fabric.
 - 2. Noise Reduction Coefficient (NRC): ASTM E596, NRC of 0.65 minimum.
 - 3. Sound Transmission Class (STC): 38-42 calculated in accordance with ASTM E413, based on tests conducted in accordance with ASTM E90, on panel size of 100 sq ft.
 - 4. Surface Burning Characteristics of Panel Finish: Flame spread/Smoke developed index of 25/50, maximum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
 - 5. Installed partition system track capable of supporting imposed loads, with maximum deflection of 1/360 of span.
- B. Panel Construction:
- C. Core: 16 gage, 0.0598 inch thick formed sheet steel frame top, bottom, jambs, and intermediates; welded construction, with acoustical insulation fill.
 - 1. Thickness with Finish: 3 inches.
 - 2. Factory applied surface finish.
 - 3. Trim: Trimless.
 - 4. Hinges: Continuous piano type, ___ gage, _____ inch stainless steel.
 - 5. Panel to Panel Seals: Grooved and gasketed astragals, with continuous flexible ribbed vinyl seal fitted to panel edge construction; color to match panel finish.
- D. Track: Formed steel; 1-1/4 by 1-1/4 inch size; thickness and profile designed to support loads, steel sub-channel and track connectors, and track switches.
- E. Carriers: Nylon wheels on trolley carrier at top of every second panel, sized to carry imposed loads, with threaded pendant bolt for vertical adjustment.
- F. Hardware: Latching door handles of cast steel, satin chrome finish; lock cylinder keyed to building keying system; _____.
- G. Vinyl Coated Fabric: ASTM F793/F793M, Category VI, polyvinyl fluoride (PVC) finish for washability and improved flame retardance; color as selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.
- H. Accessories: White enameled ceiling closure; aluminum jamb and head molding, fittings and attachments, and intermediate meeting posts.
- I. Pass Door: Single door, 36 inch wide by 84 inch high opening; same design and construction as panel; fit door with perimeter acoustic gaskets and concealed closer.

2.03 ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS AND COMPONENTS

- A. Electrical Characteristics:
 - 1. 1/2 hp, ___ rated load amperes.
 - 2. ___ volts, single phase, 60 Hz.
 - 3. ___ amperes maximum fuse size. ___ minimum circuit capacity.
 - 4. ___ percent minimum power factor at rated load.
- B. Motor: NEMA MG 1, refer to electrical specifications and drawings.
- C. Electric Operator: 12 inches per second travelling speed; adjustable friction clutch brake actuated by solenoid controlled motor starter; enclosed limit switch; enclosed magnetic reversing starter.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- D. Control Station: 3, (1 per door opening) standard, three button OPEN-STOP-CLOSE type; 24 volt circuit; surface mounted.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field measurements are as indicated.
- B. Verify floor flatness of 1/8 inch in 10 feet, non-cumulative.
- C. Verify wall plumbness of 1/8 inch in 10 feet, non-cumulative.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install partition in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and ASTM E557.
- B. Install electric operator, wiring, and controls. Locate control station(s) as indicated.
- C. Fit and align partition assembly and pocket doors level and plumb.
- D. Lubricate moving components.

3.03 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust partition assembly to provide smooth operation from stacked to full open position. Do not over-compress acoustic seals.
- B. Visually inspect partition in full extended position for light leaks to identify a potential acoustical leak.
- C. Adjust partition assembly to achieve lightproof seal.

3.04 CLEANING

- A. Clean finish surfaces and partition accessories.

3.05 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

- A. Demonstrate operation of partition and identify potential operational problems.

END OF SECTION 10 22 39

**SECTION 10 26 01
WALL AND CORNER GUARDS**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Corner guards.

1.02 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Indicate physical dimensions, features, anchorage details, and rough-in measurements.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 COMPONENTS

- A. Corner Guards - Surface Mounted:
 - 1. Material: High impact vinyl with full height extruded aluminum retainer.
 - 2. Material: Type 304 stainless steel, No. 4 finish, _____ gage, _____ inch thick.
 - 3. Width of Wings: 2 inches.
 - 4. Corner: Square.
 - 5. Color: selected from Manufacturers standard colors and stainless steel as noted. See plans for locations..
 - 6. Length: One piece.
 - 7. Preformed end caps.
- B. Mounting Brackets and Attachment Hardware: Appropriate to component and substrate.

2.02 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate components with tight joints, corners and seams.
- B. Form end trim closure by capping and finishing smooth.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that rough openings, concealed blocking, and anchors are correctly sized and located.
- B. Verify that field measurements are as indicated on drawings.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install components in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, level and plumb, secured rigidly in position to wall framing members only.
- B. Position corner guard 4 inches above finished floor to 60 inches high.

3.03 TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum Variation From Required Height: 1/4 inch.
- B. Maximum Variation From Level or Plane For Visible Length: 1/4 inch.

3.04 SCHEDULE

- A. Administration Building - Vinyl.
- B. All other buildings Stainless Steel.

END OF SECTION 10 26 01

SECTION 10 28 00
TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Commercial toilet accessories.
- B. Commercial shower and bath accessories.
- C. Under-lavatory pipe supply covers.
- D. Utility room accessories.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ADA Standards - Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Standards for Accessible Design; 2010.
- B. ASTM C1036 - Standard Specification for Flat Glass; 2016.
- C. ASTM C1503 - Standard Specification for Silvered Flat Glass Mirror; 2008 (Reapproved 2013).
- D. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2016.
- E. ASTM G21 - Standard Practice for Determining Resistance of Synthetic Polymeric Materials to Fungi; 2015.

1.03 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate the work with the placement of internal wall reinforcement, concealed ceiling supports, and reinforcement of toilet partitions to receive anchor attachments.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Submit data on accessories describing size, finish, details of function, and attachment methods.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

- A. Accessories - General: Shop assembled, free of dents and scratches and packaged complete with anchors and fittings, steel anchor plates, adapters, and anchor components for installation.
- B. Mirror Glass: Annealed float glass, ASTM C1036 Type I, Class 1, Quality Q2, with silvering, protective and physical characteristics complying with ASTM C1503.
- C. Adhesive: Two component epoxy type, waterproof.
- D. Fasteners, Screws, and Bolts: Hot dip galvanized; tamper-proof; security type.

2.02 FINISHES

- A. Stainless Steel: Satin finish, unless otherwise noted.

2.03 COMMERCIAL TOILET ACCESSORIES

- A. Toilet Paper Dispenser: Owner supplied, Contractor installed.
- B. Paper Towel Dispenser: Owner provided, Contractor installed
- C. Waste Receptacle: Owner provided.
- D. Soap Dispenser: Owner provided, Contractor installed.
- E. Mirrors: Stainless steel framed, 1/4 inch thick annealed float glass; ASTM C1036.
 - 1. Annealed Float Glass: Silvering, protective and physical characteristics in compliance with ASTM C1503.
 - 2. Size: 1135 & 1143 - 48"w x 36"h, all others 24"w x 36"h.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

3. Frame: 0.05 inch angle shapes, with mitered and welded and ground corners, and tamperproof hanging system; satin finish.
 4. Backing: Full-mirror sized, minimum 0.03 inch galvanized steel sheet and nonabsorptive filler material.
- F. Grab Bars: Stainless steel, nonslip grasping surface finish.
1. Standard Duty Grab Bars:
 - a. Push/Pull Point Load: 250 pound-force, minimum.
 - b. Dimensions: 1-1/4 inch outside diameter, minimum 0.05 inch wall thickness, exposed flange mounting, 1-1/2 inch clearance between wall and inside of grab bar.
 - c. Length and Configuration: As indicated on drawings.

2.04 COMMERCIAL SHOWER AND BATH ACCESSORIES

- A. Shower Curtain Rod: Stainless steel tube, 1 inch outside diameter, 0.04 inch wall thickness, satin-finished, with 3 inch outside diameter, minimum 0.04 inch thick satin-finished stainless steel flanges, for installation with exposed fasteners.
- B. Shower Curtain:
1. Material: Nylon reinforced vinyl, 0.008 inch thick, matte finish, with antibacterial treatment, flameproof and stain-resistant.
 2. Material: Cotton, machine washable, and mildew-resistant.
 3. Size: width required x 72 inches, hemmed edges.
 4. Grommets: Stainless steel; pierced through top hem on 6 inch centers.
 5. Color: As selected from manufacturer's standard colors.
 6. Shower Curtain Hooks: Chrome-plated or stainless steel spring wire designed for snap closure.
- C. Folding Shower Seat: Wall-mounted surface; welded tubular seat frame, structural support members, hinges and mechanical fasteners of Type 304 stainless steel, L-shaped, right hand seat.
1. Seat: Phenolic or polymeric composite one-piece seat or seat slats, of beige color.
 2. Size: ADA Standards compliant.
- D. Towel Pin: Stainless steel, 3 inch extension from wall; rectangular-shaped bracket and backplate for concealed attachment, satin finish. 1 per shower.
- E. Shelf: as noted on the drawings. 1 each shower.

2.05 UNDER-LAVATORY PIPE AND SUPPLY COVERS

- A. Under-Lavatory Pipe and Supply Covers:
1. Insulate exposed drainage piping including hot, cold, and tempered water supplies under lavatories or sinks to comply with ADA Standards.
 2. Exterior Surfaces: Smooth non-absorbent, non-abrasive surfaces.
 3. Construction: 1/8 inch flexible PVC.
 - a. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread index of 25 or less and smoke developed index of 450 or less, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
 - b. Microbial and Fungal Resistance: Comply with ASTM G21.
 4. Color: White.

2.06 UTILITY ROOM ACCESSORIES

- A. Mop and Broom Holder: 0.05 inch thick stainless steel, Type 304, hat-shaped channel.
1. Holders: 3 spring-loaded rubber cam holders.
 2. Length: 36 inches.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify existing conditions before starting work.
- B. Verify exact location of accessories for installation.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Deliver inserts and rough-in frames to site for timely installation.
- B. Provide templates and rough-in measurements as required.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Mounting Heights: As required by accessibility regulations, unless otherwise indicated.

3.04 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed accessories from damage due to subsequent construction operations.

END OF SECTION 10 28 00

**SECTION 10 44 00
FIRE PROTECTION SPECIALTIES**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Fire extinguishers.
- B. Fire extinguisher cabinets.
- C. Accessories.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. FM (AG) - FM Approval Guide; current edition.
- B. NFPA 10 - Standard for Portable Fire Extinguishers; 2013.
- C. UL (DIR) - Online Certifications Directory; current listings at database.ul.com.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide extinguisher operational features.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate locations of cabinets and cabinet physical dimensions.
- D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special criteria and wall opening coordination requirements.
- E. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that products meet or exceed specified requirements.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

- A. Fire Extinguishers - General: Comply with product requirements of NFPA 10 and applicable codes, whichever is more stringent.
 - 1. Provide extinguishers labeled by UL (DIR) or FM (AG) for purpose specified and as indicated.
- B. Multipurpose Dry Chemical Type Fire Extinguishers: Carbon steel tank, with pressure gage.
 - 1. Class: A:B:C type.
 - 2. Size: 5 pound.
 - 3. Temperature range: Minus 40 degrees F to ___ degrees F.

2.02 FIRE EXTINGUISHER CABINETS

- A. Cabinet Construction: Non-fire rated.
 - 1. Formed primed steel sheet; 0.036 inch thick base metal.
- B. Cabinet Configuration: Semi-recessed type.
 - 1. Size to accommodate accessories.
 - 2. Trim: Flat rolled edge, with ___ inch wide face.
- C. Door: 0.036 inch metal thickness, reinforced for flatness and rigidity with nylon catch. Hinge doors for 180 degree opening with two butt hinge.
- D. Door Glazing: Tempered glass, clear, 1/8 inch thick, and set in resilient channel glazing gasket.
- E. Cabinet Mounting Hardware: Appropriate to cabinet, with pre-drilled holes for placement of anchors.

2.03 ACCESSORIES

- A. Cabinet Signage: _____.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify existing conditions before starting work.
- B. Verify rough openings for cabinet are correctly sized and located.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Secure rigidly in place.
- C. Place extinguishers in cabinets.

END OF SECTION 10 44 00

SECTION 10 71 13.43
FIXED SUN SCREENS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Modular, shop fabricated, extruded aluminum sun screens to be mounted on structure.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 08 51 13 - Aluminum Windows: Mounting substrates.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM A307 - Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts, Studs, and Threaded Rod 60 000 PSI Tensile Strength; 2014.
- B. ASTM A792/A792M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, 55% Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process; 2010 (Reapproved 2015).
- C. ASTM B209 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate; 2014.
- D. ASTM B209M - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate (Metric); 2014.
- E. ASTM B221 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes; 2014.
- F. ASTM B221M - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes (Metric); 2013.
- G. ASTM F593 - Standard Specification for Stainless Steel Bolts, Hex Cap Screws, and Studs; 2017.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Shop Drawings: Prior to commencement of fabrication, submit detailed shop drawings, showing all profiles, sections of all components, finishes, fastening details, and manufacturer's technical and descriptive data. Include field dimensions of openings and elevations on shop drawings.
- C. Design Data: Submit comprehensive structural analysis of design for the specified loads. Stamp and sign calculations by professional engineer.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Designer Qualifications: Perform design under direct supervision of a Professional Engineer experienced in design of this type of work licensed in the State in which the Project is located.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section, with no less than five years of documented experience.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials to project site ready for erection.
- B. Package using methods that prevent damage during shipping and storage on site.
- C. Store materials under cover and elevated above grade.

1.07 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Sun Screens: Correct defective work within a one year period after Date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Finish Warranty: Provide manufacturer's one year warranty on factory finish against cracking, peeling, and blistering.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 SUN SCREENS

- A. Sun Screens: Shop fabricated, shop finished, extruded aluminum outriggers, louvers, and fascia, free of defects impairing strength, durability or appearance.
 - 1. Configuration: As indicated on drawings. Product must match aluminum windows and be compatible with window system.
 - 2. Louver Type: Airfoil.
 - 3. Sun Screen Angle: ____ degrees from horizontal.
 - 4. Outrigger Shape: Wedge.
 - 5. Design Criteria: Design and fabricate to resist the following loads without failure, damage, or permanent deflection:
 - a. Wind: ____ psf positive, ____ psf negative; minimum
 - b. Snow: ____ psf; minimum.
 - c. Live: ____ psf; minimum.
 - d. Thermal Movement: Plus/minus 1/8 inch, maximum.
 - 6. Sizes: As indicated on drawings.
 - 7. Exposed Aluminum Finish: Match Aluminum Windows framing, refer to section for finish information.
 - 8. Provide a complete system ready for erection at project site.

2.02 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B209 (ASTM B209M) or ASTM B221 (ASTM B221M).
- B. Aluminum Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A792/A792M.
- C. Concealed Structural Supports: Aluminum, or steel coated for corrosion resistance and dissimilar metal isolation.
- D. Fasteners: ASTM F593 stainless steel or ASTM A307 carbon steel.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and site area for conditions that might prevent satisfactory installation.
- B. Verify that dimensions of supporting structure are within plus/minus 1/8 inch of dimensions indicated on shop drawings.
- C. Verify that all adjacent painting, roofing, masonry work, and other work that might damage sun screen finish has been completed prior to installation of sun screens.
- D. Do not install until after all adjacent painting, roofing and masonry have been completed.
- E. Do not proceed with installation until all conditions are satisfactory.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.
- B. Set units level, plumb, with uniform joints, and aligned with building elements.
- C. Separate dissimilar metals using concealed bituminous paint or non-absorbent gasket.
- D. Anchor units to structure as indicated on drawings.
- E. Do not cut or trim aluminum members without approval of manufacturer; do not install damaged members.

3.03 TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum Variation from Level: Plus/Minus 1/8 inch.

3.04 CLEANING

- A. Clean exterior surfaces units of dust and debris; follow manufacturer's cleaning instructions for the finish used.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

3.05 PROTECTION

- A. Protect units after installation to prevent damage due to other work until Date of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 10 71 13.43

**SECTION 10 75 00
FLAGPOLES**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Aluminum Flagpoles.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AASHTO M 36 - Standard Specification for Corrugated Steel Pipe, Metallic-Coated, for Sewers and Drains; 2016.
- B. ASTM B241/B241M - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Seamless Pipe and Seamless Extruded Tube; 2016.
- C. NAAMM FP 1001 - Guide Specifications for Design Loads of Metal Flagpoles; 2007.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Provide data on pole, accessories, and configurations.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate detailed dimensions, base details, anchor requirements, and imposed loads.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Designer Qualifications: Design flagpole foundation under direct supervision of a Professional Structural Engineer experienced in design of this Work and licensed the State in which the Project is located.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Spiral wrap flagpole with protective covering and pack in protective shipping tubes or containers.
- B. Protect flagpole and accessories from damage or moisture.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 FLAGPOLES

- A. Flagpoles: Designed in accordance with NAAMM FP 1001.
 - 1. Material: Aluminum.
 - 2. Design: Cone tapered.
 - 3. Mounting: Ground mounted type.
 - 4. See detail for additional information.
 - 5. Nominal Height: 30 ft; measured from nominal ground elevation.
 - 6. Halyard: External type.
- B. Performance Requirements:
 - 1. Wind Pressure Loading on Flagpole with Flag: Resistant without permanent deformation to ___ miles/hr wind speed, in accordance with NAAMM FP 1001; the factor of safety used is 2.5.

2.02 POLE MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum: ASTM B241/B241M, 6063 alloy, T6 temper.

2.03 ACCESSORIES

- A. Finial Ball: Aluminum, 6 inch diameter.
- B. Truck Assembly: Cast aluminum; revolving, stainless steel ball bearings, non-fouling.
- C. Flag: American design, 5 ft by 8 ft size, nylon fabric, brass grommets, hemmed edges. By Owner.
- D. Cleats: 9 inch size, aluminum with galvanized steel fastenings, two per halyard.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- E. Cleat Box: Aluminum, with built-in hinge and hasp assembly, attached to pole with tamper proof screws inside box.
- F. Halyard: 5/16 inch diameter polypropylene, braided, white.

2.04 MOUNTING COMPONENTS

- A. Foundation Tube Sleeve: AASHTO M 36, corrugated 16 gage, 0.0598 inch steel, galvanized, depth of ____ inches as indicated.
- B. Pole Base Attachment: Flush; steel base with base cover.

2.05 FINISHING

- A. Metal Surfaces in Contact With Concrete: Asphaltic paint.
- B. Aluminum: Mill finish.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that concrete foundation is ready to receive work and dimensions are as indicated on shop drawings.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Coat metal sleeve surfaces below grade and surfaces in contact with dissimilar materials with asphaltic paint.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Install flagpole, base assembly, and fittings in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.04 TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum Variation From Plumb: 1 inch.

3.05 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust operating devices so that halyard and flag function smoothly.

END OF SECTION 10 75 00

**SECTION 11 52 13
PROJECTION SCREENS**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Front projection screen assemblies.

1.02 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's catalog cuts and descriptive information on each product to be used, including:
 - 1. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
 - 2. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
 - 3. Installation methods.
 - 4. Wiring diagrams for motor operators and actuators, and controls and switches.
- C. Shop Drawings: For custom installations, indicate dimensions, verified field measurements, mounting details, and interface with adjacent construction.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: Provide manufacturer's operation and maintenance instructions.

1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section, with not less than 3 years of documented experience.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of the type specified and with at least three years of documented experience.

1.04 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver projection screens to project site in manufacturer's original unopened packaging, and inspect for damage and proper size before accepting delivery.
- B. Store in a protected, clean, dry area with temperature maintained above 50 degrees F, and stack in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
- C. Acclimate screens to building temperatures for 24 hours prior to installation, in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

1.05 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain interior of building between 60 degrees F and ___ degrees F during and after installation of projection screens.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 FRONT PROJECTION SCREENS

- A. Front Projection Screens: Factory assembled unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Provide mounting hardware, brackets, supports, fasteners, and other mounting accessories required for a complete installation, in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations for specified substrates and mountings.

END OF SECTION 11 52 13

SECTION 11 53 00
LABORATORY EQUIPMENT

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Laboratory equipment.
- B. Connection to utilities.
- C. Service fittings and outlets.

1.02 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Large Components: Ensure that large components can be moved into final position without damage to other construction.
- B. Preinstallation Meeting: Convene one week before starting work of this section.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide equipment dimensions and construction, equipment capacities, physical dimensions, utility and service requirements and locations, point loads .
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate equipment locations, large scale plans, elevations, cross sections, rough-in and anchor placement dimensions and tolerances, clearances required.
- D. Samples: Submit two samples of exposed finish surfaces, 6 x 6 min inch in size illustrating color and finish.
- E. Operation Data: Include description of equipment operation and required adjusting and testing .
- F. Maintenance Data: Identify system maintenance requirements, servicing cycles, lubrication types required and local spare part sources.
- G. Warranty Documentation: Submit manufacturer warranty and ensure that forms have been completed in SLC Mosquito Abatement District's name and registered with manufacturer.
- H. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of concealed utility connections.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing the types of products specified in this section, with minimum three years of documented experience.

1.05 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Correct defective Work within a five year period after Date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Laboratory Equipment:
 - 1. Kewaunee Scientific Corp; Product ____: www.kewaunee.com.
 - 2. Labconco Corporation; Product ____: www.labconco.com.
 - 3. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.

2.02 COMPONENTS

- A. Equipment: Scheduled at end of this section.
- B. Installation Accessories: Provide all rough-in frames, anchors, supports, accessories and closure trim required for complete installation.

2.03 SHOP FINISHING

- A. Concealed Frame of _____ Equipment: Baked primer.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that rough-in frames, anchors and supports are accurately placed.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Provide rough-in frame and anchors for placement by Section _____.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install in accordance with standards required by authority having jurisdiction.
- C. Anchor equipment securely in place.
- D. Touch-up minor damaged surfaces caused during installation. Replace damaged components as directed by Architect.

3.04 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust operating equipment to efficient operation.

END OF SECTION 11 53 00

SECTION 12 93 13

BICYCLE RACKS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Bicycle racks.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM A312/A312M - Standard Specification for Seamless, Welded, and Heavily Cold Worked Austenitic Stainless Steel Pipes; 2017.
- B. ASTM A615/A615M - Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Carbon-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement; 2016.
- C. ASTM C33/C33M - Standard Specification for Concrete Aggregates; 2016.
- D. ASTM C150/C150M - Standard Specification for Portland Cement; 2016.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:
 - 1. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
 - 2. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
 - 3. Installation methods.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate size, shape, and dimensions, including clearances from adjacent walls, doors, and obstructions.

1.04 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging until ready for installation.
- B. Handle racks with sufficient care to prevent scratches and other damage to the finish.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 BICYCLE RACKS

- A. Bicycle Racks: Device designed for indoor storage of bicycles; allows user-provided lock to simultaneously secure one wheel and part of the frame on each bicycle parked or racked.
 - 1. Style: Custom configuration as indicated on drawings.
 - 2. Capacity: __ bicycles.
 - 3. Finish: Satin brushed.
- B. Materials:
 - 1. Pipe: Stainless steel, ASTM A312/A312M, Type 304, Schedule 40S.
 - 2. Concrete:
 - a. Cement: ASTM C150/C150M, Portland Type I - Normal; white color.
 - b. Concrete Materials: ASTM C33/C33M aggregate, water, and sand.
 - c. Reinforcing Steel: ASTM A615/A615M, deformed steel bars; unfinished, strength and size commensurate with precast unit design.
 - d. Concrete Mix: Minimum 5000 psi, 28 day strength, air entrained to 5 to 7 percent.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine surfaces to receive bicycle racks.
- B. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.
- C. Do not begin installation until unsatisfactory substrates have been properly repaired.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install bicycle racks level, plumb, square, and correctly located as indicated on drawings.

3.03 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products until completion of project.
- B. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Date of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 12 93 13

SECTION 220500 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR PLUMBING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 1. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
 2. Transition fittings.
 3. Dielectric fittings.
 4. Mechanical sleeve seals.
 5. Sleeves.
 6. Escutcheons.
 7. Grout.
 8. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
 9. Painting and finishing.
 10. Concrete bases.
 11. Supports and anchorages.
 12. Link Seal
 13. Lead Free requirements.

1.3 SEISMIC REQUIREMENTS

- A. Component Importance Factor. All plumbing components shall be assigned a component importance factor. The component importance factor, I_p , shall be taken as 1.5 if any of the following conditions apply:
 1. The component is required to function for life-safety purposes after an earthquake.
 2. The component contains hazardous materials.
 3. The component is in or attached to an Occupancy Category IV structure and it is needed for continued operation of the facility or its failure could impair the continued operation of the facility.
- B. All other components shall be assigned a component importance factor, I_p , equal to 1.0.
- C. Seismic Performance: Equipment, pipe hangers and supports shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7 and with the requirements specified in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
 1. For components with a seismic importance factor of 1.0 the term "withstand" means "the system will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified."

2. For components with a seismic importance factor of 1.5 the term "withstand" means "the system will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the system will be fully operational after the seismic event."

1.4 LEAD FREE REQUIREMENTS

- A. For all projects within the United States, and when water is anticipated for human consumption, all pipes, pipe fittings, plumbing fittings and fixtures shall comply with PUBLIC LAW 111-380 "Reduction of Lead in Drinking Water Act" 124 STAT. 4131, 42-USC 1201, January 4th, 2011.

1.5 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe chases, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, and crawlspaces.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms, accessible pipe shafts, accessible plumbing chases and accessible tunnels.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- D. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and in chases.
- E. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.
- F. The following are industry abbreviations for rubber materials:
 1. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
 2. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.
- G. Lead Free:
 1. Not containing more than 0.2 percent lead when used with respect to solder and flux.
 2. Not more than a weighted average of 0.25 percent lead when used with respect to the wetted surfaces of pipes, pipe fittings, plumbing fittings and fixtures.
 3. Calculation: The weighted average lead content of a pipe, pipe fitting, plumbing fitting or fixture shall be calculated by using the formula prescribed in the law named in LEAD FREE REQUIREMENTS above.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 1. Transition fittings.
 2. Dielectric fittings.
 3. Mechanical sleeve seals.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

4. Escutcheons.

B. Welding certificates.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."

B. Electrical Characteristics for Plumbing Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.

B. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

1.9 COORDINATION

A. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for plumbing installations.

B. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.

C. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for plumbing items requiring access that are concealed behind finished surfaces. Access panels and doors are specified in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified.

2.2 PIPE, TUBE, AND FITTINGS

- A. Refer to individual Division 22 piping Sections for pipe, tube, and fitting materials and joining methods.
- B. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to individual Division 22 piping Sections for special joining materials not listed below.
- B. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
 - 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
 - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
 - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
 - 2. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick, unless otherwise indicated; and full-face or ring type, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- F. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing, unless otherwise indicated; and AWS A5.8, BAg1, silver alloy for refrigerant piping, unless otherwise indicated.

2.4 TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. Flexible Transition Couplings for Underground Nonpressure Drainage Piping: ASTM C 1173 with elastomeric sleeve, ends same size as piping to be joined, and corrosion-resistant metal band on each end.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
 - b. Fernco, Inc.
 - c. Mission Rubber Company.
 - d. Plastic Oddities, Inc.

2.5 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. Description: Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.
- B. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
- C. Dielectric Unions: Factory-fabricated, union assembly, for 250-psig minimum working pressure at 180 deg F.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. Eclipse, Inc.
 - d. Epco Sales, Inc.
 - e. Hart Industries, International, Inc.
 - f. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - g. Zurn Industries, Inc.; Wilkins Div.
- D. Dielectric Flanges: Factory-fabricated, companion-flange assembly, for 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. Epco Sales, Inc.
 - d. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
- E. Dielectric-Flange Kits: Companion-flange assembly for field assembly. Include flanges, full-face- or ring-type neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or polyethylene bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico, Inc.
 - c. Central Plastics Company.
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 - 2. Separate companion flanges and steel bolts and nuts shall have 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure where required to suit system pressures.
- F. Dielectric Couplings: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Calpico, Inc.
 - b. Lochinvar Corp.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

G. Dielectric Nipples: Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.

1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Perfection Corp.
 - b. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Victaulic Co. of America.

2.6 MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS

A. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.

1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico, Inc.
 - c. Metraflex Co.
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
2. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
3. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel. Include two for each sealing element.
4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

2.7 SLEEVES

- A. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- B. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.
- C. Cast Iron: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.
- E. Molded PE: Reusable, PE, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth-outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

2.8 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. Description: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with an ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and an OD that completely covers opening.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
- C. One-Piece, Floor-Plate Type: Cast-iron floor plate.
- D. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Type: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.

2.9 GROUT

- A. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
 - 1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
 - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
 - 3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.10 LINK SEAL

- A. Link-Seal® Modular Seal Pressure Plates
 - 1. Link-Seal® modular seal pressure plates shall be molded of glass reinforced Nylon Polymer with the following properties:
 - a. Izod Impact - Notched = 2.05ft-lb/in. per ASTM D-256
 - Flexural Strength @ Yield = 30,750 psi per ASTM D-790
 - Flexural Modulus = 1,124,000 psi per ASTM D-790
 - Elongation Break = 11.07% per ASTM D-638
 - Specific Gravity = 1.38 per ASTM D-792
 - 2. Models LS200-275-300-315 shall incorporate the most current Link-Seal® Modular Seal design modifications and shall include an integrally molded compression assist boss on the top (bolt entry side) of the pressure plate, which permits increased compressive loading of the rubber sealing element. Models 315-325-340-360-400-410-425-475-500-525-575-600 shall incorporate an integral recess known as a “Hex Nut Interlock” designed to accommodate commercially available fasteners to insure proper thread engagement for the class and service of metal hardware. All pressure plates shall have a permanent identification of the manufacturer’s name molded into it.
 - 3. For fire and Hi-Temp service, pressure plates shall be steel with 2-part Zinc Dichromate Coating.
 - 4. Link-Seal® Modular Seal Hardware: All fasteners shall be sized according to latest Link-Seal® modular seal technical data. Bolts, flange hex nuts shall be: 316 Stainless Steel per ASTM F593-95, with a 85,000 psi average tensile strength.

2.11 LEAD FREE PRODUCTS:

- A. For all products to be purchased whenever water is anticipated for human consumption, all pipes, pipe fittings, plumbing fittings and fixtures shall comply with the LEAD FREE REQUIREMENTS in PART 1 above.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PLUMBING DEMOLITION

- A. Refer to Division 01 Section "Cutting and Patching" and Division 02 Section "Selective Structure Demolition" for general demolition requirements and procedures.
- B. Disconnect, demolish, and remove plumbing systems, equipment, and components indicated to be removed.
 - 1. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
 - 2. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material.
 - 3. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
 - 4. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational.
 - 5. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to Owner.
- C. If pipe, insulation, or equipment to remain is damaged in appearance or is unserviceable, remove damaged or unserviceable portions and replace with new products of equal capacity and quality.

3.2 SEISMIC REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with SEI/ASCE 7 and with requirements for seismic seismic-restraint devices in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.3 LEAD FREE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Installations where water is anticipated for human consumption, all pipes, pipe fittings, plumbing fittings and fixtures shall be Lead Free as given in PART 1 above.

3.4 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 22 Sections specifying piping systems.

- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- G. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- H. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- J. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- K. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- L. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors according to the following:
 - 1. New Piping:
 - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
 - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type with spring clips.
 - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - e. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
 - f. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, floor-plate type.
 - 2. Existing Piping: Use the following:
 - a. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.
 - b. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and spring clips.
 - d. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.

- e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and set screw.
 - f. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting, cast-brass type.
 - g. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with set screw or spring clips.
 - h. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting, floor-plate type.
- M. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- N. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.
- O. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs.
- P. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, gypsum-board partitions, and concrete floor and roof slabs.
- 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
 - 2. Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
 - 3. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use the following sleeve materials:
 - a. Steel Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than NPS 6.
 - b. Steel Sheet Sleeves: For pipes NPS 6 and larger, penetrating gypsum-board partitions.
 - c. Stack Sleeve Fittings: For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level. Refer to Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for flashing.
 - 1) Seal space outside of sleeve fittings with grout.
 - 4. Except for underground wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation, using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Refer to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and installation.
- Q. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- 1. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches in diameter.
 - 2. Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves 6 inches and larger in diameter.
 - 3. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten

bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

- R. Underground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Seal pipe penetrations using mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
 - 1. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- S. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Refer to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for materials.
- T. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- U. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections of these Specifications for roughing-in requirements.

3.5 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 22 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
- F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- G. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.

- H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
- I. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657.
 - 1. Plain-End Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
 - 2. Plain-End Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.
- J. Fiberglass Bonded Joints: Prepare pipe ends and fittings, apply adhesive, and join according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions.

3.6 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
 - 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
 - 3. Dry Piping Systems: Install dielectric unions and flanges to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.
 - 4. Wet Piping Systems: Install dielectric coupling and nipple fittings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.

3.7 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install equipment to allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights are not indicated.
- B. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install plumbing equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations. Extend grease fittings to accessible locations.
- D. Install equipment to allow right of way for piping installed at required slope.

3.8 PAINTING

- A. Painting of plumbing systems, equipment, and components is specified in Division 09 Sections "Interior Painting" and "Exterior Painting."
- B. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.

3.9 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and according to seismic codes at Project.
 - 1. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit.
 - 2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of the base.
 - 3. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 - 4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 - 6. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.

3.10 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Refer to Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural steel.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor plumbing materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.

3.11 ERECTION OF WOOD SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Cut, fit, and place wood grounds, nailers, blocking, and anchorages to support, and anchor plumbing materials and equipment.
- B. Select fastener sizes that will not penetrate members if opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Tighten connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood members.
- C. Attach to substrates as required to support applied loads.

3.12 GROUTING

- A. Mix and install grout for plumbing equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.
- B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
- C. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.
- D. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.
- E. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- F. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.
- G. Place grout around anchors.
- H. Cure placed grout.

END OF SECTION 220500

SECTION 220517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Sleeves.
 - 2. Sleeve-seal systems.
 - 3. Grout.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Galvanized-Steel Wall Pipes: ASTM A 53, Schedule 40, with plain ends and welded steel collar; zinc coated.
- C. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.
- D. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- E. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
2. CALPICO, Inc.
3. Link-Seal
4. Metraflex Company (The).
5. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
6. Proco Products, Inc.

B. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.

1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.3 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
 1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
 2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.

3. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- E. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

3.3 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron wall sleeves
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves
 2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system Retain first subparagraph below if using sleeve-seal systems; delete if using sleeve-seal fittings.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system .
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
4. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves
5. Interior Partitions:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel-sheet sleeves.

END OF SECTION 220517

SECTION 220518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Escutcheons.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to 2 inch (50mm), tube, and insulation of insulated piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
 - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping:
 - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type with polished, chrome-plated finish.

- b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type with chrome-plated finish
- d. Bare Piping 2 inch and Smaller at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- e. Bare Piping Larger than 2 inch at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type with polished, chrome-plated finish
- f. Bare Piping 2 inch and Smaller at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brasstype with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- g. Bare Piping Larger than 2 inch at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type with polished, chrome-plated finish
- h. Bare Piping 2 inch and Smaller in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated or rough-brass finish.
- i. Bare Piping Larger than 2 inch in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type with polished, chrome-plated finish
- j. Bare Piping 2 inch and Smaller in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brasstype with polished, chrome-plated or rough-brass finish.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates using new materials.

END OF SECTION 220518

SECTION 220519 - METERS AND GAGES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Bimetallic-actuated thermometers.
2. Liquid-in-glass thermometers.
3. Thermowells.
4. Dial-type pressure gages.
5. Gage attachments.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product certificates.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 BIMETALLIC-ACTUATED THERMOMETERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Ashcroft Inc.
2. Ernst Flow Industries.
3. Marsh Bellofram.
4. Miljoco Corporation.
5. Nanmac Corporation.
6. Noshok.
7. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.
8. REOTEMP Instrument Corporation.
9. Tel-Tru Manufacturing Company.
10. Terice, H. O. Co.
11. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
12. Weiss Instruments, Inc.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

13. WIKA Instrument Corporation - USA.
 14. Winters Instruments - U.S.
 15. Weksler
- B. Standard: ASME B40.200.
- C. Case: Liquid-filled and sealed type(s); stainless steel with 5 inch nominal diameter.
- D. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings and scales in deg F and deg C.
- E. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable angle, with unified-inch screw threads.
- F. Connector Size: 1/2 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
- G. Stem: 0.25 or 0.375 inch in diameter; stainless steel.
- H. Window: Plain glass or plastic.
- I. Ring: Stainless steel.
- J. Element: Bimetal coil.
- K. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
- L. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.

2.2 LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS

- A. Metal-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following
 - a. Flo Fab Inc.
 - b. Miljoco Corporation.
 - c. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.
 - d. Tel-Tru Manufacturing Company.
 - e. Trerice, H. O. Co.
 - f. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
 - g. Winters Instruments - U.S.
 - h. Weksler
 2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
 3. Case: Cast aluminum 7-inch nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
 4. Case Form: Adjustable angle unless otherwise indicated.
 5. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
 6. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
 7. Window: Glass or plastic.
 8. Stem: Aluminum and of length to suit installation.

- a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
9. Connector: 1-1/4 inches, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
10. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

2.3 THERMOWELLS

A. Thermowells:

1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
2. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
3. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: CNR or CUNI.
4. Material for Use with Steel Piping: CRES.
5. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
6. External Threads: NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
7. Internal Threads: 1/2, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
8. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
9. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
10. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.
11. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.

B. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin.

C. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type metal fitting made for insertion into piping and of type, diameter, and length required to hold thermometer.

2.4 PRESSURE GAGES

A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following
 - a. AMETEK, Inc.; U.S. Gauge.
 - b. Ashcroft Inc.
 - c. Ernst Flow Industries.
 - d. Flo Fab Inc.
 - e. Marsh Bellofram.
 - f. Miljoco Corporation.
 - g. Noshok.
 - h. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.
 - i. REOTEMP Instrument Corporation.
 - j. Tel-Tru Manufacturing Company.
 - k. Terice, H. O. Co.
 - l. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - m. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
 - n. WIKA Instrument Corporation - USA.

- o. Winters Instruments - U.S.
 - p. Weksler
2. Standard: ASME B40.100.
 3. Case: Liquid-filled Open-front, pressure relief type(s); cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4- 1/2-inch nominal diameter.
 4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
 5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
 6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
 7. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi and kPa.
 8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
 9. Window: Glass or plastic.
 10. Ring: Metal or Brass.
 11. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

2.5 GAGE ATTACH TEST PLUGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Flow Design, Inc.
 2. MG Piping Products Co.
 3. National Meter, Inc.
 4. Peterson Equipment Co., Inc.
 5. Sisco Manufacturing Co.
 6. Terrice, H. O. Co.
 7. Weksler.
 8. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
- B. Description: Corrosion-resistant brass or stainless-steel body with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap, with extended stem for units to be installed in insulated piping.
- C. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 500 psig at 200 deg F.
- D. Core Inserts: One or two self-sealing rubber valves.
 1. Insert material for water service at 20 to 200 deg F shall be CR.
 2. Insert material for water service at minus 30 to plus 275 deg F shall be EPDM.
- E. Test Kit: Furnish one test kit(s) containing one pressure gage and adaptor, one thermometer, and carrying case. Pressure gage, adapter probes, and thermometer sensing elements shall be of diameter to fit test plugs and of length to project into piping.
 1. Pressure Gage: Small bourdon-tube insertion type with 2- to 3-inch- diameter dial and probe. Dial range shall be 0 to 200 psig.
 2. Low-Range Thermometer: Small bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch- diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial ranges shall be 25 to 125 deg F.

3. High-Range Thermometer: Small bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch- diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial ranges shall be 0 to 220 deg F.
4. Carrying case shall have formed instrument padding.

2.6 ATTACHMENTS

- A. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and piston porous-metal-type surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.
- B. Valves: Brass or stainless-steel needle, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install thermowells with socket extending a minimum of 2 inches into fluid one-third of pipe diameter to center of pipe and in vertical position in piping tees.
- B. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.
- C. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.
- D. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.
- E. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.
- F. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.
- G. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids.
- H. Install thermometers in the following locations:
 1. Inlet and outlet of each water heater.
 2. Inlets and outlets of each domestic water heat exchanger.
 3. Inlet and outlet of each domestic hot-water storage tank.
 4. Inlet and outlet of each remote domestic water chiller.
- I. Install pressure gages in the following locations:
 1. Building water service entrance into building.
 2. Inlet and outlet of each pressure-reducing valve.
 3. Suction and discharge of each domestic water pump.
- J. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- K. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.
- L. Install remote-mounting dial thermometers on panel, with tubing connecting panel and thermometer bulb supported to prevent kinks. Use minimum tubing length.
- M. Install test plugs in tees in piping.
- N. Install permanent indicator on walls or brackets in accessible and readable positions.

3.2 THERMOMETER SCHEDULE

- A. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each domestic water heater shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled Sealed, bimetallic-actuated type.
 - 2. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
- B. Thermometers at inlets and outlets of each domestic water heat exchanger shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled Sealed, bimetallic-actuated type.
 - 2. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
- C. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each domestic hot-water storage tank shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled Sealed, bimetallic-actuated type.
 - 2. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
- D. Thermometer stems shall be of length to match thermowell insertion length.

3.3 THERMOMETER SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Domestic Cold-Water Piping: 0 to 150 deg F and minus 20 to plus 70 deg C.
- B. Scale Range for Domestic Hot-Water Piping: 20 to 240 deg F and 0 to 150 deg C.

3.4 PRESSURE-GAGE SCHEDULE

- A. Pressure gages at discharge of each water service into building shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled Sealed Open-front, pressure-relief, direct-mounted, metal case.
- B. Pressure gages at inlet and outlet of each water pressure-reducing valve shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled Sealed Open-front, pressure-relief, direct mounted, metal case.
- C. Pressure gages at suction and discharge of each domestic water pump shall be one of the following:

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

1. Liquid-filled Sealed Open-front, pressure-relief , direct-mounted, metal case.

3.5 PRESSURE-GAGE SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Water Service Piping 0 to 160 psi and 0 to 1100 kPa.

Scale Range for Domestic Water Piping: 0 to 160 psi and 0 to 1100 kPa.

END OF SECTION 220519

SECTION 220523 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Bronze angle valves.
2. Bronze ball valves.
3. Iron, single-flange butterfly valves.
4. Bronze lift check valves.
5. Bronze swing check valves.
6. Iron swing check valves.
7. Bronze globe valves.
8. Iron globe valves.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 22 plumbing piping Sections for specialty valves applicable to those Sections only.
2. Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.
3. Division 33 water distribution piping Sections for general-duty and specialty valves for site construction piping.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.
- C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.
- D. NRS: Nonrising stem.
- E. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.
- F. RS: Rising stem.
- G. SWP: Steam working pressure.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve indicated.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
 - 1. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
 - 2. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
 - 3. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
- C. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 for valve materials for potable-water service.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
 - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
 - 2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
 - 3. Set angle, gate, and globe valves closed to prevent rattling.
 - 4. Set ball and plug valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
 - 5. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
 - 6. Block check valves in either closed or open position.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
 - 1. Maintain valve end protection.
 - 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Refer to valve schedule articles for applications of valves.
- B. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- C. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.

D. Valve Actuator Types:

1. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 8 and larger.
2. Handwheel: For valves other than quarter-turn types.
3. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves NPS 6 and smaller except plug valves.
4. Wrench: For plug valves with square heads. Furnish Owner with 1 wrench for every 5 plug valves, for each size square plug-valve head.

E. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch stem extensions and the following features:

1. Ball Valves: With extended operating handle of non-thermal-conductive material, and protective sleeve that allows operation of valve without breaking the vapor seal or disturbing insulation.
2. Butterfly Valves: With extended neck.

F. Valve-End Connections:

1. Flanged: With flanges according to ASME B16.1 for iron valves.
2. Solder Joint: With sockets according to ASME B16.18.
3. Threaded: With threads according to ASME B1.20.1.

G. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

2.2 BRONZE ANGLE VALVES

A. Class 125, Bronze Angle Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Hammond Valve.
 - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
 - d. Ends: Threaded.
 - e. Stem and Disc: Bronze.
 - f. Packing: Asbestos free.
 - g. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

2.3 BRONZE BALL VALVES

A. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Valve, Inc.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
- c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
- d. Hammond Valve.
- e. Lance Valves; a division of Advanced Thermal Systems, Inc.
- f. Legend Valve.
- g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- h. NIBCO INC.
- i. Red-White Valve Corporation.
- j. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
- c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
- d. Body Design: Two piece.
- e. Body Material: Bronze.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
- h. Stem: Bronze.
- i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- j. Port: Full.

B. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
- b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
- c. Hammond Valve.
- d. Lance Valves; a division of Advanced Thermal Systems, Inc.
- e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- f. NIBCO INC.
- g. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
- c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
- d. Body Design: Two piece.
- e. Body Material: Bronze.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
- h. Stem: Stainless steel.
- i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
- j. Port: Full.

C. Three-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
 - b. DynaQuip Controls.
 - c. Hammond Valve.
 - d. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - e. NIBCO INC.
 - f. Red-White Valve Corporation.

2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - d. Body Design: Three piece.
 - e. Body Material: Bronze.
 - f. Ends: Threaded.
 - g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
 - h. Stem: Bronze.
 - i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - j. Port: Full.

D. Three-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
 - b. Hammond Valve.
 - c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - d. NIBCO INC.

2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - d. Body Design: Three piece.
 - e. Body Material: Bronze.
 - f. Ends: Threaded.
 - g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
 - h. Stem: Stainless steel.
 - i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
 - j. Port: Full.

2.4 IRON, SINGLE-FLANGE BUTTERFLY VALVES

- A. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Aluminum-Bronze Disc:

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. ABZ Valve and Controls; a division of ABZ Manufacturing, Inc.
- b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
- c. Cooper Cameron Valves; a division of Cooper Cameron Corporation.
- d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
- e. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- f. DeZurik Water Controls.
- g. Flo Fab Inc.
- h. Hammond Valve.
- i. Kitz Corporation.
- j. Legend Valve.
- k. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- l. NIBCO INC.
- m. Norriseal; a Dover Corporation company.
- n. Red-White Valve Corporation.
- o. Spence Strainers International; a division of CIRCOR International, Inc.
- p. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
- c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
- d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
- e. Seat: EPDM.
- f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
- g. Disc: Aluminum bronze.

B. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Ductile-Iron Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. ABZ Valve and Controls; a division of ABZ Manufacturing, Inc.
- b. American Valve, Inc.
- c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
- d. Cooper Cameron Valves; a division of Cooper Cameron Corporation.
- e. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Center Line.
- f. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- g. DeZurik Water Controls.
- h. Flo Fab Inc.
- i. Hammond Valve.
- j. Kitz Corporation.
- k. Legend Valve.
- l. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- m. Mueller Steam Specialty; a division of SPX Corporation.
- n. NIBCO INC.
- o. Norriseal; a Dover Corporation company.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- p. Spence Strainers International; a division of CIRCOR International, Inc.
- q. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.
- r. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
- c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
- d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
- e. Seat: EPDM.
- f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
- g. Disc: Nickel-plated or -coated ductile iron.

C. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Stainless-Steel Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the:

- a. ABZ Valve and Controls; a division of ABZ Manufacturing, Inc.
- b. American Valve, Inc.
- c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
- d. Cooper Cameron Valves; a division of Cooper Cameron Corporation.
- e. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
- f. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- g. DeZurik Water Controls.
- h. Flo Fab Inc.
- i. Hammond Valve.
- j. Kitz Corporation.
- k. Legend Valve.
- l. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- m. Mueller Steam Specialty; a division of SPX Corporation.
- n. NIBCO INC.
- o. Norriseal; a Dover Corporation company.
- p. Red-White Valve Corporation.
- q. Spence Strainers International; a division of CIRCOR International, Inc.
- r. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.
- s. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
- c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
- d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
- e. Seat: EPDM.
- f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
- g. Disc: Stainless steel.

2.5 BRONZE LIFT CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Lift Check Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
 - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Vertical flow.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM B 61 or ASTM B 62, bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Disc: Bronze.

2.6 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Valve, Inc.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
 - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - e. Hammond Valve.
 - f. Kitz Corporation.
 - g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - h. NIBCO INC.
 - i. Powell Valves.
 - j. Red-White Valve Corporation.
 - k. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - l. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.
2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Disc: Bronze.

B. Class 150, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc:

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Valve, Inc.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
 - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - e. Kitz Corporation.
 - f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - g. NIBCO INC.
 - h. Red-White Valve Corporation.
 - i. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.

2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
 - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Disc: Bronze.

2.7 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
 - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - d. Hammond Valve.
 - e. Kitz Corporation.
 - f. Legend Valve.
 - g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - h. NIBCO INC.
 - i. Powell Valves.
 - j. Red-White Valve Corporation.
 - k. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.
 - l. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - m. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.

2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - e. Ends: Flanged.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- f. Trim: Bronze.
- g. Gasket: Asbestos free.

B. Class 250, Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
 - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - d. Hammond Valve.
 - e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - f. NIBCO INC.
 - g. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 500 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - e. Ends: Flanged.
 - f. Trim: Bronze.
 - g. Gasket: Asbestos free.

2.8 BRONZE GLOBE VALVES

A. Class 125, Bronze Globe Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - c. Hammond Valve.
 - d. Kitz Corporation.
 - e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - f. NIBCO INC.
 - g. Powell Valves.
 - h. Red-White Valve Corporation.
 - i. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - j. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.
2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
 - d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- e. Stem and Disc: Bronze.
- f. Packing: Asbestos free.
- g. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

2.9 IRON GLOBE VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron Globe Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
 - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - d. Hammond Valve.
 - e. Kitz Corporation.
 - f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - g. NIBCO INC.
 - h. Powell Valves.
 - i. Red-White Valve Corporation.
 - j. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - k. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.
2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-85, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - d. Ends: Flanged.
 - e. Trim: Bronze.
 - f. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

B. Class 250, Iron Globe Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
 - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - d. Hammond Valve.
 - e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - f. NIBCO INC.
 - g. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-85, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 500 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.

- d. Ends: Flanged.
- e. Trim: Bronze.
- f. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:
 - 1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.
 - 2. Lift Check Valves: With stem upright and plumb.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

1. Shutoff Service: Ball, butterfly
 2. Butterfly Valve Dead-End Service: Single-flange (lug) type.
 3. Throttling Service Globe, angle, ball or butterfly valves.
 4. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:
 - a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with bronze disc.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger for Domestic Water: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or check valves.
 - c. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger for Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or spring.
- B. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.
- C. Select valves, except wafer types, with the following end connections:
1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
 2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
 3. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.
 4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends.
 5. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
 6. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.

3.5 LOW-PRESSURE, COMPRESSED-AIR VALVE SCHEDULE (150 PSIG OR LESS)

- A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:
1. Bronze Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
 2. Ball Valves: One, Two, or Three piece, full, regular or reduced port, with brass, bronze or stainless-steel trim.
 3. Bronze Lift Check Valves: Class 125, bronze disc.
 4. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125, bronze disc.
- B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:
1. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
 2. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves: 200 CWP, NBR seat, aluminum-bronze, ductile-iron or stainless-steel disc.
 3. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125, metal seats.

3.6 DOMESTIC, HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:
1. Bronze Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

2. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 125 or Class 150, bronze disc.
 3. Ball Valves: One, Two or Three piece, full or, regular port, bronze with bronze or stainless-steel trim.
 4. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125 or Class 150, bronze disc.
 5. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 125 or Class 150, bronze disc.
- B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:
1. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
 2. Ball Valves: One, Two or Three piece, full or, regular port, bronze with bronze or stainless-steel trim.
 3. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves: 200 CWP, EPDM seat, aluminum-bronze, ductile-iron or stainless-steel disc.
 4. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125 or Class 250, metal seats.
 5. Iron Globe Valves: Class 125 or Class 250.

END OF SECTION 220523

SECTION 220529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following hangers and supports for plumbing system piping and equipment:
 - 1. Steel pipe hangers and supports.
 - 2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 3. Metal framing systems.
 - 4. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
 - 5. Fastener systems.
 - 6. Pipe stands.
 - 7. Pipe positioning systems.
 - 8. Equipment supports.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.
 - 2. Division 21 Section "Water-Based Fire-Suppression Systems" for pipe hangers for fire-suppression piping.
 - 3. Division 22 Section "Expansion Fittings and Loops for Plumbing Piping" for pipe guides and anchors.
 - 4. Division 22 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for vibration isolation devices.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society for The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.
- B. Terminology: As defined in MSS SP-90, "Guidelines on Terminology for Pipe Hangers and Supports."

1.4 SEISMIC REQUIREMENTS

- A. Component Importance Factor. All plumbing components shall be assigned a component importance factor. The component importance factor, I_p , shall be taken as 1.5 if any of the following conditions apply:

1. The component is required to function for life-safety purposes after an earthquake.
2. The component contains hazardous materials.
3. The component is in or attached to an Occupancy Category IV structure and it is needed for continued operation of the facility or its failure could impair the continued operation of the facility.

B. All other components shall be assigned a component importance factor, I_p , equal to 1.0.

1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.

B. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

C. Seismic Performance: Plumbing equipment, hangers and supports shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7 and with the requirements specified in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment.

1. For components with a seismic importance factor of 1.0 the term "withstand" means "the system will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
2. For components with a seismic importance factor of 1.5 the term "withstand" means "the system will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the system will be fully operational after the seismic event."

1.6 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Steel pipe hangers and supports.
2. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
3. Powder-actuated fastener systems.
4. Pipe positioning systems.
5. Mechanical Anchors: ICC-ES Evaluation Reports validating 'Cracked Concrete' testing per A.C. 193 must be provided for anchors resisting seismic loads and/or supporting life-safety systems including fire sprinkler systems.

B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following:

1. Trapeze pipe hangers. Include Product Data for components.
2. Metal framing systems. Include Product Data for components.
3. Pipe stands. Include Product Data for components.
4. Equipment supports.

C. Welding certificates.

D. Delegated-Design Submittal:

1. Design calculations and detailed fabrication and assembly of pipe anchors and alignment guides, hangers and supports for multiple pipes, expansion joints and loops, and attachments of the same to the building structure.
2. Locations of pipe anchors and alignment guides and expansion joints and loops.
3. Locations of and details for penetrations, including sleeves and sleeve seals for exterior walls, floors, basement, and foundation walls.
4. Seismic calculations and detailed analysis: Indicate fabrication and arrangement. Detail attachments of restraints to the restrained items and to the structure. Show attachment locations, methods, and spacings. Identify components, list their strengths, and indicate directions and values of forces transmitted to the structure during seismic events. Indicate association with vibration isolation devices. Project specific design documentation and calculations shall be prepared and stamped by a registered professional engineer who is responsible for the seismic restraint design and who is licensed in the state where the project is being constructed (ASCE 7, 13.2.1.1).

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel.", AWS D1.4, "Structural Welding Code--Reinforcing Steel." and ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.
- B. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 1. AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
 2. AWS D1.2, "Structural Welding Code--Aluminum."
 3. AWS D1.4, "Structural Welding Code--Reinforcing Steel."
 4. ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 STEEL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components. Refer to Part 3 "Hanger and Support Applications" Article for where to use specific hanger and support types.
- B. Manufacturers:

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

1. Anvil International.
2. AAA Technology & Specialties Co., Inc.
3. Bergen-Power Pipe Supports.
4. B-Line Systems, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
5. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc.
6. Empire Industries, Inc.
7. ERICO/Michigan Hanger Co.
8. FNW/Ferguson Enterprises
9. Globe Pipe Hanger Products, Inc.
10. Grinnell Corp.
11. GS Metals Corp.
12. National Pipe Hanger Corporation.
13. PHD Manufacturing, Inc.
14. PHS Industries, Inc.
15. Piping Technology & Products, Inc.
16. Tolco Inc.
17. Simpson Strong-Tie Co.

C. Galvanized, Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.

D. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.

E. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion for support of bearing surface of piping.

2.3 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.4 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

A. Description: MFMA-3, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made of steel channels and other components.

B. Manufacturers:

1. Anvil International.
2. B-Line Systems, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
3. ERICO/Michigan Hanger Co.; ERISTRUT Div.
4. FNW/Ferguson Enterprises
5. GS Metals Corp.
6. Hilti, Inc.
7. Power-Strut Div.; Tyco International, Ltd.
8. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
9. Tolco Inc.
10. Unistrut Corp.; Tyco International, Ltd.

C. Coatings: Manufacturer's standard finish unless bare metal surfaces are indicated.

- D. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.

2.5 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Description: 100-psig- minimum, compressive-strength insulation insert encased in sheet metal shield.
- B. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc.
 - 2. ERICO/Michigan Hanger Co.
 - 3. PHS Industries, Inc.
 - 4. Pipe Shields, Inc.
 - 5. Rilco Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - 6. Value Engineered Products, Inc.
- C. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate with vapor barrier.
- D. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate.
- E. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- F. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- G. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.6 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Hilti, Inc.
 - b. MKT Fastening, LLC.
 - c. Powers Fasteners.
 - d. Simpson Strong-Tie Co.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors and Concrete Screws: Insert-wedge-type stainless steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used. For anchors resisting seismic loads and/or supporting life- safety systems including fire sprinkler systems, Anchors shall have been tested for 'Cracked Concrete' per A.C. 193 per a valid ICC-ES Evaluation Report. Manufacturers with these anchors have been designated below with: '*'
 - 1. Manufacturers:

- a. B-Line Systems, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
- b. Empire Industries, Inc.
- c. Hilti, Inc.
- d. ITW Ramset/Red Head.
- e. MKT Fastening, LLC.
- f. Powers Fasteners.
- g. Simpson Strong-Tie Co. *

2.7 PIPE STAND FABRICATION

- A. Pipe Stands, General: Shop or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.
- B. Compact Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic unit with integral-rod-roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Anvil International.
 - b. ERICO/Michigan Hanger Co.
 - c. MIRO Industries.
 - d. Unipure
- C. Low-Type, Single-Pipe Stand: One-piece stainless-steel base unit with plastic roller, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. MIRO Industries.
- D. High-Type, Single-Pipe Stand: Assembly of base, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Anvil International.
 - b. ERICO/Michigan Hanger Co.
 - c. MIRO Industries.
 - d. Portable Pipe Hangers.
 2. Base: Stainless steel.
 3. Vertical Members: Two or more cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel, continuous-thread rods.
 4. Horizontal Member: Cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel rod with plastic or stainless-steel, roller-type pipe support.
- E. High-Type, Multiple-Pipe Stand: Assembly of bases, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe supports, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
 1. Manufacturers:

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- a. Anvil International.
 - b. Portable Pipe Hangers.
2. Bases: One or more plastic.
 3. Vertical Members: Two or more protective-coated-steel channels.
 4. Horizontal Member: Protective-coated-steel channel.
 5. Pipe Supports: Galvanized-steel, clevis-type pipe hangers.
- F. Curb-Mounting-Type Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe support made from structural-steel shape, continuous-thread rods, and rollers for mounting on permanent stationary roof curb.

2.8 PIPE POSITIONING SYSTEMS

- A. Description: IAPMO PS 42, system of metal brackets, clips, and straps for positioning piping in pipe spaces for plumbing fixtures for commercial applications.
- B. Manufacturers:
1. C & S Mfg. Corp.
 2. HOLDRITE Corp.; Hubbard Enterprises.
 3. Samco Stamping, Inc.

2.9 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural-steel shapes.

2.10 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT APPLICATIONS

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are specified in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized, metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- F. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 - 2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of 120 to 450 deg F pipes, NPS 4 to NPS 16, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
 - 3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes, NPS 3/4 to NPS 24, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
 - 4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 24, if little or no insulation is required.
 - 5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
 - 6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.
 - 7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 - 8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 - 9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 2.
 - 10. Split Pipe-Ring with or without Turnbuckle-Adjustment Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
 - 11. Extension Hinged or 2-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
 - 12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 - 13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
 - 14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes, NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
 - 15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes, NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
 - 16. Adjustable, Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36, if vertical adjustment is required, with steel pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
 - 17. Single Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes, NPS 1 to NPS 30, from 2 rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
 - 18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 20, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
 - 19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes, NPS 2 to NPS 42, if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.

20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes, NPS 2 to NPS 24, if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is not necessary.
 21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes, NPS 2 to NPS 30, if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.
- G. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers, NPS 3/4 to NPS 20.
 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers, NPS 3/4 to NPS 20, if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- H. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
 2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
 3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
 4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
 5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- I. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18 or Simpson Blue Banger Concrete insert with UL & FM approvals): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
 2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction to attach to top flange of structural shape.
 3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
 4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
 5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
 6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
 7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
 8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
 9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
 10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
 11. Malleable Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
 12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below, or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:

- a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
 - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
 - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
 14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
 15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- J. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
 3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- K. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
 2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
 3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41 roll hanger with springs.
 4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
 5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to absorb expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
 6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to absorb expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
 7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to absorb expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
 8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:
 - a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
 - b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
 - c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.
- L. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- M. Comply with MFMA-102 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

- N. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.
- O. Use pipe positioning systems in pipe spaces behind plumbing fixtures to support supply and waste piping for plumbing fixtures.

3.2 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SEI/ASCE 7 and with requirements for seismic-restraint devices in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Steel Pipe Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.
- C. Trapeze Pipe Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified above for individual pipe hangers.
 - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1.
- D. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.
- E. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- F. Fastener System Installation:
 - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual. Powder actuated fasteners shall not be used for seismic bracing attachments.
 - 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions. For anchors resisting seismic loads and/or supporting life-safety systems including fire sprinkler systems, anchors shall have been tested for 'Cracked Concrete' per A.C. 193 and shall have a valid ICC-ES Evaluation Report
- G. Pipe Stand Installation:
 - 1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounting Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
 - 2. Curb-Mounting-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. Refer to Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories" for curbs.

- H. Pipe Positioning System Installation: Install support devices to make rigid supply and waste piping connections to each plumbing fixture. Refer to Division 22 Section "Plumbing Fixtures" for plumbing fixtures.
- I. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- J. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- K. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- L. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- M. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- N. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- O. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and so maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 (for building services piping) are not exceeded.
- P. Insulated Piping: Comply with the following:
 - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
 - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
 - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
 - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits according to ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
 - 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
 - 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
 - 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
 - b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
 - e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.
5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood inserts.
 6. Insert Material: Length at least as long as protective shield.
 7. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

3.3 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make smooth bearing surface.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports. For applications where seismic bracing is required, 'Cracked Concrete' expansion anchors or concrete screws tested per A.C. 193 must be provided for seismic bracing anchorage where post-installed anchors are required.

3.4 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1 procedures for shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work, and with the following:
 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches .

3.6 PAINTING

- A. Touch Up: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Touch Up: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified in Division 09 painting Sections.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 220529

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

SECTION 220548 - VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following restraints and vibration isolation as defined in Section 230548 "Vibration Isolation and Seismic Controls for HVAC" for the following:
 - 1. Plumbing Piping.
 - 2. Plumbing Equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 (NOT USED)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

(NOT USED)

END OF SECTION 220548

SECTION 220553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Equipment labels.
 - 2. Warning signs and labels.
 - 3. Pipe labels.
 - 4. Stencils.
 - 5. Valve tags.
 - 6. Warning tags.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.
- D. Valve numbering scheme.
- E. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

A. Plastic Labels for Equipment:

1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
2. Letter Color: White.
3. Background Color: Blue.
4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

C. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.

B. Letter Color: Black.

C. Background Color: Yellow.

D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.

E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.

F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.

- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.
- B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
 - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
 - 2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches high.

2.4 STENCILS

- A. Stencils: Prepared with letter sizes according to ASME A13.1 for piping; and minimum letter height of 3/4 inch for access panel and door labels, equipment labels, and similar operational instructions.
 - 1. Stencil Material: Fiberboard or metal.
 - 2. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, alkyd enamel black unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
 - 3. Identification Paint: Exterior, alkyd enamel in colors according to ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated.

2.5 VALVE TAGS

- A. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.
 - 1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
 - 2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link or beaded chain; or S-hook.
- B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.

1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.6 WARNING TAGS

- A. Warning Tags: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
 1. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches minimum.
 2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire.
 3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
 4. Color: Yellow background with black lettering.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

3.2 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.3 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Piping Color-Coding: Painting of piping is specified in Division 09.
- B. Stenciled Pipe Label Option: Stenciled labels may be provided instead of manufactured pipe labels, at Installer's option. Install stenciled pipe labels, complying with ASME A13.1, on each piping system.
 1. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
 2. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.
- C. Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
 1. Near each valve and control device.
 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
 3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.

4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

D. Pipe Label Color Schedule:

1. Low-Pressure, Compressed-Air Piping:
 - a. Background Color: Comply with ASME A13.1.
 - b. Letter Color: Comply with ASME A13.1.
2. Medium-Pressure, Compressed-Air Piping:
 - a. Background Color: Comply with ASME A13.1.
 - b. Letter Color: Comply with ASME A13.1.
3. Domestic Water Piping:
 - a. Background Color: Comply with ASME A13.1.
 - b. Letter Color: Comply with ASME A13.1.
4. Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage Piping:
 - a. Background Color: Comply with ASME A13.1.
 - b. Letter Color: Comply with ASME A13.1.

3.4 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves; valves within factory-fabricated equipment units; shutoff valves; faucets; convenience and lawn-watering hose connections; and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:
 1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
 - a. Cold Water: 1-1/2 inches, round.
 - b. Hot Water: 1-1/2 inches, round.
 - c. Low-Pressure Compressed Air: 1-1/2 inches, round.
 - d. High-Pressure Compressed Air: 1-1/2 inches, round.
 2. Valve-Tag Color:
 - a. Cold Water: Comply with ASME A13.1.
 - b. Hot Water: Comply with ASME A13.1.
 - c. Low-Pressure Compressed Air: Comply with ASME A13.1.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

d. High-Pressure Compressed Air: Comply with ASME A13.1.

3. Letter Color:

a. Cold Water: Comply with ASME A13.1.

b. Hot Water: Comply with ASME A13.1.

c. Low-Pressure Compressed Air: Comply with ASME A13.1.

d. High-Pressure Compressed Air: Comply with ASME A13.1.

3.5 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION 220553

SECTION 220700 - PLUMBING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Insulation Materials:
 - a. Flexible elastomeric.
 - b. Mineral fiber.
2. Adhesives.
3. Lagging adhesives.
4. Sealants.
5. Factory-applied jackets.
6. Field-applied fabric-reinforcing mesh.
7. Field-applied jackets.
8. Tapes.
9. Securements.
10. Corner angles.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 23 Section "HVAC Insulation."

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied, if any).
- B. Shop Drawings:
 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
 3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
 4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.

5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties, equipment connections, and access panels.
6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.

C. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

D. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.

E. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.

B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Insulation and related materials shall have fire-test-response characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application and equipment Installer for equipment insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.7 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in Part 3 schedule articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Flexible Elastomeric: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials and Type II for sheet materials.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Aeroflex USA Inc.; Aerocel.
 - b. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex.
 - c. RBX Corporation; Insul-Sheet 1800 and Insul-Tube 180.
- G. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type I. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corp.; Duct Wrap.
 - b. Johns Manville; Microlite.
 - c. Knauf Insulation; Duct Wrap.
 - d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley Wrap.
 - e. Owens Corning; All-Service Duct Wrap.
- H. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For equipment applications, provide

insulation with factory-applied ASJ. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corp.; Commercial Board.
 - b. Fibrex Insulations Inc.; FBX.
 - c. Johns Manville; 800 Series Spin-Glas.
 - d. Knauf Insulation; Insulation Board.
 - e. Manson Insulation Inc.; AK Board.
 - f. Owens Corning; Fiberglas 700 Series.

I. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Fibrex Insulations Inc.; Coreplus 1200.
 - b. Johns Manville; Micro-Lok.
 - c. Knauf Insulation; 1000(Pipe Insulation.
 - d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley-K.
 - e. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe Insulation.
2. Type I, 850 deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

J. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Semirigid board material with factory-applied ASJ complying with ASTM C 1393, Type II or Type IIIA Category 2, or with properties similar to ASTM C 612, Type IB. Nominal density is 2.5 lb/cu. ft. or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 100 deg F is 0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F or less. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corp.; CrimpWrap.
 - b. Johns Manville; MicroFlex.
 - c. Knauf Insulation; Pipe and Tank Insulation.
 - d. Manson Insulation Inc.; AK Flex.
 - e. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe and Tank Insulation.

2.2 ADHESIVES

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- a. Aeroflex USA Inc.; Aero seal.
 - b. Armacell LCC; 520 Adhesive.
 - c. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 85-75.
 - d. RBX Corporation; Rubatex Contact Adhesive.
- C. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-82.
 - b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 85-20.
 - c. ITW TACC, Division of Illinois Tool Works; S-90/80.
 - d. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 225.
 - e. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
- D. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK and PVDC Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-82.
 - b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 85-20.
 - c. ITW TACC, Division of Illinois Tool Works; S-90/80.
 - d. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 225.
 - e. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
- E. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Dow Chemical Company (The); 739, Dow Silicone.
 - b. Johns-Manville; Zeston Perma-Weld, CEEL-TITE Solvent Welding Adhesive.
 - c. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; Welding Adhesive.
 - d. Red Devil, Inc.; Celulon Ultra Clear.
 - e. Speedline Corporation; Speedline Vinyl Adhesive.

2.3 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-C-19565C, Type II.
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on below ambient services.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-35.
 - b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 30-90.
 - c. ITW TACC, Division of Illinois Tool Works; CB-50.
 - d. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 590.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- e. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-40.
 - f. Vimasco Corporation; 749.
2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 59 percent by volume and 71 percent by weight.
 5. Color: White.
- C. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below ambient services.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; Encacel.
 - b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 60-95/60-96.
 - c. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 570.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-70.
 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 30-mil dry film thickness.
 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F.
 4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
 5. Color: White.

2.4 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-52.
 - b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 81-42.
 - c. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 130.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 11-30.
 - e. Vimasco Corporation; 136.
 2. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over equipment and pipe insulation.
 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 180 deg F.
 4. Color: White.

2.5 SEALANTS

- A. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-76-8.
 - b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.
 - c. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 405.

- d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
 - e. Vimasco Corporation; 750.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
 5. Color: Aluminum.
- B. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-76.
 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
 5. Color: White.

2.6 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
 2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
 3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
 4. PVDC Jacket for Indoor Applications: 4-mil- thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.02 perms when tested according to ASTM E 96 and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 20 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
 - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
 - 1) Dow Chemical Company (The); Saran 540 Vapor Retarder Film and Saran 560 Vapor Retarder Film.
 5. PVDC Jacket for Outdoor Applications: 6-mil- thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.01 perms when tested according to ASTM E 96 and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 25 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
 - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
 - 1) Dow Chemical Company (The); Saran 540 Vapor Retarder Film and Saran 560 Vapor Retarder Film.

6. PVDC-SSL Jacket: PVDC jacket with a self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip.
 - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
 - 1) Dow Chemical Company (The); Saran 540 Vapor Retarder Film and Saran 560 Vapor Retarder Film.

2.7 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Johns Manville; Zeston.
 - b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; FG Series.
 - c. Proto PVC Corporation; LoSmoke.
 - d. Speedline Corporation; SmokeSafe.
 2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
 3. Color: White.
 4. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
 - a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.
 5. Factory-fabricated tank heads and tank side panels.
- C. Metal Jacket:
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; Metal Jacketing Systems.
 - b. PABCO Metals Corporation; Surefit.
 - c. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate.
 2. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105 or 5005, Temper H-14.
 - a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing or Factory cut and rolled to size.
 - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:

- 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
- 2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
- 3) Tee covers.
- 4) Flange and union covers.
- 5) End caps.
- 6) Beveled collars.
- 7) Valve covers.
- 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

2.8 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0835.
 - b. Compac Corp.; 104 and 105.
 - c. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company; 428 AWF ASJ.
 - d. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.
 2. Width: 3 inches.
 3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
 4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 5. Elongation: 2 percent.
 6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0827.
 - b. Compac Corp.; 110 and 111.
 - c. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company; 491 AWF FSK.
 - d. Venture Tape; 1525 CW, 1528 CW, and 1528 CW/SQ.
 2. Width: 3 inches.
 3. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
 4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 5. Elongation: 2 percent.
 6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
- C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive. Suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0555.
 - b. Compac Corp.; 130.
 - c. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company; 370 White PVC tape.
 - d. Venture Tape; 1506 CW NS.
2. Width: 2 inches.
3. Thickness: 6 mils.
4. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 500 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.

D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0800.
 - b. Compac Corp.; 120.
 - c. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company; 488 AWF.
 - d. Venture Tape; 3520 CW.
2. Width: 2 inches.
3. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 5 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

E. PVDC Tape: White vapor-retarder PVDC tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
 - a. Dow Chemical Company (The); Saran 540 Vapor Retarder Tape.
2. Width: 3 inches.
3. Film Thickness: 4 mils.
4. Adhesive Thickness: 1.5 mils.
5. Elongation at Break: 145 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 55 lbf/inch in width.

2.9 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Products; Bands.
 - b. PABCO Metals Corporation; Bands.
 - c. RPR Products, Inc.; Bands.

2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing or closed seal.
3. Aluminum: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing or closed seal.
4. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:

1. Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
 - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; CWP-1.
 - 2) GEMCO; CD.
 - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; CD.
 - 4) Nelson Stud Welding; TPA, TPC, and TPS.
2. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
 - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; CWP-1.
 - 2) GEMCO; Cupped Head Weld Pin.
 - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Cupped Head.
 - 4) Nelson Stud Welding; CHP.
3. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
 - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; Tactoo Insul-Hangers, Series T.
 - 2) GEMCO; Perforated Base.
 - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Spindle.
 - b. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
 - c. Spindle: Aluminum or Stainless steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
 - d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.

4. Self-Sticking-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
 - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; Tactoo Insul-Hangers, Series TSA.
 - 2) GEMCO; Press and Peel.
 - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Self Stick.
 - b. Baseplate: Galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
 - c. Spindle: Aluminum or Stainless steel], fully annealed, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
 - d. Adhesive-backed base with a peel-off protective cover.
 5. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- thick, aluminum or stainless-steel] sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
 - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; RC-150.
 - 2) GEMCO; R-150.
 - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; WA-150.
 - 4) Nelson Stud Welding; Speed Clips.
 - b. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.
- C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- wide, stainless steel or Monel.
- D. Wire: 0.080-inch nickel-copper alloy or 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. C & F Wire.
 - b. Childers Products.
 - c. PABCO Metals Corporation.
 - d. RPR Products, Inc.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
 1. Verify that systems and equipment to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.

2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- C. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of equipment and piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of equipment and pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 4 inches o.c.
 - a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
 4. Cover joints and seams with tape as recommended by insulation material manufacturer to maintain vapor seal.
 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- P. For above ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
1. Vibration-control devices.
 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
 3. Nameplates and data plates.
 4. Manholes.
 5. Handholes.
 6. Cleanouts.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation,

- install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping"irestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 EQUIPMENT, TANK, AND VESSEL INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Mineral Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation Installation for Tanks and Vessels: Secure insulation with adhesive and anchor pins and speed washers.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of tank and vessel surfaces.
 2. Groove and score insulation materials to fit as closely as possible to equipment, including contours. Bevel insulation edges for cylindrical surfaces for tight joints. Stagger end joints.
 3. Protect exposed corners with secured corner angles.
 4. Install adhesively attached or self-sticking insulation hangers and speed washers on sides of tanks and vessels as follows:

- a. Do not weld anchor pins to ASME-labeled pressure vessels.
 - b. Select insulation hangers and adhesive that are compatible with service temperature and with substrate.
 - c. On tanks and vessels, maximum anchor-pin spacing is 3 inches from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c. in both directions.
 - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
 - e. Cut and miter insulation segments to fit curved sides and domed heads of tanks and vessels.
 - f. Impale insulation over anchor pins and attach speed washers.
 - g. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
5. Secure each layer of insulation with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation materials.
 6. Where insulation hangers on equipment and vessels are not permitted or practical and where insulation support rings are not provided, install a girdle network for securing insulation. Stretch prestressed aircraft cable around the diameter of vessel and make taut with clamps, turnbuckles, or breather springs. Place one circumferential girdle around equipment approximately 6 inches from each end. Install wire or cable between two circumferential girdles 12 inches o.c. Install a wire ring around each end and around outer periphery of center openings, and stretch prestressed aircraft cable radially from the wire ring to nearest circumferential girdle. Install additional circumferential girdles along the body of equipment or tank at a minimum spacing of 48 inches o.c. Use this network for securing insulation with tie wire or bands.
 7. Stagger joints between insulation layers at least 3 inches.
 8. Install insulation in removable segments on equipment access doors, manholes, handholes, and other elements that require frequent removal for service and inspection.
 9. Bevel and seal insulation ends around manholes, handholes, ASME stamps, and nameplates.
 10. For equipment with surface temperatures below ambient, apply mastic to open ends, joints, seams, breaks, and punctures in insulation.

B. Insulation Installation on Pumps:

1. Fabricate metal boxes lined with insulation. Fit boxes around pumps and coincide box joints with splits in pump casings. Fabricate joints with outward bolted flanges. Bolt flanges on 6-inch centers, starting at corners. Install 3/8-inch- diameter fasteners with wing nuts. Alternatively, secure the box sections together using a latching mechanism.
2. Fabricate boxes from aluminum or stainless steel, at least 0.040 inch thick.
3. For below ambient services, install a vapor barrier at seams, joints, and penetrations. Seal between flanges with replaceable gasket material to form a vapor barrier.

3.6 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:

1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity, unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
 3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
 4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
 5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
 6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
 7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below ambient services and a breather mastic for above ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
 8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
 9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "UNION." Match size and color of pipe labels.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes, vessels, and equipment. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.

2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

3.7 FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
 1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
 4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
 1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
 2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
 1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
 2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
 3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
 4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.8 MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.9 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:

1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.

4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- wide joint strips at end joints.
 5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.
- B. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications, install with longitudinal seams along top and bottom of tanks and vessels. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
- C. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.
- D. Where PVDC jackets are indicated, install as follows:
1. Apply three separate wraps of filament tape per insulation section to secure pipe insulation to pipe prior to installation of PVDC jacket.
 2. Wrap factory-presize jackets around individual pipe insulation sections with one end overlapping the previously installed sheet. Install presize jacket with an approximate overlap at butt joint of 2 inches over the previous section. Adhere lap seal using adhesive or SSL, and then apply 1-1/4 circumferences of appropriate PVDC tape around overlapped butt joint.
 3. Continuous jacket can be spiral wrapped around a length of pipe insulation. Apply adhesive or PVDC tape at overlapped spiral edge. When electing to use adhesives, refer to manufacturer's written instructions for application of adhesives along this spiral edge to maintain a permanent bond.
 4. Jacket can be wrapped in cigarette fashion along length of roll for insulation systems with an outer circumference of 33-1/2 inches or less. The 33-1/2-inch- circumference limit allows for 2-inch- overlap seal. Using the length of roll allows for longer sections of jacket to be installed at one time. Use adhesive on the lap seal. Visually inspect lap seal for "fishmouthing," and use PVDC tape along lap seal to secure joint.
 5. Repair holes or tears in PVDC jacket by placing PVDC tape over the hole or tear and wrapping a minimum of 1-1/4 circumferences to avoid damage to tape edges.

3.10 FINISHES

- A. Equipment and Pipe Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Division 09 painting Sections.
1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
 - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.

- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.11 Insulation shall have a k value that meets the minimum requirements of the latest International Energy Conservation Code (IECC).

3.12 EQUIPMENT INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Insulation materials and thicknesses are identified below. If more than one material is listed for a type of equipment, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Insulate indoor and outdoor equipment in paragraphs below that is not factory insulated.
- C. Steam-to-hot-water converter insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 2 inches thick.
- D. Domestic water pump insulation shall be the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- E. Domestic hot-water pump insulation shall be the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- F. Domestic water, domestic chilled-water (potable), and domestic hot-water hydropneumatic tank insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1 inch thick.

3.13 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
 - 1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
 - 2. Underground piping.
 - 3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

3.14 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Domestic Cold Water:

1. NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Insulation shall be the following:
 - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch
2. NPS 2 and Larger: Insulation shall be the following:
 - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1-1/2 inch thick.

B. Domestic Hot and Recirculated Hot Water:

1. NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Insulation shall be the following:
 - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch.
2. NPS 2 and Larger: Insulation shall be the following:
 - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1-1/2 inch thick.

C. Domestic Chilled Water (Potable):

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
 - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch.

D. Stormwater and Overflow:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
 - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch.

E. Roof Drain and Overflow Drain Bodies:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
 - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch.

F. Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
 - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch.

3.15 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Equipment, Concealed:
 - 1. None.
- D. Equipment, Exposed, up to 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces up to 72 Inches.
 - 1. Aluminum, Stucco Embossed: 0.016 inch thick.
- E. Equipment, Exposed, Larger Than 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces Larger Than 72 Inches:
 - 1. Aluminum, Stucco Embossed with 1-1/4-Inch- Deep Corrugations: 0.032 inch thick.
- F. Piping, Concealed:
 - 1. None.
- G. Piping, Exposed:
 - 1. PVC: 20 mils thick.

END OF SECTION 220700

SECTION 221113

FACILITY WATER DISTRIBUTION PIPING

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Codes and Standards:
 - 1. Plumbing Code Compliance: Comply with applicable portions of National Standard Plumbing Code pertaining to selection and installation of potable water system materials and products.
 - 2. Water Purveyor Compliance: Comply with requirements of Purveyor supplying water to project, obtain required permits and inspections.
 - 3. NFPA Compliance: Install fire water systems in accordance with NFPA 24 "Standard for Installation of Private Fire Service Mains and Their Appurtenances".
 - 4. Local Fire Department/Marshall Regulations: Comply with governing regulations pertaining to hydrants, including hose unit threading and similar matching of connections.
 - 5. UL Compliance: Provide fire hydrants that comply with UL 246 "Hydrants for Fire-Protection Service", and are listed by UL.
 - 6. FM Global Compliance: Water system shall conform to "Data Sheet 3-10, Installation and Maintenance of Private Fire Service Mains and their Appurtenances."

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes pressure water pipes and fire systems outside the building, with the following components:
 - 1. Special fittings for expansion and deflection.
 - 2. Pipes and valves.
 - 3. Fire Hydrants.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- B. DI: Ductile Iron pressure pipe.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Pressure Rating: 175 psi static water pressure for all pipes and fittings. Pipe joints shall be water tight.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Special pipe fittings.
 - 2. Fire hydrants
 - 3. All Underground Fire Protection Equipment shall be FM Approved.
 - 4. Valves.
 - 5. Valve boxes and appurtenances.
 - 6. Pipes.
 - 7. Disinfection reports and practices
 - 8. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical product data and installation instructions for fire water system materials and products.
 - 9. Maintenance Data: Submit maintenance data and parts lists for fire water system materials and products. Include this data, product data, shop drawings, and record drawings in maintenance manual.
- B. Shop Drawings: For the following:
 - 1. Thrust Blocks: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and forces for thrust blocks for each size of pipe and type of bend.
- C. Coordination Drawings: Show pipe sizes, locations, and elevations. Show other piping in same trench and clearances from storm drainage system piping and sewer system piping. Indicate interface and spatial relationship between piping and proximate structures.
- D. Profile Drawings: Show system piping in elevation. Draw profiles at horizontal scale of not less than 1 inch equals 50 feet and vertical scale of not less than 1 inch equals 5 feet. Indicate manholes and piping. Show types, sizes, materials, and elevations of other utilities crossing system piping.
- E. Field quality-control test reports.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store plastic pipe, and fittings in direct sunlight.
- B. Protect pipe, pipe fittings, and seals from dirt and damage.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Water Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Architect, Construction Manager, and Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of service. Coordinate interruptions during weekly meetings and at pre-construction meeting.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of service without Architect's, Construction Manager's, and Owner's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work.
2. Line Markers:
 - a. Allen Systems Inc.
 - b. Seton Name Plate Corp.
 - c. Engineer Approved Equal.
3. Pipe Strainers:
 - a. "Automatic" Sprinkler Corp. of America; Div. A-T-O Inc.
 - b. Cleveland Gear Co.; Sub of Vesper Corp.
 - c. Grinnell Fire Protection Systems Co., Inc.
 - d. Hersey Products Inc.; Hersey Div.
 - e. Mueller Steam Specialty; Div. of Core Industries Inc.
 - f. Neptune Water Meter Co.
 - g. Rockwell International Corp.; Municipal & Utility Div.
 - h. Rockwood Systems Corp.
 - i. Zurn Industries Inc.; Fluid Handling Div.
4. Detector Meter: Not Required
5. Gate Valves:
 - a. American Valve Mfg. Corp.
 - b. American-Darling Valve; Div. of American Cast Iron Pipe Co.
 - c. Clow Corp.; Valve Div.
 - d. Dresser Mfg. Div. of ITT Grinnell Valve Co. Inc.
 - e. Fairbanks Co.
 - f. Kennedy Valve; Div. of ITT Grinnell Valve Co., Inc.
 - g. Stockham Valves & Fittings Inc.
 - h. United Brass Works Inc.
 - i. United States Pipe and Foundry Co.
 - j. Waterous Co.
6. Check Valves:
 - a. American-Darling Valve; Div. of American Cast Iron Pipe Co.
 - b. Clow Corp.; Valve Corp.
 - c. Fairbanks Co.
 - d. Kennedy Valve; Div. of ITT Grinnell Valve Co., Inc.
 - e. Mueller Co.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- f. Nibco Inc.
- g. Stockham Valves & Fittings Inc.
- h. Walworth Co.
- i. Waterous Co.
7. Yard Hydrants
 - a. Josam Mfg. Co.
 - b. Smith (Jay R.) Mfg. Co.
 - c. Zern Industries, Inc.; Hydromechanics Div.
8. Fire Hydrants: Approved by authority having jurisdiction.
9. Backflow Preventors: Approved by authority having jurisdiction.

2.2 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Underground –Type Plastic Line Markers: Manufacturer's standard permanent, bright-colored, continuous-printed plastic tape, intended for direct-burial service; not less than 6" wide x 4 mils thick. Provide blue tape with black printing reading "CAUTION WATER LINE BURIED BELOW".
- B. Nonmetallic Piping Label: If nonmetallic piping is used for water service, provide engraved plastic laminate, label permanently affixed to main electrical meter panel stating "THIS STRUCTURE HAS A NONMETALLIC WATER SERVICE".

2.3 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article for applications of pipe, fitting, and joining materials.
- B. Provide piping materials and factory-fabricated piping products of sizes, types, pressure ratings, and capacities indicated. Where not indicated, provide proper selection as determined by Installer to comply with installation requirements. Provide sizes and types matching piping and equipment connections; provide fittings of materials which match pipe materials used in potable water systems. Where more than one type of materials or products are indicated, selection is Installer's option.
- C. Piping: Provide pipe fittings and accessories of same material and weight/class as pipes, with joining method as indicated.
- D. DUCTILE IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS
 1. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated, 350 psi (2400 kPa).
 2. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern.
 3. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
- E. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with push-on-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated, 350 psi (2400 kPa).
 1. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

2. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.
- F. Grooved-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with cut, round-grooved ends.
1. Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Pipe Appurtenances: ASTM A47, malleable-iron castings or ASTM A536, ductile-iron castings with dimensions matching pipe, 350 psi (3400 kPa).
 2. Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron-Piping Couplings: AWWA C606, for ductile-iron-pipe dimensions, Include ferrous housing sections, gasket suitable for water, and bolts and nuts.
 3. Gaskets: AWWA C111.
- G. Flanged Ductile Iron Pipe: AWWA C115/A21.11, with factory applied screwed long hub flanges.
1. Flanges: ASME B16.1 for // 125 psi (850 kPa) // or // 250 psi (1725 kPa) // pressure ratings, as necessary.
 2. Wall Sleeve Castings, size and types shown on the drawings, shall be hot dipped galvanized per ASTM A123.
 3. Pipe and fittings exposed to view in the finished work are to be painted in accordance with Section 09 91 00, PAINTING. Pipe shall be shop primed with one coat of rust inhibitive primer. Final paint color shall match the final wall color.
 4. Cement Mortar Internal Lining: Cement mortar lining and bituminous seal coat as per AWWA C104.
- H. Exterior Pipe Coating: The exterior of pipe shall have the standard asphaltic coating.
- I. POLYVINYL CHLORIDE PIPE AND FITTINGS
1. PVC, Schedule 40 Pipe: ASTM D1785.
 2. PVC, Schedule 40 Socket Fittings: ASTM D2466.
 3. PVC, Schedule 80 Pipe: ASTM D1785.
 4. PVC, Schedule 80 Socket Fittings: ASTM D2467.
 5. PVC, Schedule 80 Threaded Fittings: ASTM D2464.
 6. PVC, AWWA Pipe: AWWA C900, // Class 150 // and // Class 200 // , with bell end with gasket, and with spigot end.
 7. Comply with UL 1285 for fire-service mains if indicated.
 8. PVC Fabricated Fittings: AWWA C900, // Class 150 // and // Class 200 // , with bell-and-spigot or double-bell ends. Include elastomeric gasket in each bell.
 9. PVC Molded Fittings: AWWA C907, Class 150, with bell-and-spigot or double-bell ends. Include elastomeric gasket in each bell.
 10. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings: // AWWA C110, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern // or // AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern//.
 11. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.
 12. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern.
 13. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
- J. PE PIPE AND FITTINGS
1. PE, ASTM Pipe: ASTM D2239, SIDR No. 5.3, 7, or 9; with PE compound number required to give pressure rating not less than // 160 psi (1100 kPa) // 200 psi (1380 kPa) //.
 2. Insert Fittings for PE Pipe: ASTM D2609, made of PA, PP, or PVC with serrated male insert ends matching inside of pipe. Include bands or crimp rings.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

3. Molded PE Fittings: ASTM D3350, PE resin, socket- or butt-fusion type, made to match PE pipe dimensions and class.
 4. PE, AWWA Pipe: AWWA C906, DR No. 7.3, 9, or 9.3; with PE compound number required to give pressure rating not less than // 160 psi (1100 kPa) // 200 psi (1380 kPa) //.
 5. PE, AWWA Fittings: AWWA C906, socket- or butt-fusion type, with DR number matching pipe and PE compound number required to give pressure rating not less than // 160 psi (1100 kPa) // 200 psi (1380 kPa) //.
 6. PE, Fire-Service Pipe: ASTM F714, AWWA C906, or equivalent for PE water pipe; FMG approved, with minimum thickness equivalent to FMG // Class 150 // and // Class 200 //.
 7. Molded PE Fittings: ASTM D3350, PE resin, socket- or butt-fusion type, made to match PE pipe dimensions and class.
- K. Ductile Iron Pipe: Polyethylene wrapped Ductile Iron Class 350, with cement mortar lining complying with AWWA C104.
1. Fitting: Ductile iron AWWA C110; cement lined AWWA C104; and rubber-gasket joints, AWWA C111.
- L. Copper Tube: ASTM B 88; type K, soft-annealed temper (for 3/4" to 2" diameter pipe).

2.4 WATER METER

- A. Comply with water purveyor for water meter, meter vault, meter accessories, features, and connections.

2.5 VALVES

- A. Gate Valves: UL-listed, 175 psi working pressure for 12" and smaller, 150 psi for sizes larger than 12". Threaded, flanged, hub, or other end configurations to suit size of valve and piping connection. Inside screw type for use with indicator post, iron body bronze mounted, non- rising stem, solid wedge disc. The valves shall be FM Approved.
- B. Check Valves: UL-listed, 175 psi working pressure for 2" through 12", 150 psi for sizes larger than 12". Swing type, iron body bronze mounted with metal-to-metal or rubber-faced checks. Threaded, flanged, or hub end, to suit size and piping connections.
1. Check valves shall be shall be FM Approved.

2.6 FIRE HYDRANT

- A. Provide cast-iron body fire hydrants, compression type, opening against pressure and closing with pressure, base valve design, 200 psi working pressure, with 1/4" gage tapping and bronze plug in standpipe, conforming to the latest edition of AWWA C-502, "Dry Barrel Fire Hydrants."
- B. Features: Provide the following features:
1. Size: 5" valve opening.
 2. Direction to Open Hydrant: Left.
 3. Size and Shape of Operating and Cap Nuts: Pentagon 1-1/2" point to flat.
 4. Hose Nozzles: 2-1/2" National Standard Thread cap and chain.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

5. Pumper Nozzles: 5" National Standard Thread cap and chain.
6. Depth of Trench: 4'-6".
7. Connection to Main: 6" mechanical joint.
8. Fire Hydrant shall be FM Approved.

2.7 ACCESSORIES

- A. Anchorages: Provide anchorages for tees, wyes, crosses, plugs, caps, bends, valves, and hydrants. After installation, apply full coat of asphalt or other acceptable corrosion-retarding material to surfaces of ferrous anchorages.
- B. Clamps, Straps, and Washers: Steel, ASTM A 506.
- C. Rods: Steel, ASTM A 575.
- D. Rod Couplings: Malleable-iron, ASTM A 197.
- E. Bolts: Steel, ASTM A 307.
- F. Cast-Iron Washers: Gray-iron, ASTM A 126.
- G. Thrust Blocks: Concrete, 3,000 psi.

2.8 CONCRETE

- A. General: Cast-in-place concrete according to ACI 318/318R, ACI 350R, and the following:
 1. Cement: ASTM C 150, Type II.
 2. Fine Aggregate: ASTM C 33, sand.
 3. Coarse Aggregate: ASTM C 33, crushed gravel.
 4. Water: Potable.
- B. Thrust Blocks, Hydrant Supports, and Pipe Supports: Portland cement design mix, 3000 psi minimum, with 0.58 maximum water-cementitious materials ratio.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 Examination: Examine areas and conditions under which potable water system's materials and products are to be installed. Do not proceed with work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in manner acceptable to Installer.

3.2 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavation trenching, and backfilling are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."
- B. Comply with FM Global "Data Sheet 3-10, Installation and Maintenance of Private Fire Service Mains and their Appurtenances."

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Identification: During back-filling/top-soiling of underground fire water piping systems, install continuous underground-type plastic line marker, located directly over buried line at 6" to 8" below finished grade. If PVC pipe is used, install a tracer wire along the top of the pipe, secured with tape, and extending to fire hydrants and valves.
- B. Pipe and pipe fittings:
 - 1. Pipe: Install in accordance with AWWA C600 "Standard for Installation of Ductile-Iron Water Mains and Their Appurtenances".
 - 2. Depth of Cover: Provide minimum depth of cover over underground piping in accordance with NFPA 24, Figure A-8-11 "Recommended Depth of Cover Above Top of Underground Yard Mains" or 60" below finish grade, whichever is greater.
- C. Piping Specialties:
 - 1. Pipe Line Strainers: Install as indicated, with valved blowoff piped to drain.
- D. Meters: Install as indicated with shutoff valve on either side of meter and valved bypass full line size.
- E. Valves: Provide post indicator for control valves.
 - 1. Shutoff Valves: Install shutoff valve ahead of each hydrant.
- F. Hydrants: Install fire hydrants in accordance with AWWA M17 "Installation, Operation, and Maintenance of Fire Hydrants".
 - 1. Location: Install fire hydrants minimum of 40'-0" from building outside wall, as indicated, or if not shown.
 - 2. Face hydrants towards drive.
 - 3. Place hydrants so that base of hydrant is even to 6-inches above adjacent top back of curb.
 - 4. Comply with FM Global "Data Sheet 3-10, Installation and Maintenance of Private Fire Service Mains and their Appurtenances."

3.4 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Pipe:
 - 1. Ductile Iron Pipe: Install in accordance with AWWA C600 "standard for installation of ductile-iron water mains and their appurtenances" and in accordance with instructions from water purveyor.
 - 2. Copper Tube: Install in accordance with CDA "Copper Tube Handbook".
 - 3. PVC Pressure pipe, PVC pressure fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
- B. Depth of Cover: Provide minimum cover over piping of 12" below average local frost depth or 42" below finished grade, whichever is greater.
- C. Water Main Connection: Arrange and pay for tap in water main, of size and in location as indicated, from water Purveyor.
- D. Water Service Termination: Terminate potable water piping 5'-0" from building

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

foundation in location and invert as indicated. Provide temporary pipe plug for piping extension into building.

1. Mark location with surface marker.

3.5 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans and details indicate general location and arrangement of underground water pipes. Location and arrangement of piping layout take design considerations into account. Install piping as indicated, to extent practical. Where specific installation is not indicated, follow piping manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Install proper size increasers, reducers, and couplings where different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings are connected. Reducing size of piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- C. Tunneling: Install pipe under streets or other obstructions that cannot be disturbed by tunneling, jacking, or a combination of both.
- D. Install piping according to the following:
 1. Install piping with restrained joints at tee fittings and at horizontal and vertical changes in direction. Use corrosion-resistant rods, pipe or fitting manufacturer's proprietary restraint system, or cast-in-place concrete supports or anchors.
 2. Install piping with line and grade as indicated or below frost line if not indicated.
 3. Install ductile-iron pressure piping according to AWWA C600 or AWWA M41.
 4. Install ductile-iron special fittings according to AWWA C600.
 5. Install PVC pressure piping according to AWWA M23 or ASTM D 2774 and ASTM F 1668.
 6. Install PVC water-service piping according to ASTM D 2774 and ASTM F 1668.
 7. Comply with FM Global "Data Sheet 3-10, Installation and Maintenance of Private Fire Service Mains and their Appurtenances."

3.6 INSTALLATION OF VALVES

- A. Install valves with stems pointing up. Provide valve box over underground valves.
- B. Comply with FM Global "Data Sheet 3-10, Installation and Maintenance of Private Fire Service Mains and their Appurtenances."

3.7 INSTALLATION OF WATER METER AND VAULT

- A. Install Water Meter and Vault to comply with City Water Department Standards.

3.8 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- A. Basic pipe joint construction is specified in Division 33 Section "Common Work Results for Utilities." Where specific joint construction is not indicated, follow piping manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Join pressure piping according to the following:
 - 1. Join ductile-iron pressure piping according to AWWA C660 or AWWA M41 for push-on joints.
 - 2. Join ductile-iron special fittings according to AWWA C660 or AWWA M41 for push-on joints.
 - 3. Join PVC pressure piping according to AWWA M23 for gasketed joints.
 - 4. Join PVC water-service piping according to ASTM D 2855 for solvent-cemented joints.
- C. Join dissimilar pipe materials with pressure-type couplings.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Piping Tests: Conduct piping tests before joints are covered, and after thrust blocks have sufficiently hardened. Fill pipeline with water 24-hrs prior to testing, and apply test pressure to stabilize system.
- B. Hydrostatic Tests: Test at not less than 200 psi for 2-hrs, or at 50 psi above maximum static pressure if it is greater than 150 psi.
 - 1. Test fails if leakage exceeds 2-qts per hour per 100 gaskets or joints irrespective of pipe diameter.
 - 2. Increase pressure in 50 psi increments and inspect each joint between increments. Hold at test pressure for one hour, decrease to 0 psi. Slowly increase again to test pressure and hold for one more hour.
- C. Operating Tests: Open and close all valves and hydrants under system water pressure. Check dry barrel hydrants for proper drainage.
 - 1. For systems with fire pumps, run pumps during operating tests.

3.10 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING WATER MAINS

- A. Disinfection of Potable Water System: Flush pipe system with clean potable water until no dirty water appears at point of outlet. Fill system with water-chlorine solution containing at least 50 ppm of chlorine. Valve off system and let stand for 24- hrs minimum. Flush with clean potable water until no chlorine remains in water coming from system.
 - 1. Repeat procedure if contamination is present in bacteriological examination.
 - 2. Flush water mains in accordance with FM Global "Data Sheet 3-10, Installation and Maintenance of Private Fire Service Mains and their Appurtenances."
- B. Disinfection of Water Mains: Flush and disinfect in accordance with AWWA C651 "Standard for Disinfecting Water Mains".
 - 1. Contractor shall submit written verification to Project Manager stating, Disinfection has been completed in strict compliance with specification for this

project and with jurisdiction having authority over water system.

3.11 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING FIRE SYSTEM

- A. Flushing: Flush underground mains and lead-in connections to sprinkler risers before connection is made to sprinklers, standpipes, or other fire protection system piping. Flush at flow rate not less than that indicated in NFPA 24, or at hydraulically calculated water demand rate of the system, whichever is greater. Flush water mains in accordance with FM Global "Data Sheet 3-10, Installation and Maintenance of Private Fire Service Mains and their Appurtenances."
- B. Adjusting: adjust fire hydrants to face street and be have base 2-6 inches above adjacent curb and gutter.

3.12 CLOSING ABANDONED WATER SYSTEMS

- A. Abandoned Piping: Close open ends of abandoned underground piping indicated to remain in place. Include closures strong enough to withstand hydrostatic and earth pressures that may result after ends of abandoned piping have been closed. Use either procedure below:
 - 1. Close open ends of piping with at least 8-inch-thick, brick masonry bulkheads.
 - 2. Close open ends of piping with threaded metal caps, plastic plugs, or other acceptable methods suitable for size and type of material being closed. Do not use wood plugs.
- B. Backfill to grade according to Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."

END OF SECTION 22 11 13

THIS PAGE LEFT INTENTIONALLY BLANK

SECTION 22 13 13

FACILITY SANITARY SEWERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes gravity-flow, nonpressure sanitary sewerage outside the building, with the following components:
 - 1. Special fittings for expansion and deflection.
 - 2. Cleanouts.
 - 3. Drains.
 - 4. Precast concrete manholes.
 - 5. Cast in place manhole bases over existing pipes.
 - 6. Sewerage Pipes.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Gravity-Flow, Nonpressure, Sewer-Piping Pressure Rating: 10-foot head of water. Pipe joints shall be at least water tight under specified head, unless otherwise indicated.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Special pipe fittings.
 - 2. Cleanout materials.
 - 3. Pipes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For the following:
 - 1. Manholes: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and frames and covers. Include design calculations, and concrete design-mix report for cast-in-place manholes.
- C. Coordination Drawings: Show pipe sizes, locations, and elevations. Show other piping in same trench and clearances from storm drainage system piping. Indicate interface and spatial relationship between manholes, piping, and proximate structures.
- D. Profile Drawings: Show system piping in elevation. Draw profiles at horizontal scale of not

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

less than 1 inch equals 50 feet and vertical scale of not less than 1 inch equals 5 feet. Indicate manholes and piping. Show types, sizes, materials, and elevations of other utilities crossing system piping.

E. Field quality-control test reports.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store plastic pipe and fittings in direct sunlight.
- B. Protect pipe, pipe fittings, and seals from dirt and damage.
- C. Handle manholes according to manufacturer's written rigging instructions.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Sanitary Sewerage Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Architect, Construction Manager and Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of service. Coordinate interruptions during weekly meetings and at pre-construction meeting.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of service without Architect's, Construction Manager's and Owner's written permission.
 - 3. If shutdown will affect city streets, other city utilities, or city sewer line, do not proceed without approval from city.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include local pre-cast manufacturers but are subject to approval of the engineer and architect.

2.2 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article for applications of pipe, fitting, and joining materials.

2.3 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service class.
- B. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.
- C. Calking Materials: ASTM B 29, pure lead and oakum or hemp fiber.

2.4 DUCTILE-IRON PRESSURE PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe: AWWA C151, for push-on joints.
- B. Standard Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile or gray iron, for push-on joints.
- C. Compact Fittings: AWWA C153, for push-on joints.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- D. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.

2.5 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. PVC Pressure Pipe: AWWA C900, Class 150 for gasketed joints and using ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.
 - 1. Fittings NPS 4 to NPS 8: PVC pressure fittings complying with AWWA C907, for gasketed joints and using ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.
 - 2. Fittings NPS 10 and Larger: Ductile-iron, compact fittings complying with AWWA C153, for push-on joints and using AWWA C111, rubber gaskets.
- B. PVC Water-Service Pipe and Fittings: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 80 pipe, with plain ends for solvent-cemented joints with ASTM D 2467, Schedule 80, socket-type fittings.
- C. PVC Sewer Pipe and Fittings, NPS 15 and Smaller: ASTM D 3034, SDR 35, with bell-and-spigot ends for gasketed joints with ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.
- D. PVC Sewer Pipe and Fittings, NPS 18 and Larger: ASTM F 679, T 2 wall thickness, with bell- and-spigot ends for gasketed joints with ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.
- E. PVC Profile Gravity Sewer Pipe and Fittings: ASTM F 794 pipe, with bell-and-spigot ends; ASTM D 3034 fittings, with bell ends; and ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.

2.6 NONPRESSURE-TYPE PIPE COUPLINGS

- A. Use non-pressure type couplings only when pipes cannot be connected together with standard fittings and typical pipe connections such as bell and spigot. If possible, file the end on existing pipes to create spigot type connections to match existing pipe ends for connection to a new bell for an extension of the pipe.
- B. Comply with ASTM C 1173, elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition coupling, for joining underground nonpressure piping. Include ends of same sizes as piping to be joined, and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
- C. Sleeve Materials:
 - 1. For Concrete Pipes: ASTM C 443, rubber.
 - 2. For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
 - 3. For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
 - 4. For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.
- D. Unshielded Flexible Couplings: Elastomeric sleeve with stainless-steel shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
 - b. Fernco Inc.
 - c. Logan Clay Products Company (The).
 - d. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
 - e. NDS Inc.
 - f. Plastic Oddities, Inc.
- E. Shielded Flexible Couplings: ASTM C 1460, elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Cascade Waterworks Mfg.
 - b. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
 - c. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
- F. Ring-Type Flexible Couplings: Elastomeric compression seal with dimensions to fit inside bell of larger pipe and for spigot of smaller pipe to fit inside ring.
 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Fernco Inc.
 - b. Logan Clay Products Company (The).
 - c. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.

2.7 PRESSURE-TYPE PIPE COUPLINGS

- A. Reducing or transition, metal, bolted, sleeve-type, reducing or transition coupling, for joining underground pressure piping. Include 150-psig minimum pressure rating and ends of same sizes as piping to be joined. For pressure pipe, use these couplers when pipes cannot be extended using existing pipe connections such as bell and spigots.
- B. Tubular-Sleeve Couplings: AWWA C219, with center sleeve, gaskets, end rings, and bolt fasteners.
 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Cascade Waterworks Mfg.
 - b. Dresser, Inc.; DMD Div.
 - c. Ford Meter Box Company, Inc. (The); Pipe Products Div.
 - d. JCM Industries.
 - e. Romac Industries, Inc.
 - f. Smith-Blair, Inc.
 - g. Viking Johnson.
 2. Center-Sleeve Material: Manufacturer's standard.
 3. Gasket Material: Natural or synthetic rubber.
 4. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.
- C. Split-Sleeve Couplings: With split sleeve with sealing pad and closure plates, O-ring gaskets, and bolt fasteners.
 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Brico Industries.
 2. Sleeve Material: Manufacturer's standard.
 3. Sleeve Dimensions: Of thickness and width required to provide pressure rating.
 4. Gasket Material: O-rings made of EPDM rubber, unless otherwise indicated.
 5. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.

2.8 SPECIAL PIPE FITTINGS

- A. Ductile-Iron Flexible Expansion Joints: Compound fitting with combination of flanged and mechanical-joint ends complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include 2 gasketed ball-joint sections and 1 or more gasketed sleeve sections, rated for 250-psig minimum working pressure and for offset and expansion indicated.
 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. EBAA Iron Sales, Inc.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- b. Romac Industries, Inc.
 - c. Star Pipe Products.
- B. Ductile-Iron Deflection Fittings: Compound coupling fitting with ball joint, flexing section, gaskets, and restrained-joint ends complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include rating for 250-psig minimum working pressure and for up to 15 degrees of deflection.
- 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. EBAA Iron Sales, Inc.
- C. Ductile-Iron Expansion Joints: Three-piece assembly of telescoping sleeve with gaskets and restrained-type, ductile-iron, bell-and-spigot end sections complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include rating for 250-psig minimum working pressure and for expansion indicated.
- 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Dresser, Inc.; DMD Div.
 - b. EBAA Iron Sales, Inc.
 - c. JCM Industries.
 - d. Smith-Blair, Inc.

2.9 CLEANOUTS

- A. Gray-Iron Cleanouts: ASME A112.36.2M, round, gray-iron housing with clamping device and round, secured, scoriated, gray-iron cover. Include gray-iron ferrule with inside calk or spigot connection and countersunk, tapered-thread, brass closure plug.
- 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Josam Company.
 - b. MIFAB Manufacturing, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
 - d. Wade Div.; Tyler Pipe.
 - e. Watts Industries, Inc.
 - f. Watts Industries, Inc.; Enpoco, Inc. Div.
 - g. Zurn Industries, Inc.; Zurn Specification Drainage Operation.
 - 2. Top-Loading Classification(s): Light, Medium, Heavy, and Extra-heavy duty depending on location and expected driving load on cleanout.
 - 3. Sewer Pipe Fitting and Riser to Cleanout: ASTM A 74, Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.
- B. PVC Cleanouts: PVC body with PVC threaded plug. Include PVC sewer pipe fitting and riser to cleanout of same material as sewer piping. Place in grey iron housing with clamping device and round, secured, scoriated, gray-iron cover.
- 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Canplas Inc.
 - b. Josam Company
 - c. MIFAB Manufacturing, Inc.
 - d. Wad Div.; Tyler Pipe
 - e. Watts Industries, Inc.
 - f. Zern Industries, Inc; Zern Specification Drainage Operation
 - g. IPS Corporation.
 - h. NDS Inc.
 - i. Plastic Oddities, Inc.
 - j. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - k. Zurn Industries, Inc.; Zurn Light Commercial Specialty Plumbing Products.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

2.10 MANHOLES

- A. Standard Precast Concrete Manholes: ASTM C 478, precast, reinforced concrete, of depth indicated, with provision for sealant joints.
1. Diameter: 48 inches minimum, unless otherwise indicated and as needed for pipe sizes.
 2. Ballast: Increase thickness of precast concrete sections or add concrete to base section, as required to prevent flotation. Field Verify ground water elevation with respect to manhole depths prior to ordering bases.
 3. Base Section: 9-inch minimum thickness for floor slab and 4-inch minimum thickness for walls and base riser section, and having separate base slab or base section with integral floor.
 4. Riser Sections: 4-inch minimum thickness, and lengths to provide depth indicated.
 5. Top Section: Eccentric-cone type unless concentric-cone or flat-slab-top type is indicated. Top of cone of size that matches grade rings.
 6. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 990, bitumen or butyl rubber.
 7. Resilient Pipe Connectors: ASTM C 923, cast or fitted into manhole walls, for each pipe connection.
 8. Steps: Not used.
 9. Adjusting Rings: Interlocking rings with level or sloped edge in thickness and diameter matching manhole frame and cover. Include sealant recommended by ring manufacturer.
 10. Grade Rings: Reinforced-concrete rings, 6- to 9-inch total thickness, to match diameter of manhole frame and cover.
 11. Manhole Frames and Covers: Ferrous; 24-inch ID by 7- to 9-inch riser with 4-inch-minimum width flange and 26-inch- diameter cover. Include indented top design with lettering cast into cover, using wording equivalent to "SANITARY SEWER."
 - a. Material: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18 ductile or ASTM A 48, Class 35 gray iron, unless otherwise indicated and to match existing manhole frames and covers.
 - b. Protective Coating: Foundry-applied, SSPC-Paint 16, coal-tar, epoxy-polyamide paint; 15-mil minimum thickness applied to all surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Cast-in-Place Concrete Manholes Base: Construct of reinforced-concrete bottom according to ASTM C 890 for A-16 (ASSHTO HS20-44), heavy-traffic, structural loading; of depth, shape, dimensions, and appurtenances indicated.
1. Ballast: Increase thickness of concrete, as required to prevent flotation.
 2. Excavate around existing pipe where manhole is to be placed.
 3. Place new pipe stub at line and grade and stubbed into new manhole location with pipe extending towards existing pipes.
 4. Place CMU blocks or other approved support adjacent to pipes to support new barrel section.
 5. Set first barrel section on CMU blocks and verify that barrel section is level in all directions and is not sitting on pipes.
 6. Make sure that hole is deep enough that the depth of concrete will be 9-inches below existing and new pipes.
 7. Place concrete around barrel section and inside barrel section so that the existing and new pipes are at least 50% covered with concrete.
 8. Hand form trough as needed.
 9. Let concrete cure and break out of pipes for trough. Grout all troughs smooth and even with pipes.
 10. Stack remaining barrel sections and add cone, ring and cover etc. as indicated for precast manhole.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

2.11 CONCRETE

- A. General: Cast-in-place concrete according to ACI 318/318R, ACI 350R, and the following:
 - 1. Cement: ASTM C 150, Type II.
 - 2. Fine Aggregate: ASTM C 33, sand.
 - 3. Coarse Aggregate: ASTM C 33, crushed gravel.
 - 4. Water: Potable.
- B. Portland Cement Design Mix: 4000 psi minimum, with 0.45 maximum water-cementitious materials ratio.
 - 1. Reinforcement Fabric: ASTM A 185, steel, welded wire fabric, plain.
 - 2. Reinforcement Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed steel.
- C. Ballast and Pipe Supports: Portland cement design mix, 3000 psi minimum, with 0.58 maximum water-cementitious materials ratio.
 - 1. Reinforcement Fabric: ASTM A 185, steel, welded wire fabric, plain.
 - 2. Reinforcement Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed steel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavation, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."

3.2 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Pipe couplings and special pipe fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Use nonpressure-type flexible couplings where required to join gravity-flow, nonpressure sewer piping, unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Flexible or rigid couplings for same or minor difference OD pipes.
 - b. Unshielded, increaser/reducer-pattern, flexible or rigid couplings for pipes with different OD.
 - c. Ring-type flexible couplings for piping of different sizes where annular space between smaller piping's OD and larger piping's ID permits installation.
 - 2. Use pressure-type pipe couplings for force-main joints.
- B. Special Pipe Fittings: Use for pipe expansion and deflection. Pipe couplings and special pipe fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Gravity-Flow, Nonpressure Sewer Piping: Use any of the following pipe materials for each size range:
 - 1. PVC sewer pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
 - 2. Ductile-iron pressure pipe, ductile-iron standard or compact fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
 - 3. PVC pressure, PVC pressure fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
- D. Force-Main Pressure Piping: Use any of the following pipe materials for each size range:
 - 1. PVC Schedule 80, water-service pipe; PVC Schedule 80, water-service-pipe fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

2. Ductile-iron pressure pipe; ductile-iron standard or compact fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
3. PVC pressure pipe, PVC pressure fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.

3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans and details indicate general location and arrangement of underground sanitary sewerage piping. Location and arrangement of piping layout take design considerations into account. Install piping as indicated, to extent practical.
- B. Install piping beginning at low point, true to grades and alignment indicated with unbroken continuity of invert. Place bell ends of piping facing upstream. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.
- C. Install manholes for changes in direction unless fittings are indicated. Use fittings for branch connections unless direct tap into existing sewer is indicated.
- D. Install proper size increasers, reducers, and couplings where different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings are connected. Reducing size of piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- E. Tunneling: Install pipe under streets or other obstructions that cannot be disturbed by tunneling, jacking, or a combination of both.
- F. Install gravity-flow, nonpressure drainage piping according to the following:
 1. Install piping pitched down in direction of flow, at slope indicated.
 2. Install piping with restrained joints at tee fittings and at changes in direction for pressure pipe. Use corrosion-resistant rods, pipe or fitting manufacturer's proprietary restraint system, or cast-in-place concrete supports or anchors.
 3. Install piping with cover indicated.
 4. Notify engineer of clearance problems that would result in changes to grade and alignment.
 5. Install ductile-iron culvert piping according to ASTM A 716.
 6. Install ductile-iron and special fittings according to AWWA C600 or AWWA M41.
 7. Install PVC sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.
 8. Install PVC profile gravity sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.
- G. Install force-main pressure piping according to the following:
 1. Install piping with restrained joints at tee fittings and at horizontal and vertical changes in direction. Use corrosion-resistant rods, pipe or fitting manufacturer's proprietary restraint system, or cast-in-place concrete supports or anchors.
 2. Install piping with line and grade as indicated or below frost line if not indicated.
 3. Install ductile-iron pressure piping according to AWWA C600 or AWWA M41.
 4. Install ductile-iron special fittings according to AWWA C600.
 5. Install PVC pressure piping according to AWWA M23 or ASTM D 2774 and ASTM F 1668.
 6. Install PVC water-service piping according to ASTM D 2774 and ASTM F 1668.

3.4 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Basic pipe joint construction is specified in Division 33 Section "Common Work Results for

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

Utilities." Where specific joint construction is not indicated, follow piping manufacturer's written instructions.

- B. Join gravity-flow, nonpressure drainage piping according to the following:
 - 1. Join ductile-iron culvert piping according to AWWA C600 for push-on joints.
 - 2. Join ductile-iron and special fittings according to AWWA C600 or AWWA M41.
 - 3. Join PVC cellular-core piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 891 for solvent-cement joints.
 - 4. Join PVC sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM D 3034 for elastomeric seal joints or ASTM D 3034 for elastomeric gasket joints.
 - 5. Join PVC profile gravity sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 for elastomeric-seal joints or ASTM F 794 for gasketed joints.
 - 6. Join dissimilar pipe materials with nonpressure-type flexible or rigid couplings.
- C. Join force-main pressure piping according to the following:
 - 1. Join ductile-iron pressure piping according to AWWA C660 or AWWA M41 for push-on joints.
 - 2. Join ductile-iron special fittings according to AWWA C660 or AWWA M41 for push-on joints.
 - 3. Join PVC pressure piping according to AWWA M23 for gasketed joints.
 - 4. Join PVC water-service piping according to ASTM D 2855 for solvent-cemented joints.
- D. Join dissimilar pipe materials with pressure-type couplings.

3.5 CLEANOUT INSTALLATION

- A. Install cleanouts and riser extension from sewer pipe to cleanout at grade. Use same pipe type as sewer line that the cleanout is connected to. Install piping so cleanouts open in direction of flow in sewer pipe.
 - 1. Use light-duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in earth or unpaved foot-traffic areas.
 - 2. Use medium-duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in paved foot-traffic areas.
 - 3. Use heavy-duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in vehicle-traffic service areas.
 - 4. Use extra-heavy-duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in roads areas.
- B. Set cleanout frames and covers in earth in cast-in-place concrete block, 12 inches around outside of cover. At contractors option, a square block can be used that is at least 12-inches wider than the cover. Set with tops 1 inch above surrounding earth grade.
- C. Set cleanout frames and covers in concrete pavement with tops flush with pavement surface.

3.6 MANHOLE INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install manholes, complete with appurtenances and accessories indicated.
- B. Install precast concrete manhole sections according to ASTM C 891.
- C. Construct cast-in-place manhole bases as indicated.
- D. Set tops of frames and covers flush with finished surface of manholes that occur in

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

pavements. Set tops 3 inches above finished surface elsewhere, unless otherwise indicated.

3.7 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Place cast-in-place concrete according to ACI 318/318R.

3.8 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect nonpressure, gravity-flow drainage piping to building's sanitary sewer system.
- B. Connect force-main pressure piping to building's force mains where indicated.
 - 1. Use commercially manufactured wye fittings for piping branch connections. Remove section of existing pipe; install wye fitting into existing piping; and encase entire wye fitting, plus 6-inch overlap, with not less than 6 inches of concrete with 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi.
 - 2. Protect existing piping, manholes, and structures to prevent concrete or debris from entering while making tap connections. Remove debris or other extraneous material that may accumulate.

3.9 CLOSING ABANDONED SEWER DRAINAGE SYSTEMS

- A. Abandoned Piping: Close open ends of abandoned underground piping indicated to remain in place. Include closures strong enough to withstand hydrostatic and earth pressures that may result after ends of abandoned piping have been closed. Use either procedure below:
 - 1. Close open ends of piping with at least 8-inch-thick, brick masonry bulkheads.
 - 2. Close open ends of piping with threaded metal caps, plastic plugs, or other acceptable methods suitable for size and type of material being closed. Do not use wood plugs.
- B. Abandoned Manholes and Structures: Excavate around manholes and structures as required and use one procedure below:
 - 1. Remove manhole or structure and close open ends of remaining piping.
 - 2. Remove top of manhole or structure down to at least 36 inches below final grade. Fill to within 12 inches of top with stone, rubble, gravel, or compacted dirt. Fill to top with concrete.
- C. Backfill to grade according to Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."

3.10 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Materials and their installation are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving." Arrange for installation of green warning tape directly over piping and at outside edge of underground structures.
 - 1. Use warning tape or detectable warning tape over ferrous piping.
 - 2. Use detectable warning tape over nonferrous piping and over edges of underground structures.

3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- A. Inspect interior of piping to determine whether line displacement or other damage has occurred. Inspect after approximately 24 inches of backfill is in place, and again at completion of Project.
1. Submit separate reports for each system inspection.
 2. Defects requiring correction include the following:
 - a. Alignment: Less than full diameter of inside of pipe is visible between structures.
 - b. Deflection: Flexible piping with deflection that prevents passage of ball or cylinder of size not less than 92.5 percent of piping diameter.
 - c. Crushed, broken, cracked, or otherwise damaged piping.
 - d. Infiltration: Water leakage into piping.
 - e. Exfiltration: Water leakage from or around piping.
 - f. Test for infiltration or exfiltration between manholes as follows:
 - 1) Clean section of sewer line of dirt. Debris, gravel, rocks and other items.
 - 2) Fill section between manholes with water. Allow water to sit in pipe for not less than 3-hours to acclimate to surrounding earth temperature.
 - 3) Use a water pump to pressurize the sewer pipe section to not less than 5 psi and not more than 10 psi. Record starting pressure.
 - 4) Turn off water pressure and wait 20 minutes.
 - 5) Refill pipe to same pressure as in step 3 and measure volume required to fill pipe to same pressure.
 - 6) Pipe section passes test if volume required to refill pipe is less than 1/2- gallon per 400 feet of 8-inch pipe. Prorate the allowable seepage larger or smaller pipes and for shorter or longer distances.
 - 7) Find and fix leaks in any section that fails to pass test. Fix any visible leaks found even if section of pipe passes test.
 3. Replace defective piping using new materials, and repeat inspections until defects are within allowances specified.
 4. Reinspect and repeat procedure until results are satisfactory.
- B. Test new piping systems, and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired, for leaks and defects.
1. Do not enclose, cover, or put into service before inspection and approval.
 2. Test completed piping systems according to authorities having jurisdiction.
 3. Schedule tests and inspections by authorities having jurisdiction with at least 24 hours' advance notice.
 4. Submit separate report for each test.
- C. Test pressure piping to same standard as water pipes in section 331100.
1. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
 2. Replace leaking piping using new materials, and repeat testing until leakage is within allowances specified.

3.12 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior of piping of dirt and superfluous materials.

END OF SECTION 22 13 13

THIS PAGE LEFT INTENTIONALLY BLANK

SECTION 221116 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Under-building-slab and aboveground domestic water pipes, tubes, and fittings inside buildings.
2. Encasement for piping.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Division 22 Section "Facility Water Distribution Piping" for water-service piping outside the building from source to the point where water-service piping enters the building.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For transition fittings and dielectric fittings.

B. Delegated-Design Submittal:

1. Design calculations and detailed fabrication and assembly of pipe anchors and alignment guides, hangers and supports for multiple pipes, expansion joints and loops, and attachments of the same to the building structure.
2. Locations of pipe anchors and alignment guides and expansion joints and loops.
3. Locations of and details for penetrations, including sleeves and sleeve seals for exterior walls, floors, basement, and foundation walls.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. System purging and disinfecting activities report.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Water Service: Do not interrupt water service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary water service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Construction Manager or owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of water service.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.
- B. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 14 and NSF 61. Plastic piping components shall be marked with "NSF-pw."
- C. All piping shall be American made and tested; no import pipe will be permitted.
- D. All exposed water supply piping in toilet rooms, custodial rooms and kitchens shall be chromium plated.
- E. All piping installed in or passing through a plenum must be plenum rated, fire wrapped, or installed in a metal conduit.

2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K and ASTM B 88, Type L water tube, drawn temper.
- B. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K water tube, annealed temper.
- C. Cast-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, pressure fittings.
- D. Wrought-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.
- E. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.
- F. Copper Unions:
 - 1. MSS SP-123.
 - 2. Cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body.
 - 3. Ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces.
 - 4. Solder-joint or threaded ends.

2.3 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe:

1. AWWA C151/A21.51, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

B. Standard-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings:

1. AWWA C110/A21.10, ductile or gray iron.
2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

C. Compact-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings:

1. AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile iron.
2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

D. Plain-End, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151/A21.51.

2.4 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials:

1. AWWA C110/A21.10, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free unless otherwise indicated.
2. Full-face or ring type unless otherwise indicated.

B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.

C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys.

D. Flux: ASTM B 813, water flushable.

E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.

2.5 TRANSITION FITTINGS

A. General Requirements:

1. Same size as pipes to be joined.
2. Pressure rating at least equal to pipes to be joined.
3. End connections compatible with pipes to be joined.

B. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- C. Sleeve-Type Transition Coupling: AWWA C219.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Cascade Waterworks Manufacturing.
 - b. Dresser, Inc.; Piping Specialties Products.
 - c. Ford Meter Box Company, Inc. (The).
 - d. JCM Industries.
 - e. Romac Industries, Inc.
 - f. Smith-Blair, Inc.; a Sensus company.
 - g. Viking Johnson.

- D. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following
 - a. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company.
 - b. Harvel Plastics, Inc.
 - c. Spears Manufacturing Company.

 - 2. Description:
 - a. CPVC or PVC one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions.
 - b. One end with threaded brass insert and one solvent-cement-socket or threaded end.

- E. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Colonial Engineering, Inc.
 - b. NIBCO Inc.
 - c. Spears Manufacturing Company.

 - 2. Description:
 - a. CPVC four-part union.
 - b. Brass threaded end.
 - c. Solvent-cement-joint plastic end.
 - d. Rubber O-ring.
 - e. Union nut.

2.6 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.

- B. Dielectric Nipples and Waterways:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- a. Elster Perfection Corporation.
 - b. Grinnell Mechanical Products; Tyco Fire Products LP.
 - c. Matco-Norca.
 - d. Clearflow/Perfection Corp.
 - e. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - f. Victaulic Company.
2. Standard: IAPMO PS 66 or ASTM F-1545-97.
 3. Electroplated steel nipple or waterway complying with ASTM F 1545 or ANSI/NSF-61 Compliant.
 4. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
 5. End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
 6. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene or LTHS.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install copper tubing under building slab according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- C. Install ductile-iron piping under building slab with restrained joints according to AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
- D. Install underground copper tube in PE encasement according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A21.5.
- E. Install shutoff valve, hose-end drain valve, strainer, pressure gage, and test tee with valve inside the building at each domestic water-service entrance. Comply with requirements for pressure gages in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" and with requirements for drain valves and strainers in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- F. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.
- G. Install water-pressure-reducing valves downstream from shutoff valves. Comply with requirements for pressure-reducing valves in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- H. Install domestic water piping level with 0.25 percent slope downward toward drain and plumb.
 1. Piping will be drained seasonally for freeze protection.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- I. Rough-in domestic water piping for water-meter installation according to utility company's requirements.
- J. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with SEI/ASCE 7 and with requirements for seismic-restraint devices in Division 22 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- K. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- L. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- M. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and coordinate with other services occupying that space.
- N. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- O. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher than the system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- P. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- Q. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- R. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.
- S. Install pressure gages on suction and discharge piping for each plumbing pump and packaged booster pump. Comply with requirements for pressure gages in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- T. Install thermostats in hot-water circulation piping. Comply with requirements for thermostats in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Pumps."
- U. Install thermometers on **inlet** piping from each water heater. Comply with requirements for thermometers in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- V. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Division 22 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- W. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Division 22 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- X. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Division 22 Section "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
- D. Brazed Joints for Copper Tubing: Comply with CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Braze Joints" chapter.
- E. Soldered Joints for Copper Tubing: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux to end of tube. Join copper tube and fittings according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- F. Joint Construction for Grooved-End Copper Tubing: Make joints according to AWWA C606. Roll groove ends of tubes. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of tubes or tube and fitting. Install coupling housing sections over gasket with keys seated in tubing grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.
- G. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate asbestos-free, nonmetallic gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for domestic water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- H. Joints for Dissimilar-Material Piping: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

3.4 TRANSITION FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install transition couplings at joints of dissimilar piping.
- B. Transition Fittings in Underground Domestic Water Piping:
 - 1. Fittings for NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Fitting-type coupling.
 - 2. Fittings for NPS 2 and Larger: Sleeve-type coupling.
- C. Transition Fittings in Aboveground Domestic Water Piping NPS 2 and Smaller: Plastic-to-metal transition fittings

3.5 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric nipples/waterways.

- C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric nipples/waterways.
- D. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 and Larger: Use dielectric nipples/waterways

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices in Division 22 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger, support products, and installation in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
 - 1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.
 - 2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
 - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
 - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
 - c. Longer Than 100 Feet if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
 - 3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
 - 4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- D. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, to a minimum of 3/8 inch.
- E. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 - 1. NPS 3/4 and Smaller: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 2. NPS 1 and NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 4. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 - 5. NPS 3 to NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
 - 6. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
 - 7. NPS 8: 10 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
- F. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.
- G. Support piping and tubing not listed in this article according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.7 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. When installing piping adjacent to equipment and machines, allow space for service and maintenance.

- C. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- D. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve; extend and connect to the following:
 - 1. Water Heaters: Cold-water inlet and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.
 - 2. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than that required by plumbing code. Comply with requirements for connection sizes in Division 22 plumbing fixture Sections.
 - 3. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification materials and installation in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Label pressure piping with system operating pressure.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Piping Inspections:
 - a. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - b. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:
 - 1) Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing in after roughing in and before setting fixtures.
 - 2) Final Inspection: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified in "Piping Tests" Subparagraph below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
 - c. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
 - d. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Piping Tests:
 - a. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.

- b. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit a separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
- c. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
- d. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow it to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
- e. Repair leaks and defects with new materials, and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
- f. Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.

B. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.10 ADJUSTING

A. Perform the following adjustments before operation:

- 1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
- 2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
- 3. Open throttling valves to proper setting.
- 4. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.
 - a. Manually adjust ball-type balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide hot-water flow in each branch.
 - b. Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.
- 5. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
- 6. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.
- 7. Remove filter cartridges from housings and verify that cartridges are as specified for application where used and are clean and ready for use.
- 8. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

3.11 CLEANING

A. Clean and disinfect potable domestic water piping as follows:

- 1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
- 2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:

- a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
 - b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:
 - 1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
 - 2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.
 - c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
 - d. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
 - e. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Clean non-potable domestic water piping as follows:
1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
 2. Use purging procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or; if methods are not prescribed, follow procedures described below:
 - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
 - b. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
- C. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities. Include copies of water-sample approvals from authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

3.12 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Some piping types and sizes mentioned in this section may not be used on this project.
- B. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Flanges and unions may be used for aboveground piping joints unless otherwise indicated.
- D. All exposed water supply piping in toilet rooms, custodial rooms and kitchens shall be chromium plated.
- E. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building-service piping, NPS 3 and smaller, shall be the following:
 1. Soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
- F. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building-service piping, NPS 4 to NPS 8 and larger, shall be the following:

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

1. Soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
 2. Mechanical-joint, ductile-iron pipe; standard- mechanical-joint fittings; and mechanical joints.
- G. Under-building-slab, combined domestic water, building-service, and fire-service-main piping, NPS 6 to NPS 12, shall be the following:
1. Mechanical-joint, ductile-iron pipe; standard-mechanical-joint fittings; and mechanical joints.
- H. Under-building-slab, domestic water piping, NPS 2 and smaller >, shall be the following:
1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
- I. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2 and smaller shall be one of the following:
1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L cast- copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.
- J. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 shall be one of the following:
1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L cast- copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.
- K. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 5 and larger shall be one of the following:
1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L cast- copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.

3.13 VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
1. Shutoff Duty: Use ball for piping NPS 3 and smaller. Use butterfly with flanged ends for piping NPS 4 and larger.
 2. Throttling Duty: Use ball valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
 3. Hot-Water Circulation Piping, Balancing Duty: Calibrated balancing valves.
 4. Drain Duty: Hose-end drain valves.
- B. Use check valves to maintain correct direction of domestic water flow to and from equipment.

END OF SECTION 221116

SECTION 221119 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following domestic water piping specialties:
 - 1. Vacuum breakers.
 - 2. Backflow preventers.
 - 3. Water pressure-reducing valves.
 - 4. Balancing valves.
 - 5. Temperature-actuated water mixing valves.
 - 6. Strainers.
 - 7. Outlet boxes.
 - 8. Hose bibbs.
 - 9. Wall hydrants.
 - 10. Drain valves.
 - 11. Water hammer arresters.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for thermometers, pressure gages, and flow meters in domestic water piping.
 - 2. Division 22 Section "Emergency Plumbing Fixtures" for water tempering equipment.
 - 3. Division 22 Section "Drinking Fountains and Water Coolers" for water filters for water coolers.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Minimum Working Pressure for Domestic Water Piping Specialties: 125 psig, unless otherwise indicated.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Field quality-control test reports.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic water piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. NSF Compliance:
 - 1. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Components and Related Materials," for plastic domestic water piping components.
 - 2. Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects; Sections 1 through 9."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 VACUUM BREAKERS

- A. Pipe-Applied, Atmospheric-Type Vacuum Breakers:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Ames Co.
 - b. Cash Acme.
 - c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - d. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
 - e. Rain Bird Corporation.
 - f. Toro Company (The); Irrigation Div.
 - g. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - h. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
 - 2. Standard: ASSE 1001.
 - 3. Size: NPS 1/4 to NPS 3, as required to match connected piping.
 - 4. Body: Bronze.
 - 5. Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded.
 - 6. Finish: Chrome plated.
- B. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Arrowhead Brass Products, Inc.
 - b. Cash Acme.
 - c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- d. Legend Valve.
 - e. MIFAB, Inc.
 - f. Prier Products, Inc.
 - g. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - h. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
 - i. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
 - j. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
2. Standard: ASSE 1011.
 3. Body: Bronze, nonremovable, with manual drain.
 4. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose threaded complying with ASME B1.20.7.
 5. Finish: Chrome or nickel plated.
- C. Pressure Vacuum Breakers:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Ames Co.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - c. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
 - d. Flomatic Corporation.
 - e. Toro Company (The); Irrigation Div.
 - f. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - g. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
 2. Standard: ASSE 1020.
 3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
 4. Pressure Loss: 5 psig maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
 5. Accessories:
 - a. Valves: Ball type, on inlet and outlet.
- D. Spill-Resistant Vacuum Breakers:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 2. Standard: ASSE 1056.
 3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
 4. Accessories:
 - a. Valves: Ball type, on inlet and outlet.
- ## 2.2 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS
- A. Reduced-Pressure-Principle Backflow Preventers:

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Ames Co.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - c. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
 - d. Flomatic Corporation.
 - e. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
2. Standard: ASSE 1013.
3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
4. Pressure Loss: 12 psig maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
5. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved] for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
6. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
7. Accessories:
 - a. Valves: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2 and smaller; outside screw and yoke gate-type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
 - b. Air-Gap Fitting: ASME A112.1.2, matching backflow-preventer connection.

B. Double-Check Backflow-Prevention Assemblies:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Ames Co.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - c. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
 - d. Flomatic Corporation.
 - e. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
2. Standard: ASSE 1015.
3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Pressure Loss: 5 psig maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
5. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
6. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; [flanged] <Insert type> for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
7. Accessories:
 - a. Valves: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2 and smaller; outside screw and yoke gate-type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

C. Beverage-Dispensing-Equipment Backflow Preventers:

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - c. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
2. Standard: ASSE 1022.
3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
4. Size: NPS 1/4 or NPS 3/8.
5. Body: Stainless steel.
6. End Connections: Threaded.

D. Dual-Check-Valve Backflow Preventers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Cash Acme.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - c. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
 - d. Flomatic Corporation.
 - e. Ford Meter Box Company, Inc. (The).
 - f. Honeywell Water Controls.
 - g. Legend Valve.
 - h. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
 - i. Mueller Co.; Water Products Div.
 - j. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - k. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
2. Standard: ASSE 1024.
3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
4. Body: Bronze with union inlet.

E. Carbonated-Beverage-Dispenser, Dual-Check-Valve Backflow Preventers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Cash Acme.
 - b. Lancer Corporation.
 - c. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
2. Standard: ASSE 1032.
3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
4. Size: NPS 1/4 or NPS 3/8.
5. Body: Stainless steel.
6. End Connections: Threaded.

2.3 WATER PRESSURE-REDUCING VALVES

A. Water Regulators: (Direct Type)

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Cash Acme.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - c. Honeywell Water Controls.
 - d. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - e. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
2. Standard: ASSE 1003.
3. Pressure Rating: Initial working pressure of 150 psig.
4. Body: Bronze, provide chrome-plated finish if connected to chrome plated or stainless steel piping for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3.
5. Valves for Booster Heater Water Supply: Include integral bypass.
6. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3.

B. Water Control Valves: (Pilot type)

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. CLA-VAL Automatic Control Valves.
 - b. Mifab Corp; Beeco.
 - c. Watts Industries, Inc.; Ames Fluid Control Systems.
 - d. Watts Industries, Inc.; Watts ACV.
 - e. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
2. Description: Pilot-operation, diaphragm-type, single-seated main water control valve.
3. Pressure Rating: Initial working pressure of 150 psig minimum with AWWA C550 or FDA-approved, interior epoxy coating. Include small pilot-control valve, restrictor device, specialty fittings, and sensor piping.
4. Main Valve Body: Cast- or ductile-iron body with AWWA C550 or FDA-approved, interior epoxy coating; or stainless-steel body.
5. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

2.4 BALANCING VALVES

A. Copper-Alloy Calibrated Balancing Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Armstrong International, Inc.
 - b. Flo Fab Inc.
 - c. ITT Industries; Bell & Gossett Div.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- d. NIBCO INC.
 - e. TAC Americas.
 - f. Taco, Inc.
 - g. Victaulic
 - h. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
2. Type: Ball or Y-pattern globe valve with two readout ports and memory setting indicator.
 3. Body: bronze,
 4. Size: Same as connected piping, but not larger than NPS 2.
 5. Accessories: Meter hoses, fittings, valves, differential pressure meter, and carrying case.
- B. Cast-Iron Calibrated Balancing Valves:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Armstrong International, Inc.
 - b. Flo Fab Inc.
 - c. ITT Industries; Bell & Gossett Div.
 - d. NIBCO INC.
 - e. TAC Americas.
 - f. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 2. Type: Adjustable with Y-pattern globe valve, two readout ports, and memory-setting indicator.
 3. Size: Same as connected piping, but not smaller than NPS 2-1/2.
- C. Accessories: Meter hoses, fittings, valves, differential pressure meter, and carrying case.

2.5 TEMPERATURE-ACTUATED WATER MIXING VALVES

- A. Water-Temperature Limiting Devices:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Armstrong International, Inc.
 - b. Cash Acme.
 - c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - d. Honeywell Water Controls.
 - e. Legend Valve.
 - f. Leonard Valve Company.
 - g. Powers; a Watts Industries Co.
 - h. Symmons Industries, Inc.
 - i. Taco, Inc.
 - j. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - k. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
 2. Standard: ASSE 1017.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
4. Type: Thermostatically controlled water mixing valve.
5. Material: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
6. Connections: Threaded union inlets and outlet.
7. Accessories: Check stops on hot- and cold-water supplies, and adjustable, temperature-control handle.
8. Valve Finish: Rough bronze.

B. Primary, Thermostatic, Water Mixing Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Armstrong International, Inc.
 - b. Lawler Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - c. Leonard Valve Company.
 - d. Powers; a Watts Industries Co.
 - e. Symmons Industries, Inc.
2. Standard: ASSE 1017.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
4. Type: Exposed-mounting, thermostatically controlled water mixing valve.
5. Material: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
6. Connections: Threaded union inlets and outlet.
7. Accessories: Manual temperature control, check stops on hot- and cold-water supplies, and adjustable, temperature-control handle.
8. Valve Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum, unless otherwise indicated.
9. Valve Finish: Chrome plated.
10. Piping Finish: Copper.

C. Individual-Fixture, Water Tempering Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Cash Acme.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - c. Honeywell Water Controls.
 - d. Lawler Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - e. Leonard Valve Company.
 - f. Powers; a Watts Industries Co.
 - g. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - h. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
2. Standard: ASSE 1016, thermostatically controlled water tempering valve.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Body: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
5. Temperature Control: Adjustable.
6. Inlets and Outlet: Threaded.
7. Finish: Rough or chrome-plated bronze.

2.6 STRAINERS FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or FDA-approved, epoxy coating and for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
4. Screen: Stainless steel with round perforations, unless otherwise indicated.
5. Perforation Size:
 - a. Strainers NPS 2 and Smaller: 0.020 inch.
 - b. Strainers NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: 0.045 inch.
 - c. Strainers NPS 5 and Larger: 0.10 inch.
6. Drain: Factory-installed, hose-end drain valve.

2.7 OUTLET BOXES

A. Icemaker Outlet Boxes:

1. Basis of Design: Guy Gray model FR1212SHACP fire rated washing machine box with one ¼ turn valve with water hammer arrestor and 1-1/2" drain connection.
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Acorn Engineering Company.
 - b. Guy Gray Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - c. IPS Corporation.
 - d. LSP Products Group, Inc.
 - e. Oatey.
 - f. Plastic Oddities; a division of Diverse Corporate Technologies.
 - g. Symmons Industries, Inc.
 - h. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - i. Whitehall Manufacturing; a div. of Acorn Engineering Company.
 - j. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
3. Mounting: Recessed.
4. Material and Finish: Enameled-steel or epoxy-painted-steel or plastic box and faceplate.
5. Faucet: Combination, valved fitting or separate hot- and cold-water, valved fittings complying with ASME A112.18.1. Include garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 on outlets.
6. Supply Shutoff Fittings: NPS 1/2 gate, globe, or ball valves and NPS 1/2 copper, water tubing.
7. Drain: [NPS 1-1/2] [NPS 2] standpipe and P-trap for direct waste connection to drainage piping.
8. Inlet Hoses: Two 60-inch- long, rubber household clothes washer inlet hoses with female, garden-hose-thread couplings. Include rubber washers.
9. Drain Hose: One 48-inch- long, rubber household clothes washer drain hose with hooked end.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

B. Water Outlet Boxes:

1. Basis of Design: Water-Tite model W9200HA 6" diameter outlet box with ¼ turn valve and water hammer arrestor.
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Acorn Engineering Company.
 - b. IPS Corporation.
 - c. LSP Products Group, Inc.
 - d. Oatey.
 - e. Plastic Oddities; a division of Diverse Corporate Technologies.
3. Mounting: Recessed.
4. Material and Finish: Enameled-steel or epoxy-painted-steel or plastic box and faceplate.
5. Faucet: Valved fitting complying with ASME A112.18.1. Include NPS 1/2 or smaller copper tube outlet.
6. Supply Shutoff Fitting: NPS 1/2 gate, globe, or ball valve and NPS 1/2 copper, water tubing.

2.8 HOSE BIBBS

A. Hose Bibbs:

1. Standard: ASME A112.18.1 for sediment faucets.
2. Body Material: Bronze.
3. Seat: Bronze, replaceable.
4. Supply Connections: NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4 threaded or solder-joint inlet.
5. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
6. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
7. Vacuum Breaker: Integral or field-installation, nonremovable, drainable, hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011.
8. Finish for Equipment Rooms: Rough bronze, or chrome or nickel plated.
9. Finish for Service Areas: Chrome or nickel plated.
10. Finish for Finished Rooms: Chrome or nickel plated.
11. Operation for Equipment Rooms: Wheel handle or operating key.
12. Operation for Service Areas: Wheel handle.
13. Operation for Finished Rooms: Operating key.
14. Include operating key with each operating-key hose bibb.
15. Include integral wall flange with each chrome- or nickel-plated hose bibb.

2.9 WALL HYDRANTS

A. Nonfreeze Wall Hydrants:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Prier Products, Inc.
 - d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - e. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - f. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
 - g. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
 - h. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
 - i. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
2. Standard: ASME A112.21.3M for concealed-outlet, self-draining wall hydrants.
 3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
 4. Operation: Loose key.
 5. Casing and Operating Rod: Of length required to match wall thickness. Include wall clamp.
 6. Inlet: NPS 3/4 or NPS 1.
 7. Outlet: Concealed, with integral vacuum breaker and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
 8. Box: Deep, flush mounting with cover.
 9. Box and Cover Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
 10. Operating Keys: Two with each wall hydrant.

2.10 DRAIN VALVES

A. Ball-Valve-Type, Hose-End Drain Valves:

1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for standard-port, two-piece ball valves.
2. Pressure Rating: 400-psig minimum CWP.
3. Size: NPS 3/4.
4. Body: Copper alloy.
5. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
6. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
7. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel.
8. Inlet: Threaded or solder joint.
9. Outlet: Threaded, short nipple with garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 and cap with brass chain.

2.11 WATER HAMMER ARRESTERS

A. Water Hammer Arresters:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. AMTROL, Inc.
 - b. Josam Company.
 - c. MIFAB, Inc.
 - d. PPP Inc.
 - e. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - f. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.

- g. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - h. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
 - i. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
- 2. Standard: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201.
 - 3. Type: Metal bellows or Copper tube with piston.
 - 4. Size: ASSE 1010, Sizes AA and A through F or PDI-WH 201, Sizes A through F.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Refer to Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing" for piping joining materials, joint construction, and basic installation requirements.
- B. Install backflow preventers in each water supply to mechanical equipment and systems and to other equipment and water systems that may be sources of contamination. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Locate backflow preventers in same room as connected equipment or system.
 - 2. Install drain for backflow preventers with atmospheric-vent drain connection with air-gap fitting, fixed air-gap fitting, or equivalent positive pipe separation of at least two pipe diameters in drain piping and pipe to floor drain. Locate air-gap device attached to or under backflow preventer. Simple air breaks are not acceptable for this application.
 - 3. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.
- C. Install water control valves with inlet and outlet shutoff valves. Install pressure gages on inlet and outlet.
- D. Install balancing valves in locations where they can easily be adjusted.
- E. Install temperature-actuated water mixing valves with check stops or shutoff valves on inlets and with shutoff valve on outlet.
 - 1. Install thermometers and water regulators if specified.
 - 2. Install cabinet-type units recessed in or surface mounted on wall as specified.
- F. Install Y-pattern strainers for water on supply side of each control valve, water pressure-reducing valve, solenoid valve, and pump.
- G. Install outlet boxes recessed in wall. Install 2-by-4-inch fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking wall reinforcement between studs. Fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking is specified in Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry."
- H. Install water hammer arresters in water piping according to PDI-WH 201.
- I. Install supply-type, trap-seal primer valves with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust valve for proper flow.

- J. Install drainage-type, trap-seal primer valves as lavatory trap with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting.
- K. Install trap-seal primer systems with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust system for proper flow.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping and specialties.
- B. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.3 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each of the following:
 - 1. Pressure vacuum breakers.
 - 2. Reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventers.
 - 3. Double-check backflow-prevention assemblies.
 - 4. Carbonated-beverage-machine backflow preventers.
 - 5. Dual-check-valve backflow preventers.
 - 6. Water pressure-reducing valves.
 - 7. Calibrated balancing valves.
 - 8. Primary, thermostatic, water mixing valves.
 - 9. Primary water tempering valves.
 - 10. Outlet boxes.
 - 11. Supply-type, trap-seal primer valves.
 - 12. Trap-seal primer systems.
- B. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and prepare test reports:
 - 1. Test each backflow preventer according to authorities having jurisdiction and the device's reference standard.
- B. Remove and replace malfunctioning domestic water piping specialties and retest as specified above.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Set field-adjustable pressure set points of water pressure-reducing valves.
- B. Set field-adjustable flow set points of balancing valves.
- C. Set field-adjustable temperature set points of temperature-actuated water mixing valves.

END OF SECTION 221119

SECTION 221123 - DOMESTIC WATER PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following all-bronze and bronze-fitted centrifugal pumps for domestic cold- and hot-water circulation:
 - 1. Separately-coupled, horizontally mounted, in-line centrifugal pumps.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type and size of domestic water pump specified. Include certified performance curves with operating points plotted on curves; and rated capacities of selected models, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic water pumps to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of domestic water pumps and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Division 01 Section "Product Requirements."
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Retain shipping flange protective covers and protective coatings during storage.
- B. Protect bearings and couplings against damage.
- C. Comply with pump manufacturer's written rigging instructions for handling.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 SEPARATELY COUPLED, HORIZONTALLY MOUNTED, IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Armstrong.
 - 2. Aurora Pump; Pentair Pump Group (The).
 - 3. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; ITT Industries.
 - 4. Grundfos Pumps Corp.
 - 5. Taco, Inc.
 - 6. Weinman Div.; Crane Pumps & Systems.
- B. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, overhung-impeller, single-stage, separately coupled, horizontally mounted, in-line centrifugal pumps as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; and designed for installation with pump and motor shafts mounted horizontally.
 - 1. Pump Construction: All bronze.
 - a. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with threaded companion-flange connections for pumps with NPS 2 pipe connections and flanged connections for pumps with NPS 2-1/2 pipe connections.
 - b. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, closed, and keyed to shaft.
 - c. Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: Steel shaft, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve.
 - d. Seal: Mechanical, with carbon-steel rotating ring, stainless-steel spring, ceramic seat, and rubber bellows and gasket. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
 - e. Bearings: Oil-lubricated; bronze-journal or ball type.
 - 2. Shaft Coupling: Flexible, capable of absorbing torsional vibration and shaft misalignment.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

3. Motor: Single speed, with grease-lubricated ball bearings; and resiliently mounted to pump casing. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Common Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment."

2.3 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Anamet, Inc.
2. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
3. Flexicraft Industries.
4. Flex-Pression, Ltd.
5. Flex-Weld, Inc.
6. Fugate
7. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
8. Mercer Rubber.
9. Metraflex, Inc.
10. Proco Products, Inc.
11. Tozen America Corporation.
12. Twin City Hose.
13. Unaflex Inc.

- B. Description: Corrugated, bronze inner tubing covered with bronze wire braid. Include copper-tube ends or bronze flanged ends, braze-welded to tubing. Include 125-psig minimum working-pressure rating and ends matching pump connections.

2.4 BUILDING-AUTOMATION-SYSTEM INTERFACE

- A. Provide auxiliary contacts in pump controllers for interface to building automation system. Include the following:

1. On-off status of each pump.
2. Alarm status.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of domestic-water-piping system to verify actual locations of connections before pump installation.

3.2 PUMP INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SEI/ASCE 7 and with requirements for seismic-restraint devices in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Comply with HI 1.4.

- C. Install pumps with access for periodic maintenance including removal of motors, impellers, couplings, and accessories.
- D. Independently support pumps and piping so weight of piping is not supported by pumps and weight of pumps is not supported by piping.
- E. Install separately coupled, horizontally mounted, in-line centrifugal pumps with motor and pump shafts horizontal.
- F. Install continuous-thread hanger rods and spring hangers with vertical-limit stop of sufficient size to support pump weight. Vibration isolation devices are specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment." Fabricate brackets or supports as required. Hanger and support materials are specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to pumps to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic water piping to pumps. Install suction and discharge piping equal to or greater than size of pump nozzles. Refer to Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping."
 - 1. Install flexible connectors adjacent to pumps in suction and discharge piping of the following pumps:
 - a. Separately coupled, horizontally mounted, in-line centrifugal pumps.
 - 2. Install shutoff valve and strainer on suction side of pumps, and check valve and throttling valve on discharge side of pumps. Install valves same size as connected piping. Refer to Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping" for general-duty valves for domestic water piping and Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for strainers.
 - 3. Install pressure gages at suction and discharge of pumps. Install at integral pressure-gage tappings where provided or install pressure-gage connectors in suction and discharge piping around pumps. Refer to Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for pressure gages and gage connectors.
- D. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- E. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- F. Interlock pump with water heater burner and time delay relay.

3.4 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Check piping connections for tightness.
 - 3. Clean strainers on suction piping.
 - 4. Perform the following startup checks for each pump before starting:
 - a. Verify bearing lubrication.
 - b. Verify that pump is free to rotate by hand and that pump for handling hot liquid is free to rotate with pump hot and cold. If pump is bound or drags, do not operate until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.
 - c. Verify that pump is rotating in the correct direction.
 - 5. Prime pump by opening suction valves and closing drains, and prepare pump for operation.
 - 6. Start motor.
 - 7. Open discharge valve slowly.
 - 8. Adjust temperature settings on thermostats.
 - 9. Adjust timer settings.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain pumps. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION 221123

SECTION 221316 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
 - 2. Specialty pipe fittings.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For waste and vent piping, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Detailed description of piping anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF/ANSI 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-dwv" for plastic drain, waste, and vent piping; "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping; "NSF-drain" for plastic drain piping, and "NSF-tubular" for plastic continuous waste piping.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

2.2 HUBLESS, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: All cast-iron waste, vent and sewer pipe and fittings shall conform to the requirements of CISPI Standard 301 and ASTM A 888. All products shall be marked with the collective trademark of the Cast Soil Pipe Institute and shall be listed by NSF International or receive prior approval of the engineer. All cast-iron pipe and fittings shall be American made and tested. Non-compliant import cast-iron products will not be permitted. Any non-compliant cast-iron product installed by the contractor on this project will be replaced at the contractor's expense and shall include all repairs, patching, painting and other incidental work required to return the project to its pre-remediation state.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. AB&I Foundry
 - b. Charlotte Pipe
 - c. Tyler Pipe
- B. CISPI, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. ANACO.
 - b. Ideal
 - c. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
 - d. Tyler Pipe.
 2. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and CISPI 310.
 3. Description: Stainless-steel corrugated shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
 4. Listing: Couplings shall be listed by NSF International. Each coupling shall be embossed with the NSF seal.
- C. Heavy-Duty, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Husky SD 4000.
 - b. Clamp-All Corp HI-TORQ 125.
 2. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and ASTM C 1540.
 3. Description: Stainless-steel shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

2.3 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D 2665, drain, waste, and vent.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- B. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns and to fit Schedule 40 pipe.
- C. Adhesive Primer: ASTM F 656.
 - 1. Adhesive primer shall have a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 2. Adhesive primer shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- D. Solvent Cement: ASTM D 2564.
 - 1. PVC solvent cement shall have a VOC content of 510 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTH MOVING

- A. Comply with requirements for excavating, trenching, and backfilling specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.

- J. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with SEI/ASCE 7 and with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- K. Make changes in direction for soil and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical. Use long-turn, double Y-branch and 1/8-bend fittings if two fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with common drain pipe. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- L. Lay buried building drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- M. Install soil and waste drainage and vent piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Building Sanitary Drain: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping.
 - 2. Horizontal Sanitary Drainage Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.
 - 3. Vent Piping: 1 percent down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.
- N. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
 - 1. Install encasement on underground piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.
- O. Install underground **PVC** piping according to ASTM D 2321.
- P. Install engineered soil and waste drainage and vent piping systems as follows:
 - 1. Combination Waste and Vent: Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction.
- Q. Plumbing Specialties:
 - 1. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building sanitary sewers in sanitary drainage gravity-flow piping. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in sanitary drainage force-main piping. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
 - 2. Install drains in sanitary drainage gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
 - 3. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in sanitary force-main piping.
- R. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

- S. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Division 22 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- T. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Division 22 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- U. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Division 22 Section "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join hubless, cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-piping coupling joints.
- B. Plastic, Nonpressure-Piping, Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
 - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
 - 2. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855 and ASTM D 2665 Appendixes.

3.4 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger and support devices and installation specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
 - 1. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
 - 2. Install stainless-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in corrosive environments.
 - 3. Install carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.
 - 4. Install stainless-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in corrosive environments.
 - 5. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
 - 6. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs:
 - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
 - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
 - c. Longer Than 100 Feet if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
 - 7. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
 - 8. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- C. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches of each fitting and coupling or valve and coupling.
- D. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.

- E. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.
- F. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 - 1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 2. NPS 3: 60 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 - 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 60 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
 - 4. NPS 6 and NPS 8: 60 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
 - 5. NPS 10 and NPS 12: 60 inches with 7/8-inch rod.
 - 6. Spacing for 10-foot lengths may be increased to 10 feet. Spacing for fittings is limited to 60 inches.
- G. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet.
- H. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect soil and waste piping to exterior sanitary sewerage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- C. Connect drainage and vent piping to the following:
 - 1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect drainage piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
 - 2. Plumbing Fixtures and Equipment: Connect atmospheric vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 3. Plumbing Specialties: Connect drainage and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
 - 4. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
 - 5. Comply with requirements for cleanouts and drains specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
 - 6. Equipment: Connect drainage piping as indicated. Provide shutoff valve if indicated and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for connections NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.
- E. Make fixture and equipment connections according to the following unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
 - 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.

3.6 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify exposed sanitary waste and vent piping. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
 - 2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Test sanitary drainage and vent piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
 - 1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
 - 2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced drainage and vent piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
 - 3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test drainage and vent piping except outside leaders on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water. From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
 - 4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1-inch wg. Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.
 - 5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
 - 6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.
 - 7.

3.8 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

- B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

3.9 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Aboveground, soil and waste piping NPS 3 and smaller shall be the following:
 - 1. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings CISPI hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
 - 2. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- C. Aboveground, soil and waste piping NPS 4 and larger shall be the following:
 - 1. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings heavy-duty hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
 - 2. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- D. Aboveground, vent piping NPS 3 and smaller shall be the following:
 - 1. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings CISPI hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
 - 2. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- E. Aboveground, vent piping NPS 4 and larger shall be the following:
 - 1. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings CISPI hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
 - 2. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- F. Underground, soil, waste, and vent piping NPS 3 and smaller shall be any of the following:
 - 1. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings CISPI hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
 - 2. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
 - 3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- G. Underground, soil and waste piping NPS 4 and larger shall be the following:
 - 1. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings heavy-duty hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
 - 2. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
 - 3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

END OF SECTION 221316

SECTION 221319 - SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following sanitary drainage piping specialties:
 - 1. Cleanouts.
 - 2. Floor drains.
 - 3. Channel drainage systems.
 - 4. Roof flashing assemblies.
 - 5. Through-penetration firestop assemblies.
 - 6. Miscellaneous sanitary drainage piping specialties.
 - 7. Flashing materials.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 22 Section "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties" for trench drains for storm water, channel drainage systems for storm water, roof drains, and catch basins.

1.3 SEISMIC REQUIREMENTS

- A. Component Importance Factor. All plumbing components shall be assigned a component importance factor. The component importance factor, I_p , shall be taken as 1.5 if any of the following conditions apply:
 - 1. The component is required to function for life-safety purposes after an earthquake.
 - 2. The component contains hazardous materials.
 - 3. The component is in or attached to an Occupancy Category IV structure and it is needed for continued operation of the facility or its failure could impair the continued operation of the facility.
- B. All other components shall be assigned a component importance factor, I_p , equal to 1.0.
- C. Seismic Performance: Plumbing equipment, hangers and supports shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7 and with the requirements specified in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. FOG: Fats, oils, and greases.

- B. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.
- C. HDPE: High-density polyethylene plastic.
- D. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
- E. PP: Polypropylene plastic.
- F. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and accessories for the following:
 - 1. FOG disposal systems.
 - 2. Grease removal devices.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for frost-resistant vent terminals.
 - 1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that FOG disposal systems, grease interceptors, grease removal devices, oil interceptors, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 22 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment." Include the following:
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - a. For components with a seismic importance factor of 1.0 the term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
 - b. For components with a seismic importance factor of 1.5 the term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- D. Field quality-control test reports.
- E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For drainage piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Components and Related Materials," for plastic sanitary piping specialty components.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.
- B. Coordinate size and location of roof penetrations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CLEANOUTS

- A. Exposed Metal Cleanouts:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
 - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
 - 2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for cast iron for cleanout test tee.
 - 3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping
 - 4. Body Material: Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
 - 5. Closure: Countersunk, brass plug.
 - 6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
 - 7. Closure: Stainless-steel plug with seal.
- B. Metal Floor Cleanouts:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- b. Oatey.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
 - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
 - g. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for adjustable housing cleanout.
 3. Size: Same as connected branch.
 4. Type: Adjustable housing.
 5. Body or Ferrule: Cast iron.
 6. Clamping Device: Required.
 7. Outlet Connection: Inside call.
 8. Closure: Brass plug with tapered threads.
 9. Adjustable Housing Material: Cast iron with threads.
 10. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Nickel-bronze, copper alloy.
 11. Frame and Cover Shape: Round.
 12. Top Loading Classification: Heavy Duty.
 13. Riser: ASTM A 74, Service class, cast-iron drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.
 14. Standard: ASME A112.3.1.
 15. Size: Same as connected branch.
 16. Housing: Stainless steel.
 17. Closure: Stainless steel with seal.
 18. Riser: Stainless-steel drainage pipe fitting to cleanout.

C. Cast-Iron Wall Cleanouts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
 - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M. Include wall access.
3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
4. Body: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe T-branch as required to match connected piping.
5. Closure: Countersunk, brass plug.
6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
7. Wall Access: Round, flat, chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel cover plate with screw.
8. Wall Access: Round, stainless-steel wall-installation frame and cover.

2.2 FLOOR DRAINS

A. Cast-Iron Floor Drains:

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: See Schedule at end of this Section:
 - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
 - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
3. Standard: ASME A112.6.3.
4. Body Material: Gray iron.
5. Seepage Flange: Required.
6. Anchor Flange: Not required.
7. Outlet: Bottom.
8. Trap Material: Cast iron>.
9. Trap Pattern: Deep-seal P-trap>.
10. Trap Features: Trap-seal primer valve drain connection>.

2.3 THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP ASSEMBLIES

A. Through-Penetration Firestop Assemblies:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. ProSet Systems Inc.
3. Standard: UL 1479 assembly of sleeve and stack fitting with firestopping plug.
4. Size: Same as connected soil, waste, or vent stack.
5. Sleeve: Molded PVC plastic, of length to match slab thickness and with integral nailing flange on one end for installation in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
6. Stack Fitting: ASTM A 48/A 48M, gray-iron, hubless-pattern, wye branch with neoprene O-ring at base and gray-iron plug in thermal-release harness. Include PVC protective cap for plug.
7. Special Coating: Corrosion resistant on interior of fittings.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS SANITARY DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Floor-Drain, Trap-Seal Primer Fittings:

1. Description: Cast iron, with threaded inlet and threaded or spigot outlet, and trap-seal primer valve connection.
2. Size: Same as floor drain outlet with NPS 1/2 side inlet.

B. Air-Gap Fittings:

1. Standard: ASME A112.1.2, for fitting designed to ensure fixed, positive air gap between installed inlet and outlet piping.
2. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
3. Inlet: Opening in top of body.
4. Outlet: Larger than inlet.
5. Size: Same as connected waste piping and with inlet large enough for associated indirect waste piping.

C. Sleeve Flashing Device:

1. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron fitting, with clamping device, that forms sleeve for pipe floor penetrations of floor membrane. Include galvanized-steel pipe extension in top of fitting that will extend 1 inch > above finished floor and galvanized-steel pipe extension in bottom of fitting that will extend through floor slab.
2. Size: As required for close fit to riser or stack piping.

D. Stack Flashing Fittings:

1. Description: Counterflashing-type, cast-iron fitting, with bottom recess for terminating roof membrane, and with threaded or hub top for extending vent pipe.
2. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.

E. Vent Cap Filters:

1. Description: Activated carbon filter in housing for installation at vent terminal as manufactured by Sweet Filter.
2. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.

2.5 FLASHING MATERIALS

A. Lead Sheet: ASTM B 749, Type L51121, copper bearing, with the following minimum weights and thicknesses, unless otherwise indicated:

1. General Use: 4.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0625-inch thickness.
2. Vent Pipe Flashing: 3.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0469-inch thickness.
3. Burning: 6-lb/sq. ft., 0.0938-inch thickness.

B. Elastic Membrane Sheet: ASTM D 4068, flexible, chlorinated polyethylene, 40-mil minimum thickness.

C. Fasteners: Metal compatible with material and substrate being fastened.

D. Metal Accessories: Sheet metal strips, clamps, anchoring devices, and similar accessory units required for installation; matching or compatible with material being installed.

E. Bituminous Coating: SSPC-Paint 12, solvent-type, bituminous mastic.

2.6 MOTORS

- A. General requirements for motors are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment."
 - 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
 - 2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Electrical devices and connections are specified in Division 26 Sections.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Refer to Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing" for piping joining materials, joint construction, and basic installation requirements.
- C. Install backwater valves in building drain piping. For interior installation, provide cleanout deck plate flush with floor and centered over backwater valve cover, and of adequate size to remove valve cover for servicing.
- D. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Size same as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
 - 2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
 - 3. Locate at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 100 feet for larger piping.
 - 4. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.
- E. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.
- F. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.
- G. Install floor drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Position floor drains for easy access and maintenance.
 - 2. Set floor drains below elevation of surrounding finished floor to allow floor drainage. Set with grates depressed according to the following drainage area radii:
 - a. Radius, 30 Inches or Less: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not less than 1/4-inch total depression.
 - b. Radius, 30 to 60 Inches: Equivalent to 1 percent slope.

- c. Radius, 60 Inches or Larger: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not greater than 1-inch total depression.
- 3. Install floor-drain flashing collar or flange so no leakage occurs between drain and adjoining flooring. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
- 4. Install individual traps for floor drains connected to sanitary building drain, unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Assemble plastic channel drainage system components according to manufacturer's written instructions. Install on support devices so that top will be flush with adjacent surface.
- I. Install deep-seal traps on floor drains and other waste outlets, if indicated.
- J. Install floor-drain, trap-seal primer fittings on inlet to floor drains that require trap-seal primer connection.
 - 1. Exception: Fitting may be omitted if trap has trap-seal primer connection.
 - 2. Size: Same as floor drain inlet.
- K. Install air-gap fittings on draining-type backflow preventers and on indirect-waste piping discharge into sanitary drainage system.
- L. Install sleeve flashing device with each riser and stack passing through floors with waterproof membrane.
- M. Install vent cap filters on each vent pipe passing through roof.
- N. Install wood-blocking reinforcement for wall-mounting-type specialties.
- O. Install traps on plumbing specialty drain outlets. Omit traps on indirect wastes unless trap is indicated.
- P. Install escutcheons at wall, floor, and ceiling penetrations in exposed finished locations and within cabinets and millwork. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding pipe fittings.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Grease Removal Devices: Connect controls, electrical power, factory-furnished accessories, and inlet, outlet, and vent piping to unit.
- D. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- E. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.3 FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Fabricate flashing from single piece unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required. Join flashing according to the following if required:
 - 1. Lead Sheets: Burn joints of lead sheets 6.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0938-inch thickness or thicker. Solder joints of lead sheets 4.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0625-inch thickness or thinner.
- B. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors and roofs with waterproof membrane.
 - 1. Pipe Flashing: Sleeve type, matching pipe size, with minimum length of 10 inches, and skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around pipe.
 - 2. Sleeve Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around sleeve.
 - 3. Embedded Specialty Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around specialty.
- C. Set flashing on floors and roofs in solid coating of bituminous cement.
- D. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.
- E. Install flashing for piping passing through roofs with counterflashing or commercially made flashing fittings, according to Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
- F. Extend flashing up vent pipe passing through roofs and turn down into pipe, or secure flashing into cast-iron sleeve having calking recess.
- G. Fabricate and install flashing and pans, sumps, and other drainage shapes.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled grease removal devices and their installation, including piping and electrical connections, and to assist in testing.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain grease removal devices. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION 221319

SECTION 22 14 11

DISINFECTING WATER SUPPLY SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1. WORK INCLUDED

- A. Disinfection of Domestic Water Supply System.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Requirements: Provide Disinfecting Water Supply System in accordance with the Contract Documents.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Disinfectant residual means the quantity of disinfectant in treated water.
- B. pH factor means the measure of alkalinity and acidity in water.
- C. ppm means parts per million.

1.4 CONTRACTOR'S QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Water Treatment Contractor: At least three years experience performing work specified herein.
- B. Bacteriological Laboratory: Certified by Serving Water Board or District and be in compliance with the State and U.S. Safe Drinking Water Act.

1.5 REGULATORY AGENCY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with requirements of Local and State Regulations.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit for review and acceptance the following items under provisions of the General Conditions of the Contract:
 - 1. Water treatment contractor's evidence of experience.
 - 2. Bacteriological laboratory's evidence of certification.
- B. Submit printed data for the following items under provisions of Operating and Maintenance Data paragraph in Section 230500:
 - 1. Disinfection Report:
 - a. Include the following:
 - Date issued.
 - Project name and location.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

Treatment Contractor's name, address, and phone number.
Type and form of disinfectant used.
Time and date of disinfectant injection start.
Time and date of disinfectant injection completion.
Test locations.
Initial and 24 hour disinfectant residuals in ppm for each outlet tested.
Time and date of flushing start.
Time and date of flushing completion.
Disinfectant residual after flushing in ppm for each outlet tested.

2. Bacteriological Report:

- a. Include the following:
 - Date issued.
 - Project name and location.
 - Laboratory's name, certification number, address and phone number.
 - Time and date of water sample collection.
 - Name of person collecting samples.
 - Test locations.
 - Time and date of laboratory test start.
 - Coliform bacteria test results for each Outlet tested. Certification that water conforms or fails to conform to bacterial standards of State and Federal Safe Drinking Water Act.
 - Bacteriologist's signature.

1.7 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect against damage and discoloration.
- B. Maintain caution labels on hazardous materials.
- C. Maintain storage room dry and with temperatures as uniform as possible between 60 deg.F and 80 deg.F.
- D. Do not store Caustic Soda directly on floor colder than 55 deg.F.

1.8 PROTECTING WORK OF OTHER TRADES

- A. Provide necessary signs, barricades, and notices to prevent any person from accidentally consuming water or disturbing system being treated.
- B. Protect against damage and discoloration caused by work of this Section.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 DISINFECTANT

- A. Free chlorine; liquid, powder, tablet, or gas.

2.2 ALKALI

- A. Caustic Soda or Soda Ash.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

2.3 ACID

- A. Hydrochloric type.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXISTING CONDITIONS

- A. Prior to starting work, verify that Domestic Water System is completed, flushed and clean.
- B. Prior to starting work, notify Construction Manager/General Contractor of any defects requiring correction.
- C. Do not start work until conditions are satisfactory.

3.2 PREPARATION OF WATER FOR TREATMENT

- A. Verify pH factor of water to be treated.
- B. If pH factor is less than 7.4, introduce sufficient alkali during disinfectant injection to produce 7.4 to 7.6 pH level.
- C. If pH factor is greater than 7.6, introduce sufficient acid during disinfectant injection to lower pH to 7.4 to 7.6 level.

3.3 SYSTEM TREATMENT

- A. Inject disinfectant throughout system to obtain 50 to 80 ppm residual.
- B. Starting at outlet closest to water sources, bleed water from each outlet until water produces odor of disinfectant. Repeat process at each outlet throughout system.
- C. Test for disinfectant residual at each of the following locations:
 - 1. Ends of piping runs.
 - 2. Remote outlets. (Ends of each multiple fixture branch line)
 - 3. Tanks and domestic water heaters.
 - 4. At least 15% of outlets on each floor as directed by Architect/Engineer.
- D. Maintain disinfectant in system for 24 hours.
- E. If resultant disinfectant residual test is less than 25 ppm, repeat System Treatment.

3.4 FLUSHING

- A. Flush disinfectant from entire system; permit no more than residual rate of supplied incoming water.

3.5 BACTERIOLOGICAL TEST

- A. Instruct Bacteriological Laboratory to take water samples no sooner than 24 hours after

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

flushing system.

- B. Take water samples at each of the following locations:
 - 1. Where water enters system.
 - 2. Ends of piping runs.
 - 3. Remote outlets.
 - 4. Tanks.
 - 5. At least 10% of outlets on each floor other than those used for testing disinfectant residual, where directed by Architect/Engineer, but in no case less than 2 outlets per floor.
- C. Analyze Water Samples in accordance with Standard Methods for the examination of Water & Waste Water, published by American Water Works Assoc., 6666 W. Quincy Ave., Denver, CO 80235.
- D. If Bacteriological Test proves water quality to be unacceptable, repeat System Treatment.

3.6 PRODUCT CLEANING & REPAIRING

- A. Including work of other trades, clean, repair and touch-up, or replace when directed, products which have been soiled, discolored, or damaged by work of this Section.
- B. Remove debris from Project Site upon work completion or sooner, if directed.

END OF SECTION 22 14 11

SECTION 221413 - FACILITY STORM DRAINAGE PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following storm drainage piping inside the building:
 - 1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
 - 2. Special pipe fittings.
- B. Related Sections include the following:

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. LLDPE: Linear, low-density polyethylene plastic.
- B. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
- C. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- D. TPE: Thermoplastic elastomer.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working-pressure, unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Storm Drainage Piping: 10-foot head of water.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For pipe, tube, fittings, and couplings.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Controlled-Flow Storm Drainage System: Include calculations, plans, and details.
- C. Field quality-control inspection and test reports.

D. Delegated-Design Submittal:

1. Design calculations and detailed fabrication and assembly of pipe anchors and alignment guides, hangers and supports for multiple pipes, expansion joints and loops, and attachments of the same to the building structure.
2. Locations of pipe anchors and alignment guides and expansion joints and loops.
3. Locations of and details for penetrations, including sleeves and sleeve seals for exterior walls, floors, basement, and foundation walls.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-drain" for plastic drain piping and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting, and joining materials.

2.3 HUBLESS CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301. All waste, vent, sewer and storm lines shall be soil pipe and fittings that conform to the requirements of CISPI Standard 301, ASTM A ** and shall be marked with the collective trademark of the Cast Soil Pipe Institute or Receive Prior approval of the engineer and manufactured by AB&I Foundry, Tyler Pipe, or Charlotte Pipe. In addition all Cast iron shall be American made and tested, no "non compliant" import cast iron will be permitted.
- A. CISPI, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. ANACO.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- b. Ideal
 - c. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
 - d. Tyler Pipe.
 2. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and CISPI 310.
 3. Description: Stainless-steel corrugated shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
 4. Listing: Couplings shall be listed by NSF International. Each coupling shall be embossed with the NSF seal.
- B. Heavy-Duty, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Husky HD 2000.
 - b. Clamp-All Corp HI-TORQ 80.
 - c. Ideal HD
 - d. Mission HW.
 - e. Tyler Pipe Widebody.
 2. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and ASTM C 1540.
 3. Description: Stainless-steel shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

2.4 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D 2665, drain, waste, and vent.

2.5 SPECIAL PIPE FITTINGS

- A. Flexible, Nonpressure Pipe Couplings: Comply with ASTM C 1173, elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear ring, ends of same sizes as piping to be joined, and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
 - b. Fernco, Inc.
 - c. Logan Clay Products Company (The).
 - d. Mission Rubber Co.
 - e. NDS, Inc.
 - f. Plastic Oddities, Inc.
 2. Sleeve Materials:
 - a. For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
 - b. For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- c. For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.
- B. Shielded Nonpressure Pipe Couplings: ASTM C 1460, elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
 - b. Mission Rubber Co.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXCAVATION

- A. Refer to Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

3.2 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Aboveground storm drainage piping shall be the following:
 - 1. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty shielded, stainless-steel couplings; and coupled joints.
- C. Underground storm drainage piping shall be the following (to 6" above finished floor):
 - 1. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
 - 2. Hub-and spigot cast-iron soil pipe, hub-and spigot cast-iron soil pipe fittings, neoprene rubber gasket, and compression joints.

3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Storm sewer and drainage piping outside the building are specified in Division 33 Section "Storm Utility Drainage Piping."
- B. Comply with SEI/ASCE 7 and with requirements for seismic-restraint devices in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- C. Basic piping installation requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- D. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building storm drains connect to building storm sewers. Cleanouts are specified in Division 22 Section "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- E. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in storm drainage force-main piping.
- F. Install cast-iron sleeve with water stop and mechanical sleeve seal at each service pipe penetration through foundation wall. Select number of interlocking rubber links required to make installation watertight. Sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Fire Plumbing."
- G. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
 - 1. Install encasement on underground piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- H. Make changes in direction for storm drainage piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- I. Lay buried building storm drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- J. Install storm drainage piping at the following minimum slopes, unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Building Storm Drain: 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 and larger.
 - 2. Horizontal Storm-Drainage Piping: 1 percent downward in direction of flow.
- K. Sleeves are not required for cast-iron soil piping passing through concrete slabs-on-grade if slab is without membrane waterproofing.
- L. Install underground PVC storm drainage piping according to ASTM D 2321.
- M. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

3.4 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Basic piping joint construction requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results Plumbing."
- B. Hubless Cast-Iron Soil Piping Coupled Joints: Join according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-coupling joints.
- C. PVC Nonpressure Piping Joints: Join piping according to ASTM D 2665.

3.5 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Seismic-restraint devices are specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Pipe hangers and supports are specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment." Install the following:
 - 1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
 - 2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs: According to the following:
 - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
 - b. Longer than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
 - c. Longer than 100 Feet, if indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
 - 3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
 - 4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- C. Install supports according to Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- D. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- E. Rod diameter may be reduced 1 size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.
- F. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 - 1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 2. NPS 3: 60 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 - 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 60 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
 - 4. NPS 6: 60 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
 - 5. NPS 8 to NPS 12: 60 inches with 7/8-inch rod.
 - 6. Spacing for 10-foot lengths may be increased to 10 feet. Spacing for fittings is limited to 60 inches.
- G. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet.
- H. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.6 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect interior storm drainage piping to exterior storm drainage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- C. Connect storm drainage piping to roof drains and storm drainage specialties.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in.
 - 2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Test storm drainage piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
 - 1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
 - 2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced storm drainage piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
 - 3. Test Procedure: Test storm drainage piping on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water. From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
 - 4. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
 - 5. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

3.8 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

END OF SECTION 221413

SECTION 221423 - STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following storm drainage piping specialties:
 - 1. Cleanouts.
 - 2. Roof drains.
 - 3. Miscellaneous storm drainage piping specialties.
 - 4. Flashing materials.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties" for backwater valves, floor drains, trench drains and channel drainage systems connected to sanitary sewer, air admittance valves, FOG disposal systems, grease interceptors and removal devices, oil interceptors, and solid interceptors.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. PUR: Polyurethane plastic.
- B. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of roof penetrations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CLEANOUTS

A. Exposed Metal Cleanouts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - d. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc
 - e. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - f. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
 - g. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for cast iron for cleanout test tee.
3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping
4. Body Material: Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
5. Closure: Countersunk, brass plug.
6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
7. Closure: Stainless-steel plug with seal.

B. Metal Floor Cleanouts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
 - b. Oatey.
 - c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - e. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - f. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
 - g. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
 - h. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for adjustable housing cleanout.
3. Size: Same as connected branch.
4. Type: Adjustable housing.
5. Body or Ferrule: Cast iron.
6. Clamping Device: Required.
7. Outlet Connection: Inside calk.
8. Closure: [Brass plug with tapered threads.
9. Adjustable Housing Material: Cast iron with threads.
10. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Stainless steel.
11. Frame and Cover Shape: Round.
12. Top Loading Classification: Heavy Duty.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

13. Riser: ASTM A 74, Service class, cast-iron drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.
14. Standard: ASME A112.3.1.
15. Size: Same as connected branch.
16. Housing: Stainless steel.
17. Closure: Stainless steel with seal.
18. Riser: Stainless-steel drainage pipe fitting to cleanout.

C. Cast-Iron Wall Cleanouts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - d. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc
 - e. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - f. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
 - g. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M. Include wall access.
3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
4. Body: Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
5. Closure: Countersunk, brass plug.
6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
7. Wall Access: Round, flat, chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel cover plate with screw.

2.2 ROOF DRAINS

A. Metal Roof Drains:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: See Schedule at end of this section for drain descriptions:
 - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - d. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc
 - e. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - f. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
 - g. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
3. Standard: ASME A112.21.2M.
4. Body Material Cast iron.
5. Combination Flashing Ring and Gravel Stop: Required.
6. Dome Material: Cast iron.
7. Extension Collars: Required.
8. Underdeck Clamp Required.
9. Sump Receiver: Required.

B. Conductor Nozzles:

1. Description: Bronze body with threaded inlet and bronze wall flange with mounting holes.
2. Size: Same as connected conductor.

2.3 FLASHING MATERIALS

- A. Elastic Membrane Sheet: ASTM D 4068, flexible, chlorinated polyethylene, 40-mil minimum thickness.
- B. Fasteners: Metal compatible with material and substrate being fastened.
- C. Metal Accessories: Sheet metal strips, clamps, anchoring devices, and similar accessory units required for installation; matching or compatible with material being installed.
- D. Bituminous Coating: SSPC-Paint 12, solvent-type, bituminous mastic.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Refer to Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing" for piping joining materials, joint construction, and basic installation requirements.
- B. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Size same as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
 2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
 3. Locate at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 100 feet for larger piping.
 4. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.
- C. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.
- D. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.
- E. Install roof drains at low points of roof areas according to roof membrane manufacturer's written installation instructions. Roofing materials are specified in Division 07.
 1. Install roof-drain flashing collar or flange so that there will be no leakage between drain and adjoining roofing. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
 2. Position roof drains for easy access and maintenance.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- F. Install manufactured, gray-iron downspout boots at grade with top 18 inches above grade. Secure to building wall.
- G. Install conductor nozzles at exposed bottom of conductors where they spill onto grade.
- H. Install escutcheons at wall, floor, and ceiling penetrations in exposed finished locations and within cabinets and millwork. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding pipe fittings.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

3.3 FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Fabricate flashing from single piece unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required. Join flashing according to the following if required:
 - 1. Lead Sheets: Burn joints of lead sheets 6.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0938-inch thickness or thicker. Solder joints of lead sheets 4.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0625-inch thickness or thinner.
- B. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors and roofs with waterproof membrane.
 - 1. Pipe Flashing: Sleeve type, matching pipe size, with minimum length of 10 inches, and skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around pipe.
 - 2. Sleeve Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around sleeve.
 - 3. Embedded Specialty Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around specialty.
- C. Set flashing on floors and roofs in solid coating of bituminous cement.
- D. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.
- E. Fabricate and install flashing and pans, sumps, and other drainage shapes.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.

Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 221423

SECTION 221513 - GENERAL-SERVICE COMPRESSED-AIR PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes piping and related specialties for general-service compressed-air systems operating at 200 psig or less.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 22 Section "General-Service Packaged Air Compressors and Receivers" for general-service air compressors and accessories.

1.3 SEISMIC REQUIREMENTS

- A. Component Importance Factor. All plumbing components shall be assigned a component importance factor. The component importance factor, I_p , shall be taken as 1.5 if any of the following conditions apply:
 - 1. The component is required to function for life-safety purposes after an earthquake.
 - 2. The component contains hazardous materials.
 - 3. The component is in or attached to an Occupancy Category IV structure and it is needed for continued operation of the facility or its failure could impair the continued operation of the facility.
- B. All other components shall be assigned a component importance factor, I_p , equal to 1.0.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. CR: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic rubber.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
- C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.
- D. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
- E. High-Pressure Compressed-Air Piping: System of compressed-air piping and specialties operating at pressures between 150 and 200 psig.

- F. Low-Pressure Compressed-Air Piping: System of compressed-air piping and specialties operating at pressures of 150 psig or less.

1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Plumbing equipment, hangers and supports shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7 and with the requirements specified in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
 - 1. For components with a seismic importance factor of 1.0 the term "withstand" means "the system will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
 - 2. For components with a seismic importance factor of 1.5 the term "withstand" means "the system will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the system will be fully operational after the seismic event."

1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Dielectric fittings.
 - 2. Flexible pipe connectors.
 - 3. Safety valves.
 - 4. Pressure regulators. Include rated capacities and operating characteristics.
 - 5. Automatic drain valves.
 - 6. Filters. Include rated capacities and operating characteristics.
 - 7. Quick couplings.
 - 8. Hose assemblies.
- B. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that plumbing equipment and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 22 Section "Mechanical Vibration and Seismic Controls." Include the following:
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- C. Brazing certificates.
- D. Qualification Data: For Installers.
- E. Field quality-control test reports.
- F. Operation and Maintenance Data: For general-service compressed-air piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Brazing: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications," or to AWS B2.2, "Standard for Brazing Procedure and Performance Qualification."
- B. ASME Compliance:
 - 1. Comply with ASME B31.1, "Power Piping," for high-pressure compressed-air piping.
 - 2. Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for low-pressure compressed-air piping.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPES, TUBES, AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L seamless, drawn-temper, water tube.
 - 1. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22, solder-joint pressure type or MSS SP-73, wrought copper with dimensions for brazed joints.
 - 2. Cast-Copper-Alloy Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150 or 300.
 - 3. Copper Unions: ASME B16.22 or MSS SP-123.
- B. Transition Couplings for Metal Piping: Metal coupling or other manufactured fitting same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to and ends compatible with, piping to be joined.

2.2 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for compressed-air piping system contents.
 - 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
 - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
 - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
- B. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- D. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing, unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 VALVES

- A. Metal Ball, Butterfly, Check, Gate, and Globe Valves: Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."

2.4 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements for Dielectric Fittings: Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with insulating material; suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature. Include threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.
- B. Dielectric Unions: Factory-fabricated union assembly, for 250-psig minimum working pressure at 180 deg F.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. EPCO Sales, Inc.
 - d. Hart Industries International, Inc.
 - e. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.

2.5 FLEXIBLE PIPE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
 - 2. Flexicraft Industries.
 - 3. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
 - 4. Mercer Rubber Co.
 - 5. Metraflex, Inc.
 - 6. Proco Products, Inc.
 - 7. Unaflex, Inc.
 - 8. Universal Metal Hose; a Hyspan Company
- B. Bronze-Hose Flexible Pipe Connectors: Corrugated-bronze tubing with bronze wire-braid covering and ends brazed to inner tubing.
 - 1. Working-Pressure Rating: 200 psig minimum.
 - 2. End Connections, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded copper pipe or plain-end copper tube.
 - 3. End Connections, NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged copper alloy.
- C. Stainless-Steel-Hose Flexible Pipe Connectors: Corrugated-stainless-steel tubing with stainless-steel wire-braid covering and ends welded to inner tubing.
 - 1. Working-Pressure Rating: 200 psig minimum.
 - 2. End Connections, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded steel pipe nipple.
 - 3. End Connections, NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged steel nipple.

2.6 SLEEVES

- A. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- B. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
 - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.

2.7 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. General Requirements: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with ID to closely fit around pipe and tube and OD that completely covers opening.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Escutcheons: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
- C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Escutcheons: With set screw.
 - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.
- D. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Escutcheons: With concealed hinge and set screw.
 - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.
- E. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Escutcheons: With set screw or spring clips and chrome-plated finish.
- F. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Escutcheons: With concealed hinge, set screw or spring clips, and chrome-plated finish.
- G. One-Piece, Floor-Plate Escutcheons: Cast iron.
- H. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Escutcheons: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.

2.8 SPECIALTIES

- A. Safety Valves: ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, "Pressure Vessels," construction; National Board certified, labeled, and factory sealed; constructed of bronze body with poppet-type safety valve for compressed-air service.
 - 1. Pressure Settings: Higher than discharge pressure and same or lower than receiver pressure rating.
- B. Air-Line Pressure Regulators: Diaphragm or pilot operated, bronze body, direct acting, spring-loaded manual pressure-setting adjustment, and rated for 200-psig minimum inlet pressure, unless otherwise indicated.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- C. Automatic Drain Valves: Stainless-steel body and internal parts, rated for 200-psig minimum working pressure, capable of automatic discharge of collected condensate
- D. Coalescing Filters: Coalescing type with activated carbon capable of removing water and oil aerosols; with color-change dye to indicate when carbon is saturated and warning light to indicate when selected maximum pressure drop has been exceeded
- E. Mechanical Filters: Two-stage, mechanical-separation-type, air-line filters. Equip with deflector plates, resin-impregnated-ribbon-type filters with edge filtration, and drain cock

2.9 QUICK COUPLINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Aeroquip Corporation; Eaton Corp.
 - 2. Bowes Manufacturing Inc.
 - 3. Foster Manufacturing, Inc.
 - 4. Milton Industries, Inc.
 - 5. Parker Hannifin Corp.; Fluid Connectors Group; Quick Coupling Div.
 - 6. Rectus Corp.
 - 7. Schrader-Bridgeport; Amflo Div.
 - 8. Schrader-Bridgeport/Standard Thomson.
 - 9. Snap-Tite, Inc.; Quick Disconnect & Valve Division.
 - 10. TOMCO Products Inc.
 - 11. Tuthill Corporation; Hansen Coupling Div.
- B. General Requirements for Quick Couplings: Assembly with locking-mechanism feature for quick connection and disconnection of compressed-air hose.
- C. Automatic-Shutoff Quick Couplings: Straight-through brass body with O-ring or gasket seal and stainless-steel or nickel-plated-steel operating parts.
 - 1. Socket End: With one-way valve and threaded inlet for connection to piping or threaded hose fitting.
 - 2. Plug End: Straight-through type with barbed outlet for attaching hose.
- D. Valveless Quick Couplings: Straight-through brass body with stainless-steel or nickel-plated-steel operating parts.
 - 1. Socket End: With O-ring or gasket seal, without valve, and with barbed inlet for attaching hose.
 - 2. Plug End: With barbed outlet for attaching hose.

2.10 GROUT

- A. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.

1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SEISMIC REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.2 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Compressed-Air Piping between Air Compressors and Receivers: Use the following piping materials for each size range:
 1. NPS 2 and Smaller: Type L, copper tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed joints.
- B. Low-Pressure Compressed-Air Distribution Piping: Use[one of] the following piping materials for each size range:
 1. NPS 2 and Smaller: Type L, copper tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed or soldered joints.
- C. Drain Piping: Use[one of] the following piping materials:
 1. NPS 2 and Smaller: Type L copper tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed or soldered joints.

3.3 VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. General-Duty Valves: Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping" for metal general-duty valves. Use metal valves, unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Metal General-Duty Valves: Use valve types specified in "Valve Applications" Article in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping" according to the following:
 - a. Low-Pressure Compressed Air: Valve types specified for low-pressure compressed air.
 - b. Equipment Isolation NPS 2 and Smaller: Safety-exhaust, copper-alloy ball valve with exhaust vent and pressure rating at least as great as piping system operating pressure.

3.4 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of compressed-air piping. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, air-compressor sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal and to coordinate with other services occupying that space.
- E. Install piping adjacent to equipment and machines to allow service and maintenance.
- F. Install air and drain piping with 1 percent slope downward in direction of flow.
- G. Install nipples, flanges, unions, transition and special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings same as or higher than system pressure rating, unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Equipment and Specialty Flanged Connections:
 - 1. Use steel companion flange with gasket for connection to steel pipe.
 - 2. Use cast-copper-alloy companion flange with gasket and brazed joint for connection to copper tube. Do not use soldered joints for connection to air compressors or to equipment or machines producing shock or vibration.
- I. Flanged joints may be used instead of specified joint for any piping or tubing system.
- J. Extended-tee outlets with brazed branch connection may be used for copper tubing, within extruded-tee connection diameter to run tube diameter ratio for tube type, according to Extruded Tee Connections Sizes and Wall Thickness for Copper Tube (Inches) Table in ASTM F 2104.
- K. Install eccentric reducers where compressed-air piping is reduced in direction of flow, with bottoms of both pipes and reducer fitting flush.
- L. Install branch connections to compressed-air mains from top of main. Provide drain leg and drain trap at end of each main and branch and at low points.
- M. Install thermometer and pressure gage on discharge piping from each air compressor and on each receiver. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- N. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- O. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- P. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

- Q. Install seismic restraints on piping. Seismic-restraint devices are specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.5 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- D. Brazed Joints for Copper Tubing: Join according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter.
- E. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Join according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- F. Extruded-Tee Outlets for Copper Tubing: Form branches according to ASTM F 2014, with tools recommended by procedure manufacturer, and using operators qualified according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
- G. Dissimilar Metal Piping Material Joints: Use dielectric fittings.

3.6 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. General-Duty Valves: Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- B. Install shutoff valves and unions or flanged joints at compressed-air piping to air compressors.
- C. Install shutoff valve at inlet to each automatic drain valve, filter, lubricator, and pressure regulator.
- D. Install check valves to maintain correct direction of compressed-air flow to and from compressed-air piping specialties and equipment.

3.7 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- B. NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric unions.

3.8 FLEXIBLE PIPE CONNECTOR INSTALLATION

- A. Install flexible pipe connectors in discharge piping and in inlet air piping from remote air-inlet filter of each air compressor.
- B. Install bronze-hose flexible pipe connectors in copper compressed-air tubing.
- C. Install stainless-steel-hose flexible pipe connectors in steel compressed-air piping.

3.9 SPECIALTY INSTALLATION

- A. Install safety valves on receivers in quantity and size to relieve at least the capacity of connected air compressors.
- B. Install air-main pressure regulators in compressed-air piping at or near air compressors.
- C. Install air-line pressure regulators in branch piping to equipment.
- D. Install automatic drain valves on aftercoolers, receivers, and dryers. Discharge condensate onto nearest floor drain.
- E. Install coalescing filters in compressed-air piping at or near air compressors and upstream from mechanical filters.
- F. Install mechanical filters in compressed-air piping at or near air compressors and downstream from coalescing filters.
- G. Install quick couplings at piping terminals for hose connections.

3.10 CONNECTIONS

- A. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment and machine.

3.11 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- B. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.
- C. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs using galvanized-steel pipe.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, gypsum board partitions, and concrete floor and roof slabs.
 - 1. Wall Penetrations: Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.

2. Floor Penetrations: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
- E. Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
- F. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use the following sleeve materials:
 1. Steel Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than NPS 6.
 - a. Seal space outside of sleeve fittings with grout.
- G. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

3.12 ESCUTCHEON INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors according to the following:
 1. New Piping:
 - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One piece, deep pattern.
 - b. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - d. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - e. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One piece, cast brass.
 - f. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece floor plate.

3.13 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment " for seismic-restraint devices.
- B. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for pipe hanger and support devices.
- C. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.
- D. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
 1. 100 Feet or Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
 2. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
- E. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- F. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- G. Support horizontal piping within 12 inches of each fitting and coupling.
- H. Rod diameter may be reduced 1 size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.
- I. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 - 1. NPS 1/4: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 2. NPS 3/8 and NPS 1/2: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 3. NPS 3/4: 84 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 4. NPS 1: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 5. NPS 1-1/4: 108 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 6. NPS 1-1/2: 10 feet with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 7. NPS 2: 11 feet with 3/8-inch rod.
- J. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.

3.14 LABELING AND IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install identifying labels and devices for general-service compressed-air piping, valves, and specialties. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.15 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform field tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Piping Leak Tests for Metal Compressed-Air Piping: Test new and modified parts of existing piping. Cap and fill general-service compressed-air piping with oil-free dry air or gaseous nitrogen to pressure of 50 psig above system operating pressure, but not less than 150 psig. Isolate test source and let stand for four hours to equalize temperature. Refill system, if required, to test pressure; hold for two hours with no drop in pressure.
 - 2. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 3. Inspect filters and pressure regulators for proper operation.
- C. Prepare test reports.

END OF SECTION 221513

SECTION 223100 - DOMESTIC WATER SOFTENERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes commercial water softeners.
 - 1. Chemicals.
 - 2. Water testing kits.

1.3 SEISMIC REQUIREMENTS

- A. Component Importance Factor. All plumbing components shall be assigned a component importance factor. The component importance factor, I_p , shall be taken as 1.5 if any of the following conditions apply:
 - 1. The component is required to function for life-safety purposes after an earthquake.
 - 2. The component contains hazardous materials.
 - 3. The component is in or attached to an Occupancy Category IV structure and it is needed for continued operation of the facility or its failure could impair the continued operation of the facility.
- B. All other components shall be assigned a component importance factor, I_p , equal to 1.0.
- C. Seismic Performance: Plumbing equipment, hangers and supports shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7 and with the requirements specified in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
 - 1. For components with a seismic importance factor of 1.0 the term "withstand" means "the system will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
 - 2. For components with a seismic importance factor of 1.5 the term "withstand" means "the system will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the system will be fully operational after the seismic event."

1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
- B. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- C. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
- D. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Water Softeners. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
 - 2. Water testing kits.
- B. Shop Drawings: For water softeners. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and connections to piping systems.
 - 1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
- A. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that plumbing equipment and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 22 Section "Mechanical Vibration and Seismic Controls." Include the following:
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- B. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by manufacturers certifying that water softeners comply with requirements.
- C. Source quality-control test reports.
- D. Field quality-control test reports.
- E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For water softeners to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- F. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.
- G. Maintenance service agreement.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of water softeners and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Division 01 Section "Product Requirements."

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. ASME Compliance for Steel Tanks: Fabricate and label mineral tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 01, where indicated.
- D. ASME Compliance for FRP Tanks: Fabricate and label mineral tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section X, where indicated.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of water softener that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures of mineral and brine tanks.
 - b. Faulty operation of controls.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.
 - d. Attrition loss of resin exceeding 3 percent per year.
 - e. Mineral washed out of system during service run or backwashing period.
 - f. Effluent turbidity greater and color darker than incoming water.
 - g. Fouling of underdrain system, gravel, and resin, with turbidity or by dirt, rust, or scale from softener equipment or soft water, while operating according to manufacturer's written operating instructions.
 - 2. Commercial Water Softener, Warranty Period: From date of Substantial Completion.
 - a. Mineral Tanks: 10 years.
 - b. Brine Tanks: Five years.
 - c. Controls: 10 years.
 - d. Underdrain Systems: Five years.

1.9 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Maintenance: Submit four copies of manufacturer's "Agreement for Continued Service and Maintenance," before Substantial Completion, for Owner's acceptance. Offer terms and conditions for furnishing chemicals and providing continued testing and servicing to include replacing materials and equipment. Include one-year term of agreement with option for one-year renewal.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 COMMERCIAL WATER SOFTENERS

- A. Description: Factory-assembled, pressure-type water softener.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Culligan International Company.
 - b. Kineticco Incorporated.
 - c. Water & Power Technologies, Inc.
 - d. Northstar
 - e. CSI Water Treatment Systems, Inc.
 - f. ECI
 - 2. Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components--Health Effects."
 - 3. Configuration: Twin unit with two mineral tanks and one brine tank, factory mounted on skid.
 - 4. Mineral Tanks: Steel, electric welded; pressure-vessel quality.
 - a. Fabricate supports and attachments to tank with reinforcement strong enough to resist tank movement during seismic event when tank supports are anchored to building structure.
 - b. Construction: Fabricated and stamped to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, "Pressure Vessels."
 - c. Pressure Rating 125 psig > minimum.
 - d. Wetted Components: Suitable for water temperatures from 40 to at least 100 deg F.
 - e. Freeboard: 50 percent minimum for backwash expansion above normal resin bed level.
 - f. Handholes: 4 inches round or 4 by 6 inches elliptical, in top head and lower sidewall of tanks 30 inches and smaller in diameter.
 - g. Manhole: 11 by 15 inches in top head of tanks larger than 30 inches in diameter.
 - h. Support Legs or Skirt: Constructed of structural steel, welded to tank before testing and labeling.
 - i. Finish: Hot-dip galvanized on exterior and interior of tank after fabrication unless tank is stainless steel.
 - j. Finish: Exterior of tank spray painted with rust-resistant prime coat, 2- to 3-mil dry film thickness. Interior sandblasted and lined with epoxy-polyamide coating, 8- to 10-mil dry film thickness.

- k. Upper Distribution System: Single, point type, fabricated from galvanized-steel pipe and fittings.
 - l. Lower Distribution System: Hub and radial-arm or header-lateral type; fabricated from PVC pipe and fittings with individual, fine-slotted, nonclogging PE strainers; arranged for even flow distribution through resin bed.
 - m. Liner: PE, ABS, or other material suitable for potable water.
5. Controls: Fully automatic; factory mounted on unit and factory wired.
- a. Adjustable duration of various regeneration steps.
 - b. Push-button start and complete manual operation.
 - c. Electric time clock and switch for fully automatic operation, adjustable to initiate regeneration at any hour of day and any day of week or at fixed intervals.
 - d. Sequence of Operation: Program multiport pilot-control valve to automatically pressure-actuate main operating valve through steps of regeneration and return to service.
 - e. Pointer on pilot-control valve shall indicate cycle of operation.
 - f. Means of manual operation of pilot-control valve if power fails.
 - g. Main Operating Valves: Industrial, automatic, multiport, diaphragm type with the following features:
 - 1) Slow opening and closing, nonslam operation.
 - 2) Diaphragm guiding on full perimeter from fully open to fully closed.
 - 3) Isolated dissimilar metals within valve.
 - 4) Self-adjusting, internal, automatic brine injector that draws brine and rinses at constant rate independent of pressure.
 - 5) Valve for single mineral-tank unit with internal automatic bypass of raw water during regeneration.
 - 6) Sampling cocks for soft water.
 - 7) Special tools are not required for service.
 - h. Flow Control: Automatic, to control backwash and flush rates over wide variations in operating pressures, and that does not require field adjustments.
 - 1) Meter Control: Equip each mineral tank with signal-register-head water meter that will produce electrical signal indicating need for regeneration on reaching hand-set total in gallons. Design so signal will continue until reset.
 - 2) Demand-Initiated Control: Equip single mineral-tank units with automatic-reset-head water meter that electrically activates cycle controller to initiate regeneration at preset total in gallons. Design so head automatically resets to preset total in gallons for next service run.
 - 3) Demand-Initiated Control: Equip each mineral tank of twin mineral-tank units with automatic-reset-head water meters that electrically activate cycle controllers to initiate regeneration at preset total in gallons. Design so heads automatically reset to preset total in gallons for next service run. Include electrical lockout to prevent simultaneous regeneration of both tanks.
 - 4) Demand-Initiated Control: Equip each mineral tank of twin mineral-tank units with automatic-reset-head water meter in common outlet header that electrically activates cycle controller to automatically regenerate one mineral tank at preset total in gallons and divert flow to other tank. Set to

- repeat with other tank. Include electrical lockout to prevent simultaneous regeneration of both tanks.
 - 5) Demand-Initiated Control: Equip each mineral tank of multiple mineral-tank units with automatic-reset-head water meters that electrically activate cycle controllers to automatically regenerate at preset total in gallons. Design so heads automatically reset to preset total in gallons for next service run. Include electrical lockouts to prevent simultaneous regeneration of more than one tank.
 - 6) Demand-Initiated Control: Equip each mineral tank of multiple mineral-tank units with automatic-reset-head water meter in common outlet header that electrically activates cycle controller to automatically regenerate one mineral tank at preset total in gallons and divert flow to other tanks. Set to repeat with other tanks. Include electrical lockouts to prevent simultaneous regeneration of more than one tank.
6. Brine Tank: Combination measuring and wet-salt storing system.
- a. Tank and Cover Material: Fiberglass, 3/16 inch thick; or molded PE, 3/8 inch thick.
 - b. Brine Valve: Float operated and plastic fitted for automatic control of brine withdrawn and freshwater refill.
 - c. Size: Large enough for at least four regenerations at full salting.
7. Factory-Installed Accessories:
- a. Piping, valves, tubing, and drains.
 - b. Sampling cocks.
 - c. Main-operating-valve position indicators.
 - d. Water meters.

2.3 WATER TESTING SETS

- A. Description: Manufacturer's standard water-hardness testing apparatus and chemicals with testing procedure instructions. Include metal container suitable for wall mounting.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Hydrostatically test mineral tanks before shipment to minimum of one and one-half times pressure rating.
- B. Prepare test reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Install concrete bases of dimensions indicated for commercial water softeners. Refer to Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."

1. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around full perimeter of base.
 2. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 4. Install anchor bolts to elevation required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
- B. Cast-in-place concrete materials and placement requirements are specified in Division 03.

3.2 WATER SOFTENER INSTALLATION

- A. Install commercial water softener equipment on concrete bases, level and plumb. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible. Anchor mineral and brine tanks and floor-mounting accessories to substrate.
- B. Comply with SEI/ASCE 7 and with requirements for seismic-restraint devices in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- C. Install brine lines and fittings furnished by equipment manufacturer but not specified to be factory installed.
- D. Prepare mineral-tank distribution system and underbed for minerals and place specified mineral into mineral tanks.
- E. Install water testing sets mounted on wall, unless otherwise indicated, and near water softeners.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Make piping connections between water-softener-unit headers and dissimilar-metal water piping with dielectric fittings. Dielectric fittings are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- D. Install shutoff valves on raw-water inlet and soft-water outlet piping of each mineral tank, and on inlet and outlet headers.
1. Metal general-duty valves are specified in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
 2. Plastic valves are specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping."
 3. Exception: Water softeners with factory-installed shutoff valves at locations indicated.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- E. Install pressure gages on raw-water inlet and soft-water outlet piping of each mineral tank. Pressure gages are specified in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
 - 1. Exception: Water softeners with factory-installed pressure gages at locations indicated.
 - 2. Exception: Water softeners in hot-water service.
- F. Install valved bypass water piping around water softeners.
 - 1. Metal general-duty valves are specified in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
 - 2. Water piping is specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping."
 - 3. Exception: Household water softeners.
 - 4. Exception: Water softeners in hot-water service.
- G. Install drains as indirect wastes to spill into open drains or over floor drains.
- H. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- I. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust field-assembled components and equipment installation, including connections, and to assist in field testing. Report results in writing.
- B. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
 - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation.
 - 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Remove and replace malfunctioning water softeners that do not pass tests and inspections and retest as specified above.

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Add water to brine tanks and fill with salt.
 - 1. Commercial Water Softeners: Food-grade salt pellets.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- C. Sample water softener effluent after startup and at three consecutive seven-day intervals (total of four samples), and prepare certified test reports for required water performance characteristics. Comply with the following:
 - 1. ASTM D 859, "Test Method for Silica in Water."
 - 2. ASTM D 1067, "Test Methods for Acidity or Alkalinity of Water."
 - 3. ASTM D 1068, "Test Methods for Iron in Water."
 - 4. ASTM D 1126, "Test Method for Hardness in Water."
 - 5. ASTM D 1129, "Terminology Relating to Water."
 - 6. ASTM D 3370, "Practices for Sampling Water from Closed Conduits."

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain water softeners. Refer to Division 01 "Demonstration and Training" Section

END OF SECTION 223100

SECTION 223400 - FUEL-FIRED, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Commercial, atmospheric, gas-fired, storage, domestic-water heaters.
 - 2. Commercial, gas-fired, high-efficiency direct vent, storage, domestic-water heaters.
 - 3. Domestic-water heater accessories.
 - 4. Water heaters to come with orifice sized for the site elevation.

1.3 SEISMIC REQUIREMENTS

- A. Component Importance Factor: All plumbing components shall be assigned a component importance factor. The component importance factor, I_p , shall be taken as 1.5 if any of the following conditions apply:
 - 1. The component is required to function for life-safety purposes after an earthquake.
 - 2. The component contains hazardous materials.
 - 3. The component is in or attached to an Occupancy Category IV structure and it is needed for continued operation of the facility or its failure could impair the continued operation of the facility.
- B. All other components shall be assigned a component importance factor, I_p , equal to 1.0.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Plumbing equipment, hangers and supports shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7 and with the requirements specified in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
 - 1. For components with a seismic importance factor of 1.0 the term "withstand" means "the system will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
 - 2. For components with a seismic importance factor of 1.5 the term "withstand" means "the system will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the system will be fully operational after the seismic event."

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type and size of domestic-water heater indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. LEED Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data for Prerequisite EA 2: Documentation indicating that units comply with applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 7, "Service Water Heating."
- C. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of domestic-water heater, from manufacturer.
- C. Domestic-Water Heater Labeling: Certified and labeled by testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Source quality-control reports.
- E. Field quality-control reports.
- F. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

- B. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Fabricate and label fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters to comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
- C. ASME Compliance:
 - 1. Where ASME-code construction is indicated, fabricate and label commercial, domestic-water heater storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
 - 2. Where ASME-code construction is indicated, fabricate and label commercial, finned-tube, domestic-water heaters to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IV.
- D. NSF Compliance: Fabricate and label equipment components that will be in contact with potable water to comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects."

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including storage tank and supports.
 - b. Faulty operation of controls.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.
 - 2. Warranty Periods: From date of Substantial Completion.
 - a. Commercial, Gas-Fired, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:
 - 1) Storage Tank: Five years.
 - 2) Controls and Other Components: Two year(s).
 - b. Compression Tanks: Five years.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- A. Commercial, Gas-Fired, High-Efficiency Direct Vent, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. AERCO International, Inc.
 - b. Lochinvar Corporation.

- c. PVI Industries, LLC.
 - d. RBI Water Heaters; a Mestek company.
 - e. Smith, A. O. Water Products Co.; a division of A. O. Smith Corporation.
 - f. State Industries.
 - g. Weben-Jarco, Inc.
2. Standard: ANSI Z21.10.3/CSA 4.3.
 3. Description: Manufacturer's proprietary design to provide at least 88 percent combustion efficiency at optimum operating conditions.
 4. Storage-Tank Construction: ASME-code steel with 150-psig minimum working-pressure rating.
 - a. Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank. Attach tappings to tank before testing.
 - 1) NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
 - 2) NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
 - b. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
 - c. Lining: Glass complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining into and through tank fittings and outlets.
5. Factory-Installed Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
 - a. Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
 - b. Dip Tube: Required unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
 - c. Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal complying with ASSE 1005.
 - d. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1. Surround entire storage tank except connections and controls.
 - e. Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
 - f. Burner or Heat Exchanger: Comply with UL 795 or approved testing agency requirements for gas-fired, high-efficiency, domestic-water heaters and natural-gas fuel.
 - g. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
 - h. Safety Controls: Automatic, high-temperature-limit and low-water cutoff devices or systems.
 - i. Combination Temperature-and-Pressure Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4-M. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than domestic-water heater working-pressure rating. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
 6. Direct-vent System: Manufacture's standard through-wall or roof, double channel vent assembly with outside intake/exhaust screen. See drawings on vent locations room or wall.

B. Capacity and Characteristics: See drawings.

2.2 WATER HEATER ACCESSORIES

A. Domestic-Water Compression Tanks:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Amtrol Inc.
 - b. Smith, A. O. Water Products Co.; a division of A. O. Smith Corporation.
 - c. State Industries.
 - d. Taco, Inc.
 - e. Zilmet
2. Description: Steel, pressure-rated tank constructed with welded joints and factory-installed butyl-rubber diaphragm. Include air precharge to minimum system-operating pressure at tank.
3. Construction:
 - a. Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel, welded to tank before testing and labeling. Include ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
 - b. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
 - c. Air-Charging Valve: Factory installed.
4. Capacity and Characteristics: See drawings
 - a. Working-Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - b. Capacity Acceptable: See drawings 4 gallon minimum.
 - c. Air Precharge Pressure:

B. Drain Pans: Corrosion-resistant metal with raised edge. Comply with ANSI/CSA LC 3. Include dimensions not less than base of domestic-water heater, and include drain outlet not less than NPS 3/4 with ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads or with ASME B1.20.7 garden-hose threads.

C. Piping-Type Heat Traps: Field-fabricated piping arrangement according to ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 or ASHRAE 90.2.

D. Heat-Trap Fittings: ASHRAE 90.2.

E. Manifold Kits: Domestic-water heater manufacturer's factory-fabricated inlet and outlet piping for field installation, for multiple domestic-water heater installation. Include ball-, butterfly-, or gate-type shutoff valves to isolate each domestic-water heater and calibrated balancing valves to provide balanced flow through each domestic-water heater.

1. Comply with requirements for ball-, butterfly-, or gate-type shutoff valves specified in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
2. Comply with requirements for balancing valves specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

F. Gas Shutoff Valves: ANSI Z21.15/CSA 9.1-M, manually operated. Furnish for installation in piping.

- G. Gas Pressure Regulators: ANSI Z21.18/CSA 6.3, appliance type. Include required pressure regulators as required to match gas supply and equipment being served.
- H. Automatic Gas Valves: ANSI Z21.21/CSA 6.5, appliance, electrically operated, on-off automatic valve.
- I. Combination Temperature-and-Pressure Relief Valves: Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than domestic-water heater working-pressure rating. Select relief valves with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
 - 1. Gas-Fired, Domestic-Water Heaters: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4-M.
- J. Pressure Relief Valves: Include pressure setting less than domestic-water heater working-pressure rating.
 - 1. Gas-Fired, Domestic-Water Heaters: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4-M.
- K. Vacuum Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4-M.
- L. Domestic-Water Heater Stands: Manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel stand for floor mounting, capable of supporting domestic-water heater and water. Provide dimension that will support bottom of domestic-water heater a minimum of 18 inches above the floor.
- M. Domestic-Water Heater Mounting Brackets: Manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel bracket for wall mounting, capable of supporting domestic-water heater and water.

2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect assembled domestic-water heaters and storage tanks specified to be ASME-code construction, according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- B. Hydrostatically test domestic-water heaters and storage tanks to minimum of one and one-half times pressure rating before shipment.
- C. Domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections. Comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements" for retesting and reinspecting requirements and Division 01 Section "Execution" for requirements for correcting the Work.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 WATER HEATER INSTALLATION

- A. Commercial, Domestic-Water Heater Mounting: Install commercial domestic-water heaters on concrete base. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Division 03 Section "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."

1. Exception: Omit concrete bases for commercial domestic-water heaters if installation on stand, bracket, suspended platform, or directly on floor is indicated.
 2. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
 3. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible.
 4. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
 5. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 6. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 7. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 8. Anchor domestic-water heaters to substrate.
- B. Install domestic-water heaters level and plumb, according to layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.
1. Install shutoff valves on domestic-water-supply piping to domestic-water heaters and on domestic-hot-water outlet piping. Comply with requirements for shutoff valves specified in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- C. Install gas-fired, domestic-water heaters according to NFPA 54.
1. Install gas shutoff valves on gas supply piping to gas-fired, domestic-water heaters without shutoff valves.
 2. Install gas pressure regulators on gas supplies to gas-fired, domestic-water heaters without gas pressure regulators if gas pressure regulators are required to reduce gas pressure at burner.
 3. Install automatic gas valves on gas supplies to gas-fired, domestic-water heaters if required for operation of safety control.
 4. Comply with requirements for gas shutoff valves, gas pressure regulators, and automatic gas valves specified in Division 23 Section "Facility Natural-Gas Piping."
- D. Install commercial domestic-water heaters with seismic-restraint devices. Comply with SEI/ASCE 7 and with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- E. Install combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves in top portion of storage tanks. Use relief valves with sensing elements that extend into tanks. Extend commercial-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
- F. Install combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves in water piping for domestic-water heaters without storage. Extend commercial-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
- G. Install water-heater drain piping as indirect waste to spill by positive air gap into open drains or over floor drains. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in water piping for domestic-water heaters that do not have tank drains. Comply with requirements for hose-end drain valves specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

- H. Install thermometer on outlet piping of domestic-water heaters. Comply with requirements for thermometers specified in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- I. Assemble and install inlet and outlet piping manifold kits for multiple domestic-water heaters. Fabricate, modify, or arrange manifolds for balanced water flow through each domestic-water heater. Include shutoff valve and thermometer in each domestic-water heater inlet and outlet, and throttling valve in each domestic-water heater outlet. Comply with requirements for valves specified in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping," and comply with requirements for thermometers specified in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- J. Install piping-type heat traps on inlet and outlet piping of domestic-water heater storage tanks without integral or fitting-type heat traps.
- K. Fill domestic-water heaters with water.
- L. Charge domestic-water compression tanks with air.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for domestic-water piping specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping."
- B. Comply with requirements for gas piping specified in Division 23 Section "Facility Natural-Gas Piping."
- C. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters, allow space for service and maintenance of water heaters. Arrange piping for easy removal of domestic-water heaters.
- E. Install a brass nipple fitting on the inlet and outlet of all water heaters.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
 - 2. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper operation.

4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections. Comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements" for retesting and reinspecting requirements and Division 01 Section "Execution" for requirements for correcting the Work.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain domestic-water heaters.

END OF SECTION 223400

SECTION 224000 - PLUMBING FIXTURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following conventional plumbing fixtures and related components:

1. Faucets for lavatories bathtub/showers showers and sinks.
2. Flushometers.
3. Toilet seats.
4. Protective shielding guards.
5. Fixture supports.
6. Water closets.
7. Urinals.
8. Lavatories.
9. Commercial sinks.
10. Service sinks.
11. Owner-furnished fixtures.

- B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 10 Section "Toilet, Bath, and Laundry Accessories."
2. Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for backflow preventers, floor drains, and specialty fixtures not included in this Section.
3. Division 22 Section "Emergency Plumbing Fixtures."
4. Division 22 Section "Drinking Fountains and Water Coolers."

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Accessible Fixture: Plumbing fixture that can be approached, entered, and used by people with disabilities.
- B. Cast Polymer: Cast-filled-polymer-plastic material. This material includes cultured-marble and solid-surface materials.
- C. Cultured Marble: Cast-filled-polymer-plastic material with surface coating.
- D. Fitting: Device that controls the flow of water into or out of the plumbing fixture. Fittings specified in this Section include supplies and stops, faucets and spouts, shower heads and tub spouts, drains and tailpieces, and traps and waste pipes. Piping and general-duty valves are included where indicated.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- E. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.
- F. PMMA: Polymethyl methacrylate (acrylic) plastic.
- G. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- H. Solid Surface: Nonporous, homogeneous, cast-polymer-plastic material with heat-, impact-, scratch-, and stain-resistance qualities.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of plumbing fixture indicated. Include selected fixture and trim, fittings, accessories, appliances, appurtenances, equipment, and supports. Indicate materials and finishes, dimensions, construction details, and flow-control rates.
- B. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Operation and Maintenance Data: For plumbing fixtures to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- D. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain plumbing fixtures, faucets, and other components of each category through one source from a single manufacturer.
 - 1. Exception: If fixtures, faucets, or other components are not available from a single manufacturer, obtain similar products from other manufacturers specified for that category.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in ICC A117.1, "Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities"; Public Law 90-480, "Architectural Barriers Act"; and Public Law 101-336, "Americans with Disabilities Act"; for plumbing fixtures for people with disabilities.
- D. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in Public Law 102-486, "Energy Policy Act," about water flow and consumption rates for plumbing fixtures.
- E. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components--Health Effects," for fixture materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- F. Select combinations of fixtures and trim, faucets, fittings, and other components that are compatible.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- G. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for plumbing fixtures:
1. Enameled, Cast-Iron Fixtures: ASME A112.19.1M.
 2. Porcelain-Enameled, Formed-Steel Fixtures: ASME A112.19.4M.
 3. Slip-Resistant Bathing Surfaces: ASTM F 462.
 4. Solid-Surface-Material Lavatories and Sinks: ANSI/ICPA SS-1.
 5. Stainless-Steel Residential Sinks: ASME A112.19.3.
 6. Vitreous-China Fixtures: ASME A112.19.2M.
 7. Water-Closet, Flushometer Tank Trim: ASSE 1037.
 8. Whirlpool Bathtub Fittings: ASME A112.19.8M.
- H. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for lavatory and sink faucets:
1. Backflow Protection Devices for Faucets with Side Spray: ASME A112.18.3M.
 2. Backflow Protection Devices for Faucets with Hose-Thread Outlet: ASME A112.18.3M.
 3. Diverter Valves for Faucets with Hose Spray: ASSE 1025.
 4. Faucets: ASME A112.18.1.
 5. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1011.
 6. Hose-Coupling Threads: ASME B1.20.7.
 7. Integral, Atmospheric Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1001.
 8. NSF Potable-Water Materials: NSF 61.
 9. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1.
 10. Sensor-Actuated Faucets and Electrical Devices: UL 1951.
 11. Supply Fittings: ASME A112.18.1.
 12. Brass Waste Fittings: ASME A112.18.2.
 13. NSF61 Appendage G-AB 1953. Lead free potable drinking faucets.
- I. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for bathtub/shower and shower faucets:
1. Backflow Protection Devices for Hand-Held Showers: ASME A112.18.3M.
 2. Combination, Pressure-Equalizing and Thermostatic-Control Antiscald Faucets: ASSE 1016.
 3. Deck-Mounted Bath/Shower Transfer Valves: ASME 18.7.
 4. Faucets: ASME A112.18.1.
 5. Hand-Held Showers: ASSE 1014.
 6. High-Temperature-Limit Controls for Thermal-Shock-Preventing Devices: ASTM F 445.
 7. Hose-Coupling Threads: ASME B1.20.7.
 8. Manual-Control Antiscald Faucets: ASTM F 444.
 9. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1.
 10. Pressure-Equalizing-Control Antiscald Faucets: ASTM F 444 and ASSE 1016.
 11. Sensor-Actuated Faucets and Electrical Devices: UL 1951.
 12. Thermostatic-Control Antiscald Faucets: ASTM F 444 and ASSE 1016.
- J. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous fittings:
1. Atmospheric Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1001.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

2. Brass and Copper Supplies: ASME A112.18.1.
3. Dishwasher Air-Gap Fittings: ASSE 1021.
4. Manual-Operation Flushometers: ASSE 1037.
5. Plastic Tubular Fittings: ASTM F 409.
6. Brass Waste Fittings: ASME A112.18.2.
7. Sensor-Operation Flushometers: ASSE 1037 and UL 1951.
8. NSF61 Appendage G-AB 1953. Lead free potable drinking faucets.

K. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:

1. Disposers: ASSE 1008 and UL 430.
2. Dishwasher Air-Gap Fittings: ASSE 1021.
3. Flexible Water Connectors: ASME A112.18.6.
4. Floor Drains: ASME A112.6.3.
5. Grab Bars: ASTM F 446.
6. Hose-Coupling Threads: ASME B1.20.7.
7. Off-Floor Fixture Supports: ASME A112.6.1M.
8. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1.
9. Plastic Toilet Seats: ANSI Z124.5.
10. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

1.6 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Faucet Washers and O-Rings: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type and size installed.
2. Faucet Cartridges and O-Rings: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type and size installed.
3. Flushometer Valve, Repair Kits: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than 12 of each type.
4. Provide hinged-top wood or metal box, or individual metal boxes, with separate compartments for each type and size of extra materials listed above.
5. Toilet Seats: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 LAVATORY FAUCETS

A. Lavatory Faucets:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Chicago Faucets.
 - b. T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- c. Moen, Inc.

2.2 SHOWER FAUCETS

A. Shower Faucets:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Chicago Faucets.
 - b. Leonard Valve Company.
 - c. Moen, Inc.
 - d. Powers; a Watts Industries Co.
 - e. Symmons Industries, Inc.
 - f. T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.

2.3 SINK FAUCETS

A. Sink Faucets:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Chicago Faucets.
 - b. T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
 - c. Moen, Inc.

2.4 FLUSHOMETERS

A. Flushometers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Sloan Valve Company.
 - b. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Commercial Brass Operation.
 - c. Moen, Inc.

2.5 TOILET SEATS

A. Toilet Seats:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Bemis Manufacturing Company.
 - b. Centoco Manufacturing Corp.

- c. Church Seats.
 - d. Olsonite Corp.
 - e. Sperzel.
2. Description: Toilet seat for water-closet-type fixture.
- a. Material: Molded, solid plastic with antimicrobial agent.
 - b. Configuration: Open front without cover.
 - c. Size: Elongated.
 - d. Hinge Type: CK, check.
 - e. Class: Heavy-duty commercial.
 - f. Color: White.

2.6 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING GUARDS

A. Protective Shielding Pipe Covers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- a. Engineered Brass Co.
 - b. Insul-Tect Products Co.; a Subsidiary of MVG Molded Products.
 - c. McGuire Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Plumberex Specialty Products Inc.
 - e. TCI Products.
 - f. TRUEBRO, Inc.
 - g. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Tubular Brass Plumbing Products Operation.
2. Description: Manufactured plastic wraps for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements. Product shall also meet the ASTM E 84 25/450 smoke and flame rating.

B. Protective Shielding Piping Enclosures:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- a. TRUEBRO, Inc.
2. Description: Manufactured plastic enclosure for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with ADA requirements.

2.7 FIXTURE SUPPORTS

- ### A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Josam Company.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

2. MIFAB Manufacturing Inc.
3. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
4. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
5. Watts Drainage Products Inc.; a div. of Watts Industries, Inc.
6. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.

B. Urinal Supports:

1. Description: Type I, urinal carrier with fixture support plates and coupling with seal and fixture bolts and hardware matching fixture for wall-mounting, urinal-type fixture. Include steel uprights with feet.
2. Accessible-Fixture Support: Include rectangular steel uprights.

C. Lavatory Supports:

1. Description: Type II, lavatory carrier with concealed arms and tie rod for wall-mounting, lavatory-type fixture. Include steel uprights with feet.
2. Accessible-Fixture Support: Include rectangular steel uprights.

2.8 WATER CLOSETS

A. Water Closets:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard Companies, Inc.
 - b. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C./Fiat Products.
 - c. Eljer.
 - d. Kohler Co.

2.9 URINALS

A. Urinals:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard Companies, Inc.
 - b. Briggs Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - c. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C./Fiat Products.
 - d. Eljer.
 - e. Kohler Co.

2.10 LAVATORIES

A. Lavatories:

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard Companies, Inc.
 - b. Briggs Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - c. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C./Fiat Products.
 - d. Eljer.
 - e. Kohler Co.

2.11 COMMERCIAL SINKS

A. Commercial Sinks:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
 - b. Just Manufacturing Company.

2.12 SERVICE SINKS

A. Service Sinks:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard Companies, Inc.
 - b. Commercial Enameling Company.
 - c. Eljer.
 - d. Kohler Co.
 - e. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C./Fiat Products.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before plumbing fixture installation.
- B. Examine cabinets, counters, floors, and walls for suitable conditions where fixtures will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Assemble plumbing fixtures, trim, fittings, and other components according to manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Install off-floor supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounting fixtures.
 - 1. Use carrier supports with waste fitting and seal for back-outlet fixtures.
 - 2. Use carrier supports without waste fitting for fixtures with tubular waste piping.
 - 3. Use chair-type carrier supports with rectangular steel uprights for accessible fixtures.
- C. Install back-outlet, wall-mounting fixtures onto waste fitting seals and attach to supports.
- D. Install floor-mounting fixtures on closet flanges or other attachments to piping or building substrate.
- E. Install wall-mounting fixtures with tubular waste piping attached to supports.
- F. Install counter-mounting fixtures in and attached to casework.
- G. Install fixtures level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
- H. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each fixture to be connected to water distribution piping. Attach supplies to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures. Install stops in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.
 - 1. Exception: Use ball, gate, or globe valves if supply stops are not specified with fixture. Valves are specified in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- I. Install trap and tubular waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be directly connected to sanitary drainage system.
- J. Install tubular waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be indirectly connected to drainage system.
- K. Install flushometer valves for accessible water closets and urinals with handle mounted on wide side of compartment. Install other actuators in locations that are easy for people with disabilities to reach.
- L. Install toilet seats on water closets.
- M. Install faucet-spout fittings with specified flow rates and patterns in faucet spouts if faucets are not available with required rates and patterns. Include adapters if required.
- N. Install water-supply flow-control fittings with specified flow rates in fixture supplies at stop valves.
- O. Install faucet flow-control fittings with specified flow rates and patterns in faucet spouts if faucets are not available with required rates and patterns. Include adapters if required.
- P. Install shower flow-control fittings with specified maximum flow rates in shower arms.

- Q. Install traps on fixture outlets.
 - 1. Exception: Omit trap on fixtures with integral traps.
 - 2. Exception: Omit trap on indirect wastes, unless otherwise indicated.
- R. Install escutcheons at piping wall ceiling penetrations in exposed, finished locations and within cabinets and millwork. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Escutcheons are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- S. Seal joints between fixtures and walls, floors, and countertops using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Sealants are specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- U. All plumbing fixtures are to be mounted at the height specified on the Architectural drawings.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- C. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verify that installed plumbing fixtures are categories and types specified for locations where installed.
- B. Check that plumbing fixtures are complete with trim, faucets, fittings, and other specified components.
- C. Inspect installed plumbing fixtures for damage. Replace damaged fixtures and components.
- D. Test installed fixtures after water systems are pressurized for proper operation. Replace malfunctioning fixtures and components, then retest. Repeat procedure until units operate properly.
- E. Install fresh batteries in sensor-operated mechanisms.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust faucets and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning fixtures, fittings, and controls.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- B. Adjust water pressure at faucets and flushometer valves to produce proper flow and stream.
- C. Replace washers and seals of leaking and dripping faucets and stops.
- D. Install fresh batteries in sensor-operated mechanisms.

3.6 CLEANING

- A. Clean fixtures, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials. Do the following:
 - 1. Remove faucet spouts and strainers, remove sediment and debris, and reinstall strainers and spouts.
 - 2. Remove sediment and debris from drains.
- B. After completing installation of exposed, factory-finished fixtures, faucets, and fittings, inspect exposed finishes and repair damaged finishes.

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Provide protective covering for installed fixtures and fittings.
- B. Do not allow use of plumbing fixtures for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

3.8 PLUMBING FIXTURE SCHEDULE

- A. See Plumbing Drawings for All Fixture Descriptions

END OF SECTION 224000

SECTION 224500 - EMERGENCY PLUMBING FIXTURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following emergency plumbing fixtures:
 - 1. Emergency showers.
 - 2. Eyewash equipment.
 - 3. Combination units.
 - 4. Water-tempering equipment.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for backflow preventers.
 - 2. Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties" for floor drains.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Accessible Fixture: Emergency plumbing fixture that can be approached, entered, and used by people with disabilities.
- B. Plumbed Emergency Plumbing Fixture: Fixture with fixed, potable-water supply.
- C. Self-Contained Emergency Plumbing Fixture: Fixture with flushing-fluid-solution supply.
- D. Tepid: Moderately warm.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include flow rates and capacities, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Product Certificates: Submit certificates of performance testing specified in "Source Quality Control" Article.
- D. Field quality-control test reports.
- E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For emergency plumbing fixtures to include in maintenance manuals.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. ANSI Standard: Comply with ANSI Z358.1, "Emergency Eyewash and Shower Equipment."
- C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in ICC A117.1, "Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities"; Public Law 90-480, "Architectural Barriers Act" ; and Public Law 101-336, "Americans with Disabilities Act" ; for plumbing fixtures for people with disabilities.
- D. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components--Health Effects," for fixture materials that will be in contact with potable water.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EYE/FACE WASH EQUIPMENT

- A. Eye/Face Wash Equipment:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Guardian G1735 recessed swing down Eye/Face Wash Unit complete with thermostatic mixing valve or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Bradley Corporation.
 - b. Encon Safety Products.
 - c. Guardian Equipment Co.
 - d. Haws Corporation.
 - e. Lab Safety Supply Inc.
 - f. Murdock, Inc.
 - g. Speakman Company.
 - h. WaterSaver Faucet Co.
 - 3. Description: Plumbed, recessed eye/face wash equipment.
 - a. Capacity: Deliver potable water at rate not less than 3.0 gpm for at least 15 minutes.
 - b. Supply Piping: NPS 1/2 chrome-plated brass or stainless steel with flow regulator and stay-open control valve.
 - c. Control-Valve Actuator: swing down.

2.2 COMBINATION UNITS

- A. Combination Units:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Guardian model G-1902 free standing emergency shower / eye wash with stay open ball valves stainless steel shower head and eye wash bowl, Thermostatic mixing valve and in-line dual check valves on hot and cold water supplies or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Bradley Corporation.
 - b. Chicago Faucets.
 - c. Encon Safety Products.
 - d. Guardian Equipment Co.
 - e. Haws Corporation.
 - f. Lab Safety Supply Inc.
 - g. Murdock, Inc.
 - h. Sellstrom Manufacturing Co.
 - i. Speakman Company.
 - j. WaterSaver Faucet Co.
 - k. Western Emergency Equipment.

B. Combination Units:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Guardian model GBF-2100 emergency shower / eye wash with stay open ball valves stainless steel shower head and recessed pull down eye wash bowl, Thermostatic mixing valve and in-line dual check valves on hot and cold water supplies or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. B-L-S Industries, Inc.
 - b. Encon Safety Products.
 - c. Guardian Equipment Co.
 - d. Haws Corporation.
 - e. Speakman Company.
 - f. Western Emergency Equipment.

2.3 WATER-TEMPERING EQUIPMENT

A. Water-Tempering Equipment:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Armstrong International, Inc.
 - b. Bradley Corporation.
 - c. Haws Corporation.
 - d. Lawler Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - e. Leonard Valve Company.
 - f. Powers, a Watts Industries Co.
 - g. Speakman Company.
 - h. Therm-Omega-Tech, Inc.
2. Description: Factory-fabricated, hot- and cold-water-tempering equipment with thermostatic mixing valve.

- a. Thermostatic Mixing Valve: Designed to provide 85 deg F tepid, potable water at emergency plumbing fixtures, to maintain temperature at plus or minus 5 deg F throughout required 15-minute test period, and in case of unit failure to continue cold-water flow, with union connections, controls, metal piping, and corrosion-resistant enclosure. Provide flow rate required to equipment being served.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Certify performance of plumbed emergency plumbing fixtures by independent testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for water piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before plumbed emergency plumbing fixture installation.
 1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 EMERGENCY PLUMBING FIXTURE INSTALLATION

- A. Assemble emergency plumbing fixture piping, fittings, control valves, and other components.
- B. Install fixtures level and plumb.
- C. Fasten fixtures to substrate.
- D. Install shutoff valves in water-supply piping to fixtures. Use ball, gate, or globe valve if specific type valve is not indicated. Install valves chained or locked in open position if permitted. Install valves in locations where they can easily be reached for operation. Valves are specified in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
 1. Exception: Omit shutoff valve on supply to group of plumbing fixtures that includes emergency plumbing fixture.
 2. Exception: Omit shutoff valve on supply to emergency equipment if prohibited by authorities having jurisdiction.
- E. Install shutoff valve and strainer in steam piping and shutoff valve in condensate return piping.
- F. Install dielectric fitting in supply piping to fixture if piping and fixture connections are made of different metals. Dielectric fittings are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- G. Install thermometers in supply and outlet piping connections to water-tempering equipment. Thermometers are specified in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- H. Install escutcheons on piping wall and ceiling penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Escutcheons are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- I. Fill self-contained fixtures with flushing fluid.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- J. Install equipment nameplates or equipment markers on fixtures and equipment signs on water-tempering equipment. Identification materials are specified in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect cold-water-supply piping to plumbed emergency plumbing fixtures not having water-tempering equipment.
- C. Connect hot- and cold-water-supply piping to hot- and cold-water-tempering equipment. Connect output from water-tempering equipment to emergency plumbing fixtures.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Mechanical-Component Testing: After plumbing connections have been made, test for compliance with requirements. Verify ability to achieve indicated capacities and temperatures.
- B. Electrical-Component Testing: After electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
 - 1. Test and adjust controls and safeties.
- C. Repair or replace malfunctioning units. Retest as specified above after repairs or replacements are made.
- D. Report test results in writing.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace fixture flow regulators for proper flow.
- B. Adjust equipment temperature settings.

END OF SECTION 224500

SECTION 224700 - DRINKING FOUNTAINS AND WATER COOLERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following drinking fountains and water coolers and related components:
 - 1. Drinking fountains.
 - 2. Remote water coolers.
 - 3. Fixture supports.

1.3 SEISMIC REQUIREMENTS

- A. Component Importance Factor: All plumbing components shall be assigned a component importance factor. The component importance factor, I_p , shall be taken as 1.5 if any of the following conditions apply:
 - 1. The component is required to function for life-safety purposes after an earthquake.
 - 2. The component contains hazardous materials.
 - 3. The component is in or attached to an Occupancy Category IV structure and it is needed for continued operation of the facility or its failure could impair the continued operation of the facility.
- B. All other components shall be assigned a component importance factor, I_p , equal to 1.0.
- C. Seismic Performance: Plumbing equipment, hangers and supports shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7 and with the requirements specified in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
 - 1. For components with a seismic importance factor of 1.0 the term "withstand" means "the system will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
 - 2. For components with a seismic importance factor of 1.5 the term "withstand" means "the system will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the system will be fully operational after the seismic event."
 - 3.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Accessible Drinking Fountain or Water Cooler: Fixture that can be approached and used by people with disabilities.
- B. Cast Polymer: Dense, cast-filled-polymer plastic.
- C. Drinking Fountain: Fixture with nozzle for delivering stream of water for drinking.
- D. Fitting: Device that controls flow of water into or out of fixture.
- E. Fixture: Drinking fountain or water cooler unless one is specifically indicated.
- F. Remote Water Cooler: Electrically powered equipment for generating cooled drinking water.
- G. Water Cooler: Electrically powered fixture for generating and delivering cooled drinking water.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each fixture indicated. Include rated capacities, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Field quality-control test reports.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fixtures to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- E. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that plumbing equipment and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 22 Section "Mechanical Vibration and Seismic Controls." Include the following:
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in ICC A117.1, "Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities"; Public Law 90-480, "Architectural Barriers Act" ; and Public Law 101-336, "Americans with Disabilities Act" ; for fixtures for people with disabilities.
- C. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components--Health Effects," for fixture materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- D. ARI Standard: Comply with ARI's "Directory of Certified Drinking Water Coolers" for style classifications.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- E. ARI Standard: Comply with ARI 1010, "Self-Contained, Mechanically Refrigerated Drinking-Water Coolers," for water coolers and with ARI's "Directory of Certified Drinking Water Coolers" for type and style classifications.
- F. ASHRAE Standard: Comply with ASHRAE 34, "Designation and Safety Classification of Refrigerants," for water coolers. Provide HFC 134a (tetrafluoroethane) refrigerant, unless otherwise indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 DRINKING FOUNTAINS

- A. Drinking Fountains:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Elkay model EDFPBM117RAC wall mounted dual level stainless steel drinking fountain complete with remote chiller or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Filtrine Manufacturing Company; Drinking Water Division.
 - b. Halsey Taylor.
 - c. Haws Corporation.
 - d. Murdock, Inc.
 - e. Oasis Corporation.
 - f. Stern-Williams Co., Inc.
 - g. Sunroc Corp.

2.2 FIXTURE SUPPORTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Josam Co.
 - 2. MIFAB Manufacturing, Inc.
 - 3. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
 - 4. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - 5. Watts Drainage Products Inc.; a div. of Watts Industries, Inc.
 - 6. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
- B. Description: ASME A112.6.1M, water cooler carriers. Include vertical, steel uprights with feet and tie rods and bearing plates with mounting studs matching fixture to be supported.
 - 1. Type I: Hanger-type carrier with two vertical uprights.
 - 2. Type II: Bilevel, hanger-type carrier with three vertical uprights.
 - 3. Supports for Accessible Fixtures: Include rectangular, vertical, steel uprights instead of steel pipe uprights.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for water and waste piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before fixture installation. Verify that sizes and locations of piping and types of supports match those indicated.
- B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where fixtures are to be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 APPLICATIONS

- A. Use carrier off-floor supports for wall-mounting fixtures, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Use mounting frames for recessed water coolers, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Set freestanding and pedestal drinking fountains on floor.
- D. Set remote water coolers on floor, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Use chrome-plated brass or copper tube, fittings, and valves in locations exposed to view. Plain copper tube, fittings, and valves may be used in concealed locations.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install off-floor supports affixed to building substrate and attach wall-mounting fixtures, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install mounting frames affixed to building construction and attach recessed water coolers to mounting frames, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install fixtures level and plumb. For fixtures indicated for children, install at height required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Install water-supply piping with shutoff valve on supply to each fixture to be connected to water distribution piping. Use ball, gate, or globe valve. Install valves in locations where they can be easily reached for operation. Valves are specified in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- E. Install trap and waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be connected to sanitary drainage system.
- F. Install pipe escutcheons at wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons where required to conceal protruding pipe fittings. Escutcheons are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- G. Seal joints between fixtures and walls and floors using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant, silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Sealants are specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- H. Comply with SEI/ASCE 7 and with requirements for seismic-restraint devices in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- C. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Water Cooler Testing: After electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements. Test and adjust controls and safeties.
 - 1. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
 - 2. Report test results in writing.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust fixture flow regulators for proper flow and stream height.
- B. Adjust water cooler temperature settings.

3.7 CLEANING

- A. After completing fixture installation, inspect unit. Remove paint splatters and other spots, dirt, and debris. Repair damaged finish to match original finish.
- B. Clean fixtures, on completion of installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 224700

SECTION 23 0100 - MECHANICAL REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL CONDITIONS

- A. The General Conditions of the Contract, with the amendments, supplements, forms and requirements in Division 1, and herewith made a part of this Division.
- B. All sections of Division 21, 22, & 23 shall comply with the Mechanical General Requirements. The standards established in this section as to quality of materials and equipment, the type and quality of workmanship, mode of operations, safety rules, code requirements, etc., shall apply to all sections of this Division as though they were repeated in each Division.
- C. Mechanical equipment that is pre-purchased if any will be assigned to the Mechanical Contractor. By assignment to the Mechanical Contractor, the Mechanical Contractor shall accept and installed the equipment and provide all warranties and guarantees as if the Mechanical Contractor had purchased the equipment.
- D. Construction Indoor-Air Quality Management
 - 1. Comply with SMACNA's "SMACNA IAQ Guideline for Occupied Buildings under Construction."
 - a. If Owner authorizes use of permanent heating, cooling, and ventilating systems during construction period as specified in Division 01 Section "Temporary Facilities and Controls," install filter media having a MERV 8 according to ASHRAE 52.2 at each return-air inlet for the air-handling system used during construction.
 - b. Replace all air filters immediately prior to occupancy.

1.2 SCOPE OF WORK

- A. The project described herein is the Salt Lake City Mosquito Abatement District. This work shall include all labor, materials, equipment, fixtures, and devices for the entire mechanical work and a complete operating and tested installation as required for this project.
- B. This Division will schedule the boiler inspection and pay for all costs associated with certifying the boiler with the state.

1.3 CODES & ORDINANCES

- A. All work shall be executed in accordance with all underwriters, public utilities, local and state rules and regulations applicable to the trade affected. Should any change in the plans and Specifications be required to comply with these regulations, the Contractor shall notify the Architect before the time of submitting his bid. After entering into contract, the Contractor will be held to complete all work necessary to meet these requirements without extra expense to the Owner. Where work required by drawings or specifications is above the standard required, it shall be done as shown or specified.

- B. Applicable codes:
 - 1. Utah Boiler and Pressure Vessel Rules and Regulations-2013 Edition
 - 2. International Building code- 2015 Edition
 - 3. International Mechanical Code- 2015 Edition
 - 4. International Plumbing Code- 2015 Edition
 - 5. International Fire Code- 2015 Edition
 - 6. International Energy Code- 2015 Edition
 - 7. International Fuel Gas Code- 2015 Edition
 - 8. National Electrical Code- 2014 Edition

1.4 INDUSTRY STANDARDS

- A. All work shall comply with the following standards.
 - 1. Associated Air Balance council (AABC)
 - 2. Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Institute (ARI)
 - 3. Air Diffusion council (ADC)
 - 4. Air Movement and Control Association (AMCA)
 - 5. American Gas Association (AGA)
 - 6. American National Standards Institute (ANSI)
 - 7. American Society of Heating, Refrigeration, and Air Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE)
 - 8. American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME)
 - 9. American Society of Testing Materials (ASTM)
 - 10. American Water Works Association (AWWA)
 - 11. Cooling Tower Institute (CTI)
 - 12. ETL Testing Laboratories (ETL)
 - 13. Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE)
 - 14. Hydronics Institute (HI)
 - 15. Manufacturers Standardization Society of the Valve and Fitting Industry (MSS)
 - 16. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA)
 - 17. National Electrical Code (NEC)
 - 18. National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA)
 - 19. National Electrical Safety code (NESC)
 - 20. Utah safety Standard (OSHA), Utah State Industrial Council.
 - 21. Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractor's National Association (SMACNA)
 - 22. Underwriters Laboratories (UL)
 - 23. Tubular Exchanger Manufacturers Association, Inc. (TEMA)
 - 24. Heat Exchanger Institute (HEI)
 - 25. Hydraulic Institute (HI)
 - 26. Thermal Insulation Manufacturer=s Association (TIMA)
 - 27. Scientific Apparatus Makers Association (SAMA)
- B. Compliance Verification:
 - 1. All items required by code or specified to conform to the ASME code shall be stamped with the ASME seal.
 - 2. Form U-1, the manufacturer=s data report for pressure vessels, is to be included in the Operation and Maintenance Manuals. National Board Register (NBR) numbers shall be provided where required by code.
 - 3. Manufactured equipment which is represented by a UL classification and/or listing, shall bear the UL or equivalent ETL label.

1.5 UTILITIES & FEES

- A. All fees for permits required by this work will be paid by this division. The contractor shall obtain the necessary permits to perform this work. Unless noted otherwise, all systems furnished and or installed by this Contractor, shall be complete with all utilities, components, commodities and accessories required for a fully functioning system. This Contractor shall furnish smoke generators when required for testing, furnish glycol for glycol piping systems, full load of salt to fill brine tank for water softening system, furnish cleaners and water treatment additives.

1.6 SUBMITTALS AND SHOP DRAWINGS

- A. General: As soon as possible after the contract is awarded, but in no case more than 45 calendar days thereafter, the Contractor shall submit to the Architect manufacturer's data on products and materials to be used in the installation of mechanical systems for this project. The review of the submitted data will require a minimum of **14 days**. The first day starts after the day they are received in the engineer's office to which the project is being constructed from. If the Contractors schedule requires return of submitted literature in less than the allotted time, the Contractor shall accelerate his submittal delivery date. The Contractor shall resubmit all items requiring re-review within **14 days** of returned submittals. Refer to each specification section for items requiring submittal review. **If the re-submittal is returned a 2nd time for correction the Contractor will provide the specific equipment that is specified on the drawings and/or the specifications.** Written approval of the Owner's Representative shall be obtained before installing any such equipment or materials for the project.
- B. Review by the Owner's Representative is for general conformance of the submitted equipment to the project specification. **In no way** does such review relieve this Contractor of his obligation to furnish equipment and materials that comply in detail to the specification **nor does it relieve** the Contractor of his obligation to determine actual field dimensions and conditions that may affect his work. **Regardless of any items overlooked** by the submittal review, the requirements of the contract drawings and specifications **must be followed** and are not waived or superseded **in any way** by the review.
- C. By description, catalog number, and manufacturer's names, standards of quality have been established by the Architect and the Engineer for certain manufactured equipment items and specialties that are to be furnished by this Division. Alternate products and equipment may be proposed for use only if specifically named in the specifications or if given written prior approval in published addenda. Design equipment is the equipment listed on the drawings or if not listed on the drawings is the equipment first named in the specifications.
- D. If the Engineer is required to do additional design work to incorporate changes caused by submitting equipment or products, different than the design equipment specified, as defined above, the contractor shall reimburse the engineer for additional time and expenses at the engineer's current, recognized, hourly rates.
- E. Submittal Format: At the contractor's discretion, project submittals may be in either of the formats described in the following paragraphs, but mixing the two formats is not acceptable.
 - 1. Hardcopy Submittal Format: **Six (6)** copies of the descriptive literature covering products and materials to be used in the installation of mechanical systems for this project will be provided

for review. The submittals shall be prepared in an orderly manner, contained in a 3-ring loose-leaf binder with index and identification tab for each item or group of items and for each specification section. All items shall be submitted at one time except automatic temperature control drawings and seismic restraint drawings which may be submitted separately within **120 days** of the contract award date. Partial submittals will not be reviewed until the complete submittal is received.

- a. Submitted literature shall bear the Contractor's stamp, indicating that he has checked all equipment being submitted; that each item will fit into the available space with the accesses shown on the drawings; and, further, that each item conforms to the capacity and quality standards given in the contract documents.
 - b. Submitted literature shall clearly indicate performance, quality, and utility requirements; shall show dimension and size of connection points; and shall include derating factors that were applied for each item of equipment to provide capacity at job site elevation. Temperature control submittals shall include piping and wiring diagrams, sequence of operation and equipment. Equipment must fit into the available space with allowance for operation, maintenance, etc. Factory piped and wired equipment shall include shop drawings for all internal wiring and piping furnished with the unit.
 - c. Submitted literature shall clearly show all required field install wiring, piping, and accessory installations required by the Contractor to provide a complete operating system.
2. Electronic Submittal Format: Identify and incorporate information in each electronic submittal file as follows:
- a. All items shall be submitted at one time except automatic temperature control drawings and seismic restraint drawings which may be submitted separately within **120 days** of the contract award date. Partial submittals will not be reviewed until the complete submittal is received.
 - b. Submitted electronic file shall bear the Contractor's stamp, indicating that he has checked all equipment being submitted; that each item will fit into the available space with the accesses shown on the drawings; and, further, that each item conforms to the capacity and quality standards given in the contract documents.
 - c. Submitted electronic file shall clearly indicate performance, quality, and utility requirements; shall show dimension and size of connection points; and shall include derating factors that were applied for each item of equipment to provide capacity at job site elevation. Temperature control submittals shall include piping and wiring diagrams, sequence of operation and equipment. Equipment must fit into the available space with allowance for operation, maintenance, etc. Factory piped and wired equipment shall include shop drawings for all internal wiring and piping furnished with the unit.
 - d. Submitted electronic file shall clearly show all required field install wiring, piping, and accessory installations required by the Contractor to provide a complete operating system.
 - e. Assemble complete submittal package into a single indexed file incorporating submittal requirements of a single Specification Section and transmittal form with links enabling navigation to each item.
 - f. Name file with submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.
 - g. **Electronic file shall be completely electronically searchable or it will be rejected.**

- h. Provide means for insertion to permanently record Contractor's review and approval markings and action taken by:
 - 1) **Architect and Construction Manager.**
- i. Transmittal Form for Electronic Submittals:
 - 1) Use one of the following options acceptable to the Owner;
 - a) **Software-generated form from electronic project management software.**
 - b) **Electronic form.**
 - 2) The Electronic Submittal shall contain the following information:
 - a) Project name.
 - b) Date.
 - c) Name and address of Architect.
 - d) Name of Construction Manager.
 - e) Name of Contractor.
 - f) Name of firm or entity that prepared submittal.
 - g) Names of subcontractor, manufacturer, and supplier.
 - h) Category and type of submittal.
 - i) Submittal purpose and description.
 - j) Specification Section number and title.
 - k) Specification paragraph number or drawing designation and generic name for each of multiple items.
 - l) Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
 - m) Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
 - n) Related physical samples submitted directly.
 - o) Indication of full or partial submittal.
 - p) Transmittal number[, numbered consecutively].
 - q) Submittal and transmittal distribution record.
 - r) Other necessary identification.
 - s) Remarks.
- j. Metadata: Include the following information as keywords in the electronic submittal file metadata:
 - 1) Project name.
 - 2) Number and title of appropriate Specification Section.
 - 3) Manufacturer name.
 - 4) Product name.

1.7 DRAWINGS AND MEASUREMENTS

- A. Construction Drawings: The contract document drawings show the general design, arrangements, and extent of the system. In certain cases, the drawings may include details that show more nearly exact locations and arrangements; however, the locations, as shown diagrammatically, are to be regarded as general.
- B. It shall be the work of this Section to make such slight alterations as may be necessary to make adjustable parts fit to fixed parts, leaving all complete and in proper shape when done. All

dimensions given on the drawings shall be verified as related to this work and with the Architect's office before work is started.

- C. This Section shall carefully study building sections, space, clearances, etc., and then provide offsets in piping or ductwork as required to accommodate the building structure without additional cost to the Owner. In any case and at any time during the construction process, a change in location required by obstacles or the installation of other trades not shown on the mechanical plans shall be made without charge.
- D. The drawings shall not be scaled for roughing in measurements nor shall they be used as shop drawings. Where drawings are required for these purposes or where drawings must be made from field measurements, the Contractor shall take the necessary measurements and prepare the drawings. Shop drawings of the various subcontractors shall be coordinated to eliminate all interferences and to provide sufficient space for the installation of all equipment, piping, ductwork, etc.
- E. The drawings and specifications have been prepared to supplement each other and they shall be interpreted as an integral unit with items shown on one and not the other being furnished and installed as though shown and called out on both.
- F. Coordination Drawings: The contractor shall provide coordination drawings for mechanical rooms, fan rooms, equipment rooms, and congested areas to eliminate conflicts with equipment, piping, or work of other trades. The drawings shall be a minimum scale of 1/4 inch= 1 foot and of such detail as may be required by the Engineer to fully illustrate the work. These drawings shall include all piping, conduit, valves, equipment, and ductwork.
- G. Sheet-metal shop drawings will be required for all ductwork in the entire building. These drawings will show all ductwork in the entire building and shall be coordinated with architectural, structural and electrical portions of the project. The contractor shall specifically obtain copies of the structural shop drawings and shall coordinate the ductwork shop drawings with approved structural members. These drawings shall be submitted to the engineer for review prior to any fabrication. The contractor is responsible for all modifications necessary to accommodate duct installation within the structural, architectural and electrical restrictions. These drawings, once reviewed by the engineer, will be made available to all mechanical, electrical, and fire sprinkler subcontractors to coordinate installation of their work.

1.8 CONTRACTOR'S USE OF BUILDING EQUIPMENT

- A. The Contractor may use equipment such as electric motors, fans, heat exchangers, filters, etc., with the written permission of the Owner. As each piece of equipment is used (such as electric motors and fans), maintenance procedures approved by the manufacturer are to be followed. A careful record is to be kept of the length of the time the equipment is used, maintenance procedures followed, and any difficulty encountered. The record is to be submitted to the Owner upon acceptance. All fan belts and filter media (such as bearings) shall be carefully inspected just prior to acceptance. Any excessive wear noted shall require replacement. New filter media shall be installed in air handlers at the time systems are turned over to the owner.

1.9 EXISTING CONDITIONS

- A. The Contractor shall carefully examine all existing conditions that might affect the mechanical system and shall compare these conditions with all drawings and specifications for work included under this contract. He shall, at such time, ascertain and check all conditions that may affect his work. No allowance shall subsequently be made in his behalf for an extra expense incurred as a result of his failure or neglect to make such examination. This Contractor shall include in his bid proposal all necessary allowances to repair or replace any item that will remain or will be removed, and any item that will be damaged or destroyed by new construction.
- B. The Contractor shall remove all abandoned piping, etc., required by new construction and cap or plug openings. No capping, etc., shall be exposed in occupied areas. All openings of items removed shall be sealed to match adjacent surfaces.
- C. The Contractor shall verify the exact location of all existing services, utilities, piping, etc., and make connections to existing systems as required or as shown on the drawings. The exact location of each utility line, together with size and elevation, shall be established before any on-site lines are installed. Should elevation or size of existing main utility lines make connections to them impossible as shown on drawings, then notification of such shall immediately be given to the Owners Representative for a decision.

1.10 EQUIPMENT CAPACITIES

- A. Capacities shown for equipment in the specifications and on the drawings are the minimum acceptable. No equipment shall be considered as an alternate that has capacities or performance less than that of design equipment.
- B. All equipment shall give the specified capacity and performance at the job-site elevation. Manufacturers' standard ratings shall be adjusted accordingly. All capacities and performances listed on drawings or in specifications are for job-site conditions.

1.11 SEISMIC REQUIREMENTS FOR EQUIPMENT

- A. All equipment shall be furnished structurally adequate to withstand seismic forces as outlined in the International Building Code. Refer to section Mechanical Vibration Controls and Seismic Restraints. Equipment bases shall be designed for direct attachment of seismic snubbers and/or seismic anchors.

1.12 COOPERATION WITH OTHER TRADES

- A. The Contractor shall refer to other drawings and parts of this specification that cover work of other trades that is carried on in conjunction with the mechanical work such that all work can proceed without interference resulting from lack of coordination.
- B. The Contractor shall properly size and locate all openings, chases, sleeves, equipment bases, and accesses. He shall provide accurate wiring diagrams to the Electrical Contractor for all equipment furnished under this Division.

- C. The ceiling cavity must be carefully reviewed and coordinated with all trades. In the event of conflict, the installation of the mechanical equipment and piping shall be in the following order: plumbing, waste, and soil lines; supply, return, and exhaust ductwork; water piping; medical gases; fire protection piping; and pneumatic control piping.
- D. The mechanical Contractor shall insure that the installation of all piping, ducts and equipment is in compliance with Articles 110-16 and 384-4 of the National Electrical Code relative to proper clearances in front of and over all electrical panels and equipment. No piping or ductwork will be allowed to run over electrical panel.

1.13 RESPONSIBILITY OF CONTRACTOR

- A. The Contractor is responsible for the installation of a satisfactory piece of work in accordance with the true intent of the drawings and specifications. He shall provide, as a part of his work and without expense, all incidental items required even though these items are not particularly specified or indicated. The installation shall be made so that its several component parts will function together as a workable system and shall be left with all equipment properly adjusted and in working order. The Contractor shall familiarize the Owner's Representative with maintenance and lubrication instructions as prepared by the Contractor and shall explain and fully instruct him relative to operating, servicing, and maintenance of them.
- B. If a conflict arises between the drawings and the specifications the most stringent procedure/action shall be followed. A clarification to the engineer will help to determine the course of action to be taken. If a conflict arises between specification sections the engineer will determine which course of action is to be followed.

1.14 PIPE AND DUCT OPENINGS AND EQUIPMENT RECESSES

- A. Pipe and duct chases, openings, and equipment recesses shall be provided by others only if shown on architectural or structural drawings. All openings for the mechanical work, except where plans and specifications indicate otherwise, shall be provided as work of this Division. Include openings information with coordination drawings.
- B. Whether chases, recesses, and openings are provided as work of this Division or by others, this Contractor shall supervise their construction and be responsible for the correct size and location even though detailed and dimensioned on the drawings. This Contractor shall pay for all necessary cutting, repairing, and finishing if any are left out or incorrectly made. All necessary openings thru existing walls, ceilings, floors, roofs, etc. shall be provided by this Contractor unless indicated otherwise by the drawing and/or specifications.

1.15 UNFIT OR DAMAGED WORK

- A. Any part of this installation that fails, is unfit, or becomes damaged during construction, shall be replaced or otherwise made good. The cost of such remedy shall be the responsibility of this Division.

1.16 WORKMANSHIP

- A. Workmanship shall be the best quality of its kind for the respective industries, trades, crafts, and practices, and shall be acceptable in every respect to the Owner's representative. Nothing contained herein shall relieve the Contractor from making good and perfect work in all details in construction.

1.17 SAFETY REGULATION

- A. The Contractor shall comply with all local, Federal, and OSHA safety requirements in performance with this work. (See General Conditions). This Contractor shall be required to provide equipment, supervision, construction, procedures, and all other necessary items to assure safety to life and property.

1.18 ELECTRICAL SERVICES

- A. All equipment control wiring and all automatic temperature control wiring including all necessary contacts, relays, and interlocks, whether low or line voltage, except power wiring, shall be furnished and installed as work of this Division unless shown to be furnished by Division 26. All such wiring shall be in conduit as required by electrical codes. Wiring in the mechanical rooms, fans rooms and inaccessible ceilings and walls shall be installed in conduit as well. Installation of any and all wiring done under Division 21, 22 and 23 shall be in accordance with the requirements of Division 26, Electrical.
- B. All equipment that requires an electrical connection shall be furnished so that it will operate properly and deliver full capacity on the electrical service available.
- C. Refer to the electrical control equipment and wiring shown on the diagrams. Any changes or additions required by specific equipment furnished shall be the complete responsibility of the Contractor furnishing the equipment.
- D. The Mechanical Contractor must coordinate with the Electrical Contractor to insure that all required components of control work are included and fully understood. No additional cost shall accrue to the Owner as a result of lack of such coordination.

1.19 WORK, MATERIALS, AND QUALITY OF EQUIPMENT

- A. Unless otherwise specified, all materials shall be new and of the best quality of their respective kinds and all labor shall be done in a most thorough and workmanlike manner.
- B. Products or equipment of any of the manufacturers cited herein or any of the products approved by the Addenda may be used. However, where lists of products are cited herein, the one first listed in the design equipment used in drawings and schedules to establish size, quality, function, and capacity standards. If other than design equipment is used, it shall be carefully checked for access to equipment, electrical and control requirements, valving, and piping. Should changes or additions occur in piping, valving, electrical work, etc., or if the work of other Contractors would be revised by the alternate equipment, the cost of all changes shall be borne as work of this Division.

- C. The Execution portions of the specifications specify what products and materials may be used. Any products listed in the Product section of the specification that are not listed in the Execution portion of the specification may not be used without written approval by the Engineer.
- D. The access to equipment shown on the drawings is the minimum acceptable space requirements. No equipment that reduces or restricts accessibility to this or any other equipment will be considered.
- E. All major items of equipment are specified in the equipment schedules on the drawings or in these specifications and shall be furnished complete with all accessories normally supplied with the catalog item listed and all other accessories necessary for a complete and satisfactory installation.
- F. All welders shall be certified in accordance with Section IX of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, latest Edition.

1.20 PROTECTION AGAINST WEATHER AND STORING OF MATERIALS

- A. All equipment and materials shall be properly stored and protected against moisture, dust, and wind. Coverings or other protection shall be used on all items that may be damaged or rusted or may have performance impaired by adverse weather or moisture conditions. Damage or defect developing before acceptance of the work shall be made good at the Contractor's expense.
- B. All open duct and pipe openings shall be adequately covered at all times.

1.21 INSTALLATION CHECK

- A. An experienced, competent, and authorized representative of the manufacturer or supplier of each item of equipment indicated in the equipment schedule and the seismic supplier shall visit the site of the work and inspect, check, adjust if necessary, and approve the equipment installation. In each case, the equipment supplier's representative shall be present when the equipment is placed in operation. The equipment supplier's representative shall revisit the job site as often as necessary until all trouble is corrected and the equipment installation and operation is satisfactory to the Engineer.
- B. Each equipment supplier's representative shall furnish to the Owner, through the Engineer, a written report certifying that the equipment (1) has been properly installed and lubricated; (2) is in accurate alignment; (3) is free from any undue stress imposed by connecting piping or anchor bolts; and, (4) has been operated under full load conditions and that it operated satisfactorily.
- C. All costs for this work shall be included in the prices quoted by equipment suppliers.

1.22 EQUIPMENT LUBRICATION

- A. The Contractor shall properly lubricate all pieces of equipment before turning the building over to the Owner. A linen tag shall be attached to each piece of equipment, showing the date of lubrication and the lubricant used. No equipment shall be started until it is properly lubricated.
- B. Necessary time shall be spent with the Owner's Representative to thoroughly familiarize him with all necessary lubrications and maintenance that will be required of him.

- C. Detergent oil as used for automotive purposes shall not be used for this work.

1.23 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. No cutting or drilling in structural members shall be done without written approval of the Architect. The work shall be carefully laid out in advance, and cutting, channeling, chasing, or drilling of floors, walls, partitions, ceilings, or other surfaces necessary for the mechanical work shall be carefully done. Any damage to building, piping, or equipment shall be repaired by professional plasterers, masons, concrete workers, etc., and all such work shall be paid for as work of this Division.
- B. When concrete, grading, etc., is disturbed, it shall be restored to original condition as described in the applicable Division of this Specification.

1.24 EXCAVATION AND BACKFILLING

- A. All necessary excavations and backfilling for the Mechanical phase of this project shall be provided as work of this Division. Trenches for all underground pipelines shall be excavated to the required depths. The bottom of trenches shall be compacted hard and graded to obtain required fall. Backfill shall be placed in horizontal layers, not exceeding 12 inches in thickness, and properly moistened. Each layer shall be compacted, by suitable equipment, to a density of not less than 95 percent as determined by ASTM D-1557. After pipelines have been tested, inspected, and approved, the trench shall be backfilled with selected material. Excess earth shall be hauled from the job site. Fill materials approved by the Architect shall be provided as work of this Division.
- B. No trenches shall be cut near or under any footings without consultation first with the Architect's office. Any trenches or excavations more than 30 inches deep shall be tapered, shored, covered, or otherwise made absolutely safe so that no vehicle or persons can be injured by falling into such excavations, or in any way be harmed by cave-ins, shifting earth, rolling rocks, or by drowning. This protection shall be extended to all persons approaching excavation related to this work whether or not such persons are authorized to be in the vicinity of the construction.

1.25 ACCESS

- A. Provide access doors in walls, ceilings and floors by this division unless otherwise noted. For access to mechanical equipment such as valves, dampers, VAV boxes, fans, controls, etc. Refer to Division 8 for door specifications. All access doors shall be 24" x 24" unless otherwise indicated or required. Coordinate location of doors with the Architect prior to installation. . If doors are not specified in Division 8, provide the following: Doors in ceilings and wall shall be equal to JR Smith No. 4760 bonderized and painted. Doors in tile walls shall be equal to JR Smith No. 4730 chrome plated. Doors in floors shall be equal to JR Smith No. 4910
- B. Valves: Valve must be installed in locations where access is readily available. If access is compromised, as judged by the Mechanical Engineer, these valves shall be relocated where directed at the Contractors expense.
- C. Equipment: Equipment must be installed in locations and orientations so that access to all components requiring service or maintenance will not be compromised. If access is compromised, as

judged by the Mechanical Engineer, the contractor shall modify the installation as directed by the Engineer at the Contractors expense.

- D. It is the responsibility of this division to install terminal boxes, valves and all other equipment and devices so they can be accessed. If any equipment or devices are installed so they cannot be accessed on a ladder a catwalk and ladder system shall be installed above the ceiling to access and service this equipment.

1.26 CONCRETE BASES AND INSERTS

- A. Bases: The concrete bases shall be provided and installed as work by this division. This Division shall be responsible for the proper size and location of bases and shall furnish all required anchor bolts and sleeves with templates to be installed as work of Division 3, Concrete.
- B. All floor-mounted mechanical equipment shall be set on 6-inch high concrete bases, unless otherwise noted or shown on drawings. Such bases shall extend 6 inches beyond equipment or mounting rails on all sides or as shown on the drawings and shall have a 1-inch beveled edge all around.
- C. Inserts: Where slotted or other types of inserts required for this work are to be cast into concrete, they shall be furnished as work of this Division
- D. Concrete inserts and pipe support systems shall be equal to Unistrut P3200 series for all piping where more than one pipe is suspended at a common location. Spacing of the inserts shall match the size and type of pipe and of ductwork being supported. The Unistrut insert and pipe support system shall include all inserts, vertical supports, horizontal support members, clamps, hangers, rollers, bolts, nuts, and any other accessory items for a complete pipe-supporting system.

1.27 CLEANING AND PAINTING

- A. Cleaning: After all tests and adjustments have been made and all systems pronounced satisfactory for permanent operation, this Contractor shall clean all exposed piping, ductwork, insulated members, fixture, and equipment installed under this Section and leave them ready for painting. He shall refinish any damaged finish and leave everything in proper working order. The Contractor shall remove all stains or grease marks on walls, floors, glass, hardware, fixtures, or elsewhere, caused by his workman or for which he is responsible. He shall remove all stickers on plumbing fixtures, do all required patching up and repair all work of others damaged by this division of the work, and leave the premises in a clean and orderly condition.
- B. Painting: Painting of exposed pipe, insulated pipe, ducts, or equipment is work of Division 9, Painting.
- C. Mechanical Contractor: All equipment which is to be furnished in factory prefinished conditions by the mechanical Contractor shall be left without mark, scratch, or impairment to finish upon completion of job. Any necessary refinishing to match original shall be done. Do not paint over nameplates, serial numbers, or other identifying marks.
- D. Removal of Debris, Etc: Upon completion of this division of the work, remove all surplus material and rubbish resulting from this work, and leave the premises in a clean and orderly condition.

1.28 CONTRACT COMPLETION

- A. Incomplete and Unacceptable Work: If additional site visits or design work is required by the Engineer or Architect because of the use of incomplete or unacceptable work by the Contractor, then the Contractor shall reimburse the Engineer and Architect for all additional time and expenses involved.
- B. Maintenance Instructions: The Contractor shall furnish the Owner complete printed and illustrated operating and maintenance instructions covering all units of mechanical equipment, together with parts lists.
- C. Instructions To Owner's Representatives: In addition to any detailed instructions called for, the mechanical Contractor must provide, without expense to the Owner, competent instructors to train the Owner's representatives who will be in charge of the apparatus and equipment, in the care, adjustment, and operation of all parts on the heating, air conditioning, ventilating, plumbing, fire protection, and automatic temperature control equipment. Instruction dates shall be scheduled at time of final inspection. A written report specifying times, dates, and name of personnel instructed shall be forwarded to the Architect. A minimum of four 8-hour instruction periods shall be provided. The instruction periods will be broken down to shorter periods when requested by the Owner. The total instruction hours shall not be reduced. The ATC Contractor shall provide 4 hours of instructions. The remaining hours shall be divided between the mechanical and sheet metal Contractor.
- D. Guarantee: By the acceptance of any contract award for the work herein described or shown on the drawings, the Contractor assumes the full responsibility imposed by the guarantee as set forth herein and in the General Conditions, and should protect himself through proper guarantees from equipment and special equipment Contractors and from subcontractors as their interests may appear.
- E. The guarantee so assumed by the Contractor and as work of this Section is as follows:
 - 1. That the entire mechanical system, including plumbing, heating, and air-conditioning system shall be quiet in operation.
 - 2. That the circulation of water shall be complete and even.
 - 3. That all pipes, conduit, and connections shall be perfectly free from foreign matter and pockets and that all other obstructions to the free passage of air, water, liquid, sewage, and vent shall be removed.
 - 4. That he shall make promptly and free of charge, upon notice from the Owner, any necessary repairs due to defective workmanship or materials that may occur during a period of one year from date of Substantial Completion.
 - 5. That all specialties, mechanical, and patent devices incorporated in these systems shall be adjusted in a manner that each shall develop its maximum efficiency in the operation of the system; i.e., diffusers shall deliver the designed amount of air shown on drawings, thermostats shall operate to the specified limits, etc.
 - 6. All equipment and the complete mechanical, ductwork, piping and plumbing systems shall be guaranteed for a period of one year from the date of the Architect's Certificate of Substantial Completion, this includes all mechanical, ductwork, piping and plumbing equipment and products and is not limited to boiler, chillers, coils, fans, filters etc. Any equipment supplier not willing to comply with this guarantee period shall not submit a bid price for this project. The Contractor shall be responsible for a 100-percent guarantee for the system and all items of equipment for this period. If the contractor needs to provide temporary heating or cooling to the building and or needs to insure systems are installed properly and or to meet the project

schedule the guaranteed of all systems and equipment shall be as indicated above, on year from the date of the Architect's Certificate of Substantial Completion.

7. All filters used during construction shall be replaced just before equipment is turned over to the Owner, and all required equipment and parts shall be oiled. Any worn parts shall also be replaced.
8. If any systems or equipment is used for temporary heating or cooling the systems shall be protected so they remain clean. I.e. if the ductwork systems are used temporary filters and a filter holder (not duct-taped to ducts or grilles) shall be installed to insure the systems and the equipment remain clean.

1.29 CURBS

- A. Unless otherwise noted in these specifications or on the documents all roof curbs for all equipment are to be provided by Division 22 and 23.

1.30 TEST RUN

- A. The Mechanical Contractor shall operate the mechanical system for a minimum of 30 days to prove the operation of the system.

1.31 EQUIPMENT STARTUP AND CHECKOUT:

- A. Each major piece of equipment shall be started and checked out by an authorized representative of the equipment manufacturer. A certificate indicating the equipment is operating to the satisfaction of the manufacturer shall be provided and shall be included in the commissioning report.
- B. This contractor shall coordinate commissioning procedures and activities with the commissioning agent.

1.32 DEMOLITION

- A. General: Demolish and remove existing construction only to the extent required by new construction and as indicated. Use methods required to complete the Work within limitations of governing regulations and as follows:
- B. Proceed with demolition systematically, from higher to lower level. Complete selective demolition operations above each floor or tier before disturbing supporting members on the next lower level.
- C. Neatly cut openings and holes plumb, square, and true to dimensions required. Use cutting methods least likely to damage construction to remain or adjoining construction. Use hand tools or small power tools designed for sawing or grinding, not hammering and chopping, to minimize disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings to remain.
- D. Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces to avoid marring existing finished surfaces.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- E. Do not use cutting torches until work area is cleared of flammable materials. At concealed spaces, such as duct and pipe interiors, verify condition and contents of hidden space before starting flame-cutting operations. Maintain portable fire-suppression devices during flame-cutting operations.
- F. Maintain adequate ventilation when using cutting torches.
- G. Remove decayed, vermin-infested, or otherwise dangerous or unsuitable materials and promptly dispose of off-site.
- H. Remove structural framing members and lower to ground by method suitable to avoid free fall and to prevent ground impact or dust generation.
- I. Locate selective demolition equipment and remove debris and materials so as not to impose excessive loads on supporting walls, floors, or framing.
- J. Dispose of demolished items and materials promptly.
- K. Return elements of construction and surfaces that are to remain to condition existing before selective demolition operations began.
- L. Existing Facilities: Comply with building manager's requirements for using and protecting elevators, stairs, walkways, loading docks, building entries, and other building facilities during selective demolition operations.
- M. Concrete: Demolish in sections. Cut concrete full depth at junctures with construction to remain and at regular intervals, using power-driven saw, then remove concrete between saw cuts.
- N. Masonry: Demolish in small sections. Cut masonry at junctures with construction to remain, using power-driven saw, and then remove masonry between saw cuts.
- O. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade: Saw-cut perimeter of area to be demolished, then break up and remove.
- P. Air-Conditioning Equipment: Remove equipment without releasing refrigerants.

END OF SECTION 23 0100

SECTION 230500 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
 - 2. Transition fittings.
 - 3. Dielectric fittings.
 - 4. Mechanical sleeve seals.
 - 5. Sleeves.
 - 6. Escutcheons.
 - 7. Grout.
 - 8. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
 - 9. Painting and finishing.
 - 10. Concrete bases.
 - 11. Supports and anchorages.
 - 12. Link-Seal

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct chases, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, and crawlspaces.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces, mechanical equipment rooms, accessible pipe shafts, accessible plumbing chases, and accessible tunnels.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- D. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and chases.
- E. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.
- F. The following are industry abbreviations for plastic materials:

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

1. CPVC: Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride plastic.
2. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

G. The following are industry abbreviations for rubber materials:

1. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
2. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Transition fittings.
2. Dielectric fittings.
3. Mechanical sleeve seals.
4. Escutcheons.

B. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."

B. Steel Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."

1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.

C. Electrical Characteristics for HVAC Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.

B. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for HVAC installations.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- B. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.
- C. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for HVAC items requiring access that are concealed behind finished surfaces. Access panels and doors are specified in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified.

2.2 PIPE, TUBE, AND FITTINGS

- A. Refer to individual Division 23 piping Sections for pipe, tube, and fitting materials and joining methods.
- B. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to individual Division 23 piping Sections for special joining materials not listed below.
- B. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
 - 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, **1/8-inch** maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
 - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
 - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
 - 2. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, **1/8 inch** thick, unless otherwise indicated; and full-face or ring type, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing, unless otherwise indicated; and AWS A5.8, BAgl, silver alloy for refrigerant piping, unless otherwise indicated.

- F. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

2.4 TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings: CPVC and PVC one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint end.

- 1. Manufacturers:

- a. Eslon Thermoplastics.

- B. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Adaptors: One-piece fitting with manufacturer's SDR 11 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint end.

- 1. Manufacturers:

- a. Thompson Plastics, Inc.

2.5 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General: Assembly or fitting with insulating material isolating joined dissimilar metals, to prevent galvanic action and stop corrosion.

- B. Description: Combination of copper alloy and ferrous; threaded, solder, plain, and weld-neck end types and matching piping system materials.

- C. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.

- D. Dielectric Unions: Factory-fabricated, union assembly, for **250-psig** minimum working pressure at **180 deg F**.

- E. Dielectric Flanges: Factory-fabricated, companion-flange assembly, for **150-** or **300-psig** minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.

- F. Dielectric-Flange Insulation Kits: Field-assembled, companion-flange assembly, full-face or ring type. Components include neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or polyethylene bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.

- 1. Provide separate companion flanges and steel bolts and nuts for **150-** or **300-psig** minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.

- G. Dielectric Couplings: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and **300-psig** minimum working pressure at **225 deg F**.

- H. Dielectric Nipples: Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and **300-psig** minimum working pressure at **225 deg F**.

- 1. Manufacturers:

- a. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
- b. Central Plastics Company.
- c. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div

2.6 MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico, Inc.
 - c. Metraflex Co.
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 2. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
 3. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel. Include two for each sealing element.
 4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

2.7 SLEEVES

- A. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: **0.0239-inch** minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- B. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.
- C. Cast Iron: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.
- E. Molded PVC: Permanent, with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- F. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.

2.8 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. Description: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with an ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and an OD that completely covers opening.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
- C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With set screw.
 - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated and rough brass.
- D. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With set screw or spring clips and chrome-plated finish.
- E. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With concealed hinge, set screw or spring clips, and chrome-plated finish.

2.9 GROUT

- A. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, non-shrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
 - 1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, non-staining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
 - 2. Design Mix: **5000-psi**, 28-day compressive strength.
 - 3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.10 LINK-SEAL MODULAR SEAL PRESSURE PLATES

- A. Link-Seal® modular seal pressure plates shall be molded of glass reinforced Nylon Polymer with the following properties:
 - 1. Izod Impact - Notched = **2.05ft-lb/in.** per ASTM D-256
 - 2. Flexural Strength @ Yield = **30,750 psi** per ASTM D-790
 - 3. Flexural Modulus = **1,124,000 psi** per ASTM D-790
 - 4. Elongation Break = 11.07% per ASTM D-638
 - 5. Specific Gravity = 1.38 per ASTM D-792
- B. Models LS200-275-300-315 shall incorporate the most current Link-Seal® Modular Seal design modifications and shall include an integrally molded compression assist boss on the top (bolt entry side) of the pressure plate, which permits increased compressive loading of the rubber sealing element. Models 315-325-340-360-400-410-425-475-500-525-575-600 shall incorporate an integral recess known as a “Hex Nut Interlock” designed to accommodate commercially available fasteners to insure proper thread engagement for the class and service of metal hardware. All pressure plates shall have a permanent identification of the manufacturer’s name molded into it.
- C. For fire service, pressure plates shall be steel with 2-part Zinc Dichromate Coating.
- D. Link-Seal® Modular Seal Hardware: All fasteners shall be sized according to latest Link-Seal® modular seal technical data. Bolts, flange hex nuts shall be:
 - 1. 316 Stainless Steel per ASTM F593-95, with a **85,000 psi** average tensile strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 23 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- G. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- H. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- J. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- K. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- L. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors according to the following:
 - 1. New Piping:
 - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
 - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type with spring clips.
 - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - e. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
 - f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece or split-casting, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.

mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

- Q. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Refer to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for materials.
- R. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- S. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections of these Specifications for roughing-in requirements.

3.2 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 23 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
- F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- G. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
- H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

1. Install unions, in piping **NPS 2** and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
2. Install flanges, in piping **NPS 2-1/2** and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
3. Dry Piping Systems: Install dielectric unions and flanges to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.
4. Wet Piping Systems: Install dielectric coupling and nipple fittings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.

3.4 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install equipment to allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights are not indicated.
- B. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install HVAC equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations. Extend grease fittings to accessible locations.
- D. Install equipment to allow right of way for piping installed at required slope.

3.5 PAINTING

- A. Painting of HVAC systems, equipment, and components is specified in Division 09 Sections "Interior Painting" and "Exterior Painting."
- B. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.

3.6 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and according to seismic codes at Project.
 1. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit.
 2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on **18-inch** centers around the full perimeter of the base.
 3. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.

5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
6. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.
7. Use **3000-psi**, 28-day compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Division 03 Section "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.7 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Refer to Division 5 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural steel.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor HVAC materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.

3.8 GROUTING

- A. Mix and install grout for HVAC equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.
- B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
- C. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.
- D. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.
- E. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.
- F. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.
- G. Place grout around anchors.
- H. Cure placed grout.

3.9 LINK SEAL

- A. Provide Link Seal at all piping penetrations from the outside.

END OF SECTION 230500

SECTION 230514 - VARIABLE FREQUENCY MOTOR DRIVES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Includes But Not Limited To:

1. Furnish and install variable frequency drive (VFD) system with motors as described in Contract Documents.

1.2 REFERENCES

A. Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers

1. IEEE 519-1992,

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Requirements: Drive shall meet requirements of IEEE 519 as measured at VFD system terminals.
- B. Certifications: Completed unit including motor shall be UL or ETL listed and carry appropriate label.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store unit in area free of dirt, vibration, and moisture.
- B. Do not allow unit to be exposed to excessive heat or cold.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURED UNITS

A. General:

1. Provide VFD and motor one coordinated package, warranted by VFD supplier.
2. Variable Frequency Drive (VFD) System shall be solid state AC to DC converter sinusoidal pulse-width modulation (PWM) type.
3. Unit shall operate on:
 - a. Input Voltage Greater than 3 H.P. than 460/3/60 less than 3 H.P> than 230/1/60.
 - b. Input frequency 60 Hz, plus or minus 5 percent.
4. All components of system shall be contained in single enclosure as integrated package.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

5. Control power for operator devices and customer connections shall be 120 volts. Control power transformer shall be 'Machine Tool' type and have primary and secondary fusing.
6. Variable Frequency Drive shall be rated for continuous current equal to 105 percent of motor FLA.
7. Rated overload current shall be 120 percent for one minute.
8. Unit shall be adjustable accel / decel time setting from one second to 120 seconds.
9. Unit shall maintain 95 percent or better displacement power factor over entire speed range.

B. Enclosure:

1. NEMA 1 force ventilated enclosure with louver covered exhaust ports, hinged doors, and painted with high-grade enamel.
2. Door mounted operator devices shall be industrial, oil tight.
3. Wall mounted or freestanding as shown on Drawings.

C. Variable Frequency Drive Inverter:

1. Altitude compensated and sized for elevation at which unit will be installed.
2. Capable of operating in ambient temperature of 14 deg F to 122 deg F and humidity of 0 percent to 90 percent non-condensing.
3. Mounted on removable panel along with other components so panel can be removed from enclosure for maintenance or part replacement.
4. Output frequency clamp on drive for setting minimum or maximum output frequency.
5. Supply with door interlock input disconnect motor circuit protector. Door mounted handle shall be able to lock in OFF position.

D. Controls And Safety Equipment:

1. Provide, as minimum, following door mounted operator controls:
 - a. HAND / OFF / AUTO Switch.
 - b. Local / Remote Selector.
 - c. Frequency Setting Speed Selector.
 - d. Frequency Indication Meter calibrated in percent speed.
 - e. Power on Light.
 - f. VFD / Bypass Switch.
 - g. VFD Fault Light.
 - h. External Fault Light (safeties interlock).
 - i. Digital Keypad Programmable Parameter Unit (75 hp and less).
2. Provide minimum of following protective features with alarm display indication:
 - a. Over-current shut-off.
 - b. Regenerative over voltage.
 - c. Electronic Thermal Protector.
 - d. Heatsink Overheat.
 - e. Instantaneous Power Failure.
 - f. Output Ground Fault (Actual phase to phase or phase to ground without damage).
3. Provide following termination points on terminal strip for field connections:
 - a. Safeties Interlock.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- b. Remote Start / Stop Contact.
 - c. Remote VFD Fault Contact.
 - d. Remote VFD / Bypass Enable Contact.
 - e. Remote Electronic Signal Input.
4. Auto Restart shall be initiated by means of automatic time delayed restart after recovering form under voltage or loss of power. Inverter shall not automatically restart after over-current, over-voltage, over-temperature, or other damaging conditions, but shall require manual restart.
 - a. Supply inverter with bypass contactor arrangement for transfer to feeder line to operate at constant speed.
 - b. Contactors shall be electrically and mechanically interlocked and supplied with adjustable motor overload relay.
 5. Provide VFD isolation switch to allow maintenance on VFD while operating in bypass mode. Pre-wired in same enclosure including contactors, input disconnect MCP, motor overload, VFD / Bypass selector switch, and Bypass On light.
 6. Provide elapsed time meter.
 7. Frequency Jump: Supply drive with capability of being field retrofitted with frequency jump control to avoid operating at point of resonance with natural frequency of machine.
 8. Provide VFD unit with computer signal control option through future addition of RS 232 data card.
 9. Fault Diagnostics: Drive system shall have non-volatile fault retention so VFDs fault history is available from memory even after power loss.

E. Approved Products:

1. Toshiba International Corp E3 supplied by Applied Automation, Salt Lake City, UT (801) 486-8791.
2. Danfoss VLT 6000 Series supplied by TMS Inc, Salt Lake City, UT (801) 484-2790.
3. Mitsubishi A/F 500 Series supplied by Energy Management Corp, Salt Lake City, UT (800) 433-4548.
4. Yaskawa Electric America, Inc. supplied by Long Building Technologies, Murray, UT (801) 330-8236.

2.2 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Before shipping, test each unit and supply certified test report with each unit. Standard test shall include following:
 1. Visual inspection consisting of checking unit enclosure, wiring, connections, fasteners, covers, and locking mechanism.
 2. High Pot Test:
 - a. Apply two times rated voltage plus 1000 volts AC for 60 seconds in accordance with UL 508 on all peripheral drive system power components (circuit breakers, contactors, motor overloads, line reactors, disconnect switches, etc) as complete package.
 - b. Include copy of test results in operations manuals.
 3. Test devices and lights on control panel devices.

4. Test optional equipment specified with VFD system.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing:

1. VFD supplier shall provide three full spectrum harmonic analyses of VFD voltage and current waveforms for each VFD system.
2. Harmonic report shall demonstrate operating harmonic waveforms with VFD's at 100 percent load, 50 percent load, and with motors operating across line.
3. Conduct harmonic tests at start-up and perform in presence of Architect:
 - a. Harmonic current distortion measured at VFD input terminals shall not exceed 40 percent of fundamental current drawn by VFD.
 - b. Voltage distortion at this point shall not exceed 3 percent of fundamental.
 - c. VFD supplier shall provide harmonic control devices to meet above requirements as integral part of ETL or UL listed VFD system.
 - d. Compliance with above limits is strictly responsibility of VFD supplier. Adjustments required to bring system to within specified limits shall be performed at no additional cost to Owner.
 - e. Harmonic tests shall be published and included in Operation and Maintenance Manual.
 - f. Harmonic distortion compliance shall be approved before final acceptance by Owner.

B. Manufacturer's Field Services:

1. Provide field start-up service by authorized factory service representative consisting of system check-out, start-up, and system run. Provide certificate of completion and authorized factory service including operator training and start-up.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 230516 - EXPANSION FITTINGS AND LOOPS FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 1. Flexible-hose packless expansion joints.
 2. Metal-bellows packless expansion joints.
 3. Pipe loops and swing connections.
 4. Alignment guides and anchors.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Compatibility: Products shall be suitable for piping service fluids, materials, working pressures, and temperatures.
- B. Capability: Products to absorb 200 percent of maximum axial movement between anchors.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each anchor and alignment guide indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
 1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for thermal expansion of piping systems and for selecting and designing expansion joints, loops, and swing connections.
 2. Anchor Details: Detail fabrication of each anchor indicated. Show dimensions and methods of assembly and attachment to building structure.
 3. Alignment Guide Details: Detail field assembly and attachment to building structure.
 4. Schedule: Indicate type, manufacturer's number, size, material, pressure rating, end connections, and location for each expansion joint.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of expansion joint, from manufacturer.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For expansion joints to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 - 1. Steel Shapes and Plates: **AWS D1.1**, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
 - 2. Welding to Piping: ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- A. Flexible-Hose Packless Expansion Joints:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
 - b. Flexicraft Industries.
 - c. Flex Pression Ltd.
 - d. Flex-Weld
 - e. Fugate
 - f. Metraflex, Inc.
 - g. Twin City Hose
 - 2. Description: Manufactured assembly with inlet and outlet elbow fittings and two flexible-metal-hose legs joined by long-radius, 180-degree return bend or center section of flexible hose.
 - 3. Flexible Hose: Corrugated-metal inner hoses and braided outer sheaths.
 - 4. Expansion Joints for Copper Tubing NPS 2 and Smaller: Copper-alloy fittings with threaded end connections.
 - a. Bronze hoses and single-braid bronze sheaths with 450 psig at 70 deg F and 340 psig at 450 deg F ratings.
 - 5. Expansion Joints for Copper Tubing NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Copper-alloy fittings with threaded end connections.
 - a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 300 psig at 70 deg F and 225 psig at 450 deg F ratings.
 - 6. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 2 and Smaller: Carbon-steel fittings with threaded end connections.
 - a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 450 psig at 70 deg F and 325 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
 - 7. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6: Carbon-steel fittings with flanged end connections.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 200 psig at 70 deg F and 145 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
 8. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 8 to NPS 12: Carbon-steel with flanged [weld] end connections.
 - a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 125 psig at 70 deg F and 90 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
 9. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 14 and Larger: Carbon-steel fittings with flanged end connections.
 - a. Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 165 psig at 70 deg F and 120 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
- B. Metal-Bellows Packless Expansion Joints:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
 - b. Flexicraft Industries.
 - c. Flex Pression Ltd.
 - d. Flex-Weld, Inc.
 - e. Flo Fab inc.
 - f. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
 - g. Metraflex, Inc.
 - h. Twin City Hose
 2. Standards: ASTM F 1120 and EJMA's "Standards of the Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc."
 3. Type: Circular, corrugated bellows with external tie rods.
 4. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig unless otherwise indicated.
 5. Configuration: Single joint class unless otherwise indicated.
 6. Expansion Joints for Copper Tubing: Single-ply phosphor-bronze bellows, copper pipe ends, and brass shrouds
 - a. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.
 - b. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Threaded.
 - c. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged.
 7. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping: Single-ply stainless-steel bellows, steel pipe ends, and carbon-steel shroud.
 - a. End Connections for Steel Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.
 - b. End Connections for Steel Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged.

2.2 ALIGNMENT GUIDES AND ANCHORS

- A. Alignment Guides:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- a. Adscos Manufacturing LLC.
 - b. Advanced Thermal Systems, Inc.
 - c. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
 - d. Flexicraft Industries.
 - e. Flex-Weld, Inc.
 - f. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
 - g. Metraflex, Inc.
 - h. Piping Technology & Products, Inc.
 - i. Senior Flexonics Pathway.
 - j. Twin City Hose.
2. Description: Steel, factory-fabricated alignment guide, with bolted two-section outer cylinder and base for attaching to structure; with two-section guiding spider for bolting to pipe.

B. Anchor Materials:

1. Steel Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36.
2. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.10 or ASTM A 183, steel hex head.
3. Washers: ASTM F 844, steel, plain, flat washers.
4. Mechanical Fasteners: Insert-wedge-type stud with expansion plug anchor for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
 - a. Stud: Threaded, zinc-coated carbon steel.
 - b. Expansion Plug: Zinc-coated steel.
 - c. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.
5. Chemical Fasteners: Insert-type-stud, bonding-system anchor for use with hardened portland cement concrete, with tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
 - a. Bonding Material: ASTM C 881, Type IV, Grade 3, two-component epoxy resin suitable for surface temperature of hardened concrete where fastener is to be installed.
 - b. Stud: ASTM A 307, zinc-coated carbon steel with continuous thread on stud unless otherwise indicated.
 - c. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXPANSION-JOINT INSTALLATION

- A. Install expansion joints of sizes matching sizes of piping in which they are installed.
- B. Install metal-bellows expansion joints according to EJMA's "Standards of the Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc."

3.2 PIPE LOOP AND SWING CONNECTION INSTALLATION

- A. Install pipe loops cold-sprung in tension or compression as required to partly absorb tension or compression produced during anticipated change in temperature.
- B. Connect risers and branch connections to mains with at least five pipe fittings including tee in main.
- C. Connect risers and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings including tee in riser.
- D. Connect mains and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings including tee in main.

3.3 ALIGNMENT-GUIDE AND ANCHOR INSTALLATION

- A. Install alignment guides to guide expansion and to avoid end-loading and torsional stress.
- B. Install one guide on each side of pipe expansion fittings and loops. Install guides nearest to expansion joint not more than four pipe diameters from expansion joint.
- C. Attach guides to pipe and secure guides to building structure.
- D. Install anchors at locations to prevent stresses from exceeding those permitted by ASME B31.9 and to prevent transfer of loading and stresses to connected equipment.
- E. Anchor Attachments:
 - 1. Anchor Attachment to Steel Pipe: Attach by welding. Comply with ASME B31.9 and ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
 - 2. Anchor Attachment to Copper Tubing: Attach with pipe hangers. Use MSS SP-69, Type 24, U-bolts bolted to anchor.
- F. Fabricate and install steel anchors by welding steel shapes, plates, and bars. Comply with ASME B31.9 and AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
 - 1. Anchor Attachment to Steel Structural Members: Attach by welding.
 - 2. Anchor Attachment to Concrete Structural Members: Attach by fasteners. Follow fastener manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Use grout to form flat bearing surfaces for guides and anchors attached to concrete.

END OF SECTION 230516

SECTION 230517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Sleeves.
 - 2. Sleeve-seal systems.
 - 3. Grout.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Galvanized-Steel Wall Pipes: ASTM A 53, Schedule 40, with plain ends and welded steel collar; zinc coated.
- C. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.
- D. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- E. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - 2. CALPICO, Inc.

3. Metraflex Company (The).
4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
5. Proco Products, Inc.

- B. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
 2. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel.
 3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.3 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
 2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
 3. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.

1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

- E. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

3.3 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron wall sleeves.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves.
 2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

- b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
- 4. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
- 5. Interior Partitions:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel-sheet sleeves.

END OF SECTION 23 0517

SECTION 230518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Escutcheons.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated or rough-brass finish and setscrew fastener.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
 - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping:

- a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type with chrome-plated finish.
- d. Bare Piping 2 inch and Smaller at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- e. Bare Piping Larger than 2 inch at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type with polished, chrome-plated finish,
- f. Bare Piping 2 inch and Smaller at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- g. Bare Piping Larger than 2 inch at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type with polished, chrome-plated finish,
- h. Bare Piping 2 inch and Smaller in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass
- i. Bare Piping Larger than 2 inch in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type with polished, chrome-plated finish,
- j. Bare Piping 2 inch and Smaller in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- k. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms Larger than 2 inch: One-piece, stamped-steel type with chrome- or cadmium-plated finish,

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates using new materials.

END OF SECTION 230518

SECTION 230519 - METERS AND GAGES FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Liquid-in-glass thermometers.
2. Thermowells.
3. Pressure gages.
4. Gage attachments.
5. Test plugs.
6. Test-plug kits.
7. Flowmeters.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 23 Section "Facility Natural-Gas Piping" for gas meters.
2. Division 23 Section "Steam and Condensate Heating Piping" for steam and condensate meters.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of meter and gage, from manufacturer.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For meters and gages to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS

A. Metal-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.
 - b. Terice, H. O. Co.
 - c. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
 - d. Weksler.
2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
3. Case: Die Cast aluminum or brass; nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
4. Case Form: Adjustable angle type unless otherwise indicated, 180 degrees in vertical plane, 360 degrees in horizontal plane, with locking device.
5. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue organic liquid.
6. Tube Background: Satin faced, nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in **5 deg F**.
7. Window: Glass.
8. Stem: Copper-plated steel, aluminum, stainless steel, or brass designed for thermowell installation. Stem shall be of length to match thermowell insertion length.
 - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
9. Connector: **1-1/4 inches**, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
10. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

2.2 THERMOWELLS

A. Thermowells:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. AMETEK, Inc.; U.S. Gauge Div.
 - b. Ashcroft Commercial Instrument Operations; Dresser Industries; Instrument Div.
 - c. Ernst Gage Co.
 - d. Marsh Bellofram.
 - e. Miljoco Corp.
 - f. NANMAC Corporation.
 - g. Noshok, Inc.
 - h. Palmer - Wahl Instruments Inc.
 - i. REO TEMP Instrument Corporation.
 - j. Tel-Tru Manufacturing Company.

- k. Terrice, H. O. Co.
 - l. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
 - m. Weksler
 - n. WIKA Instrument Corporation.
 - o. Winters Instruments.
2. Manufacturers: Same as manufacturer of thermometer being used.
 3. Standard: ASME B40.200.
 4. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
 5. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: Brass.
 6. Material for Use with Steel Piping: Brass.
 7. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
 8. External Threads: **NPS 1/2, NPS 3/4, NPS 1 or NPS 1-1/4** ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
 9. Internal Threads: **1/2, 3/4, and 1 inch** with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
 10. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
 11. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
 12. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.
 13. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.

B. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin.

2.3 PRESSURE GAGES

A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. AMETEK, Inc.; U.S. Gauge.
 - b. Ashcroft Inc.
 - c. Ernst Flow Industries.
 - d. KOBOLD Instruments, Inc.
 - e. Marsh Bellofram.
 - f. Miljoco Corporation.
 - g. Noshok.
 - h. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.
 - i. REOTEMP Instrument Corporation.
 - j. Terrice, H. O. Co.
 - k. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
 - l. Weksler
 - m. WIKA Instrument Corporation.
 - n. Winters Instruments - U.S.
2. Standard: ASME B40.100.
3. **Case:** Liquid-filled type; cast aluminum or drawn steel; **4-1/2-inch** nominal diameter.
4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated. **NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2.**
6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.

7. Dial: Satin faced, nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in **psi** .
8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
9. Window: Glass.
10. **Ring: Stainless steel.**
11. **Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.**

B. Remote-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. AMETEK, Inc.; U.S. Gauge.
 - b. Ashcroft Inc.
 - c. Ernst Flow Industries.
 - d. KOBOLD Instruments, Inc.
 - e. Marsh Bellofram.
 - f. Miljoco Corporation.
 - g. Noshok.
 - h. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.
 - i. REOTEMP Instrument Corporation.
 - j. Terrice, H. O. Co.
 - k. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
 - l. Weksler
 - m. WIKA Instrument Corporation.
 - n. Winters Instruments - U.S.
2. Standard: ASME B40.100.
3. **Case: Liquid-filled, cast aluminum or drawn steel;** diameter with **back** flange for panel surface mounting or front flange for panel recessed mounting. Flanges to include pre-drilled screw holes.
4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated. **NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2.**
6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
7. Dial: Satin faced, nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in **psi** .
8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
9. Window: **Glass.**
10. **Ring: Stainless steel.**
11. **Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.**

2.4 GAGE ATTACHMENTS

- A. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads. Include extension for use on insulated piping. **NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2** .
 1. **Surge-dampening device: porous-metal-type.**
- B. Siphons:

1. Loop-shaped section: Brass pipe with pipe threads. NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2.

C. Valves:

1. **Needle: Brass**, with **NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2** ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

2.5 TEST PLUGS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Flow Design, Inc.
2. MG Piping Products Co.
3. National Meter, Inc.
4. Peterson Equipment Co., Inc.
5. Sisco Manufacturing Company, Inc.
6. Trerice, H. O. Co.
7. Twin City Hose.
8. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
9. Welsler.

B. Description: Test-station fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.

C. Body: Brass or stainless steel with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap. Include extended stem on units to be installed in insulated piping.

D. Thread Size: or , ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.

E. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating:

F. Core Inserts: Self-sealing synthetic rubber;

1. EPDM (Nordel) for air, water or glycol operation between **30 and 275 deg F**.
2. CR (Neoprene) for air, water, glycol, oil, or gas operation between **-30 to 200 deg F**.

2.6 TEST-PLUG KITS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Flow Design, Inc.
2. MG Piping Products Co.
3. National Meter, Inc.
4. Peterson Equipment Co., Inc.
5. Sisco Manufacturing Company, Inc.
6. Trerice, H. O. Co.
7. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
8. Weiss Instruments, Inc.

- B. Furnish the number of test-plug kits given below with the number of thermometers given below, with each kit having one pressure gage and adapter, and carrying case. Thermometer sensing elements, pressure gage, and adapter probes shall be of diameter to fit test plugs and of length to project into piping.
1. Low-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with **1- to 2-inch** diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least **25 to 125 deg F**.
 2. High-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with **1- to 2-inch** diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least **0 to 220 deg F**.
 3. Pressure Gage: Small, Bourdon-tube insertion type with **2- to 3-inch** diameter dial and probe. Dial range shall be at least **to 200 psig**.
 4. Carrying Case: Metal or plastic, with formed instrument padding.
 5. **One test-plug kit with:**
 - a. **Two** thermometers.

2.7 FLOWMETERS

A. Orifice Flowmeters:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. ABB; Instrumentation and Analytical.
 - b. Armstrong Pumps Inc.; S. A. Armstrong Limited.
 - c. Badger Meter, Inc.; Industrial Div.
 - d. Bell & Gossett; ITT Industries.
 - e. Meriam Process Technologies.
 - f. Spirax Sarco
2. Description: Flowmeter with sensor, hoses or tubing, quick connect hose fittings, valves, indicator, and conversion chart.
3. Flow Range: Sensor and indicator shall cover operating range of equipment or system served.
4. Sensor: Wafer-orifice-type, calibrated, flow-measuring element; for installation between pipe flanges.
 - a. Design: Differential-pressure-type measurement:
 - 1) For HVAC hot and chilled **water**.
 - b. Construction: Cast-iron body, brass valves with integral check valves and caps, and calibrated nameplate.
 - c. Minimum Pressure Rating: **300 psig**.
 - d. Minimum Temperature Rating: **250 deg F**.
5. Portable Indicators: Hand-held, differential-pressure type, calibrated for connected sensor and having two **12-foot** hoses, with carrying case.
 - a. Scale: **Gallons per minute**.
 - b. Accuracy: Plus or minus 2 percent between 20 and 80 percent of scale range .

6. Conversion Chart: Flow rate data compatible with sensor and indicator.
7. Operating Instructions: Include complete instructions with each flowmeter.

B. Venturi Flowmeters:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Armstrong Pump
 - b. Badger Meter, Inc.; Industrial Division
 - c. Bailey-Fischer & Porter Co.
 - d. Flow Design, Inc.
 - e. Gerand Engineering Co.
 - f. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
 - g. Leeds & Northrup.
 - h. McCrometer, Inc.
 - i. Preso Meters; a division of Racine Federated Inc.
 - j. Victaulic Company.
 - k. Spirax Sarco
2. Description: Flowmeter with calibrated flow-measuring element, hoses or tubing, quick connect hose fittings, valves, indicator, and conversion chart.
3. Flow Range: Sensor and indicator shall cover operating range of equipment or system served.
4. Sensor: Venturi-type, calibrated, flow-measuring element; for installation in piping.
 - a. **Design:** Differential-pressure-type measurement for **water**.
 - b. Construction: Bronze, brass, or factory-primed steel, with brass fittings and attached tag with flow conversion data.
 - c. Minimum Pressure Rating: **250 psig** .
 - d. Minimum Temperature Rating: **250 deg F** .
 - e. End Connections for **NPS 2** and Smaller: Threaded.
 - f. End Connections for **NPS 2-1/2** and Larger: Flanged or welded.
 - g. Flow Range: Flow-measuring element and flowmeter shall cover operating range of equipment or system served.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. **Install thermowells:** with socket extending **one-third of pipe diameter** and in vertical position in piping tees.
- B. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.
- C. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.

- D. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.
- E. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions to most readable position.
- F. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.
- G. Install needle-valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids. Exception: Steam.
- H. Install test plugs in piping tees.
- I. Install remote-mounted thermometer bulbs in thermowells and install cases on panels; connect cases with tubing and support tubing to prevent kinks. Use minimum tubing length.
- J. Install duct-thermometer mounting brackets in walls of ducts. Attach to duct with screws.
- K. Install remote-mounted pressure gages on panel.
- L. Install needle-valve and syphon fitting in piping for each pressure gage for steam.
- M. Install flow indicators in piping systems in accessible positions for easy viewing.
- N. Assemble and install connections, tubing, and accessories between flow-measuring elements and flowmeters according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- O. Install flowmeter elements in accessible positions in piping systems.
- P. Install wafer-orifice flowmeter elements between pipe flanges.
- Q. Install differential-pressure-type flowmeter elements, with at least minimum straight lengths of pipe, upstream and downstream from element according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- R. Install permanent indicators on walls or brackets in accessible and readable positions.
- S. Install connection fittings in accessible locations for attachment to portable indicators.
- T. Mount thermal-energy meters on wall if accessible; if not, provide brackets to support meters.
- U. Install thermometers in the following locations:
 - 1. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic boiler.
 - 2. Two inlets and two outlets of each chiller.
 - 3. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic coil in air-handling units.
 - 4. Two inlets and two outlets of each hydronic heat exchanger.
 - 5. Inlet and outlet of each thermal-storage tank.
 - 6. Inlet and outlet of each piece of steam equipment.
 - 7. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic zone.
 - 8. Outside-, return-, supply-, and mixed-air ducts.
- V. Install pressure gages in the following locations:

1. Inlet and discharge of each pressure-reducing valve.
2. Inlet and outlet of each chiller chilled-water and condenser-water connection.
3. Suction and discharge of each pump.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

3.4 THERMOMETER SCHEDULE

- A. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each hydronic zone shall be **one of** the following:

1. **Test plug:** With EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.

- B. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each hydronic boiler shall be **one of** the following:

1. **Industrial**-style, liquid-in-glass type.

- C. Thermometers at inlets and outlets of each chiller shall be **one of** the following:

1. **Industrial**-style, liquid-in-glass type.

- D. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each hydronic coil in air-handling units and built-up central systems shall be **one of** the following:

1. **Industrial**-style, liquid-in-glass type.

- E. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each hydronic coil at fan coils, cabinet heaters, unit heaters and reheat coils and as shown on details shall be the following:

1. **Industrial**-style, liquid-in-glass type.
2. Test plug with **[CR] [chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic]** self-sealing rubber inserts.
3. Test plug with **EPDM** self-sealing rubber inserts.

- F. Thermometers at inlets and outlets of each hydronic heat exchanger shall be the **one of** following:

1. **Industrial**-style, liquid-in-glass type.
- 2.

- G. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each hydronic heat-recovery unit shall be the **one of** following:

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

1. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.

H. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each thermal-storage tank shall be one of the following:

1. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.

I. Thermometer stems shall be of length to match thermowell insertion length.

3.5 THERMOMETER SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

A. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 100 deg F .

B. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 0 to 150 deg F.

C. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 30 to 240 deg F.

D. Scale Range for Steam and Steam-Condensate Piping: 30 to 240 deg F.

E. Scale Range for Air Ducts: Minus 40 to plus 110 deg F.

3.6 PRESSURE-GAGE SCHEDULE

A. Pressure gages at inlet and discharge of each pressure-reducing valve shall be the one of following:

1. Dry-case type, direct-mounted, metal case.

B. Pressure gages at inlet and outlet of each chiller chilled-water and condenser-water connection shall be one of the following:

1. Liquid-filled, direct-mounted, metal case.

C. Pressure gages at suction and discharge of each pump shall be one of the following:

1. Liquid-filled, direct-mounted, metal case.

3.7 PRESSURE-GAGE SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

A. Scale Range for Chilled-Water, Condenser-Water, Heating, Hot-Water, Steam and Condensate Piping shall be twice the normal operating pressure of the measured system with gage ranges as follows:

1. 30 in. Hg to 15 psi .

2. 0 to 30 psi .

3. 0 to 100 psi .

4. 0 to 160 psi .

5. 0 to 200 psi .

6. 0 to 300 psi .

7. 0 to 600 psi .

3.8 FLOWMETER SCHEDULE

- A. Flowmeters for Chilled-Water Piping: Venturi type.
- B. Flowmeters for Condenser-Water Piping: Venturi type.
- C. Flowmeters for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: Venturi type.

END OF SECTION 230519

SECTION 230523 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Bronze ball valves.
2. Iron, single-flange butterfly valves.
3. Bronze lift check valves.
4. Bronze swing check valves.
5. Iron swing check valves.
8. Bronze globe valves.
9. Iron globe valves.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.
- C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.
- D. NRS: Nonrising stem.
- E. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.
- F. RS: Rising stem.
- G. SWP: Steam working pressure.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve indicated. Body material, valve design, pressure and temperature classification, end connection details, seating materials, trim material and

arrangement, dimensions and required clearances, and installation instructions. Include list indicating valve and its application.

- B. Maintenance data for valves to be included in the operation and maintenance data specified in Division 1. Include detailed manufacturer's instructions on adjusting, servicing, disassembling, and repairing.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve as listed in SUMMARY from a single source and from a single manufacturer.
- B. Compliance:
 - 1. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
 - 2. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
 - 3. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
 - 4. MSS Compliance: Comply with the various MSS Standard Practice documents referenced.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
 - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
 - 2. Protect threads, flange faces, and weld ends.
 - 3. **Set** angle, and globe valves closed to prevent rattling.
 - 4. Set ball and plug valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
 - 5. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
 - 6. Block check valves in either closed or open position.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
 - 1. Maintain valve end protection.
 - 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Refer to HVAC valve schedule articles for applications of valves.
- B. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.

- C. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Valve Actuator Types:
 - 1. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 8 and larger.
 - 2. Handwheel: For valves other than quarter-turn types.
 - 3. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves NPS 6 and smaller[except plug valves].
 - 4. Wrench: For plug valves with square heads. Furnish Owner with 1 wrench for every [5] [10] <Insert number> plug valves, for each size square plug-valve head.
 - 5. Chainwheel: Device for attachment to valve handwheel, stem, or other actuator; of size and with chain for mounting height, as indicated in the "Valve Installation" Article.
- E. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch stem extensions and the following features:
 - 2. Ball Valves: With extended operating handle of non-thermal-conductive material, and protective sleeve that allows operation of valve without breaking the vapor seal or disturbing insulation.
 - 3. Butterfly Valves: With extended neck.
- F. Valve-End Connections:
 - 1. Flanged: With flanges according to ASME B16.1 for iron valves.
 - 2. Solder Joint: With sockets according to ASME B16.18.
 - a. Caution: Where soldered end connections are used, use solder having a melting point below 840 deg. For, globe, and check valves: below 421 deg. F for ball valves.
 - 3. Threaded: With threads according to ASME B1.20.1.
- G. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

2.2 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corp.
 - 2. Babbitt Steam Specialty Company.
 - 3. Bray Controls.
 - 4. Center Line.
 - 5. Cla-Val Company.
 - 6. Conbraco Industries Inc.
 - 7. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group.
 - 8. Fisher Valve by Emerson.
 - 9. Flo Fab Inc.
 - 10. Flow-Tek Inc.
 - 11. Grinnell Corporation.
 - 12. Hammond Valve.
 - 13. Jamesbury; a subsidiary of Metso Automation.
 - 14. Jomar International LTD.
 - 15. Keystone Valve USA, Inc.

16. Kitz Corp.
17. Legend Valve.
18. Metraflex Company.
19. Milwaukee Valve Company.
20. Mueller Steam Specialty.
21. NIBCO Inc.
22. Red-White Valve Corp.
23. Spence Strainers International.
24. Stockham Valves and Fittings, Inc.
25. Tyco Fire/Shurjoint Piping Products.
26. Tyco/Pentair LTD.
27. Val-Matic Valve & Mfg. Corp.
28. Victaulic Company.
29. Watts Regulator Company.

2.4 BRONZE BALL VALVES

C. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:

1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - d. Body Design: Two piece.
 - e. Body Material: Bronze.
 - f. Ends: Threaded.
 - g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
 - h. Stem: Bronze.
 - i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - j. Port: Full.

2.5 IRON, SINGLE-FLANGE BUTTERFLY VALVES

A. 150 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange (Lug) Butterfly Valves:

1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
 - e. Seat: EPDM.
 - f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
 - g. Disc: Nylon 11 coated ductile iron.

B. 175 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange (Lug) Butterfly Valves:

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 175 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
 - e. Seat: EPDM.
 - f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
 - g. Disc: Nylon 11 coated ductile iron.

C. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Nylon 11 coated ductile Iron Disc:

1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
 - e. Seat: EPDM.
 - f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
 - g. Disc: Nylon 11 coated ductile iron.

D. 250 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Nylon 11 coated ductile Iron Disc:

1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 250 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
 - e. Seat: EPDM.
 - f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
 - g. Disc: Nylon 11 coated ductile iron.

2.6 BRONZE LIFT CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Lift Check Valve:

1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Vertical flow.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM B 61, ASTM B 62, bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Disc: Bronze, Type 1.

2.7 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Class 150, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
 - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Disc: Bronze.

2.8 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats:

1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - e. Ends: Flanged.
 - f. Trim: Bronze.
 - g. Gasket: Asbestos free.
 - h. BRONZE GLOBE VALVES

E. Class 150, Bronze Globe Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
 - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
 - d. Ends: Threaded.
 - e. Stem: Bronze.
 - f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
 - g. Packing: Teflon impregnated, asbestos free.
 - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron.

2.12 IRON GLOBE VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron Globe Valves:

1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-85, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- d. Ends: Flanged.
- e. Stem: Brass alloy. OS &Y.
- f. Disc: Renewable bronze seat.
- g. Trim: Bronze.
- h. Packing and Gasket: Teflon impregnated, asbestos free.
- i. Handwheel: Cast iron

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine piping system for compliance³ with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of valves. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- B. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- C. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- D. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- E. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- F. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves as indicated, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate the general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- C. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- D. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- E. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- F. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- G. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:
 - 1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.

2. Check Valves: In horizontal or vertical position, between flanges.
3. Lift Check Valves: With stem upright and plumb.
4. Install all check valves a minimum of five pipe diameters downstream of pump discharge or elbow to avoid flow turbulence. In extreme cases add flow straighteners as required to correct the turbulence.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
 1. Shutoff Service: Ball or butterfly valves.
 2. Butterfly Valve Dead-End Service: Single-flange (lug) type.
 3. Throttling Service except Steam: Globe valves.
 4. Throttling Service, Steam: Globe valves.
 5. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:
 - a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with bronze disc.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or with spring or iron, metal-seat check valves.
 6. Drain Service (except Steam): Two-Piece, Full Port Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim. To be installed with NPS 3/4 hose thread outlet and hose cap with chain.
- B. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.
- C. Select valves, except wafer types, with the following end connections:
 1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
 2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
 3. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.
 4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends.
 5. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
 6. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.

3.5 HEATING-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:
 1. Bronze Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
 3. Ball Valves:

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- a. Piece: Two
 - b. Port: Full.
 - c. Material/Trim: Bronze with:
 - 1) Bronze trim.
 - 4. Bronze Swing Check Valves:
 - a. Class 150
 - b. Bronze disc.
 - 6. Bronze Globe Valves:
 - a. Class 125
 - b. Bronze disc.
- B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:
- 1. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
 - 2. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12:
 - a. 200 CWP,
 - b. Seat: EPDM.
 - c. Disc: Ductile-iron.
 - 3. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125, metal seats.
 - 4. Iron Globe Valves: Class 125.

END OF SECTION 230523

SECTION 230529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
3. Metal framing systems.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 05 for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.
2. Section 230516 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping" for pipe guides and anchors.
3. Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC" for vibration isolation devices.
4. Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for duct hangers and supports.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for HVAC piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to **ASCE/SEI 7**.
 1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
 2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

- B. Shop Drawings: **Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.** Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:
 - 1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 2. Metal framing systems.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
 - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
 - 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
 - 3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
 - 4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
 - 5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of **carbon steel**.

2.2 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.3 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Anvil International.
 - b. Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
 - c. ERICO/Michigan Hanger Co. ; ERISTRUT Div.
 - d. FNW/Ferguson Enterprises
 - e. GS Metals Corp.
 - f. Hilti, Inc.insert manufacturer's name.
 - g. Power-Strut Div. Tyco International.
 - h. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
 - i. Tolco Inc.
 - j. Unistrut; an Atkore International company.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
3. Standard: MFMA-4.
4. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with inturned lips.
5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
7. Metallic Coating:
 - a. Electroplated zinc.

B. Non-MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Anvil International; a subsidiary of Mueller Water Products, Inc.
 - b. Empire Industries, Inc.
 - c. ERICO International Corporation.
 - d. FNW/Ferguson Enterprises
 - e. Haydon Corporation.
 - f. NIBCO INC.
 - g. PHD Manufacturing, Inc.
 - h. PHS Industries, Inc.
2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
3. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4.
4. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with inturned lips.
5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
7. Coating:
 - a. Zinc.

2.4 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc.
2. Clement Support Services.
3. ERICO International Corporation.
4. National Pipe Hanger Corporation.
5. PHS Industries, Inc.
6. Pipe Shields Inc.
7. Piping Technology & Products, Inc.
8. Rilco Manufacturing Co., Inc.
9. Value Engineered Products, Inc.

- B. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping:
 - 1. Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate with 100-psig minimum compressive strength.
 - 2. Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate with 100-psig minimum compressive strength.
- C. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- D. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- E. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
 - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
 - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SEI/ASCE 7 and with requirements for seismic-restraint devices in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
- B. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- C. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
 - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1.
- D. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.

- E. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- F. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- G. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- H. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, **NPS 2-1/2** and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- I. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- J. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- K. Insulated Piping:
 - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
 - a. Piping Operating **above** Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
 - b. Piping Operating **below** Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
 - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
 - 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
 - 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
 - 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
 - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
 - b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
 - e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.

5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
6. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

3.2 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for **trapeze pipe hangers**.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

3.4 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified in Division 09.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

3.5 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.

- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- G. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- H. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 - 2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F, pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
 - 3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
 - 4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 if little or no insulation is required.
 - 5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
 - 6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.
 - 7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 - 8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 - 9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 - 10. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
 - 11. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
 - 12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 - 13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
 - 14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
 - 15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
 - 16. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
 - 17. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
 - 18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.

19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
 20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 24 if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is not necessary.
 21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 30 if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.
- I. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- J. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
 2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
 3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
 4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
 5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- K. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
 2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
 3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
 4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
 5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
 6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
 7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
 8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
 9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
 10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
 11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.

12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
 - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
 - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
 - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
 13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
 14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
 15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- L. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
 3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- M. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
 2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
 3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.
 4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
 5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
 6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
 7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
 8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:
 - a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
 - b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
 - c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.
- N. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- O. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- P. Use powder-actuated fasteners instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

END OF SECTION 230529

SECTION 230548 - VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SCOPE

- A. Provide engineered vibration isolation and restraint systems in accordance with the requirements of this section including design, engineering, materials, testing, inspections and reports.
- B. Mechanical equipment with moving parts shall be mounted on or suspended from vibration isolators to reduce the transmission of vibration and mechanically transmitted sound to the building structure.
- C. All mechanical equipment, piping and ductwork shall be restrained as required by Federal, State and Local building codes to preserve the integrity of nonstructural building components during **seismic** events to minimize hazards to occupants and reduce property damage.

1.3 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Elastomeric isolation pads.
 - 2. Elastomeric isolation mounts.
 - 3. Restrained elastomeric isolation mounts.
 - 4. Open-spring isolators.
 - 5. Housed-spring isolators.
 - 6. Restrained-spring isolators.
 - 7. Housed-restrained-spring isolators.
 - 8. Pipe-riser resilient supports.
 - 9. Resilient pipe guides.
 - 10. Air-spring isolators.
 - 11. Restrained-air-spring isolators.
 - 12. Elastomeric hangers.
 - 13. Spring hangers.
 - 14. Snubbers.
 - 15. Restraint channel bracings.
 - 16. Restraint cables.
 - 17. Seismic-restraint accessories.
 - 18. Mechanical anchor bolts.
 - 19. Adhesive anchor bolts.
 - 20. Vibration isolation equipment bases.

21. Restrained isolation roof-curb rails.
22. Certification of **seismic** restraint designs.
23. Installation supervision.
24. Design of attachment of housekeeping pads.
25. All components requiring IBC compliance and certification.
26. All inspection and test procedures for components requiring IBC compliance.
27. Restraint of all mechanical equipment, pipe and ductwork, within, on, or outdoors of the building and entry of services to the building, up to but not including, the utility connection, is part of this Specification.
28. Seismic certification of equipment

1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. IBC: International Building Code.
- B. ICC-ES: ICC-Evaluation Service.
- C. ASCE: American Society of Civil Engineers
- D. OSHPD: Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development for the State of California.
- E. Ip: Importance Factor.
- F. ESSENTIAL FACILITIES, (Occupancy Category IV, IBC-2012)
 1. Buildings and other structures that are intended to remain operational in the event of extreme environmental loading from flood, wind, snow or earthquakes.
- G. LIFE SAFETY
 1. All systems involved with fire protection, including sprinkler piping, jockey pumps, fire pumps, control panels, service water supply piping, water tanks, fire dampers, smoke exhaust systems and fire alarm panels.
 2. All mechanical, electrical, plumbing or fire protection systems that support the operation of, or are connected to, emergency power equipment, including all lighting, generators, transfer switches and transformers.
 3. All medical and life support systems.
 4. Hospital heating systems and air conditioning systems for maintaining normal ambient temperature.
 5. Automated supply, exhaust, fresh air and relief air systems on emergency control sequence, including air handlers, duct, dampers, etc., or manually-operated systems used for smoke evacuation, purge or fresh air relief by the fire department.
 6. Heating systems in any facility with Occupancy Category IV, IBC-2009 where the ambient temperature can fall below 32 degrees Fahrenheit.
- H. HIGH HAZARD

1. All gases or fluids that must be contained in a closed system which are flammable or combustible. Any gas that poses a health hazard if released into the environment and vented Fuel Cells.

1.5 REFERENCE CODES AND STANDARDS

- A. Codes and Standards: The following shall apply and conform to good engineering practices unless otherwise directed by the Federal, State or Local authorities having jurisdiction.
 1. IBC
 2. ASCE 7
 3. NFPA 13 (National Fire Protection Association)
 4. IBC 2012 replaces all references to IBC 2006, 2009.

- B. The following guides may be used for supplemental information on typical seismic installation practices. Where a conflict exists between the guides and these construction documents, the construction documents will preside.
 1. FEMA (Federal Emergency Management Agency) manuals 412, Installing Seismic Restraints for Mechanical Equipment and 414, Installing Seismic Restraints for Ductwork and Pipe.
 2. SMACNA (Sheet Metal and Air-conditioning Contractors' National Association) Seismic Restraint Manual Guidelines for Mechanical Systems, 3rd ed.
 3. ASHRAE (American Society for Heating, Refrigerating and Air-conditioning Engineers) A Practical Guide to Seismic Restraint
 4. MSS (Manufacturers Standardization Society of the Valve and Fittings Industry) MSS SP-127, Bracing for Piping Systems, Seismic – Wind – Dynamic, Design, Selection, Application.

1.6 ISOLATOR AND RESTRAINT MANUFACTURER'S RESPONSIBILITIES:

- A. Provide project specific vibration isolation and seismic restraint design prepared by a registered design professional in the state where the project is being constructed, and manufacturer certifications that the components are seismically qualified.
 1. Provide calculations to determine restraint loads resulting from seismic forces as required by IBC, Chapter 16 and ASCE 7, latest editions. Seismic calculations shall be certified by an engineer licensed in the state where the project is being constructed.

- B. Provide installation instructions and shop drawings for all materials supplied under this section of the specifications.
 1. Provide seismic restraint details with specific information relating to the materials, type, size, and locations of anchorages; materials used for bracing; attachment requirements of bracing to structure and component; and locations of transverse and longitudinal sway bracing and rod stiffeners.
 2. Provide seismic bracing layout drawings indicating the location of all seismic restraints.

- a. Each piece of rotating isolated equipment shall be tagged to clearly identify quantity and size of vibration isolators and seismic restraints.
- C. Provide, in writing, the special inspection requirements for all Designated Seismic Systems as indicated in Chapter 17 of the IBC.
- D. Provide training for installation, operation and maintenance of isolation and restraint systems.

1.7 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Flood-Restraint Loading: Per the structural drawings and specifications.
- B. Seismic-Restraint Loading:
 - 1. Site Class as Defined in the IBC: Per the structural drawings and specifications.
 - 2. Assigned Occupancy Category as Defined in the IBC: Per the structural drawings and specifications.
 - a. Component Importance Factor: 1.5.
 - 1) Life safety components required to function after an earthquake.
 - 2) Components containing hazardous or flammable materials in quantities that exceed the exempted amounts for an open system listed in Chapter 4.
 - 3) For structures with an **Occupancy Category** IV, components needed for continued operation of the facility or whose failure could impair the continued operation of the facility.
 - 4) Storage racks in occupancies open to the general public (e.g., warehouse retail stores).
 - b. Component Importance Factor: 1.0.
 - 1) All other components
 - c. Component Response Modification Factor: Per the structural drawings and specifications.
 - d. Component Amplification Factor: Per the structural drawings and specifications.
 - 3. Design Spectral Response Acceleration at Short Periods: Per the structural drawings and specifications.
 - 4. Design Spectral Response Acceleration at 1-Second Period: Per the structural drawings and specifications.

1.8 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Submittals shall include catalog cut sheets and installation instructions for each type of anchor and seismic restraint used on equipment or components being isolated and/or restrained.
 - 2. Submittals for mountings and hangers incorporating springs shall include spring diameter and free height, rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
 - 3. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of seismic-restraint component used.

- a. Tabulate types and sizes of seismic restraints, complete with report numbers and rated strength in tension and shear as evaluated by an **evaluation service member of ICC-ES**.
 - b. Annotate to indicate application of each product submitted and compliance with requirements.
 4. Interlocking Snubbers: Include ratings for horizontal, vertical, and combined loads.
- B. Shop Drawings:
1. Detail fabrication and assembly of equipment bases. Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For vibration isolation and seismic-restraint details indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
1. “Basis for Design” report: Statement from the registered design professional that the design complies with the requirements of the ASCE 7-05 Chapter 13, IBC 2009 chapter 1912 and ACI 318. In addition, the basis for compliance must also be noted, as listed below:
 - a. Project specific design documentation prepared and submitted by a registered design professional (ASCE 7, 13.2.1.1)
 - b. Submittal of the manufacturer’s certification that the isolation equipment is seismically qualified by:
 - c. An engineered analysis conforming to the requirements of Chapter 13 of ASCE 7.
 - d. Testing by a nationally recognized testing standard procedure such as ICC-ES AC 156. The substantiated seismic design capacities shall exceed the seismic demands determined by Section 13.3 of ASCE 7.
 - e. Experience data conforming to a nationally recognized procedure. The substantiated seismic design capacities shall exceed the seismic demands determined by Section 13.3 of ASCE 7.
 2. Seismic restraint load ratings must be certified and substantiated by testing or calculations under direct control of a registered professional engineer. Copies of testing and calculations must be submitted as part of submittal documents. OSHPD pre-approved restraint systems are exempt from this requirement if their pre-approval is current and based upon the IBC 2009 (i.e. OPA-07 pre-approval numbers).
 3. Include design calculations and details for selecting vibration isolators, seismic restraints, and vibration isolation bases complying with performance requirements, design criteria, and analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
 4. Design Calculations: Calculate static and dynamic loading due to equipment weight and operation, **seismic** forces required to select vibration isolators, **seismic** restraints, and for designing vibration isolation bases.

- a. Coordinate design calculations with wind load calculations required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Division 23 Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.
5. Riser Supports: Include riser diagrams and calculations showing anticipated expansion and contraction at each support point, initial and final loads on building structure, spring deflection changes, and seismic loads. Include certification that riser system has been examined for excessive stress and that none will exist.
6. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail overall dimensions, including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include auxiliary motor slides and rails, base weights, equipment static loads, power transmission, component misalignment, and cantilever loads.
7. **Seismic**-Restraint Details:
 - a. Design Analysis: To support selection and arrangement of **seismic** restraints. Include calculations of combined tensile and shear loads.
 - b. Details: Indicate fabrication and arrangement. Detail attachments of restraints to the restrained items and to the structure. Show attachment locations, methods, and spacings. Identify components, list their strengths, and indicate directions and values of forces transmitted to the structure during seismic events. Indicate association with vibration isolation devices.
 - c. Preapproval and Evaluation Documentation: By **an evaluation service member of ICC-ES**, showing maximum ratings of restraint items and the basis for approval (tests or calculations).

1.9 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of seismic bracing for HVAC piping and equipment with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and seismic restraints.
 1. Submittal drawings and calculations must be stamped by a registered professional engineer in the State where the project is being constructed who is responsible for the seismic restraint design.
 2. Calculations and restraint device submittal drawings shall specify anchor bolt type, embedment, concrete compressive strength, minimum spacing between anchors, and minimum distances of anchors from concrete edges. Concrete anchor locations shall not be near edges, stress joints, or an existing fracture. All bolts shall be ASTM A307 or better.
- B. Qualification Data: For professional engineer and testing agency.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Field quality-control test reports.

1.10 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Comply with seismic-restraint requirements in the IBC unless requirements in this Section are more stringent.
- C. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- D. Seismic-restraint devices shall have horizontal and vertical load testing and analysis and shall bear anchorage preapproval OPA number from OSHPD, preapproval by ICC-ES, or preapproval by another agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum seismic-restraint ratings. Ratings based on independent testing are preferred to ratings based on calculations. If preapproved ratings are not available, submittals based on independent testing are preferred. Calculations (including combining shear and tensile loads) to support seismic-restraint designs must be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.

1.11 SEISMIC CERTIFICATION OF EQUIPMENT

- A. Component Importance Factor. All plumbing and mechanical components shall be assigned a component importance factor. The component importance factor, I_p , shall be taken as 1.5 if any of the following conditions apply:
 - 1. The component is required to function for life-safety purposes after an earthquake.
 - 2. The component contains hazardous materials.
 - 3. The component is in or attached to an Occupancy Category IV structure and it is needed for continued operation of the facility or its failure could impair the continued operation of the facility.
- B. All other components shall be assigned a component importance factor, I_p , equal to 1.0.
- C. For equipment or components where $I_p = 1.0$.
 - 1. Submit manufacturer's certification that the equipment is seismically qualified by:
 - a. An engineered analysis conforming to the requirements of Chapter 13 of ASCE 7.
 - b. Testing by a nationally recognized testing standard procedure such as ICC-ES AC 156. The substantiated seismic design capacities shall exceed the seismic demands determined by Section 13.3 of ASCE 7.
 - c. Experience data conforming to a nationally recognized procedure. The substantiated seismic design capacities shall exceed the seismic demands determined by Section 13.3 of ASCE 7.
 - 2. The equipment and components listed below are considered rugged and shall not require Special Seismic Certification:
 - a. Valves (not in cast-iron housings, except for ductile cast iron).

- b. Pneumatic operators.
 - c. Hydraulic operators.
 - d. Motors and motor operators.
 - e. Horizontal and vertical pumps (including vacuum pumps).
 - f. Air compressors
 - g. Refrigerators and freezers.
 - h. Elevator cabs.
 - i. Underground tanks.
 - j. Equipment and components weighing not more than 20 lbs. supported directly on structures (and not mounted on other equipment or components) with supports and attachments in accordance with Chapter 13, ASCE 7.
3. Rugged equipment and components in this section are for factory assembled discrete equipment and components only and do not apply to site assembled or field assembled equipment or equipment anchorage. The list is based in part on OSHPD Code Application Notice 2-1708A.5.
- D. Special Certification requirements for Designated Seismic Systems (i.e. $I_p = 1.5$): Seismic Certificates of Compliance supplied by manufacturers shall be submitted for all components that are part of Designated Seismic Systems. In accordance with the ASCE 7, certification shall be via one of the following methods:
1. For active mechanical and electrical equipment that must remain operable following the design earthquake:
 - a. Testing as detailed by part C.1.b above.
 - b. Experience data as detailed by part C.1.c above.
 - c. Equipment that is considered “rugged” per part C.2 above.
 2. Components with hazardous contents shall be certified by the manufacturer as maintaining containment following the design earthquake by:
 - a. Testing as detailed by part C.1.b above.
 - b. Experience data as detailed by part C.1.c above.
 - c. Engineering analysis utilizing dynamic characteristics and forces. Tanks (without vibration isolators) designed by a registered design professional in accordance with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, and satisfying the force and displacement requirements of Sections 13.3.1 and 13.3.2 of ASCE 7 having an importance factor, $I_p = 1.0$ shall be considered to satisfy the Special Seismic Certification requirements on the basis of ASCE 7 Section 13.6.9.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 VIBRATION ISOLATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.

2. CalDyn (California Dynamics Corporation).
3. ISAT (International Seismic Application Technology).
4. Kinetics Noise Control.
5. Mason Industries.
6. Vibro-Acoustics
7. VMC (Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.)

B. Elastomeric Isolation Pads **P1**:

1. Fabrication: Single or multiple layers of sufficient durometer stiffness for uniform loading over pad area.
2. Size: Factory or field cut to match requirements of supported equipment.
3. Pad Material: Oil and water resistant with elastomeric properties.
4. Surface Pattern: **Ribbed** pattern. Retain first subparagraph below if galvanized-steel baseplates are adhered to the isolation pad to facilitate load distribution.
5. Load-bearing metal plates adhered to pads.

C. Double-Deflection, Elastomeric Isolation Mounts **M1**:

1. Mounting Plates:
 - a. Top Plate: Encapsulated steel load transfer top plates, factory drilled and threaded, or with threaded studs or bolts.
 - b. Baseplate: Encapsulated steel bottom plates with holes provided for anchoring to support structure.
2. Elastomeric Material: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material.

D. Restrained Elastomeric Isolation Mounts **M2**:

1. Description: All-directional isolator with seismic restraints containing two separate and opposing elastomeric elements that prevent central threaded element and attachment hardware from contacting the housing during normal operation.
 - a. Housing: Cast-ductile iron or welded steel.
 - b. Elastomeric Material: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material.

E. Spring Isolators **S1**: Freestanding, laterally stable, open-spring isolators.

1. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
2. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
3. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
4. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
5. Baseplates: Factory drilled for bolting to structure and bonded to 1/4-inch-thick, rubber isolator pad attached to baseplate underside. Baseplates shall limit floor load to 500 psig.

6. Top Plate and Adjustment Bolt: Threaded top plate with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.
- F. Restrained Spring Isolators **S2**: Freestanding, steel, open-spring isolators with seismic or limit-stop restraint.
1. Housing: Steel with resilient vertical-limit stops to prevent spring extension due to weight being removed; factory-drilled baseplate bonded to 1/4-inch-thick, neoprene or rubber isolator pad attached to baseplate underside; and adjustable equipment mounting and leveling bolt that acts as blocking during installation. Baseplates shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
 2. Restraint: Seismic or limit stop as required for equipment and authorities having jurisdiction.
 3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
 4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
 5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
 6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
- G. Housed Restrained Spring Isolators **S3**: Freestanding, Steel, Open-Spring Isolators with Vertical-Limit Stop Restraint in Two-Part Telescoping Housing:
1. Two-Part Telescoping Housing: A steel top and bottom frame separated by an elastomeric material and enclosing the spring isolators. Housings are equipped with **adjustable** snubbers to limit vertical movement.
 - a. Drilled base housing for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
 - b. Threaded top housing with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.
 2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
 3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
 4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
 5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
 6. Elastomeric pad: For high frequency absorption at the base of the spring.
- H. Elastomeric Hangers **H1**:
1. Description: Elastomeric Mount in a Steel Frame with Upper and Lower Steel Hanger Rods
 - a. Frame: Steel, fabricated with a connection for an upper threaded hanger rod and an opening on the underside to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular lower hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.

- b. Dampening Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material with a projecting bushing for the underside opening preventing steel to steel contact.
- I. Spring Hangers **H2**: Combination coil-spring and elastomeric-insert hanger with spring and insert in compression.
 - 1. Description: Combination Coil-Spring and Elastomeric-Insert Hanger with spring and Insert in Compression.
 - a. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
 - b. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
 - c. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
 - d. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
 - e. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
 - f. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame.
 - g. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.
- J. Spring Hangers with Vertical-Limit Stop **H3**: Combination coil-spring and elastomeric-insert hanger with spring and insert in compression.
 - 1. Description: Combination Coil-Spring and Elastomeric-Insert Hanger with spring and insert in Compression and vertical limit stop.
 - a. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
 - b. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
 - c. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
 - d. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
 - e. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
 - f. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame.
 - g. Adjustable Vertical Stop: Steel washer with neoprene washer "up-stop" on lower threaded rod.
 - h. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.
- K. Pipe Riser Resilient Support **R1**:
 - 1. Description: All-directional, acoustical pipe anchor consisting of 2 steel tubes separated by a minimum of 1/2-inch-thick neoprene.

- a. Vertical-Limit Stops: Steel and neoprene vertical-limit stops arranged to prevent vertical travel in both directions.
- b. Maximum Load Per Support: 500 psig on isolation material providing equal isolation in all directions.

L. Resilient Pipe Guides **R2**:

1. Description: Telescopic arrangement of two steel tubes or post and sleeve arrangement separated by a minimum 1/2-inch-thick neoprene.
 - a. Factory-Set Height Guide with Shear Pin: Shear pin shall be removable and reinsertable to allow for selection of pipe movement. Guides shall be capable of motion to meet location requirements.

M. Horizontal Thrust Restraints **T1**: Modified specification S2 isolator.

1. Horizontal thrust restraints shall consist of a modified specification S2 spring mounting. Restraint springs shall have the same deflection as the isolator springs.
2. The assembly shall be preset at the factory and fine tuned in the field to allow for a maximum of 1/4" movement from stop to maximum thrust.
3. The assemblies shall be furnished with rod and angle brackets for attachment to both the equipment and duct work or the equipment and the structure.
4. Restraints shall be attached at the center line of thrust and symmetrically on both sides of the unit.

2.2 RESTRAINED VIBRATION ISOLATION ROOF-CURB RAILS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.
2. CalDyn (California Dynamics Corporation).
3. ISAT (International Seismic Application Technology).
4. Kinetics Noise Control.
5. Mason Industries.
6. Vibro-Acoustics
7. VMC (Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.)

B. Restrained Vibration Isolation Roof-Curb Rails: **RC1**:

C. Description: Factory-assembled, fully enclosed, insulated, air- and watertight curb rail designed to resiliently support equipment and to withstand seismic and wind forces.

D. Upper Frame: The upper frame shall provide continuous support for equipment and shall be captive to resiliently resist **seismic** forces.

E. Lower Support Assembly: The lower support assembly shall be a formed sheet-metal section containing adjustable and removable steel springs that support upper frame. Lower support assembly shall have a means for attaching to building structure and a wood nailer for attaching

roof materials, and shall be insulated with a minimum of 2 inches of rigid, glass-fiber insulation on inside of assembly.

- F. Spring Isolators: Adjustable, restrained spring isolators shall be mounted on 1/4-inch-thick, elastomeric vibration isolation pads and shall have access ports, for level adjustment, with removable waterproof covers at all isolator locations. Isolators shall be located so they are accessible for adjustment at any time during the life of the installation without interfering with the integrity of the roof.
 - 1. Restrained Spring Isolators: Freestanding, steel, open-spring isolators with seismic and wind restraint.
 - a. Housing: Steel with resilient vertical-limit stops and adjustable equipment mounting and leveling bolt.
 - b. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
 - c. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
 - d. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
 - e. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
- G. Snubber Bushings: All-directional, elastomeric snubber bushings at least 1/4 inch-thick.
- H. Water Seal: Galvanized sheet metal with EPDM seals at corners, attached to upper support frame, extending down past wood nailer of lower support assembly, and counterflashed over roof materials.

2.3 VIBRATION ISOLATION EQUIPMENT BASES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.
 - 2. CalDyn (California Dynamics Corporation).
 - 3. ISAT (International Seismic Application Technology).
 - 4. Kinetics Noise Control.
 - 5. Mason Industries.
 - 6. Vibro-Acoustics
 - 7. VMC (Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.)
- B. Steel Bases and Rails **SB1**: Factory-fabricated, welded, structural-steel bases and rails.
 - 1. Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than 1-inch clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide bases or rails.
 - a. Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.
 - 2. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M. Bases shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment.

3. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.
- C. Inertia Base **IB1**: Factory-fabricated, welded, structural-steel bases and rails ready for placement of cast-in-place concrete.
1. Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than **[1-inch] 2-inch** clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide bases or rails.
 - a. Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.
 2. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M. Bases shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment.
 3. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.
 4. Fabrication: Fabricate steel templates to hold equipment anchor-bolt sleeves and anchors in place during placement of concrete. Obtain anchor-bolt templates from supported equipment manufacturer.

2.4 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.
 2. CalDyn (California Dynamics Corporation).
 3. ISAT (International Seismic Application Technology).
 4. Kinetics Noise Control.
 5. Mason Industries.
 6. Vibro-Acoustics
 7. VMC (Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.)
- B. General Requirements for Restraint Components: Rated strengths, features, and applications shall be as defined in reports by **an evaluation service member of ICC-ES**.
1. Structural Safety Factor: Allowable strength in tension, shear, and pullout force of components shall be at least four times the maximum seismic forces to which they will be subjected.
- C. Snubbers: Factory fabricated using welded structural-steel shapes and plates, anchor bolts, and replaceable resilient isolation washers and bushings.
1. Anchor bolts for attaching to concrete shall be seismic-rated, drill-in, and stud-wedge or female-wedge type.
 2. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: Oil- and water-resistant neoprene.
 3. Maximum 1/4-inch air gap, and minimum 1/4-inch-thick resilient cushion.
- D. Channel Support System: MFMA-4, shop- or field-fabricated support assembly made of slotted steel channels with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building

structure at the other end and other matching components and with corrosion-resistant coating; and rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces.

- E. Restraint Cables: ASTM A 603 galvanized or ASTM A 492 stainless-steel cables with end connections made of steel assemblies with thimbles, brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for restraining cable service; and with a minimum of two clamping bolts for cable engagement. Cables located in exterior or other wet locations such as wash-down areas shall be stainless steel.
- F. Hanger Rod Stiffener: Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections or reinforcing steel angle clamped to hanger rod.
- G. Hinged and Swivel Brace Attachments: Multifunctional steel connectors for attaching hangers to rigid channel bracings and restraint cables.
- H. Bushings for Floor-Mounted Equipment Anchor Bolts: Neoprene bushings designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of anchor bolts and studs.
- I. Bushing Assemblies for Wall-Mounted Equipment Anchorage: Assemblies of neoprene elements and steel sleeves designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of attachment devices used.
- J. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: One-piece, molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene, with a flat washer face.
- K. Mechanical Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type in zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488. Minimum length of eight times diameter.
- L. Adhesive Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and capsule anchor system containing polyvinyl or urethane methacrylate-based resin and accelerator, or injected polymer or hybrid mortar adhesive. Provide anchor bolts and hardware with zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.
- M. All post installed anchors utilized in the seismic design must be qualified for use in cracked concrete and approved for use with seismic loads.
- N. Expansion anchors shall not be used for anchorage of equipment with motors rated over 10 HP with the exception of undercut expansion anchors. Spring or internally isolated equipment are exempt from this requirement.
- O. All beam clamps utilized for vertical support must also incorporate retention straps.
- P. All seismic brace arm anchorages to include concrete anchors, beam clamps, truss connections, etc., must be approved for use with seismic loads.

2.5 FACTORY FINISHES

- A. Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and tested equipment before shipping.
 - 1. Powder coating on springs and housings.
 - 2. All hardware shall be galvanized. Hot-dip galvanize metal components for exterior use.
 - 3. Baked enamel or powder coat for metal components on isolators for interior use.
 - 4. Color-code or otherwise mark vibration isolation and **seismic** control devices to indicate capacity range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation and **seismic** control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in **Divison 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."**
- B. Coordinate size, shape, reinforcement and attachment of all housekeeping pads supporting vibration/seismically rated equipment. Concrete shall have a minimum compressive strength of 4,000 psi or as specified by the project engineer. Coordinate size, thickness, doweling, and reinforcing of concrete equipment housekeeping pads and piers with vibration isolation and seismic restraint device manufacturer to ensure adequate space, embedment and prevent edge breakout failures. Pads and piers must be adequately doweled in to structural slab.
- C. Housekeeping pads shall have adequate space to mount equipment and seismic restraint devices.
- D. Housekeeping Pads must be adequately reinforced and adequately sized for proper installation of equipment anchors and shall also be large enough and thick enough to ensure adequate edge distance and embedment depth for restraint anchor bolts to avoid housekeeping pad breakout failure. Refer seismic restraint manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Coordinate with vibration/seismic restraint manufacturer and the structural engineer of record to locate and size structural supports underneath vibration/seismically restrained equipment (e.g. roof curbs, cooling towers and other similar equipment). Installation of all seismic restraint materials specified in this section shall be accomplished as per the manufacturer's written

instructions. Adjust isolators and restraints after piping systems have been filled and equipment is at its operating weight, following the manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 APPLICATIONS

- A. Multiple Pipe Supports: Secure pipes to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by **an evaluation service member of ICC-ES** and per the seismic restraint manufacturer's design.
- B. Hanger Rod Stiffeners: Install hanger rod stiffeners where indicated or scheduled on Drawings to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods due to seismic forces.
- C. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads within specified loading limits.

3.4 VIBRATION-CONTROL DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations.
- B. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Hydronic Piping" for piping flexible connections.
- C. Isolate all mechanical equipment 0.75 hp and over per the isolator and seismic restraint schedule and these specifications. Vibration isolators shall be selected in accordance with the equipment, pipe or duct weight distribution so as to produce reasonably uniform deflections
- D. All isolation materials and seismic restraints shall be of the same vendor and shall be selected and certified using published or factory certified data
- E. Installation of all vibration isolation materials, flexible connectors and supplemental equipment bases specified in this section shall be accomplished as per the manufacturer's written instructions with mountings adjusted to level equipment. Any variance or non-compliance with the manufacturer's instructions shall be reviewed and approved in writing by the manufacturer or corrected by the contractor in an approved manner.
- F. Installation of vibration isolators must not cause any change of position of equipment, piping or duct work resulting in stresses or misalignment.
- G. Locate isolation hangers as near to the overhead support structure as possible.
- H. No rigid connections between isolated components and the building structure shall be made that degrades the noise and vibration control system herein specified. "Building" includes, but is not limited to, slabs, beams, columns, studs and walls. "Components" includes, but is not limited to, mechanical equipment, piping and ducts.
- I. Coordinate work with other trades to avoid rigid contact with the building.

- J. Any conflicts with other trades which will result in rigid contact with equipment or piping due to inadequate space or other unforeseen conditions should be brought to the architects/engineers attention prior to installation. Corrective work necessitated by conflicts after installation shall be at the responsible contractor's expense.
- K. Bring to the architects/engineers attention any discrepancies between the specifications and the field conditions or changes required due to specific equipment selection, prior to installation. Corrective work necessitated by discrepancies after installation shall be at the responsible contractor's expense.
- L. Correct, at no additional cost, all installations which are deemed defective in workmanship and materials at the contractor's expense.
- M. Use horizontal thrust restraints **T1** to protect Air handling equipment and centrifugal fans against excessive displacement which results from high air thrust when thrust forces exceed 10% of the equipment weight.
- N. Isolated equipment, duct and piping located on roofs must be attached to the structure. Supports (e.g., sleepers) that are not attached to the structure will not be acceptable.
- O. On completion of installation of all isolation materials and before startup of isolated equipment all debris shall be cleared from areas surrounding and from beneath all isolated equipment, leaving equipment free to move on the isolation supports.
- P. All floor mounted isolated equipment shall be protected with specification M1, M2, S1, S2 or S3 isolator.
- Q. Horizontal Pipe Isolation: All HVAC pumped water, pumped condensate, glycol, and refrigerant piping size 1-1/4" and larger within mechanical rooms shall be isolated. Outside equipment rooms this piping shall be isolated for the greater of 50' or 100 pipe diameters from rotating equipment. For the first three (3) support locations from externally isolated equipment provide specification H2 or H3 hangers or specification S1, S2 or S3 mounts with the same deflection as equipment isolators (max 2"). All other piping within the equipment rooms shall be isolated with the same specification isolators with a 3/4" minimum deflection. Steam piping size 1-1/4" and larger which is within an equipment room and connected to rotating equipment shall be isolated for three (3) support locations from the equipment. Provide specification H2 or H3 hangers, or specification S1 or S2 mounts with the same deflection as equipment isolators but a minimum of 3/4".
- R. Install full line size flexible pipe connectors at the inlet and outlet of each pump, cooling tower, condenser, chiller, coiling connections and where shown on the drawings. All connectors shall be suitable for use at the temperature, pressure, and service encountered at the point of installation and operation. End fitting connectors shall conform to the pipefitting schedule. Control rods or protective braid must be used to limit elongation to 3/8". Flexible connectors shall not be required for suspended in-line pumps.
- S. All plumbing pumped water, piping size 1-1/4" and larger within mechanical rooms shall be isolated the same as HVAC piping above. Isolators are not required for any plumbing pumped water, pumped condensate, and steam piping outside of mechanical rooms unless listed in the isolation schedule.

- T. Pipe Riser Isolation: The operating weight of all variable temperature vertical pipe risers 1-1/4" and larger, requiring isolation where specifically shown and detailed on riser drawings shall be fully supported by specification M1, M2 or R1 supports. S1, S2, S3, H2 or H3 steel spring deflection isolators with minimum 3/4-inch minimum shall be in those locations where added deflection is required due to pipe expansion and contraction. Spring deflection shall be a minimum of 4 times the anticipated deflection change. Springs shall be selected to keep the riser in tension. Height saving brackets used with isolators having 2.5" deflection or greater shall be of the precompression type to limit exposed bolt length. Specification R1 riser supports shall be installed near the center point of the riser to anchor the riser when spring isolation is used. Specification R2 riser guides may be used in conjunction with spring isolators per design calculations. Pipe risers up through 16" shall be supported at intervals of every third floor of the building. Pipe risers 18" and over, every second floor. Wall sleeves for take-offs from riser shall be sized for insulation O.D. plus two times the anticipated movement to prevent binding. Horizontal take-offs and at upper and lower elbows shall be supported with spring isolators as required to accommodate anticipated movement. In addition to submittal data requirements previously outlined, riser diagrams and calculations shall be submitted for approval. Calculations must show anticipated expansion and contraction at each support point, initial and final loads on the building structure, and spring deflection changes. Submittal data shall include certification that the riser system has been examined for excessive stresses and that none will exist if installed per design proposed.
- U. Where riser pipes pass through cored holes, core diameters shall be a maximum of 2" larger than pipe O.D. including insulation. Cored holes must be packed with resilient material or firestop as provided by other sections of this specification or local codes. Where seismic restraint is required specification isolator S3 shall support risers and provide longitudinal restraint at floors where thermal expansion is minimal and will not bind isolator restraints.
- V. Duct Isolation: Isolate all duct work with a static pressure 2" W.C. and over in equipment rooms and to minimum of 50 feet from the fan or air handler. Use specification type H2 or H3 hangers or type S1 or S2 floor mounts.

3.5 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICE INSTALLATION

A. Equipment Restraints:

1. On projects with Seismic Site Class A or B, seismic design or restraint is not required.
2. On projects with Seismic Design Category C: Components with an importance factor of 1.0 do not require seismic design or restraint.
3. Install seismic snubbers on HVAC equipment mounted on vibration isolators. Locate snubbers as close as possible to vibration isolators and bolt to equipment base and supporting structure.
4. Install resilient bolt isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125 inch.
5. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by **an evaluation service member of ICC-ES** providing required submittals for component.

6. Suspended Equipment: All suspended equipment that meets any of the following conditions requires seismic restraints as specified by the supplier:
 - a. Rigidly attached to pipe or duct that is 75 lbs. and greater,
 - b. Items greater than 20 lbs and distribution systems weighing more than 5 lbs/lineal foot, with an importance factor of 1.0 hung independently or with flexible connections.
 - c. Possibility of consequential damage.
 - d. For importance factors greater than 1.0 all suspended equipment requires seismic restraint regardless of the above notes.
 - e. Wall mounted equipment weighing more than 20 lbs.
 - f. Exemptions:
 - 1) Equipment weighing less than 20 lbs and distribution systems weighing less than 5 lbs/lineal foot, with an $I_p = 1.0$ and where flexible connections exist between the component and associated ductwork, piping or conduit.
7. Base Mounted Equipment: All base mounted equipment that meets any of the following conditions requires attachments and seismic restraints as specified by the supplier:
 - a. Connections to or containing hazardous material,
 - b. With an overturning moment.
 - c. Weight greater than 400 lbs.
 - d. Mounted on a stand 4 ft. or more from the floor
 - e. Possibility of consequential damage.
 - f. For importance factors greater than 1.0 all base mounted items require seismic restraints regardless of the above notes.
 - g. For equipment with high center of gravity additional cable restraints shall be furnished, as required by isolation manufacturer, to limit forces and motion caused by rocking.
 - h. Exemptions:
 - 1) Floor or curb-mounted equipment weighing less than 400 lbs and not resiliently mounted, where the Importance Factor, $I_p = 1.0$, the components are mounted at 4 feet or less above a floor level, flexible connections between the components and associated duct work, piping and conduit are provided and there is no possibility of consequential damage.
8. Roof Mounted Equipment:
 - a. To be installed on a structural frame, seismically rated roof curb, or structural curb frame mechanically connected to the structure. Items shall not be mounted onto sleepers or pads that are not mechanically and rigidly attached to the structure. Restraint must be adequate to resist both seismic and wind forces.
 - b. Roof curbs shall be installed directly to building structural steel or concrete roof deck and not to top of steel deck or roofing material.
 - c. Exemptions:
 - 1) Curb-mounted mushroom, exhaust and vent fans with curb area less than nine square feet are excluded.
9. Rigid Mounted Equipment:

- a. Anchor floor and wall mounted equipment to the structure as per the stamped seismic certifications / drawings.
 - b. For equipment with high center of gravity additional cable restraints shall be furnished, as required by isolation manufacturer, to limit forces and motion caused by rocking.
 - c. Suspended equipment shall be restrained using seismic cable restraints, or struts, and hanger rods as per the stamped seismic certifications / drawings.
10. Vibration Isolated Equipment:
- a. Seismic control shall not compromise the performance of noise control, vibration isolation or fire stopping systems.
 - b. Equipment supported by vibration-isolation hangers shall be detailed and installed with approximately a 1/8" gap between the isolation hangers and the structure. Isolators at restraint locations must be fitted with uplift limit stops.
- B. Install seismic snubbers on HVAC equipment mounted on vibration isolators. Locate snubbers as close as possible to vibration isolators and bolt to equipment base and supporting structure.
- C. Install resilient bolt isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125 inch.
- D. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by **an evaluation service member of ICC-ES** providing required submittals for component.
- E. Installation and adjustment of all seismic restraints specified in this section shall be accomplished as per the manufacturer's written instructions. Any deviation from the manufacturer's instructions shall be reviewed and approved by the manufacturer.
- F. Piping Restraints:
1. Comply with requirements in MSS SP-127.
 4. Seismically restrain piping, with an $I_p = 1.0$, located in boiler rooms, mechanical equipment rooms and refrigeration equipment rooms that is 1¼" I.D. and larger.
 5. Seismically restrain all other $I_p = 1.0$ piping 2½" diameter and larger.
 6. Seismically restrain all $I_p = 1.5$ piping larger than 1" diameter.
 7. Branch lines may not be used to brace main lines.
 8. Exemptions:
 - a. All high deformability pipe 3" or less in diameter suspended by individual hanger rods where $I_p = 1.0$.
 - b. High deformability pipe or conduit in Seismic Design Category C, 2" or less in diameter suspended by individual hanger rods where $I_p = 1.5$.
 - c. High deformability pipe in Seismic Design Category D, E or F, 1" or less in diameter suspended by individual hanger rods where $I_p = 1.5$.
 - d. All clevis supported pipe runs installed less than 12" from the top of the pipe to the underside of the support point and trapeze supported pipe suspended by hanger rods having a distance less than 12" in length from the underside of the pipe support to the support point of the structure.
 - e. Piping systems, including their supports, designed and constructed in accordance with ASME B31.

- f. Piping systems, including their supports, designed and constructed in accordance with NFPA, provided they meet the force and displacement requirements of Section 13.3.1 and 13.3.2 (ASCE 7).
- G. Install flexible metal hose loops in piping which crosses building seismic joints, sized for the anticipated amount of movement.
- H. Install flexible piping connectors where adjacent sections or branches are supported by different structural elements, and where the connections terminate with connection to equipment that is anchored to a different structural element from the one supporting the connections as they approach equipment.
- I. Where pipe sizes reduce below dimensions required for seismic, the final restraint shall be installed at the transition location.
- J. Restraint Spacing For Piping: Sizes shown are maximum. Actual spacing determined by calculation.
 1. For non-ductile piping (e.g., cast iron, PVC) space transverse supports a maximum of 20' o.c., and longitudinal supports a maximum of 40' o.c.
 2. For piping with hazardous material inside (e.g., natural gas, medical gas) space Transverse supports a maximum of 20' o.c., and longitudinal supports a maximum of 40' o.c.
 3. For pipe risers, restrain the piping at floor penetrations using the same spacing requirements as above.
 4. For all other ductile piping see Table "A" below
- K. Seismic Restraint of Ductwork: Seismically restrain per specific code requirements, all ductwork listed below (unless otherwise indicated on the drawings), using seismic cable restraints: (Ductwork not meeting criteria listed below is to be "Exempt")
 1. Restrain rectangular ductwork with cross sectional area of 6 square feet or larger. Duct with and an importance factor of 1.5 must be braced with no exceptions regardless of size or distance requirements.
 2. Restrain round ducts with diameters of 28" or larger. Duct with an importance factor of 1.5 must be braced with no exceptions regardless of size or distance requirements.
 3. Restrain flat oval ducts the same as rectangular ducts of the same nominal size.
 4. Duct must be reinforced at the restraint locations. Reinforcement shall consist of an additional angle on top of the ductwork that is attached to the support hanger rods. Ductwork is to be attached to both upper angle and lower trapeze. Additional reinforcing is not required if duct sections are mechanically fastened together with frame bolts and positively fastened to the duct support suspension system.
 5. A group of ducts may be combined in a larger frame so that the combined weights and dimensions of the ducts are less than or equal to the maximum weight and dimensions of the duct for which bracing details are selected.
 6. Walls, including gypsum board non-bearing partitions, which have ducts running through them, may replace a typical transverse brace. Provide channel framing around ducts and solid blocking between the duct and frame.
 7. If ducts are supported by angles, channels or struts, ducts shall be fastened to it at seismic brace locations in lieu of duct reinforcement.
 8. All ductwork weighing more than 17 lb/ft.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

9. Exemptions:
 - a. Duct runs supported at locations by two rods less than 12 inches in length from the structural support to the structural connection to the ductwork. This exemption does not apply to ducts with an importance factor of 1.5.
 10. See Table "A" below for restraint spacing.
- L. Exemptions do not apply for:
1. Life Safety or High Hazard Components
 - a. Including gas, fire protection, medical gas, fuel oil and compressed air needed for the continued operation of the facility or whose failure could impair the facility's continued operation, Occupancy Category IV, IBC-2009 as listed in Section 1.3 B regardless of governing code for HVAC, Plumbing, Electrical piping or equipment. (A partial list is illustrated.) High Hazard is additionally classified as any system handling flammable, combustible or toxic material. Typical systems not excluded are additionally listed below.
 2. Piping
 - a. Fuel oil, gasoline, natural gas, medical gas, steam, compressed air or any piping containing hazardous, flammable, combustible, toxic or corrosive materials. Fire protection standpipe, risers and mains. Fire Sprinkler Branch Lines must be end tied.
 3. Duct
 - a. Smoke evacuation duct or fresh air make up connected to emergency system, emergency generator exhaust, boiler breeching or as used by the fire department on manual override.
 4. Equipment
 - a. Previously excluded non life safety duct mounted systems such as fans, variable air volume boxes, heat exchangers and humidifiers having a weight greater than 75 lbs require independent seismic bracing.
- M. Spacing Chart For Suspended Components:

Table "A" Seismic Bracing (Maximum Allowable Spacing Shown- Actual Spacing to Be Determined by Calculation)			
Equipment	On Center Trans-verse	On Center Longitudi-nal	Change Of Direction
Duct			
All Sizes	30 Feet	60 Feet	4 Feet
Pipe Threaded, Welded, Soldered Or Grooved			
To 16"	40 Feet	80 Feet	4 Feet
18" - 28"	30 Feet	60 Feet	4 Feet
30" - 40"	20 Feet	60 Feet	4 Feet
42" & Larger	10 Feet	30 Feet	4 Feet

- N. Roof mounted duct is to be installed on sleepers or frames mechanically connected to the building structure. Roof anchors and seismic cables or frames shall be used to resist seismic and wind loading. Wind loading factors shall be determined by the registered design professional.
- O. Where duct sizes reduce below dimensions required for seismic restraint the final restraint shall be installed at the transition location.
- P. Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.
- Q. Install bushing assemblies for anchor bolts for floor-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media between anchor bolt and mounting hole in concrete base.
- R. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.
- S. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.
- T. Seismically Rated Beam Clamps are required where welding to or penetrations to steel beams are not approved.
- U. Drilled-in Anchors:
 1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify the structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
 2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
 3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
 4. Adhesive Anchors: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.

5. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
6. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless-steel anchors for exterior applications.

3.6 ACCOMMODATION OF DIFFERENTIAL SEISMIC MOTION

- A. Install flexible connections in piping where they cross seismic joints, where adjacent sections or branches are supported by different structural elements, and where the connections terminate with connection to equipment that is anchored to a different structural element from the one supporting the connections as they approach equipment. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Hydronic Piping" for piping flexible connections.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
 1. A representative of the vibration isolation system manufacturer shall review the project installation and provide documentation indicating conformance to vibration isolation design intent
- C. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.
 1. The installing contractor shall submit a report upon request to the building architect and/or engineer, including the manufacturer's representative's final report, indicating that all seismic restraint material has been properly installed, or steps that are to be taken by the contractor to properly complete the seismic restraint work as per the specifications.

3.8 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust isolators after piping system is at operating weight.
- B. Adjust leveling devices as required to distribute loading uniformly on isolators. Shim units as required where leveling devices cannot be used to distribute loading properly.
 1. Adjust active height of spring isolators.
- C. Adjust limit stops on restrained spring isolators to mount equipment at normal operating height. After equipment installation is complete, adjust limit stops so they are out of contact during normal operation.
- D. Adjust restraints to permit free movement of equipment within normal mode of operation.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

EQUIPMENT ISOLATION SCHEDULE									
LOCATION EQUIPMENT (1)	A' CRITICAL (35'-50' SPAN)			B' UPPER STORY (20'-35' SPAN)			C' GRADE		
	ISOLATOR	MINIMUM	BASE	ISOLATOR	MINIMUM	BASE	ISOLATOR	MINIMUM	BASE
	TYPE	DEFLECTION (IN)	TYPE	TYPE	DEFLECTION (IN)	TYPE	TYPE	DEFLECTION (IN)	TYPE
AIR HANDLING UNITS									
FLOOR MOUNTED									
UP TO 15 HP	S3	1.5		S3	0.75		S3	0.75	
20 HP & OVER	S3	2.5	SB1	S3	1.5		S3	0.75	
SUSPENDED									
UP TO 15 HP	H3	1.75		H3	1		H3	1	
20 HP & OVER	H3	2.5	SB1	H3	1.75		H3	1	
HIGH PRESSURE FAN SECTIONS									
UP TO 30 HP	S1	2.5	IB1	S3	1.5	IB1	S3	0.75	IB1
40 HP & OVER	S1	3.5	IB1	S3	2.5	IB1	S3	1.5	IB1
CENTRIFUGAL FANS									
CL. I & II UP TO 54-112"W.D.									
UPT015HP	S3	1.5	SB1	S3	0.75	SB1	S3	0.75	SB1
20-50 HP	S1	2.5	IB1	S3	1.5	IB1	S3	0.75	SB1
60 HP & OVER	S1	3.5	IB1	S1	2.5	IB1	S3	1.5	SB1
CL. I & II 60" W.D. & OVER I ALL CL. III FANS									
UPT015HP	S1	2.5	IB1	S3	1.5	IB1	S3	0.75	IB1
20-50 H P	S1	2.5	IB1	S1	2.5	IB1	S3	1.5	IB1
60 HP & OVER	S1	3.5	IB1	S1	2.5	IB1	S3	1.5	IB1
AXIAL FLOWFANS									
FLOOR MTD.									
UP TO 15 HP	S3	1.5	SB1	S3	0.75		S3	0.75	
20 HP & OVER	S1	3.5	IB1	S3	1.5		S3	0.75	
SUSPENDED									
UP TO 15 HP	H3	1.75	SB1	H3	1		H3	1	
20 HP & OVER	H3	2.5	SB1	H3	1.75	SB1	H3	1.5	
VENT (UTILITY SETS)									
FLOOR MTD	S3	1.5	SB1	S3	0.75		S3	0.75	
SUSPENDED	H3	1.75	SB1	H3	1		H3	0.75	
CABINET FANS, FANS SECTIONS									
FLOOR MTD.									
UP TO 15 HP	S3	1.5		S3	0.75		S3	0.75	
20 HP & OVER	S1	2.5	IB1	S3	1.5		S3	0.75	
SUSPENDED									
UP TO 15 HP	H3	1.75		H3	1		H3	0.75	
20 HP & OVER	H3	2.5	SB1	H3	1.75		H3	1.75	
PUMPS									
FLOOR MTD.									
UP TO 15 HP	S3	0.75	IB1	S3	0.75	IB1	SRVD	0.4	IB1
7-112 HP & OVER	S3	1.5	IB1	S3	1.5	IB1	S3	0.75	IB1
SUSPENDED INLINE	H3	1.75		H3	1.75		H3	1	
REFRIGERATION UNITS									
RECIPROCATING COMPRESSORS	S1	2.5	IB1	S3	1.5	IB1	S3	0.75	IB1
RECIPROCATING COND. UNITS & CHILLERS	S1	2.5	IB1	S3	1.5		S3	0.75	
HERMETIC CENTRIFUGALS	S3	2.5		S3	1.5		P1	0.15	
OPEN CENTRIFUGALS	S1	2.5	IB1	S3	1.5	IB1	P1	0.15	
ABSORPTION MACHINES	S3	1.5		S3	0.75		P1	0.15	
AIR COMPRESSORS									
TANK TYPE (HORIZONTAL TANK)	S1	2.5	IB1	S3	1.5		S3	0.75	
TANK TYPE (VERTICAL TANK)	S1	2.5	IB1	S3	1.5	IB1	S3	0.75	
COOLING TOWERS & CLOSED CIRCUIT COOLERS									
UP TO 500 TONS	S3	2.5		S3	0.75		P1	0.15	
OVER 500 TONS	S3	4.5		S3	2.5		P1	0.15	
AIR COOLED CONDENSERS									
UP TO 50 TONS	S3	1.5		S3	0.75		P1	0.15	
OVER 50 TONS	S3	2.5		S3	1.5		P1	0.15	
ROOFTOP AIR CONDITIONING UNITS									
REQUIRING WEATHER SEAL									
UP TO 5000 CFM (12 TON)	S1	1.5	RC1	S1	0.75	RC1			
OVER 5000 CFM (12 TON)	S3	2.5	RC1	S3	1.5	RC1			
OTHER TYPES									
UP TO 25 TONS	S3	1.5		S3	1.5				
OVER 25 TONS	S3	2.5		S3	1.5				
BOILER (PACKAGE TYPE)									
ALL SIZES	S3	1.5		S3	0.75		P1	0.15	
ENGINE DRIVEN GENERATORS									
UP TO 60 HP	S1	2.5	IB1	S3	1.5	IB1	S3	0.75	

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

75 HP & OVER	S1	3.5	IB1	S3	2.5	IB1	S3	0.75	
--------------	----	-----	-----	----	-----	-----	----	------	--

NOTES:

- 1) Thrust restraints required on all high-pressure fan section, suspended axial-flow fans and on floor-mounted axial fans operating at 3.0" S.P. or greater.

END OF SECTION 230548

SECTION 230550 - OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE OF HVAC SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. All pertinent sections of Division 21, 22, & 23 Mechanical General Requirements, are part of the work of this Section. Division 1 is part of this and all other sections of these specifications.
 - 1. Testing and Balancing is specified in section 230594.
 - 2. Training and Instructions to Owner's Representative is specified in section 230100.

1.2 SCOPE OF WORK

- A. Submission of Operating and Maintenance Manuals complete with Balancing reports. (Coordinate with Division 1).
- B. Coordination of work required for system commissioning.
- C. Provide a hard copy and an electronic copy on CD of the O and M manual fully searchable in PDF format.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit product data in accordance with Division 1 and Section 230100. Submit the following:
 - 1. Sample of O and M manual outline.
 - 2. Hard copy and an electronic copy on CD of the O and M manual fully searchable in PDF format. Both the hard copy and the electronic copy are to be fully indexed. The electronic copy shall also have a linked index.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 O & M MANUALS

- A. The operating and maintenance manuals shall be as follows:
 - 1. Binders shall be red buckram with easy-view metal for size 8-1/2 x 11-inch sheets, with capacity expandable from 2 inches to 3-1/2 inches as required for the project. Construction shall be rivet-through with library corners. No. 12 backbone and lining shall be the same material as the cover. The front cover and backbone shall be foil-stamped in white as follows: (coordinate with **Division 01**)

OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE
MANUAL

FOR THE
SALT LAKE CITY MOSQUITO ABATEMENT DISTRICT

2018

VOLUME No. ()

VAN BOERUM & FRANK ASSOCIATES, INC.
MECHANICAL ENGINEER

DESIGN WEST ARCHITECTS

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS:

- A. Work under this section shall be performed in concert with the contractor performing the system testing and balancing. Six (6) copies of the manuals shall be furnished to the Architect for distribution to the owner.
- B. The "Start-Up and Operation" section is one of the most important in the manual. Information in this section shall be complete and accurately written and shall be verified with the actual equipment on the job, such as switches, starters, relays, automatic controls, etc. A step-by-step start-up procedure shall be described.
- C. The manuals shall include air and water-balancing reports, system commissioning procedures, start-up tests and reports, equipment and system performance test reports, warranties, and certificates of training given to the owner's representatives.

An index sheet typed on AICO Gold-Line indexes shall be provided in the front of the binder. The manual shall include the following:

SYSTEM DESCRIPTIONS

START-UP PROCEDURE AND OPERATION OF SYSTEM

MAINTENANCE AND LUBRICATION TABLE

OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE BULLETINS

AUTOMATIC TEMPERATURE CONTROL DESCRIPTION OF OPERATION,
INTERLOCK AND CONTROL DIAGRAMS, AND CONTROL PANELS.

AIR AND WATER SYSTEM BALANCING REPORTS

EQUIPMENT WARRANTIES AND TRAINING CERTIFICATES

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

SYSTEM COMMISSIONING REPORTS

EQUIPMENT START-UP CERTIFICATES

END OF SECTION 230550

SECTION 230553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Equipment labels.
 - 2. Danger, Warning and Caution signs and labels.
 - 3. Pipe labels.
 - 4. Duct labels.
 - 5. Stencils.
 - 6. Valve tags.
 - 7. Danger tags.
 - 8. Warning tags.
 - 9. Caution tags.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.
- C. Valve numbering scheme.
- D. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

A. Metal Labels for Equipment:

1. Material and Minimum Thickness, predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware:
 - a. Brass, 0.032-inch .
2. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
3. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
4. Fasteners: Stainless-steel;
 - a. Rivets or self-tapping screws
5. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

B. Plastic Labels for Equipment:

1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware, 1/16 inch thick.
2. Letter Color:
 - a. Black.
3. Background Color:
 - a. White.
4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel;
 - a. Rivets or self-tapping screws
8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

C. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

D. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.2 DANGER, WARNING AND CAUTION SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, having predrilled holes for attachment hardware; 1/16 inch thick.
- B. Danger signs, colors:
 - 1. Letter Color:
 - a. White.
 - 2. Background Color:
 - a. Red.
- C. Warning signs, colors:
 - 1. Letter Color:
 - a. Black.
 - 2. Background Color:
 - a. Orange.
- D. Caution signs, colors:
 - 1. Letter Color:
 - a. Black.
 - 2. Background Color:
- E. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- F. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- G. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- H. Fasteners: Stainless-steel;
 - 1. Rivets or self-tapping screws
 - 2. Rivets.
- I. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- J. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.
- B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to **partially cover** circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.

- D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
 - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
 - 2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches high.

2.4 DUCT LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, having predrilled holes for attachment hardware; 1/16 inch thick.
- B. Letter Color:
 - 1. White.
- C. Background Color:
 - 1. Black.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel;
 - 1. Rivets or self-tapping screws
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. Duct Label Contents: Include identification of duct service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, duct size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
 - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with duct system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each duct label to indicate flow direction.
 - 2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches high.

2.5 STENCILS

- A. Stencils: Prepared with letter sizes according to ASME A13.1 for piping; minimum letter height of 1-1/4 inches for ducts; and minimum letter height of 3/4 inch for access panel and door labels, equipment labels, and similar operational instructions.
 - 1. Stencil Material:
 - a. Aluminum .
 - 2. Stencil Paint:
 - a. Exterior, gloss, alkyd enamel black unless otherwise indicated.

- b. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
3. Identification Paint:
 - a. Exterior, alkyd enamel in colors according to ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated.

2.6 VALVE TAGS

- A. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.
 1. Tag Material, predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware, minimum thickness:
 - a. Brass, 0.032-inch
 2. Fasteners: Brass;
 - a. Wire-link or beaded chain; or S-hook
- B. Valve Schedules:
 1. For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper, tabulate;
 - a. Valve number.
 - b. Piping system.
 - c. System abbreviation (as shown on valve tag).
 - d. Location of valve (room or space).
 - e. Normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating).
 - f. Variations for identification.
 - g. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
 2. Valve-tag schedule:
 - a. Shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.7 DANGER TAGS

- A. Danger Tags: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
 1. Size:
 - a. 3 by 5-1/4 inches minimum
 2. Fasteners:
 - a. Brass grommet and wire.
 3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," and "DO NOT OPERATE."
 4. Color: Red background with white lettering.

2.8 WARNING TAGS

- A. Warning Tags: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.

1. Size:
 - a. 3 by 5-1/4 inches minimum
2. Fasteners:
 - a. Brass grommet and wire.
3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "WARNING" and "DO NOT OPERATE."
4. Color: Yellow background with black lettering.

2.9 CAUTION TAGS

- A. Caution Tags: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
 1. Size:
 - a. 3 by 5-1/4 inches minimum
 2. Fasteners:
 - a. Brass grommet and wire.
 3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "CAUTION," and "DO NOT OPERATE."
 4. Color: Orange background with black lettering.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

3.2 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.3 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Piping Color-Coding: Painting of piping is specified in Division 09.
- B. Stenciled Pipe Label Option:
 1. Stenciled labels may be provided instead of manufactured pipe labels, at Installer's option.
 2. Install stenciled pipe labels with painted, color-coded bands or rectangles on each piping system.
 - a. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.

- b. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.
- C. Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
 - 1. Near each valve and control device.
 - 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
 - 3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
 - 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
 - 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
 - 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
 - 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.
- D. Pipe Label Color Schedule: (See Drawing Schedules)

3.4 DUCT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install plastic-laminated duct labels with permanent adhesive on air ducts in the following color codes:
 - 1. Blue : For cold-air supply ducts.
 - 2. Yellow : For hot-air supply ducts.
 - 3. Green : For exhaust-, outside-, relief-, return-, and mixed-air ducts.
 - 4. ASME A13.1 Colors and Designs: For hazardous material exhaust.
- B. Locate labels near points where ducts enter into concealed spaces and at maximum intervals of 50 feet in each space where ducts are exposed or concealed by removable ceiling system.

3.5 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION (See Drawing Schedules.)

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves; valves within factory-fabricated equipment units; shutoff valves; faucets; convenience and lawn-watering hose connections; and HVAC terminal devices and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.

3.6 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION 230553

SECTION 230593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Balancing Air Systems:
 - a. Constant-volume air systems.
 - b. Variable-air-volume systems.
 - 2. Balancing Hydronic Piping Systems:
 - a. Constant-flow hydronic systems.
 - b. Variable-flow hydronic systems.
 - c. Primary-secondary hydronic systems.
 - 3. Various HVAC Equipment.
 - a. Motors.
 - b. Condensing Units.
 - c. Boilers.
 - d. Heat Transfer Coils.
 - 4. Domestic Heater Systems.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.
- B. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.
- C. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- D. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.
- E. TAB Specialist: An entity engaged to perform TAB Work.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: Within the following number of days of the Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit documentation that the TAB contractor and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article;
 - 1. 30 days.
- B. Certified TAB reports.
- C. Instrument calibration reports, to include the following:
 - 1. Instrument type and make.
 - 2. Serial number.
 - 3. Application.
 - 4. Dates of use.
 - 5. Dates of calibration.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. TAB Contractor Qualifications: Engage a TAB entity certified by AABC or NEBB.
 - 1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB contractor and certified by AABC or NEBB and shall be the same as the TAB Contractor.
 - 2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB contractor and who is certified by AABC or NEBB as a TAB technician and shall be the same as the TAB Contractor.
- B. Certify TAB field data reports and perform the following:
 - 1. Review field data reports to validate accuracy of data and to prepare certified TAB reports.
 - 2. Certify that the TAB team complied with the approved TAB plan and the procedures specified and referenced in this Specification.
- C. TAB Report Forms: Use standard TAB contractor's forms approved by:
 - 1. Architect .
- D. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: As described in ASHRAE 111, Section 5, "Instrumentation."

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Full Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy the site and existing building during entire TAB period. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Notice: Provide [seven] days' advance notice for each test. Include scheduled test dates and times.

- B. Perform TAB after leakage and pressure tests on the following distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed:
 - 1. Air .
 - 2. Water .

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TAB SPECIALISTS

- A. Subject to compliance with requirements, **engage one of the following:**
 - 1. Bonneville Test and Balance
 - 2. BTC Service.
 - 3. Certified Test & Balance.
 - 4. Diamond Test & Balance.
 - 5. RS Analysis.
 - 6. Test & Balance Inc.
 - 7. Payson Sheetmetal.
 - 8. QT&B Inc.

3.2 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems' designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.
- B. Examine systems for installed balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are accessible.
- C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.
- D. Examine design data including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems' output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.
- E. Examine:
 - 1. Ceiling plenums and underfloor air plenums used for supply, return, or relief air to verify that they meet the leakage class of connected ducts as specified in:
 - a. Section 233113 "Metal Ducts"
 - 2. Verify ceiling plenums and underfloor air plenums used for supply, return or relief air are properly separated from adjacent areas.
 - 3. Verify that penetrations in plenum walls are sealed and fire-stopped if required.
- F. Examine equipment performance data including fan and pump curves.

1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
 2. Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.
- G. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.
- H. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.
- I. Examine HVAC equipment and filters and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
- J. Examine terminal units, such as variable-air-volume boxes, and verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.
- K. Examine strainers. Verify that startup screens are replaced by permanent screens with indicated perforations.
- L. Examine three-way valves for proper installation for their intended function of diverting or mixing fluid flows.
- M. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.
- N. Examine system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.
- O. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.
- P. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.
- 3.3 PREPARATION
- A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes strategies and step-by-step procedures.
- B. Complete system-readiness checks and prepare reports. Verify the following:
1. Permanent electrical-power wiring is complete.
 2. Hydronic systems are filled, clean, and free of air.
 3. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
 4. Equipment and duct access doors are securely closed.
 5. Balance, smoke, and fire dampers are open.
 6. Isolating and balancing valves are open and control valves are operational.
 7. Ceilings are installed in critical areas where air-pattern adjustments are required and access to balancing devices is provided.

8. Windows and doors can be closed so indicated conditions for system operations can be met.

3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in this section and:
 1. AABC's "National Standards for Total System Balance"
- B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.
 1. After testing and balancing, patch probe holes in ducts with same material and thickness as used to construct ducts.
 2. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish according to Section 230713 "Duct Insulation," Section 230716 "HVAC Equipment Insulation," and Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
- C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.
- D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) .

3.5 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.
- C. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.
- D. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.
- E. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.
- F. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
- G. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
- H. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
- I. Check for airflow blockages.
- J. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.

- K. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.
- L. Verify that air duct system is sealed as specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."

3.6 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
 - 1. Measure total airflow.
 - a. Where sufficient space in ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow.
 - 2. Measure fan static pressures as follows to determine actual static pressure:
 - a. Measure outlet static pressure as far downstream from the fan as practical and upstream from restrictions in ducts such as elbows and transitions.
 - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
 - c. Measure inlet static pressure of single-inlet fans in the inlet duct as near the fan as possible, upstream from the flexible connection, and downstream from duct restrictions.
 - d. Measure inlet static pressure of double-inlet fans through the wall of the plenum that houses the fan.
 - 3. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up an air-handling unit, rooftop unit, and other air-handling and -treating equipment.
 - a. Report the cleanliness status of filters and the time static pressures are measured.
 - 4. Measure static pressures entering and leaving other devices, such as sound traps, heat-recovery equipment, and air washers, under final balanced conditions.
 - 5. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
 - 6. Obtain approval from one of the following entities for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in HVAC Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance:
 - a. Architect .
 - 7. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload will occur. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.
- B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.

1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
 - a. Where sufficient space in submain and branch ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow for that zone.
 2. Measure static pressure at a point downstream from the balancing damper, and adjust volume dampers until the proper static pressure is achieved.
 3. Remeasure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted. Continue to adjust submain and branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.
- C. Measure air outlets and inlets without making adjustments.
1. Measure terminal outlets using a direct-reading hood or outlet manufacturer's written instructions and calculating factors.
- D. Adjust air outlets and inlets for each space to indicated airflows within specified tolerances of indicated values. Make adjustments using branch volume dampers rather than extractors and the dampers at air terminals.
1. Adjust each outlet in same room or space to within specified tolerances of indicated quantities without generating noise levels above the limitations prescribed by the Contract Documents.
 2. Adjust patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.

3.7 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-AIR-VOLUME SYSTEMS

- A. Compensating for Diversity: When the total airflow of all terminal units is more than the indicated airflow of the fan, place a selected number of terminal units at a minimum set-point airflow with the remainder at maximum-airflow condition until the total airflow of the terminal units equals the indicated airflow of the fan. Select the reduced-airflow terminal units so they are distributed evenly among the branch ducts.
- B. Pressure-Independent, Variable-Air-Volume Systems: After the fan systems have been adjusted, adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:
1. Set outdoor-air dampers at minimum, and set return- and exhaust-air dampers at a position that simulates full-cooling load.
 2. Select the terminal unit that is most critical to the supply-fan airflow and static pressure. Measure static pressure. Adjust system static pressure so the entering static pressure for the critical terminal unit is not less than the sum of the terminal-unit manufacturer's recommended minimum inlet static pressure plus the static pressure needed to overcome terminal-unit discharge system losses.
 3. Measure total system airflow. Adjust to within indicated airflow.
 4. Set terminal units at maximum airflow and adjust controller or regulator to deliver the designed maximum airflow. Use terminal-unit manufacturer's written instructions to make this adjustment. When total airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units the same as described for constant-volume air systems.

5. Set terminal units at minimum airflow and adjust controller or regulator to deliver the designed minimum airflow. Check air outlets for a proportional reduction in airflow the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
 - a. If air outlets are out of balance at minimum airflow, report the condition but leave outlets balanced for maximum airflow.
 6. Remeasure the return airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outdoor airflow.
 7. Measure static pressure at the most critical terminal unit and adjust the static-pressure controller at the main supply-air sensing station to ensure that adequate static pressure is maintained at the most critical unit.
 8. Record final fan-performance data.
- C. Pressure-Dependent, Variable-Air-Volume Systems without Diversity: After the fan systems have been adjusted, adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:
1. Balance variable-air-volume systems the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
 2. Set terminal units and supply fan at full-airflow condition.
 3. Adjust inlet dampers of each terminal unit to indicated airflow and verify operation of the static-pressure controller. When total airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
 4. Readjust fan airflow for final maximum readings.
 5. Measure operating static pressure at the sensor that controls the supply fan if one is installed, and verify operation of the static-pressure controller.
 6. Set terminal units at minimum airflow and adjust controller or regulator to deliver the designed minimum airflow. Check air outlets for a proportional reduction in airflow the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
 - a. If air outlets are out of balance at minimum airflow, report the condition but leave the outlets balanced for maximum airflow.
 7. Measure the return airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outdoor airflow.
- D. Pressure-Dependent, Variable-Air-Volume Systems with Diversity: After the fan systems have been adjusted, adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:
1. Set system at maximum indicated airflow by setting the required number of terminal units at minimum airflow. Select the reduced-airflow terminal units so they are distributed evenly among the branch ducts.
 2. Adjust supply fan to maximum indicated airflow with the variable-airflow controller set at maximum airflow.
 3. Set terminal units at full-airflow condition.
 4. Adjust terminal units starting at the supply-fan end of the system and continuing progressively to the end of the system. Adjust inlet dampers of each terminal unit to indicated airflow. When total airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units the same as described for constant-volume air systems.

5. Adjust terminal units for minimum airflow.
6. Measure the return airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outdoor airflow. Adjust the fan and balance the return-air ducts and inlets the same as described for constant-volume air systems.

3.8 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports with pertinent design data, and number in sequence starting at pump to end of system. Check the sum of branch-circuit flows against the approved pump flow rate. Correct variations that exceed plus or minus 5 percent.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" piping layouts.
- C. Prepare hydronic systems for testing and balancing according to the following, in addition to the general preparation procedures specified above:
 1. Open all manual valves for maximum flow.
 2. Check liquid level in expansion tank.
 3. Check makeup water-station pressure gage for adequate pressure for highest vent.
 4. Check flow-control valves for specified sequence of operation, and set at indicated flow.
 5. Set differential-pressure control valves at the specified differential pressure. Do not set at fully closed position when pump is positive-displacement type unless several terminal valves are kept open.
 6. Set system controls so automatic valves are wide open to heat exchangers.
 7. Check pump-motor load. If motor is overloaded, throttle main flow-balancing device so motor nameplate rating is not exceeded.
 8. Check air vents for a forceful liquid flow exiting from vents when manually operated.

3.9 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-FLOW HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Measure water flow at pumps. Use the following procedures except for positive-displacement pumps:
 1. Verify impeller size by operating the pump with the discharge valve closed. Read pressure differential across the pump. Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gage heights. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
 - a. If impeller sizes must be adjusted to achieve pump performance, obtain approval from the following entity and comply with requirements in Section 232123 "Hydronic Pumps." :
 - 1) [Architect] .
 2. Check system resistance. With all valves open, read pressure differential across the pump and mark pump manufacturer's head-capacity curve. Adjust pump discharge valve until indicated water flow is achieved.

- a. Monitor motor performance during procedures and do not operate motors in overload conditions.
3. Verify pump-motor brake horsepower. Calculate the intended brake horsepower for the system based on pump manufacturer's performance data. Compare calculated brake horsepower with nameplate data on the pump motor. Report conditions where actual amperage exceeds motor nameplate amperage.
4. Report flow rates that are not within plus or minus 10 percent of design.
- B. Measure flow at all automatic flow control valves to verify that valves are functioning as designed.
- C. Measure flow at all pressure-independent characterized control valves, with valves in fully open position, to verify that valves are functioning as designed.
- D. Set calibrated balancing valves, if installed, at calculated presettings.
- E. Measure flow at all stations and adjust, where necessary, to obtain first balance.
 1. System components that have Cv rating or an accurately cataloged flow-pressure-drop relationship may be used as a flow-indicating device.
- F. Measure flow at main balancing station and set main balancing device to achieve flow that is 5 percent greater than indicated flow.
- G. Adjust balancing stations to within specified tolerances of indicated flow rate as follows:
 1. Determine the balancing station with the highest percentage over indicated flow.
 2. Adjust each station in turn, beginning with the station with the highest percentage over indicated flow and proceeding to the station with the lowest percentage over indicated flow.
 3. Record settings and mark balancing devices.
- H. Measure pump flow rate and make final measurements of pump amperage, voltage, rpm, pump heads, and systems' pressures and temperatures including outdoor-air temperature.
- I. Measure the differential-pressure-control-valve settings existing at the conclusion of balancing.
- J. Check settings and operation of each safety valve. Record settings.

3.10 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-FLOW HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Balance systems with automatic two- and three-way control valves by setting systems at maximum flow through heat-exchange terminals and proceed as specified above for hydronic systems.

3.11 PROCEDURES FOR PRIMARY-SECONDARY HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Balance the primary circuit flow first and then balance the secondary circuits.

3.12 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

- A. Motors, 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:
 - 1. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
 - 2. Motor horsepower rating.
 - 3. Motor rpm.
 - 4. Efficiency rating.
 - 5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
 - 6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
 - 7. Starter thermal-protection-element rating.
- B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test for proper operation at speeds varying from minimum to maximum. Test the manual bypass of the controller to prove proper operation. Record observations including name of controller manufacturer, model number, serial number, and nameplate data.

3.13 PROCEDURES FOR CONDENSING UNITS

- A. Verify proper rotation of fans.
- B. Measure entering- and leaving-air temperatures.
- C. Record compressor data.

3.14 PROCEDURES FOR BOILERS

- A. Hydronic Boilers: Measure and record entering- and leaving-water temperatures and water flow.
- B. Steam Boilers: Measure and record entering-water temperature and flow and leaving-steam pressure, temperature, and flow.

3.15 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT-TRANSFER COILS

- A. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each water coil:
 - 1. Entering- and leaving-water temperature.
 - 2. Water flow rate.
 - 3. Water pressure drop.
 - 4. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
 - 5. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air for cooling coils.
 - 6. Airflow.
 - 7. Air pressure drop.
- B. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each electric heating coil:
 - 1. Nameplate data.
 - 2. Airflow.

3. Entering- and leaving-air temperature at full load.
 4. Voltage and amperage input of each phase at full load and at each incremental stage.
 5. Calculated kilowatt at full load.
 6. Fuse or circuit-breaker rating for overload protection.
- C. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each steam coil:
1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
 2. Airflow.
 3. Air pressure drop.
 4. Inlet steam pressure.
- D. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each refrigerant coil:
1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
 2. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
 3. Airflow.
 4. Air pressure drop.
 5. Refrigerant suction pressure and temperature.

3.16 DOMESTIC HEATER SYSTEMS

- A. Test domestic heater system per Engineer's instructions.

3.17 TOLERANCES

- A. Set HVAC system's air flow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:
1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus or minus 10 percent .
 2. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus or minus 10 percent .
 3. Heating-Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 10 percent .
 4. Cooling-Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 10 percent .

3.18 REPORTING

- A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for systems' balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to systems' balancing devices to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance measuring and balancing devices.
- B. Status Reports: Prepare progress reports on the following interval to describe completed procedures, procedures in progress, and scheduled procedures. Include a list of deficiencies and problems found in systems being tested and balanced. Prepare a separate report for each system and each building floor for systems serving multiple floors;
1. Weekly.

3.19 FINAL REPORT

- A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.
 - 1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
 - 2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.

- B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:
 - 1. Pump curves.
 - 2. Fan curves.
 - 3. Manufacturers' test data.
 - 4. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
 - 5. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and product data.

- C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:
 - 1. Title page.
 - 2. Name and address of the TAB contractor.
 - 3. Project name.
 - 4. Project location.
 - 5. Architect's name and address.
 - 6. Engineer's name and address.
 - 7. Contractor's name and address.
 - 8. Report date.
 - 9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
 - 10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
 - 11. Summary of contents including the following:
 - a. Indicated versus final performance.
 - b. Notable characteristics of systems.
 - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
 - 12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
 - 13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
 - 14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
 - 15. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:
 - a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
 - b. Conditions of filters.
 - c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
 - d. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
 - e. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
 - f. Inlet vane settings for variable-air-volume systems.
 - g. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.

- h. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
- D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:
- 1. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
 - 2. Water and steam flow rates.
 - 3. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
 - 4. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
 - 5. Terminal units.
 - 6. Balancing stations.
 - 7. Position of balancing devices.
- E. Air-Handling-Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units with coils, include the following:
- 1. Unit Data:
 - a. Unit identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Make and type.
 - d. Model number and unit size.
 - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
 - f. Unit arrangement and class.
 - g. Discharge arrangement.
 - h. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - i. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
 - j. Number, make, and size of belts.
 - k. Number, type, and size of filters.
 - 2. Motor Data:
 - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
 - b. Horsepower and rpm.
 - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
 - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
 - e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
 - 3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Total air flow rate in cfm.
 - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
 - c. Fan rpm.
 - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
 - e. Filter static-pressure differential in inches wg.
 - f. Preheat-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
 - g. Cooling-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
 - h. Heating-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
 - i. Outdoor airflow in cfm.
 - j. Return airflow in cfm.
 - k. Outdoor-air damper position.

- l. Return-air damper position.
- m. Vortex damper position.

F. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:

1. Coil Data:

- a. System identification.
- b. Location.
- c. Coil type.
- d. Number of rows.
- e. Fin spacing in fins per inch o.c.
- f. Make and model number.
- g. Face area in sq. ft..
- h. Tube size in NPS.
- i. Tube and fin materials.
- j. Circuiting arrangement.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Air flow rate in cfm.
- b. Average face velocity in fpm.
- c. Air pressure drop in inches wg.
- d. Outdoor-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- e. Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- f. Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- g. Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- h. Water flow rate in gpm.
- i. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
- j. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
- k. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
- l. Refrigerant expansion valve and refrigerant types.
- m. Refrigerant suction pressure in psig.
- n. Refrigerant suction temperature in deg F.
- o. Inlet steam pressure in psig.

G. Gas- and Oil-Fired Heat Apparatus Test Reports: In addition to manufacturer's factory startup equipment reports, include the following:

1. Unit Data:

- a. System identification.
- b. Location.
- c. Make and type.
- d. Model number and unit size.
- e. Manufacturer's serial number.
- f. Fuel type in input data.
- g. Output capacity in Btu/h.
- h. Ignition type.
- i. Burner-control types.
- j. Motor horsepower and rpm.

- k. Motor volts, phase, and hertz.
- l. Motor full-load amperage and service factor.
- m. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
- n. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Total air flow rate in cfm.
- b. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
- c. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
- d. Air temperature differential in deg F.
- e. Entering-air static pressure in inches wg.
- f. Leaving-air static pressure in inches wg.
- g. Air static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- h. Low-fire fuel input in Btu/h.
- i. High-fire fuel input in Btu/h.
- j. Manifold pressure in psig.
- k. High-temperature-limit setting in deg F.
- l. Operating set point in Btu/h.
- m. Motor voltage at each connection.
- n. Motor amperage for each phase.
- o. Heating value of fuel in Btu/h.

H. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:

1. Fan Data:

- a. System identification.
- b. Location.
- c. Make and type.
- d. Model number and size.
- e. Manufacturer's serial number.
- f. Arrangement and class.
- g. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
- h. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.

2. Motor Data:

- a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
- b. Horsepower and rpm.
- c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
- d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
- e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
- f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
- g. Number, make, and size of belts.

3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
- b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
- c. Fan rpm.

- d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
 - e. Suction static pressure in inches wg.
- I. Round, Flat-Oval, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:
- 1. Report Data:
 - a. System and air-handling-unit number.
 - b. Location and zone.
 - c. Traverse air temperature in deg F.
 - d. Duct static pressure in inches wg.
 - e. Duct size in inches.
 - f. Duct area in sq. ft..
 - g. Indicated air flow rate in cfm.
 - h. Indicated velocity in fpm.
 - i. Actual air flow rate in cfm.
 - j. Actual average velocity in fpm.
 - k. Barometric pressure in psig.
- J. Air-Terminal-Device Reports:
- 1. Unit Data:
 - a. System and air-handling unit identification.
 - b. Location and zone.
 - c. Apparatus used for test.
 - d. Area served.
 - e. Make.
 - f. Number from system diagram.
 - g. Type and model number.
 - h. Size.
 - i. Effective area in sq. ft..
 - 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Air flow rate in cfm.
 - b. Air velocity in fpm.
 - c. Preliminary air flow rate as needed in cfm.
 - d. Preliminary velocity as needed in fpm.
 - e. Final air flow rate in cfm.
 - f. Final velocity in fpm.
 - g. Space temperature in deg F.
- K. System-Coil Reports: For reheat coils and water coils of terminal units, include the following:
- 1. Unit Data:
 - a. System and air-handling-unit identification.
 - b. Location and zone.
 - c. Room or riser served.

- d. Coil make and size.
 - e. Flowmeter type.
2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
- a. Air flow rate in cfm.
 - b. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
 - c. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
 - d. Water pressure drop in feet of head or psig.
 - e. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
 - f. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
- L. Pump Test Reports: Calculate impeller size by plotting the shutoff head on pump curves and include the following:
1. Unit Data:
- a. Unit identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Service.
 - d. Make and size.
 - e. Model number and serial number.
 - f. Water flow rate in gpm.
 - g. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
 - h. Required net positive suction head in feet of head or psig.
 - i. Pump rpm.
 - j. Impeller diameter in inches.
 - k. Motor make and frame size.
 - l. Motor horsepower and rpm.
 - m. Voltage at each connection.
 - n. Amperage for each phase.
 - o. Full-load amperage and service factor.
 - p. Seal type.
2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
- a. Static head in feet of head or psig.
 - b. Pump shutoff pressure in feet of head or psig.
 - c. Actual impeller size in inches.
 - d. Full-open flow rate in gpm.
 - e. Full-open pressure in feet of head or psig.
 - f. Final discharge pressure in feet of head or psig.
 - g. Final suction pressure in feet of head or psig.
 - h. Final total pressure in feet of head or psig.
 - i. Final water flow rate in gpm.
 - j. Voltage at each connection.
 - k. Amperage for each phase.
- M. Instrument Calibration Reports:
1. Report Data:

- a. Instrument type and make.
- b. Serial number.
- c. Application.
- d. Dates of use.
- e. Dates of calibration.

3.20 INSPECTIONS

A. Initial Inspection:

1. After testing and balancing are complete, operate each system and randomly check measurements to verify that the system is operating according to the final test and balance readings documented in the final report.
2. Check the following for each system:
 - a. Measure airflow of at least 10 percent of air outlets.
 - b. Measure water flow of at least 5 percent of terminals.
 - c. Measure room temperature at each thermostat/temperature sensor. Compare the reading to the set point.
 - d. Verify that balancing devices are marked with final balance position.
 - e. Note deviations from the Contract Documents in the final report.

B. Final Inspection:

1. After initial inspection is complete and documentation by random checks verifies that testing and balancing are complete and accurately documented in the final report, request that a final inspection be made by:
 - a. Architect .
2. The TAB contractor's test and balance engineer shall conduct the inspection in the presence of:
 - a. Architect .
3. The following entity shall randomly select measurements, documented in the final report, to be rechecked. Rechecking shall be limited to either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day:
 - a. Architect .
4. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."
5. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the testing and balancing shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.

C. TAB Work will be considered defective if it does not pass final inspections. If TAB Work fails, proceed as follows:

1. Recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection.

2. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner may contract the services of another TAB contractor to complete TAB Work according to the Contract Documents and deduct the cost of the services from the original TAB contractor's final payment.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.21 ADDITIONAL TESTS

- A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional TAB to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.
- B. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional TAB during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

END OF SECTION 230593

SECTION 23 07 00 - CUSTOM AIR HANDLER HEAT RECOVERY UNIT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

- A. All components selected for this project shall conform to the following market Standards:

AFBMA 9: Load Ratings and Fatigue Life for Ball Bearings
AMCA 210: Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Rating Purposes (FC fans not included)
AMCA 310: Test Code for Sound Rating Air Moving Devices (FC fans not included)
AMCA 500: Test Methods for Louvers, Dampers and Shutters
ANSI: American National Standards Institute
ARI 410: Forced Circulation, Air Cooling and Air Heating Coils
ASTM: American Standards for Testing Materials
NEMA MG-1: National Electrical Manufacturers Association Motor Standards
NFPA 90A: Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems
SMACNA: Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association
UL 900: Test Performance of Air Filter Units

1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Unit manufacturer shall have a minimum of 10 years experience in the heat recovery market. The complete unit and heat recovery device shall be manufactured by the same company.
- B. The systems shall deliver the specified air volumes at the static pressures scheduled.
- C. The unit shall deliver the specified Effectiveness at the scheduled air flow rates and air temperatures.
- D. The unit shall be constructed in a way to provide smooth interior surfaces and to limit the casing leakage at less than 1% of the specified air volume at 10 inches w.g. static pressure.
- E. Unit shall be constructed in accordance with CSA C22.2 and UL 1812 and shall carry the ETL label of approval.
- F. Unit shall be constructed in accordance with industrial design practices.
- G. Insulation shall comply with NFPA 90A requirements for flame spread and smoke generation.
- H. Airflow data shall comply with AMCA210 method of testing.
- I. Cabinet and exterior components shall be tested and certified weatherproof.
- J. All units shall be 100% factory tested.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- K. The unit shall receive a factory startup by the respective manufacturer's representative including the gas heating section. The qualifications of the gas heating section start up technician shall be submitted for review and approval. The owner and the engineer shall be notified 48 hours prior to the commencement of any factory start up so that the owner and/or their agent may be on site for verification of work. The contractor shall include the factory start up reports in the O & M manuals. A copy shall also be sent to the engineer.

1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Unit shall be stored and handled per manufacturer's recommendations. See manufacturer installation procedures, maintenance and operation manuals for an adequate installation. Manufacturer is not responsible for any damage done to the unit caused by poor rigging or installation operation.

1.4 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed, are packaged with protective covering for storage, and are identified with labels describing contents.
- B. Filters: Furnish 1 set for each of each type of filter.
- C. Fan Belts: Furnish 1 set for each air-handling unit fan.
- D. Gaskets: Furnish 1 for each air-handling unit sectional joint.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. The special warranty specified in this Article shall not deprive Owner of other rights Owner may have under other provisions of Contract Documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by Contractor under requirements of Contract Documents.
- B. Special Warranty: Submit a written warranty signed by manufacturer and Installer agreeing to repair any leaks in the exterior unit's casings for a period 5 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2- PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Provide air handling unit as manufactured by:
 - Innovent Air Handling Equipment,
 - Venmar CES Inc. or Des Champs Technologies,
 - Energy Labs,
 - Munters using a flat plate heat exchanger.Refrigerant-based energy recovery units are not allowed.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- B. Project is based on the specified equipment. Any additional costs associated with using alternate manufacturer's equipment shall be borne by the installing contractor.
- C. Provide Variable frequency drives with units, see Section 230514.
- D. Unit shall be based on Bacnet technology.

2.2 CONSTRUCTION

- A. General. Construct unit as specified herein. Single wall and 1" double wall casing are unacceptable. Fans and coils must be removable without dismantling the structural framing of the unit. Unit shall be suitable for Exterior installation.
- B. Base: Construct base of structural steel channel with integral lifting lugs. Coat base with 2 part epoxy primer and urethane modified enamel top coat.
- C. Casing: Unit shall have non-load bearing heavy gauge 2" double-wall steel casing. If casing is load bearing exterior shall be minimum 16 gauge and interior shall be minimum 18 gauge. Floors exposed to the pool air are 0.072" aluminum treadplate. Interior casing exposed to the pool air shall be constructed of aluminum or shall be completely coated with air-dried phenolic.
- D. Coatings: Exterior casing shall be coated with 2 part epoxy primer with urethane modified enamel top coat. Color shall be standard manufactured color as selected by Owner. Steel and galvanized steel parts exposed to the pool air shall be coated with air-dried phenolic.
- E. Insulation: All interior walls, floor, and roof shall be double wall and insulated. Wall casings are insulated with 2 lb/ft³ urethane foam insulation having an average R-value of 12 per inch. Floors shall be insulated to achieve minimum R13. No insulation shall be exposed to the air stream.
- F. Casing insertion loss. The insertion loss, per octave band, for the casing shall not be less than the following:

Frequency:	<u>63</u>	<u>125</u>	<u>250</u>	<u>500</u>	<u>1000</u>	<u>2000</u>	<u>4000</u>	<u>8000</u>
Insertion loss, dB:	24.8	24.1	22.3	24.7	26.1	29.0	31.2	33.1

Provide verifying test results from lab accredited by the US Dept. of Commerce and the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST). Insertion loss verification shall be in accordance with ISO 3746: 1975 Acoustics-survey (comparison) method.

- G. Access Doors: Provide double wall insulated doors with stainless steel piano or diecast aluminum hinges, minimum two compression latches, and minimum 24" clear opening width. Supply and exhaust air streams shall not be covered by a single door. Provide doors for access to filters, fans, heat exchangers and any area requiring access for routine maintenance. Access panels in lieu of access door are unacceptable.
Provide: Wire reinforced windows, tie backs, key locks on all doors.
- H. Weather hoods (for outdoor units): Provide weather hoods and bird screens over all exposed inlets and outlets. Ship hoods loose for installation in the field.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- I. Roof (for outdoor units): Provide roof with standing seam construction. Pitch roof with sufficient slope to ensure water drainage. Roof overhang to be provided around complete perimeter of the unit.
- J. Complete sound data shall be furnished with the units indicating air-borne sound and casing-radiated sound in all octave bands at the specified operating conditions.

2.3 FLAT PLATE HEAT EXCHANGER

- A. Provide cross flow air-to-air flat plate heat exchanger with performance as scheduled. Counter flow heat exchangers are unacceptable.
- B. Construct heat exchanger with aluminum framing and minimum 0.008" thick, 99.5% pure aluminum plates or polypropylene plates and frame. Steel framing unacceptable.
- C. Entire heat transfer surface shall be visible for inspection and cleaning without disassembling the heat exchanger.
- D. Provide drain pans under entire heat exchanger. Terminate drain pan connections through the bottom of the unit.
- E. Differential pressure gauges shall be supplied across both sides of the heat exchanger (Outside→Supply & Return→Exhaust), to aid in airflow measurement.

2.4 BLOWER/MOTOR

- A. Blowers shall be airfoil plenum type, Class 2, with minimum L-50 200,000 hour rated bearings.
- B. Motors shall be 3-phase TEFC EPACT compliant with NEMA frame and 1.15 service factor. Motor bases shall be adjustable. Motor brake horsepower shall not exceed scheduled value. Fan brake horsepower shall not exceed 85% of motor horsepower. All motors shall comply with EPACT efficiency requirements. Epoxy or phenolic coat the motor.
- C. Drives shall be adjustable for 10hp motors and smaller, fixed for 15 hp motors and larger. All drives shall be minimum 2-groove with 2 belts and minimum 1.2 service factor.
- D. Blower/motor shall be mounted on a unitary base isolated with housed seismic rated springs with 2" spring deflection.
- E. The AHU supplier must coordinate with the VFD manufacturer and motor manufacturer to determine if there is a need for the motors to be provided with either insulating bearings or a shaft grounding system to prevent pitting of the bearings due to electrical discharge. For such applications, if neither of the above is provide, the AHU manufacturer must warrant the motors against bearing failure (including labor for removal and replacement) for a minimum period of 5 years from date of start-up.
- F. Variable frequency drive: Provide variable speed drive for the exhaust fan and a variable speed drive for the supply fan.. VFD shall be factory provided and installed inside the unit in an airtight cabinet. No pool air shall be allowed into contact with the VFD. VFD shall be accessed from an exterior unit door and any VFD ventilation air shall be clean air from the outside.

2.5 DAMPERS

- A. General: Motorized dampers shall be low leakage type with aluminum frame, formed aluminum blades, vinyl edge seals, metal jamb seals, and stainless steel bearings. Gravity dampers shall have aluminum frame, aluminum blades, extruded vinyl edge seals, and synthetic bearings.
- B. The following dampers shall be provided.
 - 1. Outside air damper: opposed blade type, modulating actuator, sized to control outside air from minimum to maximum flow.
 - 2. Heat exchanger face/bypass damper: opposed blade type with modulating spring return actuator, dampers mechanically interlocked such that the O/A Face damper is full open when the O/A Bypass damper is full closed.
 - 3. Exhaust/recirculation damper: constructed of aluminum (steel damper not acceptable), opposed blade type, modulating actuator with auxiliary end switch for fan interlock, dampers mechanically interlocked such that the exhaust damper at maximum open position is full open when the recirculation damper is at minimum open position
 - 4. Exhaust gravity damper, constructed of aluminum (steel damper not acceptable).

2.6 FILTERS

- A. Outside air filter: Provide 2” 30% efficiency (MERV 8) filter bank at the outside air inlet of the heat exchanger. Mount in side access slide rack and size for 500 fpm maximum face velocity.
- B. Return air filters. Provide 2” permanent aluminum filter (MERV 8) section in the return air plenum prior to the heat exchanger. Mounted in side access slide rack and size for 650 fpm maximum face velocity

2.7 HEATING

- A. Indirect fired duct furnace: An indirect fired duct furnace is provided with performance as specified in the schedule. Furnace shall be ETL listed using ANSI Z83.8 standards. Furnace shall have a tubular heat exchanger constructed of 409 stainless steel. Tubes shall have integral formed dimples to maximize heat transfer and condensate drainage. Burner assembly shall include inshot type burners, electronic spark ignition system, high temperature safety control, air proving switch, and draft inducer. Allowable gas inlet pressure is 6" to 14" w.c. Gas valve is 4:1 turndown electronic modulating type. Provide a complete gas train including shut off valves, gas regulators, unions, etc., for a complete installation.

2.8 ELECTRICAL

- A. Wire units according to NEC and ETL list the entire unit. ETL listing of electrical panel only is unacceptable. All major electrical components shall be UL listed. Factory wire unit for single point power connection. Enclose all power wiring in liquid tight conduit.
- B. Provide fused disconnect, fan motor starters/protectors, contactors, control transformer, control circuit fusing, service switch, and terminal block.
- C. Provide NEMA 4 rated panel located external to unit. Seal all penetration air-tight between electrical panel and the interior of the air handling unit. It is not acceptable to use pool air to ventilate or cool the electrical panel or VFD cabinets.

- D. Factory test wiring and controls before shipment.

2.9 CONTROLS

- A. STAND ALONE DDC CONTROLLER. Controller shall be provided with required sensors and custom programming for natatorium dehumidification unit. Controller shall be factory programmed, mounted, and tested. Controller shall have a user terminal with LCD readout for changing set points and monitoring unit operation. User terminal can be unit mounted or remote mounted and is connected by six wire telephone cable. User terminal can be removed without affecting controller operation.
- B. The self-contained, stand alone DDC controller shall be factory mounted and wired to control the following functions:
 - a. Outside & Recirculation air dampers based on return dew point.
 - b. Exhaust air damper/fan VFD shall track the outside air damper and offset based on space→adjacent space differential pressure (to maintain space negative pressure) (sensor is supplied by manufacture and field mounted by others).
 - c. Outside air heat exchanger face/bypass damper based on heat exchanger exhaust temperature (defrost).
 - d. Heating modulation.
 - e. Summer/Winter changeover based on outside air temperature.
 - f. Supply and exhaust fan ON/OFF.
 - g. Remote ON/OFF input.
 - h. Smoke detector input (smoke detector is factory supplied and installed).
 - i. Fire stat input (fire stat is Factory supplied and installed).
 - j. Purge mode start/stop by digital input (ID9), or button (blue) on the remote user terminal.
 - k. Alarm indication output.
 - l. Interface with existing Building Control System (Johnson MetaSys N2 communication).
- C. Damper actuators are provided by the Section 230900 HVAC Controls contractor.

2.10 ACCESSORIES

- A. Filter pressure gages: Provide magnahelic pressure gages across all filter racks. Route tubing from pressure taps at filter rack to gage mounted on exterior of unit.
- B. Dirty filter indicators: Provide differential pressure switches across all filter racks. Wire pressure switches to terminal block in main electrical panel.
- C. Lights: Provide vapor proof marine lights in all access sections/fan sections/filter sections. Wire lights to a single external light switch. Mount light switch near the electrical panel and wire switch to a terminal strip in the electrical panel. Separate 120V power must be provided to the switch.
- D. Convenience Receptacles: Provide a GFCI duplex receptacle mounted near the electrical panel and wire receptacle to a terminal strip in the electrical panel. Separate 120V power must be provided to the receptacle.

2.11 SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION AND COATINGS

- A. Any material exposed to pool air including interior casing, equipment, fans, fan motors, fan structure, spring isolators, dampers, all hardware and fasteners shall be constructed of

aluminum, stainless steel, and/or polypropylene. Any steel or galvanized steel shall be coated with air-dry phenolic.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions to receive equipment, for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of central-station air-handling units.

Examine roughing-in of hydronic and condensate drainage piping, and electrical to verify actual locations of connections before installation.

Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install custom air-handling units level and plumb, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- A. Roof-Mounted Units: Support on new 6" housekeeping pad. Secure units to anchor bolts per seismic specification requirements.
- B. Arrange installation of units to provide access space around air-handling units for service and maintenance.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. The Drawings indicate the general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties. The following are specific connection requirements:
 - 1. Install piping internal to the unit to allow service and maintenance.
 - 2. Connection piping to air-handling units with flexible connectors.
 - 3. Connect condensate drain pans using 1-1/4-inch NPS, Type M copper tubing. Extend to nearest floor drain as indicated on plan. Construct deep trap at connection to trench drain and install cleanouts at changes in direction.
- B. Duct installation and connection requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. The Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories.
- C. Electrical: Conform to applicable requirements of Division 26 Sections.
 - 1. Connect fan motors to wiring systems and to ground. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. Where manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

in UL 486A and UL 486B.

2. Temperature control wiring and interlock wiring is specified in Section 230900 - HVAC Instruments and Controls.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. After completing installation, inspect exposed finish. Remove burrs, dirt, and construction debris, and repair damaged finishes including chips, scratches, and abrasions.
- B. Touch up any scratches or other damage to the interior phenolic coating so that no steel or galvanized steel is exposed to the pool air.
- C. Clean fan interiors to remove foreign material and construction dirt and dust. Vacuum clean fan wheels, cabinets, and coils entering air face.

3.6 COMMISSIONING

- A. Manufacturer's Field Inspection: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform the following:
 1. Inspect field assembly of components and installation of central-station air-handling units including piping, ductwork, and electrical connections.
 2. Prepare a written report on findings and recommended corrective actions.
- B. Final Checks before Startup: Perform the following before startup:
 1. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
 2. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections for piping, ductwork, and electrical are complete. Verify that proper thermal overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnects.
 3. Perform cleaning and adjusting specified in this Section.
 4. Disconnect fan drive from motor, verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify free fan wheel rotation and smooth bearings operations. Reconnect fan drive system, align belts, and install belt guards.
 5. Lubricate bearings, pulleys, belts, and other moving parts with factory-recommended lubricants.
 6. Set outside-air and return-air mixing dampers to minimum outside-air setting.
 7. Comb coil fins for parallel orientation.
 8. Install clean filters.
 9. Verify that manual and automatic volume control, and fire and smoke dampers in connected ductwork systems are in fully open position.
- C. Starting procedures for central-station air-handling units include the following:
 1. Energize motor; verify proper operation of motor, drive system, and fan wheel.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- Adjust fan to indicated rpm. Replace fan and motor pulleys as required to achieve design conditions.
 2. Measure and record motor electrical values for voltage and amperage.
 3. Manually operate dampers from fully closed to fully open position and record fan performance.
- D. Refer to Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing" for air-handling system testing, adjusting, and balancing.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage the services of a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel on procedures and schedules related to startup and shutdown, troubleshooting, servicing, and preventive maintenance.
1. Review data in the operation and maintenance manuals. Refer to Division 1 Section "Contract Closeout."
 2. Schedule training with Owner, through Architect, with at least 7 days' advance notice.

END OF SECTION 230700

SECTION 23 07 13 - DUCT INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following duct services:

- 1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
- 2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
- 3. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.

- B. Related Sections:

- 1. Section 23 0716 "HVAC Equipment Insulation."
- 2. Section 23 0719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
- 3. Section 23 3113 "Metal Ducts" for duct liners.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied if any).

- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

- 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
- 2. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, dampers, specialties and flanges for each type of insulation.
- 3. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
- 4. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.

- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
 - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 23 0529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with duct Installer for duct insulation application. Before preparing ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.8 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Duct Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule," and "Aboveground, Outdoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type II for sheet materials.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aerocel.
 - b. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex.
 - c. K-Flex USA; Insul-Sheet, K-Flex Gray Duct Liner, and K-FLEX LS.
- G. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type III with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corp.; SoftTouch Duct Wrap.
 - b. Johns Manville; Microlite.
 - c. Knauf Insulation; Friendly Feel Duct Wrap.
 - d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley Wrap.
 - e. Owens Corning; SOFTR All-Service Duct Wrap.
- H. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation with factory-applied ASJ. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corp.; Commercial Board.
 - b. Fibrex Insulations Inc.; FBX.
 - c. Johns Manville; 800 Series Spin-Glas.
 - d. Knauf Insulation; Insulation Board.

- e. Manson Insulation Inc.; AK Board.
 - f. Owens Corning; Fiberglas 700 Series.
- I. Polyolefin: Unicellular, polyethylene thermal plastic insulation. Comply with ASTM C 534 or ASTM C 1427, Type I, Grade 1 for tubular materials and Type II, Grade 1 for sheet materials.
- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Armacell LLC; Tubolit.
 - b. Nomaco Insulation; IMCOLOCK, IMCOSHEET, NOMALOCK, and NOMAPLY.

2.2 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEMS

- A. Fire-Rated Board: Structural-grade, press-molded, xonolite calcium silicate, fireproofing board suitable for operating temperatures up to 1700 deg F. Comply with ASTM C 656, Type II, Grade 6. Tested and certified to provide a:
- a. 2-hour fire rating by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following :
- a. Johns Manville; Super Firetemp M.
- B. Fire-Rated Blanket: High-temperature, flexible, blanket insulation with FSK jacket that is tested and certified to provide a:
- a. 2-hour fire rating by an NRTL acceptable to authorities
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following :
- a. CertainTeed Corp.; FlameChek.
 - b. Johns Manville; Firetemp Wrap.
 - c. Nelson Fire Stop Products; Nelson FSB Flameshield Blanket.
 - d. Thermal Ceramics; FireMaster Duct Wrap.
 - e. 3M; Fire Barrier Wrap Products.
 - f. Unifrax Corporation; FyreWrap.

2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
- a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; AeroSeal.
 - b. Armacell LLC; Armaflex 520 Adhesive.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-75.

- d. K-Flex USA; R-373 Contact Adhesive.
- 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- C. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60/85-70.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
 - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- D. FSK Jacket Adhesive, and ASJ Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-50.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
 - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.4 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
 - 1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-80/30-90.
 - b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

C. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above ambient services.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-10.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 550.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 46-50.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-50.
 - e. Vimasco Corporation; WC-1/WC-5.
2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms at 0.0625-inch dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
4. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-50 AHV2.
 - b. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-36.
 - c. Vimasco Corporation; 713 and 714.
3. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over duct insulation.
4. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
5. Color: White.

2.6 SEALANTS

A. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
 5. Color: Aluminum.
 6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
 1. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.

2.8 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.
- C. Metal Jacket:
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Metal Jacketing Systems.
 - b. ITW Insulation Systems; Aluminum and Stainless Steel Jacketing.
 - c. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate.
 2. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
 - a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing
 - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft.

2.9 TAPES

A. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 491 AWF FSK.
- b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0827.
- c. Compac Corporation; 110 and 111.
- d. Venture Tape; 1525 CW NT, 1528 CW, and 1528 CW/SQ.

2. Width: 3 inches.

3. Thickness: 6.5 mils.

4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.

5. Elongation: 2 percent.

6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.

7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

B. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 488 AWF.
- b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0800.
- c. Compac Corporation; 120.
- d. Venture Tape; 3520 CW.

2. Width: 2 inches.

3. Thickness: 3.7 mils.

4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.

5. Elongation: 5 percent.

6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

2.10 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- a. ITW Insulation Systems; Gerrard Strapping and Seals.
- b. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate Strapping, Seals, and Springs.

2. Aluminum: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide with wing seal.

3. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:

1. Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
 - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; CWP-1.
 - 2) GEMCO; CD.
 - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; CD.
 - 4) Nelson Stud Welding; TPA, TPC, and TPS.
2. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
 - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; CHP-1.
 - 2) GEMCO; Cupped Head Weld Pin.
 - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Cupped Head.
 - 4) Nelson Stud Welding; CHP.
3. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
 - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; Tactoo Perforated Base Insul-Hangers.
 - 2) GEMCO; Perforated Base.
 - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Spindle.
 - b. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
 - c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel fully annealed, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
 - d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
4. Nonmetal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate fastened to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
 - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - 1) GEMCO; Nylon Hangers.
 - 2) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Nylon Insulation Hangers.

- b. Baseplate: Perforated, nylon sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
 - c. Spindle: Nylon, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated, up to 2-1/2 inches.
 - d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
5. Self-Sticking-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
- a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; Tactoo Self-Adhering Insul-Hangers.
 - 2) GEMCO; Peel & Press.
 - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Self Stick.
 - b. Baseplate: Galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
 - c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
 - d. Adhesive-backed base with a peel-off protective cover.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
 - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.
- B. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
 - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at:
 - a. 2 inches o.c.
 - b. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
 - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.
- L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.

- N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
 - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
 - 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
 - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
 - 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches.
 - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
 - 1. Duct: For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches.
 - 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

- A. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.

1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for:
 - a. 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
 - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
 - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, place pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
 - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
 - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
 - e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
 - f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
 - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
 - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.
5. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of 18 inches o.c.

6. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
7. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

B. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.

1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for:
 - a. 50 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
 - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
 - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, space pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
 - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
 - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
 - e. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
 - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

3.7 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.
 - 1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.
 - 2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- thick coats of lagging adhesive.
 - 3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.
- B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
 - 2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
 - 3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 - 4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- wide joint strips at end joints.
 - 5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.
- C. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications, install with longitudinal seams along top and bottom of tanks and vessels. Seal with manufacturers recommended adhesive.
 - 1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
- D. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

3.8 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Where fire-rated insulation system is indicated, secure system to ducts and duct hangers and supports to maintain a continuous fire rating.
- B. Insulate duct access panels and doors to achieve same fire rating as duct.
- C. Install firestopping at penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Fire-stop systems are specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.9 FINISHES

- A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
 - 1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency:
 - a. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Inspect ductwork, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location (s) for each duct system defined in the "Duct Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- D. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.11 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:
 - 1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
 - 2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
 - 3. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
 - 4. Indoor, exposed return located in unconditioned space.
 - 5. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.
- B. Items Not Insulated:
 - 1. Fibrous-glass ducts.
 - 2. Metal ducts with duct liner of sufficient thickness to comply with energy code and ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
 - 3. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
 - 4. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
 - 5. Flexible connectors.
 - 6. Vibration-control devices.
 - 7. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

3.12 Insulation shall have an R value that meets the minimum requirements of the latest International Energy Conservation Code (IECC).

3.13 INDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Concealed, round and flat-oval, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

B. Concealed, round and flat-oval, return-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

C. Concealed, round and flat-oval, outdoor-air and combustion-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

D. Concealed, round and flat-oval, exhaust-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

E. Concealed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

F. Concealed, rectangular, return-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

G. Concealed, rectangular, outdoor-air and combustion-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

H. Concealed, supply-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

I. Concealed, return-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- J. Concealed, outdoor-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- K. Exposed, round and flat-oval, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- L. Exposed, round and flat-oval, return-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
- M. Exposed, round and flat-oval, outdoor-air and combustion-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- N. Exposed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- O. Exposed, rectangular, return-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- P. Exposed, rectangular, outdoor-air and combustion-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- Q. Exposed, supply-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- R. Exposed, return-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

3.14 ABOVEGROUND, OUTDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Insulation materials and thicknesses are identified below. If more than one material is listed for a duct system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- B. Exposed, round and flat-oval, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - 2. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.

- C. Exposed, round and flat-oval, return-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - 2. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.

- D. Exposed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - 2. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.

- E. Exposed, rectangular, return-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - 2. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.

- F. Exposed, supply-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - 2. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.

- G. Exposed, return-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - 2. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 230719 - HVAC PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following HVAC piping systems:
 - 1. Condensate drain piping.
 - 2. Heating hot-water piping.
 - 3. Refrigerant suction and hot-gas piping.

1.3 DEFINITIONS:

- A. Refer to Section 230500 "Common Work Results for HVAC".

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied if any).
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 - 2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
 - 3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
 - 4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
 - 5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties.
 - 6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
 - 7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation

materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
 - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

1.9 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Insulation for below-ambient service requires a vapor-barrier.
- C. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- D. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- E. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- F. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- G. Calcium Silicate:
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
 - a. Industrial Insulation Group (IIG); Thermo-12 Gold.
 - 2. Preformed Pipe Sections: Flat-, curved-, and grooved-block sections of noncombustible, inorganic, hydrous calcium silicate with a non-asbestos fibrous reinforcement. Comply with ASTM C 533, Type I.
 - 3. Flat-, curved-, and grooved-block sections of noncombustible, inorganic, hydrous calcium silicate with a non-asbestos fibrous reinforcement. Comply with ASTM C 533, Type I.
 - 4. Prefabricated Fitting Covers: Comply with ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585 for dimensions used in preforming insulation to cover valves, elbows, tees, and flanges.
- H. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aerocel.
 - b. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex.
 - c. K-Flex USA; Insul-Lock, Insul-Tube, and K-FLEX LS.
- I. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553,
 - 1. Type II and ASTM C 1290, Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
 - 2.

3. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corp.; SoftTouch Duct Wrap.
 - b. Johns Manville; Microlite.
 - c. Knauf Insulation; Friendly Feel Duct Wrap.
 - d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley Wrap.
 - e. Owens Corning; SOFTR All-Service Duct Wrap.

J. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Johns Manville; Micro-Lok.
 - b. Knauf Insulation; 1000-Degree Pipe Insulation.
 - c. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley-K.
 - d. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe Insulation.
 - e. Type I, **850 deg F** Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, **Type I, Grade A:**
 - 1) with factory-applied ASJ-SSL. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

K. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Semirigid board material with factory-applied:

1. **ASJ** complying with ASTM C 1393, Type II or Type IIIA Category 2, or with properties similar to ASTM C 612, Type IB. Nominal density is **2.5 lb/cu. ft.** or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at **100 deg F** is **0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F** or less. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corp.; CrimpWrap.
 - b. Johns Manville; MicroFlex.
 - c. Knauf Insulation; Pipe and Tank Insulation.
 - d. Manson Insulation Inc.; AK Flex.
 - e. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe and Tank Insulation.

L. Prefabricated Thermal Insulating Fitting Covers: Comply with ASTM C 450 for dimensions used in performing insulation to cover valves, elbows, tees, and flanges.

2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 195.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
 - a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Super-Stik.

B. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
 - a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Ramcote 1200 and Quik-Cote.

2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Calcium Silicate Adhesive: Fibrous, sodium-silicate-based adhesive with a service temperature range of 50 to 800 deg F.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-97.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 290.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 81-27.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-30.
 - e. Vimasco Corporation; 760.
 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- C. Flexible Elastomeric Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aero seal.
 - b. Armacell LLC; Armaflex 520 Adhesive.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-75.
 - d. K-Flex USA; R-373 Contact Adhesive.
 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- D. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60/85-70.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

- E. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-50.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
 - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- F. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 739, Dow Silicone.
 - b. Johns Manville; Zeston Perma-Weld, CEEL-TITE Solvent Welding Adhesive.
 - c. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; Welding Adhesive.
 - d. Speedline Corporation; Polyco VP Adhesive.
 - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.4 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
 - 1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-80/30-90.
 - b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.
 - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
 - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
 - 5. Color: White.
- C. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below-ambient services.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Encacel.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 570.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 60-95/60-96.
2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 30-mil dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F.
4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

D. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-10.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 550.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 46-50.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-50.
 - e. Vimasco Corporation; WC-1/WC-5.
2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms at 0.0625-inch dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
4. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

2.5 SEALANTS

A. ASJ Flashing Sealants and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: White.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.6 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
 - 1. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.

2.7 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Johns Manville; Zeston.
 - b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; FG Series.
 - c. Proto Corporation; LoSmoke.
 - d. Speedline Corporation; SmokeSafe.
 - 2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
 - 3. Color: Color-code jackets based on system:
 - a. White
 - 4. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
 - a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.
- C. Metal Jacket:
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Metal Jacketing Systems.
 - b. ITW Insulation Systems; Aluminum and Stainless Steel Jacketing.
 - c. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate.
 - 2. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
 - a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing or factory cut and rolled to size.
 - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications:
 - 1) 1-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications:
 - 1) 3-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:

- 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
- 2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
- 3) Tee covers.
- 4) Flange and union covers.
- 5) End caps.
- 6) Beveled collars.
- 7) Valve covers.
- 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

2.8 TAPES

A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 428 AWF ASJ.
- b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0836.
- c. Compac Corporation; 104 and 105.
- d. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.

2. Width: 3 inches.

3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.

4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.

5. Elongation: 2 percent.

6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.

7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

B. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 370 White PVC tape.
- b. Compac Corporation; 130.
- c. Venture Tape; 1506 CW NS.

2. Width: 2 inches.

3. Thickness: 6 mils.

4. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.

5. Elongation: 500 percent.

6. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.

2.9 SECUREMENTS

A. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- wide, stainless steel or Monel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
 - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
 - 3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- C. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.

- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
 - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
 - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at
 - a. 2 inches o.c.
 - b. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
 - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
 - 1. Vibration-control devices.
 - 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
 - 3. Nameplates and data plates.
 - 4. Manholes.
 - 5. Handholes.
 - 6. Cleanouts.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
 - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
 - 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
 - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
 - 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
 - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
 - 1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
 - 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:

1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
 3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
 4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
 5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
 6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
 7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
 8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
 9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.

2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF CALCIUM SILICATE INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch intervals and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Install two-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches. Secure inner layer with wire spaced at 12-inch intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch intervals.
3. Apply a skim coat of mineral-fiber, hydraulic-setting cement to insulation surface. When cement is dry, apply flood coat of lagging adhesive and press on one layer of glass cloth or tape. Overlap edges at least 1 inch. Apply finish coat of lagging adhesive over glass cloth or tape. Thin finish coat to achieve smooth, uniform finish.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of block insulation of same material and thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Finish flange insulation same as pipe insulation.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. When preformed insulation sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of calcium silicate insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
3. Finish fittings insulation same as pipe insulation.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install mitered segments of calcium silicate insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
2. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
3. Finish valve and specialty insulation same as pipe insulation.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
 1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
 4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
 1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
 2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
 1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
 2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
 3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
 4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.8 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

- A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
 1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
 2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
 3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.

4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least **1 inch**, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.9 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.

1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

B. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

3.10 FINISHES

- A. Pipe Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
 - 1. Flat Acrylic Finish: **Two** finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
 - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.11 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
 - 1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
 - 2. Underground piping.
 - 3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

3.12 Insulation shall have a k value that meets the minimum requirements of the latest International Energy Conservation Code (IECC).

3.13 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F:
 - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Flexible Elastomeric:
 - 1) 1/2 inch thick
 - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I:
 - 1) 1/2 inch thick
 - 2. Insulation runouts not exceeding 48 inches in length for connection to equipment shall be one of the following:
 - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.

- b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I: 1 inch thick
 - 3. Condenser-water supply and return piping located indoors and operating in range of 55 to 105 deg F (13 to 41 deg C) is not always insulated. If condenser-water system operates as part of a water-side economizer cycle or if Project requires condensation control, piping should be insulated.
 - B. Heating-Hot-Water Supply and Return, 200 Deg F and Below:
 - 1. NPS 1 1/2 and Smaller: Insulation shall be the following:
 - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I:
 - 1) 1-1/2 inch thick
 - 2) 2 inches <Insert dimension> thick.
 - 2. Greater than NPS 1-1/2 inch : Insulation shall be the following:
 - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I or Pipe and Tank Insulation:
 - 1) 2 inches thick
 - 2) 3 inches <Insert dimension> thick.
 - 3. Insulation for runouts not exceeding 48 inches in length for connection to equipment shall be the following:
 - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I: 1 inch thick.
 - C. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Piping:
 - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - D. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Flexible Tubing:
 - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
 - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
- 3.14 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE
 - A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
 - B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
 - C. Piping, Concealed:
 - 1. None.
 - D. Piping, Exposed:
 - 1. PVC:
 - a. White: 30 mils thick.

3.15 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Piping, Concealed:
 - 1. None.
- D. Piping, Exposed:
 - 1. Aluminum, Stucco Embossed: 0.016 inch thick.

3.16 UNDERGROUND, FIELD-INSTALLED INSULATION JACKET

- A. For underground direct-buried piping applications, install underground direct-buried jacket over insulation material.

END OF SECTION 230719

SECTION 230900 – BUILDING AUTOMATION SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SCOPE OF WORK

- A. The Facility Management and Control System (FMCS) Contractor shall furnish and install a fully integrated building automation system, incorporating direct digital control (DDC) for energy management, equipment monitoring and control as herein specified. The system shall include all required computer software and licenses, hardware, controllers, sensors, transmission equipment, system workstations, local panels, conduit, wire, installation, engineering, database and setup, supervision, commissioning, acceptance test, training, warranty service and, at the owner's option, extended warranty service. Licenses for all software shall be registered to Salt Lake City Mosquito Abatement District. Include all upgrades for a period of two years.
- B. The system shall only employ BACnet communications in an open architecture with the capabilities to support a multi-vendor environment. The software package shall be sold and promoted by at least three independent controls manufacturers. It shall include the provisions to load and execute the toolsets of each of the three manufacturers including commissioning, configuring and programming of each manufacturer's equipment. The system shall be capable of integrating third party systems and utilizing the following standard protocols.
 - 1. BACnet communication according to ASHRAE standard ANSI/ASHRAE 135-2004.
 - 2. OPC server communications according to OPC Data Access 2.0 and Alarms and Events 1.0.
 - 3. Modbus communication for integration to third party devices.
- C. The FMCS shall be web based and shall provide total integration of the facility infrastructure systems with user access to all system data either locally over a secure Intranet within the building or by remote access by a standard Web Browser over the Internet.
- D. The FMCS shall demonstrate, with (3) proof sources, integration with HVAC industry open standard protocols, including, BACnet, ModBus, OPC and Internet standard SQL database and HTTP / HTML / XML text formats.
- E. The FMCS shall communicate to third party systems on this project including VFD's, boilers, air handling systems, chillers, fuel systems, medical gas, air compressor, vacuum pumps, emergency generators, computer room units, transfer switches, fire-life safety systems and other building management related devices using any of the open, interoperable communication protocols referenced in Paragraph D.
- F. All materials and equipment used shall be standard components, regularly manufactured with standard part numbers and owners manuals for this and/or other systems. One of a kind, third party or custom integrations devices designed specially for this project will not be allowed.

1.2 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE:

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and supplementary Conditions and Division-1 specification sections, apply to work of this section.

- B. Products furnished but not installed under this section:
 - 1. Valves, flow switches, flow sensors, thermowells and pressure taps to be installed under section 23000.
 - 2. Automatic dampers to be installed under section 23000.
- C. Coordination with electrical:
 - 1. Installation of all line voltage power wiring by division 26.
 - 2. Each motor starter provided under Division 26, shall be furnished with individual control power transformer to supply 120 volt control power and auxiliary contacts (one N.O. and one N.C.) for use by this section.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. The system shall be furnished, engineered, and installed by the manufacturers' locally authorized representative. The controls contractor shall have factory-trained technicians to provide instruction, routine maintenance, and emergency service within 24 hours upon receipt of request.
- B. At the time of bid, all FMCS Application Specific Controllers and Programmable Equipment Controllers shall be listed as follows:
 - 1. Underwriters Laboratory, UL 916
 - 2. FCC Regulation, Part 15, Class B

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit 6 complete sets of documentation in the following phased delivery schedule:
 - 1. Valve and damper schedules
 - 2. Equipment data cut sheets
 - 3. System schematics, including:
 - a. sequence of operations
 - b. point names
 - c. point addresses
 - d. point to point wiring
 - e. interface wiring diagrams
 - f. panel layouts
 - g. system riser diagrams
 - 4. AutoCAD® compatible as-built drawings.
 - 5. ATC Submittals shall be completed using HVAC Solution Software. AutoCAD files will be accepted on components and systems which HVAC Solution does not support. The main Bulk of the submittals shall be submitted using HVAC Solution.
- B. Upon project completion, submit operation and maintenance manuals, consisting of the following:
 - 1. Index sheet, listing contents in alphabetical order
 - 2. Manufacturer's equipment parts list of all functional components of the system, disk of system schematics, including wiring diagrams
 - 3. Description of sequence of operations
 - 4. As-Built interconnection wiring diagrams

5. User's documentation containing product, system architectural and programming information.
6. Trunk cable schematic showing remote electronic panel locations, and all trunk data
7. List of connected data points, including panels to which they are connected and input device (ionization detector, sensors, etc.)
8. Conduit routing diagrams
9. Copy of the warranty/guarantee
10. Operating and maintenance cautions and instructions
11. Recommended spare parts list

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS or VENDORS

- A. Johnson Controls
- B. Siemens Building Technologies
- C. Wasatch Controls
- D. Atkinson Controls

2.2 The Facility Management Control System (FMCS) shall be comprised of a network of interoperable, stand-alone digital controllers. The FMCS shall incorporate BACnet MSTP485 or Ethernet in all unitary, terminal and other device controllers. The system shall include:

- A. Programmable Equipment Controllers (PEC's) for control of primary mechanical systems and distributed system applications. Controllers shall be fully programmable to create custom control solutions.
- B. Network Area Controllers (NAC's) for distributed system applications, databases and networking functions.
- C. Application Specific Controllers (ASC's) for control of VAV terminal units, Fan coil terminal units, Unit Vent terminal units, Heat Pump units and other terminal equipment.
- D. Graphical User Interface (GUI), which includes the hardware and software necessary for a user to interface with the control system and devices.

2.3 The controller network shall use twisted pair wiring or loop. The PEC and ASC network shall communicate at a minimum 78Kbps using BACnet. The GUI and NAC shall reside on an Ethernet backbone.

2.4 All components and controllers supplied under this contract shall be true "peer-to-peer" communicating devices.

2.5 NETWORK AREA CONTROLLER (NAC)

- A. The Network Area Controller (NAC) shall provide the interface between the field control devices, and provide global supervisory control functions over the control devices connected to the NAC. It shall be capable of executing application control programs to provide:
 - 1. Calendar functions
 - 2. Scheduling
 - 3. Trending
 - 4. Alarm monitoring and routing
 - 5. Time synchronization
 - 6. Integration of BACnet and MODBUS networks
- B. The NAC shall provide multiple, concurrent user access to the system and support for ODBC or SQL. A database resident on the NAC shall be an ODBC-compliant database or must provide an ODBC data access mechanism to read and write data stored within it.
- C. The NAC shall support standard Web browser access via the Intranet/Internet. It shall be capable of supporting multiple users, expandable to fifty.
- D. The NAC shall provide alarm recognition, storage; routing, management, and analysis to supplement distributed capabilities of equipment or application specific controllers.
 - 1. The NAC shall be able to route any alarm condition to any defined user location whether connected to a local network or remote via dial-up, telephone connection, or wide-area network.
 - 2. Alarm generation shall be selectable for annunciation type and acknowledgement requirements including, but not limited to:
 - a. To alarm
 - b. Return to normal
 - c. To fault
 - 3. Provide for the creation of an unlimited number of alarm classes for the purpose of routing types and or classes of alarms, i.e.: security, HVAC, Fire, etc.
 - 4. Provide timed (schedule) routing of alarms by class, object, group, or node.
 - 5. Provide alarm generation from binary object "runtime" and /or event counts for equipment maintenance. The user shall be able to reset runtime or event count values with appropriate password control.
- E. Alarms shall be annunciated in any of the following manners as user defined:
 - 1. Screen message text
 - 2. Email of the complete alarm message to multiple recipients. Provide the ability to route and email alarms based on:
 - a. Day of week
 - b. Time of day
 - c. Recipient
 - 3. Pagers via paging services that initiate a page on receipt of email message
 - 4. Graphic with flashing alarm object(s)
 - 5. Printed message, routed directly to a dedicated alarm printer
 - 6. Cell phones
- F. The following shall be recorded by the NAC for each alarm (at a minimum):
 - 1. Time and date

2. Location (building, floor, zone, office number, etc.)
 3. Equipment (air handler #, accessway, etc.)
 4. Acknowledge time, date, and user who issued acknowledgement.
- G. Defined users shall be given proper access to acknowledge any alarm, or specific types or classes of alarms defined by the user.
- H. A log of all alarms shall be maintained by the NAC and/or a server and shall be available for review by the user.
- I. Provide a “query” feature to allow review of specific alarms by user defined parameters.
- J. A separate log for system alerts (controller failures, network failures, etc.) shall be provided and available for review by the user.
- K. An Error Log to record system errors shall be provided and available for review by the user.
- L. Data Collection and Storage
1. The NAC shall collect data for any property of any object and store this data for future use.
 2. The data collection shall be performed by log objects, resident in the NAC that shall have, at a minimum, the following configurable properties:
 - a. Designating the log as interval or deviation.
 - b. For interval logs, the object shall be configured for time of day, day of week and the sample collection interval.
 - c. For deviation logs, the object shall be configured for the deviation of a variable to a fixed value. This value, when reached, will initiate logging of the object.
 - d. For all logs, provide the ability to set the maximum number of data stores for the log and to set whether the log will stop collecting when full, or rollover the data on a first-in, first-out basis.
 - e. Each log shall have the ability to have its data cleared on a time-based event or by a user-defined event or action.
 3. All log data shall be stored in a relational database in the NAC and the data shall be accessed from a standard Web Browser.
 4. All log data, when accessed from a server, shall be capable of being manipulated using standard SQL statements.
 5. All log data shall be available to the user in the following data formats:
 - a. HTML
 - b. XML
 - c. Plain Text
 - d. Comma or tab separated values
 6. The NAC shall have the ability to archive it’s log data either locally (to itself), or remotely to a server or other NAC on the network. Provide the ability to configure the following archiving properties, at a minimum:
 - a. Archive on time of day
 - b. Archive on user-defined number of data stores in the buffer (size)
 - c. Archive when buffer has reached it’s user-defined capacity
- M. Provide and maintain an Audit Log that tracks all activities performed on the NAC. Provide the ability to specify a buffer size for the log and the ability to archive log based on time or

when the log has reached it's user-defined buffer size. Provide the ability to archive the log locally (to the NAC), to another NAC on the network, or to a server. For each log entry, provide the following data:

1. Time and date
 2. User ID
 3. Change or activity: i.e., Change setpoint, add or delete objects, commands, etc.
- N. The NAC shall have the ability to automatically backup its database. The database shall be backed up based on a user-defined time of day.
1. Copies of the current database and, at the most recently saved database shall be stored in the NAC. The age of the most recently saved database is dependent on the user-defined database save interval.
 2. The NAC database shall be stored, at a minimum, in XML format to allow for user viewing and editing, if desired. Other formats are acceptable as well, as long as XML format is supported.

2.6 PROGRAMMABLE EQUIPMENT CONTROLLERS (PEC)

- A. Programmable Equipment Controllers (PEC's) shall be stand-alone, multi-tasking, real-time digital control processors.
- B. The PEC's shall communicate via BACnet communication according to ASHRAE standard ANSI/ASHRAE 135-2004.
- C. The PEC must communicate peer-to-peer with all of the network application specific, programmable controllers and third party devices.
- D. The PEC software database must be able to execute all of the specified mechanical system controls functions. The programming software shall be able to bundle software logic to simplify control sequencing. All values, which make up the PID output value, shall be readable and modifiable at a workstation or portable service tool. Each input, output, or calculation result shall be capable of being shared/bound with any controller or interface device on the network.
- E. Provide programming, engineering, and configuration tools used for the project duly licensed to the owner for owner's use.
- F. PEC's shall be able to execute custom, job-specific processes defined by the user, to automatically perform calculations and special control routines.
- G. A single process shall be able to incorporate measured or calculated data from any and all other PEC's on the network. In addition, a single process shall be able to issue commands to points in any and all other PEC's on the network.
- H. Each PEC shall support firmware upgrades without the need to replace hardware.
- I. Each PEC shall continuously perform self-diagnostics, which include communication diagnosis and diagnosis of all components.
- J. In the event of the loss of normal power, there shall be an orderly shutdown of all PEC's to prevent the loss of database or operating system software. Non-volatile memory shall be incorporated for all critical controller configuration data and battery backup shall be provided to support the real-time clock and all volatile memory for a minimum of 72 hours.

1. Upon restoration of normal power, the PEC shall automatically resume full operation without manual intervention.
 2. All PEC's control programming and databases must be stored in Flash memory, therefore eliminating data loss, downtime and re-load time.
- K. Provide a separate PEC for each AHU or other HVAC system such that the inputs, calculations, and outputs shall reside on a single controller.

2.7 APPLICATION SPECIFIC CONTROLLERS (ASC)

- A. Each Application Specific Controller (ASC) shall operate as a stand-alone BacNet controller capable of performing its specified control responsibilities independent of other controllers in the network. Each ASC shall be a minimum 16-BIT microprocessor based, multi-tasking, multi-user, real time digital control processor.
- B. Controllers shall include all inputs and outputs necessary to perform the specified control sequences. Analog and digital outputs shall be industry standard signals such as 0-10V and 3-point floating control allowing for interface to a variety of industry standard modulating actuators. The ASC inputs and outputs shall consist of industry standards types. Inputs shall be electrically isolated from outputs, communications and power.
- C. All controller sequences and operation shall provide closed loop control of the intended application. Closing control loops over the network is not acceptable.
- D. The control program shall reside in the ASC. The application program and the configuration information shall be stored in non-volatile memory with no battery back-up required.
- E. After a power failure the ASC must run the control application using the current setpoints and configuration. Reverting to default or factory setpoints are not acceptable.

2.8 GRAPHICAL USER INTERFACE SOFTWARE (GUI)

- A. Command of points from multiple manufacturers shall be transparent to the operator.
- B. The software shall provide a multi-tasking type environment that allows the user to run several applications simultaneously. The GUI software shall run on a Windows XP 32-bit operating system. The operator shall be able to work in Microsoft Word, Excel, and other Windows based software packages, while concurrently annunciating on-line FMCS alarms and monitoring information. If the software is unable to display several different types of displays at the same time, the FMCS contractor shall provide at least two operator workstations at each location specified.
- C. Real-Time Displays. The Graphical User Interface (GUI), shall at a minimum, support the following graphical features and functions:
 1. Graphic screens shall be developed using any drawing package capable of generating a GIF, BMP, or JPG file format. Use of proprietary graphic file formats shall not be acceptable. In addition to, or in lieu of a graphic background, the GUI shall support the use of scanned pictures and streaming video.
 2. Provide programming, engineering, and configuration tools used for the project duly licensed to the owner for owner's use.
 3. A gallery of HVAC and automation symbols shall be provided, including fans, valves, motors, chillers, AHU systems, standard ductwork diagrams and symbols. The user shall have the ability to add custom symbols to the gallery as required.

4. Graphic screens shall contain objects for text, real-time values, animation, color spectrum objects, logs, graphs, HTML or XML document links, schedule objects, hyperlinks to other URL's, and links to other graphic screens.
 5. Graphics shall include layering and each graphic object shall be configurable for assignment to a layer. A minimum of six layers shall be supported.
 6. Modifying common application objects, such as schedules, calendars, and set points shall be accomplished in a graphical manner.
 - a. Schedule times will be adjusted by mouse command using a graphical slider, without requiring any keyboard entry from the operator.
 - b. Holidays shall be set by mouse command using a graphical calendar, without requiring any keyboard entry from the operator.
 7. Commands to start and stop binary objects shall be done by mouse command from the pop-up menu. No entry of text shall be required.
- D. System Configuration. At a minimum, the GUI shall permit the operator to perform the following tasks, with proper password access:
1. Create, delete or modify control strategies.
 2. Add/delete objects to the system.
 3. Tune control loops through the adjustment of control loop parameters.
 4. Enable or disable control strategies.
 5. Generate hard copy records or control strategies on a printer.
 6. Select points to be alarmable and define the alarm state.
 7. Select points to be trended over a period of time and initiate the recording of values automatically.
- E. On-Line Help. Provide a context sensitive, on-line help system to assist the operator in operation and editing of the system. On-line help shall be available for all applications and shall provide the relevant data for that particular screen. Additional help information shall be available through the use of hypertext. All system documentation and help files shall be in HTML format.
- F. Each operator shall be required to log on to that system with a user name and password in order to view, edit, add, or delete data. System security shall be selectable for each operator. The system administrator shall have the ability to set passwords and security levels for all other operators. Each operator password shall be able to restrict the operators' access for viewing and/or changing each system application, full screen editor, and object. Each operator shall automatically be logged off of the system if no keyboard or mouse activity is detected. This auto log-off time shall be set per operator password. All system security data shall be stored in an encrypted format.
- G. All graphic displays shall be provided using web browser client as specified in 2.11.
- H. The system will be provided with a dedicated alarm window or console. This window will notify the operator of an alarm condition, and allow the operator to view details of the alarm and acknowledge the alarm. The use of the Alarm Console can be enabled or disabled by the system administrator.
- I. When the Alarm Console is enabled, a separate alarm notification window will supercede all other windows on the desktop. This window will notify the operator of new alarms and un-acknowledged alarms. Alarm notification windows or banners that can be minimized or closed by the operator shall not be acceptable. The alarm console shall be loaded and operated at the following locations.

2.9 WEB BROWSER CLIENTS

- A. The system shall be capable of supporting an unlimited number of clients using a standard Web browser such as Internet Explorer® or Netscape Navigator®. Systems requiring additional software (to enable a standard Web browser) to be resident on the client machine, or manufacture-specific browsers shall not be acceptable.
- B. The Web browser software shall run on any operating system and system configuration that is supported by the Web browser. Web page access and control shall be from system Network Area Controllers, or the Workstation.
- C. The Web browser shall provide the same system view, in terms of graphics, schedules, calendars, logs, etc., and provide the same interface methodology as is provided by the Graphical User Interface. Systems that require different views or that require different means of interacting with objects such as schedules, or logs, shall not be permitted.
- D. The Web browser client shall support at a minimum, the following functions:
 1. User log-on identification and password security shall be required and implemented using Java authentication and encryption techniques to prevent unauthorized access. If an unauthorized user attempts access, a blank web page shall be displayed.
 2. Graphical screens developed for the GUI shall be the same screens used for the Web browser client. Any animated graphical objects supported by the GUI shall be supported by the Web browser interface.
 3. HTML programming shall not be required to display system graphics or data on a Web page. HTML editing of the Web page shall be allowed if the user desires a specific look or format.
 4. Storage of the graphical screens shall be in the Network Area Controller (NAC), without requiring any graphics to be stored on the client machine. Systems that require graphics storage on each client machine are not acceptable.
 5. Real-time values displayed on a Web page shall update automatically without requiring a manual “refresh” of the Web page.
 6. Users shall have administrator-defined access privileges. Depending on the access privileges assigned, the user shall be able to perform the following:
 - a. Modify in a graphical manner, common application objects, such as schedules, calendars, and set points. Schedule times will be adjusted by mouse command using a graphical slider, without requiring any keyboard entry from the operator. Holidays shall be set by mouse command using a graphical calendar, without requiring any keyboard entry from the operator.
 - b. Commands to start and stop binary objects shall be done by mouse command right-click of the selected object and selecting the appropriate command from the pop-up menu. No entry of text shall be required.
 - c. View logs and charts
 - d. View and acknowledge alarms
 7. The system shall provide the capability to specify a user’s home page (as determined by the log-on user identification). From the home page, links to other views, or pages in the system shall be possible, if allowed by the system administrator.
 8. Graphic screens on the Web Browser client shall support hypertext links to other locations on the Internet or on Intranet sites, by specifying the Uniform Resource Locator (URL) for the desired link.

2.10 PROJECT SPECIFIC WEB PAGES:

- A. Home page shall include a campus layout of the individual buildings at the site. Once an individual building is selected the following minimum web-based tree structure shall be provided:
1. Documents Page: The document page shall include the O&M Manuals for the control system in PDF format along with AutoCAD drawings for each drawing provided in the control system O&M Manual. This document page shall include links between the control diagrams and associated data sheet in PDF format, such that the system user shall be able to click on the control device and retrieve, in PDF format, the factory O&M sheets associated with that device.
 2. Station Functions:
 - a. Logging separate sheet of station functions for a particular selected building shall be the viewing of one or more logs or the creation of logs in which any value at any point, or the mode of any point, shall be selected via the web to be trended against any other point with an adjustable frequency in seconds, minutes, hours or days.
 - b. The alarm acknowledgement via the web shall allow the viewing and acknowledgement of the alarms.
 - c. Audit log shall be provided via the web to show the operator actions as well as other audit logs as specified in section 2.4 Network Area Controller (NAC) paragraph "M" Data Collection and Storage.
 3. Floor Plans:
 - a. AutoCAD drawings of floor plans shall be provided in the control system such that via the web the user shall be able to turn layers on and off on the mechanical floor plans. These floor plans shall also include an overlay of the temperature control as-built wiring for the project showing thermostat locations, communication runs, transformer locations, controller locations, etc.
 - b. Floor Display Summaries. The operator shall be able to select floor plans displaying the following formats:
 - 1) All zone temperatures
 - 2) All zone heating percentages
 - 3) All zone cooling percentages
 - 4) All zone room names and numbers as per architectural matrix and owner input.
 - 5) All zones cfm delivered.
 4. Upon selecting a graphical floor plan layout the web page shall show all the zone temperature sensor locations on the floor. By clicking on the zone temperature location, an individual VAV box graphic shall be displayed with the following attributes:
 - a. A manual menu that shall allow the operator to manually set the air flow set point, space temperature set point, damper position, cooling percentage, heating percentage, and zero the box.
 - b. A 24 hour log chart that shows space temperature history, flow history, and allows the operator to build custom charts by comparing this log to other associated selectable logs.
 - c. A display of the VAV box discharge temperature, air handler discharge temperature, space temperature, and space temperature set point.
 - d. A bar graph that shows actual CFM, current air flow, and current air floor set point, percentage of heating and cooling in a thermometer-like fashion and changes color based on heating or cooling mode.
 - e. The damper position, reheat valve position, occupancy status, room name and heating/cooling mode shall also be shown.
 5. Systems:

- a. On selecting the systems menu, a tree structure shall allow the operator to select the air handlers, chillers, control valves, heat exchangers, med gas, boilers, fuel system, emergency generators and transfer switches, etc. systems associated with that building. The graphics shall also show the piping and ductwork associated with the air handler as well as the safeties, temperature sensors, humidity sensors, dampers, VFD's, associated with that fan system. See points lists for specifics. Each system in the points list shall be treated as a branch of the above tree.
- b. All devices that provide dynamic function in the primary equipment, i.e., fans, pumps, coils, dampers shall be dynamic in nature showing their operating status/percentage of capacity by movement on the web page.
- c. The set points for the various control loops shall be adjustable via the web page. Individual controlled devices, i.e., valves, dampers, fans shall be controlled via the web page and be stopped or started or placed in a command state or percentage of value output.

2.11 FIELD DEVICES

- A. Provide automatic control valves, automatic control dampers, thermostats, clocks, sensors, controllers, and other components as required for complete installation. Except as otherwise indicated, provide manufacturer's standard control system components as indicated by published product information, designed and constructed as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Temperature Sensors
 1. Temperature Sensors: Temperature sensors shall be linear precision elements with ranges appropriate for each specific application.
 2. Space (room) sensors shall be available with setpoint adjustment and override switch.
 3. Duct mounted averaging sensors shall utilize a sensing element incorporated in a copper capillary with a minimum length of 20 feet. The sensor shall be installed according to manufacture recommendation and looped and fastened at a minimum of every 36 inches.
 4. Sunshields shall be provided for outside air sensors.
 5. Thermo-wells for all immersion sensors shall be stainless steel or brass as required for the application.
- C. Humidity Sensors: Humidity sensors shall be of the solid-state type using a capacitance-sensing element. The sensor shall vary the output voltage with a change in relative humidity. Room humidity sensors shall have a minimum range of 10% to 90% $\pm 5\%$. Supply air humidity sensors shall have a range of 10% to 90% $\pm 5\%$.
- D. Pressure Sensors: The differential pressure sensor shall be temperature compensated and shall vary the output voltage with a change in differential pressure. Sensing range shall be suitable for the application with linearity of 1.5% of full scale and offset of less than 1% of full scale. Sensor shall be capable of withstanding up to 150% of rated pressure without damage.
- E. Flat plate (flush mount) temperature sensors shall be installed in public corridors, behavior health and any other locations where gurneys and/or carts could damage sensors and where public access of setpoint is not desired.
- F. Switches and Thermostats
 1. The FMCS Contractor shall furnish all electric relays and coordinate with the supplier of magnetic starters for auxiliary contact requirements. All electric control devices shall be of a type to meet current, voltage, and switching requirement of their particular

- application. Relays shall be provided with 24 VAC coils and contacts shall be rated at 10 amps minimum.
2. Low Temperature Detection Thermostats: Shall be the manual reset type. The thermostat shall operate in response to the coldest one-foot length of the 20-foot sensing element, regardless of the temperatures at other parts of the element. The element shall be properly supported to cover the entire downstream side of the coil with a minimum of three loops. Separate thermostats shall be provided for each 25 square feet of coil face area or fraction thereof.
 3. Differential Pressure Switches: Pressure differential switches shall have SPDT changeover contact, switching at an adjustable differential pressure setpoint.
 4. Current Sensing Relays: Motor status indications, where shown on the plans, shall be provided via current sensing relays. The switch output contact shall be rated for 30 VDC, .15 amps.
 5. Flow Switches: Motor status indications, where shown on the plans, shall be provided via flow switches. Flow switches shall be of the paddle type equipped with SPDT contacts to establish proof of flow.
 6. Carbon Monoxide Detector and Controller shall meet or exceed UL 2034 standard and OSHA standards for CO exposure. Controller shall be solid state sensor. Fan relay shall activate at 35 ppm of CO averaged over 5 minutes. Alarm relay shall activate at 100 ppm after 30 minutes. Approved manufacturers shall be Macurco, Inc or approved equal.

G. Control Valves

1. General: Control Valves up to 4 inches shall be globe valves and shall be sized for a 3 to 5 psi pressure drop. Valves shall be packless, modulating, electrically or magnetically actuated, with a control rangeability of 100 to 1. These valves shall have equal percentage flow characteristics in relationship to valve opening.
2. ½ inch to 4 inch: Valves shall be equipped with handwheel, or manual position mounted dial adjacent to valve, to allow manual positioning of valve in absence of control power. (Valves with a rangeability of less than 200 to 1 shall utilize two valves in a 1/3 – 2/3 parallel arrangement in order to achieve control rangeability).
3. 4 inches to 6 inches: Valves for heating shall be globe valves modulating electrically actuated, 2-way or 3-way as required, with a rangeability of 50 to 1. Valve body shall be flanged and shall be equipped with a handwheel, or manual position dial mounted adjacent to the valve, to allow manual positioning of the valve in the absence of control power. Valves for cooling shall be butterfly with a rangeability of 25 to 1.
4. Butterfly Valves: 2-way and 3-way butterfly valves shall be cast iron valve body, with stainless steel stem, and available with disc seal for bubble-tight shut off.
5. Steam Valves: Valves shall have an ANSI Class 250 lb. body, teflon v-ring packing rated to 377°F., stainless steel trim rated to 50 psi, with rangeability greater than 100:1, Class 4 leakage and close off rating, linear flow characteristics, via perforated throttling cylinder.

H. Damper Actuators

1. Actuators shall be of the push-pull or rotary type of modulating, 3-point floating, or 2-position control as required by the application. The actuator shall use an overload-proof synchronous motor or an electric motor with end switches to de-energize the motor at the end of the stroke limits. Control voltage shall be 24 VAC, 0-20 VDC, or 4-20 ma as required. Actuators shall be available with spring return to the normal position when required. Actuators shall have a position indicator for external indication of damper position. Actuators shall have manual override capability without disconnecting damper linkage.

I. Control Dampers

1. Motorized dampers, unless otherwise specified elsewhere, shall have damper frames using 13 gauge galvanized steel channel or 1/8" extruded aluminum with reinforced corner bracing. Damper blades shall not exceed ten (10) inches in width or 48" in length. Blades are to be suitable for high velocity performance. Damper bearings shall be as recommended by manufacturer for application. Bushings that turn in the bearing are to be oil impregnated sintered metal. All blade edges and top and bottom of the frame shall be provided with replaceable, butyl rubber or neoprene seals. Side seals may be spring-loaded stainless steel. The seals shall provide a maximum of 1% leakage at a wide open face velocity of 1500 FPM and 4: W.C. close-off pressure. The damper linkage shall provide a linear flow or equal percentage characteristic as required. Provide Ruskin RCD46 model or equal.
2. Control dampers shall be parallel or opposed blade type as scheduled on drawings or outdoor and return air mixing box dampers shall be parallel blade, arranged to direct air streams towards each other. All other dampers may be parallel or opposed blade types.

2.12 PERSONAL COMPUTER OPERATOR WORKSTATION HARDWARE:

- A. Personal computer operator workstations shall be provided for command entry, information management, network alarm management and database management functions. All real-time control functions shall be resident in the DDC controllers to facilitate greater fault tolerance and reliability.
 1. Provide a workstation in the MIS (Main Computer Room). Confirm this location before installation.
 2. Workstations shall consist of an SVGA 19" flat screen color monitor, personal computer with minimum 2 Gigabyte RAM, 100 GB hard drive, 48 speed DVD/RW, 3-1/2" diskette drive, mouse and 101-key enhanced keyboard. Personal computer shall be an IBM Compatible PC and shall include a minimum P4/3.1 MHZ processor.
- B. Provide an Epson FX-870 or equivalent printer at the workstation's location for recording alarms, operator transactions, and systems reports.

BSL LABORATORY and ANTE ROOM

1. A constant volume vav re-heat coil will heating and cooling to the space. The re-heat valve will modulate based on a signal from the space sensor and the set point temperature at the building management system.
2. A room pressure monitor is installed next to the door entering the Ante Room & BSL Laboratory. A room sensor and reference sensor in the adjoining space provide direct measurement of pressure. The differential pressure monitor shall have an audible and visual alarm, key switch to disable the monitor, and a door switch input. An adjustable alarm delay prevents nuisance alarms caused by opening the door. The monitor displays the room pressurization.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PROJECT MANAGEMENT

- A. Provide a project manager who shall, as a part of his duties, be responsible for the following activities:
 1. Coordination between the Controls Contractor and all other trades, Owner, local authorities and the design team.

2. Scheduling of manpower, material delivery, equipment installation and checkout.
3. Maintenance of construction records such as project scheduling and manpower planning and AutoCAD or Visio for project co-ordination and as-built drawings.
4. Coordination/Single point of contact

3.2 INSTALLATION METHODS

- A. Install systems and materials in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, rough-in drawings and equipment details. Install electrical components and use electrical products complying with requirements of applicable Division-16 sections of these specifications.
- B. The term "control wiring" is defined to include providing of wire, conduit, and miscellaneous materials as required for mounting and connecting electric or electronic control devices.
- C. To run BACnet on the ethernet network, the installer is required to run, at minimum, plenum rated CAT 5e cabling for all runs associated with this network.
- D. All exposed wiring, low and line voltage subject to mechanical damage, shall be run in conduit. Line and low voltage wiring shall be run in separate conduits. Concealed but accessible wiring, except in mechanical rooms and areas where other conduit and piping are exposed shall run in UL plenum rated cable as approved by local codes unless expressly restricted by requirements in Division 16 specification.
- E. All Controllers, Relays, Transducers, etc., required for stand-alone control shall be housed in a NEMA 1 enclosure with a lockable door.

3.3 SYSTEM ACCEPTANCE

- A. General: The system installation shall be complete and tested for proper operation prior to acceptance testing for the Owner's authorized representative. A letter shall be submitted to the Architect requesting system acceptance. This letter shall certify all controls are installed and the software programs have been completely exercised for proper equipment operation. Acceptance testing will commence at a mutually agreeable time within ten (10) calendar days of request. When the field test procedures have been demonstrated to the Owner's representative, the system will be accepted. The warranty period will start at this time.
- B. Field Equipment Test Procedures: DDC control panels shall be demonstrated via a functional end to end test. Such that:
 1. All output channels shall be commanded (on/off, stop/start, adjust, etc.) and their operation verified.
 2. All analog input channels shall be verified for proper operation.
 3. All digital input channels shall be verified by changing the state of the field device and observing the appropriate change of displayed value.
 4. If a point should fail testing, perform necessary repair action and retest failed point and all interlocked points.
 5. Automatic control operation shall be verified by introducing an error into the system and observing the proper corrective system response.
 6. Selected time and setpoint schedules shall be verified by changing the schedule and observing the correct response on the controlled outputs.
- C. As-Built Documentation: After a successful acceptance demonstration, the Contractor shall submit as-built drawings of the completed project for final approval. After receiving final approval, supply "6" complete as-built drawing sets, together with AutoCAD or Visio diskettes to the owner.

- D. Operation and Maintenance Manuals: Submit four copies of operation and maintenance manuals. Include the following
 - 1. Manufacturer's catalog data and specifications on sensors, transmitters, controllers, control valves, damper actuators, gauges, indicators, terminals, and any miscellaneous components used in the system.
 - 2. An operator's manual that will include detailed instructions for all operations of the system.
 - 3. An operator's reference table listing the addresses of all connected input points and output points. Settings shall be shown where applicable.
 - 4. A copy of the warranty/guarantee.
 - 5. Operating and maintenance cautions and instructions.

3.4 TRAINING

- A. Contractor shall provide to the engineer a training class outline prior to any scheduled training.
- B. Factory trained control engineers and technicians shall provide training sessions for the Owner's personnel.
- C. The control contractor shall conduct six (6) four-hour training courses for the designated owners personnel in the maintenance and operation of the control system. One class shall be given before system acceptance and the others monthly into the warranty/guarantee time period.
- D. The course shall include instruction on specific systems and instructions for operating the installed system to include as a minimum:
 - 1. HVAC system overview
 - 2. Operation of Control System
 - 3. Function of each Component
 - 4. System Operating Procedures
 - 5. Programming Procedures
 - 6. Maintenance Procedures

3.5 WARRANTY/GUARANTEE

- A. The control system shall be warranted/guaranteed to be free from defects in both material and workmanship for a period of one (1) year of normal use and service. This warranty/guarantee shall become effective the date the owner accepts or receives beneficial use of the system.
- B. After completion this contractor shall make adjustments and modification as necessary for the one year warranty period. During this period the contractor as directed by the engineer shall make modifications and adjustments to the building systems at no additional cost or compensation.

END OF SECTION 230900

SECTION 230993 – SEQUENCES OF OPERATION

1. POWER FAILURE

All fan systems and exhaust fans shall be commanded off on detection of power failure. After power is restored, the fans shall be started sequentially, starting with the Operating Room Air Handling Units. The restart sequence for other equipment shall be determined by the hospital personnel. If only emergency power is available, only those systems that operate on emergency power shall be commanded on, after the emergency generators have started, and the transfer switches are in the emergency power position. When normal power is available, and after the transfer switches have repositioned to the Utility power position, and after a one- minute (adjustable) delay, the equipment that operates on Utility power shall be started sequentially. All supply, relief and interlocked exhaust fans shall stop on power failure. When power has been restored to normal for a minimum of two minutes, the fans shall restart at 30-second intervals (adjustable) in a predetermined sequence as directed by the maintenance personnel. This restart sequence shall be changeable by the operator.

2. SCHEDULE

Although specific set points, time periods and reset values are listed in the sequence of operation, all values shall be changeable through the Facility Management System console or portable operators' terminal. The initial occupied/unoccupied schedules shall be as designated by the owners representative. Although the facility is not a 24 hour facility, schedules shall allow the owner the option to change the operation to occupied/unoccupied.

3. POINT DATABASE

Inputs and outputs required to meet the sequence of operation shall be provided, whether or not they are listed in the Input/Output schedule. All points listed in the Input/Output schedule shall also be provided.

4. BOILERS FOR HEATING HOT WATER

The system consists of two building hot water boilers with 30% glycol.

Glycol Hot Water System

The glycol hot water system consists of a redundant pair of steam to hot water glycol converters.

The system operates as follows (All suggested set points and settings are adjustable.):

Pump Alternation

Pumps alternate to equalize equipment runtime. Selection of the lead and second pump is evaluated on a weekly basis. The pump with the least runtime is the lead. The remaining pump is second.

Glycol Heating Control for Air Handler Coils and Reheat Coils

The glycol heating system enable point is controlled either manually by the operator or by a program function (i.e., OSA temperature, Time-Of-Day). If the heating system enable point is on and the outdoor air temperature is below 50 degrees F., the lead hot water pump starts. The variable frequency drive modulates pump speed to maintain system differential pressure of 20 PSI as sensed near the end of the hot water piping run.

At proof of flow, the heating valves operate. The supply hot water set point is maintained by modulating the valves. The hot water supply set point is reset based on outdoor air temperature. When the outdoor air temperature is 0 degrees F (-18 degrees C), the set point is 180 degrees F (82 degrees C) and when the outdoor air temperature is 55 degrees F (16 degrees C), the set point is 120 degrees F (49 degrees C). When the heating system enable point is off or the hot water setpoint has been satisfied for 15 minutes (adjustable) then the secondary heat exchanger valves shall close.

The glycol pump destages and the valves close when the outdoor air temperature rises above 56 degrees F (20 degrees C)

If the lead pump fails, an alarm is generated and the second pump starts. If both of the pumps fail, the converter steam valves close and a critical building alarm is generated.

The DDC system uses VFD communication to BAS to confirm the pumps are in the desired state (i.e. on or off) and generates an alarm if status deviates from DDC start/stop control.

5. DOMESTIC HOT WATER

The domestic hot water heaters are self-regulating with recirculation pump(s).

The ATC contractor shall provide and install a temperature sensor in the supply of each system and generate an alarm if temperatures exceed set point by five degrees.

The domestic hot water recirculation pumps shall be controlled by occupancy schedule. Provide start/stop and status for each pump.

Domestic HW Recirculation Pump

The domestic hot water recirculation pump system consists of a single recirculation pump. The system is DDC controlled using electric actuation. The system operates as follows:

The pump is cycled on/off based on Time of Day program. The pump is on during the Occupied mode and off during the Unoccupied mode.

6. AIR HANDLING UNITS AH-1

The following sequences apply to air handling systems (except as noted):

Provide a separate DDC control panel at each fan system.

The variable volume air handling unit consists of a mixed air section with outdoor air, relief air and return air dampers, filter, glycol, hot water heating coil, DX cooling coil, direct evaporation section, supply fan with variable frequency drives. The unit is DDC controlled using electric actuation. In the cases where supply, return or relief fans share common plenum or duct, an isolation damper shall be placed as shown on the plans. These two position dampers shall be commanded open 30 seconds before fans are enabled.

The air handling unit is scheduled for automatic operation on a time of day basis for Occupied and Unoccupied modes. Within the Occupied mode, the system can enter the Warm-Up mode when the space temperature is below set point or the Cool-Down mode when the space temperature is above set point. The system stays in the Warm-Up or Cool-Down mode until the mode set point is satisfied. Within the Unoccupied mode, Night Heating is available when the space temperature drops below 65 degrees F (18 degrees C). The latest start time is the scheduled occupancy for the space.

The air handling unit operates in Warm-Up, Cool-Down, Occupied, Unoccupied, Night Heating and Safety modes as follows (All suggested set points and settings are adjustable.):

Warm-Up

The supply fan(s) start. The mixing dampers are positioned for 100% return air and the cooling coil valve remains closed. The heating coil valve modulates to maintain the supply air temperature set point. If time reaches the latest start time during the Warm-Up mode, the minimum outdoor air damper modulates to its minimum cfm setpoint position. The system is prevented from entering the Warm-Up mode more than once per day.

Cool-Down

The supply fan(s) start. The heating coil valve remains closed. The cooling coil valve and the mixing dampers modulate to maintain the supply air temperature set point. When the outside air dry bulb temperature is above the economizer changeover value, the mixing dampers are positioned for 100%

return air. If time reaches the latest start time during the Cool-Down mode, the outdoor air damper modulates to its minimum cfm setpoint or is controlled in economizer operation. The system is prevented from entering the Cool-Down mode more than once per day.

Cool-Down section to be added for direct evaporation section.

Occupied

The discharge air damper for parallel supply fans is modulated open and the fans start or continue to run and the unit is controlled as follows:

The heating coil valve, mixed air dampers, and cooling coil valve modulate in sequence without overlap to maintain the supply air temperature set point with a low limit of 46 degrees F (9 degrees C) at the mixed air sensor. The mixing dampers ramp open slowly to minimize overshooting.

The outside air flow station monitors the outside air volume and modulates the minimum outside damper to maintain minimum ventilation set point.

Supply Duct and Building Pressurization Control

The supply fan variable frequency drive modulates to maintain a constant duct static pressure of 1.5 inches of water as sensed at least two-thirds of the way downstream of the supply fan in the longest or most critical duct. The return fan variable frequency drive modulates to maintain a constant supply to return offset cfm based on measuring the supply and return air flows. This offset is adjusted automatically by the numbers of exhaust fans running where this air handler services.

Upon initial startup of the air handling system, the supply and return fan speed slowly ramps to the desired static pressure set point.

Upon shutdown of the air handling system, the supply and return fan variable frequency drives are stopped and the speed signal shall go to zero speed.

A static pressure transmitter shall be provided for each fan system, in the area served by the fan system. It shall be monitored through the FMS. The air handling unit relief air dampers shall modulate to maintain positive building static pressure.

Unoccupied (Normal Off)

The supply and return fans stop, the cooling coil valve closes and the mixing dampers close to the outdoor air. If the OAT is less than 45 degrees F (7 degrees C), the heating coil valve modulates to maintain the unoccupied mixed air set point of 45 degrees. If the OAT is 45 degrees F (7 degrees C) or above, the heating coil valve closes.

Night Heating

The supply and return fans start with the heating coil valve open to maintain a minimum space temperature of 65 degrees F (18 degrees C). The space temperature is taken from an average of the areas served by the air handling unit. The cooling coil valve remains closed and the mixing dampers remain closed to outdoor air.

Safety

Discharge high static cutout, fire alarm interlock by Div. 16, smoke detectors in the supply and return air streams, and supply and return fan VFD fault alarms de-energize the supply and return fans upon activation. When the OAT is less than 45 degrees F (7 degrees C), the heating coil valve modulates to maintain the mixed air temperature at 45 degrees F (7 degrees C). When the OAT is 45 degrees F (7 degrees C) or above, the heating coil valve closes. The outside air and relief air dampers shall close, all other dampers and valves position to their normal position after the fans are de-energized.

A low temperature detector in the discharge of the heating coil de-energizes the supply and return fans when temperatures below 38 degrees F (3 degrees C) are sensed. The heating coil valve modulates to maintain the mixed air temperature at 45 degrees F (7 degrees C). The outside air and relief air dampers

shall close, all other dampers and valves position to their normal position after the fans are de-energized.

The DDC system uses VFD communications to confirm the fans are in the desired state (i.e. on or off) and generates an alarm if status deviates from DDC start/stop control. The DDC system generates a VFD trouble alarm independent from the fan status.

Filter

Provide and install a differential pressure transmitter across each pre and final filter bank. The differential pressure transmitter shall be monitored through the FMS. Alarm set points shall be adjustable at the FMS.

Carbon Dioxide

A CO2 transmitter, installed in the return air of each AHU, shall allow monitoring at the FMS console. An alarm shall be generated by the CO2 sensor if the value rises above 1000 ppm.

7. EXHAUST FANS

Exhaust fans shall run continuously. The operator shall be able to override the exhaust fan control at the operator workstation in case of maintenance or emergency. The space served by the power roof vent exhaust fan is controlled in Occupied and Unoccupied modes as follows:

Occupied

The DDC system opens the exhaust damper and turns on the exhaust fan.

Unoccupied

The exhaust fan is off.

The DDC system uses a current switch to monitor the exhaust fan status and generates an alarm if status deviates from DDC start/stop control.

8. VAV BOX WITH HOT WATER REHEAT

The variable volume (VAV) terminal unit is controlled independent of system pressure fluctuations by an application specific DDC controller using electric actuation. The space served by the VAV terminal unit is controlled in Occupied and Unoccupied modes as follows:

Occupied

The VAV terminal unit is controlled within user defined maximum and minimum supply air volume settings. The controller monitors the room temperature sensor and air velocity sensor and modulates the supply air damper in sequence with the reheat valve to maintain the room temperature at set point. Supply air volume resets when HW reheat valve is modulated.

Unoccupied

The terminal unit is controlled using the night set point. The controller may reset to the Occupied mode for a predetermined time period upon a signal from the control system or manually at the room sensor.

9. CAV BOX WITH HOT WATER REHEAT

The constant volume (CAV) terminal unit is controlled by an application specific DDC controller using electric actuation. The space served by the CAV terminal unit is controlled in Occupied and Unoccupied modes as follows:

Occupied

The terminal unit supplies a constant volume of supply air to the space. The controller monitors the air velocity sensor and modulates the supply air damper to maintain the supply air volume at the Occupied set point. The controller monitors the room temperature sensor and modulates the reheat valve to maintain the space temperature at set point.

Unoccupied

The terminal unit is controlled using the unoccupied volume and temperature set point. The controller may reset to the occupied mode for a predetermined time period upon a signal from the control system or

manually at the room sensor.

10. VAV BOX (COOLING ONLY)

The cooling only variable volume (VAV) terminal unit is controlled by an application specific DDC controller using electric actuation. The space served by the VAV terminal unit is controlled in Occupied and Unoccupied modes as follows:

Occupied

The controller monitors the room temperature sensor and modulates the supply air damper between minimum and maximum cfm settings to maintain the room temperature at set point.

Unoccupied

The terminal unit is controlled using the night set point. The controller may reset to the Occupied mode for a predetermined time period upon a signal from the control system or manually at the room sensor.

11. GLYCOL FEED SYSTEM

The glycol feed system shall come with all control devices and controllers as necessary to provide a complete and operable system. The ATC contractor shall provide all interlock wiring necessary.

12. BIOSAFETY CABINETS

Provide and install a flow monitor at each hood. The monitor shall display the face velocity, and shall generate an audible and visual alarm if the alarm set points are exceeded. A pushbutton on the face of the monitor shall allow manual activation of the alarm. The monitor shall have separately adjustable high and low alarm set points. When an alarm condition occurs, an alarm shall be simultaneously displayed at the FMS. The face velocity value in FPM shall be displayed at the FMS console.

13. CONDENSATE SUMP PUMPS

Condensate sump pumps shall be furnished with high level alarm. The ATC contractor shall monitor all sump pump alarms through the DDC Control system.

14. COMPUTER ROOM UNITS

ATC contractor shall provide all necessary interlock wiring for the Liebert computer room units, and remote condensing unit including room temperature sensor and low voltage wiring. The network interface card shall be provided with equipment. This contractor shall wire to the interface card and map all points available in to the BMS system, including a graphical representation.

15. UNIT HEATER

A line voltage thermostat shall open the hot water valve and start the fan when the space temperature drops below 65 deg F (adjustable).

16. BSL LABORATORY AND ANTE ROOM

The laboratory is controlled in occupied and unoccupied modes.

In the Occupied Mode the system operates as follows:

The lab is supplied and exhausted with a constant volume of air to meet ventilation, pressurization and thermal requirements. The room's pressurization is maintained by a fixed volumetric offset between the supply and exhaust air volumes. A local pressure monitor provides visual confirmation of status and audible and visual alarms if the room pressure is not as desired.

Individual constant volume air valves maintain the supply airflow into the room and the exhaust airflow out of the room. A fixed constant volume offset is maintained by setting the supply air volume greater than the exhaust air volume. The offset produces a negative pressure in the lab relative to the corridor.

Control of the space temperature shall be through space temperature control. The reheat coil valves shall modulate in unison to maintain supply air temperature setpoint. The discharge and space temperature shall be available for display at the FMS. The space temperature sensor set point dial shall determine the

space temperature setpoint or can be overridden by the operator.

A room pressure monitor is installed next to the door entering the lab. A room sensor and reference sensor in the adjoining space provide direct measurement of pressure. The differential pressure monitor shall have an audible and visual alarm, key switch to disable the monitor, and a door switch input. An adjustable alarm delay prevents nuisance alarms caused by opening the door. The monitor displays the room pressurization.

In the Unoccupied Mode the system maintains 30% (adjustable) of occupied air volume and the heating valves may modulate to maintain unoccupied heating setpoint.

40. RO WATERING SYSTEM:

Provide digital input points and associated wiring and programming to monitor three alarms from the RO water systems on the project.

Description	Input / Output					Graphical Web Pages										Alarms			Trends Archive Size Verify with Owner						
	Digital Input	Digital Output	Analog Input	Analog Output	Hardwire Interlock	BAS Communication	Status	Temperature or Other Value	Cooling Percentage	Heating Percentage	Dynamic Flow Diagrams	O & M Manuals	Start/Stop	Status	Display Value	Adjust Value	Run Time Totalize	Operator Workstation	Remote Device/ Email	Life Safety Alarm	Run Time	30 Minute / Week	Change of Value / 800 Samples	Change of Value / 30 Samples	
AHU AIR HANDLER																									
Supply Fan VFD											X		X	X	X		X								
Fan Start/Stop		X				X																			
Fan Status	X					X	X											X				X			
Fan System Fault	X					X	X											X	X						
Fan Speed				X		X		X																	X
Frequency Output				X		X																			
Percent Output				X		X																			
Current			X			X																			
Torque			X			X																			
Power			X			X																			
Drive Temperature			X			X																			
MWH			X			X																			
Runtime			X			X																X			
DC Bus Volts			X			X																			
PID Feedback			X			X																			
Fan Fault 1	X					X	X											X	X	X					X
Fan Fault 2	X					X	X											X	X	X					X

Automatic Transfer Switches																			
Switch Status	X				X	X													
Additional points determined by ATS manufacturer																			
Computer Room Units																			
ATC to integrate to each unit via Network Interface Card					X	X													
Condensate Sump Pumps																			
Condensate Sump High Level	X					X								X	X				
Domestic Hot Water System																			
Hot Water Supply Temperature			X				X			X	X	X		X					
Recirculation Pump Start/Stop		X									X						X		X
Recirculation Pump Status	X					X								X	X	X			X
Exhaust Fans																			
Fan(s) Start/Stop		X				X		X	X	X			X					X	
Fan(s) Status	X					X		X	X	X			X	X	X	X			X
Fire Alarm System																			
Alarm Point	X					X								X	X	X			
Common Trouble	X					X								X	X	X			
Generator																			
Generator Points determined by Generator manufacturer						X		X											
Lab																			
Refrigerator Temperature (each)			X				X							X	X	X			
Freezer Temperature (each)			X				X							X	X	X			
Lighting																			
Outside Ambient Light Sensor			X				X												X
Zone Enable (Verify Qty with Div 16)		X																	
Zone Status (Verify Qty with Div 16)	X						X							X	X				
VAV BOX																			
Space temperature			X				X					X							X
Space temperature setpoint			X									X	X						
Supply air temperature			X				X					X							X
Damper position			X				X					X							
Proportional reheat output value			X				X					X							
Controlling cooling setpoint			X									X	X						
Controlling heating setpoint			X									X	X						
Controlling maximum flow setpoint			X									X	X						

SECTION 231123 - FACILITY NATURAL-GAS PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Pipes, tubes, and fittings.
2. Piping specialties.
3. Piping and tubing joining materials.
4. Valves.
5. Pressure regulators.
6. Service meters
7. Mechanical sleeve seals.
8. Grout.
9. Concrete bases.
10. This division is to pay all costs associated with the gas meter that are required by the local gas company/authority.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct shafts, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Minimum Operating-Pressure Ratings:

1. Piping and Valves: 100 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Natural-Gas System Pressures within Buildings: Two pressure ranges. Primary pressure is more than 2 psig but not more than 5 psig, and is reduced to secondary pressure of more than 0.5 psig but not more than 2 psig.

- C. Delegated Design: Design restraints and anchors for natural-gas piping and equipment, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:
 - 1. Piping specialties.
 - 2. Valves. Include pressure rating, capacity, settings, and electrical connection data of selected models.
 - 3. Pressure regulators. Indicate pressure ratings and capacities.
 - 4. Dielectric fittings.
 - 5. Dielectric fittings.
 - 6. Mechanical sleeve seals.
 - 7. Escutcheons.
- B. Shop Drawings: For facility natural-gas piping layout. Include plans, piping layout and elevations, sections, and details for fabrication of pipe anchors, hangers, supports for multiple pipes, alignment guides, expansion joints and loops, and attachments of the same to building structure. Detail location of anchors, alignment guides, and expansion joints and loops.
 - 1. Shop Drawing Scale: 1/4 inch per foot.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For natural-gas piping and equipment indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
 - 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of seismic restraints.
 - 2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting seismic restraints.
- D. Coordination Drawings: Plans and details, drawn to scale, on which natural-gas piping is shown and coordinated with other installations, using input from installers of the items involved.
- E. Site Survey: Plans, drawn to scale, on which natural-gas piping is shown and coordinated with other services and utilities.
- F. Qualification Data: For qualified professional engineer.
- G. Welding certificates.
- H. Field quality-control reports.
- I. Operation and Maintenance Data: For pressure regulators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Steel Support Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Handling Flammable Liquids: Remove and dispose of liquids from existing natural-gas piping according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- C. Store and handle pipes and tubes having factory-applied protective coatings to avoid damaging coating, and protect from direct sunlight.
- D. Protect stored PE pipes and valves from direct sunlight.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
- B. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for valves installed concealed behind finished surfaces. Comply with requirements in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPES, TUBES, AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.
 - 1. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150, standard pattern.
 - 2. Wrought-Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M for butt welding and socket welding.
 - 3. Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150, malleable iron with brass-to-iron seat, ground joint, and threaded ends.
 - 4. Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, minimum Class 150, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:

- a. Material Group: 1.1.
- b. End Connections: Threaded or butt welding to match pipe.
- c. Lapped Face: Not permitted underground.
- d. Gasket Materials: ASME B16.20, metallic, flat, asbestos free, aluminum o-rings, and spiral-wound metal gaskets.
- e. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel aboveground and stainless steel underground.

2.2 PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Appliance Flexible Connectors:

1. Indoor, Fixed-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.24.
2. Indoor, Movable-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.69.
3. Outdoor, Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.75.
4. Corrugated stainless-steel tubing with polymer coating.
5. Operating-Pressure Rating: 0.5 psig.
6. End Fittings: Zinc-coated steel.
7. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
8. Maximum Length: 72 inches.

B. Quick-Disconnect Devices: Comply with ANSI Z21.41.

1. Copper-alloy convenience outlet and matching plug connector.
2. Nitrile seals.
3. Hand operated with automatic shutoff when disconnected.
4. For indoor or outdoor applications.
5. Adjustable, retractable restraining cable.

C. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: [40] [60]-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 125 psig.

D. Weatherproof Vent Cap: Cast- or malleable-iron increaser fitting with corrosion-resistant wire screen, with free area at least equal to cross-sectional area of connecting pipe and threaded-end connection.

2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

A. Joint Compound and Tape: Suitable for natural gas.

B. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

2.4 MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVES

- A. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller: Comply with ASME B16.33.
 - 1. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
 - 2. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
 - 3. Dryseal Threads on Flare Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.3.
 - 4. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
 - 5. Listing: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for valves 1 inch and smaller.
 - 6. Service Mark: Valves 1-1/4 inches to NPS 2 shall have initials "WOG" permanently marked on valve body.

- B. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Comply with ASME B16.38.
 - 1. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
 - 2. Flanged Ends: Comply with ASME B16.5 for steel flanges.
 - 3. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
 - 4. Service Mark: Initials "WOG" shall be permanently marked on valve body.

- C. One-Piece, Bronze Ball Valve with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide products by one of the following:
 - a. BrassCraft Manufacturing Company; a Masco company.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Div.
 - c. Lyall, R. W. & Company, Inc.
 - d. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
 - e. Perfection Corporation; a subsidiary of American Meter Company.
 - 2. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
 - 3. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - 4. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
 - 5. Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.
 - 6. Packing: Separate packnut with adjustable-stem packing threaded ends.
 - 7. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
 - 8. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - 9. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 10. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

- D. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. BrassCraft Manufacturing Company; a Masco company.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Div.
 - c. Lyall, R. W. & Company, Inc.
 - d. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
 - e. Perfection Corporation; a subsidiary of American Meter Company.
2. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
3. Ball: Chrome-plated bronze.
4. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
5. Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.
6. Packing: Threaded-body packnut design with adjustable-stem packing.
7. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
8. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
9. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
10. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

E. Two-Piece, Regular-Port Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. BrassCraft Manufacturing Company; a Masco company.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Div.
 - c. Lyall, R. W. & Company, Inc.
 - d. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
 - e. Perfection Corporation; a subsidiary of American Meter Company.
2. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
3. Ball: Chrome-plated bronze.
4. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
5. Seats: Reinforced TFE.
6. Packing: Threaded-body packnut design with adjustable-stem packing.
7. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
8. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
9. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
10. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

F. Bronze Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Lee Brass Company.
 - b. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.

2. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
3. Plug: Bronze.
4. Ends: Threaded, socket, or flanged as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
5. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
6. Pressure Class: 125 psig.
7. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
8. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

G. Cast-Iron, Nonlubricated Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.

- a. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
 - b. Mueller Co.; Gas Products Div.
 - c. Xomox Corporation; a Crane company.
2. Body: Cast iron, complying with ASTM A 126, Class B.
 3. Plug: Bronze or nickel-plated cast iron.
 4. Seat: Coated with thermoplastic.
 5. Stem Seal: Compatible with natural gas.
 6. Ends: Threaded or flanged as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
 7. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
 8. Pressure Class: 125 psig.
 9. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 10. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

H. Cast-Iron, Lubricated Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Flowserve.
 - b. Homestead Valve; a division of Olson Technologies, Inc.
 - c. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
 - d. Milliken Valve Company.
 - e. Mueller Co.; Gas Products Div.
 - f. R&M Energy Systems, A Unit of Robbins & Myers, Inc.
2. Body: Cast iron, complying with ASTM A 126, Class B.
 3. Plug: Bronze or nickel-plated cast iron.
 4. Seat: Coated with thermoplastic.
 5. Stem Seal: Compatible with natural gas.
 6. Ends: Threaded or flanged as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
 7. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
 8. Pressure Class: 125 psig.
 9. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 10. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

2.5 EARTHQUAKE VALVES

A. Earthquake Valves: Comply with ASCE 25.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following
 - a. Vanguard Valves, Inc.
2. Listing: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Maximum Operating Pressure: 5 psig.
4. Cast-aluminum body with nickel-plated chrome steel internal parts.
5. Nitrile-rubber valve washer.
6. Sight windows for visual indication of valve position.
7. Threaded end connections complying with ASME B1.20.1.
8. Wall mounting bracket with bubble level indicator.

B. Earthquake Valves: Comply with ASCE 25.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Pacific Seismic Products, Inc.
2. Listing: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Maximum Operating Pressure: [0.5 psig] [7 psig] [60 psig].
4. Cast-aluminum body with stainless-steel internal parts.
5. Nitrile-rubber, reset-stem o-ring seal.
6. Valve position, open or closed, indicator.
7. Composition valve seat with clapper held by spring or magnet locking mechanism.
8. Level indicator.
9. End Connections: Threaded for valves NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for valves NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

2.6 PRESSURE REGULATORS

A. General Requirements:

1. Single stage and suitable for natural gas.
2. Steel jacket and corrosion-resistant components.
3. Elevation compensator.
4. End Connections: Threaded for regulators NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for regulators NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

B. Line Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.80.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Actaris.

- b. American Meter Company.
 - c. Eclipse Combustion, Inc.
 - d. Fisher Control Valves and Regulators; Division of Emerson Process Management.
 - e. Invensys.
 - f. Maxitrol Company.
 - g. Richards Industries; Jordan Valve Div.
2. Body and Diaphragm Case: Cast iron or die-cast aluminum.
 3. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
 4. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
 5. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber resistant to gas impurities, abrasion, and deformation at the valve port.
 6. Orifice: Aluminum; interchangeable.
 7. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
 8. Single-port, self-contained regulator with orifice no larger than required at maximum pressure inlet, and no pressure sensing piping external to the regulator.
 9. Pressure regulator shall maintain discharge pressure setting downstream, and not exceed 150 percent of design discharge pressure at shutoff.
 10. Overpressure Protection Device: Factory mounted on pressure regulator.
 11. Atmospheric Vent: Factory- or field-installed, stainless-steel screen in opening if not connected to vent piping.
 12. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 5 psig.

2.7 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

A. Dielectric Unions:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. Hart Industries International, Inc.
 - d. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
 - e. Watts Regulator Co.; Division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - f. Wilkins; Zurn Plumbing Products Group.
2. Minimum Operating-Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
3. Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials.
4. Insulating materials suitable for natural gas.
5. Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, brazed-joint, plain, or welded end connections that match piping system materials.

B. Dielectric-Flange Kits:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico Inc.

- c. Central Plastics Company.
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
2. Minimum Operating-Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 3. Companion-flange assembly for field assembly.
 4. Include flanges, full-face- or ring-type neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or PE bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.
 5. Insulating materials suitable for natural gas.
 6. Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, brazed-joint, plain, or welded end connections that match piping system materials.

2.8 SLEEVES

- A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.
- B. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.

2.9 MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico Inc.
 - c. Metraflex Company (The).
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 2. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe and sleeve.
 3. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel.
 4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one nut and bolt for each sealing element.

2.10 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. General Requirements for Escutcheons: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with ID to fit around pipe or tube, and OD that completely covers opening.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Escutcheons: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
- C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Escutcheons: With set screw.
 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated or rough brass.

- D. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Escutcheons: With concealed hinge and set screw.
 - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated or rough brass.
- E. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Escutcheons: With set screw or spring clips and chrome-plated finish.
- F. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Escutcheons: With concealed hinge, set screw or spring clips, and chrome-plated finish.
- G. One-Piece, Floor-Plate Escutcheons: Cast-iron floor plate.
- H. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Escutcheons: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.

2.11 GROUT

- A. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
 - 1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
 - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
 - 3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.12 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant, PE film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of 6 inches wide and 4 mils thick, continuously inscribed with a description of utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches deep; colored yellow.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for natural-gas piping system to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Close equipment shutoff valves before turning off natural gas to premises or piping section.
- B. Inspect natural-gas piping according to the International Fuel Gas Code to determine that natural-gas utilization devices are turned off in piping section affected.

- C. Comply with the International Fuel Gas Code requirements for prevention of accidental ignition.

3.3 INDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with the International Fuel Gas Code for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, sleeves, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for mechanical installations.
- D. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- E. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- F. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- G. Locate valves for easy access.
- H. Install natural-gas piping at uniform grade of 2 percent down toward drip and sediment traps.
- I. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- J. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- K. Install escutcheons at penetrations of interior walls, ceilings, and floors.
 - 1. New Piping:
 - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
 - b. Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
 - d. Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece or split-casting, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - e. Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and set screw.
 - f. Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - g. Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type with set screw or spring clips.
 - h. Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass type.

- i. Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type with set screw or spring clips.
 - j. Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, floor-plate type.
- L. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
- M. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- N. Comply with requirements in Sections specifying gas-fired appliances and equipment for roughing-in requirements.
- O. Drips and Sediment Traps: Install drips at points where condensate may collect, including service-meter outlets. Locate where accessible to permit cleaning and emptying. Do not install where condensate is subject to freezing.
 - 1. Construct drips and sediment traps using tee fitting with bottom outlet plugged or capped. Use nipple a minimum length of 3 pipe diameters, but not less than 3 inches long and same size as connected pipe. Install with space below bottom of drip to remove plug or cap.
- P. Extend relief vent connections for service regulators, line regulators, and overpressure protection devices to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.
- Q. Conceal pipe installations in walls, pipe spaces, utility spaces, above ceilings, below grade or floors, and in floor channels unless indicated to be exposed to view.
- R. Concealed Location Installations: Except as specified below, install concealed natural-gas piping and piping installed under the building in containment conduit constructed of steel pipe with welded joints as described in Part 2. Install a vent pipe from containment conduit to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.
 - 1. Above Accessible Ceilings: Natural-gas piping, fittings, valves, and regulators may be installed in accessible spaces without containment conduit.
 - 2. In Floors: Install natural-gas piping with welded or brazed joints and protective coating in cast-in-place concrete floors. Cover piping to be cast in concrete slabs with minimum of 1-1/2 inches of concrete. Piping may not be in physical contact with other metallic structures such as reinforcing rods or electrically neutral conductors. Do not embed piping in concrete slabs containing quick-set additives or cinder aggregate.
 - 3. In Floor Channels: Install natural-gas piping in floor channels. Channels must have cover and be open to space above cover for ventilation.
 - 4. In Walls or Partitions: Protect tubing installed inside partitions or hollow walls from physical damage using steel striker barriers at rigid supports.
 - a. Exception: Tubing passing through partitions or walls does not require striker barriers.
 - 5. Prohibited Locations:

- a. Do not install natural-gas piping in or through circulating air ducts, clothes or trash chutes, chimneys or gas vents (flues), ventilating ducts, or dumbwaiter or elevator shafts.
 - b. Do not install natural-gas piping in solid walls or partitions.
- S. Use eccentric reducer fittings to make reductions in pipe sizes. Install fittings with level side down.
- T. Connect branch piping from top or side of horizontal piping.
- U. Install unions in pipes NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve, at final connection to each piece of equipment. Unions are not required at flanged connections.
- V. Do not use natural-gas piping as grounding electrode.
- W. Install strainer on inlet of each line-pressure regulator and automatic or electrically operated valve.
- X. Install pressure gage upstream and downstream from each line regulator. Pressure gages are specified in Division 23 Section "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping."

3.4 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install manual gas shutoff valve for each gas appliance ahead of corrugated stainless-steel tubing, aluminum, or copper connector.
- B. Install underground valves with valve boxes.
- C. Install regulators and overpressure protection devices with maintenance access space adequate for servicing and testing.
- D. Install earthquake valves aboveground outside buildings according to listing.
- E. Install anode for metallic valves in underground PE piping.

3.5 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Welded Joints:
 - 1. Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators.
 - 2. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
 - 3. Patch factory-applied protective coating as recommended by manufacturer at field welds and where damage to coating occurs during construction.

- D. Flanged Joints: Install gasket material, size, type, and thickness appropriate for natural-gas service. Install gasket concentrically positioned.

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Comply with requirements for pipe hangers and supports specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- C. Install hangers for horizontal steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
 - 1. NPS 1 and Smaller: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 - 2. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 - 3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 - 4. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3-1/2: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.
 - 5. NPS 4 and Larger: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 5/8 inch.

3.7 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect to utility's gas main according to utility's procedures and requirements.
- B. Install natural-gas piping electrically continuous, and bonded to gas appliance equipment grounding conductor of the circuit powering the appliance according to NFPA 70.
- C. Install piping adjacent to appliances to allow service and maintenance of appliances.
- D. Connect piping to appliances using manual gas shutoff valves and unions. Install valve within 72 inches of each gas-fired appliance and equipment. Install union between valve and appliances or equipment.
- E. Sediment Traps: Install tee fitting with capped nipple in bottom to form drip, as close as practical to inlet of each appliance.

3.8 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for piping and valve identification.
- B. Install detectable warning tape directly above gas piping, 12 inches below finished grade, except 6 inches below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

3.9 PAINTING

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 09 painting Sections for painting interior and exterior natural-gas piping.
- B. Paint exposed, exterior metal piping, valves, service regulators, service meters and meter bars, earthquake valves, and piping specialties, except components, with factory-applied paint or protective coating.
 - 1. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 5.1D.
 - a. Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior alkyd enamel matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Exterior alkyd enamel (semigloss).
 - d. Color: Gray.
- C. Paint exposed, interior metal piping, valves, service regulators, service meters and meter bars, earthquake valves, and piping specialties, except components, with factory-applied paint or protective coating.
 - 1. Latex Over Alkyd Primer System: MPI INT 5.1Q.
 - a. Prime Coat: Quick-drying alkyd metal primer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior latex matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Interior latex (flat).
 - d. Color: Gray.
 - 2. Alkyd System: MPI INT 5.1E.
 - a. Prime Coat: Quick-drying alkyd metal primer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior alkyd matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Interior alkyd (flat).
 - d. Color: Gray.
- D. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-applied finishes with materials and by procedures to match original factory finish.

3.10 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base.
 - 1. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit.
 - 2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of the base.
 - 3. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 - 4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.

5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
6. Use 3000-psig 28-day, compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 1. Test, inspect, and purge natural gas according to the International Fuel Gas Code and authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Natural-gas piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.12 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain earthquake valves.

3.13 INDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Aboveground, piping NPS 2 and smaller shall be the following:
 1. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded or threaded joints.
- B. Aboveground, piping NPS 2-1/2" and larger shall be the following:
 1. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.
- C. Underground, below building, piping shall be the following:
 1. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints in a vented conduit.
- D. Containment Conduit: Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.
- E. Containment Conduit Vent Piping: Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded or wrought-steel fittings with welded joints. Coat underground pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.

3.14 ABOVEGROUND MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Valves for pipe sizes NPS 2 and smaller at service meter shall be one of the following:
 1. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.

2. Bronze plug valve.
- B. Valves for pipe sizes NPS 2-1/2 and larger at service meter shall be one of the following:
1. Bronze plug valve.
 2. Cast-iron, nonlubricated plug valve.

END OF SECTION 231123

SECTION 231323

ABOVE GROUND FUEL STORAGE TANKS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Electrical work in Division 26 apply to this Section.
- C. Codes and Standards:
 - a) UL Code Compliance:
 - a) Comply with UL 2085, Protected Above Ground Tanks for Flammable and Combustible Liquids.
 - b) Comply with UL 2085 Non-Metallic Secondary Containment protected tanks for flammable and combustible liquids with secondary containment Emergency Venting by “Form of Construction”.
 - c) Comply with UL 2085 Two-hour furnace fire test and two hour simulated pool fire test for insulated and protected tanks.
 - d) Comply with UL 142, Above Ground Steel Tanks for Flammable and Combustible Liquids.
 - b) National Fire Protection Association (NFPA),
 - a) Comply with NFPA 30 Flammable and Combustible Liquids Code.
 - b) Comply with NFPA 54 National Fuel Gas Code.
 - c) Manufacturers written specifications and installation requirements.
 - d) Local Fire Department/Marshall Regulations: Comply with governing regulations pertaining to hydrants, standoff distances, and similar requirements.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes above ground fuel tank with dispensers with the following components:
 - 1. Special fittings,
 - 2. Tank Filling,
 - 3. Venting,
 - 4. Fuel measurement,
 - 5. Fuel Dispensers,
 - 6. Pump Sump, and
 - 7. Tank Pad.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Special pipe and fittings.
 - 2. Dispensers,
 - 3. Fuel usage card readers, and
 - 4. Tank and Containment.

- B. Submit the following:
 - 1. Shop drawings of tanks, containment basins, level and fuel transfer controls, drains, vents and connections.
 - 2. Fuel usage card reader one each for each dispenser,
 - 3. Layout and connection diagram showing location of all equipment, vents, grounding requirements and pipe routing.
 - 4. Tank manufacturer's product data.
 - 5. Certificates of Compliance: Manufacturer shall certify that tank will perform as specified.
 - 6. Test reports.
 - 7. Installation instructions.
 - 8. Tank foundation, mounting and seismic anchoring calculations and details.

- C. Field quality-control test reports.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store, load and offload, and install tank per manufactures requirements
- B. Protect tank. pipe, pipe fittings, and vents from dirt and damage.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Site Preparation: Verify that the concrete pad has been placed, matches the minimum thickness and size shown in the plans or per the manufactures requirements whichever is greater.
- B. Coordinate with manufacture to deliver and set up tank.
- C. Provide training to District Staff on maintenance, fueling, fuel monitoring requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ABOVE GROUND TANK DESIGN AND PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

- A. Manufacture fuel tank in accordance with UL 2085. Tank shall be capable of storing petroleum products with specific gravity up to 1.1 including fuel oils, specifically No. 2 diesel fuel, at temperatures up to 150 degrees F.
- B. Provide useable fuel tank volume of 90 percent. Allow 5 percent for sump volume and 5 percent for expansion. Size tank to store fuel supply for engine generator operating at full capacity 24-hour minimum plus exercising the generator for 30 minutes monthly. Refueling will be performed at six-month intervals. Provide fuel transfer pump(s) and all controls to supply the engine generator or transfer fuel to the day tank depending on design

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

configuration.

- C. Provide fill cap with provisions to be locked closed. Provide required vents (emergency and vapor) with rainproof caps. Provide level controls and alarm to indicate fuel level. Provide rupture containment basin with 150% of tank capacity and fuel in basin alarm. Alarms to sound remotely in the electrical room.
- D. Provide stop cock and plug at tank drain. Provide isolation valve on tank discharge piping with provisions to be padlocked open.
- E. Provide fuel distribution system in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Comply with recommended practices of NFPA.
- F. The internal steel tank shall pass a 5 psig pressure test for a 24-hour period at the factory.
- G. Tank(s) shall be tested in accordance with the Uniform Fire Code, Appendix IIF, Proposed Test Requirements for Protected Tanks: Standard 79-7 (including impact and ballistic tests).
- H. The internal tank shall have an emergency vent as required by the NFPA and Uniform Fire Code.
- I. The secondary containment shall be pressure tested to 15ml. Geomembrane and UL tested as a nonmetallic secondary containment, or may be steel located outside thermal physical protective material.
- J. The secondary containment shall have a ¼" annular space with the capability of physical monitoring. The tube for physical monitoring shall be at least ¾" internal diameter to accept leak detection cable. Physical monitoring shall be accomplished using an engineer approved leak detection system. Access to the ¼" annular space shall be through a 1" female NPT opening.
- K. The internal steel tank shall be encased in 6" of concrete minimum and as required to meet impact and ballistic testing.
- L. The concrete shall be 6" of light-weight insulation concrete that is capable of preventing the internal tank temperature from rising more than 260 degrees F during a 2000 degrees F fire test for 2 hours.
- M. The concrete shall not contain any aggregate/pea gravel.
- N. The tank shall have an outer steel tank that protects the internal concrete tank.
- O. The concrete shall be monolithic (seamless) and contain no cold joints, or heat transfer points between the internal and external tanks.
- P. The outer steel tank shall have a 2" vent as required by UL 2085.
- Q. The internal and external steel tanks shall have continuous welds on all sides.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- R. The steel tank openings shall be threaded except for the leak detector tubes.
- S. The tank shall have a saddle support system that meets UBC Zone 4 seismic requirements.
- T. Tanks and appurtenances shall have an exterior factory applied prime and finish coating of epoxy paint in accordance with Section 09 91 00 - Painting.
- U. Tanks shall have warning signs to indicate FLAMMABLE, NO SMOKING, a NFPA Placard H=0, F=2, R=0 and unleaded gasoline.

2.2 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. All piping shall be ASTM A53, schedule 40 black steel pipe.

2.3 FITTINGS AND VALVES

- A. All fittings shall be ANSI B16.3, 300-pound banded malleable iron, threaded. Connections between dissimilar pipe materials shall be isolated with insulating flanges, unions or gaskets as necessary.
- B. Fuel shutoff valves at the tank(s) shall be ball valves. Valves shall be brass or bronze bodied, stainless steel shaft, chrome plated or stainless-steel ball with Teflon seat. Valves shall be rated at 150 psig WOG.
- C. Check valves shall be swing type, 150 psig rated, threaded, brass or bronze bodied, with removable stainless-steel hinge pin and screwed cap.
- D. Pressure relief valves shall be 150 psig rated, threaded, brass or bronze bodied, and be adjustable from 20 to 100psi.
- E. Anti-siphon valve(s): PVMC Type A, Universal 403, EBW 616-300 or equal.
- F. Provision for tank grounding shall be provided.

2.4 FUEL PUMPS

- A. Provide 120 VAC, single phase, TEFC motor driven, positive displacement gear pumps. Pumps shall be suitable for exterior service. Pumps shall be rated at 150 psig, cast iron with bronze bearings, mechanical seals and built in relief valve.
- B. Pumps and appurtenances shall be mounted in 304 stainless steel enclosures with adequate room to access and maintain the pump(s) and equipment.
- C. Coordinate electrical lines, conduit, communication lines, and conduit with electrical plans and specifications.

2.5 FUEL LEVEL

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- A. All fuel tanks shall be refueled (and full) by the contractor prior to District acceptance. Coordinate with District and obtain fuel from same distributor that will be filling the tank in the future. Fill tank with 87 grade unleaded gasoline.

2.6 FUEL DISPENSOR

- A. Provide top of tank dispenser, one each on two long sides of tank, align tank as indicated on the project plans. Fueling will take place simultaneously on both sides of the tank at any given time.
- B. Coordinate card reader with card reader for doors. Furnish and install all communication lines, conduit, adapters, readers, PCL, programing, and all other items needed for a complete card reader compatible with the card reader for the building doors.
- C. Features: Provide the following features:
 - 1. Vacuum Breaker, one each per pump,
 - 2. Pump and Dispenser, one each for both long sides of tank,
 - 3. UL listed Fuel hose, one each for each dispenser,
 - 4. Nozzle holder, one each of each dispenser,
 - 5. Safety breakaway valve, one each for each dispenser,
 - 6. Anti-syphon valve with pressure relief valve,
 - 7. Filter and Adapter,
 - 8. Suction tube one inch from bottom of tank,
 - 9. Auto-shutoff nozzle, and
 - 10. Card reader, one each for each dispenser coordinated with building access cards.

2.7 ACCESSORIES

- A. Grounding rod: Furnish and install grounding rod per NFPA 780.
- B. UL Listed 5 to 15-gallon spill containment with fill port and 2-inch diameter monitoring port and drain valve.
- C. Stairway assembly to fill port.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 Verify tank, capacity, size, UL, and other code requirements prior to tank installation. Coordinate with local fire marshal for any additional requirements prior to tank installation.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install tanks and fuel distribution system as indicated, and in accordance with NFPA 30 and the manufacturer's installation instructions.
- B. Pitch tank 1/4-inch per foot forward toward drain plug.
- C. Provide earthquake restraints on both fuel tanks.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- D. Mount fuel tank(s) on an integral concrete slab designed to support the loads.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Prior to District Acceptance, tank and piping shall be tested in the presence of the Engineer as follows:

1. Air Test: Tank and associated piping shall be pressurized with air to 5 psig for a minimum of 24 hours. The tank, fittings, and piping shall have no more than a 1 psig drop over a period of 24 hours. Air gage shall be calibrated in 1/4 psig increments. Temperature shall be constant during the air test.
2. Soap Test: With tank and associated piping pressurized at 5 psig, a 1 to 2 percent solution of household detergent in water shall be applied to exterior surface of tank, pipes, fittings, and associated items with sponge or other acceptable means. Leaks revealed by bubbling of soap film shall be marked and, after tank is depressurized, repaired and retested until there are no leaks.
3. After testing, tank and appurtenances shall be thoroughly cleaned and dried.
4. Fill fuel tank full with minimum 87 grade unleaded gasoline. Coordinate with District to obtain fuel from same source that will be filling fuel tank after District takes over site.
5. Lock tank and dispensers until district takes over site.

END OF SECTION 23 13 23

SECTION 232113 - HYDRONIC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes pipe and fitting materials and joining methods for the following:
 - 1. Hot-water heating piping.
 - 2. Chilled-water piping.
 - 3. Condenser-water piping.
 - 4. Makeup-water piping.
 - 5. Condensate-drain piping.
 - 6. Air-vent piping.
 - 7. Dielectric fittings.

1.3 SEISMIC REQUIREMENTS

- A. Component Importance Factor. All mechanical components shall be assigned a component importance factor. The component importance factor, I_p , shall be taken as 1.5 if any of the following conditions apply:
 - 1. The component is required to function for life-safety purposes after an earthquake.
 - 2. The component contains hazardous materials.
 - 3. The component is in or attached to an Occupancy Category IV structure and it is needed for continued operation of the facility or its failure could impair the continued operation of the facility.
- B. All other components shall be assigned a component importance factor, I_p , equal to 1.0.
- C. Seismic Performance: Pipe hangers and supports shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7 <Insert requirement> and with the requirements specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
 - 1. For piping with a seismic importance factor of 1.0 the term "withstand" means "the system will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
 - 2. For piping with a seismic importance factor of 1.5 the term "withstand" means "the system will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the system will be fully operational after the seismic event."

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:
 - 1. Steel pipe and fittings.
 - 2. Copper pipe, tubing and fittings.
 - 3. Dielectric fittings.

- B. Delegated-Design Submittal:
 - 1. Design calculations and detailed fabrication and assembly of pipe anchors and alignment guides, hangers and supports for multiple pipes, expansion joints and loops, and attachments of the same to the building structure.
 - 2. Locations of pipe anchors and alignment guides and expansion joints and loops.
 - 3. Locations of and details for penetrations, including sleeves and sleeve seals for exterior walls, floors, basement, and foundation walls.
 - 4. Seismic calculations and detailed analysis: Indicate fabrication and arrangement. Detail attachments of restraints to the restrained items and to the structure. Show attachment locations, methods, and spacings. Identify components, list their strengths, and indicate directions and values of forces transmitted to the structure during seismic events. Indicate association with vibration isolation devices. Project specific design documentation and calculations shall be prepared and stamped by a registered professional engineer who is responsible for the seismic restraint design and who is licensed in the state where the project is being constructed (ASCE 7, 13.2.1.1).

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Piping layout, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Suspended ceiling components.
 - 2. Other building services.
 - 3. Structural members.

- B. Qualification Data: For Installer.

- C. Welding certificates.

- D. Field quality-control reports: Written reports as specified in Part 3 of this section including:
 - 1. Test procedures used.
 - 2. Test results showing compliance with specified requirements.
 - 3. Failed test results with corrective action taken to achieve compliance with specified requirements.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Steel Support Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

- B. Pipe Welding: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.
 - 1. Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials, products, and installation.
 - 2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.
- C. Coordinate layout and installation of hydronic piping and suspension system components with other construction, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression-system components, and partition assemblies.
- D. Coordinate pipe sleeve installations for foundation wall penetrations.
- E. Coordinate piping installation with roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. Roof specialties are specified in Division 7 Sections.
- F. Coordinate pipe fitting pressure classes with products specified in related sections.
- G. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into base. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 3 Sections.
- H. Coordinate installation of pipe sleeves for penetrations through exterior walls and floor assemblies. Coordinate with requirements for firestopping specified in Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems" for fire and smoke wall and floor assemblies.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Drawn-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type L.

2.2 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, black steel with plain ends; welded and seamless, Grade B, and wall thickness as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- B. Cast-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4; Classes 125 and 250 as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- C. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Classes 150 and 300 as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- D. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Classes 150, 250, and 300 as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.

- E. Cast-Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.1, Classes 25, 125, and 250; raised ground face, and bolt holes spot faced as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- F. Wrought-Steel Fittings: ASTM A 234, wall thickness to match adjoining pipe.
- G. Wrought Cast- and Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
 - 1. Material Group: 1.1.
 - 2. End Connections: Butt welding.
 - 3. Facings: Raised face.
- H. Forged Steel "Olet" Type Fittings, Welding, Socket-Welding and Threaded: ASME B16.11 and ASTM A105.
 - 1. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12M/D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- I. Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of same materials and wall thicknesses as pipe in which they are installed.

2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
 - 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
 - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
- B. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- D. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for joining copper with copper; or BA9-1, silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.
- E. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12M/D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

2.4 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General: Assembly or fitting with insulating material isolating joined dissimilar metals, to prevent galvanic action and stop corrosion.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.

- b. Calpico, Inc. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
- c. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
- d. Central Plastics Company.
- e. Elster Perfection.
- f. Grinnell Mechanical Products.
- g. Matco-Norca.
- h. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
- i. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
- j. Victaulic Company.
- k. Watts Regulator Co.
- l. Zurn Industries, LLC.

- B. Description: Combination of copper alloy and ferrous; threaded, solder, plain, and weld-neck end types and matching piping system materials.
- C. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
- D. End Connections: Threaded, or flanged.
- E. Dielectric Couplings: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.
- F. Dielectric Nipples or Waterways: Electroplated steel with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.

2.5 BYPASS CHEMICAL FEEDER

- A. Description: Welded steel construction; 125-psig working pressure; 5-gal. capacity; with fill funnel and inlet, outlet, and drain valves.
 - 1. Chemicals: Specially formulated, based on analysis of makeup water, to prevent accumulation of scale and corrosion in piping and connected equipment.

2.6 EXTRA MATERIALS

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Hot-water heating piping, aboveground, NPS 2 and smaller shall be [any of] the following:
 - 1. Type L drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.
 - 2. Schedule 40, Grade B, Type 96 steel pipe; Class 125, cast-iron fittings; cast-iron flanges and flange fittings; and threaded joints.
- B. Hot-water heating piping, aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, shall be [any of] the following:

1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.
 2. Schedule 40 steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.
- C. Makeup-water piping installed aboveground shall be **[any of]** the following:
1. **Type L**, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and **soldered** joints.
- D. Condensate-drain piping shall be **[any of]** the following:
1. **Type M**, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.
 2. pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints.
- E. Air-Vent Piping:
1. Inlet: Same as service where installed with metal-to-plastic transition fittings for plastic piping systems according to piping manufacturer's written instructions.
 2. Outlet: Type K, annealed-temper copper tubing with soldered or flared joints.
- F. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping for Hot-Water Piping: Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which safety valve is installed with metal-to-plastic transition fittings for plastic piping systems according to piping manufacturer's written instructions.

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATIONS

A. PRE-WORK / PRE-REQUISITES

1. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
2. The Contractor shall study the architectural, structural, mechanical, electrical and other drawings to eliminate conflict of piping with other structure lighting or other services.

B. CONDITION

1. All installed pipe lines shall be free from dents, scars, and burrs, with ends reamed smooth.
2. All piping shall be clean and free from acids and loose dirt when installed and shall be kept clean during the completion of the installation.
3. Install piping free of sags and bends.
4. All installed pipe lines shall remain straight against strains tending to cause distortion during system operation. The contractor shall make proper allowance for pipe line expansion and contraction so that no unsightly distortion, noise, damage or improper operation results therefrom.

C. SELECTION

1. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
2. No street type fittings shall be used.
3. No short nipples shall be used except at drain valves.
4. Plugs of rags, wools, cottons, waste, or similar materials may not be used for plugging.

D. ROUTING/ARRANGEMENT

1. Piping installations shall be neatly organized.
2. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
3. Install groups of pipes parallel to each other.
4. Install piping spaced to permit application of insulation.
5. Install piping parallel and spaced to permit the servicing of valves.
6. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls or axis of the building.
7. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
8. Install fittings for all changes in direction.
9. No piping shall be run above any electrical panels, electrical equipment or access clearances for electrical for electrical panels or equipment. No piping shall be allowed to run through any electrical rooms.
10. Piping shall be arranged, placed and installed to facilitate equipment maintenance and shall be so arranged to not interfere with the installation of the air-conditioning equipment, ducts, or the removal of other equipment or devices. All specialties shall be so placed to permit easy operation and access.
11. All piping shall be so installed to insure noiseless circulation.
12. Install fittings for all branch connections.
13. Unless otherwise indicated, install branch connections to mains using tee fittings or forged steel branch fittings in main pipe, with the branch connected to the bottom of the main pipe.
14. For up-feed risers, connect the branch to the top of the main pipe.
15. Forged branch fittings shall be installed per the manufacturer's recommendations.

E. ACCESS / ARRANGEMENT

1. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal. All piping shall be so arranged to not block access to manholes, access openings, etc.
2. Install piping at indicated slopes. If not indicated, install piping at a uniform grade of 0.2 percent where possible, upward in direction of flow. Traps are to be avoided where-ever possible.
3. Reduce pipe sizes using eccentric reducer fitting installed with level side up.
4. When insulated pipes are supported by a roller hanger they shall be protected from damage by suitable pipe covering protection saddles. Saddles shall support pipe on roller and shall be packed with insulation.
5. Install valves according to Section 230523 "General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping."
6. Install unions in piping, NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to valves, at final connections of equipment, at each coil on all sides of automatic valves where valves do not have union connections, elsewhere as indicated, and wherever necessary to prevent undue difficulty in making repairs or replacement. Unions are not required at flanged connections.
7. Install flanges in piping, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, at final connections of equipment and elsewhere as indicated. Install flanges on valves, apparatus, and equipment having 2 ½ inch NPS and larger connections. Flanges or unions as applicable for the type of piping specified, shall be provided in the piping at connections to all items of equipment.
8. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting. Install dielectric coupling and nipple fittings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.
9. Comply with requirements in Section 230516 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping" for installation of expansion loops, expansion joints, anchors, and pipe alignment guides. Anchor piping for proper direction of expansion and contraction.
10. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
11. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
12. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230518 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."
13. Install strainers on supply side of each control valve, pressure-reducing valve, solenoid valve, in-line pump, and elsewhere as indicated. Install NPS ¾) nipple and ball valve in blow-down connection of strainers NPS 2) and larger. Match size of strainer blow-off connection for strainers smaller than NPS 2).

14. Install flexible connectors at inlet and discharge connections to pumps (except inline pumps) and other vibration-producing equipment.
15. Polypropylene pipe in or passing through plenums must be fire wrapped or installed in a metal conduit.

F. DRAINAGE

1. Drain valves shall be installed at all low points in all piping systems to allow for complete drainage of piping systems.
2. Install drains, consisting of a tee fitting, NPS 3/4 ball valve, and short NPS 3/4 threaded nipple with cap, at low points in piping system mains and elsewhere as required for system drainage.
3. All piping systems shall be installed so that they can be easily drained by means of drainage of low points of all piping without disconnecting pipe.
4. If not specifically indicated on the drawings, the frequency of draining shall determine whether drain caps, plugs, cocks, or valves are to be used.

G. IDENTIFICATION

1. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for identifying piping.

3.3 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:

1. **Install dielectric nipples or waterways** in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
2. Install **waterways**, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
3. Install Dielectric Fittings into Hydronic Piping Systems: Install dielectric nipples, waterways or couplings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.
4. **End Connections: Threaded, or flanged.**

3.4 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for hanger, support, and anchor devices. Comply with the following requirements for maximum spacing of supports.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC" for seismic restraints.

- C. Steel roof deck shall not be used to support loads from piping, ductwork or equipment, unless noted otherwise. Hanger loads less than 50 lbs. may be hung from the steel roof deck in cases when hanging from the steel roof deck cannot be avoided; the attachment method must distribute the load across the deck as approved by the Structural Engineer.
- D. Install the following pipe attachments:
 - 1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal piping less than 20 feet long.
 - 2. Adjustable roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal piping 20 feet or longer.
 - 3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
 - 4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
 - 5. Provide copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
 - 6. On plastic pipe, install pads or cushions on bearing surfaces to prevent hanger from scratching pipe.
- E. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
 - 1. NPS 3/4: Maximum span, 7 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 - 2. NPS 1: Maximum span, 7 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 - 3. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 9 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 - 4. NPS 2: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 - 5. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 11 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.
 - 6. NPS 3 and Larger: Maximum span, 12 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.
- F. Install hangers for drawn-temper copper piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
 - 1. NPS 3/4: Maximum span, 5 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
 - 2. NPS 1: Maximum span, 6 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
 - 3. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 7 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 - 4. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 - 5. NPS 2: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 - 6. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 9 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 - 7. NPS 3 and Larger: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
- G. PVC and CPVC Piping Hanger Spacing: Space hangers according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions for service conditions. Avoid point loading. Space and install hangers with the fewest practical rigid anchor points.
- H. PP Piping Hanger Spacing: Install vinyl-coated hangers with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 - 1. NPS 1 and Smaller: 36 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 2. NPS 1-1/4 to NPS 2: 48 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 3. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3-1/2: 48 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 - 4. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 48 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
 - 5. NPS 6: 48 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
 - 6. NPS 8: 48 inches with 7/8-inch rod.

7. Space all sizes of fiberglass composite reinforced PP pipe according to the manufacturer's written instructions.

- I. Install supports for vertical PP piping every 60 inches for NPS 1 and smaller, and every 72 inches for NPS 1-1/4 and larger.
- J. Support vertical runs at roof, at each floor, and at 10-foot intervals between floors.
- K. Support piping and tubing not listed in this article according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
- D. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
- E. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- F. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12M/D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to "Quality Assurance" Article.
- G. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

3.6 TERMINAL EQUIPMENT CONNECTIONS

- A. Sizes for supply and return piping connections shall be the same as or larger than equipment connections.
- B. Install control valves in accessible locations close to connected equipment.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Prepare hydronic piping according to ASME B31.9 and as follows:

1. Leave joints, including welds, uninsulated and exposed for examination during test.
2. Provide temporary restraints for expansion joints that cannot sustain reactions due to test pressure. If temporary restraints are impractical, isolate expansion joints from testing.
3. Flush hydronic piping systems with clean water; then remove and clean or replace strainer screens.
4. Isolate equipment from piping. If a valve is used to isolate equipment, its closure shall be capable of sealing against test pressure without damage to valve. Install blinds in flanged joints to isolate equipment.
5. Install safety valve, set at a pressure no more than one-third higher than test pressure, to protect against damage by expanding liquid or other source of overpressure during test.

B. Perform the following tests on hydronic piping:

1. Use ambient temperature water as a testing medium unless there is risk of damage due to freezing. Another liquid that is safe for workers and compatible with piping may be used.
2. While filling system, use vents installed at high points of system to release air. Use drains installed at low points for complete draining of test liquid.
3. Isolate expansion tanks and determine that hydronic system is full of water.
4. Subject piping system to hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than 1.5 times the system's working pressure. Test pressure shall not exceed maximum pressure for any vessel, pump, valve, or other component in system under test. Verify that stress due to pressure at bottom of vertical runs does not exceed 90 percent of specified minimum yield strength or 1.7 times the "SE" value in Appendix A in ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping."
5. After hydrostatic test pressure has been applied for at least 10 minutes, examine piping, joints, and connections for leakage. Eliminate leaks by tightening, repairing, or replacing components, and repeat hydrostatic test until there are no leaks.
6. Prepare written report of testing.

C. Perform the following before operating the system:

1. Open manual valves fully.
2. Inspect pumps for proper rotation.
3. Set makeup pressure-reducing valves for required system pressure.
4. Inspect air vents at high points of system and determine if all are installed and operating freely (automatic type), or bleed air completely (manual type).
5. Set temperature controls so all coils are calling for full flow.
6. Inspect and set operating temperatures of hydronic equipment, such as boilers, chillers, cooling towers, to specified values.
7. Verify lubrication of motors and bearings.

END OF SECTION 232113

SECTION 232116 - HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes special-duty valves and specialties for the following:
 1. Hot-water heating piping.
 2. Makeup-water piping.
 3. Condensate-drain piping.
 4. Air-vent piping.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:
 1. Valves: Include flow and pressure drop curves based on manufacturer's testing for calibrated-orifice balancing valves and automatic flow-control valves.
 2. Air-control devices.
 3. Hydronic specialties.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air-control devices, hydronic specialties, and special-duty valves to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Pipe Welding: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.
 1. Safety valves and pressure vessels shall bear the appropriate ASME label. Fabricate and stamp air separators and expansion tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 VALVES

- A. **Globe, Check, Ball, and Butterfly Valves:** Comply with requirements specified in Section 230523 "General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping. Gate valves are not allowed on this project.
- B. Automatic Temperature-Control Valves, Actuators, and Sensors: Comply with requirements specified in Section 230900 "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC.
- C. Refer to Part 3 "Valve Applications" Article for applications of each valve.
- D. Bronze, Calibrated-Orifice or Venturi, Balancing Valves, NPS 2 and smaller:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
 - b. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
 - c. Flow Design Inc.
 - d. Gerand Engineering Co.
 - e. Griswold Controls.
 - f. Taco.
 - g. Tour & Andersson; available through Victaulic Company.
 - h. Tyco-Grinnell
 - i. Nexus Valve, Inc.
 - 2. Body: Bronze, ball or plug type with calibrated orifice or venturi.
 - 3. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
 - 4. Plug: Resin.
 - 5. Seat: PTFE.
 - 6. End Connections: Threaded or socket.
 - 7. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
 - 8. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
 - 9. CWP Rating: **Minimum 125 psig.**
 - 10. Maximum Operating Temperature: **250 deg F.**
- E. Cast-Iron or Steel, Calibrated-Orifice or Venturi, Balancing Valves, NPS 2 ½ and larger:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Amtrol, Inc.
 - b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
 - c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
 - d. Flow Design Inc.
 - e. Gerand Engineering Co.

- f. Grinnell.
 - g. Griswold Controls.
 - h. Taco.
 - i. Tour & Andersson; available through Victaulic Company.
 - j. Spence Engineering Company Inc.
 - k. Watts Regulator Co.
 - l. Nexus Valve, Inc.
2. Body: Cast-iron or steel body, ball, plug, or globe pattern with calibrated orifice or venturi.
 3. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
 4. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
 5. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
 6. Seat: PTFE.
 7. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
 8. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
 9. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
 10. CWP Rating: Minimum **125 psig**.
 11. Maximum Operating Temperature: **250 deg F**.
- F. Diaphragm-Operated, Pressure-Reducing Valves: ASME labeled.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Amtrol, Inc.
 - b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
 - c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
 - d. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - e. Spence Engineering Company, Inc.
 - f. Watts Regulator Co.
 2. Body: Bronze or brass.
 3. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
 4. Seat: Brass.
 5. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
 6. Diaphragm: EPT.
 7. Low inlet-pressure check valve.
 8. Inlet Strainer: **Brass**, removable without system shutdown.
 9. Valve Seat and Stem: Noncorrosive.
 10. Valve Size, Capacity, and Operating Pressure: Selected to suit system in which installed, with operating pressure and capacity factory set and field adjustable.
- G. Diaphragm-Operated Safety Valves: ASME labeled.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Amtrol, Inc.
 - b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
 - c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.

- d. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - e. Kunkle.
 - f. Spence Engineering Company, Inc.
2. Body: Bronze or brass.
 3. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
 4. Seat: Brass.
 5. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
 6. Diaphragm: EPT.
 7. Wetted, Internal Work Parts: Brass and rubber.
 8. Inlet Strainer: **Brass**, removable without system shutdown.
 9. Valve Seat and Stem: Noncorrosive.
 10. Valve Size, Capacity, and Operating Pressure: Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IV, and selected to suit system in which installed, with operating pressure and capacity factory set and field adjustable.

H. Automatic Flow-Control Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
 - b. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
 - c. Flow Design Inc.
 - d. Griswold Controls.
 - e. Taco
 - f. Nexus Valve, Inc.
2. Body: Brass or ferrous metal.
3. Piston and Spring Assembly: Tamper proof, self-cleaning, and removable, for inspections and replacement.
 - a. Corrosion resistant.
4. Combination Assemblies: Include bronze or brass-alloy ball valve.
5. Identification Tag: Attached by chain and marked with zone identification, valve number, and flow rate.
6. Size: Same as pipe in which installed.
7. Performance: Maintain constant flow, plus or minus 5 percent over system pressure fluctuations:
 - a. Minimum CWP Rating: 175 psig.
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 200 deg F.
9. Fitted with pressure and temperature test valves.
10. Equipped with a readout kit including flow meter, probes, hoses, flow charts, and carrying case.

2.2 AIR-CONTROL DEVICES

A. Manual Air Vents:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Amtrol, Inc.
 - b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
 - c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
 - d. Taco, Inc.
2. Body: Bronze.
3. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
4. Operator: Screwdriver or thumbscrew.
5. Manually operated with ball valve in the down position.
6. Inlet Connection: **NPS 1/2**.
7. Discharge Connection: **NPS 1/8**.
8. CWP Rating: **150 psig**.
9. Maximum Operating Temperature: **225 deg F**.

B. Automatic Air Vents:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Amtrol, Inc.
 - b. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
 - c. Hoffman Specialty ITT; Fluid Handling Div.
 - d. Spirax-Sarco.
 - e. Spirovent.
 - f. Taco, Inc.
 - g. Honeywell-Baukman.
2. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
3. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
4. Operator: Noncorrosive metal float.
5. Inlet Connection: **NPS 1/2**.
6. Discharge Connection: **NPS 1/4**.
7. CWP Rating: **150 psig**.
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: **240 deg F**.

C. Bladder -Type Expansion Tanks:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Amtrol, Inc.
 - b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
 - c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
 - d. Taco, Inc.
 - e. Zilmet
2. Tank: Welded steel, rated for **125-psig** working pressure and **240 deg F** maximum operating temperature. Factory test after taps are fabricated and supports installed and

are labeled according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.

3. **Bladder** : Securely sealed into tank to separate air charge from system water to maintain required expansion capacity.
4. Air-Charge Fittings: Schrader valve, stainless steel with EPDM seats.
5. Access: Drain fitting and taps for pressure gage.
6. Support:
 - a. Vertical tanks with steel legs or base.
 - b. Horizontal tanks with steel saddles.

D. Tangential-Type Air Separators:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Amtrol, Inc.
 - b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
 - c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
 - d. Taco, Inc.
2. Tank: Welded steel; ASME constructed and labeled for **125-psig** minimum working pressure and **240 deg F** maximum operating temperature.
3. Air Collector Tube: Perforated stainless steel, constructed to direct released air into expansion tank.
4. Tangential Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded for **NPS 2** and smaller; flanged connections for **NPS 2-1/2** and larger.
5. Blowdown Connection: Threaded.
6. Size: Match system flow capacity.

2.3 HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Armstrong Machine Works.
 - b. Hoffman Specialty ITT; Fluid Handling Div.
 - c. Metraflex Co.
 - d. Mueller
 - e. Spirax Sarco.
 - f. Trane Co.
 - g. Tyco-Grinnell.
 - h. Tour & Andersson; available through Victaulic Company.
 - i. Watts Regulator Co.
2. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.

3. End Connections: Threaded ends for **NPS 2** and smaller; flanged ends for **NPS 2-1/2** and larger.
4. Strainer Screen: Stainless-steel, or perforated stainless-steel basket:
 - a. 20-mesh strainer.
5. CWP Rating: 125 psig.

B. Basket Strainers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Crane Co.
 - b. Metraflex Co.
 - c. Mueller
 - d. Spirax Sarco.
 - e. Tyco-Grinnell.
 - f. Tour & Andersson; available through Victaulic Company.
2. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, high-tensile cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
3. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
4. Strainer Screen: Perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area:
 - a. 40-mesh startup strainer.
5. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
 - a. Mason Industries
 - b. Metraflex Co.

C. Spherical, Rubber, Flexible Connectors:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Amber-Booth.
 - b. Mason Industries.
 - c. Metraflex Co.
 - d. Flex-Weld.
 - e. Proco.
 - f. Fugate.
 - g. Twin City Hose.
 - h. Nexus Valve, Inc.
2. Body: Double-sphere fiber-reinforced EPDM rubber body.
3. End Connections: Steel flanges drilled to align with Classes 150 and 300 steel flanges.
4. Performance: Capable of misalignment.
5. CWP Rating: **150 psig**.

6. Maximum Operating Temperature: **250 deg F.**

D. Diverting Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Amtrol, Inc.
 - b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
 - c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
 - d. Taco, Inc.
2. Body: Cast Iron or Wrought Copper
3. Ends: Threaded or Soldered
4. Flow Direction: Indicated on fitting.
5. CWP Rating: **125 psig.**
6. Maximum Operating Temperature: **250 deg F.**

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. Install shutoff-duty valves at each branch connection to supply mains and at supply connection to each piece of equipment.
- B. **Install calibrated-orifice**, balancing valves at each branch connection to return main.
- C. Install calibrated-orifice, balancing valves in the return pipe of each heating or cooling terminal.
- D. Install check valves at each pump discharge and elsewhere as required to control flow direction.
- E. Install safety valves at hot-water generators and elsewhere as required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Install drip-pan elbow on safety-valve outlet and pipe without valves to the outdoors; pipe drain to nearest floor drain or as indicated on Drawings. Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1, for installation requirements.
- F. Install pressure-reducing valves at makeup-water connection to regulate system fill pressure.

3.2 HYDRONIC SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

- A. Install manual air vents at high points in piping, at heat-transfer coils, and elsewhere as required for system air venting.

- B. Automatic air vents may cause damage to ceilings and other finished surfaces. Air vents aid in system filling. Air removal after initial startup is accomplished by air separator or boiler diptube. Manual air vents may be a better solution.
- C. Install automatic air vents at high points of system piping in mechanical equipment rooms only. Install manual vents at heat-transfer coils and elsewhere as required for air venting.
- D. Install piping from boiler air outlet, air separator, or air purger to expansion tank with a 2 percent upward slope toward tank.
- E. Install in-line air separators in pump suction. Install drain valve on air separators **NPS 2** and larger.
- F. Install tangential air separator in pump suction. Install blowdown piping with gate or full-port ball valve; extend full size to nearest floor drain.
- G. Install expansion tanks above the air separator. Install tank fitting in tank bottom and charge tank. Use manual vent for initial fill to establish proper water level in tank.
 - 1. Install tank fittings that are shipped loose.
 - 2. Support tank from floor or structure above with sufficient strength to carry weight of tank, piping connections, fittings, plus tank full of water. Do not overload building components and structural members.
- H. Install expansion tanks on the floor. Vent and purge air from hydronic system, and ensure that tank is properly charged with air to suit system Project requirements.

END OF SECTION 232116

SECTION 232123 - HYDRONIC PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Separately coupled, horizontally mounted, in-line centrifugal pumps.
 - 2. Separately coupled, vertically mounted, in-line centrifugal pumps.
 - 3. Separately coupled, base-mounted, end-suction centrifugal pumps.
 - 4. Wet-rotor pumps.
 - 5. Automatic condensate pump units.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Buna-N: Nitrile rubber.
- B. EPT: Ethylene propylene terpolymer.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of pump. Include certified performance curves and rated capacities, shipping weights, installed weights, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, final impeller dimensions, and accessories for each type of product indicated. Indicate pump's operating point on curves.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each pump.
 - 1. Show pump layout and connections.
 - 2. Include setting drawings with templates for installing foundation and anchor bolts and other anchorages.
 - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
 - a. Detail all wiring systems and differentiate clearly between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For pumps to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Mechanical Seals: One mechanical seal(s) for each pump.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. UL Compliance: Fabricate and label pumps to comply with UL 778, "Motor-Operated Water Pumps," for construction requirements.
- B. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, connections, and dimensional requirements of pumps and are based on the specific types and models indicated. Other manufacturers' pumps with equal performance characteristics may be considered. Refer to Division 1 Section "Substitutions."
- C. Regulatory Requirements: Fabricate and test steam condensate pumps to comply with HI 1.1-1.5, "Centrifugal Pumps for Nomenclature, Definitions, Application and Operation," and HI 1.6, "Centrifugal Pump Tests."
- D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Manufacturer's Preparation for Shipping: Clean flanges and exposed machined metal surfaces and treat with anticorrosion compound after assembly and testing. Protect flanges, pipe openings, and nozzles with wooden flange covers or with screwed-in plugs.
- B. Store pumps in dry location.
- C. Retain protective covers for flanges and protective coatings during storage.
- D. Protect bearings and couplings against damage from sand, grit, and other foreign matter.
- E. Comply with pump manufacturer's written rigging instructions.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FACTORY STOCK CIRCULATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Armstrong Pumps Inc.
 2. Aurora Pump; Division of Pentair Pump Group.
 3. Crane Pumps & Systems.
 4. Flobab
 5. Flowserve Corporation.
 6. Grundfos Pumps Corporation.
 7. ITT Corporation; Bell & Gossett.
 8. Mepco, LLC.
 9. Patterson Pump Co.; a subsidiary of the Gorman-Rupp Co.
 10. Peerless Pump Company.
 11. TACO Incorporated.
 12. Thrush Company Inc.
- B. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, in-line or motor mounted pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for installation with pump and motor shafts mounted horizontally or vertically. Rated for 125-psig minimum working pressure and a continuous water temperature of 225 deg F.
- C. Pump Construction:
1. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet, and threaded or threaded companion-flange or union-end connections or unions at connections for casings that are not available with threaded companion flanges.
 2. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, keyed to shaft, and secured with a locking cap screw.
 3. Pump Shaft: Steel, with oil lubricated copper-alloy shaft sleeve.
 4. Seal: Mechanical seal consisting of carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and Buna-N bellows and gasket. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
 5. Pump Bearings:
 - a. Oil lubricated, bronze-journal.
- D. Motor: Single speed and rigidly or resiliently mounted to pump casing.
1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 2. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - a. Enclosure: Open, dripproof.

- b. Enclosure Materials:
 - 1) Cast iron.
- c. Motor Bearings: Permanently lubricated ball bearings.
- d. Efficiency:
 - 1) Premium efficient.
- e. Service Factor: 1.15

2.2 SEPARATELY COUPLED, HORIZONTALLY MOUNTED, IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Armstrong Pumps Inc.
 - 2. Aurora Pump; Division of Pentair Pump Group.
 - 3. Flobab
 - 4. Grundfos Pumps Corporation.
 - 5. ITT Corporation; Bell & Gossett.
 - 6. PACO Pumps; Grundfos CBG.
 - 7. Peerless Pump Company.
 - 8. Patterson Pump Co.; a subsidiary of the Gorman-Rupp Co.
 - 9. TACO Incorporated.
- B. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, separately coupled, in-line pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for installation with pump and motor shafts mounted horizontally. Rated for 175-psig minimum working pressure and a continuous water temperature of 225 deg F.
- C. Pump Construction:
 - 1. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, bronze fitted, with threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet, and threaded or threaded companion-flange or union-end connections or unions at connections for casings that are not available with threaded companion flanges.
 - 2. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, and keyed to shaft. For pumps that are not frequency-drive controlled, trim impeller to match specified performance.
 - 3. Pump Shaft: Steel, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve.
 - 4. Seal: Mechanical seal consisting of carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and Buna-N bellows and gasket. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
 - 5. Pump Bearings:
 - a. Oil lubricated, bronze-journal.
- D. Shaft Coupling: Molded-rubber insert with interlocking spider or interlocking frame with interconnecting springs capable of absorbing vibration.
- E. Motor: Single speed and resiliently or rigidly mounted to pump casing.

1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - a. Enclosure: Open, dripproof.
 - b. Enclosure Materials: Cast iron.
 - c. Motor Bearings: Grease-lubricated ball bearings.
 - d. Efficiency:
 - 1) Premium efficient.
 - e. NEMA Design: <Insert designation>.
 - f. Service Factor: 1.15

2.3 SEPARATELY COUPLED, VERTICALLY MOUNTED, IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Armstrong Pumps Inc.
 2. Aurora Pump; Division of Pentair Pump Group.
 3. Flobab
 4. ITT Corporation; Bell & Gossett.
 5. PACO Pumps; Grundfos CBG.
 6. Peerless Pump Company.
 7. Patterson Pump Co.; a subsidiary of the Gorman-Rupp Co.
 8. TACO Incorporated.
- B. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, separately coupled, bronze fitted, in-line pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for installation with pump and motor shafts mounted vertically. Rated for 175-psig minimum working pressure and a continuous water temperature of 225 deg F.
- C. Pump Construction:
 1. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, bronze fitted, with threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet and threaded companion-flange or union-end connections.
 2. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, keyed to shaft, and secured with a locking cap screw. ~~For pumps not frequency drive controlled, Trim impeller to match specified performance.~~
 3. Pump Shaft: Steel, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve.
 4. Seal: Mechanical seal consisting of carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and Buna-N bellows and gasket. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
 5. Pump Bearings:
 - a. Oil lubricated, bronze-journal.

- D. Shaft Coupling: Axially split spacer coupling.
- E. Motor: Single speed and rigidly mounted to pump casing with lifting eyebolt and supporting lugs in motor enclosure.
 - 1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 2. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - a. Enclosure: Open, dripproof.
 - b. Enclosure Materials: Cast iron.
 - c. Motor Bearings: Grease-lubricated ball bearings.
 - d. Efficiency: Premium efficient.
 - e. Service Factor: 1.15

2.4 SEPARATELY COUPLED, BASE-MOUNTED, END-SUCTION CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Armstrong Pumps Inc.
 - 2. Flobab
 - 3. ITT Corporation; Bell & Gossett.
 - 4. PACO Pumps; Grundfos CBG.
 - 5. Peerless Pump Company.
 - 6. TACO Incorporated.
- B. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, separately coupled, bronze fitted, end-suction pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for base mounting, with pump and motor shafts horizontal. Rated for 175-psig minimum working pressure and a continuous water temperature of 225 deg F.
- C. Pump Construction:
 - 1. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, bronze fitted, with threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet, drain plug at bottom and air vent at top of volute, and threaded companion-flange or flanged connections.
 - a. Provide integral mount on volute to support the casing, and provide attached piping to allow removal and replacement of impeller without disconnecting piping or requiring the realignment of pump and motor shaft.
 - 2. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, keyed to shaft, and secured with a locking cap screw. For pumps without frequency-drive control, trim impeller to match specified performance.
 - 3. Pump Shaft: Steel, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve.

4. Seal: Mechanical seal consisting of carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and Buna-N bellows and gasket. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
5. Pump Bearings: Grease-lubricated ball bearings in cast-iron housing with grease fittings.
- D. Shaft Coupling: Molded-rubber insert and interlocking spider capable of absorbing vibration.
 1. Couplings shall be drop-out type to allow disassembly and removal without removing pump shaft or motor.
- E. Coupling Guard: Dual rated; ANSI B15.1, Section 8; OSHA 1910.219 approved; steel; removable; attached to mounting frame.
- F. Mounting Frame: Welded-steel frame and cross members, factory fabricated from ASTM A 36/A 36M channels and angles. Fabricate to mount pump casing, coupling guard, and motor.
- G. Motor: Single speed, secured to mounting frame, with adjustable alignment.
 1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 2. NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - a. Enclosure: Open, dripproof.
 - b. Enclosure Materials: Cast iron.
 - c. Motor Bearings: Grease-lubricated ball bearings.
 - d. Efficiency: Premium efficient.
 - e. Service Factor: 1.15

2.5 WET-ROTOR PUMPS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Armstrong Pumps Inc.
 2. Flowserve Corporation.
 3. Grundfos Pumps Corporation.
 4. ITT Corporation; Bell & Gossett.
 5. TACO Incorporated.
- B. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, horizontal inline, wet-rotor pump. Pump and motor assembled on a common shaft in hermetically sealed unit without stuffing box or mechanical seals. Include isolation of motor section from motor-stator windings by corrosion-resistant, nonmagnetic, alloy liner. Include design rated for 125-psig minimum working pressure and a continuous water temperature of 225 deg F.

C. Pump Construction:

1. Body: 100 percent lead-free bronze. Cast iron, with stainless-steel liner, static O-ring seal to separate motor section from motor stator, and flanged piping connections.
2. Impeller: Polypropylene Overhung, single suction, closed or open, nonmetallic.
3. Pump Shaft: Stainless Steel.
4. Bearings. Double-sintered carbon.

D. Motor: Single speed.

1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

2.6 AUTOMATIC CONDENSATE PUMP UNITS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Beckett Corporation.
2. Hartell Pumps Div.; Milton Roy Co.
3. Little Giant Pump Co.
4. Mepco, LLC.

B. Description: Packaged units with corrosion-resistant pump, plastic tank with cover, and automatic controls. Include factory- or field-installed check valve and a 72-inch-minimum, electrical power cord with plug.

2.7 DOMESTIC WATER PUMPS

A. Casings and all wetted parts in pumps used in domestic water systems shall be stainless steel.

B. See Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Pumps".

2.8 PUMP SPECIALTY FITTINGS

A. Suction Diffuser:

1. Angle pattern.
2. 175-psig pressure rating, cast-iron body and end cap, pump-inlet fitting.
3. Bronze startup and bronze or stainless-steel permanent strainers.
4. Bronze or stainless-steel straightening vanes.
5. Drain plug.
6. Factory-fabricated support.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine equipment foundations and anchor-bolt locations for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before pump installation.
- C. Examine foundations and inertia bases for suitable conditions where pumps are to be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PUMP INSTALLATION

- A. Install pumps according to HI 1.1-1.5, "Centrifugal Pumps for Nomenclature, Definitions, Application and Operation."
- B. Comply with HI 1.4.
- C. Install pumps to provide access for periodic maintenance including removing motors, impellers, couplings, and accessories.
- D. Independently support pumps and piping so weight of piping is not supported by pumps and weight of pumps is not supported by piping.
- E. Automatic Condensate Pump Units: Install units for collecting condensate and extend to open drain.
- F. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Install base-mounted pumps on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Division 03 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 - 2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic control devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
 - 3. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."
- G. Equipment Mounting: Install in-line pumps with continuous-thread hanger rods and spring hangers elastomeric hangers of size required to support weight of in-line pumps.
 - 1. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
 - 2. Comply with requirements for hangers and supports specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

3.3 ALIGNMENT

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform alignment service.
- B. Comply with requirements in Hydronics Institute standards for alignment of pump and motor shaft. Add shims to the motor feet and bolt motor to base frame. Do not use grout between motor feet and base frame.
- C. Comply with pump and coupling manufacturers' written instructions.
- D. After alignment is correct, tighten foundation bolts evenly but not too firmly. Completely fill baseplate with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout while metal blocks and shims or wedges are in place. After grout has cured, fully tighten foundation bolts.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Division 23 Section "Steam and Condensate Heating Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to pump, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect piping to pumps. Install valves that are same size as piping connected to pumps.
- D. Install check, shutoff, and throttling on discharge side of pumps.
- E. Install suction and discharge pipe sizes equal to or greater than diameter of pump nozzles.
- F. Install suction diffuser and shutoff valve on suction side of vertical-inline and base-mounted pumps.
- G. Install flexible connectors on suction and discharge sides of base-mounted pumps between pump casing and valves.
- H. Install pressure gages on pump suction and discharge or at integral pressure-gage tapping, or install single gage with multiple-input selector valve.
- I. Install thermometers at pump suction and discharge.
- J. Install check valve and gate or ball valve on each condensate pump unit discharge.
- K. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.
- L. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
 - 1. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 2. Check piping connections for tightness.
 3. Clean strainers on suction piping.
 4. Perform the following startup checks for each pump before starting:
 - a. Verify that electrical wiring installation complies with manufacturer's written instructions and the Contract Documents.
 - b. Verify bearing lubrication.
 - c. Verify that pump is free to rotate by hand and that pump for handling hot liquid is free to rotate with pump hot and cold. If pump is bound or drags, do not operate until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.
 - d. Verify that pump is rotating in the correct direction.
 5. Prime pump by opening suction valves and closing drains, and prepare pump for operation.
 6. Open cooling water-supply valves in cooling water supply to bearings, where applicable.
 7. Open cooling water-supply valves if stuffing boxes are water cooled.
 8. Open sealing liquid-supply valves if pumps are so fitted.
 9. Open warm-up valves of pumps handling hot liquids if pumps are not normally kept at operating temperature.
 10. Open circulating line valves if pumps should not be operated against dead shutoff.
 11. Start motor.
 12. Open discharge valve slowly.
 13. Observe leakage from stuffing boxes and adjust sealing liquid valve for proper flow to ensure lubrication of packing. Let packing "run in" before reducing leakage through stuffing boxes; then tighten glands.
 14. Check general mechanical operation of pumps and motors.
 15. Close circulating line valves once there is sufficient flow through pumps to prevent overheating.
- B. When pumps are to be started against closed check valves with discharge shutoff valves open, steps are the same, except open discharge valves before starting motors.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain hydronic pumps as specified below:
1. Train Owner's maintenance personnel on procedures and schedules for starting and stopping, troubleshooting, servicing, and maintaining pumps.
 2. Review data in maintenance manuals. Refer to Division 1 Section "Contract Closeout."
 3. Review data in maintenance manuals. Refer to Division 1 Section Contract Closeout.
 4. Schedule training with Owner, through Architect, with at least seven days' advance notice.

END OF SECTION 232123

SECTION 232513 - WATER TREATMENT FOR CLOSED-LOOP HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes the following water treatment for closed-loop hydronic systems:
 - 1. **Manual** chemical-feed equipment.
 - 2. **Automatic** chemical-feed equipment.
 - 3. Chemicals.
- B. Related Requirements:

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.
- B. RO: Reverse osmosis.
- C. TSS: Total suspended solids are solid materials, including organic and inorganic, that are suspended in the water. These solids may include silt, plankton, and industrial wastes.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories for the following products:
 - 1. Bypass feeders.
 - 2. Water meters.
 - 3. Chemical solution tanks.
 - 4. Chemical material safety data sheets.
- B. Shop Drawings: Pretreatment and chemical treatment equipment showing tanks, maintenance space required, and piping connections to hydronic systems.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
 - 2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- B. Water Analysis Provider Qualifications: Verification of experience and capability of HVAC water-treatment service provider.
- C. Field quality-control reports.
- D. Other Informational Submittals:
 - 1. Water-Treatment Program: Written sequence of operation on an annual basis for the application equipment required to achieve water quality defined in "Performance Requirements" Article.
 - 2. Water Analysis: Illustrate water quality available at Project site.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For sensors, injection pumps, and controllers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. HVAC Water-Treatment Service Provider Qualifications: An experienced HVAC water-treatment service provider capable of analyzing water qualities, installing water-treatment equipment, and applying water treatment as specified in this Section.

1.8 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Scope of Maintenance Service: Provide chemicals and service program to maintain water conditions required above to inhibit corrosion and scale formation for hydronic piping and equipment. Services and chemicals shall be provided for a period of one year from date of Substantial Completion and shall include the following:
 - 1. Initial water analysis and HVAC water-treatment recommendations.
 - 2. Startup assistance for Contractor to flush the systems, clean with detergents, and initially fill systems with required chemical treatment prior to operation.
 - 3. Customer report charts and log sheets.
 - 4. Laboratory technical analysis.
 - 5. Analyses and reports of all chemical items concerning safety and compliance with government regulations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Power Engineering Co.
 - 2. WEST

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Water quality for hydronic systems shall minimize corrosion, scale buildup, and biological growth for optimum efficiency of hydronic equipment without creating a hazard to operating personnel or the environment.
- B. Base HVAC water treatment on quality of water available at Project site, hydronic system equipment material characteristics and functional performance characteristics, operating personnel capabilities, and requirements and guidelines of authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Closed hydronic systems, including:
 - 1. Glycol heating
- D. Closed hydronic systems, shall have the following water qualities:
 - 1. pH: Maintain a value within the combined recommendations of the various equipment manufacturers.
 - 2. Nitrite: Maintain a value within 800 to 1000 ppm.
 - 3. Microbiological Limits:
 - a. Total Aerobic Plate Count: Maintain a maximum value of zero organisms/mL.

2.3 MANUAL CHEMICAL-FEED EQUIPMENT

- A. Bypass Feeders: Steel, with corrosion-resistant exterior coating, minimum 3-1/2-inch fill opening in the top, and NPS 3/4 bottom inlet and top side outlet. Quarter turn or threaded fill cap with gasket seal and diaphragm to lock the top on the feeder when exposed to system pressure in the vessel.
 - 1. Capacity:
 - a. 5 gal.
 - 2. Minimum Working Pressure:
 - a. 125 psig

2.4 CHEMICALS

- A. Chemicals shall be as recommended by water-treatment system manufacturer that are compatible with piping system components and connected equipment and that can attain water quality specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.

2.5 GLYCOL FEED SYSTEM

- A. One (1) 50-gallon polyethylene feed tank. Wall thickness shall be a minimum of ¼". Tank shall be mounted on a steel frame with accommodations for mounting a pump underneath. Tank shall be supplied with a removable lid and all interconnecting piping to pump including strainer and isolation valve. Tank height including stand shall not exceed 48". Tank stand shall be finished with an epoxy powder coating to protect against corrosion.
- B. One (1) Level switch to deactivate pump and activate alarm on low glycol level in the feed tank.
- C. One (1) Control panel shall house switching device for pump, audible alarm, HOA switch for pump, lights to indicate power and low level, pushbutton for alarm silence. Enclosure shall be NEMA 12. Control panel shall be mounted on the tank stand.
- D. One (1) 1/3 HP centrifugal pump mounted under the feed tank. Materials of construction shall be bronze. Pump shall provide 2.5 GPM at 60 PSIG. Rotary gear pump is not acceptable.
- E. Pressure switch shall be Honeywell L404F1078 or Square D 9012 GNG-4. One (1) Pressure switch set at:
 - 1. Field determine PSIG to activate the glycol feed pump.
 - 2. Field determine PSI for differential setting for the pressure switch.
- F. GLYCOL
 - 1. The glycol provided shall be propylene glycol as manufactured by Dow Chemical or Huntsman Chemical. Trade name shall be DowFrost HD or JeffCool HD. The water quality in the hot/chilled water system shall meet the recommendations of the glycol manufacturer so as to reduce the formation of sludge. If the water quality at the jobsite does not meet manufacturers recommendations then the glycol solution shall be provided pre-mixed with deionized water. An analysis of the glycol solution and the water quality shall be included in the O&M manuals. Glycol percentage shall be:
 - a. 30 % by volume.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 WATER ANALYSIS

- A. Perform an analysis of supply water to determine quality of water available at Project site.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install chemical application equipment on concrete bases, level and plumb. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible. Anchor chemical tanks and floor-mounting accessories to substrate.
- B. Install seismic restraints for equipment and floor-mounting accessories and anchor to building structure. Comply with requirements in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC" for seismic restraints.
- C. Install water testing equipment on wall near water chemical application equipment.
- D. Install glycol feed system per manufacturers recommendations.
- E. Install interconnecting control wiring for chemical treatment controls and sensors.
- F. Mount sensors and injectors in piping circuits.
- G. Bypass Feeders: Install in closed hydronic systems, including:
 - 1. Hot-water heating
- H. Bypass Feeders: Install in closed hydronic systems, and equipped with the following:
 - 1. Install bypass feeder in a bypass circuit around circulating pumps unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Install water meter in makeup-water supply.
 - 3. Install test-coupon assembly in bypass circuit around circulating pumps unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 - 4. Install a gate or full-port ball isolation valves on inlet, outlet, and drain below the feeder inlet.
 - 5. Install a swing check on the inlet after the isolation valve.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance.
- B. Make piping connections between HVAC water-treatment equipment and dissimilar-metal piping with dielectric fittings. Comply with requirements in Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties."
- C. Install shutoff valves on HVAC water-treatment equipment inlet and outlet. Metal general-duty valves are specified in Section 230523 "General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping."
- D. Comply with requirements in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for backflow preventers required in makeup-water connections to potable-water systems.
- E. Confirm applicable electrical requirements in electrical Sections for connecting electrical equipment.
- F. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

- G. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
 - 1. Inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including piping and electrical connections.
 - 2. Inspect piping and equipment to determine that systems and equipment have been cleaned, flushed, and filled with water, and are fully operational before introducing chemicals for water-treatment system.
 - 3. Place HVAC water-treatment system into operation and calibrate controls during the preliminary phase of hydronic systems' startup procedures.
 - 4. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is tested and satisfactory test results are achieved.
 - 5. Test for leaks and defects. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
 - 6. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, and replaced water piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that has been covered or concealed before it has been tested and approved.
 - 7. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow test pressure to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects.
 - 8. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping until no leaks exist.
- C. Equipment will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- E. At quarterly intervals following Substantial Completion, perform separate water analyses on hydronic systems to show that automatic chemical-feed systems are maintaining water quality within performance requirements specified in this Section. Submit written reports of water analysis advising Owner of changes necessary to adhere to "Performance Requirements" Article.
- F. Comply with ASTM D 3370 and with the following standards:
 - 1. Silica: ASTM D 859.
 - 2. Acidity and Alkalinity: ASTM D 1067.
 - 3. Iron: ASTM D 1068.
 - 4. Water Hardness: ASTM D 1126.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain HVAC water-treatment systems and equipment.
- B. Training: Provide a "how-to-use" self-contained breathing apparatus video that details exact operating procedures of equipment.

END OF SECTION 232513

SECTION 233001 - COMMON DUCT REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - PRODUCTS

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Includes But Not Limited To:

1. General procedures and requirements for ductwork.
2. Repair leaks in ductwork, as identified by smoke test, at no additional cost to Owner.
3. Soundproofing procedures for duct penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors in mechanical equipment rooms.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 07: Quality of Acoustic Sealant.
2. Section 23 0500: Common Work Results for HVAC
3. Section 23 0593: Testing Adjusting and Balancing for HVAC.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. Samples: Sealer and gauze proposed for sealing ductwork.

B. Quality Assurance / Control:

1. Manufacturer's installation manuals providing detailed instructions on assembly, joint sealing, and system pressure testing for leaks.
2. Specification data on sealer and gauze proposed for sealing ductwork.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Requirements: Construction details not specifically called out in Contract Documents shall conform to applicable requirements of SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards.

B. Pre-Installation Conference: Schedule conference immediately before installation of ductwork.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 Finishes, Where Applicable: Colors as selected by Architect.

2.2 Duct Hangers:

- A. One inch by 18 ga galvanized steel straps or steel rods as shown on Drawings, and spaced not more than 96 inches apart. Do not use wire hangers.

1. Attaching screws at trusses shall be 2 inch No. 10 round head wood screws. Nails not allowed.
2. Attach threaded rod to steel joist with Grinnell Steel washer plate Fig. 60 - ph-1. Double nut connection.

2.3 Penetration Soundproofing Materials:

- A. Insulation for Packing: Fiberglass.
- B. Calking: Polysulphide.
- C. Escutcheon Frame: 22 ga galvanized iron 2 inches wide.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. During installation, protect open ends of ducts by covering with plastic sheet tied in place to prevent entrance of debris and dirt.
- B. Make necessary allowances and provisions in installation of sheet metal ducts for structural conditions of building. Revisions in layout and configuration may be allowed, with prior written approval of Architect. Maintain required airflows in suggesting revisions.
- C. Hangers And Supports:
 1. Install pair of hangers close to each transverse joint and elsewhere as required by spacing indicated in table on Drawings.
 2. Install upper ends of hanger securely to floor or roof construction above by method shown on Drawings.
 3. Attach strap hangers to ducts with cadmium-plated screws. Use of pop rivets or other means will not be accepted.
 4. Where hangers are secured to forms before concrete slabs are poured, cut off flush all nails, strap ends, and other projections after forms are removed.
 5. Secure vertical ducts passing through floors by extending bracing angles to rest firmly on floors without loose blocking or shimming. Support vertical ducts, which do not pass through floors, by using bands bolted to walls, columns, etc. Size, spacing, and method of attachment to vertical ducts shall be same as specified for hanger bands on horizontal ducts.
- D. Penetration Soundproofing
 1. Pack space between ducts and structure full of fiberglass insulation of sufficient thickness to be wedged tight, allowing space for application of calking.
 2. Provide calking at least 2 inches thick between duct and structure on both ends of opening through structure.
 3. Provide metal escutcheon on Equipment Room side. Secure escutcheon to wall.

3.2 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior of duct systems before final completion.

END OF SECTION 233001

SECTION 233113 - METAL DUCTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
2. Single-wall round ducts and fittings.
3. Exhaust Air Stacks
4. Guy wires and connectors.
5. Sheet metal materials.
6. Duct liner.
7. Sealants and gaskets.
8. Hangers and supports.
9. Seismic-restraint devices.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.
2. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for dampers, sound-control devices, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.
3. Section 230713 "Duct Insulation" for duct insulation and fire wrap.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and performance requirements and design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.
- B. Seismic Performance: Duct hangers and supports shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7 and with the requirements specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
 1. For equipment with a seismic importance factor of **1.0** the term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."

2. For equipment with a seismic importance factor of **1.5** the term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
- C. Structural Performance: Duct hangers and supports shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"
- D. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following products:
 1. Liners and adhesives.
 2. Sealants and gaskets.
 3. Seismic-restraint devices.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
 2. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
 3. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, liner material, and static-pressure classes.
 4. Elevation of top of ducts.
 5. Dimensions of main duct runs from building grid lines.
 6. Fittings.
 7. Reinforcement and spacing.
 8. Seam and joint construction.
 9. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
 10. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
 11. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
 12. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment and vibration isolation.
 13. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment, seismic restraints, and vibration isolation.
 14. Duct fabrication shall not begin until shop drawings have been submitted and reviewed by the mechanical engineer.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal:
 1. Sheet metal thicknesses.
 2. Joint and seam construction and sealing.
 3. Reinforcement details and spacing.
 4. Materials, fabrication, assembly, and spacing of hangers and supports.
 5. Design Calculations: Calculations for selecting hangers and supports.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Duct installation in congested spaces, indicating coordination with general construction, building components, and other building services. Indicate proposed changes to duct layout.
 2. Suspended ceiling components.
 3. Structural members to which duct will be attached.
 4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
 5. Penetrations of smoke barriers and fire-rated construction.
 6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including, but not limited to the following:
 - a. Lighting fixtures.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Speakers.
 - d. Sprinklers.
 - e. Access panels.
 - f. Perimeter moldings.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to [AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports.] [AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum," for aluminum supports.] [AWS D9.1M/D9.1, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for duct joint and seam welding.]
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports.
 2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum," for aluminum supports.
 3. AWS D9.1M/D9.1, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for duct joint and seam welding.
- C. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."
- D. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- D. Duct dimensions shown on drawings are inside clear dimensions.
- E. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.2 DOUBLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. Rectangular Ducts: Fabricate ducts with indicated dimensions for the inner duct.
- B. Duct dimensions shown on drawings are inside clear dimensions.
- C. Outer Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- E. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- F. Interstitial Insulation: Fibrous-glass liner complying with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
 - 1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: **0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg Fat 75 deg F** mean temperature.
 - 2. Install spacers that position the inner duct at uniform distance from outer duct without compressing insulation.
 - 3. Coat insulation with antimicrobial coating.
 - 4. Cover insulation with polyester film complying with UL 181, Class 1.

- G. Interstitial Insulation: Flexible elastomeric duct liner complying with ASTM C 534, Type II for sheet materials, and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
 - 1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: **0.25 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F** mean temperature.
- H. **Inner Duct:** Minimum **0.028-inch** perforated galvanized sheet steel having **3/32-inch**-diameter perforations, with overall open area of 23 percent. Inner duct shall be solid sheet steel a minimum of 10 feet downstream of humidifiers or air washers.
- I. **Inner Duct:** Minimum **0.028-inch solid sheet steel**.
- J. Formed-on Transverse Joints (Flanges): Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- K. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.3 SINGLE-WALL ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Duct dimensions shown on drawings are inside clear dimensions.
- C. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 - 1. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than **60 Inches** in Diameter: Flanged.
- D. Longitudinal Seams: Not allowed.
- E. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.4 DOUBLE-WALL ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. Duct dimensions shown on drawings are inside clear dimensions.
- B. Outer Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 - a. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than **60 Inches** in Diameter: Flanged.
 - 2. Longitudinal Seams: Not allowed.
 - 3. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- C. **Inner Duct:** Minimum **0.028-inch** perforated galvanized sheet steel having **3/32-inch**-diameter perforations, with overall open area of 23 percent.
 - 1. Inner duct shall be solid sheet steel a minimum of 10 feet downstream of humidifiers and/or air washers.
- D. Interstitial Insulation: Fibrous-glass liner complying with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
 - 1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: **0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F** mean temperature.
 - 2. Install spacers that position the inner duct at uniform distance from outer duct without compressing insulation.
 - 3. Coat insulation with antimicrobial coating.
 - 4. Cover insulation with polyester film complying with UL 181, Class 1.
- E. Interstitial Insulation: Flexible elastomeric duct liner complying with ASTM C 534, Type II for sheet materials, and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
 - 1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: **0.25 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F** mean temperature.

2.5 EXHAUST AIR STACKS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 - 1. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than **60 Inches** in Diameter: Flanged.
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Not allowed.
- D. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- E. Design Wind Loads: **150 mph.**
- F. Design for seismic conditions at Project site.
- G. Accessories: Terminations, adjustable roof flashings, storm collars, support assemblies, thimbles, firestop spacers, and fasteners; fabricated from similar materials and designs as duct straight sections.
 - 1. Termination: Antibackdraft damper.
 - 2. Termination: **<Insert termination.>**
- H. Drain: Provide drain section incorporated into base of stack with trap. Seal depth design to prevent seal blowout at highest estimated static pressure.
- I. Guying and Bracing Materials
 - 1. Cable: Three minimum galvanized or stainless steel, stranded wires of the following thickness: **[Four] <Insert number> [stainless steel]**
 - a. Minimum Size: **1/4 inch** in diameter.
 - b. For ID Sizes **4 to 15 Inches**: **5/16 inch.**
 - c. For ID Sizes **18 to 24 Inches**: **3/8 inch.**
 - d. For ID Sizes **27 to 30 Inches**: **7/16 inch.**
 - e. For ID Sizes **33 to 36 Inches**: **1/2 inch.**
 - f. For ID Sizes **39 to 48 Inches**: **9/16 inch.**
 - g. For ID Sizes **51 to 60 Inches**: **5/8 inch.**
 - 2. Cable Hardware: Provide duct angle ring, turnbuckles, cable loop thimbles, cable clamps and all hardware necessary to brace stack.

3. Pipe: Two galvanized steel, **NPS 1-1/4. [Three].**
4. Angle Iron: Two galvanized steel, **2 by 2 by 0.25 inch. [Three].**

2.6 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653.
 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: **G90.**
 2. Galvanized Coating Designation: **[G60].**
 3. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.
- C. PVC-Coated, Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653.
 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: **G90.**
 2. Galvanized Coating Designation: **[G60].**
 3. Minimum Thickness for Factory-Applied PVC Coating:
 - a. **4 mils** thick.
 - b. On sheet metal surface of ducts and fittings exposed to corrosive conditions, and minimum **1 mil** thick on opposite surface.
 4. Coating Materials: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for use on ducts listed and labeled by an NRTL for compliance with UL 181, Class 1.
- D. Carbon-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 1008, with oiled, matte finish for exposed ducts.
- E. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 304 or 316, as indicated in the "Duct Schedule" Article; cold rolled, annealed, sheet. Exposed surface finish shall be No. 2B, No. 2D, No. 3, or No. 4 as indicated in the "Duct Schedule" Article.
- F. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with **ASTM B 209** Alloy 3003, H14 temper; with mill finish for concealed ducts, and standard, one-side bright finish for duct surfaces exposed to view.
- G. Factory- or Shop-Applied Antimicrobial Coating:
 1. Apply to the surface of sheet metal that will form the interior surface of the duct. An untreated clear coating shall be applied to the exterior surface.
 2. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
 3. Coating containing the antimicrobial compound shall have a hardness of 2H, minimum, when tested according to ASTM D 3363.
 4. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
 5. Shop-Applied Coating Color: **[Black] [White].**
 6. Antimicrobial coating on sheet metal is not required for duct containing liner treated with antimicrobial coating.

- H. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
 - 1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.
- I. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, **1/4-inch** minimum diameter for lengths **36 inches** or less; **3/8-inch** minimum diameter for lengths longer than **36 inches**.

2.7 DUCT LINER

- A. Fibrous-Glass Duct Liner: Comply with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corporation; Insulation Group.
 - b. Johns Manville.
 - c. Knauf Insulation.
 - d. Owens Corning.
 - 2. Maximum Thermal Conductivity:
 - a. Type I, Flexible: **0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F** mean temperature.
 - b. Type II, Rigid: **0.23 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F** mean temperature.
 - 3. Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating: Apply to the surface of the liner that will form the interior surface of the duct to act as a moisture repellent and erosion-resistant coating. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
 - 4. Water-Based Liner Adhesive:
 - a. Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and with ASTM C 916.
 - b. Apply using Solvent.
 - c. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - d. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Duct Liner: Preformed, cellular, closed-cell, sheet materials complying with ASTM C 534, Type II, Grade 1; and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Aeroflex USA Inc.
 - b. Armacell LLC.

- c. Rubatex International, LLC
 - 2. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
 - 3. Liner Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
 - a. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - b. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. Natural-Fiber Duct Liner: 85 percent cotton, 10 percent borate, and 5 percent polybinding fibers, treated with a microbial growth inhibitor and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Bonded Logic, Inc.
 - b. Reflectix Inc.
 - 2. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.24 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature when tested according to ASTM C 518.
 - 3. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to ASTM E 84; certified by an NRTL.
 - 4. Liner Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
 - a. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - b. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- D. Insulation Pins and Washers:
 - 1. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, , length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
 - a. 0.135-inch-diameter shank.
 - b. 0.106-inch- diameter shank.
 - 2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: With beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
 - a. Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick aluminum.
 - b. Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick [stainless steel] [galvanized steel].

- E. Shop Application of Duct Liner: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 7-11, "Flexible Duct Liner Installation."
1. Adhere a single layer of indicated thickness of duct liner with at least 90 percent adhesive coverage at liner contact surface area. Attaining indicated thickness with multiple layers of duct liner is prohibited.
 2. Apply adhesive to transverse edges of liner facing upstream that do not receive metal nosing.
 3. Butt transverse joints without gaps, and coat joint with adhesive.
 4. Fold and compress liner in corners of rectangular ducts or cut and fit to ensure butted-edge overlapping.
 5. Do not apply liner in rectangular ducts with longitudinal joints, except at corners of ducts, unless duct size and dimensions of standard liner make longitudinal joints necessary.
 6. Apply adhesive coating on longitudinal seams in ducts with air velocity of 2500 fpm
 7. Secure liner with mechanical fasteners 4 inches from corners and at intervals not exceeding 12 inches transversely; at 3 inches from transverse joints and at intervals not exceeding 18 inches longitudinally.
 8. Secure transversely oriented liner edges facing the airstream with metal nosings that have either channel or "Z" profiles or are integrally formed from duct wall. Fabricate edge facings at the following locations:
 - a. Fan discharges.
 - b. Intervals of lined duct preceding unlined duct.
 - c. Upstream edges of transverse joints in ducts where air velocities are higher than 2500 fpm or where indicated.
 9. Secure insulation between perforated sheet metal inner duct of same thickness as specified for outer shell. Use mechanical fasteners that maintain inner duct at uniform distance from outer shell without compressing insulation.
 - a. Sheet Metal Inner Duct Perforations: 3/32-inch diameter, with an overall open area of 23 percent.
 10. Terminate inner ducts with buildouts attached to fire-damper sleeves, dampers, turning vane assemblies, or other devices. Fabricated build-outs (metal hat sections) or other buildout means are optional; when used, secure buildouts to duct walls with bolts, screws, rivets, or welds.

2.8 SEALANT AND GASKETS

- A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
- B. Two-Part Tape Sealing System:
1. Tape: Woven cotton fiber impregnated with mineral gypsum and modified acrylic/silicone activator to react exothermically with tape to form hard, durable, airtight seal.

2. Tape Width: 4 inches.
3. Tape Width: [3 inches] [6 inches].
4. Sealant: Modified styrene acrylic.
5. Water resistant.
6. Mold and mildew resistant.
7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
8. Service: Indoor and outdoor.
9. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
10. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum.
11. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
12. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

C. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:

1. Application Method: Brush on.
2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
4. Water resistant.
5. Mold and mildew resistant.
6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel, stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
 - a. Both PVC coated and bare.

D. Solvent-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:

1. Application Method: Brush on.
2. Base: Synthetic rubber resin.
3. Solvent: Toluene and heptane.
4. Solids Content: Minimum 60 percent.
5. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 60.
6. Water resistant.
7. Mold and mildew resistant.
8. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
9. VOC: Maximum 395 g/L.
10. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
11. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive or negative.
12. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
13. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

E. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.

1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
2. Type: S.
3. Grade: NS.
4. Class: 25.
5. Use: O.
6. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

F. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.

G. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:

1. Seal shall provide maximum leakage class of **3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg** and shall be rated for **10-inch wg** static-pressure class, positive or negative.
2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.
3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

2.9 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.

B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.

C. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," **Table 5-1**, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."

D. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 603.

E. Steel Cables for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless steel complying with ASTM A 492.

F. Steel Cable End Connections: Cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.

G. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.

H. Trapeze and Riser Supports:

1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
2. Supports for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless-steel shapes and plates.
3. Supports for Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized steel coated with zinc chromate.

2.10 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide products by one of the following] [available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:
1. Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
 2. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
 3. Hilti Corp.
 4. Kinetics Noise Control.
 5. Loos & Co.; Cableware Division.
 6. Mason Industries.
 7. TOLCO; a brand of NIBCO INC.
 8. Vibro-Acoustics
 9. Unistrut Corporation; Tyco International, Ltd.
- B. General Requirements for Restraint Components: Rated strengths, features, and applications shall be as defined in reports by [an evaluation service member of the ICC Evaluation Service] [the Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development for the State of California] [an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction].
1. Structural Safety Factor: Allowable strength in tension, shear, and pullout force of components shall be at least [four] times the maximum seismic forces to which they will be subjected.
- C. Channel Support System: Shop- or field-fabricated support assembly made of slotted steel channels rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces and with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end. Include matching components and corrosion-resistant coating.
- D. Restraint Cables: [ASTM A 603, galvanized] [ASTM A 492, stainless]-steel cables with end connections made of cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for restraining cable service; and with an automatic-locking and clamping device or double-cable clips.
- E. Hanger Rod Stiffener: [Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections] [Reinforcing steel angle clamped] to hanger rod.
- F. Mechanical Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations.

Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.

- B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install round ducts in maximum practical lengths.
- D. Install round and flat-oval ducts in maximum practical lengths.
- E. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.
- F. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.
- G. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.
- H. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.
- I. Install ducts with a clearance of **2 inch**, plus allowance for insulation thickness.
- J. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.
- K. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least **1-1/2 inches**.
- L. Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire dampers. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers.
- M. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials. Comply with SMACNA's "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction," Appendix G, "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines" .

3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

- A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.
- B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.
- C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.
- D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in the arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.

- E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

3.3 DUCT SEALING

- A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- B. Seal ducts to the following seal classes according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible":
 - 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 - 2. Outdoor, Supply-Air Ducts: Seal Class A.
 - 3. Outdoor, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class A.
 - 4. Outdoor, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class [C.]
 - 5. Outdoor, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class A.
 - 6. Outdoor, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class [C.]
 - 7. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class A.
 - 8. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class [B.]
 - 9. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg: Seal Class A.
 - 10. Unconditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class A.
 - 11. Unconditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class [C.]
 - 12. Unconditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class A.
 - 13. Unconditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class [B.]
 - 14. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class A.
 - 15. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class [C.]
 - 16. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg: Seal Class A.
 - 17. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg: Seal Class [B.]
 - 18. Conditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class A.
 - 19. Conditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class [B.]
 - 20. Conditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class A.
 - 21. Conditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class [C.]

3.4 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."
- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
 - 1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
 - 2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
 - 3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches thick.
 - 4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
 - 5. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for seismic restraints.
- C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.
- D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet.
- F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

3.5 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT-DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Install ducts with hangers and braces designed to support the duct and to restrain against seismic forces required by applicable building codes. Comply with the requirements specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
 - 1. Comply with ASCE/SEI 7.
 - 2. Comply with [SMACNA's "Seismic Restraint Manual: Guidelines for Mechanical Systems."]
 - 3. Space lateral supports a maximum of 40 feet o.c., and longitudinal supports a maximum of 80 feet o.c.
 - 4. Brace a change of direction longer than 12 feet.
- B. Select seismic-restraint devices with capacities adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads.
- C. Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.
- D. Install cable restraints on ducts that are suspended with vibration isolators.

- E. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an evaluation service member of the ICC Evaluation Service. [an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction].
- F. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing and restraints to structure, to flanges of beams, to upper truss chords of bar joists, or to concrete members.
- G. Drilling for and Setting Anchors:
 - 1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcement or embedded items during drilling. Notify the Architect if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
 - 2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
 - 3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
 - 4. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
 - 5. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior applications and stainless-steel anchors for applications exposed to weather.

3.6 CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

3.7 PAINTING

- A. Paint interior of metal ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have duct liner. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer. Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Leakage Tests:
 - 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual." Submit a test report for each test.
 - 2. Test the following systems:

- a. Supply Ducts with a Pressure Class of **2-Inch wg** or Higher: Test representative duct sections, selected by Architect from sections installed, totaling no less than 50 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
 - b. Return Ducts with a Pressure Class of **2-Inch wg** or Higher: Test representative duct sections, selected by Architect from sections installed, totaling no less than 50 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
 - c. Exhaust Ducts with a Pressure Class of **2-Inch wg** or Higher: Test representative duct sections, selected by Architect from sections installed, totaling no less than 50percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
 - d. Outdoor Air Ducts with a Pressure Class of **2-Inch wgor** Higher: Test representative duct sections, selected by Architect from sections installed, totaling no less than **50 percent** of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
3. Disassemble, reassemble, and seal segments of systems to accommodate leakage testing and for compliance with test requirements.
 4. Test for leaks before applying external insulation.
 5. Conduct tests at static pressures equal to maximum design pressure of system or section being tested. If static-pressure classes are not indicated, test system at maximum system design pressure. Do not pressurize systems above maximum design operating pressure.
 6. Give **seven** days' advance notice for testing.
- C. Duct System Cleanliness Tests:
1. Visually inspect duct system to ensure that no visible contaminants are present.
 2. Any liner showing evidence that is has wet at any time shall be removed and replaced with new liner.
 - a. Disinfect affected sheet metal, and pins.
 - b. Install new liner per specifications
 - c. Seal friable edges and seams of repaired liner.
- D. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- 3.9 DUCT CLEANING
- A. Clean **new** duct system before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- B. Use service openings for entry and inspection.
1. Create new openings and install access panels appropriate for duct static-pressure class if required for cleaning access. Provide insulated panels for insulated or lined duct. Patch insulation and liner as recommended by duct liner manufacturer. Comply with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for access panels and doors.
 2. Disconnect and reconnect flexible ducts as needed for cleaning and inspection.
 3. Remove and reinstall ceiling to gain access during the cleaning process.

C. Particulate Collection and Odor Control:

1. When venting vacuuming system inside the building, use HEPA filtration with **99.97 percent** collection efficiency for **0.3-micron**-size (or larger) particles.
2. When venting vacuuming system to outdoors, use filter to collect debris removed from HVAC system, and locate exhaust downwind and away from air intakes and other points of entry into building.

D. Clean the following components by removing surface contaminants and deposits:

1. Air outlets and inlets (registers, grilles, and diffusers).
2. Supply, return, and exhaust fans including fan housings, plenums (except ceiling supply and return plenums), scrolls, blades or vanes, shafts, baffles, dampers, and drive assemblies.
3. Air-handling unit internal surfaces and components including mixing box, coil section, air wash systems, spray eliminators, condensate drain pans, humidifiers and dehumidifiers, filters and filter sections, and condensate collectors and drains.
4. Coils and related components.
5. Return-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes except in ceiling plenums and mechanical equipment rooms.
6. Supply-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes.
7. Dedicated exhaust and ventilation components and makeup air systems.

E. Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:

1. Clean metal duct systems using mechanical cleaning methods that extract contaminants from within duct systems and remove contaminants from building.
2. Use vacuum-collection devices that are operated continuously during cleaning. Connect vacuum device to downstream end of duct sections so areas being cleaned are under negative pressure.
3. Use mechanical agitation to dislodge debris adhered to interior duct surfaces without damaging integrity of metal ducts, duct liner, or duct accessories.
4. Clean fibrous-glass duct liner with HEPA vacuuming equipment; do not permit duct liner to get wet. Replace fibrous-glass duct liner that is damaged, deteriorated, or delaminated or that has friable material, mold, or fungus growth.
5. Clean coils and coil drain pans according to NADCA 1992. Keep drain pan operational. Rinse coils with clean water to remove latent residues and cleaning materials; comb and straighten fins.
6. Provide drainage and cleanup for wash-down procedures.
7. Antimicrobial Agents and Coatings: Apply EPA-registered antimicrobial agents if fungus is present. Apply antimicrobial agents according to manufacturer's written instructions after removal of surface deposits and debris.

3.10 START UP

- A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

3.11 DUCT SCHEDULE

- A. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel. **except as otherwise indicated and as follows:**
 - 1. **Underground Ducts: PVC-coated, galvanized sheet steel with thicker coating on duct exterior.**
 - 2. **Underground ducts shall be as specified in Section 233116 "Nonmetal Ducts" for fibrous-glass ducts, thermoset fiber-reinforced plastic ducts, thermoplastic ducts, PVC ducts, and concrete ducts.**
- B. Ductwork running in areas where there are no ceilings or when noted on the drawings shall be doubled wall duct and shall meet the requirements indicated below.
- C. **BSL-3 Ducts:**
 - 1. **Supply and exhaust ducts serving BSL-3 areas :**
 - a. **Type 304 .05-inch thick stainless-steel sheet.**
 - 1) **Exposed to View: No. 4 finish.**
 - 2) **Concealed: No. 2B finish.**
 - b. **Pressure Class: Positive or negative 6-inch wg.**
 - c. **Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: Welded seams, joints, and penetrations.**
 - d. **SMACNA Leakage Class: 2.**
 - e. **Supply ducts outside of BSL-3 area shall transition to galvanized.**
- D. **Supply Ducts:**
 - 1. **Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, Furnaces, Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units:**
 - a. **Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg.**
 - b. **Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A**
 - c. **Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A**
 - d. **SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 16.**
 - e. **SMACNA Leakage Class for Round: 8.**
 - 2. **Ducts Connected to Constant-Volume Air-Handling Units:**
 - a. **Pressure Class: Positive 3-inch wg.**
 - b. **Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.**
 - c. **SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 8.**
 - d. **SMACNA Leakage Class for Round: 4.**
 - 3. **Ducts Connected to Variable-Air-Volume Air-Handling Units:**
 - a. **Pressure Class: Positive 6-inch wg.**
 - b. **Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.**

- c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: **4**.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round: **2**.
 - 4. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive **4-inch wg**.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: **A**.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for **Rectangular**: **4**.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round: **2**.
- E. Return Ducts:
 - 1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, Furnaces, Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative **2-inch wg**.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: **A**.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: **16**.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round: **8**.
 - 2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative **2-inch wg**.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: **A**.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: **16**.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round: **8**
 - 3. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative **3-inch wg**.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: **A**.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: **8**.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round: **4**.
- F. Exhaust Ducts:
 - 1. Ducts Connected to Fans Exhausting (ASHRAE 62.1, Class 1 and 2) Air:
 - a. Pressure Class: Negative 2-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: **A**.
 - c. for Rectangular: **16**.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round: **4**.
 - 2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:

- a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 3-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 8.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round: 4.
3. Ducts Connected to Variable-Air-Volume Air-Handling Units:
- a. Pressure Class: Positive 6-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 4.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round: 2.
4. Ducts Connected to Type II (Heat) Commercial Kitchen Hoods:
- a. Type 304, stainless-steel sheet.
 - b. Exposed to View: No. 4 finish.
 - c. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 3-inch wg.
 - d. Concealed: No. 2D finish.
 - e. Welded seams and joints.
 - f. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: Welded seams, joints, and penetrations.
 - g. SMACNA Leakage Class: 2.
5. Branch Ducts Connected to Fans Exhausting Laboratory and Process (ASHRAE 62.1, Class 3 and 4) Air:
- a. Type 304, stainless-steel sheet.
 - 1) 0.05-inch thick.
 - 2) Exposed to View: No. 4 finish.
 - 3) Concealed: No. 2B finish.
 - b. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 6-inch wg.
 - c. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: Welded seams, joints, and penetrations.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class: 2.
 - e. Main laboratory exhaust trunks to be galvanized steel with same pressure, seal and leakage class.
6. Ducts Connected to fume hoods:
- a. Type 316 .05-inch thick stainless-steel sheet.
 - 1) Exposed to View: No. 4 finish.
 - 2) Concealed: No. 2B finish.
 - b. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 6-inch wg.

- c. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A. Flanged and gasketed joints for future disassembly for decontamination.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class: 2.
 - 7. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 4-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 4 .
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round: 2 .
- G. Liner: (Ductwork located Interior to building Insulated Envelope)
 - 1. Low Pressure Supply Air Ducts (Less than 2000 FPM velocity): Fibrous glass, Type I, 1 inch thick with a minimum R value of 4.0 for ducts in unconditioned spaces.
 - 2. Supply Air Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I [or flexible elastomeric] [Natural fiber], 1 inch thick for ducts in conditioned spaces.
 - 3. Return Air Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I, 1 inch thick with a minimum R value of 4.0 for ducts in unconditioned spaces.
 - 4. Return Air Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I [or flexible elastomeric] [Natural fiber], 1 inch thick for ducts in conditioned spaces.
 - 5. Exhaust Air Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I [or flexible elastomeric] [Natural fiber], 1 inch thick.
 - 6. Supply Fan Plenums: Fibrous glass, Type I, 1 inch thick with a minimum R value of 4.0.
 - 7. Return- and Exhaust-Fan Plenums: Fibrous glass, Type II, 1 inch thick with a minimum R value of 4.0.
 - 8. Transfer Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I [or flexible elastomeric] [Natural fiber], 1 inch thick. [1-1/2 inches] [2 inches].
- H. Double-Wall Duct Interstitial Insulation:
 - 1. Supply Air Ducts: 1-1/2 inch thick with a minimum R value of 6.0.
 - 2. Return Air Ducts: 1-1/2 inch thick with a minimum R value of 6.0.
 - 3. Exhaust Air Ducts: 1-1/2 inch thick with a minimum R value of 6.0.
- I. Exterior Ductwork Liner Insulation:
 - 1. Supply Air Ducts: **2 inch** thick with a minimum R value of 8.0.

2. Return Air Ducts: **2 inch** thick with a minimum R value of 8.0.
3. Exhaust Air Ducts: **2 inch** thick with a minimum R value of 8.0.

J. Elbow Configuration:

1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
 - a. Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - b. Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
 - c. Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
2. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "Round Duct Elbows."
 - a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.
 - 1) Velocity **1000 fpm** or Lower: 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and three segments for 90-degree elbow.
 - 2) Velocity **1000 to 1500 fpm**: 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and four segments for 90-degree elbow.
 - 3) Velocity **1500 fpm** or Higher: 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and five segments for 90-degree elbow.
 - 4) Radius-to Diameter Ratio: 1.5.
 - b. Round Elbows, **12 Inches** and Smaller in Diameter: Stamped or pleated.
 - c. Round Elbows, **14 Inches** and Larger in Diameter: Welded.

K. Branch Configuration:

1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-6, "Branch Connection."
 - a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry high efficiency take-off.
 - b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: 45-degree entry high efficiency take-off.
2. **Round:**

- a. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.
- b. Velocity **1000 to 1500 fpm**: **45-degree entry high efficiency tap**.
- c. Velocity **1500 fpm** or Higher: 45-degree lateral.

END OF SECTION 233113

SECTION 233300 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Backdraft dampers.
2. Pressure relief dampers.
3. Barometric relief dampers.
4. Manual volume dampers.
5. Control dampers.
6. Fire dampers.
7. Smoke dampers.
8. Combination fire and smoke dampers.
9. Duct silencers.
10. Turning vanes.
11. Remote damper operators.
12. Duct-mounted access doors.
13. Flexible connectors.
14. Flexible ducts.
15. Duct accessory hardware.
16. High efficiency take-offs.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Division 23 "HVAC Gravity Ventilators" for roof-mounted ventilator caps.
2. Division 23 "Diffusers, Registers and Grilles".
3. Division 28 "Digital, Addressable Fire-Alarm System" for duct-mounted fire and smoke detectors.
4. Division 28 "Zoned (DC-Loop) Fire-Alarm System" for duct-mounted fire and smoke detectors.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. For duct silencers, include pressure drop and dynamic insertion loss data. Include breakout noise calculations for high transmission loss casings.

- B. Shop Drawings: For duct accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail duct accessories fabrication and installation in ducts and other construction. Include dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances; and method of field assembly into duct systems and other construction. Include the following:
 - a. Special fittings.
 - b. Manual volume damper installations.
 - c. Control-damper installations.
 - d. Fire-damper, smoke-damper, combination fire- and smoke-damper, pressure relief-damper, ceiling, and corridor damper installations, including sleeves; and duct-mounted access doors and remote damper operators.
 - e. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which ceiling-mounted access panels and access doors required for access to duct accessories are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved.
- B. Source quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air duct accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Fusible Links: Furnish quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653.
 - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G60.
 - 2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.
- B. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, Temper H14; with mill finish for concealed ducts and standard, 1-side bright finish for exposed ducts.
- C. Extruded Aluminum: Comply with ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063, Temper T6.
- D. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.
- E. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

2.3 BACKDRAFT DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
 - 2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 - 3. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - 4. Pottorff.
 - 5. Ruskin Company.
 - 6. United Enertech
 - 7. Designed to allow airflow in one direction and prevent reverse airflow.
 - 8. Keeps outside air out of the space by sensing and closing against mass flow.
- B. Description:
 - 1. Gravity balanced.
- C. Maximum Air Velocity:
 - 1. 1000 fpm
- D. Maximum System Pressure:
 - 1. 3-inch wg.
 - 2. 4-inch wg.
- E. Frame: Hat-shaped, with welded corners or mechanically attached and mounting flange:
 - 1. 16GA 0.063-inch- thick extruded aluminum.
- F. single-piece blades, maximum 6-inch width noncombustible, tear-resistant, neoprene-coated fiberglass with sealed edges:
 - 1. Center pivoted: 16GA 0.050-inch- thick aluminum sheet.
- G. Blade Action: Parallel.

- H. Blade Seals: Mechanically locked.
 - 1. Neoprene.
- I. Blade Axles: 0.20 inch diameter:
 - 1. Material: Nonferrous metal.
- J. Tie Bars and Brackets:
 - 1. Aluminum .
- K. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.
- L. Bearings:
 - 1. Synthetic pivot bushings.
- M. Accessories.
 - 1. Adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressure.
 - 2. Counterweights and spring-assist kits for vertical airflow installations.
 - 3. Screen Mounting: Front mounted in sleeve.
 - a. Sleeve Thickness: 20 gage minimum.
 - b. Sleeve Length: 6 inches minimum.
 - 4. Screen Mounting: Rear mounted.
 - 5. Screen Material:
 - a. Aluminum.
 - 6. Screen Type:
 - a. Bird
 - 7. 90-degree stops.

2.4 PRESSURE RELIEF DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
 - 2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 - 3. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - 4. Pottorff.
 - 5. Ruskin Company.
- B. Function:
 - 1. Provide component designed to protect HVAC systems by relieving air pressure from within a space that is beyond a pre-determined limit.
 - 2. To automatically begin to open at a pre-set pressure difference above maximum system pressure.
 - 3. Internally self-controlled with system pressure utilizing adjustable arms and weights.
 - 4. Self-actuated with system pressure utilizing adjustable arms and weights.
 - 5. Employs blade counterbalancing.
 - 6. Automatically closes and re-sets when pressures return to normal conditions.

- C. Air Velocity:
 - 1. 3900 fpm.

- D. Maximum System Pressure (MSP):
 - 1. 5-inch wg.
 - 2. 4-inch wg.

- E. Differential Pressure Preset above MSP:
 - 1. 1-inch wg.

- F. Maximum Damper Pressure Limit:
 - 1. 5.0-inch wg.

- G. Frame Material: Flanged Channel:
 - 1. 14GA 0.079-inch- thick galvanized steel.

- H. Frame Depth: 8-inch- minimum.

- I. Blades:
 - 1. Material:
 - a. 16GA 0.063-inch- formed galvanized steel.
 - 2. Type:
 - a. Formed Sheetmetal.
 - 3. Blade-stop:
 - a. With stop.

- J. Blade Action: Parallel.

- K. Blade Seals:
 - 1. Thermo Plastic Elastomer.

- L. Blade Axles:
 - 1. Material:
 - a. Plated steel.
 - 2. Diameter: 0.375 inch.

- M. Linkage:
 - 1. External heavy duty type with galvanized steel clevis arms and plated steel tie bars & pivot pins with nylon pivot bearings.

- N. Bearings:
 - 1. Galvanized Steel ball.

2.5 BAROMETRIC RELIEF DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
3. Nailor Industries Inc.
4. Pottorff.
5. Ruskin Company.

B. Function:

1. Senses and compares outdoor ambient and indoor pressures.
2. Allows any higher pressure indoor air to escape.

C. Description: Suitable for horizontal or vertical mounting.

D. Maximum Air Velocity:

1. 1000 fpm

E. Maximum System Pressure:

1. 3-inch wg .

F. Frame: Hat-shaped, with welded corners or mechanically attached and mounting flange.

1. 13GA 0.094-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel.

G. Blades: Multiple:

1. 16GA 0.050-inch- thick aluminum sheet.
2. Maximum Width: 6 inches.
3. Action: Parallel.
4. Balance: Gravity.
5. Pivot:
 - a. Eccentric.

H. Blade Seals:

1. Neoprene

I. Blade Axles:

1. Galvanized steel .

J. Tie Bars and Brackets: Rattle free with 90-degree stop.

1. Material:
 - a. Galvanized steel.

K. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.

L. Bearings:

1. Synthetic

2.6 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

A. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
 - b. McGill AirFlow LLC.
 - c. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - d. Pottorff.
 - e. Ruskin Company.
 - f. United Enertech
2. Standard leakage rating , with linkage outside airstream .
 3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
 4. Frames: Hat-shaped, Mitered and welded corners. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
 - a. 16GA 0.064-inch thick, galvanized sheet steel.
 5. Blades:
 - a. Multiple or single blade. Parallel- or opposed-blade design. Stiffened damper blades for stability.
 - b. Material:
 - 1) Galvanized -steel, 16GA 0.064 inch thick.
 6. Blade Axles:
 - a. Nonferrous metal
 - b. Shall extend full length of damper blades in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or more.
 7. Bearings:
 - a. Material:
 - 1) Molded synthetic.
 - b. Bearings at both ends of damper operating shafts in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or more.
 8. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
- B. Low-Leakage, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
 - b. McGill AirFlow LLC.
 - c. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - d. Pottorff.
 - e. Ruskin Company.
 - f. United Enertech
 2. Comply with AMCA 500-D testing for damper rating.

3. Low-leakage rating , with linkage outside airstream, and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.
4. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
5. Frames:
 - a. Frame: Hat-shaped,
 - 1) 16GA 0.064-inch thick, galvanized sheet steel.
 - b. Mitered and welded corners.
 - c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
6. Blades:
 - a. Multiple or single blade.
 - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
 - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
 - d. Material:
 - 1) Galvanized, roll-formed steel, 16GA 0.064 inch thick.
7. Blade Axles:
 - a. Nonferrous metal.
8. Bearings:
 - a. Molded synthetic.
 - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or more shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
9. Blade Seals:
 - a. Neoprene.
10. Jamb Seals: Cambered Stainless steel or aluminum.
11. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel or aluminum.
12. Accessories:
 - a. Include locking device to hold single-blade dampers in a fixed position without vibration.

2.7 CONTROL DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 2. Pottorff.
 3. Ruskin Company.
 4. Young Regulator Company.
 5. United Enertech
- B. Low-leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream, and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.
- C. Frames:

1. Section:
 - a. Hat shaped.
2. Material:
 - a. 20 GA 0.40-inch- thick galvanized steel .
3. Corners:
 - a. Mitered-and-welded.
 - b. [

D. Blades: Multiple.

1. Maximum blade width:
 - a. 6 inches.
2. Opposed -blade design.
3. Material:
 - a. Galvanized-steel.
4. Thickness:
 - a. 20 GA 0.40-inch- thick galvanized steel
5. Blade Edging: Inflatable seal blade edging, or replaceable rubber seals.
 - a. Closed-cell neoprene

E. Blade Axles:

1. Section:
 - a. 3/8-inch-square
2. Material:
 - a. Galvanized steel.
3. Blade-linkage hardware:
 - a. Zinc-plated steel and brass.
 - b. Ends sealed against blade bearings:
4. Operating Temperature Range: From minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.

F. Bearings:

1. Type:
 - a. Molded synthetic.
2. Axles: Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or more shall have axles full length of damper blades.
3. Bearings: Thrust bearings at each end of every blade. Bearings at both ends of each operating shaft.

2.8 FIRE DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Arrow United Industries; a division of Mestek, Inc.
2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
3. Nailor Industries Inc.
4. Pottorff.

5. Ruskin Company.
 6. United Enertech
- B. Type:
1. Dynamic.
- C. Standard: Rated and labeled according to UL 555 by an NRTL.
- D. Closing rating in ducts up to 4-inch wg static pressure class and minimum 2000-fpm velocity.
- E. Fire Rating:
1. 1-1/2 hours.
- F. Frame:
1. Curtain type with blades outside airstream.
 2. Material:
 - a. Fabricated with roll-formed galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners.
 - b. Thickness:
 - 1) 20GA-0.040-inch-.
- G. Mounting Sleeve: Factory- or field-installed, galvanized sheet steel. Length to suit application.
1. Minimum Thickness:
 - a. 18GA-0.05 inch, as indicated.
 2. Exception: Omit sleeve where damper-frame width permits direct attachment of perimeter mounting angles on each side of wall or floor; thickness of damper frame must comply with sleeve requirements.
- H. Mounting Orientation: Vertical or horizontal as indicated.
- I. Blades: Roll-formed, interlocking, galvanized sheet steel.
1. Thickness:
 - a. 24GA-0.024-inch-
 2. In place of interlocking blades, use full-length, 0.034-inch- thick, galvanized-steel blade connectors.
- J. Horizontal Dampers: Include blade lock and Type 301 constant force stainless-steel closure spring.
- K. Heat-Responsive Device: Replaceable, 212 deg F rated, fusible links.

2.9 SMOKE DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 2. Nailor Industries Inc.

3. Pottorff.
 4. Ruskin Company.
 5. United Enertech
- B. General Requirements: Label according to UL 555S by an NRTL.
- C. Smoke Detector: Integral, factory wired for single-point connection.
1. Type: Photoelectric.
- D. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel. With or without mounting flange as required.
1. Thickness:
 - a. Hat-shaped, 16GA-0.064-inch.
 2. Corners:
 - a. Welded.
- E. Blades: Horizontal, galvanized sheet steel.
1. Section;
 - a. Roll-formed.
 2. Fit:
 - a. Interlocking.
 3. Thickness:
 - a. 14GA-0.079-inch.
- F. Leakage:
1. Class II.
- G. Seals:
1. Blade: Inflatable silicone fiberglass material to maintain smoke leakage rating to a minimum of 450 deg F .
- H. Rated pressure and velocity to exceed design airflow conditions.
- I. Mounting Sleeve: Factory-installed, galvanized sheet steel; length to suit wall or floor application with factory-furnished silicone calking.
1. Minimum 17-inches long.
 2. Thickness:
 - a. 0.05-inch-.
- J. Damper Motors:
1. Action:
 - a. Two-position
 2. Mode: Fail close.
 3. Mounting: External.
- K. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
1. Electrical Connection: 115 V, single phase, 60 Hz .

- L. Accessories:
 - 1. Auxiliary switches for signaling:
 - a. Position indication.
 - 2. Test Switch type:
 - a. Momentary test switch.
 - 3. Test Switch Mounting:
 - a. Damper.

2.10 COMBINATION FIRE AND SMOKE DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 - 2. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - 3. Pottorff.
 - 4. Ruskin Company.
 - 5. United Enertech
- B. Type: Dynamic; rated and labeled according to UL 555 and UL 555S by an NRTL.
- C. Closing rating in ducts up to 4-inch wg static pressure class and minimum velocity of:
 - 1. 4000-fpm
- D. Fire Rating:
 - 1. 1-1/2 hours.
- E. Frame: Hat shaped, galvanized sheet steel. With or without mounting flange as required.
 - 1. Thickness:
 - a. 16GA-0.064-inch
 - 2. Corners:
 - a. Welded.
- F. Heat-Responsive Device: Replaceable, 212 deg F rated, fusible links.
- G. Blades: Horizontal, galvanized sheet steel.
 - 1. Type:
 - a. Air-foil.
 - 2. Fit:
 - a. Interlocking.
 - 3. Thickness:
 - a. 0.063-inch-
- H. Leakage:
 - 1. Class I.
- I. Rated pressure and velocity to exceed design airflow conditions.

- J. Mounting Sleeve: Factory-installed, galvanized sheet steel; length to suit wall or floor application with factory-furnished silicone caulking.
 - 1. Thickness:
 - a. 18GA 0.05-inch.
- K. Master control panel for use in dynamic smoke-management systems.
- L. Damper Motors:
 - 1. Locate outside air stream unless otherwise indicated,
 - 2. Action:
 - a. Two-position.
 - 3. Voltage: to match fire alarm system (coordinate).
 - 4. Listed: UL, as part of damper assembly.
 - 5. Outdoor Motors and Motors in Outside-Air Intakes:
 - a. Gaskets: O-ring gaskets designed to make motors weatherproof.
 - b. Internal heaters: Equip to permit normal operation at minus 40 deg F .
- M. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - 1. Electrical Connection: 115 V, single phase, 60 Hz.
- N. Accessories:
 - 1. Auxiliary switches:
 - a. Signaling.
 - b. Position indication.
 - 2. Test Switch type:
 - a. Momentary test switch.
 - 3. Test Switch Mounting:
 - a. Damper.

2.11 TURNING VANES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. METALAIRE, Inc.
 - 2. SEMCO Incorporated.
 - 3. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
 - 1. Fabricate single blade vanes to comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards-Metal and Flexible."
 - 2. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.

- C. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Nonmetal Ducts: Fabricate curved blades of resin-bonded fiberglass with acrylic polymer coating; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
- D. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 4-3, "Vaness and Vane Runners," and 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
- E. Vane Construction:
 - 1. Single wall
- F. Vane Spacing:
 - 1. 1-1/2" spacing between turning vanes
 - 2. 3-1/4" spacing not allowed.
- G. Vane Construction: Single wall for ducts up to 36 inches wide and additional bracing for larger dimensions.

2.12 REMOTE DAMPER OPERATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Pottorff.
 - 2. Ruskin Company; Tomkins PLC.
 - 3. Young Regulator Company.
- B. Cable Type:
 - 1. Description: Cable system designed for remote manual damper adjustment.
 - 2. Tubing/Sheathing: Galvanized, Brass, Copper or Aluminum.
 - 3. Cable: Stainless steel or Steel.
 - 4. Wall-Box Mounting: Coordinate with Architect.
 - 5. Wall-Box Cover-Plate Material: Coordinate with Architect.
- C. Activated Electric Type:
 - 1. Description: Electrically activated zone control damper for remote adjustment. When an adjustment is needed the system is powered up.
 - 2. Means: Factory mounted actuator factory wired to damper.
 - 3. Portable 9 volt system. No field power requirement.
 - 4. Mounting: Recessed Wall Box or Diffuser or Hand Held.
 - 5. Wall-Box Cover Finish: Coordinate with Architect.
 - 6. Wall-Box Porting: 1 to 6 ports or more.

2.13 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 - 2. McGill AirFlow LLC.

3. Pottorff.
 4. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
 5. Ruskin Company
- B. Duct-Mounted Access Doors: Fabricate access panels according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 7-2, "Duct Access Doors and Panels," and 7-3, "Access Doors - Round Duct."
1. Door:
 - a. Double wall, rectangular.
 - b. Galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class.
 - c. Vision panel.
 - d. Hinges and Latches: 1-by-1-inch butt or piano hinge and cam latches.
 - e. Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.
 2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
 3. Number of Hinges and Locks:
 - a. Access Doors Less Than 12 Inches Square: No hinges and two sash locks.
 - b. Access Doors up to 18 Inches Square:
 - 1) Hinges:
 - a) Two hinges and two sash locks.
 - c. Access Doors up to 24 by 48 Inches, provide outside and inside handles:
 - 1) Hinges:
 - a) Three hinges and two compression latches.
 - d. Access Doors Larger Than 24 by 48 Inches, provide outside and inside handles:
 - 1) Hinges:
 - a) Continuous and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.

2.14 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
 2. Ventfabrics, Inc.
 3. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.
- C. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.
- D. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a wide fabric strip attached to two narrower metal strips. Provide strips of metal compatible with connected ducts.
1. Wide Strip:
 - a. 3-1/2 inches.
 2. Narrow Strips:

- a. 0.028-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel.
- E. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
 - 1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd..
 - 2. Tensile Strength: 530 lbf/inch in the warp and 440 lbf/inch in the filling.
 - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
- F. Outdoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with weatherproof, synthetic rubber resistant to UV rays and ozone.
 - 1. Minimum Weight: 24 oz./sq. yd..
 - 2. Tensile Strength: 530 lbf/inch in the warp and 440 lbf/inch in the filling.
 - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 50 to plus 250 deg F.

2.15 FLEXIBLE DUCTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
 - 2. McGill AirFlow LLC.
 - 3. Themaflex
 - 4. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Ducts shall conform to the requirements for Class I connectors when tested in accordance with "Standard for Factory Made Air Ducts Materials and Air Duct Connectors" (UL 181).
- C. Ducts shall also pass the 15 minute U.L. flame penetration test as specified in the UL 181 Standard.
- D. Insulated, Flexible Duct: Two-ply vinyl film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; polyethylene or aluminized vapor-barrier film.
 - 1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg positive and 1.0-inch wg negative.
 - 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
 - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 10 to plus 160 deg F.
 - 4. Insulation R-value: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
- E. Flexible Duct Connectors:
 - 1. Clamps: in sizes 3 through 18 inches, to suit duct size.
 - a. Material: Stainless-steel band with cadmium-plated hex screw to tighten band with a worm-gear action.

2.16 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

- A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct-insulation thickness.
- B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.
- C. Splitter Damper Accessories: Zinc-plated damper blade bracket; 1/4-inch, zinc-plated operating rod; and a duct-mounted, ball-joint bracket with flat rubber gasket and square-head set screw.
- D. Flexible Duct Clamps: Stainless-steel band with cadmium-plated hex screw to tighten band with a worm-gear action, in sizes 3 to 18 inches to suit duct size.

2.22 HIGH EFFICIENCY TAKE-OFFS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following.
 - 1. Air-Rite
 - 2. Hercules Industries
 - 3. Sheet Metal Connectors, Inc.
 - 4. Spiral Manufacturing Co. Inc.
 - 5. Ferguson
- B. Materials:
 - 1. 24 gauge galvanized sheet metal meeting ASTM A653 and A924
- C. Take-off shall meet SMACNA third edition Section 4.8 figure 4.6 - 45 degree entry.
- D. Rectangular opening with flanged sides on all sides. Complete with closed cell neoprene gasket to provide a tight seal.

2.23

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

General

- A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.

- B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.
- C. Use the Remote Damper Operator when they are called out on the drawings or when the damper cannot be easily accessed.
- D. Install high efficiency take-off on all branch duct take-offs. Provide take-off with balancing damper as shown on drawings. Spin-in fittings are not allowed.

Flexible Ducts / Flexible Duct Connectors

- E. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.
- F. Flexible duct connections from the main trunk ducts to diffuser boots shall be furnished and installed as shown on the drawings. Flexible ductwork shall only be used as indicated on the drawings.
- G. Where flexible duct is indicated, use insulated flexible duct for supply air return and exhaust air.
- H. Flexible ductwork shall be run in straight lengths.
- I. Provide support in flexible duct every three feet.
- J. Flexible ducts shall have compression fittings on both ends.
- K. Flexible ductwork is not allowed to bend 90 degrees. If a bend is needed use sheet-metal hard elbows. Hard turns, offsets, or kinks will not be allowed.
- L. Flexible ducts shall connect to trunk duct with high efficiency takeoffs.
- M. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with draw bands.
- N. Connect ducts to duct silencers:
 - 1. With flexible duct connectors.
- O. Connect terminal units to supply ducts:
 - 1. With maximum 12-inch lengths of flexible duct.
- P. Do not use flexible ducts to change directions.
- Q. Connect diffusers or light troffer boots to ducts:
 - 1. With maximum 60-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.

Backdraft/Control/Pressure Relief Dampers

- R. Install backdraft dampers at inlet of exhaust fans or exhaust ducts as close as possible to exhaust fan unless otherwise indicated.
- S. Install pressure relief damper immediately upstream of main fire damper.

Volume Damper

- T. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.
 - 1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.
 - 2. Install aluminum volume dampers in aluminum ducts.
- U. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing. Exception: Pressure relief damper.
- V. A balance damper with locking quadrant will be provided downstream of take-off from trunk duct.

Fans And Test Holes

- W. For fans developing static pressures of 5-inch wg and more, cover flexible connectors with loaded vinyl sheet held in place with metal straps.
- X. Install thrust limits at centerline of thrust, symmetrical on both sides of equipment. Attach thrust limits at centerline of thrust and adjust to a maximum of 1/4-inch movement during start and stop of fans.
- Y. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.
- Z. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.

FIRE, SMOKE AND FIRE-SMOKE DAMPERS

- AA. Install fire and smoke dampers according to UL listing.
 - 1. Install fusible links in fire dampers.
- BB. For round ductwork 24-inch and smaller a true round fire damper with the same rating may be used.

Access Doors

- CC. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:
 - 1. On upstream side of duct coils.
 - 2. Upstream from duct filters.
 - 3. At outdoor-air intakes and mixed-air plenums.
 - 4. At drain pans and seals.
 - 5. Downstream from manual volume dampers, control dampers, backdraft dampers, and equipment.
 - 6. Adjacent to and close enough to fire or smoke dampers, to reset or reinstall fusible links. Access doors for access to fire or smoke dampers having fusible links shall be standard access doors and shall be outward operation for access doors installed upstream from dampers and inward operation for access doors installed downstream from dampers.

7. At each change in direction and at maximum 50-foot spacing.
8. Upstream from turning vanes.
9. Upstream or downstream from duct silencers.
10. Control devices requiring inspection.
11. Elsewhere as indicated.

DD. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.

EE. Access Door Sizes:

1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches.
2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches.
3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches.
4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches.
5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches.
6. Body plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches.

FF. Label access doors according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" to indicate the purpose of access door.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:

1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
2. Inspect locations of access doors and verify that purpose of access door can be performed.
3. Operate fire, smoke, and combination fire and smoke dampers to verify full range of movement and verify that proper heat-response device is installed.
4. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation.
5. Operate remote damper operators to verify full range of movement of operator and damper.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust duct accessories for proper settings.
- B. Adjust fire and smoke dampers for proper action.
- C. Final positioning of manual-volume dampers is specified in Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

END OF SECTION 233300

SECTION 233423 - HVAC POWER VENTILATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Utility set fans.
 - 2. Centrifugal roof ventilators.
 - 3. Upblast propeller roof exhaust fans.
 - 4. Centrifugal wall ventilators.
 - 5. Ceiling-mounted ventilators.
 - 6. In-line centrifugal fans.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Project Altitude: Base fan-performance ratings on:
 - 1. Actual Project site elevations.
- B. Operating Limits: Classify according to AMCA 99.
- C. Fan Schedule: Fan characteristics and performance data are described in an equipment schedule on the drawings including:
 - 1. Fan arrangement with wheel configuration, inlet and discharge configurations, and required accessories.
 - 2. Capacities, outlet velocities, static pressures, sound power characteristics, motor requirements, and electrical characteristics.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, shipping weights, operating weights, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. Also include the following:
 - 1. Certified fan performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
 - 2. Certified fan sound-power ratings.
 - 3. Motor ratings and electrical characteristics, plus motor and electrical accessories.
 - 4. Material thickness and finishes, including color charts.
 - 5. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
 - 6. Roof curbs.

7. Fan speed controllers.

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
 - a. Detail all wiring systems and differentiate clearly between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved:

1. Roof framing and support members relative to duct penetrations.
2. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
4. Ceiling-mounted items including light fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.

B. Field quality-control Reports

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For power ventilators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.7 MATERIALS MAINTENANCE SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Belts: One set for each belt-driven unit.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. AMCA Compliance: Fans shall have AMCA-Certified performance ratings and shall bear the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

C. NEMA Compliance: Power ventilator electrical components shall comply with applicable NEMA standards.

- D. UL Standards: Power ventilators shall comply with UL 705. Power ventilators for use for restaurant kitchen exhaust shall also comply with UL 762.
- E. TUV Certified: High Volume low speed fan shall comply with UL 507

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of structural-steel support members.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
- C. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PRODUCTS FURNISHED BUT NOT INSTALLED

- A. Products furnished, but not installed, under this Section include roof curbs for roof-mounted exhaust fans. Roof curbs to be installed by Division 07, section "Roof Accessories".

2.2 UTILITY SET FANS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Aerovent; a division of Twin City Fan Companies, Ltd.
 - 2. Greenheck Fan Corp.
 - 3. Hartzell Fan Incorporated.
 - 4. Loren Cook Company.
 - 5. New York Blower Company (The).
 - 6. PennBarry.
 - 7. Twin City
- B. Housing: Fabricated of steel with side sheets fastened with a deep lock seam or welded to scroll sheets.
 - 1. Housing Discharge Arrangement: Adjustable to eight standard positions.
- C. Fan Wheels: Single-width, single inlet; welded to cast-iron or cast-steel hub and spun-steel inlet cone, with hub keyed to shaft.
 - 1. Blade Materials:
 - a. Steel
 - 2. Blade Type:
 - a. Airfoil

- D. Belt-Driven Units: Motor mounted on adjustable base, with adjustable sheaves.
 - 1. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
 - 2. Shaft Bearings: Prelubricated and sealed, self-aligning, pillow-block-type ball bearings with ABMA 9:
 - a. L₅₀ of 200,000 hours.
 - b. External Lubrication Lines: Lubricating tubes from fan bearings extended to accessible location outside of fan housing.
 - 3. Belt drives factory mounted, with final alignment and belt adjustment made after installation
 - 4. Service Factor Based on Fan Motor Size:
 - a. 1.5
 - 5. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with motors through 5 hp; fixed pitch for use with larger motors. Select pulley so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions.
 - 6. Belts: Oil resistant, nonsparking, and nonstatic; matched sets for multiple belt drives.
 - 7. Belt Guards: Fabricate of steel for motors mounted on outside of fan cabinet.
 - 8. Fan Guard: 1/2- by 1-inch mesh of galvanized steel in removable frame. Provide guard for inlet and/or outlet on units not connected to ductwork, where contact with fan wheel is within personal reach through access opening, or where falling objects and/or debris may enter fan.

- E. Accessories:
 - 1. Inlet Screens: Removable wire mesh.
 - 2. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type:
 - a. Thermal-overload protection; factory wired through an internal aluminum conduit.
 - 1) Mounted inside fan housing.

2.3 CENTRIFUGAL ROOF VENTILATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Aerovent; a division of Twin City Fan Companies, Ltd.
 - 2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 - 3. Loren Cook Company.
 - 4. PennBarry.
 - 5. Twin City.

- B. Housing: Removable: Square, one-piece, aluminum base with venture inlet cone.
 - 1. Spun-aluminum, dome top and outlet baffle.
 - 2. Hinged Subbase: Galvanized-steel hinged arrangement permitting service and maintenance.

- C. Fan Wheels:
 - 1. Aluminum hub and wheel with backward-inclined blades.

- D. Direct-Drive Units: Motor mounted outside of airstream within fan housing.

- E. Belt-Driven Units: Motor mounted on adjustable base, adjustable sheaves and with motor and belts within fan housing.
- F. Accessories:
 - 1. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type:
 - a. Thermal-overload protection; factory wired through an internal aluminum conduit.
 - 1) Mounted inside fan housing.
 - 2. Bird Screens: Removable, 1/2-inch mesh:
 - a. Aluminum wire.
 - 3. Dampers:
 - a. Counterbalanced, parallel-blade, backdraft dampers mounted in curb base; factory set to close when fan stops.
 - b. Motorized parallel-blade dampers mounted in curb base with electric actuator; wired to close when fan stops.
- G. Roof Curbs: Galvanized steel; mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch thick, rigid, fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch wood nailer. Size as required to suit roof opening and fan base. Provide neoprene gasket between fan base and curb to reduce sound transmission.
 - 1. Configuration:
 - a. Self-flashing without a cant strip, with mounting flange.
 - 2. Overall Height:
 - a. 14 inches.
 - b. 18 inches.

2.4 CENTRIFUGAL WALL VENTILATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Aerovent; a division of Twin City Fan Companies, Ltd.
 - 2. Ammerman; Millennium Equipment.
 - 3. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 - 4. Hartzell Fan Incorporated.
 - 5. Loren Cook Company.
 - 6. PennBarry.
 - 7. Twin City.
- B. Housing: Heavy-gage, removable, spun-aluminum, dome top and outlet baffle; venturi inlet cone.
- C. Fan Wheel: Aluminum hub and wheel with backward-inclined blades.
 - 1. Fan Guard: 1/2- by 1-inch mesh of galvanized steel in removable frame. Provide guard for inlet on units not connected to ductwork, where contact with fan wheel is within personal reach through access opening, or where falling objects and/or debris may enter fan.

- D. Belt-Driven Units: Motor mounted on adjustable base, with adjustable sheaves, enclosure around belts within fan housing.
- E. Accessories:
 - 1. Bird Screens: Removable, 1/2-inch mesh:
 - a. Aluminum wire.
 - 2. Dampers:
 - a. Counterbalanced, parallel-blade, backdraft dampers mounted in curb base; factory set to close when fan stops.
 - b. Motorized parallel-blade dampers mounted in curb base with electric actuator; wired to close when fan stops.

2.5 CEILING-MOUNTED VENTILATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 - 2. Loren Cook Company.
 - 3. PennBarry.
 - 4. Twin City.
- B. Housing: Steel, lined with acoustical insulation.
- C. Fan Wheel: Centrifugal wheels directly mounted on motor shaft. Fan shrouds, motor, and fan wheel shall be removable for service.
- D. Grille: With flange on intake and thumbscrew attachment to fan housing.
 - 1. Painted steel.
- E. Electrical Requirements: Junction box for electrical connection on housing and receptacle for motor plug-in.
- F. Accessories:
 - 1. Variable-Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.

2.6 IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL FANS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 - 2. Loren Cook Company.
 - 3. PennBarry.
 - 4. Twin City.
- B. Housing: Split, spun aluminum with aluminum straightening vanes, inlet and outlet flanges, and support bracket adaptable to floor, side wall, or ceiling mounting.

- C. Direct-Drive Units: Motor mounted in airstream, factory wired to disconnect switch located on outside of fan housing with:
 - 1. Wheel, inlet cone.
- D. Belt-Driven Units: Motor mounted on adjustable base, with adjustable sheaves, enclosure around belts within fan housing, and lubricating tubes from fan bearings extended to outside of fan housing.
- E. Fan Wheels: Aluminum, airfoil blades welded to aluminum hub.
 - 1. Fan Guard: 1/2- by 1-inch mesh of galvanized steel in removable frame. Provide guard for inlet or outlet on units not connected to ductwork, where contact with fan wheel is within personal reach through access opening, or where falling objects and/or debris may enter fan.
- F. Accessories:
 - 1. Dampers:
 - a. Counterbalanced, parallel-blade, backdraft dampers mounted in curb base; factory set to close when fan stops.
 - b. Motorized parallel-blade dampers mounted in curb base with electric actuator; wired to close when fan stops. These dampers to be black in all cases.
 - 2. Motor and Drive Cover (Belt Guard): Epoxy-coated steel.
 - 3. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type:
 - a. Thermal-overload protection; factory wired through an internal aluminum conduit.
 - 1) Mounted inside fan housing.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions for compliance with requirements of installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the power ventilators. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify dimensions by field measurements. Verify clearances.
- B. Do not operate fans until ductwork is clean, filters are in place, bearings are lubricated, and fans have been commissioned.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install power ventilators level and plumb according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Base Mounted Equipment:
 - 1. Install power ventilators on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in:

a. Division 33 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

- C. Secure roof-mounted fans to roof curbs with cadmium-plated hardware. See Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs.
- D. Ceiling Units: Suspend units from structure; use steel wire or metal straps.
- E. Support Steel: Support suspended units from structure using threaded steel as specified in Division 23 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
- F. Label units according to requirements specified in Division 23 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- G. Install power ventilators with factory recommended and code required clearances for service and maintenance.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Duct installation and connection requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connectors. Flexible connectors are specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Install ducts adjacent to power ventilators to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Ground equipment according to Division 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals, including grounding connections, according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. Where manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.
- D. Connect wiring according to Division 26 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
 - 1. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals, including grounding connections, according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. Where manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
- B. Adjust belt tension.

- C. Comply with requirements in Division 23 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.
- D. Replace fan and motor pulleys as required to achieve design airflow.
- E. Lubricate bearings.

3.7 CLEANING

- A. After completing installation, inspect exposed finish. Remove burrs, dirt, and construction debris, and repair damaged finishes including chips, scratches, and abrasions.
- B. Clean fan interiors to remove foreign material and construction debris. Vacuum clean fan wheel and cabinet.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel on procedures and schedules related to startup and shutdown, troubleshooting, servicing, and preventive maintenance.
- B. Review data in the operation and maintenance manuals. Refer to Division 1 Section "Contract Closeout."
- C. Schedule training with Owner, through Architect, with at least 7 days' advance notice.
- D. Demonstrate operation of power ventilators. Conduct walking tour of the Project. Briefly identify location and describe function, operation, and maintenance of each power ventilator.

END OF SECTION 233423

SECTION 233425 – LABORATORY EXHAUST

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 WORK INCLUDED

- A. High-Plume Laboratory Exhaust System

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. All sections, drawing plans, specifications and contract documents.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. AMCA Publication 99, "Standards Handbook
- B. ANSI/AMCA Standard 210-99, "Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Aerodynamic Performance Rating"
- C. AMCA Publication 211-05, "Certified Ratings Program - Product Rating Manual for Fan Air Performance"
- D. AMCA Standard 300-96, "Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans"
- E. AMCA Publication 311-05, "Certified Ratings Programmed"
- F. AMBA Method of Evaluating Load Ratings of Bearings ANSI-11 (r1999)
- G. ANSI/AMCA Standard 204-96, "Balance Quality and Vibration Levels for Fans"
- H. AMCA Standard 500-D-98, "Laboratory Methods of Testing Dampers For Rating"
- I. AMCA Standard 500-L-99, "Laboratory Methods of Testing Louvers For Rating"
- J. SMACNA - Medium Pressure Plenum Construction Standard
- K. ANSI Z9.5 – Laboratory Design
- L. ASHRAE - Laboratory Design Guide

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Performance ratings: Conform to AMCA standard 211 and 311. Fans must be tested in accordance with AMCA 211 and 311 in an AMCA accredited laboratory and certified for sound and air performance. Fan shall be licensed to bear the AMCA ratings seal for both sound and air performance.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- B. Classification for Spark Resistant Construction Conform to AMCA 99.
- C. Each fan shall be vibration tested, as an assembly, at the factory before shipping.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Provide dimensional drawings and product data on each high-plume laboratory exhaust fan assembly.
- B. Provide fan curves for each fan at the specified operation point, with the flow, static pressure and horsepower clearly plotted.
- C. Provide nozzle velocity of exhaust fan, total exhaust flow, and discharge plume height at specified wind velocity.
- D. Strictly adhere to QUALITY ASSURANCE requirements, as stated in section 1.04.

PART 2 – EQUIPMENT

2.1 GENERAL

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Greenheck Fan Corporation
 - 2. Loren Cook Company
 - 3. PennBarry
 - 4. Twin City
- B. Base fan performance at standard conditions (density 0.075 Lb/ft³).
- C. Fans selected shall be capable of accommodating static pressure and flow variations of +/- 15% of scheduled values.
- D. Each fan shall be belt driven.
- E. Fans to be equipped with lifting lugs.
- F. Fan to be coated steel with a minimum of 4 mils of Hi-Pro Polyester Resin. Color to be gray.
- G. Fasteners to be stainless steel.
- H. Fan assembly shall be designed for a minimum of 125 MPH wind loading, without the use of guy wires.

2.2 FAN HOUSING AND OUTLET

- A. Fan housing to be aerodynamically designed with high-efficiency inlet, engineered to reduce incoming air turbulence.
- B. Fan housing shall be welded steel with a minimum of 4 mils of Hi-Pro Polyester Resin. No uncoated metal fan parts shall be acceptable.
- C. Fan housings that are fabricated of polypropylene or fiberglass that have lower mechanical properties than steel, have rough interior surfaces in which corrosive, hazardous compounds can collect, and / or which chalk and structurally degrade due to the UV component of the sunlight shall not be acceptable.
- D. A high velocity conical discharge nozzle shall be supplied by the fan manufacturer and be designed to efficiently handle an outlet velocity of up to 6000 FPM. Discharge stack caps or hinged covers, impeding exhaust flow shall not be permitted.
- E. Provide housing drain for removal of rain and condensation.
- F. A bolted and gasketed access door shall be supplied in the fan housing allowing for impeller inspection or removal of impeller, shaft and bearings without removal of the fan housing.
- G. Standard finish color to be gray.

2.3 FAN IMPELLER

- A. Fan impeller shall be centrifugal, backward inclined, with non-stall characteristics. The impeller shall be electronically balanced both statically and dynamically per AMCA Standard 204.
- B. Fan impeller shall be manufactured of aluminum (AMCA type B spark resistant), fully welded and coated with a minimum of 4 mils of Hi-Pro Polyester resin.

2.4 FAN BYPASS AIR PLENUM

- A. For constant volume systems, the fan shall be connected directly to the exhaust duct without the need of a bypass air plenum.
- B. For variable volume systems, a bypass air plenum shall be provided as shown on drawings. The plenum shall be equipped with a bypass air damper and intake air hood with bird screen for introducing outside air at roof level upstream of the fan.
- C. The plenum shall be constructed of fully welded steel, and coated with a minimum of 4 mils of Hi-Pro Polyester resin, and mounted on roof curb as shown on the project drawings. Plenums that are fabricated of plastics or resins that are combustible and have mechanical properties less than steel shall not be acceptable.
- D. The bypass air plenum shall be mounted on factory fabricated roof curb provided by the fan manufacturer, as shown on the project drawings (see section 2.5)

- E. Fan designs that use inlet flexible connectors that can leak causing loss of lab exhaust shall not be accepted.
- F. Bypass air dampers shall be opposed-blade design, and coated with a minimum of 4 mils of Hi-Pro Polyester resin, electrostatically applied and baked.
- G. A fan isolation damper, either gravity back draft or two position actuated, fabricated of steel or aluminum and coated with minimum 4 mils of Hi-Pro Polyester resin, electrostatically applied and baked, shall be provided as shown on the project documents.
- H. Blower / Plenum vibration isolation shall be limited to neoprene / cork vibration pads.

2.5 BYPASS AIR PLENUM CURB

- A. Exhaust system manufacturer shall supply a structural support curb for the plenum, of specified height, as shown on the drawings.
- B. Curb shall be fabricated of a minimum of 12 gauge corrosion resistant coated steel and structurally reinforced.
- C. Curbs shall be insulated.
- D. When properly anchored to the roof structure, the standard curb / plenum / blower assembly shall withstand wind loads of up to 125 mph without additional structural support.

2.6 FAN MOTORS AND DRIVE

- A. Motors to be premium efficiency, standard NEMA frame, TEFC with a 1.15 service factor. A factory mounted NEMA 3R disconnect switch shall be provided for each fan. Motor maintenance shall be accomplished without fan impeller removal or requiring maintenance personnel to access the contaminated exhaust components.
- B. Drive belts and sheaves shall be sized for 150% of the motor horsepower, and shall be readily and easily accessible for service, if required. Drive shall consist of a minimum of two belts under all circumstances.
- C. Shaft to be polished and ground steel.
- D. Fan shaft bearings shall be Air Handling Quality, ball or roller pillow block type and be sized for an L-10 life of no less than 100,000 hours. Bearings shall be fixed to the fan shaft using concentric mounting locking collars, which reduce vibration, increase service life, and improve serviceability. Bearings that use set screws shall not be allowed.
- E. Bearings shall have extended lube lines with Zerk fittings.

2.7 INSTALLATION

- A. Install fans as indicated, with flexible electrical leads.
- B. Pipe housing drain to nearest drain.

- C. Install fans in accordance with manufacturers instructions.

2.8 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

- A. Greenheck Fan Corp, Model Vektor-H High Plume Laboratory Exhaust System
- B. Cook Fans.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions for compliance with requirements of installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the power ventilators. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install power ventilators according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Support units using the vibration-control devices indicated. Vibration-control devices are specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration Control."
 - 1. Secure roof-mounted fans to roof curbs with cadmium-plated hardware.
 - a. Installation of roof curbs is specified in Division 7 Sections.
- C. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.
- D. Label units according to requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Mechanical Identification."

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Duct installation and connection requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connectors.
- B. Electrical: Conform to applicable requirements in Division 26 Sections.
- C. Grounding: Ground equipment. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals, including grounding connections, according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. Where manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Provide services of a factory-authorized service representative to supervise the field assembly of components and installation of fans, including duct and electrical connections, and to report results in writing.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
- B. Adjust belt tension.
- C. Lubricate bearings.

3.6 CLEANING

- A. After completing installation, inspect exposed finish. Remove burrs, dirt, and construction debris, and repair damaged finishes including chips, scratches, and abrasions.
- B. Clean fan interiors to remove foreign material and construction debris. Vacuum clean fan wheel and cabinet.

3.7

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel on procedures and schedules related to startup and shutdown, troubleshooting, servicing, and preventive maintenance.
- B. Review data in the operation and maintenance manuals. Refer to Division 1 Section "Contract Closeout."
- C. Schedule training with Owner, through Architect, with at least 7 days' advance notice.
- D. Demonstrate operation of power ventilators. Conduct walking tour of the Project. Briefly identify location and describe function, operation, and maintenance of each power ventilator

END OF SECTION

SECTION 233433 - AIR CURTAINS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes a hydronic air curtain.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories for each unit.
- B. Coordination Drawings: Plans and details drawn to scale and coordinating penetrations of exterior walls.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air curtains to include in maintenance manuals.
- E. Warranties: Special warranties specified in this Section.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of air curtains that are similar to those indicated for this Project in material, design, and extent.
- B. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of air curtains and are based on the specific product indicated. Refer to Division 1 Section "Product Requirements."
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- D. Comply with AMCA 220, "Test Methods for Air Curtain Units," for airflow, outlet velocity, and power consumption.
- E. Comply with ARI 410, "Forced-Circulation Air-Cooling and Air-Heating Coils," for components, construction, and rating.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

1. Certify coils according to ARI 410.

F. Comply with NSF 37, "Air Curtains for Entrances in Food and Food Service Establishments."

1.5 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of air curtains and suspension system components with other construction, including light fixtures, fire-suppression-system components, and partition assemblies.

B. Coordinate installation of wall penetrations and louvers. These items are specified in Division 10 Section "Louvers and Vents."

1.6 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of air curtains that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Five years.

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below, before construction begins, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Furnish one set of filters and fan belts for each unit.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Cambridge Engineering, Inc.
2. Fantech.
3. Marley Engineered Products.
4. Mars Air Products; Dynaforce Division.
5. Mars Air Products; Mars Air Door Division.

2.2 MATERIALS

A. Housing Materials: Heavy-gage, aluminum construction.

1. Anodized Finish: Match finish and color of adjacent architectural metals. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
2. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
 - a. Class II, Color Anodic Finish: AA-M12C22A32/A34 (Mechanical Finish: nonspecular as fabricated; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class II, integrally colored or electrolytically deposited color coating 0.010 mm or thicker). Color selected by Architect.
- B. Intake Louvers: Integral part of the housing, mechanically field adjustable and capable of reducing air-outlet velocity by 60 percent with louver in totally closed position.
- C. Unit is to have a hydronic heating coil.

2.3 FANS

- A. Fans: Aluminum, Centrifugal, forward curved, double width, double inlet; statically and dynamically balanced.

2.4 MOTORS

- A. Motor Type: Multispeed, resiliently mounted, continuous duty, totally enclosed, air over.
- B. Bearings: Permanently sealed, lifetime, prelubricated, ball bearings.
- C. Disconnect: Internal power cord with plug and receptacle.

2.5 FILTERS

- A. Washable Panel Filters: Removable, stainless-steel, baffle-type filters with spring-loaded fastening; with minimum 0.0781-inch- thick, stainless-steel filter frame.

2.6 ACCESSORIES

- A. Built-in Thermostat: Line voltage, factory installed and wired to the junction box on air curtain.
- B. Automatic Door Switch: Plunger type installed in door area to activate air curtain when door opens and to deactivate air curtain when door closes.
- C. Start-Stop, Push-Button Switch: Manually activates and deactivates air curtain.
- D. Time-Delay Relay: Factory installed and adjustable to allow air curtain to operate from 0.5 seconds to 10 hours.
- E. Motor-Control Panel: Complete with motor starter, 115-V ac transformer with primary and secondary fuses, terminal strip, and NEMA 250.
- F. Mounting Brackets: Adjustable mounting brackets for drum-type roll-up doors.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions where air curtains will be installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install air curtains with clearance for equipment service and maintenance.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to air curtain to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding."
- D. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Conductors and Cables."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
 - 1. After installing air curtains completely, perform visual and mechanical check of individual components.
 - 2. After electrical circuitry has been energized, start unit to confirm motor rotation and unit operation. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 - 3. Test gas train and verify that there are no gas leaks.
 - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Repair or replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust belt tension.
- B. Adjust motor and fan speed to achieve specified airflow.
- C. Adjust discharge louver and dampers to regulate airflow.
- D. Adjust air-directional vanes.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air curtains. Refer to Division 1 Section .

END OF SECTION 238340

SECTION 233600 - AIR TERMINAL UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Shutoff, single-duct air terminal units.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following products, including rated capacities, furnished specialties, sound-power ratings, and accessories.
 - 1. Air terminal units.
 - 2. Liners and adhesives.
 - 3. Sealants and gaskets.
 - 4. Seismic-restraint devices.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
 - 2. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustic tile.
 - 3. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Air terminal units shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to **SEI/ASCE 7**.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air terminal units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - 1. Instructions for resetting minimum and maximum air volumes.
 - 2. Instructions for adjusting software set points.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Fan-Powered-Unit Filters: Furnish **one** spare filter for each filter installed.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-Up."
- B. Product Options: Drawings and schedules indicate requirements of air terminals and are based on specific systems indicated. Other manufacturers' systems with equal performance characteristics may be considered. Refer to Division 1 Section "Substitutions."
- C. Listing and Labeling: Provide electrically operated air terminals specified in this Section that are listed and labeled.
 - 1. The Terms "Listed" and "Labeled": As defined in NFPA 70, Article 100.
- D. NFPA Compliance: Install air terminals according to NFPA 90A, "Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems."
- E. Comply with NFPA 70 for electrical components and installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. **Structural Performance:** Hangers and supports shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" .

2.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.3 SHUTOFF, SINGLE-DUCT AIR TERMINAL UNITS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Anemostat Products; a Mestek Company.
 - 2. Carnes.
 - 3. Environmental Technologies, Inc.
 - 4. Krueger.
 - 5. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - 6. Price Industries.
 - 7. Titus.

- B. Configuration: Volume-damper assembly inside unit casing with control components inside a protective metal shroud.

- C. Casing: 0.034-inch steel, single wall.
 - 1. Casing Lining: Adhesive attached, coated, fibrous-glass duct liner complying with ASTM C 1071, and having a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50, for both insulation and adhesive, when tested according to ASTM E 84.
 - a. Lining thickness:
 - 1) 1/2-inch-
 - b. Cover liner with nonporous foil.
 - 2. Air Inlet: Round stub connection or S-slip and drive connections for duct attachment.
 - 3. Air Outlet: S-slip and drive connections.
 - 4. Air Outlet: S-slip and drive connections size matching inlet size.
 - 5. Access: Removable panels for access to parts requiring service, adjustment, or maintenance; with airtight gasket.

- D. Volume Damper: Galvanized steel with peripheral gasket and self-lubricating bearings.
 - 1. Maximum Damper Leakage:
 - a. ARI 880 rated, 3 percent of nominal airflow at 3-inch wg inlet static pressure.
 - 2. Damper Position:
 - a. Normally open.

- E. Hydronic Coils: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch, and rated for a minimum working pressure of 200 psig and a maximum entering-water temperature of 220 deg F. Include manual air vent and drain valve.

- L. Direct Digital Controls: Bidirectional damper operators and microprocessor-based controller and room sensor. Control devices shall be compatible with temperature controls specified in Section 230900 "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC" and shall have the following features:
 - 1. Damper Actuator: 24 V, powered closed, spring return open.
 - 2. Terminal Unit Controller: Pressure-independent, variable-air-volume controller with electronic airflow transducer with multipoint velocity sensor at air inlet, factory calibrated to minimum and maximum air volumes, and having the following features:

- a. Occupied and unoccupied operating mode.
 - b. Remote reset of airflow or temperature set points.
 - c. Adjusting and monitoring with portable terminal.
 - d. Communication with temperature-control system specified in Section 230900 "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."
3. Room Sensor: Wall mounted with temperature set-point adjustment and access for connection of portable operator terminal.

F. Control Sequence:

1. Suitable for operation with duct pressures between 0.25- and 3.0-inch wg inlet static pressure.
2. System-powered, wall-mounted thermostat.

2.4 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.
- B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.
- C. Steel Cables: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 603.
- D. Steel Cable End Connections: Cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.
- E. Air Terminal Unit Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.
- F. Trapeze and Riser Supports: Steel shapes and plates for units with steel casings; aluminum for units with aluminum casings.

2.5 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory Tests: Test assembled air terminal units according to ARI 880.
 1. Label each air terminal unit with plan number, nominal airflow, maximum and minimum factory-set airflows, and ARI certification seal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install air terminal units according to NFPA 90A, "Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems."

- B. Install air terminal units level and plumb. Maintain sufficient clearance for normal service and maintenance.
- C. Install wall-mounted thermostats.
- D. Install discharge air temperature sensors at the outlet of each Air Terminal Unit.
- E. Connect ductwork to air terminals according to Division 23 ductwork Sections.
- F. Comply with SEI/ASCE 7 and with requirements for seismic-restraint devices in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
- G. For Diffuser Type Air Terminal Units, provide and install all necessary control wiring and control voltage transformer. See drawings AND schedules for additional information.

3.2 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."
- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
 - 1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
 - 2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
 - 3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes and for slabs more than 4 inches thick.
 - 4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes and for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
 - 5. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for seismic restraints.
- C. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- D. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Install piping adjacent to air terminal unit to allow service and maintenance.
- B. Hot-Water Piping: In addition to requirements in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties," connect heating coils to supply with shutoff valve, strainer, control valve, and union or flange; and to return with balancing valve and union or flange.
- C. Connect ducts to air terminal units according to Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."
- D. Electrically ground all equipment:

1. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. Where manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Label each air terminal unit with plan number, nominal airflow, and maximum and minimum factory-set airflows. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for equipment labels and warning signs and labels.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform tests and inspections.
 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- D. Tests and Inspections:
 1. After installing air terminal units and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
 2. Leak Test: After installation, fill water coils and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- E. Air terminal unit will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- G. Cleaning:
 1. After completing system installation, including outlet fittings and devices, inspect exposed finish. Remove burrs, dirt, and construction debris, and repair damaged finishes.

3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to:
 - a. Manufacturer's written instructions.

- b. Construction documents.
- 2. Verify that inlet duct connections are as recommended by air terminal unit manufacturer to achieve proper performance.
- 3. Verify that controls and control enclosure are accessible.
- 4. Verify that control connections are complete.
- 5. Verify that nameplate and identification tag are visible.
- 6. Verify that controls respond to inputs as specified.

END OF SECTION 233600

SECTION 233713 - DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This section includes ceiling- and wall-mounted diffusers, registers, and grilles.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 233714 "Fixed Louvers" for fixed and louvers and wall vents, whether or not they are connected to ducts.
 - 2. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and volume-control dampers not integral to diffusers, registers, and grilles.
 - 3. Section 230594 "General Testing, Adjusting and Balancing" for balancing diffusers, registers, and grilles.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, include the following:
 - 1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
 - 2. Diffuser, Register, and Grille Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
 - 2. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
 - 3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
 - 4. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
 - 5. Duct access panels.
- B. Source quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Product Options: Drawings and schedules indicate specific requirements of diffusers, registers, and grilles and are based on the specific requirements of the systems indicated.
- B. NFPA Compliance: Install diffusers, registers, and grilles according to NFPA 90A, "Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Air Factors
 - 2. Carnes.
 - 3. Kruegar.
 - 4. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - 5. Price Industries.
 - 6. Titus.
 - 7. Air Concepts.

2.2 REGISTERS, GRILLES, & DIFFUSERS

- A. General: The frames for all registers, grilles, and diffusers shall match type of ceiling where they are to be installed. Special frames shall be provided for narrow T-bar ceilings. Refer to reflected ceiling plan and other specification divisions for ceiling type. See drawings AND schedules for additional information.

2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verification of Performance: Rate diffusers, registers, and grilles according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas where diffusers, registers, and grilles are to be installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles level and plumb, according to manufacturer's written instructions, coordination drawings, original design, and referenced standards.
- B. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.
- C. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, adjust diffusers, registers, and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. After installation of diffusers, registers, and grilles, inspect exposed finish. Clean exposed surfaces to remove burrs, dirt, and smudges. Replace diffusers, registers, and grilles that have damaged finishes.

END OF SECTION 233713

SECTION 233714 - FIXED LOUVERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Fixed, extruded-aluminum louvers.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" for field painting louvers.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Louver Terminology: Definitions of terms for metal louvers contained in AMCA 501 apply to this Section unless otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
- B. Horizontal Louver: Louver with horizontal blades (i.e., the axes of the blades are horizontal).
- C. Vertical Louver: Louver with vertical blades (i.e., the axes of the blades are vertical).
- D. Drainable-Blade Louver: Louver with blades having gutters that collect water and drain it to channels in jambs and mullions, which carry it to bottom of unit and away from opening.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. For louvers specified to bear AMCA seal, include printed catalog pages showing specified models with appropriate AMCA Certified Ratings Seals.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed according to AMCA 500-L by a qualified testing agency or by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for each type of louver and showing compliance with performance requirements specified.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 - 1. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of openings by field measurements before fabrication.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain louvers from single source from a single manufacturer where indicated to be of same type, design, or factory-applied color finish.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Louvers, including attachments to other construction, shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to [ASCE/SEI 7].
 - 1. Design Spectral Response Acceleration at Short Periods: Per the structural drawings and specifications.
 - 2. Component Importance Factor: [1.5] [1.0].
- B. Louver Performance Ratings: Provide louvers complying with requirements specified, as demonstrated by testing manufacturer's stock units identical to those provided, except for length and width according to AMCA 500-L.
- C. SMACNA Standard: Comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" for fabrication, construction details, and installation procedures.

2.3 FIXED, EXTRUDED-ALUMINUM LOUVERS

- a. AiroLite Company, LLC (The).
- b. American Warming and Ventilating; a Mestek company.
- c. Arrow United Industries; a division of Mestek, Inc.
- d. Carnes Company, Inc.
- e. Ruskin Company; Tomkins PLC.
- f. Vent Products Co., Inc.
- B. Horizontal, Drainable-Blade Louver :
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Airolite Company, LLC (The).
 - b. Pottorff.
 - c. Ruskin Company; Tomkins PLC.
2. Louver Performance Ratings:
- a. Free Area: Not less than 8.5 sq. ft. for 48-inch- wide by 48-inch- high louver.
 - b. Point of Beginning Water Penetration: Not less than 1250 fpm.
 - c. Air Performance – intake: Not more than 0.10-inch wg static pressure drop at 900-fpm free-area velocity.
 - d. Air Performance – exhaust: Not more than 0.15-inch wg static pressure drop at 1000-fpm free-area velocity.
3. AMCA Seal: Mark units with AMCA Certified Ratings Seal.

2.4 LOUVER SCREENS

- A. General: Provide screen at each exterior louver.
1. Screen Location for Fixed Louvers: Interior face.
 2. Screening Type: Bird screening.
- B. Secure screen frames to louver frames with machine screws with heads finished to match louver, spaced a maximum of 6 inches from each corner and at 12 inches o.c.
- C. Louver Screen Frames: Fabricate with mitered corners to louver sizes indicated.
1. Metal: Same type and form of metal as indicated for louver to which screens are attached. Reinforce extruded-aluminum screen frames at corners with clips.
 2. Finish: Same finish as louver frames to which louver screens are attached
 3. Type: Rewirable frames with a driven spline or insert
- D. Louver Screening for Aluminum Louvers:

2.5 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063-T5, T-52, or T6.
- B. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003 or 5005 with temper as required for forming, or as otherwise recommended by metal producer for required finish.
- C. Fasteners: Use types and sizes to suit unit installation conditions.
1. Contractor shall use screws for exposed fasteners screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
 2. For fastening aluminum, use aluminum or 300 series stainless-steel fasteners.
 3. For color-finished louvers, use fasteners with heads that match color of louvers.
- D. Postinstalled Fasteners for Concrete and Masonry: Torque-controlled expansion anchors, made from stainless-steel components, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 4

times the loads imposed, for concrete, or 6 times the load imposed for masonry, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.

- E. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Factory assemble louvers to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- B. Maintain equal louver blade spacing, including separation between blades and frames at head and sill, to produce uniform appearance.
- C. Fabricate frames, including integral sills, to fit in openings of sizes indicated, with allowances made for fabrication and installation tolerances, adjoining material tolerances, and perimeter sealant joints.
 - 1. Frame Type: Channel unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Include supports, anchorages, and accessories required for complete assembly.
- E. Join frame members to each other and to fixed louver blades with fillet welds concealed from view unless otherwise indicated or size of louver assembly makes bolted connections between frame members necessary.

2.7 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Finish louvers after assembly.
- B. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, or thicker.
 - 1. Color: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors and color densities.
- C. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.
 - 1. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and openings, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate setting drawings, diagrams, templates, instructions, and directions for installation of anchorages that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry construction. Coordinate delivery of such items to Project site.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Locate and place louvers level, plumb, and at indicated alignment with adjacent work.
- B. Use concealed anchorages where possible. Provide brass or lead washers fitted to screws where required to protect metal surfaces and to make a weather-tight connection.
- C. Form closely fitted joints with exposed connections accurately located and secured.
- D. Provide perimeter reveals and openings of uniform width for sealants and joint fillers, as indicated.
- E. Protect unpainted galvanized and nonferrous-metal surfaces that are in contact with concrete, masonry, or dissimilar metals from corrosion and galvanic action by applying a heavy coating of bituminous paint or by separating surfaces with waterproof gaskets or nonmetallic flashing.
- F. Install concealed gaskets, flashings, joint fillers, and insulation as louver installation progresses, where weather-tight louver joints are required. Comply with Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for sealants applied during louver installation.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed louver surfaces that are not protected by temporary covering, to remove fingerprints and soil during construction period. Do not let soil accumulate during construction period.
- B. Before final inspection, clean exposed surfaces with water and a mild soap or detergent not harmful to finishes. Thoroughly rinse surfaces and dry.
- C. Restore louvers damaged during installation and construction so no evidence remains of corrective work. If results of restoration are unsuccessful, as determined by Architect, remove damaged units and replace with new units.
 - 1. Touch up minor abrasions in finishes with air-dried coating that matches color and gloss of, and is compatible with, factory-applied finish coating.

END OF SECTION 233714

SECTION 233723 - HVAC GRAVITY VENTILATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Roof hoods.
- B. Products furnished, but not installed, under this Section include roof curbs for roof-mounted exhaust fans.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Ventilators, including attachments to other construction, shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to [ASCE/SEI 7].
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified [**and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event**]."
- B. Water Entrainment: Limit water penetration through unit to comply with ASHRAE 62.1.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. For each type of product indicated.[For louvered-penthouse ventilators specified to bear AMCA seal, include printed catalog pages showing specified models with appropriate AMCA Certified Ratings Seals.]
 - 2. Drawings from each manufacturer detailing equipment assemblies. Indications of dimensions, loadings, required clearances, method of field assembly, components and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Rated capacities of each unit, weights (shipping, installed and operating), furnished specialties, accessories and the following:
 - a. Material gages and finishes, including color charts.
 - b. Dampers, including housings, linkages and operators.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Roof framing plans and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Structural members to which roof curbs and ventilators will be attached.
 - 2. Sizes and locations of roof openings.
- B. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For ventilators, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- C. Welding certificates.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 - 1. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
 - 2. AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063-T5 or T-52.
- B. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003 or 5005 with temper as required for forming or as otherwise recommended by metal producer for required finish.
- C. Fasteners: Same basic metal and alloy as fastened metal or 300 Series stainless steel unless otherwise indicated. Do not use metals that are incompatible with joined materials.
 - 1. Use types and sizes to suit unit installation conditions.
 - 2. Use Phillips flat head screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.

- D. Post-Installed Fasteners for Concrete and Masonry: Torque-controlled expansion anchors made from stainless-steel components, with capability to sustain without failure a load equal to 4 times the loads imposed for concrete, or 6 times the load imposed for masonry, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- E. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.

2.2 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Factory or shop fabricate gravity ventilators to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units to the minimum extent as necessary for shipping and handling. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- B. Fabricate frames, including integral bases, to fit in openings of sizes indicated, with allowances made for fabrication and installation tolerances, adjoining material tolerances, and perimeter sealant joints.
- C. Fabricate units with closely fitted joints and exposed connections accurately located and secured.
- D. Fabricate supports, anchorages, and accessories required for complete assembly.
- E. Perform shop welding by AWS-certified procedures and personnel.

2.3 ROOF HOODS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Acme Engineering & Mfg. Corporation.
 - 2. Aerovent.
 - 3. Carnes.
 - 4. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 - 5. JencoFan.
 - 6. Loren Cook Company.
 - 7. PennBarry.
- B. Factory or shop fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figures 6-6 and 6-7.
- C. Materials: Aluminum sheet, minimum 0.063-inch- thick base and 0.050-inch- thick hood; suitably reinforced.
- D. Roof Curbs: Galvanized-steel sheet; with mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch- thick, rigid fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch wood nailer. Size as required to fit roof opening and ventilator base.
 - 1. Configuration: Self-flashing without a cant strip and mounting flange.
 - 2. Overall Height: 24 inches

E. Bird Screening: Aluminum, [1/2-inch-] square mesh, [0.051-inch] wire.

F. Capacities and Characteristics:

1. Air Performance: Not more than 0.10-inch wg static pressure drop

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and conditions for compliance with requirements of installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the equipment. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install gravity ventilators level, plumb, and at indicated alignment with adjacent work.

B. Install gravity ventilators with clearances for service and maintenance.

C. Install perimeter reveals and openings of uniform width for sealants and joint fillers, as indicated.

D. Install concealed gaskets, flashings, joint fillers, and insulation as installation progresses. Comply with Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for sealants applied during installation.

E. Label gravity ventilators according to requirements specified in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

F. Protect galvanized and nonferrous-metal surfaces from corrosion or galvanic action by applying a heavy coating of bituminous paint on surfaces that will be in contact with concrete, masonry, or dissimilar metals.

G. Repair finishes damaged by cutting, welding, soldering, and grinding. Restore finishes so no evidence remains of corrective work. Return items that cannot be refinished in the field to the factory, make required alterations, and refinish entire unit or provide new units.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Duct installation and connection requirements are specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" and Section 233116 "Nonmetal Ducts." Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories.

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean interiors to remove foreign material, dirt and construction debris.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel on procedures and schedules related to startup and shutdown, troubleshooting, servicing and preventative maintenance.
- B. Review data in the operation and maintenance manuals.
- C. Schedule training with Owner, through Architect with at least seven (7) days' advance notice.

END OF SECTION 233723

SECTION 235214 - FINNED WATER-TUBE BOILERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes packaged, factory-fabricated and -assembled, gas-fired, finned water-tube boilers, trim, and accessories for generating hot water.
- B. Provide boiler vent stack by this Division.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include performance data, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For boilers, boiler trim, and accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other Work.
 - 1. Include wiring diagrams.
- C. Source quality-control test reports.
- D. Startup service reports.
- E. Operation and maintenance data.
- F. Warranties.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and label finned water-tube boilers to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IV.
- C. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 Compliance: Finned water-tube boilers shall have minimum efficiency according to Table 10-8.
- D. I=B=R Compliance: Finned water-tube boilers shall be tested and rated according to HI's "Testing and Rating Standard for Heating Boilers," with I=B=R emblem on a nameplate affixed to boiler.
- E. UL Compliance: Test finned water-tube boilers to comply with UL 795, "Commercial-Industrial Gas Heating Equipment."

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 3.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace heat exchangers damaged by thermal shock of finned water-tube boilers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period for Heat Exchangers: 15 years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - 2. Warranty Period for Vent Dampers: 5 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PACKAGED BOILERS

- A. Description: Factory-fabricated, -assembled, and -tested finned water-tube boiler with tubes sealed into headers pressure-tight, and set on a steel base; including insulated jacket, flue-gas vent, combustion-air intake connections, water supply and return connections, and controls.

2.2 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufactures: Manufacturer shall be a company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum five (5) years experience. Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering boilers that may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Design: Boilers shall be CSA design certified as a non-condensing boiler. Boilers shall be designed for a minimum of 3:1 continuous turn down with constant CO₂ over the turndown range. The boiler shall operate with natural gas or propane and have a CSA certified input rating as noted on drawings, and a thermal efficiency rating of 85% at rated input and 88.3% at minimum input. The boiler shall incorporate a TrueFlow™ fuel-air system, which is symmetrically air-fuel coupled such that changes in combustion air flow affect the BTUH input without affecting combustion quality. The boiler will automatically adjust input for altitude and temperature induced without affecting combustion quality. The boiler will automatically adjust input for altitude and temperature induced changes in air density. The boiler will use a proven pilot interrupted spark ignition system. The boiler shall use a UL approved flame safeguard ignition and operation. Burner shall be premix radial-type and fire in a 360° vertical pattern. Boiler shall be able to vent a horizontal distance of 60 equivalent feet.
- C. Service Access: The boilers shall be provided with stainless steel jacket panels, minimum 16 gauge, with push-button fasteners for easily accessing all serviceable components. Sheet metal screws may not be used in the securing of jacket panels to the boiler. The boilers shall not be manufacturers with large enclosures, which are difficult to remove and reinstall. All accesses

must seal completely as not to disrupt the sealed combustion process. All components must be accessible and able to adjust with the removal of a single cover or cabinet.

- D. Indicating Lights: Each boiler shall include a diagnostic control panel with a full text display indicating the condition of all interlocks and the BTUH input percentage. Access to the controls shall be through a swing-access door, leaving diagnostic panel intact and not disrupted.
- E. Manufacturers: RBI Futura II (a Mestek Company) or an approved equal. Listed acceptable manufacturers shall be subject to compliance with requirements. Provide boilers by one of the following.

2.3 COMPONENTS

- A. Combustion Chamber: The combustion chamber shall be constructed of minimum 16-gauge stainless steel. Aluminum or galvanized steel is not acceptable. An access door shall be provided for ease of service and inspection of the heat exchanger.
- B. Heat Exchanger: The heat exchanger shall be inspected and bear the A.S.M.E. Section IV seal of approval. The heat exchanger shall be a four-pass heat exchanger with a maximum working pressure of 160 psi. The heat exchanger's vertical design shall provide equal amounts of heat transfer throughout the entire heating surface. Each heat exchanger shall have copper tubes, with an integral copper finned tube of 7/8" I.D., .064" minimum wall thickness, 7 fins per inch, with a fin height of 3/8". Each end of the water tubes shall be strength rolled into the header. The heat exchanger shall be gasket-less. Each individual tube can be re-tubed without the disturbance of the surrounding tubes. A pressure relief valve of 50 lbs. /hr. shall be equipped with the boiler and factory mounted. The headers shall be of bronze construction only; cast shall not be acceptable.
- C. Jackets: 18 gauge Brushed stainless steel.
- D. Gas Burner: Metal fiber mat premix burner shall fire to provide equal distribution of heat throughout the entire heat exchanger. Burner composition shall be Fecralloy™. The burner shall be easily removed for maintenance without the disruption of any other major component of the boiler. Ignition electrodes shall be removed for inspection and proper alignment without removing the burner. A window view port shall be provided for visual inspection of the flame during firing.
- E. Ignition Components" The ignition hardware shall consist of dual Alumina ceramic insulated ignition electrodes and UV sensing tube permanently arranged to ensure proper ignition electrode and UV alignment. Electrodes must be capable of removal while leaving the burner intact. Hot surface ignition systems of any type *will not* be accepted.
- F. Rated Capacity: The boiler shall be capable of operating at rated capacity with pressures as low as 2" W.C. at the inlet to the burner pressure regulator. Boilers that cannot provide full BTUH inputs at 2"W.C.
- G. The burner shall be capable of 88.3% efficiency without exceeding a NOx reading above 10ppm.
- H. The burner and gas train shall be provided with the following trim and features:

1. Burner Firing: TrueFlow™ Full modulation with 3:1 turndown @ Continuous CO2
2. Burner Ignition: Intermittent spark
3. Safety Controls: Energize ignition, limit time for establishing flame, prevent opening of gas valve until pilot flame is proven, stop gas flow on ignition failure, and allow gas valve to open.
4. Flue Gas Collector: Enclosed combustion chamber with integral combustion air blower and single venting connection
5. Gas Train: Manual gas valves (2), main gas valve (motorized), 'B' valve, pilot gas pressure regulator, and automatic pilot gas valve. All components to be factory mounted.
6. Safety Devices: Optional high/low gas pressure switches, air flow switch, and blocked flue detection switch. All safeties to be factory mounted.

2.4 BOILER TRIM

- A. Safety Relief Valve: ASME rated, factory set to protect boiler and piping as per schedule/drawings.
- B. Gauge: Combination water pressure and temperature shipped factory installed. LCD inlet/outlet temperature gauges to be an integral part of the front boiler control panel to allow for consistent easy monitoring of temperatures factory mounted and wired.
- C. Flow Switch: Prevent burner operation when water falls below a safe level or when water flow is low. Flow switch shall be factory mounted and wired. Provision for installation of a low water cut off shall be provided.
- D. Operating Controls: Boiler shall be provided with a Honeywell RM 7895A series digital flame safe guard. The flame safeguard shall be capable of prepurge cycles.
- E. Operating Temperature Control: Shall be manual probe type controller adjustable from 120 to 240 degrees F. Control shall be factory mounted and sense the inlet temperature of the boiler through a resistance sensor.
- F. High Limit: Temperature control with manual reset limits boiler water temperature in series with the operating control. High Limit shall be factory mounted and sense the outlet temperature of the boiler through a dry well.
- G. PROVIDE THE FOLLOWING STANDARD TRIM:
 1. Low Air Pressure Switch
 2. Blocked Flue Detection Switch
 3. Flow Switch (factory mounted and wired)
 4. Modulation Control
 5. Temperature/Pressure Gauge
 6. Manual Reset High Limit
 7. Air Inlet Filter
 8. Inlet/Outlet Temperature Display
 9. Full Digital Text Display for all Boiler Series of Operation and Failures
 10. Variable Frequency Drive and Combustion Air Fan

H. PROVIDE THE FOLLOWING JOB SPECIFIC TRIM AND FEATURES

1. Air inlet hood for exterior termination of air intake pipe. (shipped loose)
2. Vent termination hood for exterior termination of vent pipe. (shipped loose)
3. FM or IRI controls and Gas Train.
4. CSD-1 controls and Gas Train.
5. Diagnostic Keyboard Display for RM7800 series control.

2.5 MOTORS

- A. Refer to Division 23 Section "Motors" for factory installed motors.
- B. Boiler Blower Motor: Open drip-proof motors where satisfactorily housed or remotely located during operation. Blower motor shall be externally mounted for ease of service. There shall be no requirement to remove gas train components to remove the blower motor. Blower Motor shall not exceed $\frac{3}{4}$ HP and not require more than 12 amps.

2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test and inspect boilers according to the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section IV. Boilers shall be test fired in the factory with a report attached permanently to the exterior cabinet of the boiler for field reference.

2.7 VENTING KITS

- A. Combustion-Air Intake and Exhaust Material: Stainless-steel as required by the manufacturer, terminal with screen, inlet air coupling, and sealant. **Category IV stainless vent material.**

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 BOILER INSTALLATION

- A. Install boilers level on concrete base. Concrete base is specified in Division 23 Section "Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods," and concrete materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 3.
- B. Concrete Bases: Anchor boilers to concrete base.
 1. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around full perimeter of base.
 2. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 5. Cast-in-place concrete materials and placement requirements are specified in Division 3.

- C. Install gas-fired boilers according to NFPA 54.
- D. Assemble and install boiler trim.
- E. Install electrical devices furnished with boiler but not specified to be factory mounted.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect gas piping full size to boiler gas-train inlet with union.
- C. Connect hot-water piping to supply- and return-boiler tapings with shutoff valve and union or flange at each connection.
- D. Install piping from safety relief valves to nearest floor drain.
- E. Connect breeching full size to boiler outlet. Provide vent approved by the boiler manufacturer.
- F. Install piping adjacent to boiler to allow service and maintenance.
- G. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding."
- H. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Conductors and Cables."

3.3 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test, inspect, and adjust boiler components and equipment installation and to perform startup service.
- B. Perform installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Leak Test: Hydrostatic test. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
- D. Operational Test: Start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation. Adjust air-fuel ratio and combustion.
- E. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- F. Adjust initial temperature set points.
- G. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.
- H. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to site outside normal occupancy hours for this purpose, without additional cost.
- I. Prepare written report that documents testing procedures and results.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain finned water-tube boilers. Refer to Division 1 Section

END OF SECTION 235214

SECTION 23 5216 - CONDENSING BOILERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes natural gas-fired, fire-tube condensing boilers, trim, and accessories for generating hot water.
- B. Division 23 shall arrange and pay for State of Utah Boiler inspection and Inspection Certificate.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and label boilers to comply with 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- C. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Boilers shall have minimum efficiency according to "Gas and Oil Fired Boilers - Minimum Efficiency Requirements."
- D. DOE Compliance: Minimum efficiency shall comply with 10 CFR 430, Subpart B, and Appendix N.
- E. UL Compliance: Test boilers for compliance with UL 795. Boilers shall be listed and labeled by a testing agency acceptable to Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ).
- F. Mounting Base: For securing boiler to concrete base.
 - 1. Seismic Fabrication Requirements: Fabricate mounting base and attachment to boiler pressure vessel, accessories, and components with reinforcement strong enough to withstand seismic forces defined in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC" when mounting base is anchored to building structure.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for boilers.

2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. Capacity values shall be de-rated based on the project altitude.

B. Shop Drawings: For boilers, boiler trim, and accessories.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For chillers, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on:
 - a. Test of assembled components by a nationally recognized testing standard procedure, such as ICC-ES AC 156. The substantiated seismic design capacities shall exceed the seismic demand determined by Section 13.3 of ASCE 7.
 - b. An engineering analysis conforming to the requirements of Chapter 13 of ASCE 7.
 - c. Experience data conforming to a nationally recognized procedure. The substantiated seismic design capacities shall exceed the seismic demands determined by Section 13.3 of ASCE 7.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

B. Source quality-control reports.

1. Factory burner and hydrostat tests.
2. Factory inspections and testing done in accordance with 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code

C. Field quality-control reports.

1. Start checklists and testing performed by Factory-Authorized Service Representative.
2. Performance testing performed by Factory-Authorized Service Representative.

D. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

E. Other Informational Submittals:

1. ASME Stamp Certification and Report: Submit "A," "S," or "PP" stamp certificate of authorization, as required by authorities having jurisdiction, and document hydrostatic testing of piping external to boiler.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For boilers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of boilers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

- 1. Warranty Period for Fire-Tube Condensing Boilers:

- a. Leakage and Materials: ten (10) years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - b. Heat Exchanger Damaged by Thermal Stress and Corrosion: Non-prorated for five (5) years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- 1. AERCO International, Benchmark Series.
 - 2. Camus Hydronic, Ltd.;
 - 3. HydroTherm,
 - 4. Lochinvar, Crest Series.
 - 5. Viessmann,

2.2 FORCED-DRAFT, FIRE-TUBE CONDENSING BOILERS

- A. Description: Factory-fabricated, -assembled, and -tested, fire-tube condensing boiler with heat exchanger sealed pressure tight, built on a steel base, including insulated jacket; flue-gas vent; combustion-air intake connections; water supply, return, and condensate drain connections; and controls. Water-heating service only.
- B. Heat Exchanger: Stainless Steel corrosion-resistant combustion chamber.
- C. Burner: Natural gas, forced draft.
- D. Blower: Centrifugal fan to operate during each burner firing sequence and to pre-purge and post-purge the combustion chamber.
 - 1. Motors: Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

- a. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated; if not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
- E. Gas Train: Control devices and modulating control sequence shall comply with ASME CSD-1 requirements.
- F. Ignition: Spark ignition with 100 percent main-valve shutoff with electronic flame supervision.
- G. Casing:
 - 1. Jacket: Sheet metal, with snap-in or interlocking closures.
 - 2. Control Compartment Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1A.
 - 3. Finish: Powder-coated protective finish.
 - 4. Insulation: Minimum 2-inch thick, polyurethane-foam insulation surrounding the heat exchanger.
 - 5. Combustion-Air Connections: Inlet and vent duct collars.
- H. Capacities and Characteristics:
 - 1. Comply with the pressures, temperatures, flow rates, efficiencies and electrical characteristics as scheduled in the project Plans.

2.3 TRIM

- A. Include devices sized to comply with ASME B31.1.
- B. Aquastat Controllers: Operating, firing rate, and high limit.
- C. Safety Relief Valve: ASME rated, pressure rating as scheduled on Drawings.
- D. Pressure and Temperature Gage: Minimum 3-1/2-inch diameter, combination water-pressure and -temperature gage. Gages shall have operating-pressure and -temperature ranges, so normal operating range is about 50 percent of full range.
- E. Boiler Air Vent: Automatic.
- F. Drain Valve: Minimum NPS-3/4 ball valve with hose-end and cap.
- G. Condensate Trap: Provided by manufacturer.
- H. Condensate Neutralization Tank: Provide by manufacturer with limestone chips.

2.4 CONTROLS

- A. Refer to Section 230900 "Building Automation System" and Section 230993 "Sequence of Operations."
- B. Boiler Management System: microprocessor based complete integrated system to control operations and energy input into the boiler plant. The boiler management system may be

integrated into each boiler OR may be a standalone controller mounted separate from the boilers.

1. Sequencing Capability: 2 to 8 boilers to meet system load.
 2. Boiler Operation: Automatically rotate lead/lag among the boilers on system; monitor run hours per boiler; and balance load to maintain equalize boiler run hours.
 3. High Cutoff: Manual reset stops burner if operating conditions rise above maximum boiler design temperature.
 4. Blocked Inlet Safety Switch: Manual-reset pressure switch field mounted on boiler combustion-air inlet.
 5. Audible Alarm: Factory mounted on control panel with silence switch; shall sound alarm for above conditions.
 6. Control wiring: Control wiring per the manufacturer's written instructions shall be by the Controls Contractor, refer to Section 230900 "Building Automation System".
- C. Building Automation System (BAS) Interface: Factory installed hardware and software to enable the BAS to remotely monitor, control, and display boiler status and alarms from a BAS operator workstation.
1. Hardwired Points:
 - a. Monitoring: On/off status, trouble alarms and low-water-level alarm.
 - b. Control: Enable/disable operation and hot-water-supply temperature set-point adjustment (with 4-20 ma signal from the BAS).
 2. Communication: LONworks or BACnet (ASHRAE 135)
 3. Controlled Features:
 - a. Alarms and alarm history.
 - b. Monitored points displayed locally at boiler control panel shall be available through BAS.

2.5 ELECTRICAL POWER

- A. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Electrical devices and connections are specified in electrical Sections.
- B. Single-Point Field Power Connection: Factory-installed and -wired switches, motor controllers, transformers, and other electrical devices necessary shall provide a single-point field power connection to boiler.
1. House in NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure.
 2. Wiring shall be numbered and color coded to match wiring diagram.
 3. Install factory wiring outside of an enclosure in a metal raceway.
 4. Field power interface shall be to fused disconnect switch.
 5. Provide branch power circuit to each motor and to controls with a disconnect switch or circuit breaker.
 6. Provide each motor with overcurrent protection.

2.6 VENTING KITS

- A. Refer to “Special Gas Vent” requirements Section 235100 “Breechings, Chimneys, and Stacks”.
- B. Kit: Complete Category IV (positive pressure, fully condensing) system, ASTM A 959, Type 29-4C stainless steel, pipe, vent terminal, thimble, indoor plate, vent adapter, condensate trap and neutralization tank, and sealant.
- C. Combustion-Air Intake: Complete system, stainless steel, pipe, vent terminal with screen, inlet air coupling, and sealant.

2.7 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Burner and Hydrostatic Test: Factory adjust burner to eliminate excess oxygen, carbon dioxide, oxides of nitrogen emissions, and carbon monoxide in flue gas and to achieve combustion efficiency; perform hydrostatic test.
- B. Test and inspect factory-assembled boilers, before shipping, according to 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- C. Allow Owner access to source quality-control testing of boilers. Notify Architect 14 days in advance of testing.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for concrete equipment bases, anchor-bolt sizes and locations, and piping and electrical connections to verify actual locations, sizes, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Final boiler locations indicated on Drawings are approximate. Determine exact locations based on the provided equipment before roughing-in for piping and electrical connections.
- B. Examine mechanical spaces for suitable conditions where boilers will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 BOILER INSTALLATION

- A. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Install boilers on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Concrete equipment bases shall comply with overall size, thickness, and edge distance for anchor bolts required in Section 230548 “Vibration and Seismic Controls” Submittal.
 - 2. Equipment Bases: Comply with requirements specified in Section 033053 "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete".

3. Vibration Isolation and Seismic Control: Comply with requirements specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."

- B. Install gas-fired boilers according to NFPA 54.
- C. Assemble and install boiler trim.
- D. Install electrical devices furnished with boiler but not specified to be factory mounted.
- E. Install control wiring to field-mounted electrical devices.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to boiler to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Install field-mounted equipment (condensate traps, condensate neutralization tanks, etc.) furnished with the boiler but factory mounted.
- D. Install piping from equipment drain connection to nearest floor drain. Piping shall be at least full size of connection. Provide an isolation valve.
- E. Connect piping to boilers mounted on vibration isolators, except safety relief valve connections, with flexible connectors of materials suitable for service. Flexible connectors and their installation are specified in Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties."
- F. Connect gas piping to boiler gas-train inlet with union. Piping shall be at least full size of gas-train connection. Provide a reducer if required.
- G. Connect hot-water piping to supply and return boiler tapings with shutoff valve and union or flange at each connection.
- H. Install piping from safety relief valves to nearest floor drain.
- I. Boiler Venting:
 - 1. Install flue venting kit and combustion-air intake.
 - 2. Connect full size to boiler connections.
 - 3. Comply with "Special Gas Vent" requirements in Section 235100 "Breechings, Chimney and Stacks"
- J. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- K. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
 - 1. Perform installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Leak Test: Hydrostatic test. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 3. Operational Test: Start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation. Adjust air-fuel ratio and combustion.
 - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
 - a. Check and adjust initial operating set points and high- and low-limit safety set points of fuel supply, water level, and water temperature.
 - b. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.
- C. Boiler will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare written test and inspection reports, with findings and corrective actions. Submit written report to Architect.
- E. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to four visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.
- F. Performance Tests:
 - 1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect component assemblies and equipment installations, including connections, and to conduct performance testing.
 - 2. Boilers shall comply with performance requirements indicated, as determined by field performance tests. Adjust, modify, or replace equipment to comply.
 - 3. Perform field performance tests to determine capacity and efficiency of boilers.
 - a. Test for full capacity.
 - 4. Repeat tests until results comply with requirements indicated.
 - 5. Provide analysis equipment required to determine performance.
 - 6. Provide temporary equipment and system modifications necessary to dissipate the heat produced during tests if building systems are inadequate.
 - 7. Notify Architect 10 days minimum in advance of test dates.
 - 8. Document test results in a written report submitted to Architect.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel on procedures and schedules related to startup and shutdown, troubleshooting, servicing and preventive maintenance of boilers.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

1. Review data in the Operation and Maintenance Manual. Refer to Division 1 Section "Contract Closeout".
2. Schedule training with Owner through Architect with at least 10-days advance notice.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 235400 - FURNACES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Gas-fired, condensing furnaces and accessories complete with controls.
 - 2. Air Filters.
 - 3. Refrigeration components.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories for each of the following:
 - 1. Furnace.
 - 2. Thermostat.
 - 3. Air filter.
 - 4. Refrigeration components.
- B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each furnace to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals for each of the following:
 - 1. Furnace and accessories complete with controls.
 - 2. Air filter.
 - 3. Refrigeration components.
- D. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 3.
- B. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. These items are specified in Division 7 Section "Roof Accessories."

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace the following components of furnaces that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period:
 - 1. Warranty Period, Commencing on Date of Substantial Completion:
 - a. Furnace Heat Exchanger: 10 years.
 - b. Integrated Ignition and Blower Control Circuit Board: Five years.
 - c. Draft-Inducer Motor: Five years.
 - d. Refrigeration Compressors: 10 years.
 - e. Evaporator and Condenser Coils: Five years.

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Disposable Air Filters: Furnish two complete sets.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GAS-FIRED FURNACES, CONDENSING

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Carrier Corporation; Div. of United Technologies Corp.
 - 2. Trane.
 - 3. York International Corp.; a division of Unitary Products Group.
 - 4. Lennox
- B. General Requirements for Gas-Fired, Condensing Furnaces: Factory assembled, piped, wired, and tested; complying with ANSI Z21.47/CSA 2.3, "Gas-Fired Central Furnaces," and with NFPA 54.

- C. Cabinet: Galvanized steel.
 - 1. Cabinet interior around heat exchanger shall be factory-installed insulation.
 - 2. Lift-out panels shall expose burners and all other items requiring access for maintenance.
 - 3. Factory paint external cabinets in manufacturer's standard color.

- D. Fan: Centrifugal, factory balanced, resilient mounted, direct drive.
 - 1. Fan Motors: Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Motors."
 - 2. Special Motor Features: Multitapped, multispeed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.

- E. Type of Gas: Natural.

- F. AFUE: 93 percent.

- G. Heat Exchanger:
 - 1. Primary: Aluminized steel.
 - 2. Secondary: Polyethylene-coated steel.

- H. Burner:
 - 1. Gas Valve: 100 percent safety modulating main gas valve, main shutoff valve, pressure regulator, safety pilot with electronic flame sensor, limit control, transformer, and combination ignition/fan timer control board.
 - 2. Ignition: Electric pilot ignition, with hot-surface igniter or electric spark ignition.

- I. Gas-Burner Safety Controls:
 - 1. Electronic Flame Sensor: Prevents gas valve from opening until pilot flame is proven; stops gas flow on ignition failure.
 - 2. Flame Rollout Switch: Installed on burner box; prevents burner operation.
 - 3. Limit Control: Fixed stop at maximum permissible setting; de-energizes burner on excessive bonnet temperature; automatic reset.

- J. Combustion-Air Inducer: Centrifugal fan with thermally protected motor and sleeve bearings prepurges heat exchanger and vents combustion products; pressure switch prevents furnace operation if combustion-air inlet or flue outlet is blocked.

- K. Furnace Controls: Solid-state board integrates ignition, heat, cooling, and fan speeds; adjustable fan-on and fan-off timing; terminals for connection to accessories.

- L. Accessories:
 - 1. Combination Combustion-Air Intake and Vent: PVC plastic fitting to combine combustion-air inlet and vent through outside wall roof.
 - 2. Plastic Vent Materials.
 - a. CPVC Plastic, Schedule 40 Pipe: ASTM F 441/F 441M.
 - 1) CPVC Plastic, Schedule 40 Fittings: ASTM F 438, socket type.

2) CPVC Solvent Cement: ASTM F 493.

b. PVC Plastic, Schedule 40 Pipe: ASTM D 1785.

1) PVC Plastic, Schedule 40 Fittings: ASTM D 2466, socket type.

2) PVC Solvent Cement: ASTM D 2564.

2.2 THERMOSTATS

A. Solid-State Thermostat: Wall-mounting, programmable, microprocessor-based unit with automatic switching from heating to cooling, preferential rate control, seven-day programmability with minimum of four temperature presets per day, vacation mode, and battery backup protection against power failure for program settings.

B. Control Wiring: Unshielded twisted-pair cabling.

1. No. 24 AWG, 100 ohm, four pair.

2.3 AIR FILTERS

A. Disposable Filters: 1-inch- thick, disposable, fiberglass type in sheet metal frame.

2.4 REFRIGERATION COMPONENTS

A. General Refrigeration Component Requirements:

1. Refrigeration compressor, coils, and specialties shall be designed to operate with HCFC-free refrigerants.

2. Energy-Efficiency Ratio: Equal to or greater than prescribed by ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, "Energy Standard for Buildings except Low-Rise Residential Buildings."

3. Coefficient of Performance: Equal to or greater than prescribed by ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, "Energy Efficient Standard for Buildings except Low-Rise Residential Buildings."

B. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tubes mechanically expanded into aluminum fins. Comply with ARI 210/240, "Unitary Air-Conditioning and Air-Source Heat Pump Equipment." Match size with furnace. Include condensate drain pan with accessible drain outlet.

1. Refrigerant Coil Enclosure: Steel, matching furnace and evaporator coil, with access panel and flanges for integral mounting at or on furnace cabinet and galvanized sheet metal drain pan coated with black asphaltic base paint.

C. Refrigerant Line Kits: Annealed-copper suction and liquid lines factory cleaned, dried, pressurized with nitrogen, sealed, and with suction line insulated. Provide in standard lengths for installation without joints, except at equipment connections.

1. Flexible Elastomeric: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I, 3/8 inch thick.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine factory-installed insulation before furnace installation. Reject units that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Examine roughing-in for gas and refrigerant piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install gas-fired furnaces and associated fuel and vent features and systems according to NFPA 54.
- B. Install oil-fired furnaces and associated fuel and vent piping according to NFPA 31.
- C. Base-Mounted Units: Secure units to substrate. Provide optional bottom closure base if required by installation conditions.
 - 1. Anchor furnace to substrate to resist code-required seismic acceleration.
- D. Controls: Install thermostats at mounting height of 60 inches above floor.
- E. Wiring Method: Install control wiring in accessible ceiling spaces and in gypsum board partitions where unenclosed wiring method may be used. Conceal control wiring except in unfinished spaces.
- F. Install ground-mounted, compressor-condenser components on 4-inch- thick, reinforced concrete base; 4 inches larger on each side than unit. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete." Coordinate anchor installation with concrete base.
- G. Install ground-mounted, compressor-condenser components on 4" concrete base.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Gas piping installation requirements are specified in Division 23 Section "Fuel Gas Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties. Connect gas piping with union or flange and appliance connector valve.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.

- C. Vent and Outside-Air Connection, Condensing, Gas-Fired Furnaces: Connect plastic piping vent material to furnace connections and extend outdoors. Terminate vent outdoors with a cap and in an arrangement that will protect against entry of birds, insects, and dirt.
 - 1. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
 - 2. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
 - 3. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
 - a. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
 - b. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.
 - c. PVC Pressure Piping: Join schedule number ASTM D 1785, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D 2672. Join other-than-schedule-number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D 2855.
 - 4. Slope pipe vent back to furnace or to outside terminal.
- D. Vent and Outside-Air Connection, Condensing, Gas-Fired Furnaces: Connect plastic piping vent material to furnace connections and extend outdoors. Terminate vent outdoors with a cap and in an arrangement that will protect against entry of birds, insects, and dirt.
- E. Connect ducts to furnace with flexible connector. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Duct Accessories."
- F. Connect refrigerant tubing kits to refrigerant coil in furnace and to air-cooled, compressor-condenser unit.
 - 1. Flared Joints: Use ASME B16.26 fitting and flared ends, following procedures in CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
 - 2. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
 - 3. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
- G. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Refrigerant Piping" for installation and joint construction of refrigerant piping.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
 - 1. Perform electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection.
 - 2. Leak Test: After installation, charge systems with refrigerant and oil and test for leaks. Repair leaks, replace lost refrigerant and oil, and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper operation, product capability, and compliance with requirements.
 - 4. Verify that fan wheel is rotating in the correct direction and is not vibrating or binding.

5. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Verify that vibration isolation and flexible connections properly dampen vibration transmission to structure.

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions and perform the following:
 1. Inspect for physical damage to unit casings.
 2. Verify that access doors move freely and are weathertight.
 3. Clean units and inspect for construction debris.
 4. Verify that all bolts and screws are tight.
 5. Adjust vibration isolation and flexible connections.
 6. Verify that controls are connected and operational.
- B. Adjust fan belts to proper alignment and tension.
- C. Start unit according to manufacturer's written instructions and complete manufacturer's operational checklist.
- D. Measure and record airflows.
- E. Verify proper operation of capacity control device.
- F. After startup and performance test, lubricate bearings and adjust belt tension.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points.
- B. Set controls, burner, and other adjustments for optimum heating performance and efficiency. Adjust heat-distribution features, including shutters, dampers, and relays, to provide optimum heating performance and system efficiency.

3.7 CLEANING

- A. After completing installation, clean furnaces internally according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Install new filters in each furnace within 14 days after Substantial Completion.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain condensing units. Refer to Division 1 Section "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION 235400

SECTION 235523 - GAS-FIRED RADIANT HEATERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes gas-fired, high-intensity infrared radiant heaters.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of gas-fired radiant heater indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For gas-fired radiant heaters. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Prepared by or under the supervision of a qualified professional engineer detailing fabrication and assembly of gas-fired radiant heaters, as well as procedures and diagrams.
 - 2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.
 - 3. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 4. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Coordination Drawings: Plans, elevations, and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Structural members to which equipment will be attached.
 - 2. Items penetrating roof and the following:
 - a. Vent and gas piping rough-ins and connections.
- D. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that gas-fired radiant heaters, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment." Include the following:
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.

- a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
 - b. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- E. Field quality-control test reports.
- F. Operation and Maintenance Data: For gas-fired radiant heaters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- G. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of gas-fired radiant heater that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period: Three years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 HIGH-INTENSITY INFRARED HEATERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Combustion Research Corporation.
 2. Gas-Fired Products Inc.; Space-Ray Div.
 3. Reznor/Thomas & Betts Corporation.
 4. Re-Verber-Ray
- B. Description: Factory assembled, piped, and wired, and complying with ANSI Z83.19A/CSA 2.35A, "Gas-Fired, High-Intensity Infrared Heaters."

- C. Fuel Type: Design burner for natural gas having characteristics same as those of gas available at Project site.
- D. Burner: Aluminized-steel plenum chamber with stainless-steel retainers and direct spark ignition.
- E. Emitter: Ceramic combustion surface.
- F. Reflector: Polished aluminum.
- G. Accessories:
 - 1. Parabolic reflector.
 - 2. Wire grid for increased efficiency.
 - 3. Protective screen.
 - 4. Heat-deflector shield.
 - 5. Stainless-steel flexible connector with manual valve.
 - 6. Hanger chain with "S" hooks.
 - 7. Preassembled chain suspension kit.

2.2 CONTROLS

- A. Thermostat: 2-stage, wall-mounting type with 50 to 90 deg F operating range and fan on switch.
 - 1. Control Transformer: Integrally mounted.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install and connect gas-fired radiant heaters and associated fuel and vent features and systems according to NFPA 54, applicable local codes and regulations, and manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Suspended Units: Suspend from substrate using chain hanger kits and building attachments.
 - 1. Spring hangers and seismic restraints are specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
 - 2. Restrain the unit to resist code-required horizontal acceleration. Seismic restraints are specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- C. Maintain manufacturers' recommended clearances to combustibles.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to gas-fired radiant heaters to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Gas Piping: Comply with Division 22 Section Facility Natural-Gas Piping." Connect gas piping to gas train inlet; provide union with enough clearance for burner removal and service.
- D. Vent Connections: Comply with Division 23 Section "Breechings, Chimneys, and Stacks."
- E. Electrical Connections: Comply with applicable requirements in Division 26 Sections.
 - 1. Install electrical devices furnished with heaters but not specified to be factory mounted.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections. Report results in writing.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
 - 2. Verify bearing lubrication.
 - 3. Verify proper motor rotation.
 - 4. Test Reports: Prepare a written report to record the following:
 - a. Test procedures used.
 - b. Test results that comply with requirements.
 - c. Test results that do not comply with requirements and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.
- C. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust initial temperature set points.
- B. Adjust burner and other unit components for optimum heating performance and efficiency.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain gas-fired radiant heaters. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION 235523

SECTION 235524 - GAS-FIRED RADIANT TUBE HEATERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes gas-fired, tubular infrared radiant heaters.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of gas-fired radiant heater indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For gas-fired radiant heaters. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Prepared by or under the supervision of a qualified professional engineer detailing fabrication and assembly of gas-fired radiant heaters, as well as procedures and diagrams.
 - 2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.
 - 3. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 4. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Coordination Drawings: Plans, elevations, and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Structural members to which equipment will be attached.
 - 2. Items penetrating roof and the following:
 - a. Vent and gas piping rough-ins and connections.
- D. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that gas-fired radiant heaters, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 15 Section "Mechanical Vibration and Seismic Controls." Include the following:
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."

- b. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- E. Field quality-control test reports.
- F. Operation and Maintenance Data: For gas-fired radiant heaters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- G. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of gas-fired radiant heater that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Three years from date of Substantial Completion.

1.6 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Burner Igniters: One hot-surface burner igniter(s) for each style of gas-fired radiant heater furnished.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TUBULAR INFRARED HEATERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Reznor/Thomas & Betts Corporation.
 - 2. Sterling HVAC Products; Div. of Mestek Technology Inc.
 - 3. Re-Verber-Ray

- B. Description: Factory assembled, piped, and wired, and complying with ANSI Z83.20/CSA 2.34.
- C. Fuel Type: Design burner for natural gas having characteristics same as those of gas available at Project site.
- D. Combustion Tubing: 4-inch diameter aluminized steel with high-emissivity, high-temperature, corrosion-resistant external finish.
- E. Tubing Connections: Stainless-steel couplings or flared joints with stainless-steel draw bolts.
- F. Reflector: Polished aluminum, 97 percent minimum reflectivity, with end caps. Shape to control radiation from tubing for uniform intensity at floor level with 100 percent cutoff above centerline of tubing. Provide for rotating reflector or heater around a horizontal axis for minimum 30-degree tilt from vertical.
 - 1. Reflector Extension Shields: Same material as reflectors, arranged for fixed connection to lower reflector lip and rigid support to provide 100 percent cutoff of direct radiation from tubing at angles greater than 30 degrees from vertical.
 - 2. Include hanger kit.
- G. Burner Safety Controls:
 - 1. Gas Control Valve: Single-stage, regulated redundant 24-V ac gas valve containing pilot solenoid valve, electric gas valve, pilot filter, pressure regulator, pilot shutoff, and manual shutoff all in one body.
 - 2. Blocked Vent Safety: Differential pressure switch in burner safety circuit to stop burner operation with high discharge or suction pressure.
 - 3. Control Panel Interlock: Stops burner if panel is open.
 - 4. Indicator Lights: Burner-on indicator light.
- H. Burner and Emitter Type: Gravity-vented power burner, with the following features:
 - 1. Emitter Tube: 4-inch diameter, aluminized-steel tubing with sight glass for burner and pilot flame observation.
 - 2. Venting: Connector at exit end of emitter tubing for vent-pipe connection roof vent for combustion air and flue gas with rain cap for both.
 - a. Vent Terminal: See Drawings.
 - 3. Burner/Ignition: Power gas burner with electronic spark and electronic flame safety.
 - 4. Combustion-Air Connection: Duct connection for combustion air to be drawn directly from outdoors by burner fan.

2.2 CONTROLS

- A. Thermostat: 2-stage, wall-mounting type with (50 to 90 deg F) operating range and fan on switch.
 - 1. Control Transformer: Integrally mounted.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install and connect gas-fired radiant heaters and associated fuel and vent features and systems according to NFPA 54, applicable local codes and regulations, and manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Suspended Units: Suspend from substrate using chain hanger kits and building attachments.
 - 1. Spring hangers and seismic restraints are specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
 - 2. Restrain the unit to resist code-required horizontal acceleration.
- C. Maintain manufacturers' recommended clearances to combustibles.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to gas-fired radiant heaters to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Gas Piping: Comply with Division 23 Section "Facility Natural Gas Piping." Connect gas piping to gas train inlet; provide union with enough clearance for burner removal and service.
- D. Vent Connections: Comply with Division 23 Section "Breechings, Chimneys, and Stacks."
- E. Electrical Connections: Comply with applicable requirements in Division 26 Sections.
 - 1. Install electrical devices furnished with heaters but not specified to be factory mounted.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections. Report results in writing.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
 - 2. Verify bearing lubrication.
 - 3. Verify proper motor rotation.
 - 4. Test Reports: Prepare a written report to record the following:
 - a. Test procedures used.
 - b. Test results that comply with requirements.
 - c. Test results that do not comply with requirements and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- C. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust initial temperature set points.
- B. Adjust burner and other unit components for optimum heating performance and efficiency.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain gas-fired radiant heaters. Refer to Division 1 Section "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION 235524

SECTION 237310 – ROOF-TOP AIR CONDITIONERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following rooftop air conditioners:
 - 1. Cooling and heating units 2 to 100 tons.
 - 2. Provide isolated curb with unit.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each model indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection. Prepare the following by or under the supervision of a qualified professional engineer:
 - 1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and for designing vibration isolation bases.
 - 2. Detail mounting, securing, and flashing of roof curb to roof structure. Indicate coordinating requirements with roof membrane system.
 - 3. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Field quality-control test reports.
- D. Operation and maintenance data.
- E. Warranties: Special warranties specified in this Section.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. Fabricate and label refrigeration system to comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Mechanical Refrigeration."
- C. Energy-Efficiency Ratio: Equal to or greater than prescribed by ASHRAE 90.1, "Energy Efficient Design of New Buildings except Low-Rise Residential Buildings."
- D. Coefficient of Performance: Equal to or greater than prescribed by ASHRAE 90.1, "Energy Efficient Design of New Buildings except Low-Rise Residential Buildings."
- E. Comply with NFPA 54 for gas-fired furnace section.

- F. ARI Compliance for Units with Capacities Less Than 135,000 Btuh: Rate rooftop air-conditioner capacity according to ARI 210/240, "Unitary Air-Conditioning and Air-Source Heat Pump Equipment."
 - 1. Sound Power Level Ratings: Comply with ARI 270, "Sound Rating of Outdoor Unitary Equipment."
- G. ARI Compliance for Units with Capacities 135,000 Btuh and More: Rate rooftop air-conditioner capacity according to ARI 340/360, "Commercial and Industrial Unitary Air-Conditioning and Heat Pump Equipment."
 - 1. Sound Power Level Ratings: Comply with ARI 270, "Sound Rating of Outdoor Unitary Equipment."
- H. Listing and Labeling: Provide electrically operated components specified in this Section that are listed and labeled. The rooftop unit(s) shall be certified in accordance with UL Standard 1995 and ANSI Standard Z21.47. The rooftop unit(s) shall be safety certified by an accredited testing laboratory and the nameplate shall carry the label of the certification agency.
- I. Unit shall be factory assembled and tested including leak testing of the DX coils, leak testing of the hot water coils, pressure testing of the refrigeration circuit, and run testing of the completed unit. Run test report shall be supplied with the unit in the service compartment's literature pocket.

1.4 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer shall provide a limited "parts only" warranty for a period of 12 months from the date of equipment startup or 18 months from the date of original equipment shipment from the factory, whichever is less. Warranty shall cover material and workmanship that prove defective, within the specified warranty period, provided manufacturer's written instructions for installation, operation and maintenance have been followed. Warranty excludes parts associated with routine maintenance, such as air filters.
 - 1. Warranty Period for Compressors: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than five years from date of Substantial Completion.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver rooftop units as factory-assembled units with protective crating and covering as recommended by the manufacturer.
- B. Coordinate delivery of units in sufficient time to allow movement into building.
- C. Handle rooftop units to comply with manufacturer's written rigging and installation instructions for unloading and moving to final location.
- D. Manufacturer shall provide shrink wrap coating applied prior to shipment from the factory for protection of the unit in transit and on site. Shrink wrap coating shall remain in place until just prior to final installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified.

2.2 ROOFTOP AIR CONDITIONERS 5 TO 20 TONS

- A. Manufacturers:
1. AAON, Inc.
 2. Addison
 3. Govern-aire
 4. Energy Labs
 5. Valent
- B. Description: Factory assembled and tested; designed for exterior installation; consisting of compressor, indoor and outside refrigerant coils, evaporator fan and condenser coil fan, walk in compressor vestibule, direct evap cooler, filters, and dampers.
- C. Casing: Unit shall be specifically designed for outdoor roof top application with a fully weatherproof cabinet.
1. Cabinet shall be constructed entirely of G90 galvanized steel with the exterior constructed of 20 gauge or heavier material.
 2. Paint finish shall be capable of withstanding at least 2000 hours, with no visible corrosive effects, when tested in a salt spray and fog atmosphere in accordance with ASTM B 117-95 test procedure.
 3. The unit roof shall be sloped or cross-broken to assure drainage.
 4. Access to filters, blower, heating section, and other items needing periodic checking or maintenance shall be through hinged access doors with quarter turn latches. Door fastening screws are not acceptable.
 5. Access doors shall have stainless steel hinges and full perimeter gasketing. All cabinet walls, access doors and roof shall have a thermal break with no metal path from inside to outside. Unit shall include windows on all access doors to allow visual inspection of the cabinet interior with doors closed.
 6. All openings through the base pan of the unit shall have upturned flanges of at least 1/2" in height around the opening through the base pan.
 7. Air side service access doors shall have rain break overhangs.
 8. All cabinet walls, access doors and roof shall be fabricated of rigid, impact resistant, double wall, high performance composite panels with G90 galvanized steel on both sides and a closed cell polyurethane foam interior core. All cabinet walls, access doors and roof shall be fabricated of rigid, impact resistant, double wall, high performance composite panels with G90 galvanized steel on both sides and a closed cell polyurethane foam interior core. Insulation shall have a minimum R-value of 13.

9. Unit specific color coded wiring diagrams shall match the unit color coded wiring and will be provided in both point-to-point and ladder form. Diagrams shall also be laminated in plastic and permanently affixed inside the control compartment. Unit shall have decals and tags to indicate unit lifting and rigging, service areas and caution areas. Installation and maintenance manuals shall be supplied with each unit.
 10. Walk-in service compartment shall provide access to compressors, refrigeration system components, and the electrical control panel. Service compartment shall include hinged access door with quarter turn, zinc cast, lockable handles and lighting which is controlled by a wall mounted switch. Full length stainless steel piano hinges shall be included on the on the doors.
 11. Unit shall include insulated perforated liner for sound attenuation in the supply air and return air section.
- D. Evaporator Fans: Unit shall include direct drive, unhooded, backward curved, plenum supply fans. Fans and motors shall be dynamically balanced and mounted on spring isolators. Motors shall be premium efficiency ODP with ball bearings rated for 200,000 hours service with external lubrication points. Variable frequency drives shall be factory wired and mounted in the unit. Fan motors shall be premium efficiency.
- E. Exhaust Fans: Unit shall include direct drive, axial flow exhaust fans. Blades shall be adjustable pitch. Exhaust dampers shall be sized for 100% relief. Fans and motors shall be dynamically balanced and mounted on spring isolators. Motors shall be premium efficiency ODP with ball bearings rated for 200,000 hours service with external lubrication points. Access to exhaust fans shall be through double wall, hinged access doors with quarter turn lockable handles. Variable frequency drives shall be factory wired and mounted in the unit. Fan motors shall be premium efficiency.
- F. Condenser Section: Air-Cooled Condenser. Condenser fans shall be a vertical discharge, axial flow, direct drive fans, supplied with factory mounted Variable Frequency Drives. Coils shall be designed for use with R-410A refrigerant and constructed of copper tubes with aluminum fins mechanically bonded to the tubes and aluminum end casings. Fin design shall be sine wave rippled. Coils shall be designed for a minimum of 10°F of refrigerant sub-cooling. Coils shall be helium leak tested.
- G. Refrigerant Coils: Aluminum-plate fin and seamless copper tube in steel casing with equalizing-type vertical distributor. Evaporator coils shall be furnished with a thermostatic expansion valve. Evaporator coils shall be furnished with a double sloped drain pan for the positive drainage of condensate. Evaporator coil drain pan(s) shall be fabricated of 304 stainless steel.
- H. Compressor(s): Hermetic scroll compressors with integral vibration isolators, internal overcurrent and over temperature protection, internal pressure relief, and crankcase heater(s).
1. Compressors shall be mounted in an isolated compartment to permit operation of the unit without affecting air flow when the door to the compartment is open.
 2. Compressors shall be isolated from the base pan and supply air to avoid any transmission of noise from the compressor into the building area..
- I. Refrigeration System:
1. Compressor(s) with 4 stages of capacity controls.

2. Evaporator coil and fan.
 3. Condenser coil and fan.
 4. Four-way reversing valve and suction line accumulator.
 5. Check valves.
 6. Expansion valves with replaceable thermostatic elements.
 7. Refrigerant dryers.
 8. High-pressure switches.
 9. Low-pressure switches.
 10. Thermostats for coil freeze-up protection during low-ambient temperature operation or loss of air.
 11. Independent refrigerant circuits.
 12. Brass service valves installed in discharge and liquid lines.
 13. Charge of refrigerant.
 14. Hot-Gas Bypass: Factory-installed valve.
 15. Timed Off Control: Automatic-reset control shuts compressor off after five minutes.
 16. Liquid line sight glasses and suction and discharge service isolation valves
 17. Compressor base pan with rubber vibration isolators.
 18. Double Wall insulated interior walk-in service vestibule with electric strip heater.
- J. Filters: 4-inch- thick, fiberglass, pleated, filters in filter rack. Provide magnehelic gauge in controls compartment and clogged filter switch.
- K. Hot Water Coil: Coils shall be certified in accordance with ARI Standard 410 and be leak tested. Coils shall be constructed of copper tubes with aluminum fins mechanically bonded to the tubes and galvanized steel end casings. Fin design shall be sine wave rippled. Coils shall have single serpentine circuitry, 1 row and 10 fins per inch. Coils shall be located in the reheat position downstream of the cooling coil. Control valves shall be field supplied and field installed.
- L. Packaged evaporative media humidifier providing humidification and air-cooling using the principle of surface evaporation over a wetted media. Designed for installation in air-handling systems or ductwork. Air downstream of humidifier is free of aerosols, cooler, and more humid.
- M. Direct Evap Cooler: Evap Cooler and manufactured by Nortec or Condair shall accept potable, softened, reverse osmosis and de-ionized water ($>5\mu\text{S}$) impregnated polyester as humidifying medium. Fire protection shall be in accordance with UL 900 / DIN 53438-1. The unit shall include:
1. Electronic controller, which monitors the operation of the system, controls output levels and initiates self-cleaning flushing cycles to ensure hygiene and prolong media life span.
 2. Powered by 120 volts single phase power supply with power consumption up to 0.278kW.
 3. Recirculation system to capture and reuse excess water. Improved water conservation through either performing drains based on operating time and water added or optionally by monitoring conductivity to maintain a programmable maximum mineral concentration.
 4. RTU shall contain metalwork and media boxes. Pumps, valves, controls, and other mechanical components shall be provided in a separate module for installation internal or to RTU.
 5. Control panel includes Modbus interface for integration into building automation system. BACnet, LonWorks, available as options.

6. Media: Made of durable V-shaped polyester material, absolutely free of fiberglass, packaged in stainless steel casing. Replacement: Lift out stainless steel media casings are hooked into the humidifier frame. No tools required for media removal.v) Depth: Dictates the maximum efficiency of up to 95 percent (12 inch, 305 mm media).
7. Management System:
 - a. Unit includes electronic control cabinet with NRTL-c approval to include electrical fuses, main switch.
 - b. Microprocessor control using a proportional-integral method for interpreting analog signals from a humidistat and or building control systems.
 - c. The controller determines which stages should be activated to meet humidification loads.
 - d. The controller activates self-maintenance cycles. This includes controlled flushing of the water tank in conjunction with filling cycles, and scheduled drain cycles to maintain cleanliness of the water tank.
 - e. The controller will manage programmable self-wash cycles. This cycle reduces scaling on the media and ensures clean hygienic operation. In addition, the controller flushes water lines after a period of inactivity.
 - f. Control panel complete with on/off switch, auto drain switch, and LCD touch screen for fault, maintenance, and operational indication.
 - g. Control panel with backlit Touch Screen Display to have the following functionality:
 - 1) Service indicator and LED power on.
 - 2) Intuitive touch screen back-lit graphic display.
 - 3) Display of relative humidity and set point.
 - 4) Display of operating hours.
 - 5) Capacity output.
 - 6) Real-time date and time.
 - 7) Error history indication.
 - 8) Clean mode and media drying.
 - 9) Limited capacity adjustment.
 - 10) Inlet flush, drain time and drying cycles.
 - 11) Adjustable maintenance intervals.
 - 12) Remote relay testing.
 - 13) Modbus standard host protocol.
 - h. Packaged Hydraulic Assembly: Shall be installed internal or external to airstream and include all components required for recirculation of excess water including; pump, staging pumps, reservoir, sensors, and drainage system. A maximum of 5 stage control shall be available as standard and controlled by up to 5 24Vdc electronically commutated pumps which require no mechanical alteration to control flow rates. Pump assisted drain to drain to minimize hygiene cycle duration. All tank sizes should drain in <15 minutes. The hydraulic unit shall include Biomaster antimicrobial additive. 24 VAC Pressure Regulated Water Inlet Valve: 0.625 inch (15mm) push fit connection shall operate between 30-145 psi operating pressure.
 - i. Level Control Float: Provides feedback to control electronics when water tank is full or when tank needs to be refilled.
 - j. UV Water Treatment: Submerged UV lamp continually sterilizes drain pan and water flowing to evaporative media with UV-C radiation.
 - k. Overflow Protection: In case of a level control or fill valve failure allows water to flow directly to drain.
 - l. Conductivity Monitoring Sensor: Maintains water quality at programmed level

- m. On/Off digital duct high limit humidistat and Air proving switch.
 - n. Remote fault indication board.
 - o. Frost protection stat.
 - p. Leak detection sensor.
 - q. Remote building management system capability using BACnet /IP, or LonWorks, networks for monitoring and controlling.
- N. Economizer: Return- and outside-air dampers with neoprene seals, outside-air filter, and hood
- 1. Unit shall include 0-100% economizer consisting of a motor operated outside air damper and return air damper assembly constructed of extruded aluminum, hollow core, airfoil blades with rubber edge seals and aluminum end seals. Damper blades shall be gear driven and designed to have no more than 15 CFM of leakage per sq. ft. of damper area when subjected to 2 inches w.g. air pressure differential across the damper.
 - 2. Damper assembly shall be controlled by spring return enthalpy activated fully modulating actuator. Unit shall include outside air opening bird screen, outside air hood with rain lip and barometric relief dampers.
- O. Unit Controls: Unit shall be provide with a terminal strip for field mounted and actuated controls by others. Provide and isolation relay on the RTU.
- P. Accessories:
- 1. Cold-Weather Kit: Electric heater maintains temperature in vestibule compartment and controls down to -40°F.
 - 2. PVC condensate drain trap.
 - 3. Dirty-filter switch.
 - 4. Phase and Brownout Protection.
 - 5. Interior marine service lights, factory wired.
 - 6. Supply air smoke detector
 - 7. Non-fused disconnect switch
 - 8. Factory wired GFCI outlet
- Q. Roof Curb: Steel with corrosion-protection coating, gasketing, and factory-installed wood nailer; complying with NRCA standards; minimum height of 26 inches. Provide Isolated Curb as detail below.
- 1. All rooftop air-handling units shall be supported by vibration isolation curbs as manufactured by Kinetics Noise Control, Thybar, or Air Rite. The vibration isolation curbs shall be complete assemblies designed to resiliently support the equipment at the specified elevation and shall constitute a fully enclosed air- and weather-tight system. The isolation curb shall consist of an upper support rail with supply and return flexible connector supports on which the equipment and duct openings rest and a lower support curb which is attached to the roof structure, separated by freestanding, unhoused, laterally stable steel springs and lateral seismic and/or wind load restraints. The lower support curb shall have a minimum elevation of 14" (356 mm). Spring components shall be 2"/51 mm deflection, free-standing, unhoused, laterally stable steel springs. The weather seal shall run continuously around the perimeter of the curb and be joined in the field with one seam using a double-faced elastomeric adhesive. The weather seal shall be fastened to the wood nailer of the lower support curb using screws and an aluminum fascia strip.

- R. Horizontal Discharge Roof Curb: Steel with corrosion-protection coating, insulation, gasketing, and factory-installed wood nailer, and configured to convert from downflow to horizontal airflow; complying with NRCA standards; minimum height above roof of 26 inches.

2.3 MOTORS

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Motors."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install units level and plumb, maintaining manufacturer's recommended clearances. Install according to ARI Guideline B.
- B. Curb Support: Install roof curb on roof structure, level and secure, according to NRCA's "Low-Slope Membrane Roofing Construction Details Manual," Illustration "Raised Curb Detail for Rooftop Air Handling Units and Ducts." Install and secure rooftop air conditioners on curbs and coordinate roof penetrations and flashing with roof construction. Secure units to curb support with anchor bolts. Follow manufactures guidelines for installation and leveling of vibration isolation curb.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.
 - 1. Gas Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Division 23 Section "Fuel Gas Piping." Connect gas piping to burner, full size of gas train inlet, and connect with union and shutoff valve with sufficient clearance for burner removal and service.
- C. Duct installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts. The following are specific connection requirements:
 - 1. Install ducts to termination in roof curb.
 - 2. Remove roof decking only as required for passage of ducts. Do not cut out decking under entire roof curb.
 - 3. Terminate return-air duct through roof structure and insulate space between roof and bottom of unit with 2-inch- thick, acoustic duct liner.
 - 4. Install normal-weight, 3000 psi, compressive strength (28-day) concrete mix inside roof curb, 4 inches thick. Concrete, formwork, and reinforcement are specified in Division 3.
- D. Electrical System Connections: Comply with applicable requirements in Division 16 Sections for power wiring, switches, and motor controls.
- E. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding."

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust field-assembled components and equipment installation, including connections, and to assist in field testing. Report results in writing.
- B. Perform the following field quality-control tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
 - 1. After installing rooftop air conditioners and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units for compliance with requirements.
 - 2. Inspect for and remove shipping bolts, blocks, and tie-down straps.
 - 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest as specified above.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust initial temperature set points.
- B. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.

END OF SECTION 237310

SECTION 237413 - PACKAGED, OUTDOOR UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes packaged, outdoor, rooftop units.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. BAS: Building Automation System
- B. ECM: Electrically commutated motor.
- C. RTU: Rooftop unit. As used in this Section, this abbreviation means packaged, outdoor, central-station air-handling units. This abbreviation is used regardless of whether the unit is mounted on the roof or on a concrete base on ground.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: RTUs shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified"

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include manufacturer's technical data for each RTU, including rated capacities, dimensions, required clearances, characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
 - 1.
- B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices their installation requirements.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Structural members to which RTUs will be attached.
 - 2. Roof openings
 - 3. Roof curbs and flashing.
- A. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that the indirect gas-fired H-V units, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment." Include the following:
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - a. The term "withstand" means the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- B. Field quality-control test reports and startup reports.
- C. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For RTUs to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.8 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Fan Belts: One set for each belt-driven fan.
 - 2. Filters: One set(s) of filters for each unit

1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. ARI Compliance:
 - 1. Comply with ARI 203/110 and ARI 303/110 for testing and rating energy efficiencies for RTUs.
 - 2. Comply with ARI 270 for testing and rating sound performance for RTUs.

B. ASHRAE Compliance:

1. Comply with ASHRAE 15 for refrigeration system safety.
2. Comply with ASHRAE 33 for methods of testing cooling and heating coils.

C. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

D. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A.

E. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1995.

F. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to replace components of RTUs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period for Compressors: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than five years from date of Substantial Completion.
2. Warranty Period for Gas Furnace Heat Exchangers: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than five years from date of Substantial Completion.
3. Warranty Period for Solid-State Ignition Modules: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than three years from date of Substantial Completion.
4. Warranty Period for Control Boards: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than three years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Carrier Corporation; a United Technologies company;
2. Innovent
3. Daikin Applied (McQuay);
5. Trane; a division of Ingersoll-Rand;
6. York, a Johnson Control Company.

2.2 CASING

- A. General Fabrication Requirements for Casings: Single-wall insulated panels, fabricated to allow removal for access to internal parts and components, with joints between sections sealed.
- B. Exterior Casing: Galvanized steel bonderized and coated with baked enamel finish on all exposed surfaces. Casing panel shall pass ASTM B 117 672-hour salt spray test.
- C. Casing Insulation: ASTM C 1071, Type I fiberglass board insulation; ½-inch thick, 1.5 lb/cu.ft. density; aluminum foil face attached with mechanical fastener and adhesive in compliance with ASTM C 916 Type 1.
- D. Condensate Drain Pans: Minimum 1/8-inch per foot double sloped pan complying with ASHRAE 62.1.
 - 1. Material: Formed sections of galvanized steel sheet, a minimum of 2- inches deep.
 - 2. Drain Connections: Threaded nipple extending through casing.

2.3 FANS

- A. Direct-Driven Supply-Air Fans:
 - 1. Wheel, forward curved, double width, centrifugal. Aluminum or painted-steel wheels, and galvanized- or painted-steel fan scrolls;
 - 2. Motor: ECM motor, adjustable for multiple speeds; Permanently lubricated bearing, resiliently mounted in the fan inlet;
- B. Condenser-Coil Fan: Propeller, mounted on shaft of permanently lubricated, totally enclosed, ECM motor.
- C. Fan Motors: Comply with requirements in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

2.4 COILS

- A. Seamless internally grooved copper tubes; all brazed joints; with mechanically bonded aluminum fins in galvanized steel casing and equalizing-type vertical distributor.
 - 1. Evaporator coils shall be leak tested to 150 psig; pressure tested to 450 psig and qualified to UL burst test at 1,775 psig.
 - 2. Condenser coils shall be leak tested to 150 psig; pressure tested to 650 psig and qualified to UL burst test at 1,980 psig.

2.5 REFRIGERANT CIRCUIT COMPONENTS

- A. Number of Refrigerant Circuits: One
- B. Compressor: Hermetic scroll, mounted on vibration isolators, with internal overcurrent and high-temperature protection, internal pressure relief, with crankcase heater.

C. Refrigeration Specialties:

1. Refrigerant: R-407C or R-410A.
2. Thermostatic expansion valve with replaceable thermostatic element.
3. Refrigerant filter/dryer.
4. Manual-reset high-pressure safety switch.
5. Automatic-reset low-pressure safety switch.
6. Minimum off-time relay.
7. Automatic-reset compressor motor thermal overload.
8. Brass service valves installed in compressor suction and liquid lines.

2.6 AIR FILTRATION

A. General Requirements for Air Filtration Section:

1. UL listed and labeled: UL 900 in accordance with NFPA 90A.
2. Provide minimum efficiency reporting value (MERV) according to ASHRAE 52.2.

B. Pleated Panel Filters:

1. Description: Factory-fabricated, self-supported, extended-surface, pleated, panel-type disposable air filters with holding frames.
2. Media: Interlaced glass or synthetic fibers coated with nonflammable adhesive.
 - a. Adhesive: As recommended by air-filter manufacturer and with a VOC content of 80 g/L or less.
 - b. Media shall be coated with an antimicrobial agent.
 - c. Media shall be bonded to frame to prevent air bypass.
3. Capacities and Characteristics:
 - a. Thickness or Depth: 4-inches
 - b. MERV Rating: 8 when tested according to ASHRAE 52.2.

2.7 GAS FURNACE

A. Description: Factory assembled, piped, and wired; complying with ANSI Z21.47 and NFPA 54.

1. ETL Certification: Designed and certified by and bearing ELT label.

B. Burners: Type 409 Stainless steel.

1. Fuel: Natural Gas
2. Ignition: Electronically controlled electric spark or hot-surface igniter with flame sensor.
3. High-Altitude capability: Burner performance shall be as scheduled at project elevation. Provide additional high-altitude kit or accessories as necessary.

C. Heat-Exchanger and Drain Pan: Type 409 Stainless steel.

- D. Power Vent: Integral, motorized centrifugal induced draft fan interlocked with gas valve and air flow safety switch
- E. Venting: Gravity vented
- F. Safety Controls:
 - 1. Gas Control Valve: Single stage Modulating
 - 2. Gas Train: Single-body, regulated, redundant, 24-V ac gas valve assembly containing pilot solenoid valve, pilot filter, pressure regulator, pilot shutoff, and manual shutoff.

2.8 DAMPERS AND INTEGRATED ECONOMIZER

- A. Outdoor- and Return-Air Mixing Dampers: Parallel- or opposed-blade galvanized-steel dampers mechanically fastened to cadmium plated for galvanized-steel operating rod in reinforced cabinet. Connect operating rods with common linkage and interconnect linkages so dampers operate simultaneously.
 - 1. Damper Motor: Modulating with adjustable minimum position.
 - 2. Relief-Air Damper: Gravity actuated (barometric) with bird screen and hood.

- B. Integrated economizer with powered relief fan.

- 1. Outdoor- and Return-Air Mixing Dampers: Parallel- or opposed-blade galvanized-steel dampers mechanically fastened to cadmium plated for galvanized-steel operating rod in reinforced cabinet. Connect operating rods with common linkage and interconnect linkages so dampers operate simultaneously.
- 2. Damper Motor: Modulating with adjustable minimum position.
- 3. Powered Relief Fan: Propeller, mounted on shaft of permanently lubricated, totally enclosed, ECM motor. Fully modulating 0-100% with barometric damper, bird screen and weather hood. Controlled by integrated economizer to modulate the exhaust fan to maintain building static pressure.
- 4. Washable aluminum outside air filter, bird screen and outside air weather hood
- 5. Fully modulating electronic control with adjustable mixed-air thermostat and automatic changeover.

2.9 ELECTRICAL POWER CONNECTION

- A. Provide for single connection of power to unit with control-circuit transformer with built-in overcurrent protection.

2.10 CONTROLS

- A. Basic Unit Controls:
 - 1. Control-voltage transformer.
 - 2. Wall-mounted 7-day electronic programmable thermostat or sensor with:
 - a. Heat-cool-off switch.

- b. Fan on-auto switch.
 - c. Fan-speed switch.
 - d. Changeover: Automatic
 - e. Adjustable deadband.
 - f. Setpoint: Exposed
 - g. Indication, by Degree F: Exposed.
 - h. Occupied/Unoccupied (Day/Night) Mode with unoccupied mode over-ride push button.
 - i. Auxiliary Contact to allow interlock with exhaust fans, damper, etc.
3. Unit-Mounted Annunciator Panel for Each Unit:
- a. Lights to indicate power on, cooling, heating, fan running, filter dirty, and unit alarm or failure.
 - b. DDC controller or programmable timer and interface with HVAC instrumentation and control system.
 - c. Digital display of outdoor-air temperature, supply-air temperature, return-air temperature, economizer damper position, indoor-air quality, and control parameters.

2.11 ACCESSORIES

- A. Duplex, 115-V, ground-fault-interrupter outlet with 15-A overcurrent protection.
- B. Low-ambient kit using variable-speed condenser fans for operation down to 10 deg F .

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of RTUs.
- B. Examine roughing-in for RTUs to verify actual locations of piping and duct connections before equipment installation.
- C. Examine roofs for suitable conditions where RTUs will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Install unit on 4" concrete pad and extend outside air inlet up to 6' above grade.
- C. Coordinate wall penetrations and flashing with wall construction. Secure RTUs to structural support with anchor bolts.

- D. Install gas-fired units according to NFPA 54 "National Fuel Gas Code".

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Install condensate drain; size to match RTU connection or next size larger; with trap and indirect connection to nearest roof drain or area drain.
- B. Install piping adjacent to RTUs to allow service and maintenance.
 - 1. Gas Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 231123 "Facility Natural-Gas Piping." Connect gas piping to burner, full size of gas train inlet, and connect with union and shutoff valve with sufficient clearance for burner removal and service.
- C. Duct installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts. The following are specific connection requirements:
 - 1. Install ducts to termination at top of roof curb.
 - 2. Remove roof decking only as required for passage of ducts. Do not cut out decking under entire roof curb.
 - 3. Connect supply ducts to RTUs with flexible duct connectors specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
 - 4. Install return-air duct continuously through roof structure.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections. Report results in writing. Submit written report to Architect.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. After installing RTUs and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units for compliance with requirements.
 - 2. Inspect for and remove shipping bolts, blocks, and tie-down straps.
 - 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Prepare written report of findings and corrective actions. Submit written report to Architect.
- D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
- B. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions and do the following:

1. Inspect for visible damage to unit casing.
2. Inspect for visible damage to furnace combustion chamber.
3. Inspect for visible damage to compressor, coils, and fans.
4. Inspect internal insulation.
5. Verify that labels are clearly visible.
6. Verify that clearances have been provided for servicing.
7. Verify that controls are connected and operable.
8. Verify that filters are installed.
9. Clean condenser coil and inspect for construction debris.
10. Clean furnace flue and inspect for construction debris.
11. Connect and purge gas line.
12. Remove packing from vibration isolators.
13. Inspect operation of barometric relief dampers.
14. Verify lubrication on fan and motor bearings.
15. Inspect fan-wheel rotation for movement in correct direction without vibration and binding.
16. Adjust fan belts to proper alignment and tension.
17. Start unit according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - a. Start refrigeration system.
 - b. Do not operate below recommended low-ambient temperature.
 - c. Complete startup sheets and attach copy with Contractor's startup report.
18. Inspect and record performance of interlocks and protective devices; verify sequences.
19. Operate unit for an initial period as recommended or required by manufacturer.
20. Perform the following operations for both minimum and maximum firing. Adjust burner for peak efficiency.
 - a. Measure gas pressure on manifold.
 - b. Inspect operation of power vents.
 - c. Measure combustion-air temperature at inlet to combustion chamber.
 - d. Measure flue-gas temperature at furnace discharge.
 - e. Perform flue-gas analysis. Measure and record flue-gas carbon dioxide and oxygen concentration.
 - f. Measure supply-air temperature and volume when burner is at maximum firing rate and when burner is off. Calculate useful heat to supply air.
21. Calibrate thermostats.
22. Adjust and inspect high-temperature limits.
23. Inspect outdoor-air dampers for proper stroke and interlock with return-air dampers.
24. Start refrigeration system and measure and record the following when ambient is a minimum of 15 deg F above return-air temperature:
 - a. Coil leaving-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
 - b. Coil entering-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
 - c. Outdoor-air, dry-bulb temperature.
 - d. Outdoor-air-coil, discharge-air, dry-bulb temperature.
25. Inspect controls for correct sequencing of heating, mixing dampers, refrigeration, and normal and emergency shutdown.
26. Measure and record the following minimum and maximum airflows. Plot fan volumes on fan curve.

- a. Supply-air volume.
 - b. Return-air volume.
 - c. Relief-air volume.
 - d. Outdoor-air intake volume.
27. Simulate maximum cooling demand and inspect the following:
- a. Compressor refrigerant suction and hot-gas pressures.
 - b. Short circuiting of air through condenser coil or from condenser fans to outdoor-air intake.
28. Verify operation of remote panel including pilot-light operation and failure modes. Inspect the following:
- a. High-temperature limit on gas-fired heat exchanger.
 - b. Low-temperature safety operation.
 - c. Filter high-pressure differential alarm.
 - d. Economizer to minimum outdoor-air changeover.
 - e. Relief-air fan operation.
 - f. Smoke and firestat alarms.
29. Prepare written report of findings and corrective actions. Submit written report to Architect.

3.6 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions.
- B. After startup and performance testing; and testing, adjusting, and balancing RTU and air-distribution systems and prior to Substantial Completion; clean filter housings and install new filters.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel on procedures and schedules related to adjusting, operating, startup and shutdown; troubleshooting; servicing and preventative maintenance of Rooftop Units.
 1. Review data in the Operation and Maintenance Manual. Refer to Division 1 Section "Contact Closeout".
 2. Schedule training with Owner through the Architect with at least 14 days advance notice.

END OF SECTION 23 7413

SECTION 237613 - DIRECT EVAPORATIVE AIR COOLERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes evaporative cooling.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Coordination Drawings: Roof-mounted units and roof-curb mounting details drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Size and location of rooftop unit mounting rails and anchor points and methods for anchoring units to curb.
 - 2. Required roof penetrations for ducts, pipes, and electrical raceways, including size and location of each penetration.
- C. Startup service reports.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For direct-fired H&V units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of direct-fired H&V units and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Division 01 Section "Product Requirements."
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.
- D. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2007, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."

- E. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2007 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2007, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.
- B. Coordinate size, location, installation, and structural capacity of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. These items are specified in Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories."
- C. Coordinate size, location and installation of unit manufacturer's roof curbs and equipment supports with roof Installer.
 - 1. Coordinate installation of restrained vibration isolation roof-curb rails, which are specified in Division 23 Vibration and Seismic Controls for Hvac Piping and Equipment."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Mastercool
 - 2. Adobear
 - 3. Essex
 - 4. Reznor-Thomas & Betts Corporation; Mechanical Products Division.

2.2 PACKAGED UNITS

- A. Factory-assembled, prewired, self-contained unit consisting of cabinet, supply fan controls.

2.3 CABINET

- A. Cabinet: Single wall galvanized-steel panels, formed to ensure rigidity and supported by galvanized-steel channels or structural channel supports with lifting lugs. Cabinet shall be fully weatherized for outside installation.
- B. Access Panels: Piano hinged with cam-lock fasteners for furnace and fan motor assemblies on both sides of unit.
- C. Finish: Heat-resistant, baked enamel.

- D. Discharge: See schedules.

2.4 SUPPLY-AIR FAN

- A. Fan Type: Centrifugal, rated according to AMCA 210; statically and dynamically balanced, galvanized steel; mounted on solid-steel shaft with heavy-duty.
- B. Motor: Totally enclosed.
- C. Drive: V-belt drive with matching fan pulley and adjustable motor sheaves and belt assembly.
- D. Mounting: Fan wheel, motor, and drives shall be mounted in fan casing with restrained, isolators.

2.5 EVAPORATIVE COOLING PACKAGE

- A. Cabinet: Single-wall, galvanized- or aluminized-steel panels lined with ABS polymer formed to ensure rigidity and supported by galvanized-steel channels or structural channel supports with lifting lugs and having a stainless-steel reservoir with overflow and drain with full-port, brass-fitted ball valve Cabinet shall be fully weatherized for outside installation.
 - 1. External Casing and Cabinet Finish: Baked enamel over corrosion-resistant-treated surface in color to match fan section.
- B. Media: UL 900, Class 2,12-inch thick cellulose media with rigidizing agents, fungicides, and wetting agents. Minimum 90 percent contact factor.
 - 1. Moisture elimination pad.
- C. Water-Circulation System: Submersible centrifugal sump pump with inlet strainer, brass balancing valve located in pump discharge, and thermally protected motor; water distribution troughs or piping at top of media pads; and float-operated, makeup water and bleed-off valves.
- D. Comply with applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2007.

2.6 CONTROLS

- A. Evaporative Cooling Controls:
 - 1. Start and stop water-circulation-system sump pump to maintain space temperature.
 - 2. Automatic Fill Control: A switch in the unit control panel shall close sump drain valve and open makeup water valve.
 - 3. Automatic Drain Control: Opens sump drain valve and closes makeup water valve from a switch in the unit control panel when an outside thermostat senses 40 deg F (4 deg C) or less.
 - 4. Water-Saver System: Remote thermostat shall open water-supply valve to maintain dry-bulb temperature in space. Timer shall activate thermostat circuit.

2.7 MOTORS

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting installation of direct-fired H&V units.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping, ducts, and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment installation.
- C. Examine roof curbs and equipment supports for suitable conditions where rooftop replacement-air units will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install roof curb on roof structure, according to ARI Guideline B.NRCA's "Low-Slope Membrane Roofing Construction Details Manual.
- B. Install controls and equipment shipped by manufacturer for field installation with direct-fired H&V units.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping Connections: Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.
 - 1. Makeup Water: Comply with requirements in Division 22 "Domestic Water Piping" for valves and accessories on piping connections to evaporative cooling units.
 - 2. Drain: Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping" for traps and accessories on piping connections to evaporative cooling units.
- B. Duct Connections: Duct installation requirements are specified in Division 23 Section "Metal Ducts." Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts. Connect supply[**and return**] ducts to direct-fired H&V units with flexible duct connectors. Flexible duct connectors are specified in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories."
- C. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

- D. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.4 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
- B. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions and perform the following:
 - 1. Inspect for visible damage to furnace combustion chamber.
 - 2. Inspect casing insulation for integrity, moisture content, and adhesion.
 - 3. Verify that clearances have been provided for servicing.
 - 4. Verify that controls are connected and operable.
 - 5. Verify that filters are installed.
 - 6. Inspect and adjust vibration isolators.
 - 7. Verify bearing lubrication.
 - 8. Inspect fan-wheel rotation for movement in correct direction without vibration and binding.
 - 9. Adjust fan belts to proper alignment and tension.
 - 10. Start unit according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 11. Complete startup sheets and attach copy with Contractor's startup report.
 - 12. Inspect and record performance of interlocks and protective devices; verify sequences.
 - 13. Operate unit for run-in period recommended by manufacturer.
 - 14. Perform the following operations for both minimum and maximum firing and adjust burner for peak efficiency:
 - a. Measure combustion-air temperature at inlet to combustion chamber.
 - b. Measure supply-air temperature and volume when burner is at maximum firing rate and when burner is off. Calculate useful heat to supply air.
 - 15. Calibrate thermostats.
 - 16. Adjust and inspect high-temperature limits.
 - 17. Inspect dampers, if any, for proper stroke and interlock with return-air dampers.
 - 18. Start evaporative cooler system and measure and record the following:
 - a. Leaving-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
 - b. Entering-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
 - 19. Inspect controls for correct sequencing of heating, mixing dampers, refrigeration, and normal and emergency shutdown.
 - 20. Measure and record airflow. Plot fan volumes on fan curve.
 - 21. Verify operation of remote panel, including pilot-operation and failure modes. Inspect the following:
 - a. High-limit heat.
 - b. Alarms.
 - 22. After startup and performance testing, change filters, verify bearing lubrication, and adjust belt tension.

- C. Remove and replace malfunctioning components that do not pass tests and inspections and retest as specified above.
- D. Prepare written report of the results of startup services.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust initial temperature set points.
- B. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.
- C. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain direct-fired H&V units. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION 237339

SECTION 238126 - SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR-CONDITIONERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes split-system air-conditioning and heat-pump units consisting of separate evaporator-fan and compressor-condenser components.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. Include performance data in terms of capacities, outlet velocities, static pressures, sound power characteristics, motor requirements, and electrical characteristics.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For evaporator-fans, compressor-condensers, accessories, and components, provide from manufacturer:
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether “withstand” certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - a. The term "withstand" means the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- B. Field quality-control reports.
- C. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For split-system air-conditioning units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Filters: Two sets for each unit. One filter to be installed for use during startup and Testing & Balancing. The contractor shall install the second filter at the time of Substantial Completion.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASHRAE Compliance:
 - 1. Fabricate and label refrigeration system to comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems."
 - 2. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 4 - "Outdoor Air Quality," Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment," Section 6 - "Procedures," and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."
- C. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of split-system air-conditioning units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period:
 - a. For Compressor, parts and labor: Five > years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Provide one of the following:
 - 1. Carrier Corporation; a unit of United Technologies Corp.;

2. Lennox Industries, Inc.; Lennox International;
3. Mitsubishi Electric & Electronics USA, Inc.;
4. Sanyo North America Corporation
5. Trane Company a division of Ingersoll-Rand;
6. York; a Johnson Controls company

2.2 INDOOR UNITS

A. Wall-Mounted, Evaporator-Fan Components:

1. Cabinet: Enameled steel with removable panels on front and ends in, manufacturers standard color and discharge drain pans with drain connection.
2. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and thermal-expansion valve. Comply with ARI 206/110.
3. Fan: Direct drive, centrifugal.
4. Fan Motors:
 - a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - b. Multitapped, multispeed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.
 - c. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in electrical Sections.
 - d. Mount unit-mounted disconnect switches on interior of unit.
5. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
6. Condensate Drain Pans: Comply in all respects with ASHRAE 62.1. Provide condensate pump with minimum 9 inch [24 inch] lift and safety shutoff switch.
7. Air Filtration Section: Permanent, cleanable.

2.3 OUTDOOR UNITS

A. Air-Cooled, Compressor-Condenser Components:

1. Casing: Steel, manufacturers standard finish and color with removable panels for access to controls, weep holes for water drainage, and mounting holes in base. Provide brass service valves, fittings, and gage ports on exterior of casing.
2. Compressor: Hermetically sealed with crankcase heater and mounted on vibration isolation device. Compressor motor shall have thermal- and current-sensitive overload devices, start capacitor, relay, and contactor.
 - a. Compressor Type: Scroll.
 - b. Two-speed compressor motor with manual-reset high-pressure switch and automatic-reset low-pressure switch.
 - c. Refrigerant Charge: R-407C or R-410A
 - d. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and liquid sub-cooler. Comply with ARI 206/110.

3. Fan: Aluminum-propeller type directly connected to motor.
4. Motor: Permanently lubricated, with integral thermal-overload protection.
5. Low Ambient Kit: Provide additional components to permit operation down to 10 deg F.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Control equipment and sequence of operation are specified in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC" and Section 230993.11 "Sequence of Operations for HVAC DDC."
- B. Thermostat: Wireless infrared functioning to remotely control compressor and evaporator fan, with the following features:
 1. Compressor time delay.
 2. 24-hour time control of system stop and start.
 3. Liquid-crystal display indicating temperature, set-point temperature, time setting, operating mode, and fan speed.
 4. Fan-speed selection including auto setting.
- C. Automatic-reset timer to prevent rapid cycling of compressor.
- D. Refrigerant Line Kits: Soft-annealed copper suction and liquid lines factory cleaned, dried, pressurized, and sealed; factory-insulated suction line with flared fittings at both ends.

2.5 CAPACITIES AND CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Capacities and characteristics shall be as scheduled on Drawings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install units level and plumb.
- B. Evaporator-fan Components Mounting: Install evaporator-fan components using manufacturer's standard mounting devices securely fastened to building structure.
- C. Compressor-condenser Components Mounting:
 1. Install ground-mounted, compressor-condenser components on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Concrete equipment bases shall comply with overall size, thickness, and edge distance for anchor bolts required in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls" Submittal. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic control devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."

- D. Install and connect pre-charged refrigerant tubing to component's quick-connect fittings. Install tubing to allow access to unit.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where piping is installed adjacent to unit, allow space for service and maintenance of unit.
- C. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Equipment".
- D. Electrical Connections: Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section for power wiring, switches, and motor controls

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 - 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- E. Prepare test & inspection reports and corrective actions. Submit written reports to the Architect.

3.4 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel on procedures and schedules related to adjusting, operating, startup and shutdown; troubleshooting; servicing and preventative maintenance of Units.
 - 1. Review data in the Operation and Maintenance Manual. Refer to Division 1 Section "Contact Closeout".
 - 2. Schedule training with Owner through the Architect with at least 14 days advance notice.

END OF SECTION 238126

SECTION 238239.19 - WALL AND CEILING UNIT HEATERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes wall and ceiling heaters with propeller fans and electric-resistance heating coils.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.
 - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Include details of anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment.
 - 4. Include equipment schedules to indicate rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
 - 5. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wall and ceiling unit heaters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Airtherm Mfg. Co.
 - 2. Buffalo Forge Co.
 - 3. Chromalox, Inc.
 - 4. Dunham-Bush Inc.
 - 5. INDEECO.
 - 6. Markel Products; TPI Corporation.
 - 7. McQuay Inc.

8. Modine MFg. Co.
9. QMark Electric Heating.
10. Ted Reed Thermal, Inc.
11. Trane.
12. Wing (The) Co.

2.2 DESCRIPTION

- A. Assembly including chassis, electric heating coil, fan, motor, and controls. Comply with UL 2021.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.3 CABINET

- A. Front Panel: Stamped-steel louver, with removable panels fastened with tamperproof fasteners.
- B. Finish: Baked enamel over baked-on primer with manufacturer's standard color selected by Architect, applied to factory-assembled and -tested wall and ceiling heaters before shipping.
- C. Surface-Mounted Cabinet Enclosure: Steel with finish to match cabinet.

2.4 COIL

- A. Electric-Resistance Heating Coil:
 1. Nickel-chromium heating wire.
 2. Wire embedded in magnesium oxide refractory.
 3. Wire in corrosion-resistant metallic sheath.
 4. Stainless-steel terminate elements.
 5. Machine-staked terminals.
 6. Limit Controls and high-temperature protection.

2.5 FAN AND MOTOR

- A. Fan: Aluminum propeller directly connected to motor.
- B. Motor: Permanently lubricated. Comply with requirements in Division 23 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

2.6 CONTROLS

- A. Controls: Unit-mounted thermostat.
- B. Electrical Connection: Factory wire motors and controls for a single field connection.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas to receive wall and ceiling unit heaters for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for electrical connections to verify actual locations before unit-heater installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install wall and ceiling unit heaters to comply with NFPA 90A.
- B. Install wall and ceiling unit heaters level and plumb.
- C. Ground equipment according to Division 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Connect wiring according to Division 26 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

END OF SECTION 238239.19

SECTION 238320 - UNDERFLOOR HEATING SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification sections, apply to this section.
- B. The following Division-23 Sections apply to this Section:
 - 1. Basic Mechanical Requirements.
 - 2. Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods.
 - 3. Valves.
 - 4. Hangers and Supports.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes underfloor hot water radiant heating system. Design, furnish and install a complete hydronic underfloor hot water radiant heating system including piping, manifolds, control system and all other items required for a complete and operable system. System shall be furnished by a single manufacturer regularly engaged in the design and manufacturing of radiant underfloor systems. System design shall be reviewed and certified by the radiant piping manufacturer as being properly designed. Submittals shall include this system certification document. Piping materials and equipment specified in this Section include:
 - 1. Pipes, fittings, and specialties;
 - 2. Special duty valves;
 - 3. Hydronic specialties.
- B. This Section includes plate heat exchangers.
- C. Related Sections: The following sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:
 - 1. Division 2 Section "Earthwork" for trenching and backfilling materials and methods for underground piping installations.
 - 2. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealant" for materials and methods for sealing pipe penetrations through basement walls, and fire and smoke barriers.
 - 3. Division 23 Section "Valves" for gate, globe, ball, butterfly, and check valves.
 - 4. Division 23 Section "Meters and Gages" for thermometers, flow meters, and pressure gages.
 - 5. Division 23 Section "Mechanical Identification" for labeling and identification of hydronic piping system.
 - 6. Division 23 Section "Mechanical Insulation" for pipe insulation.
 - 7. Division 23 Section "Hydronic Pumps" for pumps, motors, and accessories for hydronic systems.
 - 8. Division 23 Section "Automatic Temperature Controls" for temperature control valves and sensors.

9. Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting and Balancing, Mechanical O&M Manuals" for procedures for hydronic systems adjusting and balancing.
10. Division 26 Section "Electrical Connections for Equipment" for power supply wiring including field-installed disconnects and required electrical devices.
11. Division 26 "Motors."

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Pipe sizes used in this Specification are Nominal Pipe Size (NPS).
- B. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
- C. PE: Polyethylene.
- D. PEX: Crosslinked polyethylene.

1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. General: The hydronic system is a complete hot water radiant heating system. Included in this section are hot water piping systems, valves, and controls. These systems are classified by ASHRAE as Low Water Temperature, Forced, and Recirculating systems.
- B. Sequence of Operation: Room Temperature Units, located in each heating zone, signal heating demand to the zone controllers. The zone controller varies the duty cycle for the zone pump to satisfy the zone temperature demand and resets the zone setpoint based on outdoor temperature and time of day. A mixing controller varies the duty cycle for the primary pump to satisfy the loop temperature demand as sensed by a temperature sensor in the primary heating water loop.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit the following in accordance with Conditions of Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.
- B. Product Data, include performance data, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories; including rated capacities of selected models, weights (shipping, installed, and operating), furnished specialties and accessories, and installation instructions for each hydronic specialty and special duty valve specified.
 1. Furnish flow and pressure drop curves for diverting fittings and calibrated plug valves, based on manufacturer's testing.
- C. Maintenance Data for valves for inclusion in operating and maintenance manuals.
- D. Certification of compliance with ASTM and ANSI manufacturing requirements for pipe, fittings, and specialties.
- E. Reports specified in Part 3 of this Section.
- F. Wiring diagrams detailing wiring for power, signal, and control systems, differentiating between manufacturer-installed wiring and field-installed wiring.

- G. Delegated Design:
 - 1. For heat exchangers and accessories - Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other Work for in-floor radiant tubing design and layout.
 - 2. Underfloor heating - Submittal and installation drawings must be prepared by the underfloor heating manufacturer. As a minimum, these documents must include the following:
 - a. To scale layout of supply and return mains.
 - b. 1/4" scale heating circuits layout.
 - c. System piping schematic.
 - d. Heat transfer package.
 - e. Electrical and control diagrams.
 - f. Operating sequence description.
 - 3. All of the above submittal items must be available electronically. Heating circuit layout must also be provided prior to installation.
- H. Source quality-control test reports.
- I. Startup service reports.
- J. Warranties: Special warranties specified in this Section.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Requirements: comply with the provisions of the following:
 - 1. ASME B 31.9 "Building Services Piping" for materials, products, and installation. Safety valves and pressure vessels shall bear the appropriate ASME label.
 - 2. International Mechanical Code, 2012.
- B. National Electrical Code Compliance: Provide components complying with NFPA 70 "National Electrical Code."
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

1.7 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Coordinate the size and location of concrete equipment pads. Cast anchor bolt inserts into pad. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 3.
- B. Coordinate the installation of pipe sleeves for foundation wall penetrations.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Retain shipping flange protective covers and protective coatings during storage.
- B. For storage times greater than 5 days, dry internal parts with hot air or a vacuum-producing device to avoid rusting internal parts. Upon drying, coat internal parts with a protective liquid, such as light oil, kerosene, or antifreeze.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturer: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide hydronic piping system products from one of the following:
 - 1. Balance valve Indicator and Flow Setters:
 - a. Gerand Engineering Co.
 - b. Preso Industries Ltd.
 - c. Taco "Accu-Flo."
 - 2. Automatic Flow Control Valves:
 - a. Flow Design, Inc.
 - b. Griswold Controls.
 - 3. Safety Relief Valves:
 - a. Amtrol, Inc.
 - b. Bell & Gossett ITT; Fluid Handling Div.
 - c. Spirax Sarco.
 - d. Watts Regulator Co.
 - 4. Pressure Reducing Valves:
 - a. Amtrol, Inc.
 - b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
 - c. Bell & Gossett ITT; Fluid Handling Div.
 - d. Taco, Inc.
 - e. Honeywell-Baukman.
 - 5. Air Vents (automatic):
 - a. Armstrong Machine Works.
 - b. Bell & Gossett ITT; Fluid Handling Div.
 - c. Hoffman Specialty ITT; Fluid Handling Div.
 - d. Spirax Sarco.
 - e. Honeywell-Baukman.
 - 6. Diverting Fittings:

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- a. Amtrol, Inc.
 - b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
 - c. Bell & Gossett ITT; Fluid Handling Div.
 - d. Taco, Inc.
7. Dielectric Waterway Fittings:
- a. Victaulic Company of America
8. Y-Pattern Strainers:
- a. Armstrong Machine Works.
 - b. Hoffman Specialty ITT; Fluid Handling Div.
 - c. Metraflex Co.
 - d. Spirax Sarco.
 - e. Victaulic Co. of America.
 - f. Watts Regulator Co.
9. Basket Strainers:
- a. Crane Co.
 - b. Metraflex Co.
 - c. Spirax Sarco.
 - d. Victaulic Company of America
10. Flexible Connectors:
- a. Amber-Booth.
 - b. Mason Industries, Inc.
 - c. Metraflex Co.
11. Distribution Manifolds:
- a. Heatlink USA Inc.
 - b. Heatway, Inc.
 - c. Hume Snow Melting Systems, Inc.
 - d. Infloor Heating Systems
 - e. Rehau Inc.
 - f. Tekmar Control Systems, Ltd.
 - g. Snow Technologies Inc.
 - h. Viega.
 - i. Wirsbo Co.
12. Controls:
- a. Heatlink USA Inc.
 - b. Hume Snow Melting Systems, Inc.
 - c. Infloor Heating Systems.
 - d. Snow Technologies Inc.
 - e. Tekmar Control Systems, Ltd.
 - f. Viega.
 - g. Wirsbo Co.

13. Thermostats:
 - a. Heatlink USA Inc.
 - b. Infloor Heating Systems.
 - c. Rehau Inc.
 - d. Snow Technologies Inc.
 - e. Tekmar Control Systems, Ltd.
 - f. Viega.
 - g. Wirsbo Co.

2.2 PIPE AND TUBING MATERIALS

- A. General: Refer to Part 3 Article "PIPE APPLICATIONS" for identification of where the below materials are used.
- B. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Types K and L, water tube, drawn temper.
- C. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Types K and L, water tube, annealed temper.
- D. Chlorinated Poly Vinyl Chloride (CPVC) Plastic Pipe: ASTM F 441, Schedule 80, plain ends.
- E. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 120 or ASTM A 53 Grade A or B, standard weight (std.), seamless, black steel pipe, plane ends.
- F. PEX Plastic: ASTM F 876.
 1. Fittings: ASTM F 1807, copper with copper crimping type.

2.3 FITTINGS

- A. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ANSI B16.3, Class 150, standard pattern, for threaded joints. Threads shall conform to ANSI B1.20.1.
- B. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ANSI B16.22, streamlined pattern.
- C. Unions: ANSI B16.39 malleable-iron, Class 150, hexagonal stock, with ball-and-socket joints, metal-to-metal bronze seating surfaces; female threaded ends. Threads shall conform to ANSI B1.20.1.
- D. Dielectric Fittings: Assembly or fitting having insulating material; constructed to isolate dissimilar metals, prevent galvanic action, and prevent corrosion.
- E. Flexible Connectors:
 1. Flexible neoprene connectors shall be manufactured of multiple plies of nylon tire cord fabric and neoprene both molded and cured in hydraulic rubber presses. No steel wire or rings shall be used as pressure reinforcement. Straight connectors shall have two spheres. Connectors up to and including 1-1/2" diameter may have threaded ends. Connectors 2" and larger shall be manufactured with

- floating galvanized flanges recessed to lock the connector's raised face neoprene flanges. Hoses shall be installed on the equipment side of the shut-off valves.
2. Connectors shall be rated a minimum of 150 psi at 220 degrees F. Flanged equipment shall be directly connected to neoprene elbows in the size range 2-1/2" through 12" if the piping makes a 90 degree turn at the equipment. All straight through connections shall be made with twin-spheres properly pre-extended as recommended by the manufacturer to prevent additional elongation under pressure. 12" and larger sizes operating above 100 psi shall employ control cables with end fittings isolated by means of 1/2" thick bridge bearing neoprene washer bushings designed for a maximum of 1,000 psi.

- F. Chlorinated Poly Vinyl Chloride (CPVC) Plastic, Schedule 80, Socket-Type Pipe Fittings: ASTM F 439.

2.4 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, 95-5 Tin-Antimony, for make-up water and drain piping.
- B. Gasket Material: thickness, material, and type suitable for fluid to be handled, and design temperatures and pressures.

2.5 GENERAL DUTY VALVES

- A. General duty valves (i.e., gate, globe, check, ball, and butterfly valves) are specified in Division 23 Section "Valves." Special duty valves are specified below by their generic name; refer to Part 3 Article "VALVE APPLICATION" for specific uses and applications for each valve specified.

2.6 SPECIAL DUTY VALVES

- A. Balvalve Indicator and Flow Setters 2" and Under: Differential-pressure fixed orifice flow element with ball valve for flow rate adjustment. Differential at required gpm not to exceed 25 inches w.g. Brass body calibrated orifice or venturi with brass fittings, threaded ends, attached tag with flow conversion data, and male quick connect fittings with shut-off valves. Quick connect fittings, Hansen Manufacturing series KH model B1-K11. Brass body ball valve, 400 psi, "Teflon" seats and stem seal, tight shut-off, tamper proof locking device.
- B. Flow Setters 2-1/2" and Larger: Venturi type flow meters with plug cock for flow rate adjustment.
- C. Pressure Reducing Valves: diaphragm operated, cast-iron or brass body valve, with low inlet pressure check valve, inlet strainer removable without system shut-down, and noncorrosive valve seat and stem. Select valve size, capacity, and operating pressure to suit system. Valve shall be factory-set at operating pressure and have the capability for field adjustment. Provide with fast fill feature for filling hydronic system.
- D. Safety Relief Valves: 125 psig working pressure and 250 deg F maximum operating temperature; designed, manufactured, tested, and labeled in accordance with the

requirements of Section IV of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code 2013. Valve body shall be cast-iron, with all wetted internal working parts made of brass and rubber. Select valve to suit actual system pressure and Btu capacity.

- E. Combined Pressure/Temperature Relief Valves: Safety relief valve designed, manufactured, tested, and labeled in accordance with the requirements of Section IV of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Valve body shall be cast-iron, with all wetted internal working parts made of brass and rubber; 125 psig working pressure and 250 deg F maximum operating temperature. Select valve to suit actual system pressure and Btu capacity
- F. Automatic Flow Control Valves: Class 150, cast iron housing, stainless steel operating parts; threaded connections for 2 inch and smaller, flanged connections for 2-1/2 inch and larger; Hansen Manufacturing series KH, model B1-K11 quick disconnect valves for flow measuring equipment; Factory set to automatically control flow rates within plus or minus 5 percent design, while compensating for system operating pressure differential with minimum range requiring 2 or less PSID to actuate the mechanism. Metal identification tag with chain for each valve, factory marked with the zone identification, valve model number, and rate flow in GPM.

2.7 HYDRONIC SPECIALTIES

- A. Automatic Air Vent: designed to vent automatically with float principle; bronze body and nonferrous internal parts; 150 psig working pressure, 240 deg F operating temperature; and having 1/4 inch discharge connection and 1/2 inch inlet connection.
- B. Y-Pattern Strainers: 125 psig working pressure cast-iron body (ASTM A 126, Class B), flanged ends for 2-1/2 inch and larger, threaded connections for 2 inch and smaller, bolted cover, perforated Type 304 stainless steel basket, and bottom drain connection.
- C. Basket Strainers: 125 psig working pressure; high tensile cast-iron body (ASTM A 126, Class B), flanged end connections, bolted cover, perforated Type 304 stainless steel basket, and bottom drain connection.
- D. T-Pattern Strainers: 125 psi working pressure, ductile iron or malleable iron body, grooved end connections, Type 304 stainless steel strainer basket with 57 percent free area; removable access coupling and end cap for strainer maintenance.
- E. Radiant-Pipe Mounting Tracks: Aluminum, with pipe supports permitting pipe spacing at scheduled intervals.
- F. Copper Manifolds: Materials shall be of type L copper trunks and copper or brass base branches with WattsHeatway brass tee (sweat) branches. Connections shall be soldered with a lead-free, high-strength solder. Standard diameter is one inch (1") with other diameters as required. Manifolds shall be fitted with ball valves (mini or standard size) for flow control and/or isolation purposes. Manifolds are fitted with vent/purge assemblies for bleeding air, or unions for acceptance of pressure test kits. Piping shall be attached to manifold branches by compression fittings according to manufacturer's recommendations.
 - 1. Identification Plate: Valve plate shall identify room served and loop number.

2. If more than one loop serves a room, provide identification plates on manifolds to identify rooms served.

2.8 CONTROLS

- A. Mixing Control: Tekmar Model 364, Microprocessor based mixing controller to control pumping loop temperatures using pulse width control technology and provide full reset capability. Mixing controller must integrate with boiler and zone controllers.
- B. Zone Control: Tekmar Model 369, Zone control to control radiant heating zone pumps using pulse width control technology, and to integrate this information with mixing and boiler controls and provide full reset temperature based on time of day and outdoor temperature.
- C. Temperature Sensors: Tekmar Model 154, Room temperature units and outdoor air temperature sensors.
- D. Miscellaneous Control Items: Includes miscellaneous items such as control power transformer, electrical cabinet for mounting system controls, terminal strips as required, and control wiring to complete an integrated underfloor heating system.
- E. Stand alone integrated control system as manufactured by Snow Technologies, Inc.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, equipment foundations, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of HVAC pumps.
- B. Examine rough-in for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections prior to installation.
- C. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PIPE APPLICATIONS

- A. Make-Up Water:
 1. Install Type L, drawn copper tubing with wrought copper fittings and solder joints for 2 inch and smaller, above ground, within building. Install Type K, annealed temper copper tubing for 2 inch and smaller without joints, below ground or within slabs.
- B. Hot Water and Glycol Heating:
 1. Above Ground Piping: Install steel pipe.
- C. In Floor Radiant Tubing:

1. Radiant tubing shall be cross linked polyethylene as manufactured to the Silane or Engle methods.
 2. The radiant tubing shall be warranted to 180°F in hydronic heating applications without detrimental effect. Operating pressure shall not be more than 100 psi at 35°F to 180°F. Burst pressure shall not be less than 80° psi at 70°.
- D. Buried And In Slab Distribution Piping:
1. Install Type K, annealed temper copper tubing for 2 inch and smaller without joints, below ground or within slabs.

3.3 PIPING INSTALLATIONS

- A. Locations and Arrangements: Drawings (plans, schematics, and diagrams) indicate the general location and arrangement of piping systems. Locations and arrangements of piping take into consideration pipe sizing and friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. So far as practical, install piping as indicated. The in-floor radiant tubing design and layout shall be approved by the Engineer.
- B. Use fittings for all changes in direction and all branch connections.
- C. Install exposed piping at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are not permitted, unless expressly indicated.
- D. Conceal all pipe installations in walls, pipe chases, utility spaces, above ceilings, below grade or floors, unless indicated to be exposed to view.
- E. Install piping tight to slabs, beams, joists, columns, walls, and other permanent elements of the building. Provide space to permit insulation applications, with 1" clearance outside the insulation. Allow sufficient space above removable ceiling panels to allow for panel removal.
- F. Locate groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation and servicing of valves.
- G. Install drains at low points in mains, risers, and branch lines consisting of a tee fitting, 3/4" ball valve, and short 3/4" threaded nipple and cap.
- H. Install manual air vents at high points in the system, at heat transfer coils, and elsewhere as required for system air venting consisting of 3/8" globe or ball valve mounted on 6" long nipple same size as piping with discharge piping and valve extended down to an accessible location and terminated with a male hose connection and cap.
- I. Exterior Wall Penetrations: Seal pipe penetrations through exterior walls using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Pipe sleeves smaller than 6 inch shall be steel; pipe sleeves 6 inch and larger shall be sheet metal.
- J. Fire Barrier Penetrations: Where pipes pass through fire rated walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors, maintain the fire rated integrity. Refer to Division 7 for special sealers and materials.
- K. Install piping at a uniform grade of 1 inch in 40 feet upward in the direction of flow.

- L. Make reductions in pipe sizes using eccentric reducer fitting installed with the level side up.
- M. Install branch connections to mains using Tee fittings in main with take-off out the bottom of the main at 45°, except for up-feed risers which shall have take-off out the top of the main line at 45°.
- N. Install unions in pipes 2 inch and smaller, adjacent to each valve, at final connections each piece of equipment, and elsewhere as indicated. Unions are not required on flanged devices.
- O. Install dielectric waterways to join dissimilar metals.
- P. Install flanges on valves, apparatus, and equipment having 2-1/2 inch and larger connections.
- Q. Install flexible connectors at inlet and discharge connections to pumps (except inline pumps) and other vibration producing equipment.
- R. Install strainers on the supply side of each control valve, pressure reducing valve, pressure regulating valve, solenoid valve, and elsewhere as indicated. Install nipple and ball valve and cap in blow down connection of strainers.
- S. Anchor piping to ensure proper direction of expansion and contraction. Expansion loops and joints are indicated on the Drawings and specified in Division-23 Section "Expansion Compensation."
- T. Field apply protective coating to underground steel pipe joints and damaged areas per manufacturer's requirements and instructions.
- U. Install automatic temperature control valve, wells, flow devices, and other pipe mounted devices.
- V. In-Floor Radiant Piping Installation:
 - 1. Install piping downstream from manifolds without joints.
 - 2. Secure piping in concrete floors by attaching pipes to concrete reinforcement using plastic tie straps.
 - a. Install a sleeve of foam-type insulation around tubing and extending for a minimum of 6 inches on each side of the slab penetration to protect the tubing passing through expansion joints.
 - 3. Install manifolds in locations indicated on mechanical piping drawing.
 - 4. Fill system with 50 percent of propylene glycol-to-water solution.
- W. Buried and In Slab Distribution Piping:
 - 1. Install without joints below grade.
 - 2. Install below slab in sand or base material, passing through concrete only to reach walls or mechanical spaces.
 - 3. Install in continuous sleeve of closed cell foam insulation to isolate piping from building, slab and ground movement.

3.4 EXCAVATION

- A. Excavation, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Division 2 Section "Earthwork."

3.5 PREPARATION OF FOUNDATION FOR BURIED PIPING

- A. Grade trench bottom to provide smooth, firm, stable, and rock-free foundation throughout length of piping.
- B. Remove unstable, soft, and unsuitable materials at surface on which piping is to be laid and backfill with clean sand or pea gravel to indicated level.
- C. Shape bottom of trench to fit bottom of piping. Fill unevenness with tamped-sand backfill. Joints are not permitted in below grade slab hydronic distribution piping.

3.6 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Hanger, supports, and anchors devices are specified in Division 23 Section "HANGERS AND SUPPORTS." Conform to the table below for maximum spacing of supports:
- B. Install the following pipe attachments:
 - 1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal runs less than 20 feet in length.
 - 2. Adjustable roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal runs 20 feet or longer.
 - 3. Pipe roller complete - MSS Type 44 for multiple horizontal runs, 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
 - 4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
- C. Install hangers with the following minimum rod sizes and maximum spacing:

Nom. Pipe Size	Max. Span-Ft.	Min. Rod Size-Inches
1	7	3/8
1-1/2	9	3/8
2	10	3/8
3	12	1/2
3-1/2	13	1/2
4	14	5/8
5	16	5/8
6	17	3/4
8	19	7/8
10	22	7/8
12	23	7/8

- 1. Support vertical runs at each floor.

3.7 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Soldered Joints: Comply with the procedures contained in the AWS "Soldering Manual."
- B. Brazed Joints: Comply with the procedures contained in the AWS "Brazing Manual."
 - 1. CAUTION: Remove stems, seats, and packing of valves and accessible internal parts at piping specialties before brazing.
 - 2. Fill the pipe and fittings during brazing, with an inert gas (ie., nitrogen or carbon dioxide) to prevent formation of scale.
 - 3. Heat joints using oxy-acetylene torch. Heat to proper and uniform temperature.
- C. Threaded Joints: Conform to ANSI B1.20.1, tapered pipe threads for field cut threads. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Note the internal length of threads in fittings or valve ends, and proximity of internal seat or wall, to determine how far pipe should be threaded into joint.
 - 2. Align threads at point of assembly.
 - 3. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to the external pipe threads (except where dry seal threading is specified).
 - 4. Assemble joint wrench tight. Wrench on valve shall be on the valve end into which the pipe is being threaded.
 - a. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe with threads which are corroded or damaged. If a weld opens during cutting or threading operations, that portion of pipe shall not be used.
 - 5. Handling of Solvent Cements, Primers, and Cleaners: Comply with procedures in ASTM F 402 for safe handling during joining of plastic pipe and fittings with solvent cements.
- D. All PEX tubing connections: All installations shall be made in accordance with the manufacturers current written installation procedures, using manufacturer-approved fittings.

3.8 VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. General Duty Valve Applications: The Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated the following requirements apply:
 - 1. Shut-off duty: use gate, ball, and butterfly valves.
 - 2. Throttling duty: use globe, ball, and butterfly valves.
 - 3. Install shut-off duty valves at each branch connection to supply mains, at supply connection to each piece of equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
 - 4. Install throttling duty valves at each branch connection to return mains, at return connections to each piece of equipment, elsewhere as indicated.
- B. Install drain valves at low points in mains, risers, branch lines, and elsewhere as required for system drainage.
- C. Install check valves on each pump discharge and elsewhere as required to control flow direction.

- D. Install safety relief valves on hot water generators, and elsewhere as required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Pipe discharge to floor without valves. Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code Section VIII, Division 1 for installation requirements.
- E. Install pressure reducing valves on hot water generators, and elsewhere as required to regulate system pressure.
- F. Install manual air vent valves at high points in the system, at heat transfer coils, and elsewhere as required for system air venting.

3.9 HYDRONIC SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

- A. Install temperature control valves, separable wells, flow devices, and other pipe line mounted devices.

3.10 HYDRONIC PIPING FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Preparation for testing: Prepare hydronic piping in accordance with ASME B 31.9 and as follows:
 - 1. Leave joints including welds uninsulated and exposed for examination during the test.
 - 2. Provide temporary restraints for expansion joints which cannot sustain the reactions due to test pressure. If temporary restraints are not practical, isolate expansion joints from testing.
 - 3. Flush system with clean water. Clean strainers.
 - 4. Isolate equipment that is not to be subjected to the test pressure from the piping. If a valve is used to isolate the equipment, its closure shall be capable of sealing against the test pressure without damage to the valve. Flanged joints at which blinds are inserted to isolate equipment need not be tested.
 - 5. Install relief valve set at a pressure no more than 1/3 higher than the test pressure, to protect against damage by expansion of liquid or other source of overpressure during the test.
- B. Testing: Test hydronic piping as follows:
 - 1. Use ambient temperature water as the testing medium, except where there is a risk of damage due to freezing. Another liquid may be used if it is safe for workmen and compatible with the piping system components.
 - 2. Use vents installed at high points in the system to release trapped air while filling the system. Use drains installed at low points for complete removal of the that liquid.
 - 3. Examine system to see that equipment and parts that cannot withstand test pressures are properly isolated. Examine test equipment to ensure that it is tight and that low pressure filling lines are disconnected.
 - 4. Subject piping system to a hydrostatic test pressure which at every point in the system is not less than 1.5 times the design pressure. The test pressure shall not exceed the maximum pressure for any vessel, pump, valve, or other component in the system under test. Make a check to verify that the stress due to pressure at the bottom of vertical runs does not exceed either 90 percent of specified

minimum yield strength, or 1.7 times the "SE" value in Appendix A of ASME B31.9, Code For Pressure Piping, Building Services Piping.

5. After the hydrostatic test pressure has been applied for at least 24 hours, examine piping, joints, and connections for leakage. Eliminate leaks by tightening, repairing, or replacing components as appropriate, and repeat hydrostatic test until there are no leaks.

- C. Check suction lines connections for tightness to avoid drawing air into the pump.

3.11 HYDRONIC PIPING ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Clean and flush hydronic piping systems. Remove, clean, and replace strainer screens. After cleaning and flushing hydronic piping system, but before balancing, remove disposable fine mesh strainers in pump suction diffusers.
- B. Mark calibrated name plates of pump discharge valves after hydronic system balancing has been completed, to permanently indicate final balanced position.
- C. Chemical Treatment: Provide a water analysis prepared by the chemical treatment supplier to determine the type and level of chemicals required for prevention of scale and corrosion. Perform initial treatment after completion of system testing.

3.12 CONTROLS INSTALLATION AND STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Install wiring per Division 26 Section "Conductors and Cables". Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding". Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486 B.
- B. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test, inspect, and adjust radiant system components and equipment installation and to perform startup service.
- C. Perform installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions. Start and operate system to confirm proper motor rotation and system function. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate and maintain the systems controls.
- E. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to the site outside normal occupancy hours for this purpose, without additional cost.

END OF SECTION 238320

SECTION 260519 - LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Copper building wire rated 600 V or less.
2. Aluminum building wire rated 600 V or less.
3. Metal-clad cable, Type MC, rated 600 V or less.
4. Photovoltaic cable, Type PV, rated 2000 V or less.
5. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260513 "Medium-Voltage Cables" for single-conductor and multiconductor cables, cable splices, and terminations for electrical distribution systems with 601 to 35,000 V.
2. Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables" for control systems communications cables and Classes 1, 2, and 3 control cables.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. PV: Photovoltaic.
- B. VFC: Variable-frequency controller.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Product Schedule: Indicate type, use, location, and termination locations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COPPER BUILDING WIRE

- A. Description: Flexible, insulated and uninsulated, drawn copper current-carrying conductor with an overall insulation layer or jacket, or both, rated 600 V or less.
- B. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- C. Standards:
 - 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
 - 2. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."
- D. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B 3 for bare annealed copper and with **ASTM B 496** for stranded conductors.
- E. Conductor Insulation:
 - 1. **Type THHN and Type THWN-2:** Comply with UL 83.
 - 2. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.

2.2 ALUMINUM BUILDING WIRE

- A. Description: Flexible, insulated and uninsulated, drawn aluminum current-carrying conductor with an overall insulation layer or jacket, or both, rated 600 V or less.
- B. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- C. Standards:
 - 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
 - 2. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."
- D. Conductors: Aluminum, complying with ASTM B 800 and ASTM B 801.
- E. Conductor Insulation:
 - 1. **Type THHN and Type THWN-2:** Comply with UL 83.
 - 2. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.

2.3 METAL-CLAD CABLE, TYPE MC

- A. Description: A factory assembly of one or more current-carrying insulated conductors in an overall metallic sheath.

- B. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- C. Standards:
 - 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
 - 2. Comply with UL 1569.
 - 3. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."
- D. Circuits:
 - 1. **Single circuit and multi-circuit with color-coded conductors.**
 - 2. Power-Limited Fire-Alarm Circuits: Comply with UL 1424.
- E. Conductors: **Copper, complying with ASTM B 3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B 8 for stranded conductors.**
- F. Ground Conductor: **Insulated.**
- G. Conductor Insulation:
 - 1. Type TFN/THHN/THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.
 - 2. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.
- H. Armor: **Steel or Aluminum**, interlocked.
- I. Jacket: PVC applied over armor.

2.4 PHOTOVOLTAIC CABLE, TYPE PV

- A. Description: Flexible, insulated and uninsulated, drawn copper current-carrying conductor with an overall insulation layer or jacket, or both, rated **600 V**.
- B. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- C. Standards:
 - 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
 - 2. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."
- D. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B 3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B 8 for stranded conductors.
- E. Conductor Insulation: Comply with UL 44 and UL 4703.

2.5 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

- A. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors, splices, and lugs of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated; listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
- B. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- C. Jacketed Cable Connectors: For steel and aluminum jacketed cables, zinc die-cast with set screws, designed to connect conductors specified in this Section.
- D. Lugs: One piece, seamless, designed to terminate conductors specified in this Section.
 - 1. Material: **Copper or Aluminum.**
 - 2. Type: **One or Two** hole with **standard** barrels.
 - 3. Termination: **Compression.**

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

- A. Feeders: Copper for feeders smaller than No. 2 AWG; copper or aluminum for feeders No. 2 AWG and larger. Conductors shall be solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- B. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- C. VFC Output Circuits Cable: Extra-flexible stranded for all sizes.
- D. Power-Limited Fire Alarm and Control: Solid for No. 12 AWG and smaller.
- E. PV Circuits: **Copper.** Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.

3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS

- A. Service Entrance: **Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway or Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.**
- B. Exposed Feeders: **Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.**
- C. Feeders Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, Partitions, and Crawlspace: **Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.**
- D. Feeders Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: **Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway or Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.**

- E. Feeders Installed below Raised Flooring: [**Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway**] [**Armored cable, Type AC**] [**Metal-clad cable, Type MC**] [**Mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable, Type MI**].
- F. Exposed Branch Circuits: **Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.**
- G. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: **Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway or Metal-clad cable, Type MC.**
- H. Branch Circuits Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: **Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway or Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.**
- I. Cord Drops and Portable Appliance Connections: Type SO, hard service cord with stainless-steel, wire-mesh, strain relief device at terminations to suit application.
- J. VFC Output Circuits: **Type XHHW-2 in metal conduit, Type TC-ER cable with braided shield or Type TC-ER cable with dual tape shield.**
- K. PV Circuits: Type PV for PV source circuits rated at **600 V**.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Complete raceway installation between conductor and cable termination points according to Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" prior to pulling conductors and cables.
- C. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.
- D. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.
- E. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.
- F. Support cables according to Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.
- B. Make splices, terminations, and taps that are compatible with conductor material **and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than un-spliced conductors.**

1. Use oxide inhibitor in each splice, termination, and tap for aluminum conductors.
- C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least **6 inches (150 mm)** of slack.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify each spare conductor at each end with identity number and location of other end of conductor, and identify as spare conductor.

3.6 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

3.7 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly according to Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

END OF SECTION 260519

SECTION 260523 - CONTROL-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Backboards.
 - 2. Category 5e balanced twisted pair cable.
 - 3. Category 6 balanced twisted pair cable.
 - 4. Category 6a balanced twisted pair cable.
 - 5. Balanced twisted pair cabling hardware.
 - 6. RS-485 cabling.
 - 7. Low-voltage control cabling.
 - 8. Control-circuit conductors.
 - 9. Identification products.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- B. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control and signaling power-limited circuits.
- C. Plenum: A space forming part of the air distribution system to which one or more air ducts are connected. An air duct is a passageway, other than a plenum, for transporting air to or from heating, ventilating, or air-conditioning equipment.
- D. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
 - 1. [<Double click to insert sustainable design text for lead content.>](#)
 - 2. [<Double click to insert sustainable design text for environmental product declarations.>](#)

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency, RCDD, layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.
- B. Source quality-control reports.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.
 - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD to supervise on-site testing.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Flame Travel and Smoke Density in Plenums: As determined by testing identical products according to NFPA 262, by a qualified testing agency. Identify products for installation in plenums with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Flame Travel Distance: 60 inches (1520 mm) or less.
 - 2. Peak Optical Smoke Density: 0.5 or less.
 - 3. Average Optical Smoke Density: 0.15 or less.
- C. Flame Travel and Smoke Density for Riser Cables in Non-Plenum Building Spaces: As determined by testing identical products according to UL 1666.
- D. Flame Travel and Smoke Density for Cables in Non-Riser Applications and Non-Plenum Building Spaces: As determined by testing identical products according to UL 1685.
- E. RoHS compliant.

2.2 BACKBOARDS

- A. Description: Plywood, [fire-retardant treated,]3/4 by 48 by 96 inches (19 by 1220 by 2440 mm). Comply with requirements for plywood backing panels in Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry."
- B. Painting: Paint plywood on all sides and edges with [flat] [eggshell] [black] <Insert color> [latex] [alkyd] paint. Comply with requirements in Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

1. [<Double click to insert sustainable design text for lead content.>](#)

2.3 CATEGORY 5e BALANCED TWISTED PAIR CABLE

- A. Description: Four-pair, balanced-twisted pair cable, certified to meet transmission characteristics of Category 5e cable at frequencies up to 100 MHz.
- B. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#).
- C. Standard: Comply with ICEA S-90-661, NEMA WC 63.1, and TIA-568-C.2 for Category 5e cables.
- D. Conductors: 100-ohm, 24 AWG solid copper.

1. [<Double click to insert sustainable design text for lead content.>](#)

- E. Shielding/Screening: [**Unshielded twisted pairs (UTP)**] [**Shielded twisted pairs (FTP)**] [**Screened twisted pairs (F/UTP)**] [**Screened and shielded twisted pairs (F/FTP)**].
- F. Cable Rating: [**Riser**] [**Plenum**].
- G. Jacket: [**White**] [**Gray**] **<Insert color>** thermoplastic.

2.4 CATEGORY 6 BALANCED TWISTED PAIR CABLE

- A. Description: Four-pair, balanced-twisted pair cable, [**with internal spline,**] certified to meet transmission characteristics of Category 6 cable at frequencies up to 250MHz.
- B. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#).
- C. Standard: Comply with NEMA WC 66/ICEA S-116-732 and TIA-568-C.2 for Category 6 cables.
- D. Conductors: 100-ohm, 23 AWG solid copper.

1. [<Double click to insert sustainable design text for lead content.>](#)

- E. Shielding/Screening: [**Unshielded twisted pairs (UTP)**] [**Shielded twisted pairs (FTP)**] [**Screened twisted pairs (F/UTP)**] [**Screened and shielded twisted pairs (F/FTP)**].
- F. Cable Rating: [**Riser**] [**Plenum**].
- G. Jacket: [**White**] [**Gray**] [**Blue**] [**Yellow**] **<Insert color>** thermoplastic.

2.5 CATEGORY 6a BALANCED TWISTED PAIR CABLE

- A. Description: Four-pair, balanced-twisted pair cable, [**with internal spline,**] certified to meet transmission characteristics of Category 6a cable at frequencies up to 500MHz.

- B. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products>.](#)
- C. Standard: Comply with TIA-568-C.2 for Category 6a cables.
- D. Conductors: 100-ohm, 23 AWG solid copper.
 - 1. [<Double click to insert sustainable design text for lead content.>](#)
- E. Shielding/Screening: [**Unshielded twisted pairs (UTP)**] [**Shielded twisted pairs (FTP)**] [**Screened twisted pairs (F/UTP)**] [**Screened and shielded twisted pairs (F/FTP)**].
- F. Cable Rating: [**Riser**] [**Plenum**].
- G. Jacket: [**White**] [**Gray**] [**Blue**] [**Yellow**] <Insert color> thermoplastic.

2.6 BALANCED TWISTED PAIR CABLE HARDWARE

- A. Description: Hardware designed to connect, splice, and terminate balanced twisted pair copper communications cable.
- B. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- C. General Requirements for Balanced Twisted Pair Cable Hardware:
 - 1. Comply with the performance requirements of [**Category 5e**] [**Category 6**] [**Category 6a**] [**Category 7**].
 - 2. Comply with TIA-568-C.2, IDC type, with modules designed for punch-down caps or tools.
 - 3. Cables shall be terminated with connecting hardware of same category or higher.
- D. Source Limitations: [**Obtain balanced twisted pair cable hardware from single source from single manufacturer**] [**Obtain balanced twisted pair cable hardware from same manufacturer as balanced twisted pair cable, from single source**].
- E. Connecting Blocks: [**110-style IDC for Category 5e**] [**110-style IDC for Category 6**] [**66-style IDC for Category 5e**]. Provide blocks for the number of cables terminated on the block, plus [**25**] <Insert number> percent spare, integral with connector bodies, including plugs and jacks where indicated.
- F. Cross-Connect: Modular array of connecting blocks arranged to terminate building cables and permit interconnection between cables.
 - 1. Number of Terminals per Field: [**One**] <Insert number> for each conductor in assigned cables.
- G. Patch Panel: Modular panels housing numbered jack units with IDC-type connectors at each jack location for permanent termination of pair groups of installed cables.
 - 1. Features:
 - a. Universal T568A and T568B wiring labels.

- b. Labeling areas adjacent to conductors.
 - c. Replaceable connectors.
 - d. 24 or 48 ports.
2. Construction: 16-gauge steel and mountable on 19-inch (483 mm) equipment racks.
 3. Number of Jacks per Field: One for each four-pair [cable indicated] [conductor group of indicated cables, plus spares and blank positions adequate to suit specified expansion criteria].
- H. Patch Cords: Factory-made, four-pair cables in [36-inch (900-mm)] [48-inch (1200-mm)] <Insert length>lengths; terminated with an eight-position modular plug at each end.
1. Patch cords shall have bend-relief-compliant boots and color-coded icons to ensure performance. Patch cords shall have latch guards to protect against snagging.
 2. Patch cords shall have color-coded boots for circuit identification.
- I. Plugs and Plug Assemblies:
1. Male; eight position; color-coded modular telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single four-pair 100-ohm unshielded or shielded balanced twisted pair cable.
 2. Comply with IEC 60603-7-1, IEC 60603-7-2, IEC 60603-7-3, IEC 60603-7-4, and IEC 60603-7.5.
 3. Marked to indicate transmission performance.
- J. Jacks and Jack Assemblies:
1. Female; eight position; modular; fixed telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single four-pair 100-ohm unshielded or shielded balanced twisted pair cable.
 2. Designed to snap-in to a patch panel or faceplate.
 3. Standards:
 - a. Category 5e, unshielded balanced twisted pair cable shall comply with IEC 60603-7-2.
 - b. Category 5e, shielded balanced twisted pair cable shall comply with IEC 60603-7-3.
 - c. Category 6, unshielded balanced twisted pair cable shall comply with IEC 60603-7-4.
 - d. Category 6, shielded balanced twisted pair cable shall comply with IEC 60603-7.5.
 - e. Category 6a, unshielded balanced twisted pair cable shall comply with IEC 60603-7-41.
 - f. Category 6a, shielded balanced twisted pair cable shall comply with IEC 60603-7.51.
 4. Marked to indicate transmission performance.
- K. Faceplate:
1. [Two][Four] [Six] port, vertical single-gang faceplates designed to mount to single-gang wall boxes.

2. **[Eight] [Ten] [Twelve]** port, vertical double-gang faceplates designed to mount to double-gang wall boxes.
3. Plastic Faceplate: High-impact plastic. Coordinate color with Section 262726 "Wiring Devices."
4. Metal Faceplate: **[Stainless steel] [Brass]** <Insert description>, complying with requirements in Section 262726 "Wiring Devices."
5. For use with snap-in jacks accommodating any combination of balanced twisted pair, optical fiber, and coaxial work area cords.
 - a. Flush mounting jacks, positioning the cord at a 45-degree angle.

L. Legend:

1. Machine printed, in the field, using adhesive-tape label.
2. Snap-in, clear-label covers and machine-printed paper inserts.

2.7 TWIN-AXIAL DATA HIGHWAY CABLE

A. Standard Cable: NFPA 70, Type CM.

1. Paired, <Insert number> pairs, **[No. 20] [No. 22] [No. 24]** AWG, stranded **[(7x28)] [(7x30)] [(7x32)]** tinned-copper conductors.
2. Polypropylene insulation.
3. Individual aluminum foil-polyester tape shielded pairs with 100 percent shield coverage.
4. PVC jacket.
5. Pairs are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned-copper drain wire.
6. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1685.
7. [<Double click to insert sustainable design text for lead content.>](#)

B. Plenum-Rated Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.

1. Paired, <Insert number> pairs, **[No. 20] [No. 22] [No. 24]** AWG, stranded **[(7x28)] [(7x30)] [(7x32)]** tinned-copper conductors.
2. Plastic insulation.
3. Individual aluminum foil-polyester tape shielded pairs with 100 percent shield coverage.
4. Plastic jacket.
5. Pairs are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned-copper drain wire.
6. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.
7. [<Double click to insert sustainable design text for lead content.>](#)

2.8 RS-485 CABLE

A. Standard Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMG.

1. Paired, **[one pair] [two pairs]**, twisted, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned-copper conductors.
2. PVC insulation.

3. Unshielded.
4. PVC jacket.
5. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1685.
6. [<Double click to insert sustainable design text for lead content.>](#)

B. Plenum-Rated Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.

1. Paired, [**one pair**] [**two pairs**], No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned-copper conductors.
2. Fluorinated ethylene propylene insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. Fluorinated ethylene propylene jacket.
5. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262.
6. [<Double click to insert sustainable design text for lead content.>](#)

2.9 LOW-VOLTAGE CONTROL CABLE

A. Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMG.

1. [**One**] [**Multi-**]pair, twisted, [**No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29)**] [**No. 18 AWG, stranded (19x30)**] tinned-copper conductors.
2. PVC insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. PVC jacket.
5. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1685.
6. [<Double click to insert sustainable design text for lead content.>](#)

B. Plenum-Rated, Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.

1. [**One**] [**Multi-**]pair, twisted, [**No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29)**] [**No. 18 AWG, stranded (19x30)**] tinned-copper conductors.
2. PVC insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. PVC jacket.
5. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.
6. [<Double click to insert sustainable design text for lead content.>](#)

2.10 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

B. Class 1 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, [**Type THHN/THWN-2, complying with UL 83 in raceway**] [**Type THW, complying with UL 83 in raceway**] [**Type XHHW-2, complying with UL 44 in raceway**] [**Type TC, complying with UL 1277 in raceway**] [**Type MC, complying with UL 1569**].

C. Class 2 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, [**Type THHN/THWN-2, complying with UL 83 in raceway**] [**Type XHHW-2, complying with UL 44 in raceway**] [**power-limited cable, concealed in building finishes**] [**power-limited tray cable, in cable tray**].

- D. Class 3 Remote-Control and Signal Circuits: Stranded copper, [Type THHN/THWN-2, complying with UL 83 in raceway] [Type XHHW-2, complying with UL 44 in raceway] [power-limited cable, concealed in building finishes] [power-limited tray cable, in cable tray] [Type TW or Type TF, complying with UL 83, in raceway].
- E. Class 2 Control Circuits and Class 3 Remote-Control and Signal Circuits That Supply Critical Circuits: Circuit Integrity (CI) cable.
 - 1. Smoke control signaling and control circuits.
 - 2. <Insert list of critical circuits that require CI cable>.

2.11 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: [Owner will engage] [Engage] a qualified testing agency to evaluate cables.
- B. Factory test twisted pair cables according to TIA-568-C.2.
- C. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Test cables on receipt at Project site.
 - 1. Test each pair of twisted pair cable for open and short circuits.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF RACEWAYS AND BOXES

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for raceway selection and installation requirements for boxes, conduits, and wireways as supplemented or modified in this Section.
 - 1. Outlet boxes shall be no smaller than 2 inches (50 mm) wide, 3 inches (75 mm) high, and 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) deep.
 - 2. Outlet boxes for cables shall be no smaller than 4 inches (102 mm) square by [1-1/2 inches (38 mm)] [2-1/8 inches (53 mm)] deep with extension ring sized to bring edge of ring to within 1/8 inch (3.1 mm) of the finished wall surface.
 - 3. Flexible metal conduit shall not be used.
- B. Comply with TIA-569-D for pull-box sizing and length of conduit and number of bends between pull points.
- C. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows if possible.
- D. Raceway Installation in Equipment Rooms:

1. Position conduit ends adjacent to a corner on backboard if a single piece of plywood is installed, or in the corner of the room if multiple sheets of plywood are installed around perimeter walls of the room.
 2. Install cable trays to route cables if conduits cannot be located in these positions.
 3. Secure conduits to backboard if entering the room from overhead.
 4. Extend conduits [**3 inches (75 mm)**] <Insert dimension> above finished floor.
 5. Install metal conduits with grounding bushings and connect with grounding conductor to grounding system.
- E. Backboards: Install backboards with **96-inch (2440-mm)** dimension vertical. Butt adjacent sheets tightly and form smooth gap-free corners and joints.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. General Requirements for Cabling:
1. Comply with TIA-568-C Series of standards.
 2. Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems."
 3. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, and cross-connect and patch panels.
 4. Cables may not be spliced and shall be continuous from terminal to terminal. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points.
 5. Cables serving a common system may be grouped in a common raceway. Install network cabling and control wiring and cable in separate raceway from power wiring. Do not group conductors from different systems or different voltages.
 6. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding **30 inches (760 mm)** and not more than **6 inches (150 mm)** from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
 7. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems." Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
 8. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
 9. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Do not use heat lamps for heating.
 10. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems." Monitor cable pull tensions.
 11. Support: Do not allow cables to lie on removable ceiling tiles.
 12. Secure: Fasten securely in place with hardware specifically designed and installed so as to not damage cables.
 13. Provide strain relief.
 14. Keep runs short. Allow extra length for connecting to terminals. Do not bend cables in a radius less than 10 times the cable OD. Use sleeves or grommets to protect cables from vibration at points where they pass around sharp corners and through penetrations.
 15. Ground wire shall be copper, and grounding methods shall comply with IEEE C2. Demonstrate ground resistance.
- C. Balanced Twisted Pair Cable Installation:

1. Comply with TIA-568-C.2.
2. Install termination hardware as specified in Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling" unless otherwise indicated.
3. Do not untwist balanced twisted pair cables more than **1/2 inch (12 mm)** at the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.

D. Installation of Control-Circuit Conductors:

1. Install wiring in raceways.
2. Use insulated spade lugs for wire and cable connection to screw terminals.
3. Comply with requirements specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

E. Open-Cable Installation:

1. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
2. Suspend copper cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of **8 inches (200 mm)** above ceilings by cable supports not more than [**30 inches (760 mm)**] **<Insert dimension>** apart.
3. Cable shall not be run through or on structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items. Do not run cables between structural members and corrugated panels.

F. Installation of Cable Routed Exposed under Raised Floors:

1. Install plenum-rated cable only.
2. Install cabling after the flooring system has been installed in raised floor areas.
3. Below each feed point, neatly coil a minimum of [**72 inches (1830 mm)**] **<Insert dimension>** of cable in a coil not less than [**12 inches (305 mm)**] **<Insert dimension>** in diameter.

G. Separation from EMI Sources:

1. Comply with BICSI TDMM and TIA-569-D recommendations for separating unshielded copper voice and data communications cable from potential EMI sources including electrical power lines and equipment.
2. Separation between open communications cables or cables in nonmetallic raceways and unshielded power conductors and electrical equipment shall be as follows:
 - a. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of **5 inches (127 mm)**.
 - b. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of **12 inches (305 mm)**.
 - c. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of **24 inches (600 mm)**.
3. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and unshielded power lines or electrical equipment shall be as follows:

- a. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of **2-1/2 inches (64 mm)**.
 - b. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of **6 inches (150 mm)**.
 - c. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of **12 inches (305 mm)**.
4. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and power lines and electrical equipment located in grounded metallic conduits or enclosures shall be as follows:
- a. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating Less Than 2 kVA: No requirement.
 - b. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of **3 inches (75 mm)**.
 - c. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of **6 inches (150 mm)**.
5. Separation between Communications Cables and Electrical Motors and Transformers, 5 kVA or 5 HP and Larger: A minimum of **48 inches (1200 mm)**.
6. Separation between Communications Cables and Fluorescent Fixtures: A minimum of **5 inches (127 mm)**.

3.4 REMOVAL OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Remove abandoned conductors and cables. Abandoned conductors and cables are those installed that are not terminated at equipment and are not identified with a tag for future use.

3.5 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

- A. Minimum Conductor Sizes:
 1. Class 1 remote-control and signal circuits; [**No 14**] <Insert wire size> AWG.
 2. Class 2 low-energy, remote-control, and signal circuits; [**No. 16**] <Insert wire size> AWG.
 3. Class 3 low-energy, remote-control, alarm, and signal circuits; [**No 12**] <Insert wire size> AWG.

3.6 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- B. Comply with TIA-569-D, Annex A, "Firestopping."
- C. Comply with BICSI TDMM, "Firestopping" Chapter.

3.7 GROUNDING

- A. For data communication wiring, comply with TIA-607-B and with BICSI TDMM, "Bonding and Grounding (Earthing)" Chapter.
- B. For low-voltage control wiring and cabling, comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify data and communications system components, wiring, and cabling according to TIA-606-B; label printers shall use label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks complying with UL 969.
- C. Identify each wire on each end and at each terminal with a number-coded identification tag. Each wire shall have a unique tag.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- D. Perform tests and inspections[**with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative**].
- E. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Visually inspect cable jacket materials for UL or third-party certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations to confirm color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections to confirm compliance with TIA-568-C.1.
 - 2. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
 - 3. Test cabling for direct-current loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination, but not after cross-connection.
 - a. Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA-568-C.2. Perform tests with a tester that complies with performance requirements in its "Test Instruments (Normative)" Annex, complying with measurement accuracy specified in its "Measurement Accuracy (Informative)" Annex. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.

- F. Document data for each measurement. Print data for submittals in a summary report that is formatted using Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM as a guide, or transfer the data from the instrument to the computer, save as text files, print, and submit.
- G. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- H. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 260523

SECTION 260526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment.
- B. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment, plus the following special applications:
 - 1. Underground distribution grounding.
 - 2. Foundation steel electrodes.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
 - 1. [<Double click to insert sustainable design text for lead content.>](#)

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans showing dimensioned locations of grounding features specified in "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:
 - 1. Ground rods.
 - 2. Ground rings.
 - 3. Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing agency and testing agency's field supervisor.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For grounding to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
 - 1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

- a. Plans showing as-built, dimensioned locations of grounding features specified in "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:
 - 1) Ground rods.
 - 2) Ground rings.
 - 3) Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.
- b. Instructions for periodic testing and inspection of grounding features at **ground rings** and **grounding connections for separately derived systems** based on **NFPA 70B**.
 - 1) Tests shall determine if ground-resistance or impedance values remain within specified maximums, and instructions shall recommend corrective action if values do not.
 - 2) Include recommended testing intervals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Certified by NETA.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.2 MANUFACTURERS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

2.3 CONDUCTORS

- A. Insulated Conductors: **Copper or tinned-copper** wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Bare Copper Conductors:
 - 1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
 - 2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
 - 3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
 - 4. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, **1/4 inch (6 mm)** in diameter.
 - 5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
 - 6. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; **1-5/8 inches (41 mm)** wide and **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** thick.

7. Tinned Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; **1-5/8 inches (41 mm)** wide and **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** thick.
- C. Grounding Bus: Predrilled rectangular bars of annealed copper, **1/4 by 4 inches (6.3 by 100 mm)** in cross section, with **9/32-inch (7.14-mm)** holes spaced **1-1/8 inches (28 mm)** apart. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall comply with UL 891 for use in switchboards, 600 V and shall be Lexan or PVC, impulse tested at 5000 V.

2.4 CONNECTORS

- A. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.
- B. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.
- C. Bus-Bar Connectors: Mechanical type, cast silicon bronze, solderless **compression**-type wire terminals, and long-barrel, two-bolt connection to ground bus bar.
- D. Bus-Bar Connectors: Compression type, copper or copper alloy, with two wire terminals.
- E. Beam Clamps: Mechanical type, terminal, ground wire access from four directions, with dual, tin-plated or silicon bronze bolts.
- F. Cable-to-Cable Connectors: Compression type, copper or copper alloy.
- G. Cable Tray Ground Clamp: Mechanical type, zinc-plated malleable iron.
- H. Conduit Hubs: Mechanical type, terminal with threaded hub.
- I. Ground Rod Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal with **hex head bolt or socket set screw**.
- J. Ground Rod Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal with hex head bolt.
- K. Lay-in Lug Connector: Mechanical type, **copper rated for direct burial** terminal with set screw.
- L. Service Post Connectors: Mechanical type, bronze alloy terminal, in short- and long-stud lengths, capable of single and double conductor connections.
- M. Signal Reference Grid Clamp: Mechanical type, stamped-steel terminal with hex head screw.
- N. Straps: Solid copper, **copper lugs**. Rated for 600 A.
- O. Tower Ground Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal **two-piece** clamp.
- P. U-Bolt Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal listed for direct burial.
- Q. Water Pipe Clamps:

1. Mechanical type, two pieces with **zinc-plated** bolts.
 - a. Material: **Tin-plated aluminum Die-cast zinc alloy.**
 - b. Listed for direct burial.
2. U-bolt type with malleable-iron clamp and **copper ground connector or copper ground connector rated for direct burial.**

2.5 GROUNDING ELECTRODES

- A. Ground Rods: **Copper-clad** steel; **3/4 inch by 10 feet (19 mm by 3 m).**

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATIONS

- A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for **No. 8** AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for **No. 6** AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install bare **tinned-copper** conductor, **No. 2/0** AWG minimum.
 1. Bury at least **24 inches (600 mm)** below grade.
 2. Duct-Bank Grounding Conductor: Bury **12 inches (300 mm)** above duct bank when indicated as part of duct-bank installation.
- C. Isolated Grounding Conductors: Green-colored insulation with continuous yellow stripe. On feeders with isolated ground, identify grounding conductor where visible to normal inspection, with alternating bands of green and yellow tape, with at least three bands of green and two bands of yellow.
- D. Grounding Bus: Install in electrical equipment rooms, in rooms housing service equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
 1. Install bus horizontally, on insulated spacers **2 inches (50 mm)** minimum from wall, **6 inches (150 mm)** above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Where indicated on both sides of doorways, route bus up to top of door frame, across top of doorway, and down; connect to horizontal bus.
- E. Conductor Terminations and Connections:
 1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
 2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
 3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
 4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

3.2 GROUNDING AT THE SERVICE

- A. Equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors shall be connected to the ground bus. Install a main bonding jumper between the neutral and ground buses.

3.3 GROUNDING SEPARATELY DERIVED SYSTEMS

- A. Generator: Install grounding electrode(s) at the generator location. The electrode shall be connected to the equipment grounding conductor and to the frame of the generator.

3.4 GROUNDING UNDERGROUND DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with IEEE C2 grounding requirements.
- B. Pad-Mounted Transformers and Switches: Install two ground rods and ground ring around the pad. Ground pad-mounted equipment and noncurrent-carrying metal items associated with substations by connecting them to underground cable and grounding electrodes. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 2 AWG for ground ring and for taps to equipment grounding terminals. Bury ground ring not less than **6 inches (150 mm)** from the foundation.

3.5 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

- A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits.
- B. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with the following items, in addition to those required by NFPA 70:
 - 1. Feeders and branch circuits.
 - 2. Lighting circuits.
 - 3. Receptacle circuits.
 - 4. Single-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
 - 5. Three-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
 - 6. Flexible raceway runs.
 - 7. Metal-clad cable runs.
- C. Water Heater, Heat-Tracing, and Antifrost Heating Cables: Install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor to each electric water heater and heat-tracing cable. Bond conductor to heater units, piping, connected equipment, and components.
- D. Isolated Grounding Receptacle Circuits: Install an insulated equipment grounding conductor connected to the receptacle grounding terminal. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Isolated Equipment Enclosure Circuits: For designated equipment supplied by a branch circuit or feeder, isolate equipment enclosure from supply circuit raceway with a nonmetallic raceway fitting listed for the purpose. Install fitting where raceway enters enclosure, and install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor. Isolate conductor from raceway and from

panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service unless otherwise indicated.

- F. Poles Supporting Outdoor Lighting Fixtures: Install grounding electrode and a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor in addition to grounding conductor installed with branch-circuit conductors.

3.6 INSTALLATION

- A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.
- B. Ground Rods: Drive rods until tops are **2 inches (50 mm)** below finished floor or final grade unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductor below grade and as otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging coating if any.
 - 2. Use exothermic welds for all below-grade connections.
 - 3. For grounding electrode system, install at least two rods spaced at least one-rod length from each other and located at least the same distance from other grounding electrodes, and connect to the service grounding electrode conductor.
- C. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance except where routed through short lengths of conduit.
 - 1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
 - 2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install bonding so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
 - 3. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations; if a disconnect-type connection is required, use a bolted clamp.
- D. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:
 - 1. Metal Water Service Pipe: Install insulated copper grounding conductors, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes; use a bolted clamp connector or bolt a lug-type connector to a pipe flange by using one of the lug bolts of the flange. Where a dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect grounding conductor on street side of fitting. Bond metal grounding conductor conduit or sleeve to conductor at each end.
 - 2. Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water meters. Connect to pipe with a bolted connector.
 - 3. Bond each aboveground portion of gas piping system downstream from equipment shutoff valve.

- E. Bonding Interior Metal Ducts: Bond metal air ducts to equipment grounding conductors of associated fans, blowers, electric heaters, and air cleaners. Install **tinned** bonding jumper to bond across flexible duct connections to achieve continuity.
- F. Grounding for Steel Building Structure: Install a driven ground rod at base of each corner column and at intermediate exterior columns at distances not more than **60 feet (18 m)** apart.
- G. Ground Ring: Install a grounding conductor, electrically connected to each building structure ground rod and to each, extending around the perimeter of **area or item indicated**.
 - 1. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than **No. 2/0** AWG for ground ring and for taps to building steel.
 - 2. Bury ground ring not less than **24 inches (600 mm)** from building's foundation.
- H. Concrete-Encased Grounding Electrode (Ufer Ground): Fabricate according to NFPA 70; use a minimum of **20 feet (6 m)** of bare copper conductor not smaller than **No. 4** AWG.
 - 1. If concrete foundation is less than **20 feet (6 m)** long, coil excess conductor within base of foundation.
 - 2. Bond grounding conductor to reinforcing steel in at least four locations and to anchor bolts. Extend grounding conductor below grade and connect to building's grounding grid or to grounding electrode external to concrete.
- I. Connections: Make connections so possibility of galvanic action or electrolysis is minimized. Select connectors, connection hardware, conductors, and connection methods so metals in direct contact are galvanically compatible.
 - 1. Use electroplated or hot-tin-coated materials to ensure high conductivity and to make contact points closer in order of galvanic series.
 - 2. Make connections with clean, bare metal at points of contact.
 - 3. Make aluminum-to-steel connections with stainless-steel separators and mechanical clamps.
 - 4. Make aluminum-to-galvanized-steel connections with tin-plated copper jumpers and mechanical clamps.
 - 5. Coat and seal connections having dissimilar metals with inert material to prevent future penetration of moisture to contact surfaces.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.

2. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 3. Test completed grounding system at each location where a maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal **and at individual ground rods**. Make tests at ground rods before any conductors are connected.
 - a. Measure ground resistance no fewer than two full days after last trace of precipitation and without soil being moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance.
 - b. Perform tests by fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81.
 4. Prepare dimensioned Drawings locating each ground rod and ground-rod assembly, and other grounding electrodes. Identify each by letter in alphabetical order, and key to the record of tests and observations. Include the number of rods driven and their depth at each location, and include observations of weather and other phenomena that may affect test results. Describe measures taken to improve test results.
- D. Grounding system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- F. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:
1. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 kVA and Less: **10** ohms.
 2. Power Distribution Units or Panelboards Serving Electronic Equipment: **3** ohm(s).
 3. Pad-Mounted Equipment: **5** ohms.
- G. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

END OF SECTION 260526

SECTION 260529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Steel slotted support systems.
2. Conduit and cable support devices.
3. Structural steel for fabricated supports and restraints.
4. Mounting, anchoring, and attachment components, including powder-actuated fasteners, mechanical expansion anchors, concrete inserts, clamps, through bolts, toggle bolts, and hanger rods.
5. Fabricated metal equipment support assemblies.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems" for products and installation requirements necessary for compliance with seismic criteria.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for the following:
 - a. Slotted support systems, hardware, and accessories.
 - b. Clamps.
 - c. Hangers.
 - d. Sockets.
 - e. Eye nuts.
 - f. Fasteners.
 - g. Anchors.
 - h. Saddles.
 - i. Brackets.
2. Include rated capacities and furnished specialties and accessories.

- B. Shop Drawings: For fabrication and installation details for electrical hangers and support systems.

1. Hangers. Include product data for components.
2. Slotted support systems.
3. Equipment supports.
4. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic Performance: Hangers and supports shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to **ASCE/SEI 7**.

1. The term "withstand" means "the supported equipment and systems will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
2. Component Importance Factor: **1.0**.

B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Flame Rating: Class 1.
2. Self-extinguishing according to ASTM D 635.

2.2 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Preformed steel channels and angles with minimum **13/32-inch- (10-mm-)** diameter holes at a maximum of **8 inches (200 mm)** o.c. in at least one surface.

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
3. Material for Channel, Fittings, and Accessories: **Galvanized steel, Plain steel or Stainless steel, Type 304 as appropriate.**
4. Channel Width: **1-5/8 inches (41.25 mm).**
5. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
6. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
7. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

- B. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: **Steel and malleable-iron** hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.
- C. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A 36/A 36M steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- D. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:
 - 1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - 2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, **zinc-coated** steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - 3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units are similar to MSS Type 18 units and comply with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
 - 4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58 units are suitable for attached structural element.
 - 5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM A 325.
 - 6. Toggle Bolts: **All**-steel springhead type.
 - 7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

2.3 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

- A. Description: Welded or bolted structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.
- B. Materials: Comply with requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and plates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with the following standards for application and installation requirements of hangers and supports, except where requirements on Drawings or in this Section are stricter:
 - 1. NECA 1.
 - 2. NECA 101
 - 3. NECA 102.
 - 4. NECA 105.
 - 5. NECA 111.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.

- C. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- D. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceways: Space supports for EMT, IMC, and RMC as **required by NFPA 70**. Minimum rod size shall be **1/4 inch (6 mm)** in diameter.
- E. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted **or other** support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least **25** percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.
 - 1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with **two-bolt conduit clamps, single-bolt conduit clamps or single-bolt conduit clamps using spring friction action for retention in support channel**.
- F. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for **1-1/2-inch (38-mm)** and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings, and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.

3.2 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this article.
- B. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA 1, **EMT, IMC and RMC** may be supported by openings through structure members, according to NFPA 70.
- C. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus **200 lb (90 kg)**.
- D. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:
 - 1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
 - 2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
 - 3. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
 - 4. To Existing Concrete: Expansion anchor fasteners.
 - 5. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated driven threaded studs provided with lock washers and nuts may be used in existing standard-weight concrete **4 inches (100 mm)** thick or greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than **4 inches (100 mm)** thick.
 - 6. To Steel: **Welded threaded studs complying with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, with lock washers and nuts, Beam clamps (MSS SP-58, Type 19, 21, 23, 25, or 27), complying with MSS SP-69, or Spring-tension clamps**.
 - 7. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.

8. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate.
- E. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid the need for reinforcing bars.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with installation requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated metal supports.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

3.4 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than **4 inches (100 mm)** larger in both directions than supported unit, and so anchors will be a minimum of 10 bolt diameters from edge of the base.
- B. Use **3000-psi (20.7-MPa)**, 28-day compressive-strength concrete. Concrete materials, reinforcement, and placement requirements are specified in **Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."**
- C. Anchor equipment to concrete base as follows:
 1. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 2. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 3. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of **2.0 mils (0.05 mm)**.
- B. Touchup: Comply with requirements in **Section 099113 "Exterior Painting"**, **Section 099123 "Interior Painting"** and **Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings"** for cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal.

- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 260529

SECTION 260533 - RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

TIPS:

To view non-printing **Editor's Notes** that provide guidance for editing, click on Masterworks/Single-File Formatting/Toggle/Editor's Notes.

To read **detailed research, technical information about products and materials, and coordination checklists**, click on Masterworks/Supporting Information.

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal conduits and fittings.
2. Nonmetallic conduits and fittings.
3. Metal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
4. Nonmetal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
5. Surface raceways.
6. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.
7. Handholes and boxes for exterior underground cabling.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping at conduit and box entrances.
2. Section 260543 "Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems" for exterior ductbanks, manholes, and underground utility construction.
3. Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems" for conduits, wireways, surface pathways, innerduct, boxes, faceplate adapters, enclosures, cabinets, and handholes serving communications systems.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ARC: Aluminum rigid conduit.
- B. GRC: Galvanized rigid steel conduit.
- C. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For surface raceways, wireways and fittings, floor boxes, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
 - 1. [<Double click to insert sustainable design text for solvents and adhesives.>](#)
- C. Shop Drawings: For custom enclosures and cabinets. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
- D. Samples: For [wireways] [nonmetallic wireways] [and] [surface raceways] and for each color and texture specified, [12 inches (300 mm)] <Insert dimension> long.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Conduit routing plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of items involved:
 - 1. Structural members in paths of conduit groups with common supports.
 - 2. HVAC and plumbing items and architectural features in paths of conduit groups with common supports.
- B. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.
- C. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for enclosures, cabinets, and conduit racks and their mounting provisions, including those for internal components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
 - 4. Detailed description of conduit support devices and interconnections on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- D. Source quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

- A. Metal Conduit:
 - 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
 - 2. Listing and Labeling: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

3. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.
4. ARC: Comply with ANSI C80.5 and UL 6A.
5. IMC: Comply with ANSI C80.6 and UL 1242.
6. PVC-Coated Steel Conduit: PVC-coated [**rigid steel conduit**] [**IMC**].
 - a. Comply with NEMA RN 1.
 - b. Coating Thickness: **0.040 inch (1 mm)**, minimum.
7. EMT: Comply with ANSI C80.3 and UL 797.
8. FMC: Comply with UL 1; [**zinc-coated steel**] [**or**] [**aluminum**].
9. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket and complying with UL 360.

B. Metal Fittings:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 514B.
3. Listing and Labeling: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
4. Fittings, General: Listed and labeled for type of conduit, location, and use.
5. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with UL 1203 and NFPA 70.
6. Fittings for EMT:
 - a. Material: [**Steel**] [**or**] [**die cast**].
 - b. Type: [**Setscrew**] [**or**] [**compression**].
7. Expansion Fittings: PVC or steel to match conduit type, complying with UL 651, rated for environmental conditions where installed, and including flexible external bonding jumper.
8. Coating for Fittings for PVC-Coated Conduit: Minimum thickness of **0.040 inch (1 mm)**, with overlapping sleeves protecting threaded joints.

- C. Joint Compound for IMC, GRC, or ARC: Approved, as defined in NFPA 70, by authorities having jurisdiction for use in conduit assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded conduit joints from corrosion and to enhance their conductivity.

2.2 NONMETALLIC CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

A. Nonmetallic Conduit:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic conduit shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
3. Fiberglass:
 - a. Comply with NEMA TC 14.
 - b. Comply with UL 2515 for aboveground raceways.
 - c. Comply with UL 2420 for belowground raceways.

4. ENT: Comply with NEMA TC 13 and UL 1653.
5. RNC: [**Type EPC-40-PVC**] **<Insert type>**, complying with NEMA TC 2 and UL 651 unless otherwise indicated.
6. LFNC: Comply with UL 1660.
7. Rigid HDPE: Comply with UL 651A.
8. Continuous HDPE: Comply with UL 651A.
9. Coilable HDPE: Preassembled with conductors or cables, and complying with ASTM D 3485.
10. RTRC: Comply with UL 2515A and NEMA TC 14.

B. Nonmetallic Fittings:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Fittings, General: Listed and labeled for type of conduit, location, and use.
3. Fittings for ENT and RNC: Comply with NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or tubing type and material.
 - a. Fittings for LFNC: Comply with UL 514B.
4. Solvents and Adhesives: As recommended by conduit manufacturer.
5. [<Double click to insert sustainable design text for low emitting adhesives.>](#)

2.3 METAL WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Description: Sheet metal, complying with UL 870 and NEMA 250, [**Type 1**] [**Type 3R**] [**Type 4**] [**Type 12**] **<Insert type>** unless otherwise indicated, and sized according to NFPA 70.
1. Metal wireways installed outdoors shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Fittings and Accessories: Include covers, couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.
- D. Wireway Covers: [**Hinged type**] [**Screw-cover type**] [**Flanged-and-gasketed type**] unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

2.4 NONMETALLIC WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic wireways and auxiliary gutters shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

- C. Description: Fiberglass polyester, extruded and fabricated to required size and shape, without holes or knockouts. Cover shall be gasketed with oil-resistant gasket material and fastened with captive screws treated for corrosion resistance. Connections shall be flanged and have stainless-steel screws and oil-resistant gaskets.
- D. Description: PVC, extruded and fabricated to required size and shape, and having snap-on cover, mechanically coupled connections, and plastic fasteners.
- E. Fittings and Accessories: Couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings shall match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.
- F. Solvents and Adhesives: As recommended by conduit manufacturer.
 - 1. [<Double click to insert sustainable design text for solvents and adhesives.>](#)

2.5 SURFACE RACEWAYS

- A. Listing and Labeling: Surface raceways and tele-power poles shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Surface Metal Raceways: Galvanized steel with snap-on covers complying with UL 5. [**Manufacturer's standard enamel finish in color selected by Architect**] [**Prime coated, ready for field painting**].
 - 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- C. Surface Nonmetallic Raceways: Two- or three-piece construction, complying with UL 5A, and manufactured of rigid PVC with texture and color selected by Architect from [**manufacturer's standard**] [**custom**] colors. Product shall comply with UL 94 V-0 requirements for self-extinguishing characteristics.
 - 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- D. Tele-Power Poles:
 - 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
 - 2. Material: [**Galvanized steel with ivory baked-enamel finish**] [**Aluminum with clear anodized finish**].
 - 3. Fittings and Accessories: Dividers, end caps, covers, cutouts, wiring harnesses, devices, mounting materials, and other fittings shall match and mate with tele-power pole as required for complete system.

2.6 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets: Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets installed in wet locations shall be listed for use in wet locations.

- C. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.
- D. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, **[ferrous alloy]** **[aluminum]**, Type FD, with gasketed cover.
- E. Nonmetallic Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 2 and UL 514C.
- F. Metal Floor Boxes:
 - 1. Material: **[Cast metal]** **[or]** **[sheet metal]**.
 - 2. Type: **[Fully adjustable]** **[Semi-adjustable]**.
 - 3. Shape: Rectangular.
 - 4. Listing and Labeling: Metal floor boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- G. Nonmetallic Floor Boxes: Nonadjustable, **[round]** **[rectangular]**.
 - 1. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic floor boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- H. Luminaire Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of luminaire weighing **50 lb (23 kg)**. Outlet boxes designed for attachment of luminaires weighing more than **50 lb (23 kg)** shall be listed and marked for the maximum allowable weight.
- I. Paddle Fan Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of paddle fan weighing **70 lb (32 kg)**.
 - 1. Listing and Labeling: Paddle fan outlet boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- J. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- K. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 1773, **[cast aluminum]** **[galvanized, cast iron]** with gasketed cover.
- L. Box extensions used to accommodate new building finishes shall be of same material as recessed box.
- M. Device Box Dimensions: **[4 inches square by 2-1/8 inches deep (100 mm square by 60 mm deep)]** **[4 inches by 2-1/8 inches by 2-1/8 inches deep (100 mm by 60 mm by 60 mm deep)]**<Insert dimension>.
- N. Gangable boxes **[are allowed]** **[are prohibited]**.
- O. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: Comply with UL 50 and NEMA 250, **[Type 1]** **[Type 3R]** **[Type 4]** **[Type 12]** <Insert type> with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.

2. Nonmetallic Enclosures: **[Plastic]** **[Fiberglass]**.
3. Interior Panels: Steel; all sides finished with manufacturer's standard enamel.

P. Cabinets:

1. NEMA 250, **[Type 1]** **[Type 3R]** **[Type 12]** **<Insert type>** galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
3. Key latch to match panelboards.
4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.
6. Nonmetallic cabinets shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.7 HANDHOLES AND BOXES FOR EXTERIOR UNDERGROUND WIRING

A. General Requirements for Handholes and Boxes:

1. Boxes and handholes for use in underground systems shall be designed and identified as defined in NFPA 70, for intended location and application.
2. Boxes installed in wet areas shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Polymer-Concrete Handholes and Boxes with Polymer-Concrete Cover: Molded of sand and aggregate, bound together with polymer resin, and reinforced with steel, fiberglass, or a combination of the two.

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Standard: Comply with SCTE 77.
3. Configuration: Designed for flush burial with **[open]** **[closed]** **[integral closed]** bottom unless otherwise indicated.
4. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure and handhole location.
5. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
6. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, **["ELECTRIC."]** **<Insert legend>**.
7. Conduit Entrance Provisions: Conduit-terminating fittings shall mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
8. Handholes **[12 Inches Wide by 24 Inches Long (300 mm Wide by 600 mm Long)]** **<Insert dimensions>** and Larger: Have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons installed before concrete is poured.

C. Fiberglass Handholes and Boxes: Molded of fiberglass-reinforced polyester resin, with frame and covers of **[polymer concrete]** **[reinforced concrete]** **[cast iron]** **[hot-dip galvanized-steel diamond plate]** **[fiberglass]**.

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Standard: Comply with SCTE 77.
3. Color of Frame and Cover: **[Gray]** **[Green]**.

4. Configuration: Designed for flush burial with [**open**] [**closed**] [**integral closed**] bottom unless otherwise indicated.
5. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure and handhole location.
6. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
7. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, ["**ELECTRIC.**"] <Insert legend>.
8. Conduit Entrance Provisions: Conduit-terminating fittings shall mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
9. Handholes [**12 Inches Wide by 24 Inches Long (300 mm Wide by 600 mm Long)**] <Insert dimensions> and Larger: Have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons installed before concrete is poured.

2.8 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL FOR UNDERGROUND ENCLOSURES

- A. Handhole and Pull-Box Prototype Test: Test prototypes of handholes and boxes for compliance with SCTE 77. Strength tests shall be for specified tier ratings of products supplied.
 1. Tests of materials shall be performed by an independent testing agency.
 2. Strength tests of complete boxes and covers shall be by either an independent testing agency or manufacturer. A qualified registered professional engineer shall certify tests by manufacturer.
 3. Testing machine pressure gages shall have current calibration certification complying with ISO 9000 and ISO 10012 and traceable to NIST standards.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

- A. Outdoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Exposed Conduit: [**GRC**] [**IMC**] [**RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC**] [**RNC, Type EPC-80-PVC**].
 2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: [**GRC**] [**IMC**] [**EMT**] [**RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC**].
 3. Underground Conduit: RNC, [**Type EPC-40-PVC**] [**Type EPC-80-PVC**], [**direct buried**] [**concrete encased**].
 4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): [**LFMC**] [**LFNC**].
 5. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, [**Type 3R**] [**Type 4**].
- B. Indoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: [**EMT**] [**ENT**] [**or**] [**RNC**].
 2. Exposed, Not Subject to Severe Physical Damage: [**EMT**] [**RNC identified for such use**].
 3. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: [**GRC**] [**IMC**]. Raceway locations include the following:
 - a. Loading dock.

- b. Corridors used for traffic of mechanized carts, forklifts, and pallet-handling units.
 - c. Mechanical rooms.
 - d. Gymnasiums.
 - e. <Insert designations of applicable spaces or locations>.
4. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: [EMT] [ENT] [or] [RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC].
 5. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC, except use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
 6. Damp or Wet Locations: [GRC] [IMC].
 7. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, Type 4 [stainless steel] [nonmetallic] in institutional and commercial kitchens and damp or wet locations.
- C. Minimum Raceway Size: [1/2-inch (16-mm)] [3/4-inch (21-mm)] trade size.
- D. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.
1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
 2. PVC Externally Coated, Rigid Steel Conduits: Use only fittings listed for use with this type of conduit. Patch and seal all joints, nicks, and scrapes in PVC coating after installing conduits and fittings. Use sealant recommended by fitting manufacturer and apply in thickness and number of coats recommended by manufacturer.
 3. EMT: Use [setscrew] [or] [compression], [steel] [cast-metal] fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
 4. Flexible Conduit: Use only fittings listed for use with flexible conduit. Comply with NEMA FB 2.20.
- E. Install nonferrous conduit or tubing for circuits operating above 60 Hz. Where aluminum raceways are installed for such circuits and pass through concrete, install in nonmetallic sleeve.
- F. Do not install aluminum conduits, boxes, or fittings in contact with concrete or earth.
- G. Install surface raceways only where indicated on Drawings.
- H. Do not install nonmetallic conduit where ambient temperature exceeds [120 deg F (49 deg C)] <Insert temperature>.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for hangers and supports.
- B. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except where requirements on Drawings or in this article are stricter. Comply with NECA 102 for aluminum conduits. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of raceways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.

- C. Do not install raceways or electrical items on any "explosion-relief" walls or rotating equipment.
- D. Do not fasten conduits onto the bottom side of a metal deck roof.
- E. Keep raceways at least **6 inches (150 mm)** away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.
- F. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.
- G. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above finished slab.
- H. Install no more than the equivalent of three 90-degree bends in any conduit run except for control wiring conduits, for which fewer bends are allowed. Support within **12 inches (300 mm)** of changes in direction.
- I. Make bends in raceway using large-radius preformed ells. Field bending shall be according to NFPA 70 minimum radii requirements. Use only equipment specifically designed for material and size involved.
- J. Conceal conduit within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.
- K. Support conduit within **12 inches (300 mm)** of enclosures to which attached.
- L. Raceways Embedded in Slabs:
 - 1. Run conduit larger than **1-inch (27-mm)** trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support. Secure raceways to reinforcement at maximum **10-foot (3-m)** intervals.
 - 2. Arrange raceways to cross building expansion joints at right angles with expansion fittings.
 - 3. Arrange raceways to keep a minimum of [**1 inch (25 mm)**] [**2 inches (50 mm)**] <Insert **dimension**> of concrete cover in all directions.
 - 4. Do not embed threadless fittings in concrete unless specifically approved by Architect for each specific location.
 - 5. Change from ENT to [**RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC,**] [**GRC**] [**or**] [**IMC**] before rising above floor.
- M. Stub-Ups to Above Recessed Ceilings:
 - 1. Use EMT, IMC, or RMC for raceways.
 - 2. Use a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs or in an enclosure.
- N. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.
- O. Coat field-cut threads on PVC-coated raceway with a corrosion-preventing conductive compound prior to assembly.

- P. Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration: Use insulating bushings to protect conductors including conductors smaller than No. 4 AWG.
- Q. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install bushings on conduits up to **1-1/4-inch (35mm)** trade size and insulated throat metal bushings on **1-1/2-inch (41-mm)** trade size and larger conduits terminated with locknuts. Install insulated throat metal grounding bushings on service conduits.
- R. Install raceways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures with locknuts. Install locknuts hand tight plus 1/4 turn more.
- S. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in the locknut area prior to assembling conduit to enclosure to assure a continuous ground path.
- T. Cut conduit perpendicular to the length. For conduits **2-inch (53-mm)** trade size and larger, use roll cutter or a guide to make cut straight and perpendicular to the length.
- U. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than **200-lb (90-kg)** tensile strength. Leave at least **12 inches (300 mm)** of slack at each end of pull wire. Cap underground raceways designated as spare above grade alongside raceways in use.
- V. Surface Raceways:
1. Install surface raceway with a minimum **2-inch (50-mm)** radius control at bend points.
 2. Secure surface raceway with screws or other anchor-type devices at intervals not exceeding **48 inches (1200 mm)** and with no less than two supports per straight raceway section. Support surface raceway according to manufacturer's written instructions. Tape and glue are not acceptable support methods.
- W. Install raceway sealing fittings at accessible locations according to NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install raceway sealing fittings according to NFPA 70.
- X. Install devices to seal raceway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal the interior of all raceways at the following points:
1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
 2. Where an underground service raceway enters a building or structure.
 3. Conduit extending from interior to exterior of building.
 4. Conduit extending into pressurized duct and equipment.
 5. Conduit extending into pressurized zones that are automatically controlled to maintain different pressure set points.
 6. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.
- Y. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for solvent welding RNC and fittings.
- Z. Expansion-Joint Fittings:

1. Install in each run of aboveground RNC that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed **30 deg F (17 deg C)** and that has straight-run length that exceeds **25 feet (7.6 m)**. Install in each run of aboveground RMC[**and EMT**] conduit that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed **100 deg F (55 deg C)** and that has straight-run length that exceeds **100 feet (30 m)**.
 2. Install type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for each of the following locations:
 - a. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: [**125 deg F (70 deg C)**] **<Insert temperature>** temperature change.
 - b. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: [**155 deg F (86 deg C)**] **<Insert temperature>** temperature change.
 - c. Indoor Spaces Connected with Outdoors without Physical Separation: [**125 deg F (70 deg C)**] **<Insert temperature>** temperature change.
 - d. Attics: [**135 deg F (75 deg C)**] **<Insert temperature>** temperature change.
 - e. **<Insert location and corresponding temperature change>**.
 3. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least **0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F (0.06 mm per meter of length of straight run per deg C)** of temperature change for PVC conduits. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least **0.000078 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F (0.0115 mm per meter of length of straight run per deg C)** of temperature change for metal conduits.
 4. Install expansion fittings at all locations where conduits cross building or structure expansion joints.
 5. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at time of installation. Install conduit supports to allow for expansion movement.
- AA. Flexible Conduit Connections: Comply with NEMA RV 3. Use a maximum of [**36 inches (915 mm)**] [**72 inches (1830 mm)**] of flexible conduit for [**recessed and semirecessed luminaires,**] equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.
1. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations subject to severe physical damage.
 2. Use LFMC or LFNC in damp or wet locations not subject to severe physical damage.
- BB. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to [**center**] [**top**] [**bottom**] of box unless otherwise indicated.
- CC. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall. Prepare block surfaces to provide a flat surface for a raintight connection between box and cover plate or supported equipment and box.
- DD. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls so they are not in the same vertical channel.
- EE. Locate boxes so that cover or plate will not span different building finishes.

- FF. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for the purpose.
- GG. Fasten junction and pull boxes to or support from building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.
- HH. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.
- II. Set nonmetallic floor boxes level. Trim after installation to fit flush with finished floor surface.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND CONDUIT

A. Direct-Buried Conduit:

1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for conduit. Prepare trench bottom as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for pipe less than **6 inches (150 mm)** in nominal diameter.
2. Install backfill as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
3. After installing conduit, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point, and work toward end of conduit run, leaving conduit at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Firmly hand tamp backfill around conduit to provide maximum supporting strength. After placing controlled backfill to within **12 inches (300 mm)** of finished grade, make final conduit connection at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
4. Install manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor unless otherwise indicated. Encase elbows for stub-up ducts throughout length of elbow.
5. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor.
 - a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with **3 inches (75 mm)** of concrete for a minimum of **12 inches (300 mm)** on each side of the coupling.
 - b. For stub-ups at equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases and where conduits penetrate building foundations, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of **60 inches (1500 mm)** from edge of foundation or equipment base. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
6. Warning Planks: Bury warning planks approximately **12 inches (300 mm)** above direct-buried conduits but a minimum of **6 inches (150 mm)** below grade. Align planks along centerline of conduit.
7. Underground Warning Tape: Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.4 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND HANDHOLES AND BOXES

- A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting conduits to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.

- B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from **1/2-inch (12.5-mm)** sieve to **No. 4 (4.75-mm)** sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.
- C. Elevation: In paved areas, set so cover surface will be flush with finished grade. Set covers of other enclosures **1 inch (25 mm)** above finished grade.
- D. Install handholes with bottom below frost line, **<Insert depth of frost line below grade at Project site>** below grade.
- E. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in enclosure.
- F. Field-cut openings for conduits according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.

3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

3.6 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Install firestopping at penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage and deterioration.
 - 1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
 - 2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 260533

SECTION 260544 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRICAL RACEWAYS AND CABLING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves for raceway and cable penetration of non-fire-rated construction walls and floors.
2. Sleeve-seal systems.
3. Sleeve-seal fittings.
4. Grout.
5. Silicone sealants.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for penetration firestopping installed in fire-resistance-rated walls, horizontal assemblies, and smoke barriers, with and without penetrating items.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Wall Sleeves:

1. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, plain ends.
2. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies: Galvanized-steel sheet; **0.0239-inch (0.6-mm)** minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint, with tabs for screw-fastening the sleeve to the board.

- C. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- D. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- E. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- F. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings:
 - 1. Material: Galvanized sheet steel.
 - 2. Minimum Metal Thickness:
 - a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than **50 inches (1270 mm)** and with no side larger than **16 inches (400 mm)**, thickness shall be **0.052 inch (1.3 mm)**.
 - b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter **50 inches (1270 mm)** or more and one or more sides larger than **16 inches (400 mm)**, thickness shall be **0.138 inch (3.5 mm)**.

2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.
 - 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
 - 2. Sealing Elements: **EPDM or Nitrile (Buna N)** rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
 - 3. Pressure Plates: **Carbon steel**.
 - 4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: **Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating**, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for embedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit shall have plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.
 - 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

2.4 GROUT

- A. Description: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
- B. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- C. Design Mix: **5000-psi (34.5-MPa)**, 28-day compressive strength.

- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.5 SILICONE SEALANTS

- A. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants of grade indicated below.
 - 1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.
- B. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR NON-FIRE-RATED ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Comply with NEMA VE 2 for cable tray and cable penetrations.
- C. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Above-Grade Non-Fire-Rated Concrete and Masonry-Unit Floors and Walls:
 - 1. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors:
 - a. Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
 - b. Seal space outside of sleeves with mortar or grout. Pack sealing material solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect material while curing.
 - 2. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
 - 3. Size pipe sleeves to provide **1/4-inch (6.4-mm)** annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable unless sleeve seal is to be installed.
 - 4. Install sleeves for wall penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of walls. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls. Deburr after cutting.
 - 5. Install sleeves for floor penetrations. Extend sleeves installed in floors **2 inches (50 mm)** above finished floor level. Install sleeves during erection of floors.
- D. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies:
 - 1. Use circular metal sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
 - 2. Seal space outside of sleeves with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies.

- E. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
- F. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using **steel or cast-iron** pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for **1-inch (25-mm)** annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- G. Underground, Exterior-Wall and Floor Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for **1-inch (25-mm)** annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at raceway entries into building.
- B. Install type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

END OF SECTION 260544

SECTION 260548.16 - SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Restraint channel bracings.
2. Restraint cables.
3. Seismic-restraint accessories.
4. Mechanical anchor bolts.
5. Adhesive anchor bolts.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for commonly used electrical supports and installation requirements.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of seismic-restraint component used.
 - a. Tabulate types and sizes of seismic restraints, complete with report numbers and rated strength in tension and shear as evaluated by **an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.**
 - b. Annotate to indicate application of each product submitted and compliance with requirements.

- B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each seismic-restraint device.

1. Include design calculations and details for selecting seismic restraints complying with performance requirements, design criteria, and analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
2. Design Calculations: Calculate static and dynamic loading caused by equipment weight, operation, and seismic forces required to select seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.

- a. Coordinate design calculations with wind load calculations required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.
3. Seismic-Restraint Details:
- a. Design Analysis: To support selection and arrangement of seismic restraints. Include calculations of combined tensile and shear loads.
 - b. Details: Indicate fabrication and arrangement. Detail attachments of restraints to the restrained items and to the structure. Show attachment locations, methods, and spacings. Identify components, list their strengths, and indicate directions and values of forces transmitted to the structure during seismic events. Indicate association with vibration isolation devices.
 - c. Coordinate seismic-restraint and vibration isolation details with wind-restraint details required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.
 - d. Preapproval and Evaluation Documentation: By **an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction**, showing maximum ratings of restraint items and the basis for approval (tests or calculations).

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of seismic bracing for electrical components with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and seismic restraints. Electrical components include:
1. Control panels.
 2. Generators.
 3. Luminaires.
 4. Motor control centers.
 5. Panelboards.
 6. Photovoltaic system components.
 7. Switchboards.
 8. Transformers.
- B. Qualification Data: For **professional engineer**.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with seismic-restraint requirements in the IBC unless requirements in this Section are more stringent.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

- C. Seismic-restraint devices shall have horizontal and vertical load testing and analysis. They shall bear anchorage preapproval from OSHPD in addition to preapproval, showing maximum seismic-restraint ratings, by ICC-ES or another agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Ratings based on independent testing are preferred to ratings based on calculations. If preapproved ratings are not available, submittals based on independent testing are preferred. Calculations (including combining shear and tensile loads) that support seismic-restraint designs must be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic-Restraint Loading:
 - 1. As per structural specifications.

2.2 RESTRAINT CHANNEL BRACINGS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Description: MFMA-4, shop- or field-fabricated bracing assembly made of slotted steel channels with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end, with other matching components, and with corrosion-resistant coating; rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces.

2.3 RESTRAINT CABLES

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Restraint Cables: **ASTM A 603 galvanized and ASTM A 492 stainless-steel** cables. End connections made of steel assemblies with thimbles, brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for restraining cable service; with a minimum of two clamping bolts for cable engagement.

2.4 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT ACCESSORIES

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Hanger-Rod Stiffener: **Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections or Reinforcing steel angle clamped** to hanger rod.
- C. Hinged and Swivel Brace Attachments: Multifunctional steel connectors for attaching hangers to **rigid channel bracings and restraint cables**.
- D. Bushings for Floor-Mounted Equipment Anchor Bolts: Neoprene bushings designed for rigid equipment mountings and matched to type and size of anchor bolts and studs.

- E. Bushing Assemblies for Wall-Mounted Equipment Anchorage: Assemblies of neoprene elements and steel sleeves designed for rigid equipment mountings and matched to type and size of attachment devices used.
- F. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: One-piece, molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene, with a flat washer face.

2.5 MECHANICAL ANCHOR BOLTS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Mechanical Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type in zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

2.6 ADHESIVE ANCHOR BOLTS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Adhesive Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and capsule anchor system containing PVC or urethane methacrylate-based resin and accelerator, or injected polymer or hybrid mortar adhesive. Provide anchor bolts and hardware with zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive **vibration isolation and** seismic-control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 APPLICATIONS

- A. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Secure raceways and cables to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by **an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction**.
- B. Hanger-Rod Stiffeners: Install hanger-rod stiffeners where indicated or scheduled on Drawings to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods caused by seismic forces.

- C. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads within specified loading limits.

3.3 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in **Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."**
- B. Equipment and Hanger Restraints:
 - 1. Install resilient, bolt-isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds **0.125 inch (3.2 mm)**.
 - 2. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by **an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction** providing required submittals for component.
- C. Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.
- D. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.
- E. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.
- F. Drilled-in Anchors:
 - 1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify the structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
 - 2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
 - 3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
 - 4. Adhesive Anchors: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.
 - 5. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque using a torque wrench.
 - 6. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless-steel anchors for exterior applications.

3.4 ACCOMMODATION OF DIFFERENTIAL SEISMIC MOTION

- A. Install flexible connections in runs of raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, and busways where they cross seismic joints, where adjacent sections or branches are supported by different

structural elements, and where connection is terminated to equipment that is anchored to a different structural element from the one supporting them as they approach equipment.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust restraints to permit free movement of equipment within normal mode of operation.

END OF SECTION 260548.16

SECTION 260553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Color and legend requirements for raceways, conductors, and warning labels and signs.
2. Labels.
3. Bands and tubes.
4. Tapes and stencils.
5. Tags.
6. Signs.
7. Cable ties.
8. Paint for identification.
9. Fasteners for labels and signs.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for electrical identification products.
- B. Identification Schedule: For each piece of electrical equipment and electrical system components to be an index of nomenclature for electrical equipment and system components used in identification signs and labels. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For arc-flash hazard study.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with ASME A13.1 **and IEEE C2.**
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.144 and 29 CFR 1910.145.

- D. Comply with ANSI Z535.4 for safety signs and labels.
- E. Comply with **NFPA 70E and Section 260573.19 "Arc-Flash Hazard Analysis"** requirements for arc-flash warning labels.
- F. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969.
- G. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
 - 1. Temperature Change: **120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.**

2.2 COLOR AND LEGEND REQUIREMENTS

- A. Raceways and Cables Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less:
 - 1. **Black letters on an orange field.**
 - 2. Legend: Indicate voltage **and system or service type.**
- B. Color-Coding for Phase- **and Voltage-Level** Identification, 600 V or Less: Use colors listed below for ungrounded **service, feeder and branch-circuit** conductors.
 - 1. Color shall be factory applied **or field applied for sizes larger than No. 8 AWG if authorities having jurisdiction permit.**
 - 2. Colors for 208/120-V Circuits:
 - a. Phase A: Black.
 - b. Phase B: Red.
 - c. Phase C: Blue.
 - 3. Colors for 240-V Circuits:
 - a. Phase A: Black.
 - b. Phase B: Red.
 - 4. Colors for 480/277-V Circuits:
 - a. Phase A: Brown.
 - b. Phase B: Orange.
 - c. Phase C: Yellow.
 - 5. Color for Neutral: **White or gray.**
 - 6. Color for Equipment Grounds: **Bare copper or Green.**
 - 7. Colors for Isolated Grounds: Green with white stripe.
- C. Raceways and Cables Carrying Circuits at More Than 600 V:
 - 1. Black letters on an orange field.
 - 2. Legend: "DANGER - CONCEALED HIGH VOLTAGE WIRING."

- D. Warning Label Colors:
 - 1. Identify system voltage with black letters on an orange background.
- E. Warning labels and signs shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends:
 - 1. Multiple Power Source Warning: "DANGER - ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD - EQUIPMENT HAS MULTIPLE POWER SOURCES."
 - 2. Workspace Clearance Warning: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR 36 INCHES (915 MM)."
- F. Equipment Identification Labels:
 - 1. Black letters on a white field.

2.3 LABELS

- A. Vinyl Wraparound Labels: Preprinted, flexible labels laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound clear adhesive tape for securing label ends.
 - 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Snap-around Labels: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, preprinted, color-coded acrylic sleeves, with diameters sized to suit diameters and that stay in place by gripping action.
 - 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- C. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels: **Preprinted, 3-mil- (0.08-mm-)** thick, **polyester or vinyl** flexible label with acrylic pressure-sensitive adhesive.
 - 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
 - 2. Self-Lamination: Clear; UV-, weather- and chemical-resistant; self-laminating, protective shield over the legend. Labels sized such that the clear shield overlaps the entire printed legend.
 - 3. Marker for Labels: Permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.
 - 4. Marker for Labels: Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof, black ink recommended by printer manufacturer.
- D. Self-Adhesive Labels: **Polyester or Vinyl**, thermal, transfer-printed, **3-mil- (0.08-mm-)** thick, multicolor, weather- and UV-resistant, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for intended use and location.
 - 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
 - 2. Minimum Nominal Size:
 - a. **1-1/2 by 6 inches (37 by 150 mm)** for raceway and conductors.
 - b. **3-1/2 by 5 inches (76 by 127 mm)** for equipment.
 - c. As required by authorities having jurisdiction.

2.4 BANDS AND TUBES

- A. Snap-around, Color-Coding Bands: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, solid-colored acrylic sleeves, **2 inches (50 mm)** long, with diameters sized to suit diameters and that stay in place by gripping action.
 - 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Heat-Shrink Preprinted Tubes: Flame-retardant polyolefin tubes with machine-printed identification labels, sized to suit diameter and shrunk to fit firmly. Full shrink recovery occurs at a maximum of **200 deg F (93 deg C)**. Comply with UL 224.
 - 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

2.5 TAPES AND STENCILS

- A. Marker Tapes: Vinyl or vinyl-cloth, self-adhesive wraparound type, with circuit identification legend machine printed by thermal transfer or equivalent process.
 - 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Colored, heavy duty, waterproof, fade resistant; not less than **3 mils (0.08 mm)** thick by **1 to 2 inches (25 to 50 mm)** wide; compounded for outdoor use.
 - 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- C. Tape and Stencil: **4-inch- (100-mm-)** wide black stripes on **10-inch (250-mm)** centers placed diagonally over orange background and are **12 inches (300 mm)** wide. Stop stripes at legends.
 - 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- D. Floor Marking Tape: **2-inch- (50-mm-)** wide, **5-mil (0.125-mm)** pressure-sensitive vinyl tape, with **yellow and black** stripes and clear vinyl overlay.
 - 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- E. Underground-Line Warning Tape:
 - 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
 - 2. Tape:
 - a. Recommended by manufacturer for the method of installation and suitable to identify and locate underground electrical **and communications** utility lines.
 - b. Printing on tape shall be permanent and shall not be damaged by burial operations.
 - c. Tape material and ink shall be chemically inert and not subject to degradation when exposed to acids, alkalis, and other destructive substances commonly found in soils.
 - 3. Color and Printing:

- a. Comply with ANSI Z535.1, ANSI Z535.2, ANSI Z535.3, ANSI Z535.4, and ANSI Z535.5.
- b. Inscriptions for Red-Colored Tapes: "ELECTRIC LINE, HIGH VOLTAGE".
- c. Inscriptions for Orange-Colored Tapes: "TELEPHONE CABLE, CATV CABLE, COMMUNICATIONS CABLE, OPTICAL FIBER CABLE".

2.6 TAGS

- A. Metal Tags: Brass or aluminum, **2 by 2 by 0.05 inch (50 by 50 by 1.3 mm)**, with stamped legend, punched for use with self-locking cable tie fastener.
 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Nonmetallic Preprinted Tags: Polyethylene tags, [**0.015 inch (0.38 mm)**] [**0.023 inch (0.58 mm)**] thick, color-coded for phase and voltage level, with factory **screened or printed** permanent designations; punched for use with self-locking cable tie fastener.
 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- C. Write-on Tags:
 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
 2. Polyester Tags: **0.010 inch (0.25 mm)** thick, with corrosion-resistant grommet and cable tie for attachment.
 3. Marker for Tags: Permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.
 4. Marker for Tags: Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by printer manufacturer.

2.7 SIGNS

- A. Baked-Enamel Signs:
 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
 2. Preprinted aluminum signs, **high-intensity reflective**, punched or drilled for fasteners, with colors, legend, and size required for application.
 3. **1/4-inch (6.4-mm)** grommets in corners for mounting.
 4. Nominal Size: **7 by 10 inches (180 by 250 mm)**.
- B. Metal-Backed Butyrate Signs:
 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
 2. Weather-resistant, nonfading, preprinted, cellulose-acetate butyrate signs, with **0.0396-inch (1-mm)** galvanized-steel backing, punched and drilled for fasteners, and with colors, legend, and size required for application.
 3. **1/4-inch (6.4-mm)** grommets in corners for mounting.
 4. Nominal Size: **10 by 14 inches (250 by 360 mm)**.
- C. Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Plastic Signs:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Engraved legend.
3. Thickness:
 - a. For signs up to **20 sq. in. (129 sq. cm)**, minimum **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** thick.
 - b. For signs larger than **20 sq. in. (129 sq. cm)**, **1/8 inch (3.2 mm)** thick.
 - c. Engraved legend with **black letters on white face**.
 - d. **Punched or drilled for mechanical fasteners with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) grommets in corners for mounting or Self-adhesive.**
 - e. Framed with mitered acrylic molding and arranged for attachment at applicable equipment.

2.8 CABLE TIES

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. General-Purpose Cable Ties: Fungus inert, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, and Type 6/6 nylon.
 1. Minimum Width: **3/16 inch (5 mm)**.
 2. Tensile Strength at **73 Deg F (23 Deg C)** according to ASTM D 638: **12,000 psi (82.7 MPa)**.
 3. Temperature Range: **Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 85 deg C)**.
 4. Color: Black, except where used for color-coding.
- C. UV-Stabilized Cable Ties: Fungus inert, designed for continuous exposure to exterior sunlight, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, and Type 6/6 nylon.
 1. Minimum Width: **3/16 inch (5 mm)**.
 2. Tensile Strength at **73 Deg F (23 Deg C)** according to ASTM D 638: **12,000 psi (82.7 MPa)**.
 3. Temperature Range: **Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 85 deg C)**.
 4. Color: Black.
- D. Plenum-Rated Cable Ties: Self-extinguishing, UV stabilized, one piece, and self-locking.
 1. Minimum Width: **3/16 inch (5 mm)**.
 2. Tensile Strength at **73 Deg F (23 Deg C)** according to ASTM D 638: **7000 psi (48.2 MPa)**.
 3. UL 94 Flame Rating: 94V-0.
 4. Temperature Range: **Minus 50 to plus 284 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 140 deg C)**.
 5. Color: Black.

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Paint: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for paint materials and application requirements. Retain paint system applicable for surface material and location (exterior or interior).

- B. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Before applying electrical identification products, clean substrates of substances that could impair bond, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification product.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Verify and coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual. Use consistent designations throughout Project.
- B. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.
- C. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.
- D. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual.
- E. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.
- F. Install signs with approved legend to facilitate proper identification, operation, and maintenance of electrical systems and connected items.
- G. System Identification for Raceways and Cables under 600 V: Identification shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place identification of two-color markings in contact, side by side.
 - 1. Secure tight to surface of conductor, cable, or raceway.
- H. System Identification for Raceways and Cables over 600 V: Identification shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place adjacent identification of two-color markings in contact, side by side.
 - 1. Secure tight to surface of conductor, cable, or raceway.
- I. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Identify field-installed alarm, control, and signal connections.
- J. Emergency Operating Instruction Signs: Install instruction signs with white legend on a red background with minimum **3/8-inch- (10-mm-)** high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for **power transfer**.

- K. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels, signs, and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.
- L. Vinyl Wraparound Labels:
1. Secure tight to surface of raceway or cable at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
 2. Attach labels that are not self-adhesive type with clear vinyl tape, with adhesive appropriate to the location and substrate.
- M. Snap-around Labels: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- N. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- O. Self-Adhesive Labels:
1. On each item, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and operation and maintenance manual.
 2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with **1/2-inch- (13-mm-)** high letters on **1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-)** high label; where two lines of text are required, use labels **2 inches (50 mm)** high.
- P. Snap-around Color-Coding Bands: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- Q. Heat-Shrink, Preprinted Tubes: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- R. Marker Tapes: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- S. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
1. Field-Applied, Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Apply in half-lapped turns for a minimum distance of **6 inches (150 mm)** where splices or taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding.
- T. Tape and Stencil: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for surface preparation and paint application.
- U. Floor Marking Tape: Apply stripes to finished surfaces following manufacturer's written instructions.
- V. Underground Line Warning Tape:
1. During backfilling of trenches, install continuous underground-line warning tape directly above cable or raceway at **6 to 8 inches (150 to 200 mm)** below finished grade. Use multiple tapes where width of multiple lines installed in a common trench **or concrete envelope** exceeds **16 inches (400 mm)** overall.
 2. Limit use of underground-line warning tape to direct-buried cables.

3. Install underground-line warning tape for direct-buried cables and cables in raceways.

W. Metal Tags:

1. Place in a location with high visibility and accessibility.
2. Secure using **general-purpose, UV-stabilized and/or plenum-rated** cable ties.

X. Nonmetallic Preprinted Tags:

1. Place in a location with high visibility and accessibility.
2. Secure using **general-purpose, UV-stabilized and/or plenum-rated** cable ties.

Y. Baked-Enamel Signs:

1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with **1/2-inch- (13-mm-)** high letters on minimum **1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-)** high sign; where two lines of text are required, use signs minimum **2 inches (50 mm)** high.

Z. Metal-Backed Butyrate Signs:

1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with **1/2-inch- (13-mm-)** high letters on **1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-)** high sign; where two lines of text are required, use labels **2 inches (50 mm)** high.

AA. Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Plastic Signs:

1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with **1/2-inch- (13-mm-)** high letters on **1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-)** high sign; where two lines of text are required, use labels **2 inches (50 mm)** high.

BB. Cable Ties: General purpose, for attaching tags, except as listed below:

1. Outdoors: UV-stabilized nylon.
2. In Spaces Handling Environmental Air: Plenum rated.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE

- A. Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment. Install access doors or panels to provide view of identifying devices.
- B. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, pull points, and locations of high visibility. Identify by system and circuit designation.

- C. Concealed Raceways, Duct Banks, More Than 600 V, within Buildings: Tape and stencil. Stencil legend "DANGER - CONCEALED HIGH-VOLTAGE WIRING" with **3-inch- (75-mm-)** high, black letters on **20-inch (500-mm)** centers.
 - 1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, and at **30-foot (10-m)** maximum intervals.
- D. Accessible Raceways, Armored and Metal-Clad Cables, More Than 600 V: **Vinyl wraparound labels, Snap-around labels, Self-adhesive labels and/or Snap-around color-coding bands for raceway and cables.**
 - 1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at **50-foot (15-m)** maximum intervals in straight runs, and at **25-foot (7.6-m)** maximum intervals in congested areas.
- E. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, 600 V or Less: For conductors in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use **vinyl wraparound labels, self-adhesive wraparound labels, snap-around labels, snap-around color-coding bands** and/or **self-adhesive vinyl tape** to identify the phase.
 - 1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at **50-foot (15-m)** maximum intervals in straight runs, and at **25-foot (7.6-m)** maximum intervals in congested areas.
- F. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, More Than 600 V: For conductors in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use **nonmetallic preprinted tags colored and marked to indicate phase, and a separate tag with the circuit designation.**
- G. Control-Circuit Conductor Identification: For conductors and cables in pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use **self-adhesive labels** with the conductor or cable designation, origin, and destination.
- H. Control-Circuit Conductor Termination Identification: For identification at terminations, provide **heat-shrink preprinted tubes or self-adhesive labels** with the conductor designation.
- I. Conductors to Be Extended in the Future: Attach **marker tape** to conductors **and list source.**
- J. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: **Marker tape or Self-adhesive vinyl tape** that is uniform and consistent with system used by manufacturer for factory-installed connections.
 - 1. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, and pull points. Identify by system and circuit designation.
- K. Locations of Underground Lines: Underground-line warning tape for power, lighting, communication, and control wiring and optical-fiber cable.
- L. Concealed Raceways and Duct Banks, More Than 600 V, within Buildings: Apply floor marking tape to the following finished surfaces:

1. Floor surface directly above conduits running beneath and within **12 inches (300 mm)** of a floor that is in contact with earth or is framed above unexcavated space.
 2. Wall surfaces directly external to raceways concealed within wall.
 3. Accessible surfaces of concrete envelope around raceways in vertical shafts, exposed in the building, or concealed above suspended ceilings.
- M. Workspace Indication: Apply **floor marking tape** to finished surfaces. Show working clearances in the direction of access to live parts. Workspace shall comply with NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1926.403 unless otherwise indicated. Do not install at flush-mounted panelboards and similar equipment in finished spaces.
- N. Instructional Signs: Self-adhesive labels, including the color code for grounded and ungrounded conductors.
- O. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures for Power and Lighting: **Self-adhesive labels, Baked-enamel warning signs or Metal-backed, butyrate warning signs.**
1. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.
 2. For equipment with multiple power or control sources, apply to door or cover of equipment, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Power-transfer switches.
 - b. Controls with external control power connections.
- P. Arc Flash Warning Labeling: Self-adhesive labels.
- Q. Operating Instruction Signs: **Self-adhesive labels, Baked-enamel warning signs, Metal-backed, butyrate warning signs or Laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs.**
- R. Emergency Operating Instruction Signs: **Self-adhesive labels, Baked-enamel warning signs, Metal-backed, butyrate warning signs, or Laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs** with white legend on a red background with minimum **3/8-inch- (10-mm-)** high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for **power transfer**.
- S. Equipment Identification Labels:
1. Indoor Equipment: **Self-adhesive label, Baked-enamel signs, Metal-backed butyrate signs, or Laminated acrylic or melamine plastic sign.**
 2. Outdoor Equipment: **Laminated acrylic or melamine sign.**
 3. Equipment to Be Labeled:
 - a. Panelboards: Typewritten directory of circuits in the location provided by panelboard manufacturer. Panelboard identification shall be in the form of a **self-adhesive, engraved, engraved**, laminated acrylic or melamine label.
 - b. Enclosures and electrical cabinets.
 - c. Access doors and panels for concealed electrical items.
 - d. Transformers: Label that includes tag designation indicated on Drawings for the transformer, feeder, and panelboards or equipment supplied by the secondary.
 - e. Substations.
 - f. Emergency system boxes and enclosures.
 - g. Motor-control centers.

- h. Enclosed switches.
- i. Enclosed circuit breakers.
- j. Enclosed controllers.
- k. Variable-speed controllers.
- l. Push-button stations.
- m. Power-transfer equipment.
- n. Contactors.
- o. Remote-controlled switches, dimmer modules, and control devices.
- p. Power-generating units.
- q. Monitoring and control equipment.

END OF SECTION 260553

SECTION 260923 - LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Time switches.
2. Photoelectric switches.
3. Standalone daylight-harvesting switching and dimming controls.
4. Indoor occupancy and vacancy sensors.
5. Switchbox-mounted occupancy sensors.
6. Digital timer light switches.
7. Lighting contactors.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- B. Shop Drawings:

1. Show installation details for the following:
 - a. Occupancy sensors.
 - b. Vacancy sensors.
2. Interconnection diagrams showing field-installed wiring.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of lighting control device to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

- B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:

1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
2. Program Software Backup: **On USB media**. Provide names, versions, and website addresses for locations of installed software.
3. Device address list.

4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace lighting control devices that fail(s) in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Faulty operation of lighting control software.
 - b. Faulty operation of lighting control devices.
 2. Warranty Period: **Two** year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TIME SWITCHES

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Electronic Time Switches: Solid state, programmable, with alphanumeric display; complying with UL 917.
 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and application.
 2. Contact Configuration: **DPDT**.
 3. Contact Rating: **30-A inductive or resistive, 240-V ac**.
 4. Programs: Eight on-off set points on a 24-hour schedule **and an annual holiday schedule that overrides the weekly operation on holidays**.
 5. Circuitry: Allow connection of a photoelectric relay as substitute for on-off function of a program **on selected channels**.
 6. Astronomic Time: **All** channels.
 7. Automatic daylight savings time changeover.
 8. Battery Backup: Not less than seven days reserve, to maintain schedules and time clock.

2.2 DAYLIGHT-HARVESTING SWITCHING CONTROLS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Description: System operates indoor lighting.
- C. Sequence of Operation: As daylight increases, the lights are turned off at a predetermined level. As daylight decreases, the lights are turned on at a predetermined level.
 1. Lighting control set point is based on two lighting conditions:
 - a. When no daylight is present.
 - b. When significant daylight is present (target level).

- c. System programming is done with two hand-held, remote-control tools.
- D. Ceiling-Mounted Switching Controls: Solid-state, light-level sensor unit, with separate power pack **mounted on luminaire**, that detects changes in indoor lighting levels that are perceived by the eye.
- E. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories:
1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 2. Operating Ambient Conditions: Dry interior conditions, **32 to 120 deg F (0 to 49 deg C)**.
 3. Sensor Output: Contacts rated to operate the associated power pack, complying with UL 773A. Sensor shall be powered by the power pack.
 4. Sensor Output: Digital signal compatible with power pack.
 5. Sensor type: **Open loop**.
 6. Zone: **Multi**.
 7. Power Pack: Dry contacts rated for **20-A LED** load at 120- and 277-V ac, for **13-A tungsten** at 120-V ac, and for **1 hp** at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
 - a. LED status lights to indicate load status.
 - b. Plenum rated.
 8. Power Pack: Digital controller capable of accepting **3 RJ45** inputs with **two** outputs rated for **20-A LED** load at 120- and 277-V ac, for **16-A LED** at 120- and 277-V ac, and for **1 hp** at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
 - a. With integral current monitoring
 - b. Compatible with digital addressable lighting interface.
 - c. Plenum rated.
 9. General Space Sensors Light-Level Monitoring Range: **10 to 200 fc (108 to 2152 lux)**, with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range.
 10. Time Delay: Adjustable from 5 to 300 seconds to prevent cycling.
 11. Set-Point Adjustment: Equip with deadband adjustment of 25, 50, and 75 percent above the "on" set point, or provide with separate adjustable "on" and "off" set points.
 12. Test Mode: User selectable, overriding programmed time delay to allow settings check.
 13. Control Load Status: User selectable to confirm that load wiring is correct.
 14. Indicator: Two digital displays to indicate the beginning of on-off cycles.

2.3 DAYLIGHT-HARVESTING DIMMING CONTROLS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Description: Sensing daylight and electrical lighting levels, the system adjusts the indoor electrical lighting levels. As daylight increases, the lights are dimmed.
1. Lighting control set point is based on two lighting conditions:
 - a. When no daylight is present (target level).

- b. When significant daylight is present.
 - 2. System programming is done with two hand-held, remote-control tools.
 - a. Initial setup tool.
 - b. Tool for occupants to adjust the target levels by increasing the set point up to 25 percent, or by minimizing the electric lighting level.
- C. Ceiling-Mounted Dimming Controls: Solid-state, light-level sensor unit, with **integrated or separate** power pack **mounted on luminaire**, to detect changes in indoor lighting levels that are perceived by the eye.
- D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories:
 - 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 2. Sensor Output: 0- to 10-V dc to operate luminaires. Sensor is powered by controller unit.
 - 3. Light-Level Sensor Set-Point Adjustment Range: **20 to 60 fc (120 to 640 lux)**.
- E. Power Pack: Dry contacts rated for **20-A LED** load at 120- and 277-V ac, for **13-A tungsten** at 120-V ac, and for **1 hp** at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
 - 1. LED status lights to indicate load status.
 - 2. Plenum rated.
- F. Power Pack: Digital controller capable of accepting **3** RJ45 inputs with **two** outputs rated for **20-A LED** load at 120- and 277-V ac, for **16-A LED** at 120- and 277-V ac, and for **1 hp** at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
 - 1. With integral current monitoring
 - a. Compatible with digital addressable lighting interface.
 - 1) Plenum rated.

2.4 INDOOR OCCUPANCY AND VACANCY SENSORS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. General Requirements for Sensors:
 - 1. **Wall or Ceiling**-mounted, solid-state indoor **occupancy and vacancy** sensors.
 - 2. **Dual** technology.
 - 3. **Integrated or Separate** power pack.
 - 4. **Hardwired** connection to switch and **BAS**.
 - 5. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 6. Operation:

- a. Occupancy Sensor: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and turn them off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
 - b. Vacancy Sensor: Unless otherwise indicated, lights are manually turned on and sensor turns lights off when the room is unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
 - c. Combination Sensor: Unless otherwise indicated, sensor shall be programmed to turn lights on when coverage area is occupied and turn them off when unoccupied, or to turn off lights that have been manually turned on; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
7. Sensor Output: **Contacts rated to operate the connected relay, complying with UL 773A or Sensor is powered from the power pack.**
 8. Power: **Line voltage or Integral photovoltaic collector.**
 9. Power Pack: Dry contacts rated for 20-A **LED** load at 120- and 277-V ac, for 13-A tungsten at 120-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
 10. Mounting:
 - a. Sensor: Suitable for mounting in any position on a standard outlet box.
 - b. Relay: Externally mounted through a **1/2-inch (13-mm)** knockout in a standard electrical enclosure.
 - c. Time-Delay and Sensitivity Adjustments: Recessed and concealed behind hinged door.
 11. Indicator: Digital display, to show when motion is detected during testing and normal operation of sensor.
 12. Bypass Switch: Override the "on" function in case of sensor failure.
 13. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from **2 to 200 fc (21.5 to 2152 lux)**; turn lights off when selected lighting level is present.
- C. PIR Type: **Wall or Ceiling** mounted; detect occupants in coverage area by their heat and movement.
1. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of **6-inch- (150-mm-)** minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than **36 sq. in. (232 sq. cm)**.
 2. Detection Coverage (Room, Ceiling Mounted): Detect occupancy anywhere in a circular area of **1000 sq. ft. (93 sq. m)** when mounted on a **96-inch- (2440-mm-)** high ceiling.
 3. Detection Coverage (Corridor, Ceiling Mounted): Detect occupancy within **90 feet (27.4 m)** when mounted on a **10-foot- (3-m-)** high ceiling.
 4. Detection Coverage (Room, Wall Mounted): Detect occupancy anywhere within a 180-degree pattern centered on the sensor over an area of [**1000 square feet (110 square meters)**] [**2000 square feet (220 square meters)**] [**3000 square feet (330 square meters)**] when mounted **48 inches (1200 mm)** above finished floor.
- D. Ultrasonic Type: **Wall or Ceiling** mounted; detect occupants in coverage area through pattern changes of reflected ultrasonic energy.
1. Detector Sensitivity: Detect a person of average size and weight moving not less than **12 inches (305 mm)** in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of **12 inches/s (305 mm/s)**.

2. Detection Coverage (Small Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of **600 sq. ft. (56 sq. m)** when mounted on a **96-inch- (2440-mm-)** high ceiling.
3. Detection Coverage (Standard Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of **1000 sq. ft. (93 sq. m)** when mounted on a **96-inch- (2440-mm-)** high ceiling.
4. Detection Coverage (Large Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of **2000 sq. ft. (186 sq. m)** when mounted on a **96-inch- (2440-mm-)** high ceiling.
5. Detection Coverage (Corridor): Detect occupancy anywhere within **90 feet (27.4 m)** when mounted on a **10-foot- (3-m-)** high ceiling in a corridor not wider than **14 feet (4.3 m)**.
6. Detection Coverage (Room, Wall Mounted): Detect occupancy anywhere within a 180-degree pattern centered on the sensor over an area of [**1000 square feet (110 square meters)**] [**2000 square feet (220 square meters)**] [**3000 square feet (330 square meters)**] when mounted **84 inches (2100 mm)** above finished floor.

E. Dual-Technology Type: **Wall or Ceiling** mounted; detect occupants in coverage area using PIR and ultrasonic detection methods. The particular technology or combination of technologies that control on-off functions is selectable in the field by operating controls on unit.

1. Sensitivity Adjustment: Separate for each sensing technology.
2. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of **6-inch- (150-mm-)** minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than **36 sq. in. (232 sq. cm)**, and detect a person of average size and weight moving not less than **12 inches (305 mm)** in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of **12 inches/s (305 mm/s)**.
3. Detection Coverage (Standard Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of **1000 sq. ft. (93 sq. m)** when mounted on a **96-inch- (2440-mm-)** high ceiling.
4. Detection Coverage (Room, Wall Mounted): Detect occupancy anywhere within a 180-degree pattern centered on the sensor over an area of **1000 square feet (110 square meters) or 2000 square feet (220 square meters)** when mounted **48 inches (1200 mm)** above finished floor.

2.5 SWITCHBOX-MOUNTED OCCUPANCY SENSORS

A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

B. General Requirements for Sensors: Automatic-wall-switch occupancy sensor with manual on-off switch, suitable for mounting in a single gang switchbox **using hardwired connection**.

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Occupancy Sensor Operation: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and turn lights off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
3. Operating Ambient Conditions: Dry interior conditions, **32 to 120 deg F (0 to 49 deg C)**.
4. Switch Rating: Not less than 800-VA **LED** load at 120 V, 1200-VA **LED** load at 277 V.

2.6 LIGHTING CONTACTORS

A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

- B. Description: Electrically operated and **electrically** held, combination-type lighting contactors, complying with NEMA ICS 2 and UL 508.
 - 1. Current Rating for Switching: Listing or rating consistent with type of load served, including tungsten filament, inductive, and high-inrush ballast (ballast with 15 percent or less THD of normal load current).
 - 2. Fault Current Withstand Rating: Equal to or exceeding the available fault current at the point of installation.
 - 3. Enclosure: Comply with NEMA 250.
 - 4. Provide with control and pilot devices as **indicated on Drawings**, matching the NEMA type specified for the enclosure.

2.7 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Power Wiring to Supply Side of Remote-Control Power Sources: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Classes 2 and 3 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than **No. 24** AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- C. Class 1 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than **No. 18** AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine lighting control devices before installation. Reject lighting control devices that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- B. Examine walls and ceilings for suitable conditions where lighting control devices will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 SENSOR INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Coordinate layout and installation of ceiling-mounted devices with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, smoke detectors, fire-suppression systems, and partition assemblies.
- C. Install and aim sensors in locations to achieve not less than 90-percent coverage of areas indicated. Do not exceed coverage limits specified in manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 CONTACTOR INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Mount electrically held lighting contactors with elastomeric isolator pads to eliminate structure-borne vibration unless contactors are installed in an enclosure with factory-installed vibration isolators.

3.4 WIRING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Wiring Method: Comply with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Minimum conduit size is **1/2 inch (13 mm)**.
- C. Wiring within Enclosures: Comply with NECA 1. Separate power-limited and nonpower-limited conductors according to conductor manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Size conductors according to lighting control device manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify components and power and control wiring according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Identify controlled circuits in lighting contactors.
 - 2. Identify circuits or luminaires controlled by photoelectric and occupancy sensors at each sensor.
- B. Label time switches and contactors with a unique designation.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Operational Test: After installing time switches and sensors, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation.
 - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Lighting control devices will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.7 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within **12** months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting lighting control devices to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to **two** visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.
 - 1. For occupancy and motion sensors, verify operation at outer limits of detector range. Set time delay to suit Owner's operations.
 - 2. For daylighting controls, adjust set points and deadband controls to suit Owner's operations.
 - 3. Align high-bay occupancy sensors using manufacturer's laser aiming tool.

3.8 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

- A. Technical Support: Beginning at Substantial Completion, service agreement shall include software support for **two** years.
- B. Upgrade Service: At Substantial Completion, update software to latest version. Install and program software upgrades that become available within **two** years from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system and new or revised licenses for using software.
 - 1. Upgrade Notice: At least **30** days to allow Owner to schedule and access the system and to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

3.9 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Coordinate demonstration of products specified in this Section with demonstration requirements for low-voltage, programmable lighting control systems specified in Section 260943.23 "Relay-Based Lighting Controls."
- B. **Train** Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain lighting control devices.

END OF SECTION 260923

SECTION 260943.23 - RELAY-BASED LIGHTING CONTROLS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes: Lighting control panels using mechanically held relays for switching.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. BAS: Building automation system.
- B. DDC: Direct digital control.
- C. IP: Internet protocol.
- D. Monitoring: Acquisition, processing, communication, and display of equipment status data, metered electrical parameter values, power quality evaluation data, event and alarm signals, tabulated reports, and event logs.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for control modules, power distribution components, relays, manual switches and plates, and conductors and cables.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
 - 3. Sound data including results of operational tests of central dimming controls.
 - 4. Operational documentation for software and firmware.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each relay panel and related equipment.
 - 1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details. Show tabulations of installed devices, equipment features, and ratings.
 - 2. Detail enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
 - 3. Detail wiring partition configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
 - 4. Short-circuit current rating of relays.

5. Address Drawing: Reflected ceiling plan and floor plans, showing connected luminaires, address for each luminaire, and luminaire groups. Base plans on construction plans, using the same legend, symbols, and schedules.
6. Point List and Data Bus Load: Summary list of all control devices, sensors, ballasts, and other loads. Include percentage of rated connected load and device addresses.
7. Wire Termination Diagrams and Schedules: Coordinate nomenclature and presentation with Drawings and block diagram. Differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring.
8. Block Diagram: Show interconnections between components specified in this Section and devices furnished with power distribution system components. Indicate data communication paths and identify networks, data buses, data gateways, concentrators, and other devices to be used. Describe characteristics of network and other data communication lines.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For lighting controls to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:
 1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
 2. Program Software Backup: **On USB drive.**
 3. Device address list.
 4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.
 5. Testing and adjusting of panic and emergency power features.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Lighting Control Relays: Equal to 10 percent of amount installed **for each size indicated**, but no fewer than three.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.
 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Handle and prepare panels for installation according to NECA 407.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of standalone multipreset modular dimming controls that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Damage from transient voltage surges.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Cost to repair or replace any parts for **two** years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - 3. Extended Warranty Period: Cost of replacement parts (materials only, f.o.b. the nearest shipping point to Project site), for **eight** years, that failed in service due to transient voltage surges.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Sequence of Operations: Input signal from field-mounted manual switches, or digital signal sources, shall open or close one or more lighting control relays in the lighting control panels. Any combination of inputs shall be programmable to any number of control relays.
- B. Surge Protective Device: Factory installed as an integral part of control components or field-mounted surge suppressors complying with UL 1449, SPD Type 2.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Comply with 47 CFR 15, Subparts A and B, for Class A digital devices.
- E. Comply with UL 916.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Lighting control panels shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to **ASCE/SEI 7**.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
 - 2. Component Importance Factor: **1.0**.

2.3 LIGHTING CONTROL RELAY PANELS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

- B. Description: Standalone lighting control panel using mechanically latched relays to control lighting and appliances.
- C. Lighting Control Panel:
 - 1. A single enclosure with incoming lighting branch circuits, control circuits, switching relays, and on-board timing and control unit.
 - 2. A vertical barrier separating branch circuits from control wiring.
- D. Control Unit: Contain the power supply and electronic control for operating and monitoring individual relays.
 - 1. Timing Unit:
 - a. 365-day calendar, astronomical clock, and automatic adjustments for daylight savings and leap year.
 - b. Clock configurable for 12-hour (A.M./P.M.) or 24-hour format.
 - c. **Four** independent schedules, each having **24** time periods.
 - d. Schedule periods settable to the minute.
 - e. Day-of-week, day-of-month, day-of-year with one-time or repeating capability.
 - f. **10** special date periods.
 - 2. Sequencing Control with Override:
 - a. Automatic sequenced on and off switching of selected relays at times set at the timing unit, allowing timed overrides from external switches.
 - b. Sequencing control shall operate relays one at a time, completing the operation of all connected relays in not more than 10 seconds.
 - c. Override control shall allow any relay connected to it to be switched on or off by a field-deployed manual switch or by an automatic switch, such as an occupancy sensor.
 - d. Override control "blink warning" shall warn occupants approximately **five minutes** before actuating the off sequence.
 - 3. Nonvolatile memory shall retain all setup configurations. After a power failure, the controller shall automatically reboot and return to normal system operation, including accurate time of day and date.
- E. Relays: Electrically operated, mechanically held single-pole switch, rated at 20 A at 120-V tungsten, 30 A at 277-V ballast, 1.5 hp at 120 V, and 3 hp at 277 V. Short-circuit current rating shall be not less than 14 kA. Control shall be three-wire, 24-V ac.
- F. Power Supply: NFPA 70, Class 2, sized for connected equipment, plus 20 percent spare capacity. Powered from a dedicated branch circuit of the panelboard that supplies power to the line side of the relays, sized to provide control power for the local panel-mounted relays, bus system, low-voltage inputs, field-installed occupancy sensors, and photo sensors.
- G. Operator Interface:
 - 1. Integral alphanumeric keypad and digital display, and intuitive drop-down menus to assist in programming.

2. Log and display relay on-time.
3. Connect relays to one or more time and sequencing schemes.

2.4 MANUAL SWITCHES AND PLATES

- A. Push-Button Switches: Modular, momentary contact, three wire, for operating one or more relays and to override automatic controls.
 1. Match color and style specified in Section 262726 "Wiring Devices."
 2. Integral green LED pilot light to indicate when circuit is on.
 3. Internal white LED locator light to illuminate when circuit is off.
- B. Wall Plates: Single and multigang plates as specified in Section 262726 "Wiring Devices."
- C. Legend: Engraved or permanently silk-screened on wall plate where indicated. Use designations indicated on Drawings.

2.5 FIELD-MOUNTED SIGNAL SOURCES

- A. Daylight Harvesting Switching Controls: Comply with Section 260923 "Lighting Control Devices." Control power may be taken from the lighting control panel, and signal shall be compatible with the relays.
- B. Indoor Occupancy Sensors: Comply with Section 260923 "Lighting Control Devices." Control power may be taken from the lighting control panel, and signal shall be compatible with the relays.

2.6 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Power Wiring to Supply Side of Class 2 Power Source: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Classes 2 and 3 Control Cables: Multiconductor cable with copper conductors not smaller than **No. 24** AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- C. Class 1 Control Cables: Multiconductor cable with copper conductors not smaller than **No. 18** AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- D. Twisted-Pair Data Cable: **Category 6**. Comply with requirements in Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store panels according to NECA 407.
- B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are damaged or rusted or have been subjected to water saturation.
- C. Examine elements and surfaces to receive panels for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 WIRING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters **and except in accessible ceiling spaces and in gypsum board partitions where unenclosed wiring method may be used.** Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
 - 1. Install plenum cable in environmental airspaces, including plenum ceilings.
 - 2. Comply with requirements for cable trays specified in Section 260536 "Cable Trays for Electrical Systems."
 - 3. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- C. Wiring Method: Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.
- D. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.

3.3 PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Install panels and accessories according to NECA 407.
- C. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- D. Mount top of trim **90 inches (2286 mm)** above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Mount panel cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box.

- F. Install filler plates in unused spaces.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs complying with Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- C. Create a directory to indicate loads served by each relay; incorporate Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Use a PC or typewriter to create directory; handwritten directories are unacceptable.
- D. Lighting Control Panel Nameplates: Label each panel with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. **Perform** startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Confirm correct communications wiring, initiate communications between panels, and program the lighting control system according to approved configuration schedules, time-of-day schedules, and input override assignments.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within **12** months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to **two** visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.7 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

- A. Technical Support: Beginning at Substantial Completion, service agreement shall include software support for **two** years.
- B. Upgrade Service: At Substantial Completion, update software to latest version. Install and program software upgrades that become available within **two** years from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system and new or revised licenses for using software.
 - 1. Upgrade Notice: At least **30** days to allow Owner to schedule and access the system and to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

- A. **Train** Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain the control unit and operator interface.

END OF SECTION 260943.23

SECTION 261200 - MEDIUM-VOLTAGE TRANSFORMERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following types of transformers with medium-voltage primaries:
 1. Liquid-filled distribution and power transformers.
 2. Dry-type distribution and power transformers.
 3. Pad-mounted, liquid-filled transformers.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. NETA ATS: Acceptance Testing Specification.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include rated nameplate data, capacities, weights, dimensions, minimum clearances, installed devices and features, location of each field connection, and performance for each type and size of transformer indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Diagram power **signal and control** wiring.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:
 1. Underground **primary and secondary** conduit stub-up location.
 2. Dimensioned concrete base, outline of transformer, and required clearances.
 3. Ground rod and grounding cable locations.
- B. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that transformer assembly and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Section 260548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems." Include the following:
 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.

- a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
 - b. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- C. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- D. Source quality-control test reports.
- E. Field quality-control test reports.
- F. Follow-up service reports.
- 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS
- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For transformer and accessories to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of transformers and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Section 016000 "Product Requirements."
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Comply with IEEE C2.
- D. Comply with ANSI C57.12.10, ANSI C57.12.28, IEEE C57.12.70, and IEEE C57.12.80.
- E. Comply with NFPA 70.
- 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Store transformers so condensation will not form on or in units. Provide temporary heating according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- 1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS
- A. Service Conditions: IEEE C37.121, usual service conditions except for the following:

1. Exposure to significant solar radiation.
2. Altitudes above 5500 feet (1000 m).
3. Exposure to fumes, vapors, or dust.
4. Exposure to explosive environments.
5. Exposure to hot and humid climate or to excessive moisture, including steam, salt spray, and dripping water.
6. Exposure to seismic shock or to abnormal vibration, shock, or tilting.
7. Exposure to excessively high or low temperatures.
8. Unusual transportation or storage conditions.
9. Unusual grounding-resistance conditions.
10. Unusual space limitations.

1.10 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified with concrete.
- B. Coordinate installation of louvers, doors, spill retention areas, and sumps. Coordinate installation so no piping or conduits are installed in space allocated for medium-voltage transformers except those directly associated with transformers.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Cooper Industries; Cooper Power Systems Division.
 2. Cutler-Hammer.
 3. Federal Pacific Transformer Company; Division of Electro-Mechanical Corp.
 4. GE Electrical Distribution & Control.
 5. Hammond Manufacturing; Transformer Group.
 6. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
 7. Square D; Schneider Electric.
 8. Engineer approved equal.

2.2 LIQUID-FILLED DISTRIBUTION AND POWER TRANSFORMERS

- A. Description: IEEE C57.12.00 and UL 1062, liquid-filled, 2-winding transformers.
- B. Insulating Liquid: Mineral oil, complying with ASTM D 3487, Type II, and tested according to ASTM D 117.

- C. Insulating Liquid: Less flammable, edible-seed-oil based, and UL listed as complying with NFPA 70 requirements for fire point of not less than 300 deg C when tested according to ASTM D 92. Liquid shall be biodegradable and nontoxic.
- D. Insulation Temperature Rise: 65/55 deg C, based on an average ambient temperature of 30 deg C over 24 hours with a maximum ambient temperature of 40 deg C. Insulation system shall be rated to continuously allow an additional 12 percent kilovolt-ampere output, at 65 deg C temperature rise, without decreasing rated transformer life.
- E. Insulation Temperature Rise: 65 deg C, based on an average ambient temperature of 30 deg C over 24 hours with a maximum ambient temperature of 40 deg C.
- F. Basic Impulse Level: Comply with UL 1062.
- G. Basic Impulse Level: **95** kV.
- H. Full-Capacity Voltage Taps: Four nominal 2.5 percent taps, 2 above and 2 below rated primary voltage; with externally operable tap changer for de-energized use and with position indicator and padlock hasp.
- I. Cooling System: Class **OA, self-cooled**. Cooling systems shall include auxiliary cooling equipment, automatic controls, and status indicating lights.
- J. Sound level may not exceed **sound levels listed in NEMA TR 1**, without fans operating.
- K. Impedance: 5.75 maximum percent.
- L. Accessories: Grounding pads, lifting lugs, and provisions for jacking under base. Transformers shall have a steel base and frame allowing use of pipe rollers in any direction, and an insulated, low-voltage, neutral bushing with removable ground strap. Include the following additional accessories:
 1. Liquid-level gage.
 2. Pressure-vacuum gage.
 3. Liquid temperature indicator.
 4. Drain and filter valves.
 5. Pressure relief device.

2.3 PAD-MOUNTED, LIQUID-FILLED TRANSFORMERS

- A. Description: ANSI C57.12.13, IEEE C57.12.00, pad-mounted, 2-winding transformers. Stainless-steel tank base **and cabinet**.
- B. Insulating Liquid: Less flammable, edible-seed-oil based, and UL listed as complying with NFPA 70 requirements for fire point of not less than 300 deg C when tested according to ASTM D 92. Liquid shall be biodegradable and nontoxic.
- C. Insulating Liquid: Less flammable, dielectric, and UL listed as complying with NFPA 70 requirements for fire point of not less than 300 deg C when tested according to ASTM D 92. Liquid shall be biodegradable and nontoxic.

- D. Insulating Liquid: Less flammable, silicone-based dielectric, and UL listed as complying with NFPA 70 requirements for fire point of not less than 300 deg C when tested according to ASTM D 92. Liquid shall have low toxicity and be nonhazardous.
- E. Insulation Temperature Rise: **65** deg C when operated at rated kVA output in a 40 deg C ambient temperature. Transformer shall be rated to operate at rated kilovolt ampere in an average ambient temperature of 30 deg C over 24 hours with a maximum ambient temperature of 40 deg C without loss of service life expectancy.
- F. Basic Impulse Level: **95** kV.
- G. Full-Capacity Voltage Taps: Four 2.5 percent taps, 2 above and 2 below rated high voltage; with externally operable tap changer for de-energized use and with position indicator and padlock hasp.
- H. High-Voltage Switch: **200** A, make-and-latch rating of 10-kA RMS, symmetrical, arranged for loop feed with 3-phase, 4-position, gang-operated, load-break switch that is oil immersed in transformer tank with hook-stick operating handle in primary compartment.
- I. Primary Fuses: 150-kV fuse assembly with fuses complying with IEEE C37.47. **Rating of current-limiting fuses shall be 50-kA RMS at specified system voltage.**
 - 1. Bay-O-Net liquid-immersed fuses that are externally replaceable without opening transformer tank.
- J. Surge Arresters: Distribution class, one for each primary phase; complying with IEEE C62.11 and NEMA LA 1; support from tank wall within high-voltage compartment. Transformers shall have **three arresters for loop-feed** circuits.
- K. High-Voltage Terminations and Equipment: Dead front with universal-type bushing wells for dead-front bushing-well inserts, complying with IEEE 386 and including the following:
 - 1. Bushing-Well Inserts: One for each high-voltage bushing well.
 - 2. Surge Arresters: Dead-front, elbow-type, metal-oxide-varistor units.
 - 3. Parking Stands: One for each high-voltage bushing well.
 - 4. Portable Insulated Bushings: Arranged for parking insulated, high-voltage, load-break cable terminators; one for each primary feeder conductor terminating at transformer.
- L. Accessories:
 - 1. Drain Valve: **1 inch (25 mm)**, with sampling device.
 - 2. Dial-type thermometer.
 - 3. Liquid-level gage.
 - 4. Pressure-vacuum gage.
 - 5. Pressure Relief Device: Self-sealing with an indicator.
 - 6. Mounting provisions for low-voltage current transformers.
 - 7. Mounting provisions for low-voltage potential transformers.
 - 8. Busway terminal connection at low-voltage compartment.
 - 9. Alarm contacts for gages and thermometer listed above.

2.4 IDENTIFICATION DEVICES

- A. Nameplates: Engraved, laminated-plastic or metal nameplate for each transformer, mounted with corrosion-resistant screws. Nameplates and label products are specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

2.5 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory Tests: Perform design and routine tests according to standards specified for components. Conduct transformer tests according to **ANSI C57.12.50**.
- B. Factory Tests: Perform the following factory-certified tests on each transformer:
 - 1. Resistance measurements of all windings on rated-voltage connection and on tap extreme connections.
 - 2. Ratios on rated-voltage connection and on tap extreme connections.
 - 3. Polarity and phase relation on rated-voltage connection.
 - 4. No-load loss at rated voltage on rated-voltage connection.
 - 5. Excitation current at rated voltage on rated-voltage connection.
 - 6. Impedance and load loss at rated current on rated-voltage connection and on tap extreme connections.
 - 7. Applied potential.
 - 8. Induced potential.
 - 9. Temperature Test: If transformer is supplied with auxiliary cooling equipment to provide more than one rating, test at lowest kilovolt-ampere Class OA or Class AA rating and highest kilovolt-ampere Class OA/FA or Class AA/FA rating.
 - a. Temperature test is not required if record of temperature test on an essentially duplicate unit is available.
 - 10. Owner will witness all required factory tests. Notify Architect at least 14 days before date of tests and indicate their approximate duration.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions for compliance with requirements for medium-voltage transformers.
- B. Examine roughing-in of conduits and grounding systems to verify the following:
 - 1. Wiring entries comply with layout requirements.
 - 2. Entries are within conduit-entry tolerances specified by manufacturer and no feeders will have to cross section barriers to reach load or line lugs.
- C. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and concrete bases for suitable mounting conditions where transformers will be installed.

- D. Verify that ground connections are in place and that requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems" have been met. Maximum ground resistance shall be 5 ohms at location of transformer.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install transformers on concrete bases.
 - 1. Anchor transformers to concrete bases according to manufacturer's written instructions, seismic codes at Project, and requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
 - 2. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than **4 inches (100 mm)** larger in both directions than supported unit and **4 inches (100 mm)** high.
 - 3. Use **3000-psi (20.7-MPa)**, 28-day compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in **Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."**
 - 4. Install dowel rods to connect concrete bases to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on **18-inch (450-mm)** centers around full perimeter of base.
 - 5. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts, for supported equipment, that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 - 6. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 7. Tack-weld or bolt transformers to channel-iron sills embedded in concrete bases. Install sills level and grout flush with floor or base.
- B. Maintain minimum clearances and workspace at equipment according to manufacturer's written instructions and NFPA 70.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify field-installed wiring and components and provide warning signs as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- B. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:

1. After installing transformers but before primary is energized, verify that grounding system at substation is tested at specified value or less.
 2. After installing transformers and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
 3. Perform visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA ATS. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- C. Test Reports: Prepare written reports to record the following:
1. Test procedures used.
 2. Test results that comply with requirements.
 3. Test results that do not comply with requirements and corrective actions taken to achieve compliance with requirements.

3.6 FOLLOW-UP SERVICE

- A. Voltage Monitoring and Adjusting: If requested by Owner, perform the following voltage monitoring after Substantial Completion but not more than six months after Final Acceptance:
1. During a period of normal load cycles as evaluated by Owner, perform seven days of three-phase voltage recording at secondary terminals of each transformer. Use voltmeters with calibration traceable to National Institute of Science and Technology standards and with a chart speed of not less than 1 inch (25 mm) per hour. Voltage unbalance greater than 1 percent between phases, or deviation of any phase voltage from nominal value by more than plus or minus 5 percent during test period, is unacceptable.
 2. Corrective Actions: If test results are unacceptable, perform the following corrective actions, as appropriate:
 - a. Adjust transformer taps.
 - b. Prepare written request for voltage adjustment by electric utility.
 3. Retests: After corrective actions have been performed, repeat monitoring until satisfactory results are obtained.
 4. Report: Prepare written report covering monitoring and corrective actions performed.
- B. Infrared Scanning: Perform as specified in Section 261300 "Medium-Voltage Switchgear."

END OF SECTION 261200

SECTION 261300 - MEDIUM-VOLTAGE SWITCHGEAR

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes **metal-enclosed interrupter** switchgear with the following optional components, features, and accessories:
 - 1. **Copper, silver-plated main bus at connection points and Copper, tin-plated main bus.**
 - 2. Analog instruments.
 - 3. Provisions for future devices.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ATS: Acceptance Testing Specifications.
- B. GFCI: Ground-Fault Circuit Interrupter.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of switchgear and related equipment, include the following:
 - 1. Rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories for individual **interrupter switches**.
 - 2. Time-current characteristic curves for overcurrent protective devices, including **fusible** devices.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each type of switchgear and related equipment, include the following:
 - 1. Dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details, including required clearances and service space around equipment. Show method of field assembly and location and size of each field connection. Include the following:
 - a. Tabulation of installed devices with features and ratings.
 - b. Outline and general arrangement drawing showing dimensions, shipping sections, and weights of each assembled section.
 - c. Drawing of cable termination compartments showing preferred locations for conduits and indicating space available for cable terminations.
 - d. Floor plan drawing showing locations for anchor bolts **and leveling channels**.

- e. Current ratings of buses.
 - f. Short-time and short-circuit ratings of switchgear assembly.
 - g. Nameplate legends.
 - h. Mimic-bus diagram.
 - i. Utility company's metering provisions with indication of approval by utility company.
2. Design Calculations: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Calculate requirements for selecting seismic restraints.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a member company of the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Person currently certified by the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or the National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies to supervise on-site testing specified in Part 3.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of switchgear and associated components through one source from a single manufacturer.
- D. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of switchgear and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Section 016000 "Product Requirements."
- E. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- F. Comply with IEEE C2.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver in sections of lengths that can be moved past obstructions in delivery path as indicated.
- B. Store switchgear indoors in clean dry space with uniform temperature to prevent condensation. Protect switchgear from exposure to dirt, fumes, water, corrosive substances, and physical damage.
- C. If stored in areas subjected to weather, cover switchgear to provide protection from weather, dirt, dust, corrosive substances, and physical damage. Remove loose packing and flammable

materials from inside switchgear; install electric heating (250 W per section) to prevent condensation.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation at indicated ampere ratings for the following conditions:
 - 1. Ambient temperature not exceeding **122 deg F (50 deg C)**.
 - 2. Altitude of 5600 ft above sea level.
- B. Installation Pathway: Remove and replace building components and structures to provide pathway for moving switchgear into place.
- C. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for switchgear, including clearances between switchgear and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of switchgear and components with other construction including conduit, piping, equipment, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required clearances for workspace and equipment access doors and panels.
- B. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified with concrete.

1.9 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Fuses: **Six** of each type and rating used. Include spares for future transformers, control power circuits, and fusible devices.
 - 2. Touchup Paint: **Three** containers of paint matching enclosure finish, each **0.5 pint (250 mL)**.
- B. Maintenance Tools: Furnish tools and miscellaneous items required for interrupter switchgear test, inspection, maintenance, and operation. Include the following:
 - 1. Fuse-handling tool.
 - 2. Extension rails, lifting device, transport or dockable dolly or mobile lift, and all other items necessary to remove circuit breaker from housing and transport to remote location.
 - 3. Racking handle to move circuit breaker manually between connected and disconnected positions, and a secondary test coupler to permit testing of circuit breaker without removal from switchgear.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.
 - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 MANUFACTURED UNITS

- A. Description: Factory assembled and tested, and complying with IEEE C37.20.1.
- B. Ratings: Suitable for application in 3-phase, 60-Hz, solidly grounded-neutral system.
- C. System Voltage: **12.47 kV nominal; 15 kV maximum.**

2.3 METAL-ENCLOSED INTERRUPTER SWITCHGEAR

- A. **Available Manufacturers:**
 - 1. [ABB Control, Inc.](#)
 - 2. [Eaton Corporation; Cutler-Hammer Products.](#)
 - 3. [S&C Electric Company.](#)
 - 4. [Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.](#)
 - 5. [Square D; Schneider Electric.](#)
 - 6. Engineer approved equal.
- B. Comply with IEEE C37.20.3.
- C. Design Level of Available-Source Fault Current: Integrated short-circuit rating consistent with value of fault current indicated.
- D. Ratings: Comply with standard ratings designated in IEEE C37.20.3 for maximum-rated voltage specified.
 - 1. Main-Bus Rating: **600 A**, continuous.
- E. Interrupter Switches: Stationary, gang operated, and suitable for application at maximum short-circuit rating of integrated switchgear assembly.
 - 1. Rating: **600-A** continuous duty and load break.
 - 2. Duty-Cycle, Fault Closing: **25,000** asymmetrical A.
 - 3. Switch Action: No external arc and no significant quantities of ionized gas released into the enclosure.

4. Switch Construction: Supported entirely by interior framework of structure, with copper switchblades and stored-energy operating mechanism.
 5. Phase Barriers: Full length of switchblades and fuses for each pole; designed for easy removal; allow visual inspection of switch components if barrier is in place.
 6. Protective Shields: Cover live components and terminals.
 7. Fuses: De-energized if switch is open.
- F. Mechanical Interlock: Prevent opening switch compartment door unless switchblades are open, and prevent closing switch if door is open.
- G. Window: Permit viewing switchblade positions if door is closed.
- H. Power Fuses: Comply with the following and with applicable requirements in NEMA SG 2:
1. Indicator: Integral with each fuse to indicate when it has blown.
 2. Mounting: Positively held in position with provision for easy removal and replacement from front without special tools.
 3. Current-Limiting Fuses: Full-range, fast-replaceable, current-limiting type that will operate without explosive noise or expulsion of gas, vapor, or foreign matter from tube.
 4. Expulsion Fuses: Furnished in disconnect-type mountings and renewable with replacement fuse units. Gases emitted on interruption are controlled and silenced by chambers designed for that purpose.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Outdoor Enclosure: Galvanized steel, weatherproof construction; integral structural-steel base frame with factory-applied asphaltic undercoating.
1. Each compartment shall have the following features:
 - a. Structural design and anchorage adequate to resist loads imposed by **125-mph (200-km/h)** wind.
 - b. Louvers equipped with insect and rodent screen and filter, and arranged to permit air circulation while excluding rodents and exterior dust.
 - c. Hinged front door with locking provisions.
- B. Finish: Manufacturer's standard gray finish over rust-inhibiting primer on phosphatizing-treated metal surfaces.
- C. Bus Transition Unit: Arranged to suit bus and adjacent units.
- D. Incoming-Line Unit: Arranged to suit incoming line.
- E. Outgoing Feeder Units: Arranged to suit distribution feeders.
- F. Auxiliary Compartments: Arranged to suit house meters, relays, controls, and auxiliary equipment; isolated from medium-voltage components.
- G. Key Interlocks: Arranged to effect interlocking schemes indicated.

- H. Provisions for Future Key Interlocks: Mountings and hardware required for future installation of locks, where indicated.

2.5 COMPONENTS

- A. Main Bus: **Copper, silver plated at connection points**; full length of switchgear.
- B. Ground Bus: Copper, silver plated or copper, tin plated; minimum size **1/4 by 2 inches (6 by 50 mm)**; full length of switchgear.
- C. Bus Insulation: Covered with flame-retardant insulation.
- D. Surge Arresters: Distribution class, metal-oxide-varistor type. Comply with NEMA LA 1.
 - 1. Install in cable termination compartments in each phase of circuit.
 - 2. Coordinate rating with circuit voltage.
- E. Provision for Future Devices: Equip compartments with rails, mounting brackets, supports, necessary appurtenances, and bus connections.

2.6 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Materials: Refer to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems." Identify units, devices, controls, and wiring.

2.7 FACTORY FINISHES

- A. Finish: Manufacturer's standard color finish applied to equipment before shipping.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine elements and surfaces to receive switchgear for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, required clearances, and other conditions affecting performance.
 - 1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Anchor switchgear assembly to **4-inch (100-mm)**, channel-iron sill embedded in **concrete base** and attach by bolting.
 - 1. Sills: Select to suit switchgear; level and grout flush into **concrete base**.

2. Design each fastener and support to carry load indicated by seismic requirements and according to seismic-restraint details. See Section 260548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems" for seismic-restraint requirements.
 3. Concrete Bases: 4 inches (100 mm) high, reinforced, with chamfered edges. Extend base no less than 3 inches (75 mm) in all directions beyond the maximum dimensions of switchgear, unless otherwise indicated or unless required for seismic anchor support. Construct concrete bases according to Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
- B. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from switchgear units and components.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Diagram and Instructions:
1. Frame under clear acrylic plastic on front of switchgear.
 - a. Operating Instructions: Printed basic instructions for switchgear, including control and key-interlock sequences and emergency procedures.
 - b. System Power Riser Diagrams: Depict power sources, feeders, distribution components, and major loads.
 2. Storage for Maintenance: Include a rack or holder, near the operating instructions, for a copy of maintenance manual.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Cable terminations at switchgear are specified in Section 260513 "Medium-Voltage Cables."
- B. Tighten bus joints, electrical connectors, and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values.
- C. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" and Section 260513 "Medium-Voltage Cables."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Prepare for acceptance tests as follows:
1. Test insulation resistance for each switchgear bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
 2. Test continuity of each circuit.

- B. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
 - 1. Perform each electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection stated in NETA ATS. Certify compliance with test parameters. Perform NETA tests and inspections for each of the following NETA categories:
 - a. Switchgear.
 - b. Surge arresters.
- C. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- D. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform infrared scan of each switchgear. Remove front and rear panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
 - 1. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each switchgear 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
 - 2. Instrument: Use an infrared-scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
 - 3. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies switchgear checked and that describes infrared-scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.6 CLEANING

- A. On completion of installation, inspect interior and exterior of switchgear. Vacuum dirt and debris; do not use compressed air to assist in cleaning. Repair damaged finishes.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain switchgear. Refer to Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION 261300

SECTION 262416 - PANELBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Distribution panelboards.
 - 2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. SVR: Suppressed voltage rating.
- B. TVSS: Transient voltage surge suppressor.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of panelboard, switching and overcurrent protective device, transient voltage suppression device, accessory, and component indicated. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.
 - 1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details. Show tabulations of installed devices, equipment features, and ratings.
 - 2. Detail enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
 - 3. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
 - 4. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
 - 5. Include evidence of NRTL listing for series rating of installed devices.
 - 6. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
 - 7. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
 - 8. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in panelboards. Submit on translucent log-log graft paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.
- C. Panelboard Schedules: For installation in panelboards.

- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For panelboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - 1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
 - 2. Time-current curves, including selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device that allows adjustments.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain panelboards, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for panelboards including clearances between panelboards and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Comply with NEMA PB 1.
- E. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside panelboards; install temporary electric heating (250 W per panelboard) to prevent condensation.
- B. Handle and prepare panelboards for installation according to NEMA PB 1.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations:
 - 1. Do not deliver or install panelboards until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above panelboards is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
 - 2. Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
 - a. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding minus 22 deg F (minus 30 deg C) to plus 104 deg F (plus 40 deg C).
 - b. Altitude: Not exceeding 7600 feet.
- B. Service Conditions: NEMA PB 1, usual service conditions, as follows:

1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.
2. Altitude not exceeding 7600 feet.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of panelboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace transient voltage suppression devices that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

1.10 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Keys: Two spares for each type of panelboard cabinet lock.
 2. Circuit Breakers Including GFCI and Ground Fault Equipment Protection (GFEP) Types: Two spares for each panelboard.
 3. Fuses for Fused Switches: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
 4. Fuses for Fused Power-Circuit Devices: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PANELBOARDS

- A. Fabricate and test panelboards according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- B. Enclosures: Flush- and surface-mounted cabinets.
 1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.

- a. Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
 - b. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
 - c. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
 - d. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, Type 12.
2. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover.
 3. Skirt for Surface-Mounted Panelboards: Same gage and finish as panelboard front with flanges for attachment to panelboard, wall, and ceiling or floor.
 4. Finishes:
 - a. Panels and Trim: Steel and galvanized steel, factory finished immediately after cleaning and pretreating with manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat.
 - b. Back Boxes: Galvanized steel.
 5. Directory Card: Inside panelboard door, mounted in metal frame with transparent protective cover.
- C. Incoming Mains Location: Top and/or bottom (as required for application).
- D. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses:
1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
 2. Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for feeder and branch-circuit equipment grounding conductors; bonded to box.
 3. Isolated Ground Bus: Adequate for branch-circuit isolated ground conductors; insulated from box.
 4. Extra-Capacity Neutral Bus: Neutral bus rated 200 percent of phase bus and UL listed as suitable for nonlinear loads.
- E. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
 2. Main and Neutral Lugs: Mechanical type.
 3. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Mechanical type.
 4. Feed-Through Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at opposite end of bus from incoming lugs or main device.
 5. Subfeed (Double) Lugs: Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
 6. Extra-Capacity Neutral Lugs: Rated 200 percent of phase lugs mounted on extra-capacity neutral bus.
- F. Service Equipment Label: NRTL labeled for use as service equipment for panelboards or load centers with one or more main service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.
- G. Future Devices: Mounting brackets, bus connections, filler plates, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.
- H. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Rated for series-connected system with integral or remote upstream overcurrent protective devices and labeled by an NRTL. Include size and type

of allowable upstream and branch devices, listed and labeled for series-connected short-circuit rating by an NRTL.

- I. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals.

2.2 DISTRIBUTION PANELBOARDS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
5. Engineer approved equal.

- B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, power and feeder distribution type.

- C. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.

1. For doors more than 36 inches (914 mm) high, provide two latches, keyed alike.

- D. Mains: Circuit breaker, Fused switch, or Lugs only as shown on the drawings.

- E. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes 125 A and Smaller: Bolt-on circuit breakers.

- F. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes Larger Than 125 A: Bolt-on circuit breakers; plug-in circuit breakers where individual positive-locking device requires mechanical release for removal.

- G. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Fused switches.

- H. Contactors in Main Bus: NEMA ICS 2, Class A, electrically held, general-purpose controller, with same short-circuit interrupting rating as panelboard.

1. Internal Control-Power Source: Control-power transformer, with fused primary and secondary terminals, connected to main bus ahead of contactor connection.
2. External Control-Power Source: 120-V branch circuit.

2.3 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.

- 5. Engineer approved equal.
- B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch-circuit type.
- C. Mains: Circuit breaker or lugs only.
- D. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.
- E. Contactors in Main Bus: NEMA ICS 2, Class A, electrically held, general-purpose controller, with same short-circuit interrupting rating as panelboard.
 - 1. Internal Control-Power Source: Control-power transformer, with fused primary and secondary terminals, connected to main bus ahead of contactor connection.
 - 2. External Control-Power Source: 120-V branch circuit.
- F. Doors: Concealed hinges; secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.

2.4 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
 - 2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
 - 3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
 - 4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
 - 5. Engineer approved equal.
- B. Molded-Case Circuit Breaker (MCCB): Comply with UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.
 - 1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads, and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
 - 2. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
 - 3. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
 - 4. Ground-Fault Equipment Protection (GFEP) Circuit Breakers: Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
 - 5. Molded-Case Circuit-Breaker (MCCB) Features and Accessories:
 - a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
 - b. Lugs: Mechanical style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
 - c. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge (HID) lighting circuits.

- d. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
- e. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage with field-adjustable 0.1- to 0.6-second time delay.
- f. Multipole units enclosed in a single housing or factory assembled to operate as a single unit.
- g. Handle Padlocking Device: Fixed attachment, for locking circuit-breaker handle in on or off position.

2.5 ACCESSORY COMPONENTS AND FEATURES

- A. Accessory Set: Include tools and miscellaneous items required for overcurrent protective device test, inspection, maintenance, and operation.
- B. Portable Test Set: For testing functions of solid-state trip devices without removing from panelboard. Include relay and meter test plugs suitable for testing panelboard meters and switchboard class relays.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store panelboards according to NEMA PB 1.1.
- B. Examine panelboards before installation. Reject panelboards that are damaged or rusted or have been subjected to water saturation.
- C. Examine elements and surfaces to receive panelboards for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install panelboards and accessories according to NEMA PB 1.1.
- B. Equipment Mounting: Install panelboards on concrete bases, 4-inch (100-mm) nominal thickness. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 - 1. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around full perimeter of base.
 - 2. For panelboards, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 - 3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to panelboards.
 - 5. Attach panelboard to the vertical finished or structural surface behind the panelboard.

- C. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from panelboards.
- D. Mount top of trim 90 inches (2286 mm) above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish and mating with back box.
- F. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.
 - 1. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges.
- G. Install filler plates in unused spaces.
- H. Stub four 1-inch (27-GRC) empty conduits from panelboard into accessible ceiling space or space designated to be ceiling space in the future. Stub four 1-inch (27-GRC) empty conduits into raised floor space or below slab not on grade.
- I. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties.
- J. Comply with NECA 1.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs complying with Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads; incorporate Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Use a computer or typewriter to create directory; handwritten directories are not acceptable.
- C. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- D. Device Nameplates: Label each branch circuit device in distribution panelboards with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust moving parts and operable component to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.

END OF SECTION 262416

SECTION 262726 - WIRING DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Receptacles, receptacles with integral GFCI, and associated device plates.
 - 2. Snap switches.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- C. Pigtail: Short lead used to connect a device to a branch-circuit conductor.
- D. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.
- E. TVSS: Transient voltage surge suppressor.
- F. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: List of legends and description of materials and process used for premarking wall plates.
- C. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wiring devices to include in all manufacturers' packing label warnings and instruction manuals that include labeling conditions.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of wiring device and associated wall plate through one source from a single manufacturer. Insofar as they are available, obtain all wiring devices and associated wall plates from a single manufacturer and one source.

- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Receptacles for Owner-Furnished Equipment: Match plug configurations.
 - 1. Cord and Plug Sets: Match equipment requirements.

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers' Names: Shortened versions (shown in parentheses) of the following manufacturers' names are used in other Part 2 articles:
 - 1. Cooper Wiring Devices; a division of Cooper Industries, Inc. (Cooper).
 - 2. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems (Hubbell).
 - 3. Leviton Mfg. Company Inc. (Leviton).
 - 4. Pass & Seymour/Legrand; Wiring Devices & Accessories (Pass & Seymour).
 - 5. Engineer approved equal.

2.2 STRAIGHT BLADE RECEPTACLES

- A. Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R, and UL 498.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Cooper; 5351 (single), 5352 (duplex).
 - b. Hubbell; HBL5351 (single), CR5352 (duplex).
 - c. Leviton; 5891 (single), 5352 (duplex).
 - d. Pass & Seymour; 5381 (single), 5352 (duplex).
 - e. Engineer approved equal.

2.3 GFCI RECEPTACLES

- A. General Description: Straight blade, feed-through type. Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6, UL 498, and UL 943, Class A, and include indicator light that is lighted when device is tripped.

B. Duplex GFCI Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Cooper; GF20.
 - b. Pass & Seymour; 2084.
 - c. Engineer approved equal.

2.4 SNAP SWITCHES

A. Comply with NEMA WD 1 and UL 20.

B. Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Cooper; 2221 (single pole), 2222 (two pole), 2223 (three way), 2224 (four way).
 - b. Hubbell; CS1221 (single pole), CS1222 (two pole), CS1223 (three way), CS1224 (four way).
 - c. Leviton; 1221-2 (single pole), 1222-2 (two pole), 1223-2 (three way), 1224-2 (four way).
 - d. Pass & Seymour; 20AC1 (single pole), 20AC2 (two pole), 20AC3 (three way), 20AC4 (four way).
 - e. Engineer approved equal.

2.5 WALL PLATES

A. Single and combination types to match corresponding wiring devices.

1. Plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match plate finish.
2. Material for Finished Spaces: Smooth, high-impact thermoplastic or 0.035-inch- (1-mm-) thick, satin-finished stainless steel.
3. Material for Unfinished Spaces: Galvanized steel.
4. Material for Damp Locations: Cast aluminum with spring-loaded lift cover, and listed and labeled for use in "wet locations."

B. Wet-Location, Weatherproof Cover Plates: NEMA 250, complying with type 3R weather-resistant, die-cast aluminum with lockable cover.

2.6 FINISHES

A. Color: Wiring device catalog numbers in Section Text do not designate device color.

1. Wiring Devices Connected to Normal Power System: As selected by Architect, unless otherwise indicated or required by NFPA 70 or device listing.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1, including mounting heights listed in that standard, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Coordination with Other Trades:
 - 1. Protect installed devices and their boxes. Do not place wall finish materials over device boxes, and do not cut holes for boxes with routers that are guided by riding against outside of boxes.
 - 2. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.
 - 3. Install device boxes in brick or block walls so that the cover plate does not cross a joint unless the joint is troweled flush with the face of the wall.
 - 4. Install wiring devices after all wall preparation, including painting, is complete.
- C. Conductors:
 - 1. Do not strip insulation from conductors until right before they are spliced or terminated on devices.
 - 2. Strip insulation evenly around the conductor using tools designed for the purpose. Avoid scoring or nicking of solid wire or cutting strands from stranded wire.
 - 3. The length of free conductors at outlets for devices shall comply with NFPA 70, Article 300, without pigtails.
 - 4. Existing Conductors:
 - a. Cut back and pigtail, or replace all damaged conductors.
 - b. Straighten conductors that remain and remove corrosion and foreign matter.
 - c. Pigtail existing conductors is permitted, provided the outlet box is large enough.
- D. Device Installation:
 - 1. Replace devices that have been in temporary use during construction and that were installed before building finishing operations were complete.
 - 2. Keep each wiring device in its package or otherwise protected until it is time to connect conductors.
 - 3. Do not remove surface protection, such as plastic film and smudge covers, until the last possible moment.
 - 4. Connect devices to branch circuits using pigtails that are not less than 6 inches (152 mm) in length.
 - 5. When there is a choice, use side wiring with binding-head screw terminals. Wrap solid conductor tightly clockwise, two-thirds to three-fourths of the way around terminal screw.
 - 6. Use a torque screwdriver when a torque is recommended or required by manufacturer.
 - 7. When conductors larger than No. 12 AWG are installed on 15- or 20-A circuits, splice No. 12 AWG pigtails for device connections.
 - 8. Tighten unused terminal screws on the device.

9. When mounting into metal boxes, remove the fiber or plastic washers used to hold device-mounting screws in yokes, allowing metal-to-metal contact.

E. Receptacle Orientation:

1. Install ground pin of vertically mounted receptacles down, and on horizontally mounted receptacles to the right.

F. Device Plates: Do not use oversized or extra-deep plates. Repair wall finishes and remount outlet boxes when standard device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening.

G. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical and with grounding terminal of receptacles on top. Group adjacent switches under single, multigang wall plates.

H. Adjust locations of floor service outlets and service poles to suit arrangement of partitions and furnishings.

3.2 GFCI RECEPTACLES

- A. Install non-feed-through GFCI receptacles where protection of downstream receptacles is not required.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify each receptacle with panelboard identification and circuit number. Use hot, stamped, or engraved machine printing with black-filled lettering on face of plate, and durable wire markers or tags inside outlet boxes.
- C. Essential Electrical System: Mark receptacles supplied from the essential electrical system to allow easy identification using a self-adhesive label.

END OF SECTION 262726

SECTION 262813 - FUSES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Cartridge fuses rated 600-V ac and less for use in control circuits, enclosed switches and switchboards.
2. Spare-fuse cabinets.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material, dimensions, descriptions of individual components, and finishes for spare-fuse cabinets. Include the following for each fuse type indicated:

1. Ambient Temperature Adjustment Information: If ratings of fuses have been adjusted to accommodate ambient temperatures, provide list of fuses with adjusted ratings.
 - a. For each fuse having adjusted ratings, include location of fuse, original fuse rating, local ambient temperature, and adjusted fuse rating.
 - b. Provide manufacturer's technical data on which ambient temperature adjustment calculations are based.
2. Dimensions and manufacturer's technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, and ratings.
3. Current-limitation curves for fuses with current-limiting characteristics.
4. Fuse sizes for elevator feeders and elevator disconnect switches.

- B. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fuses to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

1. Ambient temperature adjustment information.
2. Current-limitation curves for fuses with current-limiting characteristics.
3. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) and current-limitation curves (instantaneous peak let-through current) for each type and rating of fuse. Submit on translucent log-log graph paper.
4. Coordination charts and tables and related data.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain fuses, for use within a specific product or circuit, from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Comply with NEMA FU 1 for cartridge fuses.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.
- E. Comply with UL 248-11 for plug fuses.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Where ambient temperature to which fuses are directly exposed is less than 40 deg F (5 deg C) or more than 100 deg F (38 deg C), apply manufacturer's ambient temperature adjustment factors to fuse ratings.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate fuse ratings with utilization equipment nameplate limitations of maximum fuse size and with system short-circuit current levels.

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Cooper Bussmann, Inc.
 - 2. Edison Fuse, Inc.
 - 3. Ferraz Shawmut, Inc.
 - 4. Littelfuse, Inc.
 - 5. Engineer approved equal.

2.2 CARTRIDGE FUSES

- A. Characteristics: NEMA FU 1, nonrenewable cartridge fuses with voltage ratings consistent with circuit voltages.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine fuses before installation. Reject fuses that are moisture damaged or physically damaged.
- B. Examine holders to receive fuses for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance, such as rejection features.
- C. Examine utilization equipment nameplates and installation instructions. Install fuses of sizes and with characteristics appropriate for each piece of equipment.
- D. Evaluate ambient temperatures to determine if fuse rating adjustment factors must be applied to fuse ratings.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 FUSE APPLICATIONS

- A. Cartridge Fuses:
 - 1. Service Entrance: Class RK1, time delay.
 - 2. Feeders: Class RK1, time delay.
 - 3. Motor Branch Circuits: Class RK1, time delay.
 - 4. Other Branch Circuits: Class RK1, time delay.
 - 5. Control Circuits: Class CC, time delay.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install fuses in fusible devices. Arrange fuses so rating information is readable without removing fuse.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install labels complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems" and indicating fuse replacement information on inside door of each fused switch and adjacent to each fuse block, socket, and holder.

END OF SECTION 262813

SECTION 262816 - ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Fusible switches.
 - 2. Nonfusible switches.
 - 3. Molded-case circuit breakers (MCCBs).
 - 4. Enclosures.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. NC: Normally closed.
- B. NO: Normally open.
- C. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated. Include dimensioned elevations, sections, weights, and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.
 - 1. Enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
 - 2. Current and voltage ratings.
 - 3. Short-circuit current ratings (interrupting and withstand, as appropriate).
 - 4. Include evidence of NRTL listing for series rating of installed devices.
 - 5. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and auxiliary components.
- B. Shop Drawings: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL.
 - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain enclosed switches and circuit breakers, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories, within same product category, from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for enclosed switches and circuit breakers, including clearances between enclosures, and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- E. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Ambient Temperature: Not less than minus 22 deg F (minus 30 deg C) and not exceeding 104 deg F (40 deg C).
 - 2. Altitude: Not exceeding 7600 feet.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of switches, circuit breakers, and components with equipment served and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
 - 2. Fuse Pullers: one for each size and type.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
 2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
 3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
 4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
 5. Engineer approved equal.
- B. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Single Throw, 600-V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate specified fuses, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- C. Accessories:
1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
 2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 3. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 4. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
 5. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.
 6. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

2.2 NONFUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
 2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
 3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
 4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
 5. Engineer approved equal.
- B. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Single Throw, 600-V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- C. Accessories:
1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.

2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
3. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
4. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.

2.3 MOLDED-CASE CIRCUIT BREAKERS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
 2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
 3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
 4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
 5. Engineer approved equal.
- B. General Requirements: Comply with UL 489, NEMA AB 1, and NEMA AB 3, with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents.
- C. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
- D. Adjustable, Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
- E. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller, and let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
- F. Integrally Fused Circuit Breakers: Thermal-magnetic trip element with integral limiter-style fuse listed for use with circuit breaker and trip activation on fuse opening or on opening of fuse compartment door.
- G. Ground-Fault, Circuit-Interrupter (GFCI) Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
- H. Ground-Fault, Equipment-Protection (GFEP) Circuit Breakers: With Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
- I. Features and Accessories:
 1. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
 2. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
 3. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge lighting circuits.
 4. Ground-Fault Protection: Comply with UL 1053; integrally mounted, self-powered type with mechanical ground-fault indicator; relay with adjustable pickup and time-delay

settings, push-to-test feature, internal memory, and shunt trip unit; and three-phase, zero-sequence current transformer/sensor.

5. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
6. Auxiliary Contacts: Two SPDT switches with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.

2.4 ENCLOSURES

- A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: NEMA AB 1, NEMA KS 1, NEMA 250, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
 1. Indoor, Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
 2. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine elements and surfaces to receive enclosed switches and circuit breakers for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install individual wall-mounted switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.
- C. Install fuses in fusible devices.
- D. Comply with NECA 1.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
 2. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges.

END OF SECTION 262816

SECTION 263213 - ENGINE GENERATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes packaged engine-generator sets for standby power supply with the following features:
 - 1. Natural Gas engine.
 - 2. Unit-mounted cooling system.
 - 3. Unit-mounted control and monitoring.
 - 4. Outdoor enclosure.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Operational Bandwidth: The total variation from the lowest to highest value of a parameter over the range of conditions indicated, expressed as a percentage of the nominal value of the parameter.
- B. LP: Liquid petroleum.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of packaged engine generator indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. In addition, include the following:
 - 1. Thermal damage curve for generator.
 - 2. Time-current characteristic curves for generator protective device.
- B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 1. Dimensioned outline plan and elevation drawings of engine-generator set and other components specified.
 - 2. Design Calculations: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.

3. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Detail fabrication, including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include base weights.
 4. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Source quality-control test reports.
1. Certified summary of prototype-unit test report.
 2. Certified Test Reports: For components and accessories that are equivalent, but not identical, to those tested on prototype unit.
 3. Certified Summary of Performance Tests: Certify compliance with specified requirement to meet performance criteria for sensitive loads.
 4. Report of factory test on units to be shipped for this Project, showing evidence of compliance with specified requirements.
 5. Report of sound generation.
 6. Report of exhaust emissions showing compliance with applicable regulations.
- D. Field quality-control test reports.
- E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For packaged engine generators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
1. List of tools and replacement items recommended to be stored at Project for ready access. Include part and drawing numbers, current unit prices, and source of supply.
- F. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.
1. Maintenance Proximity: Not more than four hours' normal travel time from Installer's place of business to Project site.
 2. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of data for vibration isolators and seismic restraints of engine skid mounts, including Shop Drawings, based on testing and engineering analysis of manufacturer's standard units in assemblies similar to those indicated for this Project.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer. Maintain, within 200 miles (321 km) of Project site, a service center capable of providing training, parts, and emergency maintenance repairs.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain packaged generator sets and auxiliary components through one source from a single manufacturer.
- D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

- E. Comply with ASME B15.1.
- F. Comply with NFPA 37.
- G. Comply with NFPA 70.
- H. Comply with UL 2200.
- I. Engine Exhaust Emissions: Comply with applicable state and local government requirements.
- J. Noise Emission: Comply with applicable state and local government requirements for maximum noise level at adjacent property boundaries due to sound emitted by generator set including engine, engine exhaust, engine cooling-air intake and discharge, and other components of installation.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Conditions: Engine-generator system shall withstand the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of performance capability:
 - 1. Ambient Temperature: Minus 15 to plus 40 deg C.
 - 2. Relative Humidity: 0 to 95 percent.
 - 3. Altitude: Sea level to 7600 feet.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases for package engine generators. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases.
- B. Coordinate size and location of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations for remote radiators. These items are specified in Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories."

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of packaged engine generators and associated auxiliary components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: 2 years from date of Substantial Completion.

1.9 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, provide 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of manufacturer's designated service organization. Include quarterly exercising to check for proper starting, load transfer, and running under load. Include routine preventive maintenance as recommended by manufacturer and adjusting as required for

proper operation. Provide parts and supplies same as those used in the manufacture and installation of original equipment.

1.10 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Fuses: One for every 10 of each type and rating, but no fewer than one of each.
 - 2. Indicator Lamps: Two for every six of each type used, but no fewer than two of each.
 - 3. Filters: One set each of lubricating oil, fuel, and combustion-air filters.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Caterpillar; Engine Div.
 - 2. Generac Power Systems, Inc.
 - 3. Kohler Co.; Generator Division.
 - 4. Onan/Cummins Power Generation; Industrial Business Group.
 - 5. Spectrum Detroit Diesel.
 - 6. Engineer approved equal.

2.2 ENGINE-GENERATOR SET

- A. Factory-assembled and -tested, engine-generator set.
- B. Mounting Frame: Maintain alignment of mounted components without depending on concrete foundation; and have lifting attachments.
 - 1. Rigging Diagram: Inscribed on metal plate permanently attached to mounting frame to indicate location and lifting capacity of each lifting attachment and generator-set center of gravity.
- C. Capacities and Characteristics:
 - 1. Power Output Ratings: Nominal ratings as indicated.
 - 2. Output Connections: Three-phase, four wire.
 - 3. Nameplates: For each major system component to identify manufacturer's name and address, and model and serial number of component.
- D. Generator-Set Performance:
 - 1. Steady-State Voltage Operational Bandwidth: 3 percent of rated output voltage from no load to full load.

2. Transient Voltage Performance: Not more than 20 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Voltage shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within three seconds.
3. Steady-State Frequency Operational Bandwidth: 0.5 percent of rated frequency from no load to full load.
4. Steady-State Frequency Stability: When system is operating at any constant load within the rated load, there shall be no random speed variations outside the steady-state operational band and no hunting or surging of speed.
5. Transient Frequency Performance: Less than 5 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Frequency shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within five seconds.
6. Output Waveform: At no load, harmonic content measured line to line or line to neutral shall not exceed 5 percent total and 3 percent for single harmonics. Telephone influence factor, determined according to NEMA MG 1, shall not exceed 50 percent.
7. Sustained Short-Circuit Current: For a 3-phase, bolted short circuit at system output terminals, system shall supply a minimum of 250 percent of rated full-load current for not less than 10 seconds and then clear the fault automatically, without damage to generator system components.
8. Start Time: Comply with NFPA 110, Type 10, system requirements.

2.3 ENGINE

- A. Fuel: Natural gas.
- B. Rated Engine Speed: 1800 rpm.
- C. Maximum Piston Speed for Four-Cycle Engines: 2250 fpm (11.4 m/s).
- D. Lubrication System: The following items are mounted on engine or skid:
 1. Filter and Strainer: Rated to remove 90 percent of particles 5 micrometers and smaller while passing full flow.
 2. Thermostatic Control Valve: Control flow in system to maintain optimum oil temperature. Unit shall be capable of full flow and is designed to be fail-safe.
 3. Crankcase Drain: Arranged for complete gravity drainage to an easily removable container with no disassembly and without use of pumps, siphons, special tools, or appliances.
- E. Engine Fuel System:
 1. Main Fuel Pump: Mounted on engine. Pump ensures adequate primary fuel flow under starting and load conditions.
 2. Relief-Bypass Valve: Automatically regulates pressure in fuel line and returns excess fuel to source.
 3. Dual Natural Gas with LP-Gas Backup (Vapor-Withdrawal) System:
 - a. Carburetor.
 - b. Secondary Gas Regulators: One for each fuel type.
 - c. Fuel-Shutoff Solenoid Valves: One for each fuel source.
 - d. Flexible Fuel Connectors: One for each fuel source.

- F. Coolant Jacket Heater: Electric-immersion type, factory installed in coolant jacket system. Comply with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 1 equipment for heater capacity.
- G. Governor: Mechanical.
- H. Cooling System: Closed loop, liquid cooled, with radiator factory mounted on engine-generator-set mounting frame and integral engine-driven coolant pump.
 - 1. Coolant: Solution of 50 percent ethylene-glycol-based antifreeze and 50 percent water, with anticorrosion additives as recommended by engine manufacturer.
 - 2. Size of Radiator: Adequate to contain expansion of total system coolant from cold start to 110 percent load condition.
 - 3. Expansion Tank: Constructed of welded steel plate and rated to withstand maximum closed-loop coolant system pressure for engine used. Equip with gage glass and petcock.
 - 4. Temperature Control: Self-contained, thermostatic-control valve modulates coolant flow automatically to maintain optimum constant coolant temperature as recommended by engine manufacturer.
 - 5. Coolant Hose: Flexible assembly with inside surface of nonporous rubber and outer covering of aging-, ultraviolet-, and abrasion-resistant fabric.
 - a. Rating: 50-psig (345-kPa) maximum working pressure with coolant at 180 deg F (82 deg C), and noncollapsible under vacuum.
 - b. End Fittings: Flanges or steel pipe nipples with clamps to suit piping and equipment connections.
- I. Muffler/Silencer: Industrial type, sized as recommended by engine manufacturer and selected with exhaust piping system to not exceed engine manufacturer's engine backpressure requirements.
 - 1. Minimum sound attenuation of 12 dB at 500 Hz.
 - 2. Sound level measured at a distance of 25 feet (8 m) from exhaust discharge after installation is complete shall be 87 dBA or less.
- J. Air-Intake Filter: Standard-duty, engine-mounted air cleaner with replaceable dry-filter element and "blocked filter" indicator.
- K. Starting System: 12-V electric, with negative ground.
 - 1. Components: Sized so they will not be damaged during a full engine-cranking cycle with ambient temperature at maximum specified in Part 1 "Project Conditions" Article.
 - 2. Cranking Motor: Heavy-duty unit that automatically engages and releases from engine flywheel without binding.
 - 3. Cranking Cycle: 60 seconds.
 - 4. Battery: Adequate capacity within ambient temperature range specified in Part 1 "Project Conditions" Article to provide specified cranking cycle at least three times without recharging.
 - 5. Battery Cable: Size as recommended by engine manufacturer for cable length indicated. Include required interconnecting conductors and connection accessories.
 - 6. Battery Compartment: Factory fabricated of metal with acid-resistant finish and thermal insulation. Thermostatically controlled heater shall be arranged to maintain battery above 10 deg C regardless of external ambient temperature within range specified in Part 1

"Project Conditions" Article. Include accessories required to support and fasten batteries in place.

7. Battery-Charging Alternator: Factory mounted on engine with solid-state voltage regulation and 35-A minimum continuous rating.
8. Battery Charger: Current-limiting, automatic-equalizing and float-charging type. Unit shall comply with UL 1236 and include the following features:
 - a. Operation: Equalizing-charging rate of 10 A shall be initiated automatically after battery has lost charge until an adjustable equalizing voltage is achieved at battery terminals. Unit shall then be automatically switched to a lower float-charging mode and shall continue to operate in that mode until battery is discharged again.
 - b. Automatic Temperature Compensation: Adjust float and equalize voltages for variations in ambient temperature from minus 40 deg C to plus 60 deg C to prevent overcharging at high temperatures and undercharging at low temperatures.
 - c. Automatic Voltage Regulation: Maintain constant output voltage regardless of input voltage variations up to plus or minus 10 percent.
 - d. Ammeter and Voltmeter: Flush mounted in door. Meters shall indicate charging rates.
 - e. Safety Functions: Sense abnormally low battery voltage and close contacts providing low battery voltage indication on control and monitoring panel. Sense high battery voltage and loss of ac input or dc output of battery charger. Either condition shall close contacts that provide a battery-charger malfunction indication at system control and monitoring panel.
 - f. Enclosure and Mounting: NEMA 250, Type 1, wall-mounted cabinet.

2.4 CONTROL AND MONITORING

- A. Automatic Starting System Sequence of Operation: When mode-selector switch on the control and monitoring panel is in the automatic position, remote-control contacts in one or more separate automatic transfer switches initiate starting and stopping of generator set. When mode-selector switch is switched to the on position, generator set starts. The off position of same switch initiates generator-set shutdown. When generator set is running, specified system or equipment failures or derangements automatically shut down generator set and initiate alarms. Operation of a remote emergency-stop switch also shuts down generator set.
- B. Manual Starting System Sequence of Operation: Switching on-off switch on the generator control panel to the on position starts generator set. The off position of same switch initiates generator-set shutdown. When generator set is running, specified system or equipment failures or derangements automatically shut down generator set and initiate alarms. Operation of a remote emergency-stop switch also shuts down generator set.
- C. Configuration: Operating and safety indications, protective devices, basic system controls, and engine gages shall be grouped in a common wall-mounted control and monitoring panel.
- D. Indicating and Protective Devices and Controls:
 1. AC voltmeter.
 2. AC ammeter.
 3. AC frequency meter.
 4. DC voltmeter (alternator battery charging).

5. Engine-coolant temperature gage.
 6. Engine lubricating-oil pressure gage.
 7. Running-time meter.
 8. Ammeter-voltmeter, phase-selector switch(es).
 9. Generator-voltage adjusting rheostat.
 10. Start-stop switch.
 11. Overspeed shutdown device.
 12. Coolant high-temperature shutdown device.
 13. Coolant low-level shutdown device.
 14. Oil low-pressure shutdown device.
 15. Fuel tank derangement alarm.
 16. Fuel tank high-level shutdown of fuel supply alarm.
 17. Generator overload.
- E. Supporting Items: Include sensors, transducers, terminals, relays, and other devices and include wiring required to support specified items. Locate sensors and other supporting items on engine or generator, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Connection to Data Link: A separate terminal block, factory wired to Form C dry contacts, for each alarm and status indication is reserved for connections for data-link transmission of indications to remote data terminals. Data system connections to terminals are covered in Division 26 Section "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."

2.5 GENERATOR OVERCURRENT AND FAULT PROTECTION

- A. Generator Circuit Breaker: Molded-case, thermal-magnetic type; 100 percent rated; complying with NEMA AB 1 and UL 489.
1. Tripping Characteristic: Designed specifically for generator protection.
 2. Trip Rating: Matched to generator rating.
 3. Shunt Trip: Connected to trip breaker when generator set is shut down by other protective devices.
 4. Mounting: Adjacent to or integrated with control and monitoring panel.
- B. Generator Disconnect Switch: Molded-case type, 100 percent rated.
1. Rating: Matched to generator output rating.
 2. Shunt Trip: Connected to trip switch when signaled by generator protector or by other protective devices.
- C. Generator Protector: Microprocessor-based unit shall continuously monitor current level in each phase of generator output, integrate generator heating effect over time, and predict when thermal damage of alternator will occur. When signaled by generator protector or other generator-set protective devices, a shunt-trip device in the generator disconnect switch shall open the switch to disconnect the generator from load circuits. Protector shall perform the following functions:
1. Initiates a generator overload alarm when generator has operated at an overload equivalent to 110 percent of full-rated load for 60 seconds. Indication for this alarm is integrated with other generator-set malfunction alarms.

2. Under single or three-phase fault conditions, regulates generator to 300 percent of rated full-load current for up to 10 seconds.
 3. As overcurrent heating effect on the generator approaches the thermal damage point of the unit, protector switches the excitation system off, opens the generator disconnect device, and shuts down the generator set.
 4. Senses clearing of a fault by other overcurrent devices and controls recovery of rated voltage to avoid overshoot.
- D. Ground-Fault Indication: Comply with NFPA 70, "Emergency System" signals for ground-fault. Integrate ground-fault alarm indication with other generator-set alarm indications.

2.6 GENERATOR, EXCITER, AND VOLTAGE REGULATOR

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1.
- B. Drive: Generator shaft shall be directly connected to engine shaft. Exciter shall be rotated integrally with generator rotor.
- C. Electrical Insulation: Class H or Class F.
- D. Stator-Winding Leads: Brought out to terminal box to permit future reconnection for other voltages if required.
- E. Construction shall prevent mechanical, electrical, and thermal damage due to vibration, overspeed up to 125 percent of rating, and heat during operation at 110 percent of rated capacity.
- F. Enclosure: Drip proof.
- G. Instrument Transformers: Mounted within generator enclosure.
- H. Voltage Regulator: Solid-state type, separate from exciter, providing performance as specified.
 1. Adjusting rheostat on control and monitoring panel shall provide plus or minus 5 percent adjustment of output-voltage operating band.
- I. Strip Heater: Thermostatically controlled unit arranged to maintain stator windings above dew point.
- J. Windings: Two-thirds pitch stator winding and fully linked amortisseur winding.
- K. Sub-transient Reactance: 12 percent, maximum.

2.7 OUTDOOR GENERATOR-SET ENCLOSURE

- A. Description: Vandal-resistant, weatherproof steel housing, wind resistant up to 100 mph (160 km/h). Multiple panels shall be lockable and provide adequate access to components requiring maintenance. Panels shall be removable by one person without tools. Instruments and control shall be mounted within enclosure.

2.8 FINISHES

- A. Indoor and Outdoor Enclosures and Components: Manufacturer's standard finish over corrosion-resistant pretreatment and compatible primer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, equipment bases, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation and other conditions affecting packaged engine-generator performance.
- B. Examine roughing-in of piping systems and electrical connections. Verify actual locations of connections before packaged engine-generator installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with packaged engine-generator manufacturers' written installation and alignment instructions and with NFPA 110.
- B. Install packaged engine generator to provide access, without removing connections or accessories, for periodic maintenance.
- C. Install Schedule 40, black steel piping with welded joints and connect to engine muffler. Install thimble at wall. Piping shall be same diameter as muffler outlet. Flexible connectors and steel piping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 23 Section "Hydronic Piping."
 - 1. Install condensate drain piping to muffler drain outlet full size of drain connection with a shutoff valve, stainless-steel flexible connector, and Schedule 40, black steel pipe with welded joints. Flexible connectors and piping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 23 Section "Hydronic Piping."
- D. Electrical Wiring: Install electrical devices furnished by equipment manufacturers but not specified to be factory mounted.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect fuel, cooling-system, and exhaust-system piping adjacent to packaged engine generator to allow service and maintenance.
- B. Connect engine exhaust pipe to engine with flexible connector.
- C. Connect fuel piping to engines with a gate valve and union and flexible connector.

- D. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- E. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components according to Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections. Report results in writing.
- C. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- D. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Perform tests recommended by manufacturer and each electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection for "AC Generators and for Emergency Systems" specified in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 - 2. Battery Tests: Equalize charging of battery cells according to manufacturer's written instructions. Record individual cell voltages.
 - a. Measure charging voltage and voltages between available battery terminals for full-charging and float-charging conditions. Check electrolyte level and specific gravity under both conditions.
 - b. Test for contact integrity of all connectors. Perform an integrity load test and a capacity load test for the battery.
 - c. Verify acceptance of charge for each element of the battery after discharge.
 - d. Verify that measurements are within manufacturer's specifications.
 - 3. Battery-Charger Tests: Verify specified rates of charge for both equalizing and float-charging conditions.
 - 4. System Integrity Tests: Methodically verify proper installation, connection, and integrity of each element of engine-generator system before and during system operation. Check for air, exhaust, and fluid leaks.
 - 5. Exhaust-System Back-Pressure Test: Use a manometer with a scale exceeding 40-inch wg (120 kPa). Connect to exhaust line close to engine exhaust manifold. Verify that

back pressure at full-rated load is within manufacturer's written allowable limits for the engine.

6. Exhaust Emissions Test: Comply with applicable government test criteria.
 7. Voltage and Frequency Transient Stability Tests: Use recording oscilloscope to measure voltage and frequency transients for 50 and 100 percent step-load increases and decreases, and verify that performance is as specified.
- E. Coordinate tests with tests for transfer switches and run them concurrently.
 - F. Test instruments shall have been calibrated within the last 12 months, traceable to standards of NIST, and adequate for making positive observation of test results. Make calibration records available for examination on request.
 - G. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - H. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 - I. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
 - J. Report results of tests and inspections in writing. Record adjustable relay settings and measured insulation resistances, time delays, and other values and observations. Attach a label or tag to each tested component indicating satisfactory completion of tests.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain packaged engine generators. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION 263213

SECTION 263600 - TRANSFER SWITCHES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes **automatic** transfer switches rated 600 V and less.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for transfer switches.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details showing minimum clearances, conductor entry provisions, gutter space, and installed features and devices.
 - 2. Include material lists for each switch specified.
 - 3. Single-Line Diagram: Show connections between transfer switch, power sources, and load; and show interlocking provisions for each combined transfer switch and bypass/isolation switch.
 - 4. Riser Diagram: Show interconnection wiring between transfer switches, bypass/isolation switches, annunciators, and control panels.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of product to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
 - 1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - a. Features and operating sequences, both automatic and manual.
 - b. List of all factory settings of relays; provide relay-setting and calibration instructions, including software, where applicable.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of transfer switch or transfer switch components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: **12 months** from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NEMA ICS 1.
- C. Comply with NFPA 99.
- D. Comply with NFPA 110.
- E. Comply with UL 1008 unless requirements of these Specifications are stricter.
- F. Indicated Current Ratings: Apply as defined in UL 1008 for continuous loading and total system transfer, including tungsten filament lamp loads not exceeding 30 percent of switch ampere rating, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Tested Fault-Current Closing and Short-Circuit Ratings: Adequate for duty imposed by protective devices at installation locations in Project under the fault conditions indicated, based on testing according to UL 1008.
 - 1. Where transfer switch includes internal fault-current protection, rating of switch and trip unit combination shall exceed indicated fault-current value at installation location.
 - 2. Short-time withstand capability for **three** cycles.
- H. Repetitive Accuracy of Solid-State Controls: All settings shall be plus or minus 2 percent or better over an operating temperature range of minus 20 to plus 70 deg C.
- I. Resistance to Damage by Voltage Transients: Components shall meet or exceed voltage-surge withstand capability requirements when tested according to IEEE C62.62. Components shall meet or exceed voltage-impulse withstand test of NEMA ICS 1.
- J. Electrical Operation: Accomplish by a nonfused, momentarily energized solenoid or electric-motor-operated mechanism. Switches for emergency or standby purposes shall be mechanically and electrically interlocked in both directions to prevent simultaneous connection to both power sources unless closed transition.
- K. Service-Rated Transfer Switch:
 - 1. Comply with UL 869A and UL 489.

2. Provide terminals for bonding the grounding electrode conductor to the grounded service conductor.
 3. In systems with a neutral, the bonding connection shall be on the neutral bus.
 4. Provide removable link for temporary separation of the service and load grounded conductors.
 5. Surge Protective Device: Service rated.
 6. Ground-Fault Protection: Comply with UL 1008 for **normal bus**.
 7. Service Disconnecting Means: Externally operated, manual **electrically** actuated.
- L. Neutral Switching: Where four-pole switches are indicated, provide **neutral pole switched simultaneously with phase poles**.
- M. Neutral Terminal: Solid and fully rated unless otherwise indicated.
- N. Oversize Neutral: Ampacity and switch rating of neutral path through units indicated for oversize neutral shall be double the nominal rating of circuit in which switch is installed.
- O. Heater: Equip switches exposed to outdoor temperatures and humidity, and other units indicated, with an internal heater. Provide thermostat within enclosure to control heater.
- P. Battery Charger: For generator starting batteries.
1. Float type, rated **2 A**.
 2. Ammeter to display charging current.
 3. Fused ac inputs and dc outputs.
- Q. Annunciation, Control, and Programming Interface Components: Devices at transfer switches for communicating with remote programming devices, annunciators, or annunciator and control panels shall have communication capability matched with remote device.
- R. Factory Wiring: Train and bundle factory wiring and label, consistent with Shop Drawings, by color-code or by numbered or lettered wire and cable **with printed or shrinkable sleeve** markers at terminations. Color-coding and wire and cable markers are specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
1. Designated Terminals: Pressure type, suitable for types and sizes of field wiring indicated.
 2. Power-Terminal Arrangement and Field-Wiring Space: Suitable for top, side, or bottom entrance of feeder conductors as indicated.
 3. Control Wiring: Equipped with lugs suitable for connection to terminal strips.
 4. Accessible via **front** access.
- S. Enclosures: General-purpose NEMA 250, **Type 3R**, complying with NEMA ICS 6 and UL 508, unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 CONTACTOR-TYPE AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Comply with Level 1 equipment according to NFPA 110.

- C. Switch Characteristics: Designed for continuous-duty repetitive transfer of full-rated current between active power sources.
1. Limitation: Switches using molded-case switches or circuit breakers or insulated-case circuit-breaker components are unacceptable.
 2. Switch Action: Double throw; mechanically held in both directions.
 3. Contacts: Silver composition or silver alloy for load-current switching. Contactor-style automatic transfer-switch units, rated 600 A and higher, shall have separate arcing contacts.
 4. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
 5. Material: **Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.**
 6. Main and Neutral Lugs: **Mechanical** type.
 7. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: **Mechanical** type.
 8. Ground bar.
 9. Connectors shall be marked for conductor size and type according to UL 1008.
- D. Automatic Open-Transition Transfer Switches: Interlocked to prevent the load from being closed on both sources at the same time.
1. Sources shall be mechanically and electrically interlocked to prevent closing both sources on the load at the same time.
- E. Manual Switch Operation: Under load, with door closed and with either or both sources energized. Transfer time is same as for electrical operation. Control circuit automatically disconnects from electrical operator during manual operation.
- F. Signal-Before-Transfer Contacts: A set of normally open/normally closed dry contacts operates in advance of retransfer to normal source. Interval shall be adjustable from 1 to 30 seconds.
- G. Digital Communication Interface: Matched to capability of remote annunciator or annunciator and control panel.
- H. Automatic Transfer-Switch Controller Features:
1. Controller operates through a period of loss of control power.
 2. Undervoltage Sensing for Each Phase of Normal **and Alternate** Source: Sense low phase-to-ground voltage on each phase. Pickup voltage shall be adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal, and dropout voltage shall be adjustable from 75 to 98 percent of pickup value. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent and dropout at 85 percent.
 3. Voltage/Frequency Lockout Relay: Prevent premature transfer to generator. Pickup voltage shall be adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent. Pickup frequency shall be adjustable from 90 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 95 percent.
 4. Time Delay for Retransfer to Normal Source: Adjustable from zero to 30 minutes, and factory set for 10 minutes. Override shall automatically defeat delay on loss of voltage or sustained undervoltage of emergency source, provided normal supply has been restored.
 5. Test Switch: Simulate normal-source failure.
 6. Switch-Position Pilot Lights: Indicate source to which load is connected.
 7. Source-Available Indicating Lights: Supervise sources via transfer-switch normal- and emergency-source sensing circuits.

- a. Normal Power Supervision: Green light with nameplate engraved "Normal Source Available."
 - b. Emergency Power Supervision: Red light with nameplate engraved "Emergency Source Available."
8. Unassigned Auxiliary Contacts: Two normally open, single-pole, double-throw contacts for each switch position, rated 10 A at 240-V ac.
 9. Transfer Override Switch: Overrides automatic retransfer control so transfer switch will remain connected to emergency power source regardless of condition of normal source. Pilot light indicates override status.
 10. Engine Starting Contacts: One isolated and normally closed, and one isolated and normally open; rated 10 A at 32-V dc minimum.
 11. Engine Shutdown Contacts: Instantaneous; shall initiate shutdown sequence at remote engine-generator controls after retransfer of load to normal source.
 12. Engine Shutdown Contacts: Time delay adjustable from zero to five minutes, and factory set for five minutes. Contacts shall initiate shutdown at remote engine-generator controls after retransfer of load to normal source.
 13. Engine-Generator Exerciser: Solid-state, programmable-time switch starts engine generator and transfers load to it from normal source for a preset time, then retransfers and shuts down engine after a preset cool-down period. Initiates exercise cycle at preset intervals adjustable from 7 to 30 days. Running periods shall be adjustable from 10 to 30 minutes. Factory settings shall be for 7-day exercise cycle, 20-minute running period, and 5-minute cool-down period. Exerciser features include the following:
 - a. Exerciser Transfer Selector Switch: Permits selection of exercise with and without load transfer.
 - b. Push-button programming control with digital display of settings.
 - c. Integral battery operation of time switch when normal control power is unavailable.
- I. Large-Motor-Load Power Transfer:
1. In-Phase Monitor: Factory-wired, internal relay controls transfer so contacts close only when the two sources are synchronized in phase and frequency. Relay shall compare phase relationship and frequency difference between normal and emergency sources and initiate transfer when both sources are within 15 electrical degrees, and only if transfer can be completed within 60 electrical degrees. Transfer shall be initiated only if both sources are within 2 Hz of nominal frequency and 70 percent or more of nominal voltage.
 2. Motor Disconnect and Timing Relay Controls: Designated starters in loss of power scenario shall disconnect motors before transfer and reconnect them selectively at an adjustable time interval after transfer. Control connection to motor starters shall be through wiring external to automatic transfer switch. Provide adjustable time delay between 1 and 60 seconds for reconnecting individual motor loads. Provide relay contacts rated for motor-control circuit inrush and for actual seal currents to be encountered.
 3. Programmed Neutral Switch Position: Switch operator with programmed neutral position arranged to provide a midpoint between the two working switch positions, with an intentional, time-controlled pause at midpoint during transfer. Adjustable pause from 0.5 to 30 seconds minimum, and factory set for 0.5 second unless otherwise indicated. Time delay occurs for both transfer directions. Disable pause unless both sources are live.

2.3 TRANSFER SWITCH ACCESSORIES

A. Remote Annunciator System:

1. Source Limitations: Same manufacturer as transfer switch in which installed.
2. Functional Description: Remote annunciator panel shall annunciate conditions for indicated transfer switches.
3. Annunciation panel display shall include the following indicators:
 - a. Sources available, as defined by actual pickup and dropout settings of transfer-switch controls.
 - b. Switch position.
 - c. Switch in test mode.
 - d. Failure of communication link.
4. Annunciator Panel: LED-lamp type with audible signal and silencing switch.
 - a. Indicating Lights: Grouped for each transfer switch monitored.
 - b. Label each group, indicating transfer switch it monitors, location of switch, and identity of load it serves.
 - c. Mounting: Flush, modular, steel cabinet unless otherwise indicated.
 - d. Lamp Test: Push-to-test or lamp-test switch on front panel.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect components, assembled switches, and associated equipment according to UL 1008. Ensure proper operation. Check transfer time and voltage, frequency, and time-delay settings for compliance with specified requirements. Perform dielectric strength test complying with NEMA ICS 1.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports.
 1. For each of the tests required by UL 1008, performed on representative devices, for **legally required** systems. Include results of test for the following conditions:
 - a. Overvoltage.
 - b. Undervoltage.
 - c. Loss of supply voltage.
 - d. Reduction of supply voltage.
 - e. Alternative supply voltage or frequency is at minimum acceptable values.
 - f. Temperature rise.
 - g. Dielectric voltage-withstand; before and after short-circuit test.
 - h. Overload.
 - i. Contact opening.
 - j. Endurance.
 - k. Short circuit.
 - l. Short-time current capability.
 - m. Receptacle withstand capability.
 - n. Insulating base and supports damage.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Floor-Mounting Switch: Anchor to floor by bolting.
 - 1. Install transfer switches on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in **Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."**
 - 2. Comply with requirements for seismic control devices specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
 - 3. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases.
 - 4. Provide workspace and clearances required by NFPA 70.
- B. Annunciator and Control Panel Mounting: Flush in wall unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Identify components according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- D. Set field-adjustable intervals and delays, relays, and engine exerciser clock.
- E. Comply with NECA 1.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Wiring to Remote Components: Match type and number of cables and conductors to generator sets, control, and communication requirements of transfer switches as recommended by manufacturer. Increase raceway sizes at no additional cost to Owner if necessary to accommodate required wiring.
- B. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within electrical enclosures. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
 - 1. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii.
- D. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- E. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- F. Connect twisted pair cable according to Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."
- G. Connect twisted pair cable according to Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling."

- H. Route and brace conductors according to manufacturer's written instructions **and Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."** Do not obscure manufacturer's markings and labels.
- I. Brace and support equipment according to Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- J. Final connections to equipment shall be made with liquidtight, flexible metallic conduit no more than **18 inches (457 mm)** in length.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections **with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative**:
 1. After installing equipment, test for compliance with requirements according to NETA ATS.
 2. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
 - a. Compare equipment nameplate data with Drawings and Specifications.
 - b. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
 - c. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and required clearances.
 - d. Verify that the unit is clean.
 - e. Verify appropriate lubrication on moving current-carrying parts and on moving and sliding surfaces.
 - f. Verify that manual transfer warnings are attached and visible.
 - g. Verify tightness of all control connections.
 - h. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the following methods, or both:
 - 1) Use of low-resistance ohmmeter.
 - 2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method according to manufacturer's published data.
 - i. Perform manual transfer operation.
 - j. Verify positive mechanical interlocking between normal and alternate sources.
 - k. Perform visual and mechanical inspection of surge arresters.
 - l. Inspect control power transformers.
 - 1) Inspect for physical damage, cracked insulation, broken leads, tightness of connections, defective wiring, and overall general condition.
 - 2) Verify that primary and secondary fuse or circuit-breaker ratings match Drawings.
 - 3) Verify correct functioning of drawout disconnecting contacts, grounding contacts, and interlocks.
 3. Electrical Tests:

- a. Perform insulation-resistance tests on all control wiring with respect to ground.
 - b. Perform a contact/pole-resistance test. Compare measured values with manufacturer's acceptable values.
 - c. Verify settings and operation of control devices.
 - d. Calibrate and set all relays and timers.
 - e. Verify phase rotation, phasing, and synchronized operation.
 - f. Perform automatic transfer tests.
 - g. Verify correct operation and timing of the following functions:
 - 1) Normal source voltage-sensing and frequency-sensing relays.
 - 2) Engine start sequence.
 - 3) Time delay on transfer.
 - 4) Alternative source voltage-sensing and frequency-sensing relays.
 - 5) Automatic transfer operation.
 - 6) Interlocks and limit switch function.
 - 7) Time delay and retransfer on normal power restoration.
 - 8) Engine cool-down and shutdown feature.
4. Measure insulation resistance phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with insulation-resistance tester. Include external annunciation and control circuits. Use test voltages and procedure recommended by manufacturer. Comply with manufacturer's specified minimum resistance.
- a. Check for electrical continuity of circuits and for short circuits.
 - b. Inspect for physical damage, proper installation and connection, and integrity of barriers, covers, and safety features.
 - c. Verify that manual transfer warnings are properly placed.
 - d. Perform manual transfer operation.
5. After energizing circuits, perform each electrical test for transfer switches stated in NETA ATS and demonstrate interlocking sequence and operational function for each switch at least three times.
- a. Simulate power failures of normal source to automatic transfer switches and retransfer from emergency source with normal source available.
 - b. Simulate loss of phase-to-ground voltage for each phase of normal source.
 - c. Verify time-delay settings.
 - d. Verify pickup and dropout voltages by data readout or inspection of control settings.
 - e. Test bypass/isolation unit functional modes and related automatic transfer-switch operations.
 - f. Perform contact-resistance test across main contacts and correct values exceeding 500 microhms and values for one pole deviating by more than 50 percent from other poles.
 - g. Verify proper sequence and correct timing of automatic engine starting, transfer time delay, retransfer time delay on restoration of normal power, and engine cool-down and shutdown.
6. Ground-Fault Tests: Coordinate with testing of ground-fault protective devices for power delivery from both sources.

- a. Verify grounding connections and locations and ratings of sensors.
- C. Coordinate tests with tests of generator and run them concurrently.
- D. Report results of tests and inspections in writing. Record adjustable relay settings and measured insulation and contact resistances and time delays. Attach a label or tag to each tested component indicating satisfactory completion of tests.
- E. Transfer switches will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- H. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each switch. Remove all access panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
 - 1. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
 - 2. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies switches checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.
 - 3. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each switch 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

- A. **Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train** Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain transfer switches and related equipment.
- B. Training shall include testing ground-fault protective devices and instructions to determine when the ground-fault system shall be retested. Include instructions on where ground-fault sensors are located and how to avoid negating the ground-fault protection scheme during testing and circuit modifications.
- C. Coordinate this training with that for generator equipment.

END OF SECTION 263600

SECTION 265119 - LED INTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes the following types of LED luminaires:
 - 1. Linear industrial.
 - 2. Lowbay.
 - 3. Strip light.
 - 4. Surface mount, linear.
 - 5. Suspended, linear.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- B. CRI: Color Rendering Index.
- C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."
- D. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating.
- E. LED: Light-emitting diode.
- F. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
- G. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Arrange in order of luminaire designation.
 - 2. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
 - 3. Include physical description and dimensions of luminaires.
 - 4. Include emergency lighting units, including batteries and chargers.
 - 5. Include life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and lighting systems to include in operation and maintenance manuals.
 - 1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project; use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Provide luminaires from a single manufacturer for each luminaire type.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
- B. Warranty Period: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Ambient Temperature: 5 to 104 deg F (Minus 15 to plus 40 deg C).
 - 1. Relative Humidity: Zero to 95 percent.
- B. Altitude: Sea level to 7,600 feet.

2.2 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps. Locate labels where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.
 - 1. Label shall include the following lamp characteristics:
 - a. "USE ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
 - b. Lamp diameter, shape, size, wattage, and coating.

c. CCT and CRI.

- C. NRTL Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by an NRTL.
- D. FM Global Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.
- E. Lamp:
 - 1. Minimum allowable efficacy of 80 lm/W.
 - 2. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 4000 K.
 - 3. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
 - 4. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
 - 5. Internal driver.
- F. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.
- G. With integral mounting provisions.
- H. Standards:
 - 1. ENERGY STAR certified.
 - 2. RoHS compliant.

2.3 MATERIALS

- A. Metal Parts:
 - 1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
 - 2. Sheet metal components shall be steel unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
- B. Steel:
 - 1. ASTM A 36/A 36M for carbon structural steel.
 - 2. ASTM A 568/A 568M for sheet steel.
- C. Stainless Steel:
 - 1. 1. Manufacturer's standard grade.
 - 2. 2. Manufacturer's standard type, ASTM A 240/240 M.
- D. Galvanized Steel: ASTM A 653/A 653M.
- E. Aluminum: ASTM B 209.

2.4 METAL FINISHES

- A. Variations in finishes are unacceptable in the same piece. Variations in finishes of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and if they can be and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.5 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.
- B. Single-Stem Hangers: 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel tubing with swivel ball fittings and ceiling canopy. Finish same as luminaire.
- C. Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641 M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 12 gage (2.68 mm).
- D. Rod Hangers: 3/16-inch (5-mm) minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.
- E. Hook Hangers: Integrated assembly matched to luminaire, line voltage, and equipment with threaded attachment, cord, and locking-type plug.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before luminaire installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- D. Supports:
 - 1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
 - 2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
 - 3. Provide support for luminaire without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
 - 4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and a vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.

- E. Flush-Mounted Luminaires:
 - 1. Secured to outlet box.
 - 2. Attached to ceiling structural members at four points equally spaced around circumference of luminaire.
 - 3. Trim ring flush with finished surface.
- F. Wall-Mounted Luminaires:
 - 1. Attached to structural members in walls.
- G. Suspended Luminaires:
 - 1. Ceiling Mount:
 - a. Pendant mount with 5/32-inch- (4-mm-) diameter aircraft cable supports adjustable to 10 feet (3 m) in length.
 - b. Hook mount.
 - 2. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches (1200 mm), brace to limit swinging.
 - 3. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Luminaires: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with approved outlet box and accessories that hold stem and provide damping of luminaire oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.
 - 4. Continuous Rows of Luminaires: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and wire support for suspension for each unit length of luminaire chassis, including one at each end.
 - 5. Do not use ceiling grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
- B. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 265119

SECTION 265213 - EMERGENCY AND EXIT LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Emergency lighting units.
 - 2. Exit signs.
 - 3. Luminaire supports.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- B. CRI: Color Rendering Index.
- C. Emergency Lighting Unit: A lighting unit with internal or external emergency battery powered supply and the means for controlling and charging the battery and unit operation.
- D. Fixture: See "Luminaire" Paragraph.
- E. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
- F. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of emergency lighting unit, exit sign, and emergency lighting support.
 - 1. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
 - 2. Include physical description of the unit and dimensions.
 - 3. Battery and charger for light units.
 - 4. Include life, output of luminaire (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.
 - 5. Include photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IES LM-45, for each luminaire type.

- a. Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated **[luminaires]** **[and]** **[signs]**, photometric data certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining **[luminaires]** **[and]** **[signs]** shall be certified by manufacturer.
 - b. Manufacturers' Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
 - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Product Schedule:
 - 1. For emergency lighting units. **Use same designations indicated on Drawings.**
 - 2. For exit signs. **Use same designations indicated on Drawings.**

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and lighting systems to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
 - 1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project; use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: **Two** year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Warranty for Emergency Lighting Batteries: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer of battery-powered emergency lighting unit agrees to repair or replace components of rechargeable batteries that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period for Emergency Power Unit Batteries: **Five** years from date of Substantial Completion. Full warranty shall apply for **first year and prorated warranty for the remaining four years.**

2. Warranty Period for Self-Powered Exit Sign Batteries: **Two** years from date of Substantial Completion. Full warranty shall apply for **first year and prorated warranty for the remaining year**.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Luminaires shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to **ASCE/SEI 7**.
 1. The term "withstand" means "the luminaire will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified."

2.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY LIGHTING

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. NRTL Compliance: Fabricate and label emergency lighting units, exit signs, and batteries to comply with UL 924.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70 and NFPA 101.
- D. Comply with NEMA LE 4 for recessed luminaires.
- E. Comply with UL 1598 for fluorescent luminaires.
- F. Lamp Base: Comply with **ANSI C81.61 or IEC 60061-1**.
- G. Bulb Shape: Complying with ANSI C79.1.
- H. Internal Type Emergency Power Unit: Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit, factory mounted within luminaire body.
 1. Emergency Connection: Operate **one** lamp(s) continuously at an output of **1100** lumens each upon loss of normal power. Connect unswitched circuit to battery-inverter unit and switched circuit to luminaire ballast.
 2. Operation: Relay automatically turns lamp on when power-supply circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. Lamp automatically disconnects from battery when voltage approaches deep-discharge level. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
 3. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
 - a. Ambient Temperature: Less than **0 deg F (minus 18 deg C)** or exceeding **104 deg F (40 deg C)**, with an average value exceeding **95 deg F (35 deg C)** over a 24-hour period.

- b. Ambient Storage Temperature: Not less than **minus 4 deg F (minus 20 deg C)** and not exceeding **140 deg F (60 deg C)**.
 - c. Humidity: More than 95 percent (condensing).
 - d. Altitude: Exceeding **5500 feet**.
- 4. Nightlight Connection: Operate lamp continuously at **40** percent of rated light output.
 - 5. Test Push-Button and Indicator Light: Visible and accessible without opening luminaire or entering ceiling space.
 - a. Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
 - b. Indicator Light: LED indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
 - 6. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, **nickel-cadmium** type.
 - 7. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type with sealed power transfer relay.
 - 8. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.

2.3 EXIT SIGNS

- A. General Requirements for Exit Signs: Comply with UL 924; for sign colors, visibility, luminance, and lettering size, comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Internally Lighted Signs:
 - 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
 - 2. Operating at nominal voltage of **120 V ac**.
 - 3. Lamps for AC Operation: Fluorescent, two for each luminaire; 20,000 hours of rated lamp life.
 - 4. Lamps for AC Operation: LEDs; 50,000 hours minimum rated lamp life.
 - 5. Self-Powered Exit Signs (Battery Type): Internal emergency power unit.
 - 6. Master/Remote Sign Configurations:
 - a. Master Unit: Comply with requirements above for self-powered exit signs, and provide additional capacity in **LED power supply** for power connection to remote unit.
 - b. Remote Unit: Comply with requirements above for self-powered exit signs, except omit power supply, battery, and test features. Arrange to receive full power requirements from master unit. Connect for testing concurrently with master unit as a unified system.

2.4 MATERIALS

- A. Metal Parts:
 - 1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.

2. Sheet metal components shall be steel unless otherwise indicated.
3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.

B. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access:

1. Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions.
2. Designed to permit relamping without use of tools.
3. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.
- 4.

C. Conduit: **Electrical metallic tubing**, minimum **3/4 inch (21 mm)** in diameter.

2.5 METAL FINISHES

- A. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.6 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.
- B. Support Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, **12 gage (2.68 mm)**.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for conditions affecting performance of luminaires.
- B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before luminaire installation.
- C. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and ceilings for suitable conditions where emergency lighting luminaires will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.

- C. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- D. Supports:
 1. Sized and rated for luminaire **and emergency power unit** weight.
 2. Able to maintain luminaire position when testing emergency power unit.
 3. Provide support for luminaire and emergency power unit without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
 4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire and emergency power unit weight and vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.
- E. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:
 1. **Attached to structural members in walls.**
 2. Do not attach luminaires directly to gypsum board.
- F. Suspended Luminaire Support:
 1. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than **48 inches (1200 mm)**, brace to limit swinging.
 2. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Luminaires: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with approved outlet box and accessories that hold stem and provide damping of luminaire oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.
 3. Continuous Rows of Luminaires: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and [**tubing or rod**] [**wire support**] for suspension for each unit length of luminaire chassis, including one at each end.
 4. Do not use ceiling grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.
- G. Ceiling Grid Mounted Luminaires:
 1. Secure to any required outlet box.
 2. Secure emergency power unit using approved fasteners in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of emergency power unit.
 3. Use approved devices and support components to connect luminaire to ceiling grid and building structure in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 1. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.
- B. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.

- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjustments: Within **12** months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site visit to do the following:
 - 1. Inspect all luminaires. Replace lamps, **emergency power units** or luminaires that are defective.
 - a. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
 - 2. Conduct short-duration tests on all emergency lighting.

END OF SECTION 265213

SECTION 265613 - LIGHTING POLES AND STANDARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Poles and accessories for support of luminaires.
 - 2. Luminaire-lowering devices.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EPA: Equivalent projected area.
- B. Luminaire: Complete luminaire.
- C. Pole: Luminaire-supporting structure, including tower used for large-area illumination.
- D. Standard: See "Pole."

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each pole, accessory, and luminaire-supporting and -lowering device, arranged as indicated.
 - 1. Include data on construction details, profiles, EPA, cable entrances, materials, dimensions, weight, rated design load, and ultimate strength of individual components.
 - 2. Include finishes for lighting poles and luminaire-supporting devices.
 - 3. Anchor bolts.
 - 4. Manufactured pole foundations.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and **mounting and attachment** details.
 - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Detail fabrication and assembly of **poles and pole accessories**.

4. Foundation construction details, including material descriptions, dimensions, anchor bolts, support devices, and calculations, signed and sealed by a professional engineer licensed in the state of installation.
 5. Anchor bolt templates keyed to specific poles and certified by manufacturer.
 6. Method and procedure of pole installation. Include manufacturer's written installations.
- C. Samples: For each exposed lighting pole, standard, and luminaire-supporting device and for each color and texture specified.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For **poles** to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include pole inspection and repair procedures.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Pole repair materials.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of **pole(s)]** that fail in materials or workmanship; that corrode; or that fade, stain, perforate, erode, or chalk due to effects of weather or solar radiation within a specified warranty period. Manufacturer may exclude lightning damage, hail damage, vandalism, abuse, or unauthorized repairs from special warranty period.
1. Warranty Period: **Five** years from date of Substantial Completion.
 2. Warranty Period for Corrosion Resistance: **Five** years from date of Substantial Completion.
 3. Warranty Period for Color Retention: **Five** years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design pole foundation and pole power system.
- B. Seismic Performance: Foundation and pole shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to **ASCE/SEI 7**.
1. The term "withstand" means "the system will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
 2. Component Importance Factor: **1.0**.

- C. Structural Characteristics: Comply with AASHTO LTS-6-M.
- D. Dead Load: Weight of luminaire and its horizontal and vertical supports, lowering devices, and supporting structure, applied according to AASHTO LTS-6-M.
- E. Live Load: Single load of **500 lbf (2200 N)** distributed according to AASHTO LTS-6-M.
- F. Ice Load: Load of **3 lbf/sq. ft. (145 Pa)**, applied according to AASHTO LTS-6-M for applicable areas on the Ice Load Map.
- G. Strength Analysis: For each pole, multiply the actual EPA of luminaires and brackets by a factor of **1.1** to obtain the EPA to be used in pole selection strength analysis.
- H. Luminaire Attachment Provisions: Comply with luminaire manufacturers' mounting requirements. Use stainless-steel fasteners and mounting bolts unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 STEEL POLES

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain poles from single manufacturer or producer.
- C. Source Limitations: For poles, obtain each color, grade, finish, type, and variety of pole from single source with resources to provide products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.
- D. Poles: Comply with ASTM A 500/A 500M, Grade B carbon steel with a minimum yield of **46,000 psig (317 MPa)**; one-piece construction up to **40 feet (12 m)** in height with access handhole in pole wall.
 1. Shape: **Square, straight.**
 2. Mounting Provisions: Butt flange for bolted mounting on foundation or breakaway support.
- E. Steel Mast Arms: **Single-arm** type, continuously welded to pole attachment plate. Material and finish same as plate.
- F. Brackets for Luminaires: Detachable, cantilever, without underbrace.
 1. Adaptor fitting welded to pole, allowing the bracket to be bolted to the pole-mounted adaptor, then bolted together with **galvanized**-steel bolts.
 2. Cross Section: Tapered oval, with straight tubular end section to accommodate luminaire. Match pole material and finish.
- G. Fasteners: **Galvanized steel**, size and type as determined by manufacturer. Corrosion-resistant items compatible with support components.
 1. Materials: Compatible with poles and standards as well as the substrates to which poles and standards are fastened and shall not cause galvanic action at contact points.
 2. Anchor Bolts, Leveling Nuts, Bolt Caps, and Washers: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication unless otherwise indicated.

- H. Grounding and Bonding Lugs: Welded **1/2-inch (13-mm)** threaded lug, complying with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems," listed for attaching grounding and bonding conductors of type and size indicated, and accessible through handhole.
- I. Steps: Fixed steel, with nonslip treads.
 - 1. For climbing positions, install at **15-inch (381-mm)** vertical spacing, alternating on opposite sides of pole, oriented 180 degrees from each other; first step shall be at an elevation **10 feet (3 m)** above finished grade.
 - 2. For working positions, install steps on opposite side of pole, oriented 180 degrees from each other at the same elevation.
- J. Handhole: Oval shaped, with minimum clear opening of **2-1/2 by 5 inches (65 by 130 mm)**, with cover secured by stainless-steel captive screws.
- K. Intermediate Handhole and Cable Support: Weatherproof, **3-by-5-inch (76-by-130-mm)** handhole located at midpoint of pole, with cover for access to internal welded attachment lug for electric cable support grip.
- L. Cable Support Grip: Wire-mesh type with rotating attachment eye, sized for diameter of cable and rated for a minimum load equal to weight of supported load multiplied by a 5.0 safety factor.
- M. Platform for Lamp and Ballast Servicing: Factory fabricated of steel, with finish matching that of pole.
- N. Prime-Coat Finish: Manufacturer's standard prime-coat finish ready for field painting.
- O. Galvanized Finish: After fabrication, hot-dip galvanize according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.
- P. Factory-Painted Finish: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
 - 1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces according to SSPC-SP 1 to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Grind welds and polish surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, according to SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1 or SSPC-SP 8.
 - 2. Interior Surfaces of Pole: One coat of bituminous paint, or otherwise treat for equal corrosion protection.
 - 3. Exterior Surfaces: Manufacturer's standard finish consisting of one or more coats of primer and two finish coats of high gloss, high-build polyurethane enamel.
 - a. Color: **As indicated by manufacturer's designations.**
- Q. Powder-Coat Finish: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
 - 1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces according to SSPC-SP 1 to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair powder coat bond. Grind welds and polish

surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, according to SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1 or SSPC-SP 8.

2. Powder Coat: Comply with AAMA 2604.
 - a. Electrostatic-applied powder coating; single application and cured to a minimum 2.5- to 3.5-mils dry film thickness. Coat interior and exterior of pole for equal corrosion protection.
 - b. Color: **As indicated by manufacturer's designations.**

2.3 POLE ACCESSORIES

- A. Base Covers: Manufacturers' standard metal units, finished same as pole, and arranged to cover pole's mounting bolts and nuts.

2.4 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine poles, luminaire-mounting devices, lowering devices, and pole accessories before installation. Components that are scratched, dented, marred, wet, moisture damaged, or visibly damaged are considered defective.
- C. Examine roughing-in for foundation and conduit to verify actual locations of installation.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 POLE FOUNDATION

- A. Concrete Pole Foundations: Cast in place, with anchor bolts to match pole-base flange. Structural steel complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M and hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 123/A 123 M; and with top-plate and mounting bolts to match pole-base flange and strength required to support pole, luminaire, and accessories. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

- B. Pre-Cast Foundations: Factory fabricated, with structural steel complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M and hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 123/A 123M; and with top-plate and mounting bolts to match pole-base flange and strength required to support pole, luminaire, and accessories. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- C. Anchor Bolts: Install plumb using manufacturer-supplied **plywood** template, uniformly spaced.

3.3 POLE INSTALLATION

- A. Alignment: **Align pole foundations and poles for optimum directional alignment of luminaires and their mounting provisions on pole.**
- B. Clearances: Maintain the following minimum horizontal distances of poles from surface and underground features unless otherwise indicated on drawing.
 - 1. Fire Hydrants and Water Piping: **60 inches (1520 mm)**.
 - 2. Water, Gas, Electric, Communications, and Sewer Lines: **10 feet (3 m)**.
 - 3. Trees: **15 feet (5 m)** from tree trunk.
- C. Concrete Pole Foundations: Set anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt templates furnished by pole manufacturer. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing requirements are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- D. Poles and Pole Foundations Set in Concrete-Paved Areas: Install poles with a minimum **6-inch (150-mm-)** wide, unpaved gap between the pole or pole foundation and the edge of the adjacent concrete slab. Fill unpaved ring with pea gravel. Insert material to a level **1 inch (25 mm)** below top of concrete slab.
- E. Raise and set pole using web fabric slings (not chain or cable) at locations indicated by manufacturer.

3.4 CORROSION PREVENTION

- A. Steel Conduits: Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems." In concrete foundations, wrap conduit with **0.010-inch (0.254-mm-)** thick, pipe-wrapping plastic tape applied with a 50-percent overlap.

3.5 GROUNDING

- A. Ground Metal Poles and Support Structures: Comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Install grounding electrode for each pole unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Install grounding conductor pigtail in the base for connecting luminaire to grounding system.

3.6 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

END OF SECTION 265613

SECTION 265619 – LED EXTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Exterior solid-state luminaires that are designed for and exclusively use LED lamp technology.
 - 2. Luminaire supports.
 - 3. Luminaire-mounted photoelectric relays.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- B. CRI: Color rendering index.
- C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."
- D. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating.
- E. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
- F. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.
- G. Sample warranty.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and photoelectric relays to include in operation and maintenance manuals.
 - 1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project. Use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.
 - 2. Provide a list of all photoelectric relay types used on Project; use manufacturers' codes.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturers' laboratory that is accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- B. Provide luminaires from a single manufacturer for each luminaire type.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering prior to shipping.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Verify existing and proposed utility structures prior to the start of work associated with luminaire installation.
- B. Mark locations of exterior luminaires for approval by Architect prior to the start of luminaire installation.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures, including luminaire support components.
 - b. Faulty operation of luminaires and accessories.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - 2. Warranty Period: 5 year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. NRTL Compliance: Luminaires shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by an NRTL.
- C. FM Global Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.

- D. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1598 and listed for wet location.
- E. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61 or IEC 60061-1.
- F. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C79.1.
- G. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 4000 K.
- H. L70 lamp life of 50,000 hours.
- I. Lamps dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
- J. Internal driver.
- K. Nominal Operating Voltage: 120 V ac.
- L. Lamp Rating: Lamp marked for outdoor use.
- M. Source Limitations: Obtain luminaires from single source from a single manufacturer.
- N. Source Limitations: For luminaires, obtain each color, grade, finish, type, and variety of luminaire from single source with resources to provide products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
- B. Sheet Metal Components: Corrosion-resistant aluminum, Stainless steel or Epoxy-coated steel. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
- C. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position. Doors shall be removable for cleaning or replacing lenses.
- D. Diffusers and Globes:
 1. Acrylic Diffusers: 100 percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
 2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
 3. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch (3.175 mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Lens and Refractor Gaskets: Use heat- and aging-resistant resilient gaskets to seal and cushion lenses and refractors in luminaire doors.
- F. Reflecting surfaces shall have minimum reflectance as follows unless otherwise indicated:
 1. White Surfaces: 85 percent.
 2. Specular Surfaces: 83 percent.

3. Diffusing Specular Surfaces: 75 percent.

G. Housings:

1. Rigidly formed, weather- and light-tight enclosure that will not warp, sag, or deform in use.
2. Provide filter/breather for enclosed luminaires.

H. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps. Labels shall be located where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.

1. Label shall include the following lamp characteristics:
 - a. "USE ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
 - b. Lamp diameter, shape, size, wattage and coating.
 - c. CCT and CRI for all luminaires.

2.3 FINISHES

A. Variations in Finishes: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

B. Luminaire Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested luminaire before shipping. Where indicated, match finish process and color of pole or support materials.

C. Factory-Applied Finish for Aluminum Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

1. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
2. Natural Satin Finish: Provide fine, directional, medium satin polish (AA-M32); buff complying with AA-M20 requirements; and seal aluminum surfaces with clear, hard-coat wax.
3. Class I, Clear-Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: Medium satin; Chemical Finish: Etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
4. Class I, Color-Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A42/A44 (Mechanical Finish: Medium satin; Chemical Finish: Etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, integrally colored or electrolytically deposited color coating 0.018 mm or thicker), complying with AAMA 611.
 - a. Color: Dark bronze.

D. Factory-Applied Finish for Steel Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1, to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Grind welds and polish surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1 or SSPC-SP 8.

2.4 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire electrical conduit to verify actual locations of conduit connections before luminaire installation.
- C. Examine walls for suitable conditions where luminaires will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Use fastening methods and materials selected to resist seismic forces defined for the application and approved by manufacturer.
- C. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- D. Fasten luminaire to structural support.
- E. Supports:
 1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
 2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
 3. Support luminaires without causing deflection of finished surface.
 4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and a vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.
- F. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:
 1. Attached to structural members in walls.
- G. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways. Conceal raceways and cables.

- H. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with finished grade unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Coordinate layout and installation of luminaires with other construction.
- J. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" and Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for wiring connections and wiring methods.

3.3 CORROSION PREVENTION

- A. Aluminum: Do not use in contact with earth or concrete. When in direct contact with a dissimilar metal, protect aluminum by insulating fittings or treatment.
- B. Steel Conduits: Comply with Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems." In concrete foundations, wrap conduit with 0.010-inch- (0.254-mm-) thick, pipe-wrapping plastic tape applied with a 50 percent overlap.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect each installed luminaire for damage. Replace damaged luminaires and components.

END OF SECTION 265619

SECTION 270526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Grounding conductors.
 - 2. Grounding connectors.
 - 3. Grounding busbars.
 - 4. Grounding rods.
 - 5. Grounding labeling.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. BCT: Bonding conductor for telecommunications.
- B. TGB: Telecommunications grounding busbar.
- C. TMGB: Telecommunications main grounding busbar.
- D. Service Provider: The operator of a service that provides telecommunications transmission delivered over access provider facilities.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For communications equipment room signal reference grid. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For grounding to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
 - 1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

- a. Result of the ground-resistance test, measured at the point of BCT connection.
- b. Result of the bonding-resistance test at each TGB and its nearest grounding electrode.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.
 1. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of ITS **Technician**, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
 2. Field Inspector: Currently registered by BICSI as a **designer RCDD** to perform the on-site inspection.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.
- C. Comply with TIA-607-B.

2.2 CONDUCTORS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Comply with UL 486A-486B.
- C. Insulated Conductors: Stranded copper wire, green or green with yellow stripe insulation, insulated for 600 V, and complying with UL 83.
 1. Ground wire for custom-length equipment ground jumpers shall be No. 6 AWG, 19-strand, UL-listed, Type THHN wire.
 2. Cable Tray Equipment Grounding Wire: **No. 8 AWG**.
- D. Cable Tray Grounding Jumper:
 1. Not smaller than No. 10 AWG and not longer than **12 inches (300 mm)**. If jumper is a wire, it shall have a crimped grounding lug with one hole and standard barrel for one crimp. If jumper is a flexible braid, it shall have a one- or two-hole ferrule. Attach with grounding screw or connector provided by cable tray manufacturer.
- E. Bare Copper Conductors:
 1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.

2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
4. Bonding Cable: **28 kcmils (14.2 sq. mm)**, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, and **1/4 inch (6.3 mm)** in diameter.
5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
6. Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors terminated with two-hole copper ferrules; **1-5/8 inches (41 mm)** wide and **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** thick.

2.3 CONNECTORS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Irreversible connectors listed for the purpose. Listed by an NRTL as complying with NFPA 70 for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected. Comply with UL 486A-486B.
- C. Compression Wire Connectors: Crimp-and-compress connectors that bond to the conductor when the connector is compressed around the conductor. Comply with UL 467.
 1. Electroplated tinned copper, C and H shaped.
- D. Signal Reference Grid Connectors: Combination of compression wire connectors, access floor grounding clamps, bronze U-bolt grounding clamps, and copper split-bolt connectors, designed for the purpose.
- E. Busbar Connectors: Cast silicon bronze, solderless **compression**-type, mechanical connector; with a long barrel and two holes spaced on **5/8- or 1-inch (15.8- or 25.4-mm)** centers for a two-bolt connection to the busbar.
- F. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.

2.4 GROUNDING BUSBARS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. TMGB: Predrilled, wall-mounted, rectangular bars of hard-drawn solid copper, **1/4 by 4 inches (6.3 by 100 mm)** in cross section, length as indicated on Drawings. The busbar shall be NRTL listed for use as TMGB and shall comply with TIA-607-B.
 1. Predrilling shall be with holes for use with lugs specified in this Section.
 2. Mounting Hardware: Stand-off brackets that provide a **4-inch (100-mm)** clearance to access the rear of the busbar. Brackets and bolts shall be stainless steel.
 3. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall be Lexan or PVC. Comply with UL 891 for use in 600-V switchboards, impulse tested at 5000 V.
- C. TGB: Predrilled rectangular bars of hard-drawn solid copper, **1/4 by 2 inches (6.3 by 50 mm)** in cross section, length as indicated on Drawings. The busbar shall be for wall mounting, shall be NRTL listed as complying with UL 467, and shall comply with TIA-607-B.

1. Predrilling shall be with holes for use with lugs specified in this Section.
 2. Mounting Hardware: Stand-off brackets that provide at least a **2-inch (50-mm)** clearance to access the rear of the busbar. Brackets and bolts shall be stainless steel.
 3. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall be Lexan or PVC. Comply with UL 891 for use in 600-V switchboards, impulse tested at 5000 V.
- D. Rack and Cabinet Grounding Busbars: Rectangular bars of hard-drawn solid copper, accepting conductors ranging from No. 14 to No. 2/0 AWG, NRTL listed as complying with UL 467, and complying with TIA-607-B. Predrilling shall be with holes for use with lugs specified in this Section.
1. Cabinet-Mounted Busbar: Terminal block, with stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to the cabinet.
 2. Rack-Mounted Horizontal Busbar: Designed for mounting in **19- or 23-inch (483- or 584-mm)** equipment racks. Include a copper splice bar for transitioning to an adjoining rack, and stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to the rack.
 3. Rack-Mounted Vertical Busbar: **72 or 36 inches (1827 or 914 mm)** long, with stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to the rack.

2.5 GROUND RODS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Ground Rods: **Copper-clad** steel; **3/4 inch by 10 feet (19 mm by 3 m)** in diameter.

2.6 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements for identification products in Section 270553 "Identification for Communications Systems."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine the ac grounding electrode system and equipment grounding for compliance with requirements for maximum ground-resistance level and other conditions affecting performance of grounding and bonding of the electrical system.
- B. Inspect the test results of the ac grounding system measured at the point of BCT connection.
- C. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- D. Proceed with connection of the BCT only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Bonding shall include the ac utility power service entrance, the communications cable entrance, and the grounding electrode system. The bonding of these elements shall form a loop so that each element is connected to at least two others.
- B. Comply with NECA 1.
- C. Comply with TIA-607-B.

3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for **No. 8** AWG and smaller and stranded conductors for **No. 6** AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. The bonding conductors between the TGB and structural steel of steel-frame buildings shall not be smaller than **No. 6** AWG.
 - 2. The bonding conductors between the TMGB and structural steel of steel-frame buildings shall not be smaller than **No. 6** AWG.
- B. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install bare **tinned-copper** conductor, **No. 2** AWG minimum.
- C. Conductor Terminations and Connections:
 - 1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
 - 2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
 - 4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.
- D. Conductor Support:
 - 1. Secure grounding and bonding conductors at intervals of not less than **36 inches (900 mm)**.
- E. Grounding and Bonding Conductors:
 - 1. Install in the straightest and shortest route between the origination and termination point, and no longer than required. The bend radius shall not be smaller than eight times the diameter of the conductor. No one bend may exceed 90 degrees.
 - 2. Install without splices.
 - 3. Support at not more than **36-inch (900-mm)** intervals.
 - 4. Install grounding and bonding conductors in **3/4-inch (21-mm)** PVC conduit until conduit enters a telecommunications room. The grounding and bonding conductor pathway through a plenum shall be in EMT. Conductors shall not be installed in EMT unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. If a grounding and bonding conductor is installed in ferrous metallic conduit, bond the conductor to the conduit using a grounding bushing that complies with

requirements in Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems," and bond both ends of the conduit to a TGB.

3.4 GROUNDING ELECTRODE SYSTEM

- A. The BCT between the TMGB and the ac service equipment ground shall not be smaller than **No. 1/0 AWG**.

3.5 GROUNDING BUSBARS

- A. Indicate locations of grounding busbars on Drawings. Install busbars horizontally, on insulated spacers **2 inches (50 mm)** minimum from wall, **12 inches (300 mm)** above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Where indicated on both sides of doorways, route bus up to top of door frame, across top of doorway, and down; connect to horizontal bus.

3.6 CONNECTIONS

- A. Bond metallic equipment in a telecommunications equipment room to the grounding busbar in that room, using equipment grounding conductors not smaller than **No. 6 AWG**.
- B. Stacking of conductors under a single bolt is not permitted when connecting to busbars.
- C. Assemble the wire connector to the conductor, complying with manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
 - 1. Use crimping tool and the die specific to the connector.
 - 2. Pretwist the conductor.
 - 3. Apply an antioxidant compound to all bolted and compression connections.
- D. Primary Protector: Bond to the TMGB with insulated bonding conductor.
- E. Interconnections: Interconnect all TGBs with the TMGB with the telecommunications backbone conductor. If more than one TMGB is installed, interconnect TMGBs using the grounding equalizer conductor. The telecommunications backbone conductor and grounding equalizer conductor size shall not be less than **2 kcmils/linear foot (1 sq. mm/linear meter)** of conductor length, up to a maximum size of No. 3/0 AWG unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Telecommunications Enclosures and Equipment Racks: Bond metallic components of enclosures to the telecommunications bonding and grounding system. Install **top-mounted or vertically mounted** rack grounding busbar unless the enclosure and rack are manufactured with the busbar. Bond the equipment grounding busbar to the TGB No. 2 AWG bonding conductors.
- G. Structural Steel: Where the structural steel of a steel frame building is readily accessible within the room or space, bond each TGB and TMGB to the vertical steel of the building frame.

- H. Electrical Power Panelboards: Where an electrical panelboard for telecommunications equipment is located in the same room or space, bond each TGB to the ground bar of the panelboard.
- I. Shielded Cable: Bond the shield of shielded cable to the TGB in communications rooms and spaces. Comply with TIA-568-C.1 and TIA-568-C.2 when grounding shielded balanced twisted-pair cables.
- J. Rack- and Cabinet-Mounted Equipment: Bond powered equipment chassis to the cabinet or rack grounding bar. Power connection shall comply with NFPA 70; the equipment grounding conductor in the power cord of cord- and plug-connected equipment shall be considered as a supplement to bonding requirements in this Section.
- K. Access Floors: Bond all metal parts of access floors to the TGB.
- L. Equipment Room Signal Reference Grid: Provide a low-impedance path between telecommunications cabinets, equipment racks, and the reference grid, using **No. 6 AWG** bonding conductors.
 - 1. Install the conductors in grid pattern on **4-foot (1200-mm)** centers, allowing bonding of one pedestal from each access floor tile.
 - 2. Bond the TGB of the equipment room to the reference grid at two or more locations.
 - 3. Bond all conduits and piping entering the equipment room to the TGB at the perimeter of the room.
- M. Towers and Antennas:
 - 1. Ground Ring: Buried at least **30 inches (760 mm)** below grade and at least **24 inches (610 mm)** from the base of the tower or mounting.
 - 2. Bond each tower base and metallic frame of a dish to the ground ring, buried at least **18 inches (460 mm)** below grade.
 - 3. Bond the ground ring and antenna grounds to the equipment room TMGB or TGB, buried at least **30 inches (760 mm)** below grade.
 - 4. Bond metallic fences within **6 feet (1.8 m)** of towers and antennas to the ground ring, buried at least **18 inches (460 mm)** below grade.
 - 5. Special Requirements for Roof-Mounted Towers:
 - a. Roof Ring: Meet requirements for the ground ring except the conductors shall comply with requirements in Section 264113 "Lightning Protection for Structures."
 - b. Bond tower base footings steel, the TGB in the equipment room, and antenna support guys to the roof ring.
 - c. Connect roof ring to the perimeter conductors of the lightning protection system.
 - 6. Waveguides and Coaxial Cable:
 - a. Bond cable shields at the point of entry into the building to the TGB and to the cable entrance plate, using No. 2 AWG bonding conductors.
 - b. Bond coaxial cable surge arrester to the ground or roof ring using bonding conductor size recommended by surge-arrester manufacturer.
- N. **<Insert connections of other equipment>**.

3.7 GROUNDING UNDERGROUND DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM COMPONENTS

- A. Duct-Bank Grounding Conductor: Bury 12 inches (300 mm) above duct bank when indicated as part of duct-bank installation.
- B. Comply with IEEE C2 grounding requirements.
- C. Grounding Manholes and Handholes: Install a driven ground rod through manhole or handhole floor, close to wall, and set rod depth so 4 inches (100 mm) extends above finished floor. If necessary, install ground rod before manhole is placed and provide No. 1/0 AWG bare, tinned-copper conductor from ground rod into manhole through a waterproof sleeve in manhole wall. Protect ground rods passing through concrete floor with a double wrapping of pressure-sensitive insulating tape or heat-shrunk insulating sleeve from 2 inches (50 mm) above to 6 inches (150 mm) below concrete. Seal floor opening with waterproof, nonshrink grout.
- D. Grounding Connections to Manhole Components: Bond exposed-metal parts such as inserts, cable racks, pulling irons, ladders, and cable shields within each manhole or handhole, to ground rod or grounding conductor. Make connections with No. 4 AWG minimum, bonding conductor. Train conductors level or plumb around corners and fasten to manhole walls. Connect grounding conductors to cable armor and cable shields according to written instructions by manufacturer of splicing and termination kits.

3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type.
 - 1. Label TMGB(s) with "fs-TMGB," where "fs" is the telecommunications space identifier for the space containing the TMGB.
 - 2. Label TGB(s) with "fs-TGB," where "fs" is the telecommunications space identifier for the space containing the TGB.
 - 3. Label the BCT and each telecommunications backbone conductor at its attachment point: "WARNING! TELECOMMUNICATIONS BONDING CONDUCTOR. DO NOT REMOVE OR DISCONNECT!"

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Test the bonding connections of the system using an ac earth ground-resistance tester, taking two-point bonding measurements in each telecommunications equipment room containing a TMGB and a TGB and using the process recommended by BICSI TDMM. Conduct tests with the facility in operation.

- a. Measure the resistance between the busbar and the nearest available grounding electrode. The maximum acceptable value of this bonding resistance is 100 milliohms.
3. Test for ground loop currents using a digital clamp-on ammeter, with a full-scale of not more than 10 A, displaying current in increments of 0.01 A at an accuracy of plus/minus 2.0 percent.
 - a. With the grounding infrastructure completed and the communications system electronics operating, measure the current in every conductor connected to the **TMGB and in each TGB**. Maximum acceptable ac current level is 1 A.
- C. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground at the BCT exceeds **5** ohms, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.
 - D. Grounding system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
 - E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 270526

SECTION 270528 - PATHWAYS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Metal conduits and fittings.
2. Nonmetallic conduits and fittings.
3. Optical-fiber-cable pathways and fittings.
4. Metal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
5. Nonmetallic wireways and auxiliary gutters.
6. Metallic surface pathways.
7. Hooks.
8. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.
9. Polymer-concrete handholes and boxes for exterior underground cabling.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. GRC: Galvanized rigid conduit.
- B. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.
- C. RTRC: Reinforced thermosetting resin conduit.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product data for the following:
 1. Surface pathways
 2. Wireways and fittings.
 3. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.
 4. Underground handholes and boxes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For custom enclosures and cabinets **and custom underground handholes and boxes**. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

- A. Description: Metal raceway of circular cross section with manufacturer-fabricated fittings.
- B. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- C. General Requirements for Metal Conduits and Fittings:
 - 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a nationally recognized testing laboratory, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 2. Comply with TIA-569-D.
- D. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.
- E. IMC: Comply with ANSI C80.6 and UL 1242.
- F. PVC-Coated Steel Conduit: PVC-coated **GRC or IMC**.
 - 1. Comply with NEMA RN 1.
 - 2. Coating Thickness: **0.040 inch (1 mm)**, minimum.
- G. EMT: Comply with ANSI C80.3 and UL 797.
- H. Fittings for Metal Conduit: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 514B.
 - 1. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with UL 1203 and NFPA 70.
 - 2. Fittings for EMT:
 - a. Material: **Steel**.
 - b. Type: **Set screw or compression**.
 - 3. Expansion Fittings: PVC or steel to match conduit type, complying with UL-467, rated for environmental conditions where installed, and including flexible external bonding jumper.
 - 4. Coating for Fittings for PVC-Coated Conduit: Minimum thickness of **0.040 inch (1 mm)**, with overlapping sleeves protecting threaded joints.
- I. Joint Compound for IMC, GRC, or ARC: Approved, as defined in NFPA 70, by authorities having jurisdiction for use in conduit assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded conduit joints from corrosion and to enhance their conductivity.

2.2 NONMETALLIC CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

- A. Description: Nonmetallic raceway of circular section with manufacturer-fabricated fittings.
- B. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

- C. General Requirements for Nonmetallic Conduits and Fittings:
 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
 2. Comply with TIA-569-D.
- D. RNC: **Type EPC-40-PVC or Type EPC-80-PVC**, complying with NEMA TC 2 and UL 651 unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Rigid HDPE: Comply with UL 651A.
- F. Continuous HDPE: Comply with UL 651A.
- G. RTRC: Comply with UL 2515A and NEMA TC 14.
- H. Fittings: Comply with NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or tubing type and material.

2.3 OPTICAL-FIBER-CABLE PATHWAYS AND FITTINGS

- A. Description: Comply with UL 2024; flexible-type pathway with a circular cross section, approved for **plenum, riser or general-use** installation unless otherwise indicated.
- B. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- C. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Comply with TIA-569-D.

2.4 METAL WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

- A. Description: Sheet metal trough of rectangular cross section fabricated to required size and shape, without holes or knockouts, and with hinged or removable covers.
- B. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- C. General Requirements for Metal Wireways and Auxiliary Gutters:
 1. Comply with UL 870 and NEMA 250, **Type 1 or Type 3R** unless otherwise indicated, and sized according to NFPA 70.
 2. Metal wireways installed outdoors shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
 3. Comply with TIA-569-D.
- D. Fittings and Accessories: Include covers, couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.
- E. Wireway Covers: **Hinged type, Screw-cover type or Flanged-and-gasketed type** unless otherwise indicated.

F. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

2.5 SURFACE METAL PATHWAYS

A. Description: Galvanized steel with snap-on covers, complying with UL 5.

B. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

C. Finish: **Manufacturer's standard enamel finish in color selected by Architect.**

D. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.

E. Comply with TIA-569-D.

2.6 HOOKS

A. Description: Prefabricated sheet metal cable supports for telecommunications cable.

B. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

C. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.

D. Comply with TIA-569-D.

E. **Galvanized** steel.

F. **J** shape.

2.7 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

A. Description: Enclosures for communications.

B. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

C. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets:

1. Comply with TIA-569-D.
2. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets installed in wet locations shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for use in wet locations.
3. Box extensions used to accommodate new building finishes shall be of same material as recessed box.
4. Device Box Dimensions: **4 inches square by 2-1/8 inches deep (100 mm square by 60 mm deep).**
5. Gangable boxes are **allowed**.

D. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.

- E. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, **ferrous alloy or aluminum**] Type FD, with gasketed cover.
- F. Metal Floor Boxes:
 - 1. Material: **Cast metal**.
 - 2. Type: **Fully adjustable**.
 - 3. Shape: Rectangular.
 - 4. Metal floor boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- G. Nonmetallic Floor Boxes: Nonadjustable, **round or rectangular**.
 - 1. Nonmetallic floor boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- H. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- I. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 1773, **cast aluminum** with gasketed cover.
- J. Nonmetallic Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 2 and UL 514C.
- K. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: Comply with UL 50 and NEMA 250, **Type 1 or Type 3R**, with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
 - 2. Nonmetallic Enclosures:
 - a. Material: **Plastic or Fiberglass**.
 - b. Finished inside with radio-frequency-resistant paint.
 - 3. Interior Panels: Steel; all sides finished with manufacturer's standard enamel.
- L. Cabinets:
 - 1. NEMA 250, **Type 1 or Type 3R** galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
 - 2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
 - 3. Key latch to match panelboards.
 - 4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
 - 5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.
 - 6. Nonmetallic cabinets shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.8 POLYMER-CONCRETE HANDHOLES

- A. Description: Molded of sand and aggregate; bound together with polymer resin; and reinforced with steel, fiberglass, or a combination of the two.
- B. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

- C. General Requirements for Polymer Concrete Handholes:
 - 1. Boxes and handholes for use in underground systems shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 2. Boxes installed in wet areas shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 3. Comply with TIA-569-D.
- D. Configuration: Designed for flush burial with **open** bottom unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure and handhole location.
 - 1. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
 - 2. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "**COMMUNICATIONS**".
- F. Conduit Entrance Provisions: Conduit-terminating fittings shall mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
- G. Handholes **12 Inches Wide by 24 Inches Long (300 mm Wide by 600 mm Long)** and Larger: Have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons installed before concrete is poured.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PATHWAY APPLICATION

- A. Outdoors: Apply pathway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Exposed Conduit: **GRC or IMC**.
 - 2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: **EMT**.
 - 3. Underground Conduit: RNC, **Type EPC-40-PVC** or **Type EPC-80-PVC**, **direct buried**.
 - 4. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, **Type 3R**.
- B. Indoors: Apply pathway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: **EMT**.
 - 2. Exposed, Not Subject to Severe Physical Damage: **EMT**.
 - 3. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: **GRC or IMC**.
 - 4. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: **EMT**.
 - 5. Damp or Wet Locations: **GRC or IMC**.
 - 6. Pathways for Optical-Fiber or Communications Cable in Spaces Used for Environmental Air: **Plenum-type, optical-fiber-cable pathway, Plenum-type, communications-cable pathway or EMT**.
 - 7. Pathways for Concealed General-Purpose Distribution of Optical-Fiber or Communications Cable: **General-use, optical-fiber-cable pathway, Riser-type, optical-fiber-cable pathway, Plenum-type, optical-fiber-cable pathway, General-use, communications-cable pathway, Riser-type, communications-cable pathway, Plenum-type, communications-cable pathway or EMT**.

- 8. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, Type 4 **nonmetallic** units in institutional and commercial kitchens and damp or wet locations.
- C. Minimum Pathway Size: **3/4-inch (21-mm)** trade size for copper and aluminum cables, and **1 inch (25 mm)** for optical-fiber cables.
- D. Pathway Fittings: Compatible with pathways and suitable for use and location.
 - 1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
 - 2. PVC Externally Coated, Rigid Steel Conduits: Use only fittings listed for use with this type of conduit. Patch and seal all joints, nicks, and scrapes in PVC coating after installing conduits and fittings. Use sealant recommended by fitting manufacturer and apply in thickness and number of coats recommended by manufacturer.
 - 3. EMT: Use **set-screw or compression, steel** fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
- E. Do not install aluminum conduits, boxes, or fittings in contact with concrete or earth.
- F. Install surface pathways only where indicated on Drawings.
- G. Do not install nonmetallic conduit where ambient temperature exceeds **120 deg F (49 deg C)**.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with the following standards for installation requirements except where requirements on Drawings or in this Section are stricter:
 - 1. NECA 1.
 - 2. NECA/BICSI 568.
 - 3. TIA-569-D.
 - 4. NECA 101
 - 5. NECA 102.
 - 6. NECA 105.
 - 7. NECA 111.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of pathways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.
- C. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- D. Comply with requirements in Section 270529 "Hangers and Supports for Communications Systems" for hangers and supports.
- E. Comply with requirements in Section 270544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Communications Pathways and Cabling" for sleeves and sleeve seals for communications.
- F. Keep pathways at least **6 inches (150 mm)** away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal pathway runs above water and steam piping.
- G. Complete pathway installation before starting conductor installation.

- H. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above finished slab.
- I. Install no more than the equivalent of two 90-degree bends in any pathway run. Support within **12 inches (300 mm)** of changes in direction. Utilize long radius ells for all optical-fiber cables.
- J. Conceal rigid conduit within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.
- K. Support conduit within **12 inches (300 mm)** of enclosures to which attached.
- L. Pathways Embedded in Slabs:
 - 1. Run conduit larger than **1-inch (27-mm)** trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support. Secure pathways to reinforcement at maximum **10-foot (3-m)** intervals.
 - 2. Arrange pathways to cross building expansion joints at right angles with expansion fittings. Comply with requirements for expansion joints specified in this article.
 - 3. Arrange pathways to keep a minimum of **2 inches (50 mm)** of concrete cover in all directions.
 - 4. Do not embed threadless fittings in concrete unless specifically approved by Architect for each specific location.
 - 5. Change from nonmetallic conduit and fittings to **GRC or IMC** and fittings before rising above floor.
- M. Stub-ups to Above Recessed Ceilings:
 - 1. Use EMT, IMC, or RMC for pathways.
 - 2. Use a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs or in an enclosure.
- N. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of pathway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.
- O. Coat field-cut threads on PVC-coated pathway with a corrosion-preventing conductive compound prior to assembly.
- P. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install insulated bushings on conduits terminated with locknuts.
- Q. Install pathways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures with locknuts. Install locknuts hand tight plus one additional quarter-turn.
- R. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in the locknut area prior to assembling conduit to enclosure, to assure a continuous ground path.
- S. Cut conduit perpendicular to the length. For conduits of **2-inch (50-mm)** trade size and larger, use roll cutter or a guide to ensure cut is straight and perpendicular to the length.
- T. Install pull wires in empty pathways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than **200-lb (90-kg)** tensile strength. Leave at least **12 inches (300 mm)** of slack at each end

of pull wire. Secure pull wire, so it cannot fall into conduit. Cap pathways designated as spare alongside pathways in use.

U. Surface Pathways:

1. Install surface pathway for surface telecommunications outlet boxes only where indicated on Drawings.
2. Install surface pathway with a minimum **2-inch (50-mm)** radius control at bend points.
3. Secure surface pathway with screws or other anchor-type devices at intervals not exceeding **48 inches (1200 mm)** and with no less than two supports per straight pathway section. Support surface pathway according to manufacturer's written instructions. Tape and glue are not acceptable support methods.

V. Pathways for Optical-Fiber and Communications Cable: Install pathways, metal and nonmetallic, rigid and flexible, as follows:

1. **3/4-Inch (21-mm)** Trade Size and Smaller: Install pathways in maximum lengths of **50 feet (15 m)**.
2. **1-Inch (25-mm)** Trade Size and Larger: Install pathways in maximum lengths of **75 feet (23 m)**.
3. Install with a maximum of two 90-degree bends or equivalent for each length of pathway unless Drawings show stricter requirements. Separate lengths with pull or junction boxes or terminations at distribution frames or cabinets where necessary to comply with these requirements.

W. Install pathway-sealing fittings at accessible locations according to NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed pathways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install pathway-sealing fittings according to NFPA 70.

X. Install devices to seal pathway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals, so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal the interior of all pathways at the following points:

1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
2. Where an underground service pathway enters a building or structure.
3. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.

Y. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for solvent welding PVC conduit and fittings.

Z. Expansion-Joint Fittings:

1. Install in each run of aboveground RNC that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed **30 deg F (17 deg C)**, and that has straight-run length that exceeds **25 feet (7.6 m)**. Install in each run of aboveground RMC **and EMT** that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed **100 deg F (55 deg C)**, and that has straight-run length that exceeds **100 feet (30 m)**.
2. Install type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for each of the following locations:

- a. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: **125 deg F (70 deg C)** temperature change.
 - b. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: **155 deg F (86 deg C)** temperature change.
 - c. Indoor Spaces Connected with Outdoors without Physical Separation: **125 deg F (70 deg C)** temperature change.
 - d. Attics: **135 deg F (75 deg C)** temperature change.
3. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least **0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F (0.06 mm per meter of length of straight run per deg C)** of temperature change for PVC conduits. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least **0.000078 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F (0.0115 mm per meter of length of straight run per deg C)** of temperature change for metal conduits.
 4. Install expansion fittings at all locations where conduits cross building or structure expansion joints.
 5. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at time of installation. Install conduit supports to allow for expansion movement.

AA. Hooks:

1. Size to allow a minimum of 25 percent future capacity without exceeding design capacity limits.
2. Shall be supported by dedicated support wires. Do not use ceiling grid support wire or support rods.
3. Hook spacing shall allow no more than **6 inches (150 mm)** of slack. The lowest point of the cables shall be no less than **6 inches (150 mm)** adjacent to ceilings, mechanical ductwork and fittings, luminaires, power conduits, power and telecommunications outlets, and other electrical and communications equipment.
4. Space hooks no more than **5 feet (1.5 m)** o.c.
5. Provide a hook at each change in direction.

BB. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to **center** of box unless otherwise indicated.

CC. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall. Prepare block surface to provide a flat surface for a raintight connection between box and cover plate or supported equipment and box.

DD. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls, so they are not in the same vertical channel.

EE. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for the purpose.

FF. Fasten junction and pull boxes to or support from building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.

GG. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.

HH. Set nonmetallic floor boxes level. Trim after installation to fit flush with finished floor surface.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND CONDUIT

A. Direct-Buried Conduit:

1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for conduit. Prepare trench bottom as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for pipe of less than **6 inches (150 mm)** in nominal diameter.
2. Install backfill as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
3. After installing conduit, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point, and work toward end of conduit run, leaving conduit at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Firmly hand tamp backfill around conduit to provide maximum supporting strength. After placing controlled backfill to within **12 inches (300 mm)** of finished grade, make final conduit connection at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
4. Install manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor unless otherwise indicated. Encase elbows for stub-up ducts throughout length of elbow.
5. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor.
 - a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with **3 inches (75 mm)** of concrete around conduit for a minimum of **12 inches (300 mm)** on each side of the coupling.
 - b. For stub-ups at equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases and where conduits penetrate building foundations, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of **60 inches (1500 mm)** from edge of foundation or equipment base. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
6. Warning Planks: Bury warning planks approximately **12 inches (300 mm)** above direct-buried conduits, but a minimum of **6 inches (150 mm)** below grade. Align planks along centerline of conduit.
7. Underground Warning Tape: Comply with requirements in Section 270553 "Identification for Communications Systems."

3.4 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND HANDHOLES AND BOXES

- A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting conduits to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from **1/2-inch (12.5-mm)** sieve to **No. 4 (4.75-mm)** sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.
- C. Elevation: In paved areas, set so cover surface will be flush with finished grade. Set covers of other enclosures **1 inch (25 mm)** above finished grade.

- D. Install handholes with bottom below frost line, 18" below grade.
- E. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables, but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in enclosure.
- F. Field cut openings for conduits according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.

3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR COMMUNICATIONS PENETRATIONS

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 270544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Communications Pathways and Cabling."

3.6 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Install firestopping at penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage or deterioration.
 - 1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
 - 2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 270528

SECTION 270529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Steel slotted support systems for communication raceways.
- 2. Conduit and cable support devices.
- 3. Structural steel for fabricated supports and restraints.
- 4. Mounting, anchoring, and attachment components, including powder-actuated fasteners, mechanical expansion anchors, concrete inserts, clamps, through bolts, toggle bolts, and hanger rods.
- 5. Fabricated metal equipment support assemblies.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 270548 "Seismic Controls for Communications Systems" for products and installation requirements necessary for compliance with seismic criteria.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for the following:
 - a. Slotted support systems, hardware, and accessories.
 - b. Clamps.
 - c. Hangers.
 - d. Sockets.
 - e. Eye nuts.
 - f. Fasteners.
 - g. Anchors.
 - h. Saddles.
 - i. Brackets.
- 2. Include rated capacities and furnished specialties and accessories.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
 - 2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design hanger and support system.
- B. Seismic Performance: Hangers and supports shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to **ASCE/SEI 7**.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the supported equipment and systems will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
 - 2. Component Importance Factor: **1.0**.
- C. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Flame Rating: Class 1.
 - 2. Self-extinguishing according to ASTM D 635.

2.2 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

- A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Preformed steel channels and angles with minimum **13/32-inch- (10-mm-)** diameter holes at a maximum of **8 inches (200 mm)** o.c. in at least one surface.
 - 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
 - 2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
 - 3. Material for Channel, Fittings, and Accessories: **Galvanized steel, Plain steel or Stainless Steel, Type 304.**
 - 4. Channel Width: **1-5/8 inches (41.25 mm)>**.
 - 5. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
 - 6. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
 - 7. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
 - 8. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
 - 9. Channel Dimensions: Selected for applicable load criteria.

- B. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: **Steel and malleable-iron or Stainless-steel** clamps, hangers, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.
- C. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A 36/A 36M steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- D. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:
 - 1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud for use in hardened portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - a. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
 - 2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type **zinc-coated steel** for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - a. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
 - 3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units are similar to MSS Type 18 units and comply with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
 - 4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58 units are suitable for attached structural element.
 - 5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM A 325.
 - 6. Toggle Bolts: **All-steel** springhead type.
 - 7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

2.3 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

- A. Description: Welded or bolted structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.
- B. Materials: Comply with requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and plates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with the following standards for application and installation requirements of hangers and supports, except where requirements on Drawings or in this Section are stricter:
 - 1. NECA 1.
 - 2. NECA/BICSI 568.

3. TIA-569-D.
 4. NECA 101
 5. NECA 102.
 6. NECA 105.
 7. NECA 111.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
 - C. Comply with requirements for pathways specified in Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems."
 - D. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceway: Space supports for EMTs, IMCs, and RMCs as **required by NFPA 70**. Minimum rod size shall be **1/4 inch (6 mm)** in diameter.
 - E. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted **or other** support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least **25** percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.
 1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with **two-bolt conduit clamps, single-bolt conduit clamps or single-bolt conduit clamps, using spring friction action for retention in support channel**.
 - F. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for **1-1/2-inch (38-mm)** and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.

3.2 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA 1, **EMT, IMC and RMC** may be supported by openings through structure members, according to NFPA 70.
- B. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components, so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus **200 lb (90 kg)**.
- C. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten communications items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:
 1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
 2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
 3. To Masonry: Use approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
 4. To Existing Concrete: Use expansion anchor fasteners.
 5. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated-driven threaded studs, provided with lock washers and nuts, may be used in existing standard-weight concrete **4 inches (100 mm)**

thick or greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than **4 inches (100 mm)** thick.

6. To Steel: **Welded threaded studs complying with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, with lock washers and nuts, Beam clamps (MSS SP-58, Type 19, 21, 23, 25, or 27), complying with MSS SP-69, or Spring-tension clamps.**
7. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
8. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate.

- D. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid the need for reinforcing bars.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with installation requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated metal supports.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor communications materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

3.4 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of **2.0 mils (0.05 mm)**.
- B. Touchup: Comply with requirements in **Section 099113 "Exterior Painting"**, **Section 099123 "Interior Painting"** and **Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings"** for cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas, and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 270529

SECTION 270536 - CABLE TRAYS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Wire-mesh cable tray.
2. Cable tray accessories.
3. Warning signs.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of cable tray.

1. Include data indicating dimensions and finishes for each type of cable tray indicated.

- B. Shop Drawings: For each type of cable tray.

1. Show fabrication and installation details of cable trays, including plans, elevations, and sections of components and attachments to other construction elements. Designate components and accessories, including clamps, brackets, hanger rods, splice-plate connectors, expansion-joint assemblies, straight lengths, and fittings.
2. Cable tray layout, showing cable tray route to scale, with relationship between the tray and adjacent structural, electrical, and mechanical elements. Include the following:
 - a. Vertical and horizontal offsets and transitions.
 - b. Clearances for access above and to sides of cable trays.
 - c. Vertical elevation of cable trays above the floor or bottom of ceiling structure.
 - d. Load calculations to show dead and live loads as not exceeding manufacturer's rating for tray and its support elements.

- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For seismic restraints.

1. Seismic-Restraint Details: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer, licensed in the state where Project is located, who is responsible for their preparation.
2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting seismic restraints.
3. Detail fabrication, including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported cable trays.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design cable tray supports and seismic bracing.
- B. Seismic Performance: Cable trays and supports shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to **ASCE/SEI 7**.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the cable trays will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
 - 2. Component Importance Factor: **1.0**.
- C. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes in cable tray installed outdoors.
 - 1. Temperature Change: **120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.**

2.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR CABLE TRAYS

- A. Cable Trays and Accessories: Identified as defined in NFPA 70 and marked for intended location, application, and grounding.
 - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain cable trays and components from single manufacturer.
- B. Sizes and Configurations: See the Cable Tray Schedule on Drawings for specific requirements for types, materials, sizes, and configurations.
- C. Structural Performance: See articles for individual cable tray types for specific values for the following parameters:
 - 1. Uniform Load Distribution: Capable of supporting a uniformly distributed load on the indicated support span when supported as a simple span and tested according to NEMA VE 1.
 - 2. Concentrated Load: A load applied at midpoint of span and centerline of tray.
 - 3. Load and Safety Factors: Applicable to both side rails and rung capacities.

2.3 WIRE-MESH CABLE TRAY

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Description:
 - 1. Configuration: **Galvanized**-steel wire mesh, complying with NEMA VE 1.
 - 2. Width: **12 inches (300 mm)** unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 - 3. Minimum Usable Load Depth: **2 inches (50 mm)** unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

4. Straight Section Lengths: **10 feet (3.0 m) or 12 feet (3.7 m)**, except where shorter lengths are required to facilitate tray assembly.
5. Structural Performance: Capable of supporting a maximum cable load, with a safety factor of 1.5, plus a **200-lb (90-kg)** concentrated load, when tested according to NEMA VE 1.
6. Splicing Assemblies: Bolted type using serrated flange locknuts.
7. Splice-Plate Capacity: Splices located within support span shall not diminish rated loading capacity of cable tray.

C. Materials and Finishes:

1. Steel:

- a. Straight Sections and Fittings: Steel complies with the minimum mechanical properties of **ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, SS, Grade 33**.
- b. Steel Tray Splice Plates: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, HSLAS, Grade 50, Class 1.
- c. Fasteners: Steel complies with the minimum mechanical properties of ASTM A 510/A 510M, Grade 1008.
- d. Finish: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication, complying with ASTM A123/A123 M, Class B2.
 - 1) Hardware: **Galvanized, ASTM B 633 or Chromium-zinc plated, ASTM F 1136**.
- e. Finish: Electrogalvanized after fabrication, complying with ASTM B 633.
 - 1) Hardware: Galvanized, ASTM B 633.

2.4 CABLE TRAY ACCESSORIES

- A. Fittings: Tees, crosses, risers, elbows, and other fittings as indicated, of same materials and finishes as cable tray.
- B. Barrier Strips: Same materials and finishes as for cable tray.
- C. Cable tray supports and connectors, including bonding jumpers, as recommended by cable tray manufacturer.

2.5 WARNING SIGNS

- A. Comply with requirements for identification in Section 270553 "Identification for Communications Systems."
- B. Lettering: **1-1/2-inch- (40-mm-)** high, black letters on yellow background with legend "Warning! Not To Be Used as Walkway, Ladder, or Support for Ladders or Personnel."

2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing: Test and inspect cable trays according to **NEMA FG 1**.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CABLE TRAY INSTALLATION

- A. Install cable trays according to **NEMA FG 1**.
- B. Install cable trays as a complete system, including fasteners, hold-down clips, support systems, barrier strips, adjustable horizontal and vertical splice plates, elbows, reducers, tees, crosses, cable dropouts, adapters, covers, and bonding.
- C. Install cable trays so that the tray is accessible for cable installation and all splices are accessible for inspection and adjustment.
- D. Remove burrs and sharp edges from cable trays.
- E. Join aluminum cable tray with splice plates; use four square neck-carriage bolts and locknuts.
- F. Fasten cable tray supports to building structure **and install seismic restraints**.
- G. Design fasteners and supports to carry cable tray, the cables, and a concentrated load of **200 lb (90 kg)**. Comply with requirements in Section 270529 "Hangers and Supports for Communications Systems." **Comply with seismic-restraint details according to Section 270548.16 "Seismic Controls for Communications Systems."**
- H. Place supports so that spans do not exceed maximum spans on schedules and provide clearances shown on Drawings. Install intermediate supports when cable weight exceeds the load-carrying capacity of the tray rungs.
- I. Construct supports from channel members, threaded rods, and other appurtenances furnished by cable tray manufacturer. Arrange supports in trapeze or wall-bracket form as required by application.
- J. Support bus assembly to prevent twisting from eccentric loading.
- K. Install center-hung supports for single-rail trays designed for 60 versus 40 percent eccentric loading condition, with a safety factor of 3.
- L. Locate and install supports according to **NEMA FG 1**. Do not install more than one cable tray splice between supports.
- M. Support wire-basket cable trays with **trapeze hangers or wall brackets**.
- N. Support **trapeze hangers** for wire-basket trays with **3/8-inch- (10-mm-)** diameter rods.
- O. Make connections to equipment with flanged fittings fastened to cable trays and to equipment. Support cable trays independent of fittings. Do not carry weight of cable trays on equipment enclosure.
- P. Install expansion connectors where cable trays cross building expansion joints and in cable tray runs that exceed dimensions recommended in **NEMA FG 1**. Space connectors and set gaps according to applicable standard.

- Q. Make changes in direction and elevation using manufacturer's recommended fittings.
- R. Make cable tray connections using manufacturer's recommended fittings.
- S. Seal penetrations through fire and smoke barriers. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- T. Install capped metal sleeves for future cables through firestop-sealed cable tray penetrations of fire and smoke barriers.
- U. Install cable trays with enough workspace to permit access for installing cables.
- V. Install barriers to separate cables of different systems, such as power, communications, and data processing; or of different insulation levels, such as 600, 5000, and 15 000 V.
- W. Install permanent covers, if used, after installing cable. Install cover clamps according to NEMA VE 2.
- X. Clamp covers on cable trays installed outdoors with heavy-duty clamps.
- Y. Install warning signs in visible locations on or near cable trays after cable tray installation.

3.2 CABLE TRAY GROUNDING

- A. Ground cable trays according to NFPA 70 unless additional grounding is specified. Comply with requirements in Section 270526 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems."
- B. Cable trays shall be bonded together with splice plates listed for grounding purposes or with listed bonding jumpers.
- C. Cable trays with single-conductor power conductors shall be bonded together with a grounding conductor run in the tray along with the power conductors and bonded to the tray at **72-inch (1800-mm)** intervals. The grounding conductor shall be sized according to NFPA 70, Article 250.122, "Size of Equipment Grounding Conductors," and Article 392, "Cable Trays."
- D. When using epoxy- or powder-coat painted cable trays as a grounding conductor, completely remove coating at all splice contact points or ground connector attachment. After completing splice-to-grounding bolt attachment, repair the coated surfaces with coating materials recommended by cable tray manufacturer.
- E. Bond cable trays to power source for cables contained within with bonding conductors sized according to NFPA 70, Article 250.122, "Size of Equipment Grounding Conductors."

3.3 CABLE INSTALLATION

- A. Install cables only when each cable tray run has been completed and inspected.
- B. Fasten cables on horizontal runs with cable clamps or cable ties according to NEMA VE 2. Tighten clamps only enough to secure the cable, without indenting the cable jacket. Install cable ties with a tool that includes an automatic pressure-limiting device.

- C. Fasten cables on vertical runs to cable trays every **18 inches (450 mm)**.
- D. Fasten and support cables that pass from one cable tray to another or drop from cable trays to equipment enclosures. Fasten cables to the cable tray at the point of exit and support cables independent of the enclosure. The cable length between cable trays or between cable tray and enclosure shall be no more than **72 inches (1800 mm)**.
- E. Tie MI cables down every **36 inches (900 mm)** where required to provide a 2-hour fire rating and every **72 inches (1800 mm)** elsewhere.
- F. In existing construction, remove inactive or dead cables from cable trays.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Remove paint from all connection points before making connections. Repair paint after the connections are completed.
- B. Connect pathways to cable trays according to requirements in NEMA VE 2 and NEMA FG 1.

END OF SECTION 270536

SECTION 270543 - UNDERGROUND PATHWAYS AND STRUCTURES FOR COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Metal conduit and fittings, including GRC and PVC-coated GRC.
 - 2. Rigid nonmetallic duct.
 - 3. Duct accessories, including rigid innerduct and fabric innerduct.
 - 4. Polymer concrete handholes and boxes with polymer concrete cover.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Direct-Buried: Duct or a duct bank that is buried in the ground, without any additional casing materials, such as concrete.
- B. Duct: A single duct or multiple ducts. Duct may be either installed singly or as component of a duct bank.
- C. Duct Bank:
 - 1. Two or more ducts installed in parallel, with or without additional casing materials.
 - 2. Multiple duct banks.
- D. GRC: Galvanized rigid conduit.
- E. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.
- F. RNC: Rigid nonmetallic conduit.
- G. Trafficways: Locations where vehicular or pedestrian traffic is a normal course of events.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include duct-bank materials, including spacers and miscellaneous components.

2. Include duct and conduits and their accessories, including elbows, end bells, bends, fittings, duct spacers and solvent cement.
3. Include accessories for handholes, **and** boxes.
4. Include underground-line warning tape.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Ground Water: Assume ground-water level is **24 inches (600 mm)** below ground surface unless a higher water table is noted on Drawings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

- A. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.
- B. PVC-Coated Steel Conduit: PVC-coated **GRC or IMC**.
 1. Comply with NEMA RN 1.
 2. Coating Thickness: **0.040 inch (1 mm)**, minimum.
- C. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- D. General Requirements for Metal Conduits and Fittings:
 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a nationally recognized testing laboratory, and marked for intended location and application.
 2. Comply with TIA-569-C and TIA-758-C.

2.2 RIGID NONMETALLIC DUCTS

- A. Underground Plastic Utilities Duct: **Type EPC-80-PVC and Type EPC-40-PVC** RNC, complying with NEMA TC 2 and UL 651, with matching fittings complying with NEMA TC 3 by same manufacturer as duct.
- B. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- C. General Requirements for Nonmetallic Ducts and Fittings:
 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a nationally recognized testing laboratory, and marked for intended location and application.
 2. Comply with TIA-569-C and TIA-758-C.

2.3 FLEXIBLE NONMETALLIC DUCTS

- A. HDPE Duct: **Type EPEC 40-HDPE or Type EPEC 80-HDPE** complying with NEMA TC 7 and UL 651A.

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a nationally recognized testing laboratory, and marked for intended location and application.
3. Comply with TIA-569-C and TIA-758-C.

2.4 DUCT ACCESSORIES

- A. Rigid Innderduct: **Smooth or Corrugated** HDPE duct, orange in color, designed for installation within a duct or pathway.
 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Duct Spacers: Factory-fabricated rigid PVC interlocking spacers, sized for type and size of duct with which used, and selected to provide minimum duct spacing indicated while supporting duct during concreting or backfilling.
 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- C. Underground-Line Warning Tape: Underground-line warning tape specified in Section 270553 "Identification for Communications Systems."

2.5 PRECAST CONCRETE HANDHOLES AND BOXES

- A. Description: Monolithically poured, factory-fabricated, reinforced-concrete walls and bottom unless open-bottom enclosures are indicated. Frame and cover shall form top of enclosure and shall have load rating consistent with that of handhole or box.
- B. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- C. Comply with ASTM C 858 for design and manufacturing processes.
- D. Frame and Cover: Weatherproof cast-iron frame, with cast-iron cover with recessed cover hook eyes and tamper-resistant, captive, cover-securing bolts.
- E. Frame and Cover: Weatherproof steel frame, with steel cover with recessed cover hook eyes and tamper-resistant, captive, cover-securing bolts.
- F. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
- G. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "**COMMUNICATIONS or COMM.**"
- H. Configuration: Units shall be designed for flush burial and have **open** bottom unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Extensions and Slabs: Designed to mate with bottom of enclosure, and made of same material as enclosure.
 1. Extension shall provide increased depth of **12 inches (300 mm)**.
 2. Slab: Same dimensions as bottom of enclosure, and arranged to provide closure.

- J. Joint Sealant: Asphaltic-butyl material with adhesion, cohesion, flexibility, and durability properties necessary to withstand maximum hydrostatic pressures at the installation location with the ground-water level at grade.
- K. Knockout Panels: Precast openings in walls, arranged to match dimensions and elevations of approaching duct and duct banks, plus an additional **6 inches (150 mm)** vertically and horizontally to accommodate alignment variations.
 - 1. Knockout panels shall be located no less than **6 inches (150 mm)** from interior surfaces of walls, floors, or frames and covers of handholes, but close enough to corners to facilitate racking of cables on walls.
 - 2. Knockout panel opening shall have cast-in-place, welded-wire fabric reinforcement for field cutting and bending to tie in to concrete envelopes of duct banks.
 - 3. Knockout panel openings shall be framed with at least two additional No. 3 steel reinforcing bars in concrete around each opening.
 - 4. Knockout panels shall be **1-1/2 to 2 inches (38 to 50 mm)** thick.
- L. Duct Entrances in Handhole Walls: Cast end-bell or duct-terminating fitting in wall for each entering duct.
 - 1. Type and size shall match fittings to duct or conduit to be terminated.
 - 2. Fittings shall align with elevations of approaching duct and be located near interior corners of handholes to facilitate racking of cable.
- M. Handholes **12 inches wide by 24 inches long (300 mm wide by 600 mm long)** and larger shall have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons installed before concrete is poured.

2.6 POLYMER CONCRETE HANDHOLES AND BOXES WITH POLYMER CONCRETE COVER

- A. Description: Molded of sand and aggregate, bound together with a polymer resin, and reinforced with steel or fiberglass or a combination of the two.
- B. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- C. Standard: Comply with SCTE 77. Comply with tier requirements in "Underground Enclosure Application" Article.
- D. Color: **Gray or Green.**
- E. Configuration: Units shall be designed for flush burial and have **open** bottom unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure.
- G. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
- H. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "**COMMUNICATIONS**" or "**COMM.**"

- I. Direct-Buried Wiring Entrance Provisions: Knockouts equipped with insulated bushings or end-bell fittings, selected to suit box material, sized for wiring indicated, and arranged for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
- J. Duct Entrance Provisions: Duct-terminating fittings shall mate with entering duct for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
- K. Handholes **12 inches wide by 24 inches long (300 mm wide by 600 mm long)** and larger shall have factory-installed inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of duct, duct bank, manholes, handholes, and boxes with final arrangement of other utilities, site grading, and surface features as determined in the field. Notify Architect if there is a conflict between areas of excavation and existing structures or archaeological sites to remain.
- B. Coordinate elevations of duct and duct-bank entrances into manholes, handholes, and boxes with final locations and profiles of duct and duct banks, as determined by coordination with other utilities, underground obstructions, and surface features. Revise locations and elevations as required to suit field conditions and to ensure that duct runs drain to manholes and handholes, and as approved by Architect.
- C. Clear and grub vegetation to be removed and protect vegetation to remain according to Section 311000 "Site Clearing." Remove and stockpile topsoil for reapplication according to Section 311000 "Site Clearing."

3.2 UNDERGROUND DUCT APPLICATION

- A. Duct for Communications: **Type EPC-80-PVC** or **Type EPC-40-PVC** RNC, in direct-buried duct bank unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Underground Duct Crossing **Paved Paths, Walks and Driveways**: Type EPC-40-PVC RNC.
- C. Stub-Ups for Communications: Concrete-encased **GRC or PVC-coated GRC**.

3.3 UNDERGROUND ENCLOSURE APPLICATION

- A. Handholes and Boxes for Communications:
 - 1. Units in Roadways and Other Deliberate Traffic Paths: Precast concrete. AASHTO HB 17, **H-10** structural load rating.
 - 2. Units in Driveway, Parking Lot, and Off-Roadway Locations, Subject to Occasional, Nondeliberate Loading by Heavy Vehicles: **Polymer concrete, SCTE 77, Tier 15** structural load rating.

3. Units in Sidewalk and Similar Applications with a Safety Factor for Nondeliberate Loading by Vehicles: **Polymer concrete units, SCTE 77, Tier 8** structural load rating.
4. Cover design load shall not exceed the design load of the handhole or box.

3.4 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavation and Backfill: Comply with Section 312000 "Earth Moving," but do not use heavy-duty, hydraulic-operated, compaction equipment.
- B. Restoration: Replace area **immediately after backfilling is complete**.
- C. Restore surface features at areas disturbed by excavation and re-establish original grades unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Restore areas disturbed by trenching, storing of dirt, cable laying, and other work. Restore vegetation and include necessary top soiling, fertilizing, liming, seeding, sodding, sprigging, and mulching. Comply with Section 329200 "Turf and Grasses" and Section 329300 "Plants."
- E. Cut and patch existing pavement in the path of underground duct, duct bank, and utility structures according to the "Cutting and Patching" Article in Section 017300 "Execution."

3.5 DUCT AND DUCT-BANK INSTALLATION

- A. Where indicated on Drawings, install duct, spacers, and accessories into the duct configuration shown. Duct installation requirements in this Section also apply to duct bank.
- B. Install duct and duct bank according to NEMA TCB 2 and TIA-758-C.
- C. Slope: Pitch duct and duct bank a minimum slope of 1:100 down toward manholes and handholes and away from buildings and equipment. Slope duct and duct bank from a high point in runs between two manholes, to drain in both directions.
- D. Curves and Bends: Use 5-degree angle couplings for small changes in direction. Use manufactured long sweep bends with a minimum radius of **48 inches (1200 mm)**, both horizontally and vertically, at other locations unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Duct and duct banks shall have maximum of two 90-degree bends, or the total of all bends shall be no more 180 degrees between pull points.
- E. Joints: Use solvent-cemented joints in duct and fittings, and make watertight according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger couplings, so those of adjacent ducts do not lie in same plane.
- F. Installation Adjacent to High-Temperature Steam Lines: Where duct or duct banks are installed parallel to underground steam lines, perform calculations showing the duct or duct bank will not be subject to environmental temperatures above 40 deg C. Where environmental temperatures are calculated to rise above 40 deg C, and anywhere the duct or duct bank crosses above an underground steam line, install insulation blankets listed for direct burial to isolate the duct bank from the steam line.

- G. End-Bell Entrances to Polymer Concrete Handholes: Use end bells, spaced approximately **6 inches (150 mm)** o.c. for **4-inch (100-mm)** duct, and vary proportionately for other duct sizes.
1. Begin change from regular spacing to end-bell spacing **10 feet (3 m)** from the end bell without reducing duct slope and without forming a trap in the line.
 2. Expansion and Deflection Fittings: Install an expansion and deflection fitting in each duct in the area of disturbed earth adjacent to manhole or handhole. Install an expansion fitting near the center of all straight-line direct-buried duct and duct banks, with calculated expansion of more than **3/4 inch (19 mm)**.
 3. Grout end bells into structure walls from both sides to provide watertight entrances.
- H. Terminator Entrances to Polymer Concrete Handholes: Use manufactured, cast-in-place duct terminators, with entrances into structure spaced approximately **6 inches (150 mm)** o.c. for **4-inch (100-mm)** duct, and vary proportionately for other duct sizes.
1. Begin change from regular spacing to terminator spacing **10 feet (3 m)** from the terminator without reducing duct slope and without forming a trap in the line.
 2. Expansion and Deflection Fittings: Install an expansion and deflection fitting in each duct in the area of disturbed earth adjacent to manhole or handhole. Install an expansion fitting near the center of all straight-line duct or duct bank, with calculated expansion of more than **3/4 inch (19 mm)**.
- I. Building Wall Penetrations: Make a transition from underground duct to GRC at least **10 feet (3 m)** outside the building wall, without reducing duct slope away from the building or forming a trap in the duct. Use fittings manufactured for RNC duct-to-GRC conduit transition. Install GRC penetrations of building walls as specified in Section 270544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Communications Pathways and Cabling."
- J. Sealing: Provide temporary closure at terminations of duct that has cables pulled. Seal spare ducts at terminations. Use sealing compound and plugs to withstand at least **15-psig (1.03-MPa)** hydrostatic pressure.
- K. Innerduct: Install immediately after mandreling duct. **Size and type as indicated on Drawings.**
- L. Pulling Cord: Install **200-lbf- (1000-N-m)** test nylon cord in empty duct **and innerduct.**
- M. Concrete-Encased Duct and Duct Bank:
1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for duct or duct bank. Prepare trench bottoms as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for pipes less than **6 inches (150 mm)** in nominal diameter.
 2. Width: Excavate trench **12 inches (300 mm)** wider than duct or duct bank on each side.
 3. Width: Excavate trench **3 inches (75 mm)** wider than duct or duct bank on each side.
 4. Depth: Install top of duct and duct bank at least **24 inches (600 mm)** below finished grade in areas not subject to deliberate traffic, and at least **30 inches (750 mm)** below finished grade in deliberate traffic paths for vehicles unless otherwise indicated.
 5. Support duct and duct bank on duct spacers coordinated with duct size, duct spacing, and outdoor temperature.
 6. Minimum Space Between Duct: **3 inches (75 mm)** between edge of duct and exterior envelope wall, **2 inches (50 mm)** between ducts for like services, and **4 inches (100 mm)** between power and communications ducts.

7. Spacer Installation: Place spacers close enough to prevent sagging and deforming of duct, with not less than **four** spacers per **20 feet (6 m)** of duct. Place spacers within **24 inches (600 mm)** of duct ends. Stagger spacers approximately **6 inches (150 mm)** between tiers. Secure spacers to earth and duct to prevent floating during concreting. Tie entire assembly together using fabric straps; do not use tie wires or reinforcing steel that may form conductive or magnetic loops around duct or duct bank.
8. Elbows: Use manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups, at building entrances, and at changes of direction in duct run unless otherwise indicated. Extend concrete encasement throughout length of elbow.
9. Elbows: Use manufactured GRC elbows for stub-ups, at building entrances, and at changes of direction in duct run.
 - a. Couple GRC to duct with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with **3 inches (75 mm)** of concrete.
 - b. Stub-Ups to Outdoor Equipment: Extend concrete-encased GRC horizontally a minimum of **60 inches (1500 mm)** from edge of base. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
 - 1) Stub-ups shall be **minimum 4 inches (100 mm) above** finished floor and **minimum 3 inches (75 mm)** from conduit side to edge of slab.
 - c. Stub-Ups to Indoor Equipment: Extend concrete-encased GRC horizontally a minimum of **60 inches (1500 mm)** from edge of wall. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
 - 1) Stub-ups shall be **minimum 4 inches (100 mm) above** finished floor and no less than **3 inches (75 mm)** from conduit side to edge of wall.
10. Reinforcement: Reinforce concrete-encased duct and duct bank where they cross disturbed earth and where indicated. Arrange reinforcing rods and ties without forming conductive or magnetic loops around ducts or duct groups.
11. Forms: Use trench walls to form side walls of duct and duct bank where soil is self-supporting and concrete envelope can be poured without soil inclusions; otherwise, use forms.
12. Concrete Cover: Install a minimum of **3 inches (75 mm)** of concrete cover between edge of duct to exterior envelope wall, **2 inches (50 mm)** between ducts, and **4 inches (100 mm)** between power and communications duct.
13. Concreting Sequence: Pour each run of envelope between manholes or other terminations in one continuous operation.
 - a. Start at one end and finish at the other, allowing for expansion and contraction of duct as its temperature changes during and after the pour. Use expansion fittings installed according to manufacturer's written recommendations, or use other specific measures to prevent expansion-contraction damage.
 - b. If more than one pour is necessary, terminate each pour in a vertical plane and install **3/4-inch (19-mm)** reinforcing-rod dowels extending a minimum of **18 inches (450 mm)** into concrete on both sides of joint near corners of envelope.
14. Pouring Concrete: Comply with requirements in "Concrete Placement" Article in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete." Place concrete carefully during pours to prevent voids under and between ducts and at exterior surface of envelope. Do not allow

a heavy mass of concrete to fall directly onto duct. Allow concrete to flow to center of bank and rise up in middle, uniformly filling all open spaces. Do not use power-driven agitating equipment unless specifically designed for duct-bank application.

N. Direct-Buried Duct and Duct Banks:

1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for duct and duct bank. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for preparation of trench bottoms for duct less than **6 inches (150 mm)** in nominal diameter.
2. Install duct with a minimum of **3 inches (75 mm)** between duct for like services and **6 inches (150 mm)** between power and signal duct.
3. Width: Excavate trench **12 inches (300 mm)** wider than duct or duct bank on each side.
4. Width: Excavate trench **3 inches (75 mm)** wider than duct or duct bank on each side.
5. Depth: Install top of duct or duct bank at least **36 inches (900 mm)** below finished grade unless otherwise indicated.
6. Set elevation of bottom of duct or duct bank below frost line.
7. Support duct on duct spacers coordinated with duct size, duct spacing, and outdoor temperature.
8. Spacer Installation: Place spacers close enough to prevent sagging and deforming of duct, with not less than **four** spacers per **20 feet (6 m)** of duct. Place spacers within **24 inches (600 mm)** of duct ends. Stagger spacers approximately **6 inches (150 mm)** between tiers. Secure spacers to earth and duct to prevent floating during concreting. Tie entire assembly together using fabric straps; do not use tie wires or reinforcing steel that may form conductive or magnetic loops around duct or duct bank.
9. Elbows: Install manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups, at building entrances through floor, and at changes of direction in duct unless otherwise indicated. Encase elbows for stub-ups throughout length of elbow. **Extend encasement minimum of 36 inches (900 mm) beyond elbow joints.**
10. Install manufactured GRC elbows for stub-ups, at building entrances, and at changes of direction in duct.
 - a. Couple GRC to duct with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with **3 inches (75 mm)** of concrete.
 - b. For equipment mounted on outdoor bases, extend GRC horizontally a minimum of **60 inches (1500 mm)** from edge of equipment pad or foundation. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
11. After installing first tier of duct, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point and work toward end of duct run, leaving duct at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction, as temperature changes during this process. Repeat procedure after placing each tier. After placing last tier, hand place backfill to **4 inches (100 mm)** over duct and hand tamp. Firmly tamp backfill around duct to provide maximum supporting strength. Use hand tamper only. After placing controlled backfill over final tier, make final duct connections at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for installation of backfill materials.
 - a. Place minimum of **3 inches (75 mm)** of sand as a bed for duct and duct bank. Place sand to a minimum of **6 inches (150 mm)** above top level of duct and duct bank.
 - b. Place minimum of **6 inches (150 mm)** of engineered fill above concrete encasement of duct bank.

- O. Underground-Line Warning Tape: Bury **conducting** underground-line warning tape specified in Section 270553 "Identification for Communication Systems" no less than **12 inches (300 mm)** above all concrete-encased duct and duct bank **and approximately 12 inches (300 mm) below grade**. Align tape parallel to and within **3 inches (75 mm)** of centerline of duct bank. Provide an additional warning tape for each **12-inch (300-mm)** increment of duct-bank width over a nominal **18 inches (450 mm)**. Space additional tapes **12 inches (300 mm)** apart, horizontally.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF CONCRETE HANDHOLES AND BOXES

A. Precast Concrete Handhole and Manhole Installation:

1. Comply with ASTM C 891 unless otherwise indicated.
2. Install units level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting duct, to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.
3. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from **1-inch (25-mm)** sieve to **No. 4 (4.75-mm)** sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.

B. Elevations:

1. Manhole Roof: Install with rooftop at least **15 inches (380 mm)** below finished grade.
2. Manhole Frame: In paved areas and trafficways, set frames flush with finished grade. Set other manhole frames **1 inch (25 mm)** above finished grade.
3. Install handholes with bottom below frost line, 18" below grade.
4. Handhole Covers: In paved areas and trafficways, set surface flush with finished grade. Set covers of other handholes **1 inch (25 mm)** above finished grade.
5. Where indicated, cast handhole cover frame integrally with handhole structure.

- C. Drainage: Install drains in bottom of manholes where indicated. Coordinate with drainage provisions indicated.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF HANDHOLES AND BOXES OTHER THAN PRECAST CONCRETE

- A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting duct, to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances. Use box extension if required to match depths of duct and duct bank, and seal joint between box and extension as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from **1/2-inch (12.5-mm)** sieve to **No. 4 (4.75-mm)** sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.
- C. Elevation: In paved areas and trafficways, set cover flush with finished grade. Set covers of other handholes **1 inch (25 mm)** above finished grade.
- D. Install handholes and boxes with bottom below frost line, 18" below grade.

- E. Field cut openings for duct according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.
- F. For enclosures installed in **asphalt paving and concrete** and subject to occasional, nondeliberate, heavy-vehicle loading, form and pour a concrete ring, encircling, and in contact with, enclosure, and with top surface screeded to top of box cover frame. Bottom of ring shall rest on **compacted earth**.
 - 1. Concrete: **3000 psi (20 kPa)**, 28-day strength, complying with Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete," with a troweled finish.
 - 2. Dimensions: **10 inches wide by 12 inches deep (250 mm wide by 300 mm deep)**.

3.8 GROUNDING

- A. Ground underground duct, duct bank, and utility structures according to Section 270526 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems."

END OF SECTION 270543

SECTION 270544 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR COMMUNICATIONS PATHWAYS AND CABLING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves for pathway and cable penetration of non-fire-rated construction walls and floors.
2. Sleeve-seal systems.
3. Sleeve-seal fittings.
4. Grout.
5. Silicone sealants.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for penetration firestopping installed in fire-resistance-rated walls, horizontal assemblies, and smoke barriers, with and without penetrating items.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Wall Sleeves:

1. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, plain ends.
2. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies: Galvanized-steel sheet; **0.0239-inch (0.6-mm)** minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint, with tabs for screw-fastening the sleeve to the board.

- C. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- D. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- E. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- F. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings:
 - 1. Material: Galvanized-steel sheet.
 - 2. Minimum Metal Thickness:
 - a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than **50 inches (1270 mm)** and with no side larger than **16 inches (400 mm)**, thickness shall be **0.052 inch (1.3 mm)**.
 - b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter **50 inches (1270 mm)** or more and one or more sides larger than **16 inches (400 mm)**, thickness shall be **0.138 inch (3.5 mm)**.

2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and pathway or cable.
 - 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
 - 2. Sealing Elements: **EPDM** or **Nitrile (Buna N)** rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
 - 3. Pressure Plates: **Carbon steel**.
 - 4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: **Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating** of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for embedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit shall have plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.
 - 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

2.4 GROUT

- A. Description: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
- B. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- C. Design Mix: **5000-psi (34.5-MPa)**, 28-day compressive strength.

- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.5 SILICONE SEALANTS

- A. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants of grade indicated below.
 - 1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.
- B. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR NON-FIRE-RATED ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Comply with NEMA VE 2 for cable tray and cable penetrations.
- C. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Above-Grade Non-Fire-Rated Concrete and Masonry-Unit Floors and Walls:
 - 1. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors:
 - a. Seal annular space between sleeve and pathway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
 - b. Seal space outside of sleeves with mortar or grout. Pack sealing material solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect material while curing.
 - 2. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
 - 3. Size pipe sleeves to provide **1/4-inch (6.4-mm)** annular clear space between sleeve and pathway or cable unless sleeve seal is to be installed **or unless seismic criteria require different clearance**.
 - 4. Install sleeves for wall penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of walls. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls. Deburr after cutting.
 - 5. Install sleeves for floor penetrations. Extend sleeves installed in floors **2 inches (50 mm)** above finished floor level. Install sleeves during erection of floors.
- D. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies:
 - 1. Use circular metal sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
 - 2. Seal space outside of sleeves with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies.

- E. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual pathways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
- F. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using **steel or cast-iron** pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for **1-inch (25-mm)** annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- G. Underground, Exterior-Wall and Floor Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for **1-inch (25-mm)** annular clear space between pathway or cable and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at pathway entries into building.
- B. Install type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for pathway or cable material and size. Position pathway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pathway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

END OF SECTION 270544

SECTION 270548.16 - SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Restraint channel bracings.
- 2. Restraint cables.
- 3. Seismic-restraint accessories.
- 4. Mechanical anchor bolts.
- 5. Adhesive anchor bolts.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 270528.29 "Hangers and Supports for Communications Systems" for commonly used supports and installation requirements.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 1. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of seismic-restraint component used.
 - a. Tabulate types and sizes of seismic restraints, complete with report numbers and rated strength in tension and shear as evaluated by **an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction**.
 - b. Annotate to indicate application of each product submitted and compliance with requirements.

- B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each seismic-restraint device.

- 1. Include design calculations and details for selecting seismic restraints complying with performance requirements, design criteria, and analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
- 2. Design Calculations: Calculate static and dynamic loading caused by equipment weight, operation, and seismic forces required to select seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.

- a. Coordinate design calculations with wind load calculations required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.
- 3. Seismic[Restraint Details:
 - a. Design Analysis: To support selection and arrangement of seismic restraints. Include calculations of combined tensile and shear loads.
 - b. Details: Indicate fabrication and arrangement. Detail attachments of restraints to the restrained items and to the structure. Show attachment locations, methods, and spacings. Identify components, list their strengths, and indicate directions and values of forces transmitted to the structure during seismic events. Indicate association with vibration isolation devices.
 - c. Coordinate seismic-restraint and vibration isolation details with wind-restraint details required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.
 - d. Preapproval and Evaluation Documentation: By **an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction**, showing maximum ratings of restraint items and the basis for approval (tests or calculations).

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with seismic-restraint requirements in the IBC unless requirements in this Section are more stringent.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- C. Seismic-restraint devices shall have horizontal and vertical load testing and analysis. They shall bear anchorage preapproval from OSHPD in addition to preapproval, showing maximum seismic-restraint ratings, by ICC-ES or another agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Ratings based on independent testing are preferred to ratings based on calculations. If preapproved ratings are not available, submittals based on independent testing are preferred. Calculations (including combining shear and tensile loads) that support seismic-restraint designs must be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic-Restraint Loading:
 - 1. As per requirements set forth in the structural specifications.

2.2 RESTRAINT CHANNEL BRACINGS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Description: MFMA-4, shop- or field-fabricated bracing assembly made of slotted steel channels with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end, with other matching components, and with corrosion-resistant coating; rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces.

2.3 RESTRAINT CABLES

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Restraint Cables: **ASTM A 603 galvanized**-steel cables. End connections made of steel assemblies with thimbles, brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for restraining cable service; with a minimum of two clamping bolts for cable engagement.

2.4 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT ACCESSORIES

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Hanger-Rod Stiffener: **Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections or Reinforcing steel angle clamped** to hanger rod.
- C. Hinged and Swivel Brace Attachments: Multifunctional steel connectors for attaching hangers to **rigid channel bracings and restraint cables**.
- D. Bushings for Floor-Mounted Equipment Anchor Bolts: Neoprene bushings designed for rigid equipment mountings and matched to type and size of anchor bolts and studs.
- E. Bushing Assemblies for Wall-Mounted Equipment Anchorage: Assemblies of neoprene elements and steel sleeves designed for rigid equipment mountings and matched to type and size of attachment devices used.
- F. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: One-piece, molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene, with a flat washer face.

2.5 MECHANICAL ANCHOR BOLTS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Mechanical Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type in zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

2.6 ADHESIVE ANCHOR BOLTS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

- B. Adhesive Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and capsule anchor system containing PVC or urethane methacrylate-based resin and accelerator, or injected polymer or hybrid mortar adhesive. Provide anchor bolts and hardware with zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive **vibration isolation and** seismic-control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 APPLICATIONS

- A. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Secure raceways and cables to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by **an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction**.
- B. Hanger-Rod Stiffeners: Install hanger-rod stiffeners where indicated or scheduled on Drawings to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods caused by seismic forces.
- C. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads within specified loading limits.

3.3 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in **Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."**
- B. Equipment and Hanger Restraints:
 - 1. Install resilient, bolt-isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds **0.125 inch (3.2 mm)**.
 - 2. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by **an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction** providing required submittals for component.
- C. Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.
- D. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.

- E. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.
- F. Drilled-in Anchors:
 - 1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify the structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
 - 2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
 - 3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
 - 4. Adhesive Anchors: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.
 - 5. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque using a torque wrench.
 - 6. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless-steel anchors for exterior applications.

3.4 ACCOMMODATION OF DIFFERENTIAL SEISMIC MOTION

- A. Install flexible connections in runs of raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, and busways where they cross seismic joints, where adjacent sections or branches are supported by different structural elements, and where connection is terminated to equipment that is anchored to a different structural element from the one supporting them as they approach equipment.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust restraints to permit free movement of equipment within normal mode of operation.

END OF SECTION 270548.16

SECTION 270553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Color and legend requirements for labels and signs.
2. Labels.
3. Bands and tubes.
4. Tapes.
5. Signs.
6. Cable ties.
7. Fasteners for labels and signs.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for communications identification products.

- B. Samples: For each type of label and sign to illustrate composition, size, colors, lettering style, mounting provisions, and graphic features of identification products.

- C. Identification Schedule:

1. Outlets: Scaled drawings indicating location and proposed designation.
2. Backbone Cabling: Riser diagram showing each communications room, backbone cable, and proposed backbone cable designation.
3. Racks: Scaled drawings indicating location and proposed designation.
4. Patch Panels: Enlarged scaled drawings showing rack row, number, and proposed designations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NFPA 70 and TIA 606-B.

- B. Comply with ANSI Z535.4 for safety signs and labels.
- C. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969.
- D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
 1. Temperature Change: **120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.**

2.2 COLOR AND LEGEND REQUIREMENTS

- A. Equipment Identification Labels:
 1. Black letters on a white field.

2.3 LABELS

- A. Vinyl Wraparound Labels: Preprinted, flexible labels laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound clear adhesive tape for securing label ends.
 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Snap-Around Labels: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, preprinted, color-coded acrylic sleeves, with diameters sized to suit diameters of raceway or cable they identify, that stay in place by gripping action.
 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- C. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels: **Preprinted, 3-mil- (0.08-mm-)** thick, **polyester or vinyl** flexible labels with acrylic pressure-sensitive adhesive.
 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
 2. Self-Lamination: Clear; UV-, weather- and chemical-resistant; self-laminating protective shields over the legend. Labels sized such that the clear shield overlaps the entire printed legend.
 3. Marker for Labels: Permanent, waterproof black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.
 4. Marker for Labels: Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof black ink recommended by printer manufacturer.
- D. Self-Adhesive Labels: **Polyester or Vinyl**, thermal, transfer-printed, **3-mil- (0.08-mm-)** thick, multicolor, weather- and UV-resistant, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for intended use and location.
 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
 2. Minimum Nominal Size:
 - a. **1-1/2 by 6 inches (37 by 150 mm)** for raceway and conductors.

- b. 3-1/2 by 5 inches (76 by 127 mm) for equipment.
- c. As required by authorities having jurisdiction.

2.4 BANDS AND TUBES

- A. Snap-Around, Color-Coding Bands: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, solid-colored acrylic sleeves, 2 inches (50 mm) long, with diameters sized to suit diameters of raceway or cable they identify, that stay in place by gripping action.
 - 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

2.5 UNDERGROUND-LINE WARNING TAPE

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Tape:
 - 1. Recommended by manufacturer for the method of installation and suitable to identify and locate underground communications utility lines.
 - 2. Printing on tape shall be permanent and shall not be damaged by burial operations.
 - 3. Tape material and ink shall be chemically inert and not subject to degradation when exposed to acids, alkalis, and other destructive substances commonly found in soils.
- C. Color and Printing:
 - 1. Comply with ANSI Z535.1, ANSI Z535.2, ANSI Z535.3, and ANSI Z535.4.
 - 2. Inscriptions for Orange-Colored Tapes: "TELEPHONE CABLE, CATV CABLE, COMMUNICATIONS CABLE, OPTICAL-FIBER CABLE".

2.6 SIGNS

- A. Baked-Enamel Signs:
 - 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
 - 2. Preprinted aluminum signs, **high-intensity reflective**, punched or drilled for fasteners, with colors, legend, and size required for application.
 - 3. 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) grommets in corners for mounting.
 - 4. Nominal Size: 7 by 10 inches (180 by 250 mm).
- B. Metal-Backed Butyrate Signs:
 - 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
 - 2. Weather-resistant, nonfading, preprinted, cellulose-acetate butyrate signs, with 0.0396-inch (1-mm) galvanized-steel backing, punched and drilled for fasteners, and with colors, legend, and size required for application.
 - 3. 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) grommets in corners for mounting.
 - 4. Nominal Size: 10 by 14 inches (250 by 360 mm).
- C. Laminated-Acrylic or Melamine-Plastic Signs:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Engraved legend.
3. Thickness:
 - a. For signs up to **20 sq. in. (129 sq. cm)**, minimum **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** thick.
 - b. For signs larger than **20 sq. in. (129 sq. cm)**, **1/8 inch (3.2 mm)** thick.
 - c. Engraved legend with **black letters on white face**.
 - d. **Punched or drilled for mechanical fasteners with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) grommets in corners for mounting or Self-adhesive.**
 - e. Framed with mitered acrylic molding and arranged for attachment at applicable equipment.

2.7 CABLE TIES

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. General-Purpose Cable Ties: Fungus inert, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, and Type 6/6 nylon.
 1. Minimum Width: **3/16 inch (5 mm)**.
 2. Tensile Strength at **73 deg F (23 deg C)** according to ASTM D 638: **12,000 psi (82.7 MPa)**.
 3. Temperature Range: **Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 85 deg C)**.
 4. Color: Black, except where used for color-coding.
- C. UV-Stabilized Cable Ties: Fungus inert, designed for continuous exposure to exterior sunlight, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, and Type 6/6 nylon.
 1. Minimum Width: **3/16 inch (5 mm)**.
 2. Tensile Strength at **73 deg F (23 deg C)** according to ASTM D 638: **12,000 psi (82.7 MPa)**.
 3. Temperature Range: **Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 85 deg C)**.
 4. Color: Black.
- D. Plenum-Rated Cable Ties: Self-extinguishing, UV stabilized, one piece, and self-locking.
 1. Minimum Width: **3/16 inch (5 mm)**.
 2. Tensile Strength at **73 deg F (23 deg C)** according to ASTM D 638: **7000 psi (48.2 MPa)**.
 3. UL 94 Flame Rating: 94V-0.
 4. Temperature Range: **Minus 50 to plus 284 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 140 deg C)**.
 5. Color: Black.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Paint: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for paint materials and application requirements. Retain paint system applicable for surface material and location (exterior or interior).

- B. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Before applying communications identification products, clean substrates of substances that could impair bond, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification product.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Verify and coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual. Use consistent designations throughout Project.
- B. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.
- C. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.
- D. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual.
- E. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.
- F. Install signs with approved legend to facilitate proper identification, operation, and maintenance of communications systems and connected items.
- G. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels, signs, and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.
- H. Vinyl Wraparound Labels:
 - 1. Secure tight to surface of raceway or cable at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
 - 2. Attach labels that are not self-adhesive type with clear vinyl tape, with adhesive appropriate to the location and substrate.
 - 3. Provide label **6 inches (150 mm)** from cable end.
- I. Snap-Around Labels:
 - 1. Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
 - 2. Provide label **6 inches (150 mm)** from cable end.
- J. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels:
 - 1. Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.

2. Provide label **6 inches (150 mm)** from cable end.

K. Self-Adhesive Labels:

1. On each item, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and operation and maintenance manual.
2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with **1/2-inch- (13-mm-)** high letters on **1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-)** high label; where two lines of text are required, use labels **2 inches (50 mm)** high.

L. Snap-Around, Color-Coding Bands: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.

M. Underground-Line Warning Tape:

1. During backfilling of trenches, install continuous underground-line warning tape directly above cable or raceway at **6 to 8 inches (150 to 200 mm)** below finished grade. Use multiple tapes where width of multiple lines installed in a common trench [**or concrete envelope**] exceeds **16 inches (400 mm)** overall.
2. Limit use of underground-line warning tape to direct-buried cables.
3. Install underground-line warning tape for direct-buried cables and cables in raceways.

N. Cable Ties: General purpose, except as listed below:

1. Outdoors: UV-stabilized nylon.
2. In Spaces Handling Environmental Air: Plenum rated.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE

A. Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment. Install access doors or panels to provide view of identifying devices.

B. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, pull points, and locations with high visibility. Identify by system and circuit designation.

C. Accessible Fittings for Raceways and Cables within Buildings: Identify covers of each junction and pull box with self-adhesive labels containing wiring system legend.

D. Faceplates: Label individual faceplates with self-adhesive labels. Place label at top of faceplate. Each faceplate shall be labeled with its individual, sequential designation, **numbered clockwise when entering room from primary egress**, composed of the following, in the order listed:

1. Wiring closet designation.
2. Colon.
3. Faceplate number.

E. Equipment Room Labeling:

1. Racks, Frames, and Enclosures: Identify front and rear of each with self-adhesive labels **containing equipment designation**.

2. Patch Panels: **Label individual rows in each rack, starting at top and working down, with self-adhesive labels.** [**Label individual rows and outlets, starting at to left and working down, with self-adhesive labels.**]
 3. Data Outlets: Label each outlet with a self-adhesive label indicating the following, in the order listed:
 - a. Room number being served.
 - b. Colon.
 - c. Faceplate number.
- F. Backbone Cables: Label each cable with a **vinyl-wraparound label, snap-around label or self-adhesive wraparound label** indicating the location of the far or other end of the backbone cable. Patch panel or punch down block where cable is terminated should be labeled identically.
- G. Horizontal Cables: Label each cable with a **vinyl-wraparound label, snap-around label or self-adhesive wraparound label** indicating the following, in the order listed:
1. Room number.
 2. Colon.
 3. Faceplate number.
- H. Locations of Underground Lines: Underground-line warning tape for copper, coaxial, hybrid copper/fiber, and optical-fiber cable.
- I. Instructional Signs: Self-adhesive labels.
- J. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures: **Self-adhesive labels, Baked-enamel warning signs or Metal-backed, butyrate warning signs.**
1. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.
- K. Equipment Identification Labels:
1. Indoor Equipment: **Self-adhesive label. Baked-enamel signs, Metal-backed butyrate signs or Laminated-acrylic or melamine-plastic sign.**
 2. Outdoor Equipment: **Laminated-acrylic or melamine-plastic sign.**
 3. Equipment to Be Labeled:
 - a. Communications cabinets.
 - b. Uninterruptible power supplies.
 - c. Fire-alarm and suppression equipment.
 - d. Egress points.
 - e. Power distribution components.

END OF SECTION 270553

SECTION 271100 - COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT ROOM FITTINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Backboards.
 - 2. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.
 - 3. Power strips.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Access Provider: An operator that provides a circuit path or facility between the service provider and user. An access provider can also be a service provider.
- B. BICSI: Building Industry Consulting Service International.
- C. RCDD: Registered communications distribution designer.
- D. Service Provider: The operator of a telecommunications transmission service delivered through access provider facilities.
- E. TGB: Telecommunications grounding bus bar.
- F. TMGB: Telecommunications main grounding bus bar.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for equipment racks and cabinets.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For communications equipment room fittings. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
2. Equipment Racks and Cabinets: Include workspace requirements and access for cable connections.
3. Grounding: Indicate location of grounding bus bar and its mounting detail showing standoff insulators and wall mounting brackets.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.
1. Layout Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings shall be under direct supervision of **RCDD**.
 2. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under direct supervision of **Technician**, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
 3. Field Inspector: Currently registered by BICSI as **RCDD** to perform the on-site inspection.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Equipment shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to **ASCE/SEI 7**.
1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified."

2.2 BACKBOARDS

- A. Backboards: Plywood, **fire-retardant treated, 3/4 by 48 by 96 inches (19 by 1220 by 2440 mm)**.
- B. Backboard Paint: **Light-colored fire-retardant paint**.

2.3 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets: Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets shall be listed and labeled for intended location and use.
- C. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.
- D. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, Type FD, **ferrous alloy**, with gasketed cover.

- E. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- F. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 1773, **cast aluminum** or **galvanized cast iron** with gasketed cover.
- G. Box extensions used to accommodate new building finishes shall be of same material as recessed box.
- H. Device Box Dimensions: **4 inches square by 2-1/8 inches deep (100 mm square by 60 mm deep)**.
- I. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: Comply with UL 50 and NEMA 250, **Type 1** with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
 - 2. Nonmetallic Enclosures: **Plastic or Fiberglass**.
 - 3. Interior Panels: Steel; all sides finished with manufacturer's standard enamel.
- J. Cabinets:
 - 1. NEMA 250, **Type 1** galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
 - 2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
 - 3. Key latch to match panelboards.
 - 4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
 - 5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.
 - 6. Nonmetallic cabinets shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.4 POWER STRIPS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 271116 "Communications Racks, Frames, and Enclosures."
- B. Power Strips: Comply with UL 1363.
 - 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 2. Rack mounting, with **detachable** flanges.
 - 3. Height: **1 RU**.
 - 4. Housing: **Metal**.
 - 5. **Six, 20-A, 120-V ac, NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R** receptacles.
 - 6. **Front**-facing receptacles.
 - 7. LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
 - 8. LED indicator lights for reverse polarity and open outlet ground.
 - 9. Circuit Breaker and Thermal Fusing: When protection is lost, circuit opens and cannot be reset.
 - 10. Circuit Breaker and Thermal Fusing: Unit continues to supply power if protection is lost.
 - 11. **Cord connected with 15-foot (4.5-m)** line cord.
 - 12. Rocker-type on-off switch, illuminated when in on position.

13. Surge Protection: UL 1449, Type 3.
 - a. Maximum Surge Current, Line to Neutral: **27 kA**.
 - b. Protection modes shall be line to neutral, line to ground, and neutral to ground.
 - c. UL 1449 Voltage Protection Rating for line to neutral and line to ground shall be **600 V** and **500 V** for neutral to ground.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 ENTRANCE FACILITIES

- A. Contact telecommunications service provider and arrange for installation of demarcation point, protected entrance terminals, and a housing when so directed by service provider.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems" for materials and installation requirements for **underground** pathways.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Comply with BICSI's "Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual" for layout of communications equipment spaces.
- C. Comply with BICSI's "Information Technology Systems Installation Methods Manual" for installation of equipment in communications equipment spaces.
- D. Bundle, lace, and train conductors and cables to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
- E. Coordinate layout and installation of communications equipment in tracks and in room. Coordinate service entrance configuration with service provider.
 1. Meet jointly with systems providers, equipment suppliers, and Owner to exchange information and agree on details of equipment configurations and installation interfaces.
 2. Record agreements reached in meetings and distribute them to other participants.
 3. Adjust configurations and locations of distribution frames, cross-connects, and patch panels in equipment rooms to accommodate and optimize configurations and space requirements of communications equipment.
 4. Adjust configurations and locations of equipment with distribution frames, cross-connects, and patch panels of cabling systems of other communications, electronic safety and security, and related systems that share space in equipment room.
- F. Coordinate location of power raceways and receptacles with locations of communications equipment requiring electrical power to operate.
- G. Backboards:

1. Install from **6 inches (150 mm)** to **8 feet, 6 inches (2588 mm)** above finished floor. If plywood is fire rated, ensure that fire-rating stamp is visible after installation.
2. Paint all sides of backboard with two coats of paint, **leaving fire rating stamp visible.**
3. Comply with requirements for backboard installation in BICSI's "Information Technology Systems Installation Methods Manual" and TIA-569-D.

3.3 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 270544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Communications Pathways and Cabling."

3.4 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- B. Comply with TIA-569-D, Annex A, "Firestopping."
- C. Comply with BICSI's "Information Technology Systems Installation Methods Manual," "Firestopping Practices" Ch.

END OF SECTION 271100

SECTION 271116 - COMMUNICATIONS RACKS, FRAMES, AND ENCLOSURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. 19-inch **freestanding** equipment cabinets.
2. Open Rack equipment racks.
3. Power strips.
4. Grounding.
5. Labeling.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 271110 "Communications Equipment Room Fittings" for backboards and accessories.
2. Section 270526 "Grounding and Bonding for Telecommunications Equipment" for TMGBs and TGBs.
3. Section 270536 "Cable Trays for Communications Systems" for cable trays and cable tray accessories.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Access Provider: An operator that provides a circuit path or facility between the service provider and user. An access provider can also be a service provider.
- B. BICSI: Building Industry Consulting Service International.
- C. LAN: Local area network.
- D. RCDD: Registered communications distribution designer.
- E. Service Provider: The operator of a telecommunications transmission service delivered through access provider facilities.
- F. TGB: Telecommunications grounding bus bar.
- G. TMGB: Telecommunications main grounding bus bar.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for equipment racks and cabinets.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, certifications, standards compliance, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For communications racks, frames, and enclosures. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 2. Equipment Racks and Cabinets: Include workspace requirements and access for cable connections.
 - 3. Grounding: Indicate location of TGB and its mounting detail showing standoff insulators and wall-mounting brackets.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.
 - 1. Layout Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings shall be under direct supervision of **RCDD**.
 - 2. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under direct supervision of **Technician**, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
 - 3. Field Inspector: Currently registered by BICSI as **RCDD** to perform on-site inspection.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Equipment shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to **ASCE/SEI 7**.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
- B. UL listed.
- C. Compliant with requirements of the Payment Card Industry Data Security Standard.

2.2 BACKBOARDS

- A. Backboards: Plywood, **fire-retardant treated, 3/4 by 48 by 96 inches (19 by 1220 by 2440 mm)**. Comply with requirements for plywood backing panels specified in Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry."

2.3 19-INCH EQUIPMENT RACKS

- A. Description: **Two- and four-** post racks with threaded rails designed for mounting telecommunications equipment. Width is compatible with EIA/ECIA 310-E, **19-inch (482.6-mm)** equipment mounting with an opening of **17.72-inches (450-mm)** between rails.

- B. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

- C. General Requirements:

1. Frames: Modular units designed for telecommunications terminal support and coordinated with dimensions of units to be supported.
2. Material: **Extruded steel**
3. Finish: Manufacturer's standard, baked-polyester powder coat.
4. Color: **Black**.

- D. Floor-Mounted Racks:

1. Overall Height: **72 inches (1828.8 mm)**.
2. Overall Depth: **23 inches (584.2 mm)**.
3. Upright Depth: **3 inches (76.2 mm)**.
4. Two-Post Load Rating: **200 lb (91 kg)**.
5. Four-Post Load Rating: **1000 lb (454 kg)**.
6. Number of Rack Units per Rack: **45** minimum.
 - a. Numbering: **Every five** rack units, on interior of rack.
7. Threads: **10-32**.
8. Vertical and horizontal cable management channels, top and bottom cable troughs, grounding lug, **and a power strip**.
9. Base shall have a minimum of four mounting holes for permanent attachment to floor.
10. Top shall have provisions for attaching to cable tray or ceiling.
11. Self-leveling.

- E. Wall-Mounted Racks:

1. Height: **18 inches (457.2 mm) minimum**.
2. Depth: **23 inches (584.2 mm)**.
3. Load Rating: **150 lb (65 kg)**.
4. Number of Rack Units per Rack: **12 minimum**.
5. Threads: **10-32**.
6. Wall Attachment: Four mounting holes.
7. Equipment Access: Integral swing.

F. Cable Management:

1. Metal, with integral wire retaining fingers.
2. Baked-polyester powder coat finish.
3. Vertical cable management panels shall have front and rear channels, with covers.
4. Provide horizontal crossover cable manager at the top of each relay rack, with a minimum height of two rack units each.

2.4 OPEN RACK EQUIPMENT RACKS

A. Description: Four-post racks with integral bus bars, equipment support, and dimensions meeting Open Rack Standard v1.2.

B. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

C. General Requirements:

1. Frames: Four vertical columns, with perforated top and bottom.
2. Support Shelves: Designed to support equipment 1 OpenU (48 mm) in height.
3. Material:
 - a. Frames and Shelves: **Extruded steel**
 - b. Bus Bars: Nickel plated copper.
4. Finish:
 - a. Frames: Manufacturer's standard, baked-polyester powder coat.
 - b. Shelves: Hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 653/A 653M.
5. Color: **Black.**
6. Height: 2100 mm.
7. Width: 600 mm.
8. Depth: 1607 mm.
9. Base shall have a minimum of four **mounting holes** for permanent attachment to floor[, **and four casters to allow easy repositioning of rack.**
10. Top shall have provisions for attaching to cable tray or ceiling.
11. Self-leveling.

2.5 POWER STRIPS

A. Power Strips: Comply with UL 1363.

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Rack mounting.
3. **Six, 20-A, 120-V ac, NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R** receptacles.
4. LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
5. LED indicator lights for reverse polarity and open outlet ground.

6. Circuit Breaker and Thermal Fusing: When protection is lost, circuit opens and cannot be reset.
7. Circuit Breaker and Thermal Fusing: Unit continues to supply power if protection is lost.
8. **Cord connected with 15-foot (4.5-m)** line cord.
9. Rocker-type on-off switch, illuminated when in on position.
10. Peak Single-Impulse Surge Current Rating: **26** kA per phase.
11. Protection modes shall be line to neutral, line to ground, and neutral to ground. UL 1449 clamping voltage for all three modes shall be not more than **330 V**.

2.6 GROUNDING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 270526 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems" for grounding conductors and connectors.
- B. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- C. Rack and Cabinet TGBs: Rectangular bars of hard-drawn solid copper, accepting conductors ranging from No. 14 to No. 2/0 AWG, NRTL listed as complying with UL 467, and complying with TIA-606-B. Predrilling shall be with holes for use with lugs specified in this Section.
 1. Cabinet-Mounted TGB: Terminal block, with stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to cabinet.
 2. Rack-Mounted Horizontal TGB: Designed for mounting in **19- or 23-inch (482.6- or 584.2-mm)** equipment racks. Include a copper splice bar for transitioning to an adjoining rack, and stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to the rack.
 3. Rack-Mounted Vertical TGB: **72 or 36 inches (1828.8 or 914.4 mm)** long, with stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to rack.

2.7 LABELING

- A. Comply with TIA-606-B and UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Comply with BICSI TDMM for layout of communications equipment spaces.
- C. Comply with BICSI ITSIMM for installation of communications equipment spaces.
- D. Bundle, lace, and train conductors and cables to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
- E. Coordinate layout and installation of communications equipment in racks and room. Coordinate service entrance configuration with service provider.

1. Meet jointly with system providers, equipment suppliers, and Owner to exchange information and agree on details of equipment configurations and installation interfaces.
 2. Record agreements reached in meetings and distribute them to other participants.
 3. Adjust configurations and locations of distribution frames, cross-connects, and patch panels in equipment spaces to accommodate and optimize configuration and space requirements of telecommunications equipment.
 4. Adjust configurations and locations of equipment with distribution frames, cross-connects, and patch panels of cabling systems of other communications, electronic safety and security, and related systems that share space in equipment room.
- F. Coordinate location of power raceways and receptacles with locations of communications equipment requiring electrical power to operate.

3.2 GROUNDING

- A. Comply with NECA/BICSI 607.
- B. Install grounding according to BICSI ITSIMM, "Bonding, Grounding (Earthing) and Electrical Protection" Ch.
- C. Locate TGB to minimize length of bonding conductors. Fasten to wall, allowing at least **2 inches (50 mm)** of clearance behind TGB. Connect TGB with a minimum No. 4 AWG grounding electrode conductor from TGB to suitable electrical building ground. Connect rack TGB to near TGB or the TMGB.
 1. Bond the shield of shielded cable to patch panel, and bond patch panel to TGB or TMGB.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Coordinate system components, wiring, and cabling complying with TIA-606-B. Comply with requirements in Section 270553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 099123 "Interior Painting" for painting backboards. For fire-resistant plywood, do not paint over manufacturer's label.
- C. Labels shall be machine printed. Type shall be **1/4 inch (6 mm)** in height.

END OF SECTION 271116

SECTION 281500 - ACCESS CONTROL HARDWARE DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Card readers, credential cards, and keypads
 - 2. Cables
 - 3. Transformers

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Credential: Data assigned to an entity and used to identify that entity.
- B. DTS: Digital Termination Service. A microwave-based, line-of-sight communication provided directly to the end user.
- C. Identifier: A credential card; keypad personal identification number; or code, biometric characteristic, or other unique identification entered as data into the entry-control database for the purpose of identifying an individual. Where this term is presented with an initial capital letter, this definition applies.
- D. Location: A Location on the network having a PC-to-controller communications link, with additional controllers at the Location connected to the PC-to-controller link with a TIA 485-A communications loop. Where this term is presented with an initial capital letter, this definition applies.
- E. PC: Personal computer. Applies to the central station, workstations, and file servers.
- F. RAS: Remote access services.
- G. RF: Radio frequency.
- H. ROM: Read-only memory. ROM data are maintained through losses of power.
- I. TCP/IP: Transport control protocol/Internet protocol.
- J. TWAIN: Technology without an Interesting Name. A programming interface that lets a graphics application, such as an image editing program or desktop publishing program, activate a scanner, frame grabber, or other image-capturing device.

- K. WMP: Windows media player.
- L. Wiegand: Patented magnetic principle that uses specially treated wires embedded in the credential card.
- M. WYSIWYG: What You See Is What You Get. Text and graphics appear on the screen the same as they will in print.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. Reference each product to a location on Drawings. Test and evaluation data presented in Product Data shall comply with SIA BIO-01.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Diagrams for cable management system.
 - 2. System labeling schedules, including electronic copy of labeling schedules that are part of the cable and asset identification system of the software specified in Parts 2 and 3.
 - 3. Wiring Diagrams. For power, signal, and control wiring. Show typical wiring schematics including the following:
 - a. Workstation outlets, jacks, and jack assemblies.
 - b. Patch cords.
 - c. Patch panels.
 - 4. Cable Administration Drawings: As specified in "Identification" Article.
 - 5. Battery and charger calculations for central station, workstations, and controllers.
- C. Product Schedules.
- D. Samples: For workstation outlets, jacks, jack assemblies, and faceplates. For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For security system to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - 1. Hard copies of manufacturer's specification sheets, operating specifications, design guides, user's guides for software and hardware, and PDF files on **USB** media of the hard-copy submittal.
 - 2. System installation and setup guides with data forms to plan and record options and setup decisions.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Credential card blanks, ready for printing. Include enough credential cards for all personnel to be enrolled at the site plus an extra **50** percent for future use.
 - 2. Fuses of all kinds, power and electronic, equal to **10** percent of amount installed for each size used, but no fewer than three units.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.
 - 1. Cable installer must have on staff an RCDD certified by Building Industry Consulting Service International.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain central station, workstations, controllers, Identifier readers, and all software through one source from single manufacturer.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store in temperature- and humidity-controlled environment in original manufacturer's sealed containers. Maintain ambient temperature between **50 and 85 deg F (10 and 30 deg C)**, and not more than 80 percent relative humidity, noncondensing.
- B. Open each container; verify contents against packing list; and file copy of packing list, complete with container identification, for inclusion in operation and maintenance data.
- C. Mark packing list with the same designations assigned to materials and equipment for recording in the system labeling schedules that are generated by software specified in "Cable and Asset Management Software" Article.
- D. Save original manufacturer's containers and packing materials and deliver as directed under provisions covering extra materials.

1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Conditions: System shall be capable of withstanding the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of operating capability:
 - 1. Control Station: Rated for continuous operation in ambient conditions of **60 to 85 deg F (16 to 30 deg C)** and a relative humidity of 20 to 80 percent, noncondensing.
 - 2. Indoor, Controlled Environment: NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure. System components, except the central-station control unit, installed in **air-conditioned** indoor environments shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient conditions of **36 to 122 deg F (2 to 50 deg C)** dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, noncondensing.

3. Outdoor Environment: NEMA 250, NEMA 250, **Type 3R** enclosures. System components installed in locations exposed to weather shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient conditions of **minus 30 to plus 122 deg F (minus 34 to plus 50 deg C)** dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, condensing. Rate for continuous operation where exposed to rain as specified in NEMA 250, winds up to **85 mph (137 km/h)**.
4. Hazardous Environment: System components located in areas where fire or explosion hazards may exist because of flammable gases or vapors, flammable liquids, combustible dust, or ignitable fibers shall be rated, listed, and installed according to NFPA 70.
5. Corrosive Environment: For system components subjected to corrosive fumes, vapors, and wind-driven salt spray in coastal zones, provide NEMA 250, **Type 4X** enclosures.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 OPERATION

- A. Security access system hardware shall use a single database for access-control and credential-creation functions.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70, "National Electrical Code."
- C. Comply with **SIA DC-01 and SIA DC-03 and SIA DC-07**.

2.3 CARD READERS, CREDENTIAL CARDS, AND KEYPADS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Card-Reader Power: Powered from its associated controller, including its standby power source, and shall not dissipate more than 5 W.
- C. Response Time: Card reader shall respond to passage requests by generating a signal that is sent to the controller. Response time shall be 800 ms or less, from the time the card reader finishes reading the credential card until a response signal is generated.
- D. Enclosure: Suitable for surface, semi-flush, pedestal, or weatherproof mounting. Mounting types shall additionally be suitable for installation in the following locations:
 1. Indoors, controlled environment.
 2. Indoors, uncontrolled environment.
 3. Outdoors, with built-in heaters or other cold-weather equipment to extend the operating temperature range as needed for operation at the site.

- E. Display: Digital visual indicator shall provide visible **and audible** status indications and user prompts. Indicate power on or off, whether user passage requests have been accepted or rejected, and whether the door is locked or unlocked.
- F. Stripe Swipe Readers: Bidirectional, reading cards swiped in both directions, powered by the controller. Reader shall be set up for **ABA Track**.
 - 1. ABA Track: Magnetic stripe that is encoded on track 2, at 75-bpi density in binary-coded decimal format; for example, 5-bit, 16-character set.
 - 2. Readers for outdoors shall be in a polymeric plastic enclosure with all electronics potted in plastic. Rated for operation in ambient conditions of **minus 40 to plus 160 deg F (minus 40 to plus 70 deg C)** in a humidity range of 10 to 90 percent.
- G. Wiegand Swipe Reader: Set up for **33-bit** data cards. Comply with SIA AC-01.
- H. Insert Readers: Requiring the card to be inserted from the **side**, powered by the controller.
- I. Touch-Plate and Proximity Readers:
 - 1. Active-detection proximity card readers shall provide power to compatible credential cards through magnetic induction, and shall receive and decode a unique identification code number transmitted from the credential card.
 - 2. Passive-detection proximity card readers shall use a swept-frequency, RF field generator to read the resonant frequencies of tuned circuits laminated into compatible credential cards. The resonant frequencies read shall constitute a unique identification code number.
 - 3. The card reader shall read proximity cards in a range from direct contact to at least **6 inches (150 mm)** from the reader.
- J. Keypads:
 - 1. Entry-control keypads shall use a unique combination of alphanumeric and other symbols as an Identifier.
 - 2. Keypads shall contain an integral alphanumeric/special symbols keyboard with symbols arranged in **ascending ASCII-code ordinal sequence**.
 - 3. Communication protocol shall be compatible with the local processor.
- K. Keypad Display:
 - 1. Keypads shall include a digital visual indicator and shall provide **visible and audible** status indications and user prompts.
 - 2. Display shall indicate power on or off and whether user passage requests have been accepted or rejected.
 - 3. Design of the keypad display or keypad enclosure shall limit viewing angles of the keypad as follows:
 - a. Maximum Horizontal Viewing Angle: Plus or minus 5 degrees or less off a vertical plane perpendicular to the plane of the face of the keypad display.
 - b. Maximum Vertical Viewing Angle: Plus or minus 15 degrees or less off a horizontal plane perpendicular to the plane of the face of the keypad display.
- L. Keypad Response Time:

1. The keypad shall respond to passage requests by generating a signal to the local processor. The response time shall be 800 ms or less from the time the last alphanumeric symbol is entered until a response signal is generated.
- M. Keypad Power:
1. The keypad shall be powered from the source as shown and shall not dissipate more than 150 W.
- N. Keypad Mounting Method:
1. Keypads shall be suitable for surface, semi-flush, pedestal, or weatherproof mounting as required.
- O. Keypad Duress Codes:
1. Keypads shall provide a means for users to indicate a duress situation by entering a special code.
- P. Keypad and Wiegand-Swipe-Reader Combination: Designed to require an entry on the keypad before presenting the credential card.
1. Keypad: Allow the entry of four **alphanumeric characters** that are associated with a specific credential. Keypads shall contain an integral alphanumeric/special symbol keyboard with symbols arranged in **ascending ASCII-code ordinal sequence**. Keypad display or enclosure shall limit viewing angles of the keypad as follows:
 - a. Maximum Horizontal Viewing Angle: Plus or minus 5 degrees or less off a vertical plane perpendicular to the plane of the face of the keypad display.
 - b. Maximum Vertical Viewing Angle: Plus or minus 15 degrees or less off a horizontal plane perpendicular to the plane of the face of the keypad display.
 2. Wiegand Swipe Reader: Set up for **33-bit** data cards to generate a unique card identification code. Comply with SIA AC-01.
- Q. Communication Protocol: Compatible with local processor.
- R. Touch-Plate and Contactless Card Reader: The reader shall have "flash" download capability to accommodate card format changes. The card reader shall have capability of transmitting data to security control panel and shall comply with ISO/IEC 7816.
- S. Credential Card Modification: Entry-control cards shall be able to be modified by lamination direct print process during the enrollment process without reduction of readability. The design of the credential cards shall allow for the addition of at least one slot or hole to accommodate the attachment of a clip for affixing the credential card to the badge holder used at the site.
- T. Card Size and Dimensional Stability: Credential cards shall be **2-1/8 by 3-3/8 inches (54 by 86 mm)**. The credential card material shall be dimensionally stable so that an undamaged card with deformations resulting from normal use shall be readable by the card reader.

- U. Card Material: Abrasion resistant, nonflammable, nontoxic, and impervious to solar radiation and effects of ultraviolet light.
- V. Card Construction:
 - 1. Core and laminate or monolithic construction.
 - 2. Lettering, logos, and other markings shall be hot stamped into the credential material or direct printed.
 - 3. Incorporate **holographic images** as a security enhancement.
 - 4. Furnish equipment for on-site assembly and lamination of credential cards.

2.4 PUSH-BUTTON SWITCHES

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Push-Button Switches: Momentary-contact back-lighted push buttons with stainless-steel switch enclosures.
- C. Electrical Ratings:
 - 1. Minimum continuous current rating of **10 A** at 120-V ac or **5 A** at 240-V ac.
 - 2. Contacts that will make 720 VA at **60 A** and that will break at 720 VA at **10 A**.
- D. Enclosures: Flush or surface mounting. Push buttons shall be suitable for flush mounting in the switch enclosures.
- E. Enclosures shall additionally be suitable for installation in the following locations:
 - 1. Indoors, controlled environment.
 - 2. Indoors, uncontrolled environment.
 - 3. Outdoors.
- F. Power: Push-button switches shall be powered from their associated controller, using dc control.

2.5 CABLES

- A. General Cable Requirements: Comply with requirements in Section 270513 "Conductors and Cables for Communications Systems" and as recommended by system manufacturer for integration requirement.
- B. PVC-Jacketed, TIA 232-F.
 - 1. **Three**, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors.
 - 2. Polypropylene insulation.
 - 3. Aluminum foil-polyester tape shield with 100 percent shield coverage.
 - 4. PVC jacket.
 - 5. Conductors are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned copper drain wire.
 - 6. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.

C. Plenum-Rated TIA 232-F Cables:

1. **Three**, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors.
2. PE insulation.
3. Aluminum foil-polyester tape shield with 100 percent shield coverage.
4. Fluorinated ethylene propylene jacket.
5. Conductors are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned copper drain wire.
6. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.

D. PVC-Jacketed, TIA 485-A Cables:

1. Paired, two pairs, twisted, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors.
2. PVC insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. PVC jacket.
5. NFPA 70 Type: Type CM **or** Type CMG.
6. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.

E. Plenum-Rated TIA 485-A Cables:

1. Paired, two pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors.
2. Fluorinated ethylene propylene insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. Fluorinated ethylene propylene jacket.
5. NFPA 70 Type: Type CMP
6. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262, Flame Test.

F. Multiconductor, PVC, Reader and Wiegand Keypad Cables:

1. No. 22 AWG, paired and twisted multiple conductors, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors, semirigid PVC insulation, overall aluminum-foil/polyester-tape shield with 100 percent shield coverage, plus tinned copper braid shield with 65 percent shield coverage, and PVC jacket.
2. NFPA 70, Type CMG.
3. Flame Resistance: UL 1581 vertical tray.
4. For TIA 232-F applications.

G. Paired, PVC, Reader and Wiegand Keypad Cables:

1. Three pairs, twisted, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors, polypropylene insulation, individual aluminum-foil/polyester-tape shielded pairs each with No. 22 AWG, stranded tinned copper drain wire, 100 percent shield coverage, and PVC jacket.
2. NFPA 70, Type CM.
3. Flame Resistance: UL 1581 vertical tray.

H. Paired, PVC, Reader and Wiegand Keypad Cables:

1. Three pairs, twisted, No. 20 AWG, stranded (7x28) tinned copper conductors, polyethylene (polyolefin) insulation, individual aluminum-foil/polyester-tape shielded

- pairs each with No. 22 AWG, stranded (19x34) tinned copper drain wire, 100 percent shield coverage, and PVC jacket.
 - 2. NFPA 70, Type CM.
 - 3. Flame Resistance: UL 1581 vertical tray.
- I. Paired, Plenum-Type, Reader and Wiegand Keypad Cables:
 - 1. Three pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors, plastic insulation, individual aluminum-foil/polypropylene-tape shielded pairs each with No. 22 AWG, stranded tinned copper drain wire, 100 percent shield coverage, and fluorinated-ethylene-propylene jacket.
 - 2. NFPA 70, Type CMP.
 - 3. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262 flame test.
- J. Multiconductor, Plenum-Type, Reader and Wiegand Keypad Cables:
 - 1. Six conductors, No. 20 AWG, stranded (7x28) tinned copper conductors, fluorinated-ethylene-propylene insulation, overall aluminum-foil/polyester-tape shield with 100 percent shield coverage plus tinned copper braid shield with 85 percent shield coverage, and fluorinated-ethylene-propylene jacket.
 - 2. NFPA 70, Type CMP.
 - 3. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262 flame test.
- K. LAN Cabling:
 - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling."

2.6 TRANSFORMERS

- A. NFPA 70, Class II control transformers, NRTL listed. Transformers for security access-control system shall not be shared with any other system.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine pathway elements intended for cables. Check raceways, cable trays, and other elements for compliance with space allocations, installation tolerances, hazards to cable installation, and other conditions affecting installation.
- B. Examine roughing-in for LAN and control cable conduit systems to PCs, controllers, card readers, and other cable-connected devices to verify actual locations of conduit and back boxes before device installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with recommendations in SIA CP-01.
- B. Comply with TIA 606-B, "Administration Standard for Commercial Telecommunications Infrastructure."
- C. Product Schedules: Obtain detailed product schedules from manufacturer of access-control system or develop product schedules to suit Project. Fill in all data available from Project plans and specifications and publish as Product Schedules for review and approval.
- D. In meetings with Architect and Owner, present Product Schedules and review, adjust, and prepare final setup documents. Use approved, final Product Schedules to set up system software.

3.3 CABLING

- A. Comply with NECA 1, "Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction."
- B. Install cables and wiring according to requirements in Section 270513 "Conductors and Cables for Communications Systems."
- C. Wiring Method: Install wiring in raceway and cable tray except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters. Conceal raceway and wiring except in unfinished spaces.
- D. Wiring Method: Install wiring in raceway and cable tray except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters and except in accessible ceiling spaces and in gypsum board partitions where unenclosed wiring method may be used. Use NRTL-listed plenum cable in environmental airspaces, including plenum ceilings. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
- E. Install LAN cables using techniques, practices, and methods that are consistent with Category 5e rating of components and optical fiber rating of components, and that ensure Category 6 and optical fiber performance of completed and linked signal paths, end to end.
- F. Boxes and enclosures containing security-system components or cabling, and which are easily accessible to employees or to the public, shall be provided with a lock. Boxes above ceiling level in occupied areas of the building shall not be considered accessible. Junction boxes and small device enclosures below ceiling level and easily accessible to employees or the public shall be covered with a suitable cover plate and secured with tamperproof screws.
- G. Install end-of-line resistors at the field device location and not at the controller or panel location.

3.4 CABLE APPLICATION

- A. Comply with TIA 569-D, "Commercial Building Standard for Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces."

- B. Cable application requirements are minimum requirements and shall be exceeded if recommended or required by manufacturer of system hardware.
- C. TIA 232-F Cabling: Install at a maximum distance of **50 ft. (15 m)** between terminations.
- D. TIA 485-A Cabling: Install at a maximum distance of **4000 ft. (1220 m)** between terminations.
- E. Card Readers and Keypads:
 - 1. Install number of conductor pairs recommended by manufacturer for the functions specified.
 - 2. Unless manufacturer recommends larger conductors, install No. 22 AWG wire if maximum distance from controller to the reader is **250 ft. (75 m)**, and install No. 20 AWG wire if maximum distance is **500 ft. (150 m)**.
 - 3. For greater distances, install "extender" or "repeater" modules recommended by manufacturer of the controller.
 - 4. Install minimum No. 18 AWG shielded cable to readers and keypads that draw 50 mA or more.
- F. Install minimum No. 16 AWG cable from controller to electrically powered locks. Do not exceed **250 ft. (75 m)** between terminations.
- G. Install minimum No. 18 AWG ac power wire from transformer to controller, with a maximum distance of **25 ft. (8 m)** between terminations.

3.5 GROUNDING

- A. Comply with Section 270526 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems."
- B. Comply with IEEE 1100, "Recommended Practice for Power and Grounding Electronic Equipment."
- C. Ground cable shields, drain conductors, and equipment to eliminate shock hazard and to minimize ground loops, common-mode returns, noise pickup, cross talk, and other impairments.
- D. Bond shields and drain conductors to ground at only one point in each circuit.
- E. Signal Ground:
 - 1. Terminal: Locate in each equipment room and wiring closet; isolate from power system and equipment grounding.
 - 2. Bus: Mount on wall of main equipment room with standoff insulators.
 - 3. Backbone Cable: Extend from signal ground bus to signal ground terminal in each equipment room and wiring closet.

3.6 INSTALLATION

- A. Install card readers, keypads, push buttons, and biometric readers.

3.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. In addition to requirements in this article, comply with applicable requirements in Section 270553 "Identification for Communications Systems" and with TIA 606-B.
- B. Using software specified in "Cable and Asset Management Software" Article, develop cable administration drawings for system identification, testing, and management. Use unique, alphanumeric designation for each cable, and label cable and jacks, connectors, and terminals to which it connects with the same designation. Use logical and systematic designations for facility's architectural arrangement.
- C. Label each terminal strip and screw terminal in each cabinet, rack, or panel.
 - 1. All wiring conductors connected to terminal strips shall be individually numbered, and each cable or wiring group being extended from a panel or cabinet to a building-mounted device shall be identified with the name and number of the particular device as shown.
 - 2. Each wire connected to building-mounted devices is not required to be numbered at the device if the color of the wire is consistent with the associated wire connected and numbered within the panel or cabinet.
- D. At completion, cable and asset management software shall reflect as-built conditions.

3.8 SYSTEM SOFTWARE AND HARDWARE

- A. Develop, install, and test software and hardware, and perform database tests for the complete and proper operation of systems involved. Assign software license to Owner.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. LAN Cable Procedures: Inspect for physical damage and test each conductor signal path for continuity and shorts. Use tester approved for type and kind of installed cable. Test for faulty connectors, splices, and terminations. Test according to TIA 568-C.1, "Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standards - Part 1: General Requirements." Link performance for balanced twisted-pair cables must comply with minimum criteria in TIA 568-C.1.
 - 2. Test each circuit and component of each system. Tests shall include, but are not limited to, measurements of power-supply output under maximum load, signal loop resistance, and leakage to ground where applicable. System components with battery backup shall be operated on battery power for a period of not less than 10 percent of the calculated battery operating time. Provide special equipment and software if testing requires special or dedicated equipment.

3. Operational Test: After installation of cables and connectors, demonstrate product capability and compliance with requirements. Test each signal path for end-to-end performance from each end of all pairs installed. Remove temporary connections when tests have been satisfactorily completed.

C. Devices and circuits will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.10 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to supervise and assist with startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks according to approved procedures that were developed in "Preparation" Article and with manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Enroll and prepare badges and access cards for Owner's operators, management, and security personnel.

3.11 DEMONSTRATION

A. **Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train** Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain security access system. See Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training."

B. Develop separate training modules for the following:

1. Computer system administration personnel to manage and repair the LAN and databases and to update and maintain software.
2. Operators who prepare and input credentials to man the control station and workstations and to enroll personnel.
3. Security personnel.
4. Hardware maintenance personnel.
5. Corporate management.

END OF SECTION 281500

SECTION 282000 - VIDEO SURVEILLANCE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes a video surveillance system consisting of cameras, digital video recorder, data transmission wiring, and a control station with its associated equipment.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. AGC: Automatic gain control.
- B. BNC: Bayonet Neill-Concelman - type of connector.
- C. B/W: Black and white.
- D. CCD: Charge-coupled device.
- E. FTP: File transfer protocol.
- F. IP: Internet protocol.
- G. LAN: Local area network.
- H. MPEG: Moving picture experts group.
- I. NTSC: National Television System Committee.
- J. PC: Personal computer.
- K. PTZ: Pan-tilt-zoom.
- L. RAID: Redundant array of independent disks.
- M. TCP: Transmission control protocol - connects hosts on the Internet.
- N. UPS: Uninterruptible power supply.
- O. WAN: Wide area network.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include dimensions and data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For video surveillance. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 2. Functional Block Diagram: Show single-line interconnections between components for signal transmission and control. Show cable types and sizes.
 - 3. Dimensioned plan and elevations of equipment racks, control panels, and consoles. Show access and workspace requirements.
 - 4. UPS: Sizing calculations.
 - 5. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Design Data: Include an equipment list consisting of every piece of equipment by model number, manufacturer, serial number, location, and date of original installation. Add pretesting record of each piece of equipment, listing name of person testing, date of test, set points of adjustments, name and description of the view of preset positions, description of alarms, and description of unit output responses to an alarm.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For cameras, power supplies, infrared illuminators, monitors, videotape recorders, digital video recorders, video switches, and control-station components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - 1. Lists of spare parts and replacement components recommended to be stored at the site for ready access.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Conditions: Capable of withstanding the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of operating capability:
 - 1. Control Station: Rated for continuous operation in ambient temperatures of **60 to 85 deg F (16 to 29 deg C)** and a relative humidity of 20 to 80 percent, noncondensing.
 - 2. Interior, Controlled Environment: System components, except central-station control unit, installed in **air-conditioned** interior environments shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient temperatures of **36 to 122 deg F (2 to 50 deg C)** dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, noncondensing. Use NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosures.
 - 3. Interior, Uncontrolled Environment: System components installed in **non-air-conditioned** interior environments shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient temperatures of **0 to 122 deg F (minus 18 to plus 50 deg C)** dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, noncondensing. Use NEMA 250, **Type 3R** enclosures.

4. Exterior Environment: System components installed in locations exposed to weather shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient temperatures of **minus 30 to plus 122 deg F (minus 34 to plus 50 deg C)** dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, condensing. Rate for continuous operation when exposed to rain as specified in NEMA 250, winds up to **85 mph (137 km/h)**. Use NEMA 250, **Type 3R** enclosures.
5. Hazardous Environment: System components located in areas where fire or explosion hazards may exist because of flammable gases or vapors, flammable liquids, combustible dust, or ignitable fibers shall be rated, listed, and installed according to NFPA 70.
6. Corrosive Environment: System components subject to corrosive fumes, vapors, and wind-driven salt spray in coastal zones. Use NEMA 250, **Type 4X** enclosures.
7. Security Environment: Camera housing for use in high-risk areas where surveillance equipment may be subject to physical violence.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of cameras, equipment related to camera operation, and control-station equipment that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 1. Warranty Period: **Three** years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

- A. Video-signal format shall comply with NTSC standard, composite interlaced video. Composite video-signal termination shall be 75 ohms.
- B. Surge Protection: Protect components from voltage surges originating external to equipment housing and entering through power, communication, signal, control, or sensing leads. Include surge protection for external wiring of each conductor's entry connection to components.
 1. Minimum Protection for Power Connections 120 V and More: Auxiliary panel suppressors complying with requirements in Section 264313 "Surge Protection for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits."
 2. Minimum Protection for Communication, Signal, Control, and Low-Voltage Power Connections: Comply with requirements in Section 264313 "Surge Protection for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits" as recommended by manufacturer for type of line being protected.
- C. Tamper Protection: Tamper switches on enclosures, control units, pull boxes, junction boxes, cabinets, and other system components shall initiate a tamper-alarm signal when unit is opened or partially disassembled. Control-station, control-unit alarm display shall identify tamper alarms and indicate locations.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Video surveillance system shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to **ASCE/SEI 7**.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Comply with NECA 1.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.
- E. Electronic data exchange between video surveillance system with an access-control system shall comply with SIA TVAC.

2.3 STANDARD CAMERAS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. B/W Camera:
 - 1. Comply with UL 639.
 - 2. Pickup Device: CCD interline transfer, 252,000 **512(H) by 492(V)** pixels.
 - 3. Horizontal Resolution: 380 lines.
 - 4. Signal-to-Noise Ratio: Not less than 46 dB.
 - 5. With AGC, manually selectable on or off.
 - 6. Sensitivity: Camera shall deliver 1-V peak-to-peak video signal at the minimum specified light level. Illumination for the test shall be with lamps rated at approximately 2200-K color temperature, and with camera AGC off.
 - 7. Manually selectable modes for backlight compensation or normal lighting.
 - 8. Scanning Synchronization: Determined by external synch over the coaxial cable. Camera shall revert to internally generated synchronization on loss of external synch signal.
 - 9. Motion Detector: Built-in digital.
- C. Color Camera:
 - 1. Comply with UL 639.
 - 2. Pickup Device: CCD interline transfer, 380,000 **771(H) by 492(V)** pixels.
 - 3. Horizontal Resolution: 480 lines.
 - 4. Signal-to-Noise Ratio: Not less than 50 dB, with camera AGC off.
 - 5. With AGC, manually selectable on or off.
 - 6. Sensitivity: Camera shall deliver 1-V peak-to-peak video signal at the minimum specified light level. Illumination for the test shall be with lamps rated at approximately 2200-K color temperature, and with camera AGC off.
 - 7. Manually selectable modes for backlight compensation or normal lighting.
 - 8. Scanning Synchronization: Determined by external synch over the coaxial cable. Camera shall revert to internally generated synchronization on loss of external synch signal.

9. White Balance: Auto-tracing white balance, with manually settable fixed balance option.
 10. Motion Detector: Built-in digital.
- D. Automatic Color Dome Camera: Assembled and tested as a manufactured unit, containing dome assembly, color camera, motorized pan and tilt, zoom lens, and receiver/driver.
1. Comply with UL 639.
 2. Pickup Device: CCD interline transfer, 380,000 **768(H) by 494(V)** pixels.
 3. Horizontal Resolution: 480 lines.
 4. Signal-to-Noise Ratio: Not less than 50 dB, with camera AGC off.
 5. With AGC, manually selectable on or off.
 6. Sensitivity: Camera shall deliver 1-V peak-to-peak video signal at the minimum specified light level. Illumination for the test shall be with lamps rated at approximately 2200-K color temperature, and with camera AGC off.
 7. Manually selectable modes for backlight compensation or normal lighting.
 8. Pan and Tilt: Direct-drive motor, 360-degree rotation angle, and 180-degree tilt angle. Pan-and-tilt speed shall be controlled by operator. Movement from preset positions shall be not less than 300 degrees per second.
 9. Preset Positioning: Eight user-definable scenes, each allowing 16-character titles. Controls shall include the following:
 - a. In "sequence mode," camera shall continuously sequence through preset positions, with dwell time and sequencing under operator control.
 - b. Motion detection shall be available at each camera position.
 - c. Up to four preset positions may be selected to be activated by an alarm. Each of the alarm positions may be programmed to output a response signal.
 10. Scanning Synchronization: Determined by external synch over the coaxial cable. Camera shall revert to internally generated synchronization on loss of external synch signal.
 11. White Balance: Auto-tracing white balance, with manually settable fixed balance option.
 12. Motion Detector: Built-in digital.
 13. Dome shall support multiplexed control communications using coaxial cable recommended by manufacturer.

2.4 LENSES

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Description: Optical-quality coated lens, designed specifically for video-surveillance applications and matched to specified camera. Provide color-corrected lenses with color cameras.
 1. Auto-Iris Lens: Electrically controlled iris with circuit set to maintain a constant video level in varying lighting conditions.
 2. Fixed Lens: With calibrated focus ring.
 3. Zoom Lens: Motorized, remote-controlled unit, rated as "quiet operating." Features include the following:
 - a. Electrical Leads: Filtered to minimize video signal interference.
 - b. Motor Speed: Variable.

- c. Lens shall be available with preset positioning capability to recall the position of specific scenes.

2.5 POWER SUPPLIES

- A. Low-voltage power supplies matched for voltage and current requirements of cameras and accessories, and of type as recommended by manufacturer of camera and lens.
 - 1. Enclosure: NEMA 250, **Type 1**.

2.6 INFRARED ILLUMINATORS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Description: Lighting fixtures that emit light only in the infrared spectrum, suitable for use with cameras indicated, for nighttime surveillance, without emitting visible light.
 - 1. Field-Selectable Beam Patterns: Narrow, medium, and wide.
 - 2. Rated Lamp Life: More than 8000 hours.
 - 3. Power Supply: **120-V ac**.
- C. Area Coverage: Illumination to **150 feet (50 m)** in a narrow beam pattern.
- D. Exterior housings shall be suitable for same environmental conditions as the associated camera.

2.7 CAMERA-SUPPORTING EQUIPMENT

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Minimum Load Rating: Rated for load in excess of the total weight supported times a minimum safety factor of two.
- C. Pan Units: Motorized automatic-scanning units arranged to provide remote-controlled manual and automatic camera panning action, and equipped with matching mounting brackets.
 - 1. Scanning Operation: Silent, smooth, and positive.
 - 2. Stops: Adjustable without disassembly, to limit the scanning arc.
- D. Pan-and-Tilt Units: Motorized units arranged to provide remote-controlled aiming of cameras with smooth and silent operation, and equipped with matching mounting brackets.
 - 1. Panning Rotation: 0 to 355 degrees, with adjustable stops.
 - 2. Tilt Movement: 90 degrees, plus or minus 5 degrees, with adjustable stops.
 - 3. Speed: 12 degrees per second in both horizontal and vertical planes.
 - 4. Wiring: Factory prewired for camera and zoom lens functions and pan-and-tilt power and control.
 - 5. Built-in encoders or potentiometers for position feedback.
 - 6. Pan-and-tilt unit shall be available with preset positioning capability to recall the position of a specific scene.

- E. Mounting Brackets for Fixed Cameras: Type matched to items supported and mounting conditions. Include manual pan-and-tilt adjustment.
- F. Protective Housings for Fixed and Movable Cameras: Steel enclosures with internal camera mounting and connecting provisions that are matched to camera/lens combination and mounting and installing arrangement of camera to be housed.
 - 1. Tamper switch on access cover sounds an alarm signal when unit is opened or partially disassembled. Central-control unit shall identify tamper alarms and indicate location in alarm display. Tamper switches and central-control unit are specified in Section 283100 "Intrusion Detection."
 - 2. Camera Viewing Window: **Polycarbonate** window, aligned with camera lens.
 - 3. Duplex Receptacle: Internally mounted.
 - 4. Alignment Provisions: Camera mounting shall provide for field aiming of camera and permit removal and reinstallation of camera lens without disturbing camera alignment.
 - 5. Built-in, thermostat-activated **heater and blower** units. Units shall be automatically controlled so the environmental limits of the camera equipment are not exceeded.
 - 6. Sun shield shall not interfere with normal airflow around the housing.
 - 7. Mounting bracket and hardware for wall or ceiling mounting of the housing. Bracket shall be of same material as the housing; mounting hardware shall be stainless steel.
 - 8. Finish: Housing and mounting bracket shall be factory finished using manufacturer's standard finishing process suitable for the environment.

2.8 MONITORS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Color:
 - 1. Metal cabinet units designed for continuous operation.
 - 2. Screen Size (Diagonal Dimension):
 - 3. Horizontal Resolution: **300** lines.
 - 4. Minimum Front Panel Devices and Controls: Power switch; power-on indicator; and brightness, contrast, color, and tint controls.
 - 5. Degaussing: Automatic.
 - 6. Mounting: **Single, 14-inch (356-mm), Dual, 9-inch (229-mm)**, vertical, EIA **19-inch (483-mm)** electronic equipment rack or cabinet complying with CEA 310-E.
 - 7. Electrical: 120-V ac, 60 Hz.

2.9 DIGITAL VIDEO RECORDERS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Description: Digital, time-lapse type, full-frame and motion recorder, with removable hard drive.
 - 1. Recording Time: 400 hours minimum.
 - 2. Resolution: 720 by 480 lines, minimum.

3. Programming shall be from trackball and push buttons on face of the recorder, settings shall be displayed on any video monitor connected to the recorder. Programming shall include the following:
 - a. Motion analysis graph.
 - b. Password protection.
 - c. Alarm and timer controls.
 - d. Continuous recording option.
 - e. Time-lapse operating modes.
 - f. Search video by time, event, or motion.
4. Programming: SmartMedia card for software updating, image archiving, and image transfer to a PC.
5. Storage: **80-GB**, removable hard drive. Software shall permit hot-swapping drives.
6. Compression: **MPEG-2**.
7. Time and Date Generator: Records time (hr:min:sec) and date legend of each frame.
8. Audio Recording: 70 to 7000 Hz. Phono and microphone input; phono output.
9. Mounting: Standard **19-inch (483-mm)** rack complying with CEA 310-E, or freestanding desktop.

2.10 NETWORK VIDEO RECORDERS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. External storage or internal 250-1, 500-GB hard disk drive.
 1. Video and audio recording over TCP/IP network.
 2. Video recording of MPEG-2 and MPEG-4 streams.
 3. Video recording up to 48 Mbps for internal storage and up to 100 Mbps for external storage.
 4. Duplex Operation: Simultaneous recording and playback.
 5. Continuous and alarm-based recording.
 6. Full-Featured Search Capabilities: Search based on camera, time, or date.
 7. Automatic data replenishment to ensure recording even if network is down.
 8. Digital certification by watermarking.
 9. Internal RAID storage or non-RAID storage of up to 1500 GB.
 10. Capable of adding external RAID storage up to 7000 GB for models with no internal storage.
 11. Full integration with LAN, Intranet, or Internet through standard Web browser or video management software.
 12. Integrated Web server FTP server functionality.
 13. Supports up to 16, **32**, or **64** devices.

2.11 DIGITAL SWITCHERS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Quad Switch: For displaying images from four cameras on a single monitor. Provide color switcher if one or more cameras or monitors are in color.

1. Controls: Unit-mounted front panel.
 2. Resolution: **720 by 480** lines.
 3. Modes: Auto, manual, and alarm. In manual mode, each channel can also be viewed in single display mode. In the event of an alarm, alarming channel shall automatically switch to full screen. If several alarms are activated, channels in alarm shall be in auto-switching mode.
 4. Channel Loss Alarm: Audible buzzer; occurrence details shall be recorded.
 5. Time: Indicate date and time.
 6. Timing of Auto-Switcher: 1 to 30 seconds, selectable.
 7. Mounting: Standard **19-inch (483-mm)** rack complying with CEA 310-E, or freestanding desktop.
- C. Manual Switch Bank: Low-loss, high-isolation, multiple-video switch to allow manual switching of multiple quad switches and cameras to a single output. Switches shall be illuminated.
- D. Sequential Switchers: Automatically sequence outputs of multiple cameras to single monitor and videotape recorder.
1. Switching Time Interval: Continuously adjustable, 5 to 20 seconds minimum, with manual override.
 2. Skip-Sequential-Hold Switch: One for each camera, with LED to indicate active camera.
 3. Camera Identification Legend: Either on-screen message or label at skip-sequential switch.
 4. Alarm Switching: In the event of an alarm, alarming channel shall automatically switch the monitor to full screen.
 5. Mounting: Standard **19-inch (483-mm)** rack complying with CEA 310-E.
- E. PTZ Controls: Arranged for multiple-camera control, with switches to select camera to be controlled.
1. Pan-and-Tilt Control: Joystick type.
 2. Zoom Control: Momentary-contact, "in-out" push button.
 3. Automatic-Scan Control: A push button for each camera with pan capability that places camera in automatic-scanning mode.

2.12 IP VIDEO SYSTEMS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Description:
1. System shall provide high-quality delivery and processing of IP-based video, audio, and control data using standard Ethernet-based networks.
 2. System shall have seamless integration of all video surveillance and control functions.
 3. Graphical user interface software shall manage all IP-based video matrix switching and camera control functions, two-way audio communication, alarm monitoring and control, and recording and archive/retrieval management. IP system shall also be capable of integrating into larger system environments.

4. System design shall include all necessary compression software for high-performance, dual-stream, MPEG-2/MPEG-4 video. Unit shall provide connections for all video cameras, camera PTZ control data, bidirectional audio, discreet sensor inputs, and control system outputs.
5. All camera signals shall be compressed, encoded, and delivered onto the network for processing and control by the IP video-management software.
6. Camera system units shall be ruggedly built and designed for extreme adverse environments, complying with NEMA Type environmental standards.
7. Encoder/decoder combinations shall place video, audio, and data network stream that can be managed from multiple workstations on the user's LAN or WAN.
8. All system interconnect cables, workstation PCs, PTZ joysticks, and network intermediate devices shall be provided for full performance of specified system.

2.13 VIDEO MOTION SENSORS (INTERIOR)

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Device Performance: Detect changes in video signal within a user-defined protected zone. Video inputs shall be composite video as defined in SMPTE 170M. Provide an alarm output for each video input.
 1. Detect movement within protected zone of intruders wearing clothing with a reflectivity that differs from that of background scene by a factor of two. Reject all other changes in video signal.
 2. Modular design that allows for expansion or modification of number of inputs.
 3. Controls:
 - a. Size of detection zones.
 - b. Sensitivity of detection of each protected zone.
 4. Mounting: Standard **19-inch (483-mm)** rack complying with CEA 310-E.

2.14 CONTROL STATIONS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Description: Heavy-duty, freestanding, modular, metal furniture units arranged to house electronic equipment. Coordinate component arrangement and wiring with components and wiring of other systems.
- C. Equipment Mounting: Standard **19-inch (483-mm)** rack complying with CEA 310-E.
- D. Normal System Power Supply: 120 V, 60 Hz, through a locked disconnect device and an isolation transformer in central-station control unit. Central-station control unit shall supply power to all components connected to it unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Power Continuity for Control Station: Batteries in power supplies of central-station control units and individual system components shall maintain continuous system operation during outages of both normal and backup ac system supply.

1. Batteries: Rechargeable, valve-regulated, recombinant, sealed, lead-acid type with nominal 10-year life expectancy. Capacity adequate to operate portions of system served including audible trouble signal devices for up to four hours and audible and visual alarm devices under alarm conditions for an additional 10 minutes.
2. Battery Charger: Solid-state, fully automatic, variable-charging-rate type. Charger shall recharge fully discharged battery within 24 hours.

F. Annunciation: Indicate change in system condition and switching of system or component to backup power.

2.15 SIGNAL TRANSMISSION COMPONENTS

- A. Cable: Coaxial cable elements have 75-ohm nominal impedance. Comply with requirements in Section 270513 "Conductors and Cables for Communications Systems."
- B. Video Surveillance Coaxial Cable Connectors: BNC type, 75 ohms. Comply with requirements in Section 270513 "Conductors and Cables for Communications Systems."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine pathway elements intended for cables. Check raceways and other elements for compliance with space allocations, installation tolerance, hazards to camera installation, and other conditions affecting installation.
- B. Examine roughing-in for LAN, WAN, and IP network before device installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 WIRING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems."
- B. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Except raceways are not required in accessible indoor ceiling spaces and attics.
 2. Except raceways are not required in hollow gypsum board partitions.
 3. Conceal raceways and wiring except in unfinished spaces.
- C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.
- D. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: For power and control wiring, use numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.

- E. Grounding: Provide independent-signal circuit grounding recommended in writing by manufacturer.

3.3 VIDEO SURVEILLANCE SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install cameras and infrared illuminators level and plumb.
- B. Install cameras with **84-inch- (2134-mm-)** minimum clear space below cameras and their mountings. Change type of mounting to achieve required clearance.
- C. Set pan unit and pan-and-tilt unit stops to suit final camera position and to obtain the field of view required for camera. Connect all controls and alarms, and adjust.
- D. Install power supplies and other auxiliary components at control stations unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Install tamper switches on components indicated to receive tamper switches, arranged to detect unauthorized entry into system-component enclosures and mounted in self-protected, inconspicuous positions.
- F. Avoid ground loops by making ground connections only at the control station.
 - 1. For 12- and 24-V dc cameras, connect the coaxial cable shields only at the monitor end.
- G. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals according to Section 270553 "Identification for Communications Systems."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Inspection: Verify that units and controls are properly installed, connected, and labeled, and that interconnecting wires and terminals are identified.
 - 2. Pretesting: Align and adjust system and pretest components, wiring, and functions to verify that they comply with specified requirements. Conduct tests at varying lighting levels, including day and night scenes as applicable. Prepare video-surveillance equipment for acceptance and operational testing as follows:
 - a. Prepare equipment list described in "Informational Submittals" Article.
 - b. Verify operation of auto-iris lenses.

- c. Set back-focus of fixed focal length lenses. At focus set to infinity, simulate nighttime lighting conditions by using a dark glass filter of a density that produces a clear image. Adjust until image is in focus with and without the filter.
 - d. Set back-focus of zoom lenses. At focus set to infinity, simulate nighttime lighting conditions by using a dark glass filter of a density that produces a clear image. Additionally, set zoom to full wide angle and aim camera at an object **50 to 75 feet (17 to 23 m)** away. Adjust until image is in focus from full wide angle to full telephoto, with the filter in place.
 - e. Set and name all preset positions; consult Owner's personnel.
 - f. Set sensitivity of motion detection.
 - g. Connect and verify responses to alarms.
 - h. Verify operation of control-station equipment.
- 3. Test Schedule: Schedule tests after pretesting has been successfully completed and system has been in normal functional operation for at least 14 days. Provide a minimum of 10 days' notice of test schedule.
 - 4. Operational Tests: Perform operational system tests to verify that system complies with Specifications. Include all modes of system operation. Test equipment for proper operation in all functional modes.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within **12** months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to **two** visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose. Tasks shall include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Check cable connections.
 - 2. Check proper operation of cameras and lenses. Verify operation of auto-iris lenses and adjust back-focus as needed.
 - 3. Adjust all preset positions; consult Owner's personnel.
 - 4. Recommend changes to cameras, lenses, and associated equipment to improve Owner's use of video surveillance system.
 - 5. Provide a written report of adjustments and recommendations.

3.6 CLEANING

- A. Clean installed items using methods and materials recommended in writing by manufacturer.
- B. Clean video-surveillance-system components, including camera-housing windows, lenses, and monitor screens.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. **Train** Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain video-surveillance equipment.

END OF SECTION 282000

SECTION 284621.11 - ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Fire-alarm control unit.
 - 2. Manual fire-alarm boxes.
 - 3. System smoke detectors.
 - 4. Air-sampling smoke detectors.
 - 5. Nonsystem smoke detectors.
 - 6. Heat detectors.
 - 7. Notification appliances.
 - 8. Device guards.
 - 9. Magnetic door holders.
 - 10. Remote annunciator.
 - 11. Addressable interface device.
 - 12. Digital alarm communicator transmitter.
 - 13. Radio alarm transmitter.
 - 14. Network communications.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMT: Electrical Metallic Tubing.
- B. FACP: Fire Alarm Control Panel.
- C. HLI: High Level Interface.
- D. NICET: National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies.
- E. PC: Personal computer.
- F. VESDA: Very Early Smoke-Detection Apparatus.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product, including furnished options and accessories.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions, profiles, and finishes.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and electrical characteristics.

B. Shop Drawings: For fire-alarm system.

1. Comply with recommendations and requirements in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
2. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
3. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and locations. Indicate conductor sizes, indicate termination locations and requirements, and distinguish between factory and field wiring.
4. Detail assembly and support requirements.
5. Include voltage drop calculations for notification-appliance circuits.
6. Include battery-size calculations.
7. Include input/output matrix.
8. Include statement from manufacturer that all equipment and components have been tested as a system and meet all requirements in this Specification and in NFPA 72.
9. Include performance parameters and installation details for each detector.
10. Verify that each duct detector is listed for complete range of air velocity, temperature, and humidity possible when air-handling system is operating.
11. Provide program report showing that air-sampling detector pipe layout balances pneumatically within the airflow range of the air-sampling detector.
12. Include plans, sections, and elevations of heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning ducts, drawn to scale; coordinate location of duct smoke detectors and access to them.
 - a. Show critical dimensions that relate to placement and support of sampling tubes, detector housing, and remote status and alarm indicators.
 - b. Show field wiring required for HVAC unit shutdown on alarm.
 - c. Show field wiring and equipment required for HVAC unit shutdown on alarm and override by firefighters' control system.
 - d. Show field wiring and equipment required for HVAC unit shutdown on alarm and override by firefighters' smoke-evacuation system.
 - e. Locate detectors according to manufacturer's written recommendations.
 - f. Show air-sampling detector pipe routing.
13. Include voice/alarm signaling-service equipment rack or console layout, grounding schematic, amplifier power calculation, and single-line connection diagram.
14. Include floor plans to indicate final outlet locations showing address of each addressable device. Show size and route of cable and conduits and point-to-point wiring diagrams.

C. General Submittal Requirements:

1. Submittals shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction prior to submitting them to Architect.
2. Shop Drawings shall be prepared by persons with the following qualifications:
 - a. Trained and certified by manufacturer in fire-alarm system design.
 - b. NICET-certified, fire-alarm technician; **Level III** minimum.
 - c. Licensed or certified by authorities having jurisdiction.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire-alarm systems and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following **and deliver copies to authorities having jurisdiction**:
 - a. Comply with the "Records" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
 - b. Provide "Fire Alarm and Emergency Communications System Record of Completion Documents" according to the "Completion Documents" Article in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
 - c. Complete wiring diagrams showing connections between all devices and equipment. Each conductor shall be numbered at every junction point with indication of origination and termination points.
 - d. Riser diagram.
 - e. Device addresses.
 - f. Air-sampling system sample port locations and modeling program report showing layout meets performance criteria.
 - g. Record copy of site-specific software.
 - h. Provide "Inspection and Testing Form" according to the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72, and include the following:
 - 1) Equipment tested.
 - 2) Frequency of testing of installed components.
 - 3) Frequency of inspection of installed components.
 - 4) Requirements and recommendations related to results of maintenance.
 - 5) Manufacturer's user training manuals.
 - i. Manufacturer's required maintenance related to system warranty requirements.
 - j. Abbreviated operating instructions for mounting at fire-alarm control unit and each annunciator unit.
- B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:
1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
 2. Program Software Backup: On magnetic media or compact disk, complete with data files.
 3. Device address list.
 4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Keys and Tools: One extra set for access to locked or tamperproofed components.
 2. Fuses: **Two** of each type installed in the system. Provide in a box or cabinet with compartments marked with fuse types and sizes.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Personnel shall be trained and certified by manufacturer for installation of units required for this Project.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Installation shall be by personnel certified by NICET as fire-alarm **Level II** technician.
- C. NFPA Certification: Obtain certification according to NFPA 72 by a UL-listed alarm company.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Use of Devices during Construction: Protect devices during construction unless devices are placed in service to protect the facility during construction.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fire-alarm system equipment and components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Extent: All equipment and components not covered in the Maintenance Service Agreement.
 - 2. Warranty Period: **Five** years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Source Limitations for Fire-Alarm System and Components: Components shall be compatible with, and operate as an extension of, existing system. Provide system manufacturer's certification that all components provided have been tested as, and will operate as, a system.
- B. Noncoded, **UL-certified** addressable system, with multiplexed signal transmission and **horn**/strobe evacuation.
- C. Automatic sensitivity control of certain smoke detectors.
- D. All components provided shall be listed for use with the selected system.
- E. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.2 SYSTEMS OPERATIONAL DESCRIPTION

- A. Fire-alarm signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices **and systems**:
 - 1. Manual stations.

2. Heat detectors.
3. Flame detectors.
4. Smoke detectors.
5. Duct smoke detectors.
6. Carbon monoxide detectors.
7. Automatic sprinkler system water flow.
8. Preaction system.
9. Fire-extinguishing system operation.
10. Fire standpipe system.
11. Dry system pressure flow switch.

B. Fire-alarm signal shall initiate the following actions:

1. Continuously operate alarm notification appliances.
2. Identify alarm and specific initiating device at fire-alarm control unit **and remote annunciators**.
3. Transmit an alarm signal to the remote alarm receiving station.
4. Unlock electric door locks in designated egress paths.
5. Release fire and smoke doors held open by magnetic door holders.
6. Activate voice/alarm communication system.
7. Close smoke dampers in air ducts of designated air-conditioning duct systems.
8. Activate preaction system.
9. Activate emergency shutoffs for gas and fuel supplies.
10. Record events in the system memory.

C. Supervisory signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:

1. Valve supervisory switch.
2. High- or low-air-pressure switch of a dry-pipe or preaction sprinkler system.
3. Alert and Action signals of air-sampling detector system.
4. Loss of communication with any panel on the network.

D. System trouble signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:

1. Open circuits, shorts, and grounds in designated circuits.
2. Opening, tampering with, or removing alarm-initiating and supervisory signal-initiating devices.
3. Loss of communication with any addressable sensor, input module, relay, control module, remote annunciator, printer interface, or Ethernet module.
4. Loss of primary power at fire-alarm control unit.
5. Ground or a single break in internal circuits of fire-alarm control unit.
6. Abnormal ac voltage at fire-alarm control unit.
7. Break in standby battery circuitry.
8. Failure of battery charging.
9. Abnormal position of any switch at fire-alarm control unit or annunciator.

E. System Supervisory Signal Actions:

1. Initiate notification appliances.
2. Identify specific device initiating the event at fire-alarm control unit **and remote annunciators**.

3. Record the event on system printer.
4. After a time delay of **200 seconds**, transmit a trouble or supervisory signal to the remote alarm receiving station.
5. Transmit system status to building management system.
6. Display system status on graphic annunciator.

2.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Fire-alarm control unit and raceways shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to **ASCE/SEI 7**.
 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."

2.4 FIRE-ALARM CONTROL UNIT

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. General Requirements for Fire-Alarm Control Unit:
 1. Field-programmable, microprocessor-based, modular, power-limited design with electronic modules, complying with UL 864.
 - a. System software and programs shall be held in nonvolatile flash, electrically erasable, programmable, read-only memory, retaining the information through failure of primary and secondary power supplies.
 - b. Include a real-time clock for time annotation of events on the event recorder and printer.
 - c. Provide communication between the FACP and remote circuit interface panels, annunciators, and displays.
 - d. The FACP shall be listed for connection to a central-station signaling system service.
 - e. Provide nonvolatile memory for system database, logic, and operating system and event history. The system shall require no manual input to initialize in the event of a complete power down condition. The FACP shall provide a minimum 500-event history log.
 2. Addressable Initiation Device Circuits: The FACP shall indicate which communication zones have been silenced and shall provide selective silencing of alarm notification appliance by building communication zone.
 3. Addressable Control Circuits for Operation of Notification Appliances and Mechanical Equipment: The FACP shall be listed for releasing service.
- C. Alphanumeric Display and System Controls: Arranged for interface between human operator at fire-alarm control unit and addressable system components including annunciation and supervision. Display alarm, supervisory, and component status messages and the programming and control menu.
 1. Annunciator and Display: Liquid-crystal type, **80** characters, minimum.

2. Keypad: Arranged to permit entry and execution of programming, display, and control commands.
- D. Initiating-Device, Notification-Appliance, and Signaling-Line Circuits:
1. Pathway Class Designations: NFPA 72, [**Class A**] [**Class B**] [**Class C**] [**Class D**] [**Class E**].
 2. Pathway Survivability: [**Level 0**] [**Level 1**].
 3. Install no more than **100** addressable devices on each signaling-line circuit.
 4. Serial Interfaces:
 - a. One dedicated RS 485 port for **remote station** operation using point ID DACT.
 - b. One RS 485 port for remote annunciators, Ethernet module, or multi-interface module (printer port).
 - c. One **USB** port for PC configuration.
 - d. One RS 232 port for VESDA HLI connection.
 - e. One RS 232 port for voice evacuation interface.
- E. Smoke-Alarm Verification:
1. Initiate audible and visible indication of an "alarm-verification" signal at fire-alarm control unit.
 2. Activate an approved "alarm-verification" sequence at fire-alarm control unit and detector.
 3. Record events by the system printer.
 4. Sound general alarm if the alarm is verified.
 5. Cancel fire-alarm control unit indication and system reset if the alarm is not verified.
- F. Notification-Appliance Circuit:
1. Audible appliances shall sound in a three-pulse temporal pattern, as defined in NFPA 72.
 2. Where notification appliances provide signals to sleeping areas, the alarm signal shall be a 520-Hz square wave with an intensity 15 dB above the average ambient sound level or 5 dB above the maximum sound level, or at least 75 dBA, whichever is greater, measured at the pillow.
 3. Visual alarm appliances shall flash in synchronization where multiple appliances are in the same field of view, as defined in NFPA 72.
- G. Door Controls: Door hold-open devices that are controlled by smoke detectors at doors in smoke-barrier walls shall [**be**] [**not be**] connected to fire-alarm system.
- H. Remote Smoke-Detector Sensitivity Adjustment: Controls shall select specific addressable smoke detectors for adjustment, display their current status and sensitivity settings, and change those settings. Allow controls to be used to program repetitive, time-scheduled, and automated changes in sensitivity of specific detector groups. Record sensitivity adjustments and sensitivity-adjustment schedule changes in system memory, and print out the final adjusted values on system printer.
- I. Transmission to Remote Alarm Receiving Station: Automatically transmit alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals to a remote alarm station.

- J. Voice/Alarm Signaling Service: Central emergency communication system with redundant microphones, preamplifiers, amplifiers, and tone generators provided.
 - 1. Indicate number of alarm channels for automatic, simultaneous transmission of different announcements to different zones or for manual transmission of announcements by use of the central-control microphone. Amplifiers shall comply with UL 1711.
 - a. Allow the application of, and evacuation signal to, indicated number of zones and, at the same time, allow voice paging to the other zones selectively or in any combination.
 - b. Programmable tone and message sequence selection.
 - c. Standard digitally recorded messages for "Evacuation" and "All Clear."
 - d. Generate tones to be sequenced with audio messages of type recommended by NFPA 72 and that are compatible with tone patterns of notification-appliance circuits of fire-alarm control unit.
 - 2. Status Annunciator: Indicate the status of various voice/alarm speaker zones and the status of firefighters' two-way telephone communication zones.
 - 3. Preamplifiers, amplifiers, and tone generators shall automatically transfer to backup units, on primary equipment failure.
- K. Primary Power: 24-V dc obtained from 120-V ac service and a power-supply module. Initiating devices, notification appliances, signaling lines, trouble signals, **supervisory signals, supervisory and digital alarm communicator transmitters and digital alarm radio transmitters** shall be powered by 24-V dc source.
 - 1. Alarm current draw of entire fire-alarm system shall not exceed 80 percent of the power-supply module rating.
- L. Secondary Power: 24-V dc supply system with batteries, automatic battery charger, and automatic transfer switch.
 - 1. Batteries: **Sealed lead calcium.**
- M. Instructions: Computer printout or typewritten instruction card mounted behind a plastic or glass cover in a stainless-steel or aluminum frame. Include interpretation and describe appropriate response for displays and signals. Briefly describe the functional operation of the system under normal, alarm, and trouble conditions.

2.5 PREACTION SYSTEM

- A. Initiate Presignal Alarm: This function shall cause an audible and visual alarm and indication to be provided at the FACP. Activation of an initiation device connected as part of a preaction system shall be annunciated at the FACP only, without activation of the general evacuation alarm.

2.6 MANUAL FIRE-ALARM BOXES

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

- B. General Requirements for Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes: Comply with UL 38. Boxes shall be finished in red with molded, raised-letter operating instructions in contrasting color; shall show visible indication of operation; and shall be mounted on recessed outlet box. If indicated as surface mounted, provide manufacturer's surface back box.
1. Double-action mechanism requiring two actions to initiate an alarm, **breaking-glass or plastic-rod** type; with **integral** addressable module arranged to communicate manual-station status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
 2. Station Reset: Key- or wrench-operated switch.
 3. Indoor Protective Shield: Factory-fabricated, clear plastic enclosure hinged at the top to permit lifting for access to initiate an alarm. Lifting the cover actuates an integral battery-powered audible horn intended to discourage false-alarm operation.
 4. Weatherproof Protective Shield: Factory-fabricated, clear plastic enclosure hinged at the top to permit lifting for access to initiate an alarm.

2.7 SYSTEM SMOKE DETECTORS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

- B. General Requirements for System Smoke Detectors:

1. Comply with UL 268; operating at 24-V dc, nominal.
2. Detectors shall be **four**-wire type.
3. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
4. Base Mounting: Detector and associated electronic components shall be mounted in a twist-lock module that connects to a fixed base. Provide terminals in the fixed base for connection to building wiring.
5. Self-Restoring: Detectors do not require resetting or readjustment after actuation to restore them to normal operation.
6. Integral Visual-Indicating Light: LED type, indicating detector has operated **and power-on status**.
7. Remote Control: Unless otherwise indicated, detectors shall be digital-addressable type, individually monitored at fire-alarm control unit for calibration, sensitivity, and alarm condition **and individually adjustable for sensitivity by fire-alarm control unit**.
 - a. Rate-of-rise temperature characteristic of combination smoke- and heat-detection units shall be selectable at fire-alarm control unit for **15 or 20 deg F (8 or 11 deg C)** per minute.
 - b. Fixed-temperature sensing characteristic of combination smoke- and heat-detection units shall be independent of rate-of-rise sensing and shall be settable at fire-alarm control unit to operate at **135 or 155 deg F (57 or 68 deg C)**.
 - c. Multiple levels of detection sensitivity for each sensor.
 - d. Sensitivity levels based on time of day.

- C. Photoelectric Smoke Detectors:

1. Detector address shall be accessible from fire-alarm control unit and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.

2. An operator at fire-alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:
 - a. Primary status.
 - b. Device type.
 - c. Present average value.
 - d. Present sensitivity selected.
 - e. Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).

D. Duct Smoke Detectors: Photoelectric type complying with UL 268A.

1. Detector address shall be accessible from fire-alarm control unit and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.
2. An operator at fire-alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:
 - a. Primary status.
 - b. Device type.
 - c. Present average value.
 - d. Present sensitivity selected.
 - e. Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).
3. Weatherproof Duct Housing Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X; NRTL listed for use with the supplied detector for smoke detection in HVAC system ducts.
4. Each sensor shall have multiple levels of detection sensitivity.
5. Sampling Tubes: Design and dimensions as recommended by manufacturer for specific duct size, air velocity, and installation conditions where applied.
6. Relay Fan Shutdown: Fully programmable relay rated to interrupt fan motor-control circuit.

2.8 CARBON MONOXIDE DETECTORS

A. General: Carbon monoxide detector listed for connection to fire-alarm system.

1. Mounting: Adapter plate for outlet box mounting.
2. Testable by introducing test carbon monoxide into the sensing cell.
3. Detector shall provide alarm contacts and trouble contacts.
4. Detector shall send trouble alarm when nearing end-of-life, power supply problems, or internal faults.
5. Comply with UL 2075.
6. Locate, mount, and wire according to manufacturer's written instructions.
7. Provide means for addressable connection to fire-alarm system.
8. Test button simulates an alarm condition.

2.9 MULTICRITERIA DETECTORS

A. Mounting: **Twist-lock base interchangeable with smoke-detector bases.**

- B. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
- C. Automatically adjusts its sensitivity by means of drift compensation and smoothing algorithms. The detector shall send trouble alarm if it is incapable of compensating for existing conditions.
- D. Test button tests all sensors in the detector.
- E. An operator at fire-alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:
 - 1. Primary status.
 - 2. Device type.
 - 3. Present sensitivity selected.
 - 4. Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).
- F. Sensors: The detector shall be comprised of four sensing elements including a smoke sensor, a carbon monoxide sensor, an infrared sensor, and a heat sensor.
 - 1. Smoke sensor shall be photoelectric type as described in "System Smoke Detectors" Article.
 - 2. Carbon monoxide sensor shall be as described in "Carbon Monoxide Detectors" Article.
 - 3. Heat sensor shall be as described in "Heat Detectors" Article.
 - 4. Each sensor shall be separately listed according to requirements for its detector type.

2.10 NONSYSTEM SMOKE DETECTORS

- A. General Requirements for Nonsystem Smoke Detectors:
 - 1. Nonsystem smoke detectors shall be listed as compatible with the fire-alarm equipment installed or shall have a contact closure interface listed for the connected load.
 - 2. Nonsystem smoke detectors shall meet the monitoring for integrity requirements in NFPA 72.
- B. Single-Station Smoke Detectors:
 - 1. Comply with UL 217; suitable for NFPA 101, residential occupancies; operating at 120-V ac **with 9-V dc battery as the secondary power source. Provide with "low" or "missing" battery chirping-sound device.**
 - 2. Auxiliary Relays: One **Form C, rated at 0.5 A.**
 - 3. Audible Notification Appliance: Piezoelectric sounder rated at 90 dBA at **10 feet (3 m)** according to UL 464.
 - 4. Visible Notification Appliance: 177-cd strobe.
 - 5. Heat sensor, **135 deg F (57 deg C) combination rate-of-rise and** fixed temperature.
 - 6. Test Switch: Push to test; simulates smoke at rated obscuration.
 - 7. Tandem Connection: Allow tandem connection of number of indicated detectors; alarm on one detector shall actuate notification on all connected detectors.
 - 8. Plug-in Arrangement: Detector and associated electronic components shall be mounted in a plug-in module that connects to a fixed base. Provide terminals in the fixed base for connection to building wiring.

9. Self-Restoring: Detectors shall not require resetting or readjustment after actuation to restore them to normal operation.
10. Integral Visual-Indicating Light: LED type, indicating detector has operated **and power-on status**.

C. Single-Station Duct Smoke Detectors:

1. Comply with UL 268A; operating at 120-V ac.
2. Sensor: LED or infrared light source with matching silicon-cell receiver.
 - a. Detector Sensitivity: Smoke obscuration between **2.5 and 3.5 percent/foot (0.008 and 0.011 percent/mm)** when tested according to UL 268A.
3. Base Mounting: Detector and associated electronic components shall be mounted in a twist-lock module that connects to a fixed base. The fixed base shall be designed for mounting directly to air duct. Provide terminals in the fixed base for connection to building wiring.
 - a. Weatherproof Duct Housing Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X; listed for use with the supplied detector.
4. Sampling Tubes: Design and dimensions as recommended by manufacturer for specific duct size, air velocity, and installation conditions where applied.
5. Relay Fan Shutdown: Rated to interrupt fan motor-control circuit.

2.11 HEAT DETECTORS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. General Requirements for Heat Detectors: Comply with UL 521.
 1. Temperature sensors shall test for and communicate the sensitivity range of the device.
- C. Heat Detector, Combination Type: Actuated by either a fixed temperature of **135 deg F (57 deg C)** or a rate of rise that exceeds **15 deg F (8 deg C)** per minute unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Mounting: **Twist-lock base interchangeable with smoke-detector bases.**
 2. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
- D. Heat Detector, Fixed-Temperature Type: Actuated by temperature that exceeds a fixed temperature of **190 deg F (88 deg C)**.
 1. Mounting: **Twist-lock base interchangeable with smoke-detector bases.**
 2. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.

2.12 NOTIFICATION APPLIANCES

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

- B. General Requirements for Notification Appliances: Individually addressed, connected to a signaling-line circuit, equipped for mounting as indicated, and with screw terminals for system connections.
- C. General Requirements for Notification Appliances: Connected to notification-appliance signal circuits, zoned as indicated, equipped for mounting as indicated, and with screw terminals for system connections.
 - 1. Combination Devices: Factory-integrated audible and visible devices in a single-mounting assembly, equipped for mounting as indicated, and with screw terminals for system connections.
- D. Chimes, Low-Level Output: Vibrating type, 75-dBA minimum rated output.
- E. Chimes, High-Level Output: Vibrating type, 81-dBA minimum rated output.
- F. Horns: Electric-vibrating-polarized type, 24-V dc; with provision for housing the operating mechanism behind a grille. Comply with UL 464. Horns shall produce a sound-pressure level of 90 dBA, measured **10 feet (3 m)** from the horn, using the coded signal prescribed in UL 464 test protocol.
- G. Visible Notification Appliances: Xenon strobe lights complying with UL 1971, with clear or nominal white polycarbonate lens mounted on an aluminum faceplate. The word "FIRE" is engraved in minimum **1-inch- (25-mm-)** high letters on the lens.
 - 1. Rated Light Output:
 - a. 15/30/75/110 cd, selectable in the field.
 - 2. Mounting: Wall mounted unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. For units with guards to prevent physical damage, light output ratings shall be determined with guards in place.
 - 4. Flashing shall be in a temporal pattern, synchronized with other units.
 - 5. Strobe Leads: Factory connected to screw terminals.
 - 6. Mounting Faceplate: Factory finished, **red**.
- H. Voice/Tone Notification Appliances:
 - 1. Comply with UL 1480.
 - 2. Speakers for Voice Notification: Locate speakers for voice notification to provide the intelligibility requirements of the "Notification Appliances" and "Emergency Communications Systems" chapters in NFPA 72.
 - 3. High-Range Units: Rated 2 to 15 W.
 - 4. Low-Range Units: Rated 1 to 2 W.
 - 5. Mounting: **Flush, semi-recessed or surface mounted and bidirectional**.
 - 6. Matching Transformers: Tap range matched to acoustical environment of speaker location.

2.13 MAGNETIC DOOR HOLDERS

- A. Description: Units are equipped for wall or floor mounting as indicated and are complete with matching doorplate.
 - 1. Electromagnets: Require no more than 3 W to develop **25-lbf (111-N)** holding force.
 - 2. Wall-Mounted Units: Flush mounted unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Rating: 24-V ac or dc.
 - 4. Rating: 120-V ac.
- B. Material and Finish: Match door hardware.

2.14 REMOTE ANNUNCIATOR

- A. Description: Annunciator functions shall match those of fire-alarm control unit for alarm, supervisory, and trouble indications. Manual switching functions shall match those of fire-alarm control unit, including acknowledging, silencing, resetting, and testing.
 - 1. Mounting: **Flush** cabinet, NEMA 250, Type 1.
- B. Display Type and Functional Performance: Alphanumeric display and LED indicating lights shall match those of fire-alarm control unit. Provide controls to acknowledge, silence, reset, and test functions for alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals.

2.15 ADDRESSABLE INTERFACE DEVICE

- A. General:
 - 1. Include address-setting means on the module.
 - 2. Store an internal identifying code for control panel use to identify the module type.
 - 3. Listed for controlling HVAC fan motor controllers.
- B. Monitor Module: Microelectronic module providing a system address for alarm-initiating devices for wired applications with normally open contacts.
- C. Integral Relay: Capable of providing a direct signal **to circuit-breaker shunt trip for power shutdown**.
 - 1. Allow the control panel to switch the relay contacts on command.
 - 2. Have a minimum of two normally open and two normally closed contacts available for field wiring.
- D. Control Module:
 - 1. Operate notification devices.
 - 2. Operate solenoids for use in sprinkler service.

2.16 DIGITAL ALARM COMMUNICATOR TRANSMITTER

- A. Digital alarm communicator transmitter shall be acceptable to the remote central station and shall comply with UL 632.
- B. Functional Performance: Unit shall receive an alarm, supervisory, or trouble signal from fire-alarm control unit and automatically capture telephone line(s) and dial a preset number for a remote central station. When contact is made with central station(s), signals shall be transmitted. If service on either line is interrupted for longer than 45 seconds, transmitter shall initiate a local trouble signal and transmit the signal indicating loss of telephone line to the remote alarm receiving station over the remaining line. Transmitter shall automatically report telephone service restoration to the central station. If service is lost on both telephone lines, transmitter shall initiate the local trouble signal.
- C. Local functions and display at the digital alarm communicator transmitter shall include the following:
 - 1. Verification that both telephone lines are available.
 - 2. Programming device.
 - 3. LED display.
 - 4. Manual test report function and manual transmission clear indication.
 - 5. Communications failure with the central station or fire-alarm control unit.
- D. Digital data transmission shall include the following:
 - 1. Address of the alarm-initiating device.
 - 2. Address of the supervisory signal.
 - 3. Address of the trouble-initiating device.
 - 4. Loss of ac supply.
 - 5. Loss of power.
 - 6. Low battery.
 - 7. Abnormal test signal.
 - 8. Communication bus failure.
- E. Secondary Power: Integral rechargeable battery and automatic charger.
- F. Self-Test: Conducted automatically every 24 hours with report transmitted to central station.

2.17 RADIO ALARM TRANSMITTER

- A. Transmitter shall comply with NFPA 1221 and 47 CFR 90.
- B. Description: Manufacturer's standard commercial product; factory assembled, wired, and tested; ready for installation and operation.
 - 1. Packaging: A single, modular, NEMA 250, Type 1 metal enclosure with a tamper-resistant flush tumbler lock.
 - 2. Signal Transmission Mode and Frequency: VHF or UHF 2-W power output, coordinated with operating characteristics of the established remote alarm receiving station designated by Owner.

3. Normal Power Input: 120-V ac.
 4. Secondary Power: Integral-sealed, rechargeable, 12-V battery and charger. Comply with NFPA 72 requirements for battery capacity; submit calculations.
 5. Antenna: Omnidirectional, coaxial half-wave, dipole type with driving point impedance matched to transmitter and antenna cable output impedance. Wind-load strength of antenna and mounting hardware and supports shall withstand **100 mph (160 km/h)** with a gust factor of 1.3 without failure.
 6. Antenna Cable: Coaxial cable with impedance matched to the transmitter output impedance.
 7. Antenna-Cable Connectors: Weatherproof.
 8. Alarm Interface Devices: Circuit boards, modules, and other auxiliary devices, integral to the transmitter, matching fire-alarm and other system outputs to message-generating inputs of the transmitter that produce required message transmissions.
- C. Functional Performance: Unit shall receive alarm, supervisory, or trouble signal from fire-alarm control unit or from its own internal sensors or controls and shall automatically transmit signal along with a unique code that identifies the transmitting station to the remote alarm receiving station. Transmitted messages shall correspond to standard designations for fire-reporting system to which the signal is being transmitted and shall include separately designated messages in response to the following events or conditions:
1. Transmitter Low-Battery Condition: Sent when battery voltage is below 85 percent of rated value.
 2. System Test Message: Initiated manually by a test switch within the transmitter cabinet, or automatically at an optionally preselected time, once every 24 hours, with transmission time controlled by a programmed timing device integral to transmitter controls.
 3. Transmitter Trouble Message: Actuated by failure, in excess of one-minute duration, of the transmitter normal power source, derangement of the wiring of the transmitter, or any alarm input interface circuit or device connected to it.
 4. Local Fire-Alarm-System Trouble Message: Initiated by events or conditions that cause a trouble signal to be indicated on the building system.
 5. Local Fire-Alarm-System Alarm Message: Actuated when the building system goes into an alarm state. Identifies device that initiated the alarm.
 6. Local Fire-Alarm-System, Supervisory-Alarm Message: **Actuated when the building alarm system indicates a supervisory alarm.**

2.18 DEVICE GUARDS

- A. Description: Welded wire mesh of size and shape for the manual station, smoke detector, gong, or other device requiring protection.
1. Factory fabricated and furnished by device manufacturer.
 2. Finish: Paint of color to match the protected device.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions for compliance with requirements for ventilation, temperature, humidity, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify that manufacturer's written instructions for environmental conditions have been permanently established in spaces where equipment and wiring are installed, before installation begins.
- B. Examine roughing-in for electrical connections to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NFPA 72, NFPA 101, and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for installation and testing of fire-alarm equipment. Install all electrical wiring to comply with requirements in NFPA 70 including, but not limited to, Article 760, "Fire Alarm Systems."
 - 1. Devices placed in service before all other trades have completed cleanup shall be replaced.
 - 2. Devices installed but not yet placed in service shall be protected from construction dust, debris, dirt, moisture, and damage according to manufacturer's written storage instructions.
- B. Install wall-mounted equipment, with tops of cabinets not more than **78 inches (1980 mm)** above the finished floor.
 - 1. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 270548.16 "Seismic Controls for Communications Systems."
- C. Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes:
 - 1. Install manual fire-alarm box in the normal path of egress within **60 inches (1520 mm)** of the exit doorway.
 - 2. Mount manual fire-alarm box on a background of a contrasting color.
 - 3. The operable part of manual fire-alarm box shall be between **42 inches (1060 mm)** and **48 inches (1220 mm)** above floor level. All devices shall be mounted at the same height unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Smoke- or Heat-Detector Spacing:
 - 1. Comply with the "Smoke-Sensing Fire Detectors" section in the "Initiating Devices" chapter in NFPA 72, for smoke-detector spacing.
 - 2. Comply with the "Heat-Sensing Fire Detectors" section in the "Initiating Devices" chapter in NFPA 72, for heat-detector spacing.
 - 3. Smooth ceiling spacing shall not exceed **30 feet (9 m)**.

4. Spacing of detectors for irregular areas, for irregular ceiling construction, and for high ceiling areas shall be determined according to Annex A in NFPA 72.
 5. HVAC: Locate detectors not closer than **36 inches (910 mm)** from air-supply diffuser or return-air opening.
 6. Lighting Fixtures: Locate detectors not closer than **12 inches (300 mm)** from any part of a lighting fixture and not directly above pendant mounted or indirect lighting.
- E. Install a cover on each smoke detector that is not placed in service during construction. Cover shall remain in place except during system testing. Remove cover prior to system turnover.
- F. Duct Smoke Detectors: Comply with NFPA 72 and NFPA 90A. Install sampling tubes so they extend the full width of duct. Tubes more than **36 inches (9100 mm)** long shall be supported at both ends.
1. Do not install smoke detector in duct smoke-detector housing during construction. Install detector only during system testing and prior to system turnover.
- G. Single-Station Smoke Detectors: Where more than one smoke alarm is installed within a dwelling or suite, they shall be connected so that the operation of any smoke alarm causes the alarm in all smoke alarms to sound.
- H. Remote Status and Alarm Indicators: Install in a visible location near each smoke detector, sprinkler water-flow switch, and valve-tamper switch that is not readily visible from normal viewing position.
- I. Audible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install not less than **6 inches (150 mm)** below the ceiling. Install bells and horns on flush-mounted back boxes with the device-operating mechanism concealed behind a grille. Install all devices at the same height unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Visible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install adjacent to each alarm bell or alarm horn and at least **6 inches (150 mm)** below the ceiling. Install all devices at the same height unless otherwise indicated.
- K. Device Location-Indicating Lights: Locate in public space near the device they monitor.
- L. Antenna for Radio Alarm Transmitter: Mount to building structure where indicated. Use mounting arrangement and substrate connection that resists **100-mph (160-km/h)** wind load with a gust factor of 1.3 without damage.

3.3 PATHWAYS

- A. Pathways above recessed ceilings and in nonaccessible locations may be routed exposed.
1. Exposed pathways located less than **96 inches (2440 mm)** above the floor shall be installed in EMT.
- B. Pathways shall be installed in EMT.
- C. Exposed EMT shall be painted red enamel.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. For fire-protection systems related to doors in fire-rated walls and partitions and to doors in smoke partitions, comply with requirements in Section 087100 "Door Hardware." Connect hardware and devices to fire-alarm system.
 - 1. Verify that hardware and devices are listed for use with installed fire-alarm system before making connections.
- B. Make addressable connections with a supervised interface device to the following devices and systems. Install the interface device less than **36 inches (910 mm)** from the device controlled. Make an addressable confirmation connection when such feedback is available at the device or system being controlled.
 - 1. Smoke dampers in air ducts of designated HVAC duct systems.
 - 2. Magnetically held-open doors.
 - 3. Electronically locked doors and access gates.
 - 4. Alarm-initiating connection to activate emergency shutoffs for gas and fuel supplies.
 - 5. Supervisory connections at valve supervisory switches.
 - 6. Supervisory connections at low-air-pressure switch of each dry-pipe sprinkler system.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 270553 "Identification for Communications Systems."
- B. Install framed instructions in a location visible from fire-alarm control unit.

3.6 GROUNDING

- A. Ground fire-alarm control unit and associated circuits; comply with IEEE 1100. Install a ground wire from main service ground to fire-alarm control unit.
- B. Ground shielded cables at the control panel location only. Insulate shield at device location.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field tests shall be witnessed by **Architect**.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform tests and inspections.
- D. Perform the following tests and inspections **with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative**:
 - 1. Visual Inspection: Conduct visual inspection prior to testing.

- a. Inspection shall be based on completed record Drawings and system documentation that is required by the "Completion Documents, Preparation" table in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
 - b. Comply with the "Visual Inspection Frequencies" table in the "Inspection" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72; retain the "Initial/Reacceptance" column and list only the installed components.
2. System Testing: Comply with the "Test Methods" table in the "Testing" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
 3. Test audible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions. Perform the test using a portable sound-level meter complying with Type 2 requirements in ANSI S1.4.
 4. Test audible appliances for the private operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 5. Test visible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 6. Factory-authorized service representative shall prepare the "Fire Alarm System Record of Completion" in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72 and the "Inspection and Testing Form" in the "Records" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
- E. Reacceptance Testing: Perform reacceptance testing to verify the proper operation of added or replaced devices and appliances.
 - F. Fire-alarm system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
 - G. Prepare test and inspection reports.
 - H. Maintenance Test and Inspection: Perform tests and inspections listed for weekly, monthly, quarterly, and semiannual periods. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.
 - I. Annual Test and Inspection: One year after date of Substantial Completion, test fire-alarm system complying with visual and testing inspection requirements in NFPA 72. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.

3.8 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include **12** months' full maintenance by skilled employees of manufacturer's designated service organization. Include preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper operation. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
 1. Include visual inspections according to the "Visual Inspection Frequencies" table in the "Testing" paragraph of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
 2. Perform tests in the "Test Methods" table in the "Testing" paragraph of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
 3. Perform tests per the "Testing Frequencies" table in the "Testing" paragraph of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.

3.9 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

- A. Comply with UL 864.
- B. Technical Support: Beginning at Substantial Completion, service agreement shall include software support for **two** years.
- C. Upgrade Service: At Substantial Completion, update software to latest version. Install and program software upgrades that become available within **two** years from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system and new or revised licenses for using software.
 - 1. Upgrade Notice: At least **30** days to allow Owner to schedule access to system and to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

3.10 DEMONSTRATION

- A. **Train** Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain fire-alarm system.

END OF SECTION 284621.11

SECTION 31 07 00
GENERAL SITE CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Includes But Not Limited to
 - 1. General procedures and requirements for Site Work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS
Not Used

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Site Verification Of Conditions
 - 1. 48 hours minimum prior to performing any work on site, contact Dig Line to arrange for utility location services.
 - 2. Perform minor, investigative excavations to verify location of various existing underground facilities at sufficient locations to assure that no conflict with the proposed work exists and sufficient clearance is available to avoid damage to existing facilities.
 - 3. Perform investigative excavating 5 days minimum in advance of performing any excavation or underground work.
 - 4. Field verify elevations of building pads and subgrade soil prior to beginning any work. Failure to verify the subgrade relieves owner of responsibility for change orders for additional site fill or grading work.
 - 5. Upon discovery of conflicts or problems with existing facilities, notify Architect by phone or fax within 24 hours. Follow telephone or fax notification with letter and diagrams indicating conflict or problem and sufficient measurements and details to evaluate problem.
 - 6. Notify Owner of utilities a minimum of 48 hours prior to work taking place.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Protection
 - 1. Spillage -
 - a. Avoid spillage by covering and securing loads when hauling on or adjacent to public streets or highways.
 - b. Remove spillage and sweep, wash, or otherwise clean project, streets, and highways.
 - 2. Dust Control -
 - a. Take precautions necessary to prevent dust nuisance, both on-site and adjacent to public and private properties.
 - b. Correct or repair damage caused by dust.
 - 3. Erosion Control -
 - a. Take precautions necessary to prevent erosion and transportation of soil downstream, to adjacent properties, and into on-site or off-site drainage systems.
 - b. Develop, install, and maintain an erosion control plan if required by law.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- c. Repair and correct damage caused by erosion.
 4. Existing Plants and Features - Do not damage tops, trunks, and roots of existing trees and shrubs on site which are intended to remain. Do not use heavy equipment within branch spread. Interfering branches may be removed only with permission of Architect. Do not damage other plants and features which are to remain.
 5. Protect site from fire caused by welding, cutting, smoking, or other sources of ignition.
- B. If specified precautions are not taken or corrections and repairs made promptly, Owner may take such steps as may be deemed necessary and deduct costs of such from monies due to Contractor. Such action or lack of action on Owner's part does not relieve Contractor from responsibility for proper protection of the Work.

3.3 REPAIR / RESTORATION

- A. Adjust existing covers, boxes, and vaults to grade.
- B. Replace broken or damaged covers, boxes, and vaults.
- C. Independently confirm size, location, and number of covers, boxes, and vaults which require adjustment.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Notify Architect 48 hours prior to performing excavation or fill work.
- B. If work has been interrupted by weather, scheduling, or other reason, notify Architect 24 hours minimum prior to intended resumption of grading or compacting.
- C. Owner reserves right to require additional testing to re-affirm suitability of completed work including compacted soils which have been exposed to adverse weather conditions.

3.5 UTILITY LOCATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. The Contractor shall at his cost provide GPS coordinates for all utilities found during demolition, marked or not marked, all utility connections, and all new utility lines. Coordinates will contain a Northing, Easting, Elevation, and Description. Coordinate file and cad file will be provided to Engineer prior to substantial completion. Coordinates will be recorded at the following minimum locations:
- B. Storm Drain Lines
 1. Manholes, Top and Flowline
 2. Catch Basins, Top and Flowline
 3. Inlet Boxes, Top and Flowline
 4. Cleanouts, Top and Flowline
- C. Water Lines
 1. Angle Points, Top of Pipe
 2. Valves, Top Nut of Valve & Center Top of Valve Box
 3. Tees, Mid Point Top of Pipe
 4. Elbows, Mid Point Top of Pipe
 5. Connection Points, Top of Pipe
- D. Gas Lines
 1. Angle Points, Top of Pipe
 2. Tees, Mid Point, Top of Pipe

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

3. Elbows, Mid Point Top of Pipe
 4. Valves, Top Nut of Valve & Center Top of Valve Box
 5. Connection Points, Top of Pipe
- E. Sanitary Sewer
1. Manholes, Top and Flowline
 2. Tees, Mid Point Top of Pipe
 3. Wye, Mid Point Top of Pipe
 4. Cleanouts, Top and Flowline
 5. Connection Points, Top of Pipe
- F. Electrical Lines
1. Angle Points, Top of Line
 2. Elbows, Mid Point Top of Conduit
 3. Connection Points, Top of Conduit or Top of Line
- G. Telephone and Data Lines
1. Angle Points, Top of Line
 2. Elbows, Mid Point Top of Conduit
 3. Connection Points, Top of Conduit or Top of Line
- H. Record Drawing Information
1. All Coordinates are to be inserted into a electronic record drawing set of plans and provided to the civil engineer and to the owner.
 2. A paper copy of all coordinates will be provided to the owner and civil engineer on a weekly basis.
 3. Failure to record these data points will result in the contractor excavating, locating, providing the coordinates, backfilling, compacting the trenches at no additional expense to the owner.

END OF SECTION 31 07 00

THIS PAGE LEFT INTENTIONALLY BLANK

SECTION 31 20 00
EARTH MOVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:

1. Preparing sub-grades for slabs on grade, walks, pavements, lawns and grasses, and exterior plants.
2. Excavating and backfilling for buildings and structures.
3. Drainage course for slabs-on-grade.
4. Subbase course for concrete walks and pavements.
5. Subbase and base course for asphalt paving.
6. Subsurface drainage backfill for walls and trenches.
7. Excavating and backfilling for utility trenches.
8. Excavating and backfilling trenches for buried mechanical and electrical utilities and pits for buried utility structures.
9. Cold weather pipe bedding.

- B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Geotechnical Report. Requirements in the Geotechnical Report are incorporated by reference. Refer to the Geotechnical Report for requirements.
2. Division 01 Section Construction Progress Documentation and Photographic Documentation for recording pre-excavation and earthwork progress.
3. Division 01 Section "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for temporary controls, utilities, and support facilities.
4. Division 01 Section "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection" for protecting and trimming trees to remain.
5. Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for granular course if placed over vapor retarder and beneath the slab-on-grade.
6. Divisions 21, 22, 23, 26, 27, and 28 Sections for installing underground mechanical and electrical utilities and buried mechanical and electrical structures.
7. Division 31 Section "Site Clearing" for temporary erosion and sedimentation control measures, site stripping, grubbing, stripping and stockpiling topsoil, and removal of above-grade and below-grade improvements and utilities.
8. Division 32 Section "Turf and Grasses" for finish grading, including preparing and placing topsoil and planting soil for lawns.
9. Division 32 Section "Plants" for planting bed establishment and tree and shrub pit excavation and planting.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Backfill: Soil material or controlled low-strength material used to fill an excavation.
1. Initial Backfill: Backfill placed beside and over pipe in a trench, including haunches

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

2. to support sides of pipe.
 2. Final Backfill: Backfill placed over initial backfill to fill a trench.
- B. Base Course: Course placed between the subbase course and hot-mix asphalt paving.
- C. Bedding Course: Course placed over the excavated subgrade in a trench before laying pipe.
- D. Borrow Soil: Satisfactory soil imported from off-site for use as fill or backfill.
- E. Drainage Course: Course supporting the slab-on-grade that also minimizes upward capillary flow of pore water. Also used for land-drain pipes to collect subsurface water to the collection pipe.
- F. Excavation: Removal of material encountered above subgrade elevations and to lines and dimensions indicated.
1. Authorized Additional Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated lines and dimensions as directed by Architect. Authorized additional excavation and replacement material will be paid for according to Contract provisions for unit prices and changes in the work.
 2. Bulk Excavation: Excavation more than 10-feet in width and more than 30-feet in length.
 3. Unauthorized Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated lines and dimensions without direction by Architect. Unauthorized excavation, as well as remedial work directed by Architect, shall be without additional compensation.
- G. Fill: Soil materials used to raise existing grades.
- H. Rock: Rock material in beds, ledges, un-stratified masses, conglomerate deposits, and boulders of rock material that exceed 1 cubic yard for bulk excavation or 3/4 cubic yard for footing, trench, and pit excavation that cannot be removed by rock excavating equipment equivalent to the following in size and performance ratings, without systematic drilling, ram hammering, ripping, or blasting, when permitted:
1. Excavation of Footings, Trenches, and Pits: Late-model, track-mounted hydraulic excavator; equipped with a 42-inch wide, maximum, short-tip-radius rock bucket; rated at not less than 138-hp flywheel power with bucket-curling force of not less than 28,090-lbf and stick-crowd force of not less than 18,650-lbf; measured according to SAE J-1179.
 2. Bulk Excavation: Late-model, track-mounted loader; rated at not less than 210-hp flywheel power and developing a minimum of 48,510-lbf breakout force with a general-purpose bare bucket; measured according to SAE J-732.
- I. Structures: Buildings, footings, foundations, retaining walls, slabs, tanks, curbs, mechanical and electrical appurtenances, or other man-made stationary features constructed above or below the ground surface.
- J. Subbase Course: Course placed between the subgrade and base course for hot-mix asphalt pavement, or course placed between the subgrade and a cement concrete pavement or a cement concrete or hot-mix asphalt walk.
- K. Subgrade: Surface or elevation remaining after completing excavation, or top surface of a fill or backfill immediately below subbase, drainage fill, or topsoil materials.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- L. Utilities: On-site underground pipes, conduits, ducts, and cables, as well as underground services within buildings.
- M. Cold Weather: Cold weather, temperatures less than 32 degrees and falling.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Each type of plastic warning tape.
 - 2. Geotextile.
 - 3. Controlled low-strength material, including design mixture.
- B. Samples: 12-by-12-inch Sample of sub-drainage and other geotextiles used.
- C. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results for compliance of the following with requirements indicated:
 - 1. Classification according to ASTM D 2487 of each on-site and borrow soil material proposed for fill and backfill.
 - 2. Laboratory compaction curve according to ASTM D698 or ASTM D1557 for each on-site and borrow soil material proposed for fill and backfill.
- D. Blasting Plan: Not used.
- E. Seismic Survey Report: Not used.
- F. Pre-excavation Photographs or Videotape: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction and site improvements, including finish surfaces that might be misconstrued as damage caused by earthwork operations. Submit before earthwork begins.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Blasting: Not Used
- B. Seismic Survey Agency: Not Used
- C. Geotechnical Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM E 329 to conduct soil materials and rock-definition testing, as documented according to ASTM D 3740 and ASTM E 548.
- D. Pre-excavation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted in writing by Architect and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated.
 - 1. Notify Architect not less than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
 - 2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Architect's written permission.
 - 3. Contact utility-locator service for area where Project is located before excavating.
- B. Demolish and completely remove from site existing underground utilities indicated to be

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

removed. Coordinate with utility companies to shut off services if lines are active.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOIL MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide borrow soil materials when sufficient satisfactory soil materials are not available from excavations.
- B. Satisfactory Soils: ASTM D 2487 Soil Classification Groups GW, GP, GM, SW, SP, and SM or AASHTO M 145 Soil Classification Groups A-1, A-2-4, A-2-5, and A-3, or a combination of these groups, well graded; free of rock or gravel larger than 3-inches in any dimension, debris, waste, frozen materials, vegetation, and other deleterious matter. Native rock crushed to meet the above requirements and free from significant porosity may also be used as satisfactory soils.
- C. Unsatisfactory Soils: Soil Classification Groups GC, SC, CL, ML, OL, CH, MH, OH, and PT according to ASTM D 2487 or A-2-6, A-2-7, A-4, A-5, A-6, and A-7 according to AASHTO M 145, or a combination of these groups.
1. Unsatisfactory soils also include satisfactory soils not maintained within 2 percent of optimum moisture content at time of compaction.
- D. Base Course: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; with at least 95 percent passing a 3/4-inch sieve and not more than 11 percent passing a No. 200 sieve and meeting the following gradation limits:
1. Gradation Table Base
- | | |
|------|--------|
| 1" | 100% |
| 1/2" | 79-91% |
| #4 | 49-61% |
| #16 | 27-35% |
| #200 | 7-11% |
- E. Engineered Fill: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; with at least 88 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and not more than 8 percent passing a No. 200 sieve and meeting the following gradation limits.
1. Gradation Table
- | | |
|------|--------|
| 2.5" | 100% |
| 1.5" | 88-96% |
| 3/4" | 80-88% |
| 1/2" | 68-84% |
| #4 | 60-78% |
| #16 | 35-54% |
| #200 | 4-8% |
- F. Bedding Course: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; except with 100 percent passing a 3/4-inch sieve and not more than 8 percent passing a No. 200 sieve and meeting the following gradation limits.
1. Gradation Table Bedding Course:
- | | |
|------|--------|
| 3/4" | 100% |
| 3/8" | 78-92% |

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

#4	55-67%
#16	28-38%
#200	4-8%

- G. Drainage Course: Narrowly graded mixture of washed or crushed stone, or crushed or uncrushed gravel; ASTM D 448; coarse-aggregate grading Size 57; with 100 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and 0 to 5 percent passing a No. 8 sieve.
- H. Subbase Material: Use Engineered Fill.
- I. Structural Fill: Use Engineered Fill.
- J. Filter Material: Narrowly graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, or crushed stone and natural sand; ASTM D 448; coarse-aggregate grading Size 67; with 100 percent passing a 1- inch sieve and 0 to 5 percent passing a No. 4 sieve.
- K. Sand: ASTM C 33; fine aggregate, natural, or manufactured sand.
- L. Impervious Fill: Clayey gravel and sand mixture capable of compacting to a dense state.
- M. Cold Weather Pipe Bedding: Use Drainage Course Material.

2.2 GEOTEXTILES

- A. Subsurface Drainage Geotextile: Non-woven needle-punched geotextile, manufactured for subsurface drainage applications, made from polyolefins or polyesters; with elongation greater than 50 percent; complying with AASHTO M 288 and the following, measured per test methods referenced:
 - 1. Survivability: Class 2; AASHTO M 288.
 - 2. Grab Tensile Strength: 157 lbf; ASTM D 4632.
 - 3. Sewn Seam Strength: 142 lbf; ASTM D 4632.
 - 4. Tear Strength: 56 lbf; ASTM D 4533.
 - 5. Puncture Strength: 56 lbf; ASTM D 4833.
 - 6. Apparent Opening Size: No. 60 sieve, maximum; ASTM D 4751.
 - 7. Permittivity: 0.2 per second, minimum; ASTM D 4491.
 - 8. UV Stability: 50 percent after 500 hours' exposure; ASTM D 4355.
- B. Separation Geotextile: Woven geotextile fabric, manufactured for separation applications, made from polyolefins or polyesters; with elongation less than 50 percent; complying with AASHTO M 288 and the following, measured per test methods referenced:
 - 1. Survivability: Class 2; AASHTO M 288.
 - 2. Grab Tensile Strength: 247 lbf; ASTM D 4632.
 - 3. Sewn Seam Strength: 222 lbf; ASTM D 4632.
 - 4. Tear Strength: 90 lbf; ASTM D 4533.
 - 5. Puncture Strength: 90 lbf; ASTM D 4833.
 - 6. Apparent Opening Size: No. 60 sieve, maximum; ASTM D 4751.
 - 7. Permittivity: 0.02 per second, minimum; ASTM D 4491.
 - 8. UV Stability: 50 percent after 500 hours' exposure; ASTM D 4355.

2.3 CONTROLLED LOW-STRENGTH MATERIAL

- A. Controlled Low-Strength Material: Low-density, self-compacting, flowable concrete

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

material as follows:

1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type II.
 2. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C or F.
 3. Normal-Weight Aggregate: ASTM C 33, 3/4-inch to 3/8-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.
 4. Foaming Agent: ASTM C 869.
 5. Water: ASTM C 94/C 94M.
 6. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.
- B. Produce low-density, controlled low-strength material with the following physical properties:
1. As-Cast Unit Weight: 30 to 36 lb/cu. ft. at point of placement, when tested according to ASTM C 138/C 138M.
 2. Compressive Strength: 80 psi, when tested according to ASTM C 495.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant polyethylene film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, 6 inches wide and 4 mils thick, continuously inscribed with a description of the utility; colored as follows:
- B. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant polyethylene film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of 6 inches wide and 4 mils thick, continuously inscribed with a description of the utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches deep; colored as follows when required by utility purveyor:
1. Red: Electric.
 2. Yellow: Gas, oil, steam, and dangerous materials.
 3. Orange: Telephone and other communications.
 4. Blue: Water systems.
 5. Green: Sewer systems.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by earthwork operations.
- B. Preparation of subgrade for earthwork operations including removal of vegetation, topsoil, debris, obstructions, and deleterious materials from ground surface is specified in Division 31 Section "Site Clearing."
- C. Protect and maintain erosion and sedimentation controls, which are specified in Division 31 Section "Site Clearing," during earthwork operations.
- D. Provide protective insulating materials to protect subgrades and foundation soils against freezing temperatures or frost.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

3.2 DEWATERING

- A. Prevent surface water and ground water from entering excavations, from ponding on prepared subgrades, and from flooding Project site and surrounding area.
- B. Protect subgrades from softening, undermining, washout, and damage by rain or water accumulation.
 - 1. Reroute surface water runoff away from excavated areas. Do not allow water to accumulate in excavations. Do not use excavated trenches as temporary drainage ditches.
 - 2. Install a dewatering system to keep subgrades dry and convey ground water away from excavations. Maintain until dewatering is no longer required.

3.3 EXPLOSIVES

- A. Explosives: Not Used

3.4 EXCAVATION, GENERAL

- A. Unclassified Excavation: Excavate to subgrade elevations regardless of the character of surface and subsurface conditions encountered. Unclassified excavated materials may include rock, soil materials, and obstructions. No changes in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time will be authorized for rock excavation or removal of obstructions.
 - 1. If excavated materials intended for fill and backfill include unsatisfactory soil materials and rock, replace with satisfactory soil materials.
 - 2. Remove rock to lines and grades indicated to permit installation of permanent construction without exceeding the following dimensions:
 - a. 24 inches outside of concrete forms other than at footings.
 - b. 12 inches outside of concrete forms at footings.
 - c. 6 inches outside of minimum required dimensions of concrete cast against grade.
 - d. Outside dimensions of concrete walls indicated to be cast against rock without forms or exterior waterproofing treatments.
 - e. 6 inches beneath bottom of concrete slabs on grade.
 - f. 6 inches beneath pipe in trenches, and the greater of 24 inches wider than pipe or 42 inches wide.

3.5 EXCAVATION FOR STRUCTURES

- A. Excavate to indicated elevations and dimensions within a tolerance of plus or minus 1 inch. If applicable, extend excavations a sufficient distance from structures for placing and removing concrete formwork, for installing services and other construction, and for inspections.
 - 1. Excavations for Footings and Foundations: Do not disturb bottom of excavation. Excavate by hand to final grade just before placing concrete reinforcement. Trim bottoms to required lines and grades to leave solid base to receive other work.
 - 2. Pile Foundations: Stop excavations 6 to 12 inches above bottom of pile cap before piles are placed. After piles have been driven, remove loose and displaced

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

3. material. Excavate to final grade, leaving solid base to receive concrete pile caps.
3. Excavation for Underground Tanks, Basins, and Mechanical or Electrical Utility Structures: Excavate to elevations and dimensions indicated within a tolerance of plus or minus 1 inch. Do not disturb bottom of excavations intended as bearing surfaces.

3.6 EXCAVATION FOR WALKS AND PAVEMENTS

- A. Excavate surfaces under walks and pavements to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades.

3.7 EXCAVATION FOR UTILITY TRENCHES

- A. Excavate trenches to indicated gradients, lines, depths, and elevations.
 1. Beyond building perimeter, excavate trenches to allow installation of top of pipe below frost line.
- B. Excavate trenches to uniform widths to provide the following clearance on each side of pipe or conduit. Excavate trench walls vertically from trench bottom to 12 inches higher than top of pipe or conduit, unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Clearance: 12 inches minimum each side of pipe or conduit.
 2. Refer to project plans for depths and clearance distances.
- C. Trench Bottoms: Excavate and shape trench bottoms to provide uniform bearing and support of pipes and conduit. Shape subgrade to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits. Remove projecting stones and sharp objects along trench subgrade.
 1. For pipes and conduit less than 6 inches in nominal diameter and flat-bottomed, multiple-duct conduit units, hand-excavate trench bottoms and support pipe and conduit on an undisturbed subgrade.
 2. For pipes and conduit 6 inches or larger in nominal diameter, shape bottom of trench to support bottom 90 degrees of pipe circumference. Fill depressions with tamped sand backfill.
 3. Excavate trenches 6 inches deeper than elevation required in rock or other unyielding bearing material to allow for bedding course.

3.8 SUBGRADE INSPECTION

- A. Notify Architect when excavations have reached required subgrade.
- B. If Architect determines that unsatisfactory soil is present, continue excavation and replace with compacted backfill or fill material as directed.
- C. Proof-roll subgrade below the building slabs and pavements with heavy pneumatic-tired equipment to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades.
 1. Completely proof-roll subgrade in one direction, repeating proof-rolling in direction perpendicular to first direction. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph.
 2. Proof-roll with a loaded 10-wheel, tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

3. 15 tons or vehicle with similar unit axel weight.
 3. Excavate soft spots, unsatisfactory soils, and areas of excessive pumping or rutting, as determined by Architect, and replace with compacted backfill or fill as directed.
- D. Authorized additional excavation and replacement material will be paid for according to Contract provisions for unit prices and changes in the Work.
- E. Reconstruct subgrades damaged by freezing temperatures, frost, rain, accumulated water, or construction activities, as directed by Architect, without additional compensation.

3.9 UNAUTHORIZED EXCAVATION

- A. Fill unauthorized excavation under foundations or wall footings by extending bottom elevation of concrete foundation or footing to excavation bottom, without altering top elevation. Lean concrete fill, with 28-day compressive strength of 2500 psi, may be used when approved by Architect.
1. Fill unauthorized excavations under other construction or utility pipe as directed by Architect.

3.10 STORAGE OF SOIL MATERIALS

- A. Stockpile borrow soil materials and excavated satisfactory soil materials without intermixing. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.
1. Stockpile soil materials away from edge of excavations. Do not store within drip line of remaining trees.

3.11 BACKFILL

- A. Place and compact backfill in excavations promptly, but not before completing the following:
1. Construction below finish grade including, where applicable, sub-drainage, damp proofing, waterproofing, and perimeter insulation.
 2. Surveying locations of underground utilities for Record Documents.
 3. Testing and inspecting underground utilities.
 4. Removing concrete formwork.
 5. Removing trash and debris.
 6. Removing temporary shoring and bracing, and sheeting.
 7. Installing permanent or temporary horizontal bracing on horizontally supported walls.
- B. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

3.12 UTILITY TRENCH BACKFILL

- A. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice. During freezing temperatures, use drainage course for pipe bedding, placed and vibrated to a uniform density, do not add water to aid in cold weather pipe bedding. Backfill remainder of trench and fill areas with engineered fill, use minimal amount of water to aid in compaction. Do not let

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

engineered fill sit with water and freeze prior to compacting.

- B. Place and compact bedding course on trench bottoms and where indicated. Shape bedding course to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits.
- C. Backfill trenches excavated under footings and within 18 inches of bottom of footings with satisfactory soil; fill with concrete to elevation of bottom of footings. Concrete is specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- D. Provide 4-inch- thick, concrete-base slab support for piping or conduit less than 12 inches below surface of roadways. After installing and testing, completely encase piping or conduit in a minimum of 4 inches of concrete before backfilling or placing roadway subbase.
- E. Place and compact initial backfill of subbase material or satisfactory soil, free of particles larger than 1 inch in any dimension, to a height of 12 inches over the utility pipe or conduit.
 - 1. Carefully compact initial backfill under pipe haunches and compact evenly up on both sides and along the full length of utility piping or conduit to avoid damage or displacement of piping or conduit. Coordinate backfilling with utilities testing.
- F. Controlled Low-Strength Material: Place initial backfill of controlled low-strength material to a height of 12 inches over the utility pipe or conduit.
- G. Backfill voids with satisfactory soil while installing and removing shoring and bracing.
- H. Place and compact final backfill of satisfactory soil to final subgrade elevation.
- I. Controlled Low-Strength Material: Place final backfill of controlled low-strength material to final subgrade elevation.
- J. Install warning tape directly above utilities, 12 inches below finished grade, except 6 inches below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

3.13 SOIL FILL

- A. Plow, scarify, bench, or break up sloped surfaces steeper than 1 vertical to 4 horizontal so fill material will bond with existing material.
- B. Place and compact fill material in layers to required elevations as follows:
 - 1. Under grass and planted areas, use satisfactory soil material.
 - 2. Under walks and pavements, use engineered fill.
 - 3. Under steps and ramps, use engineered fill.
 - 4. Under building slabs, use engineered fill.
 - 5. Under footings and foundations, use engineered fill.
- C. Place soil fill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

3.14 SOIL MOISTURE CONTROL

- A. Uniformly moisten or aerate subgrade and each subsequent fill or backfill soil layer before compaction to within 2 percent of optimum moisture content.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

1. Do not place backfill or fill soil material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost or ice.
2. Remove and replace, or scarify and air dry otherwise satisfactory soil material that exceeds optimum moisture content by 2 percent and is too wet to compact to specified dry unit weight.

3.15 COMPACTION OF SOIL BACKFILLS AND FILLS

- A. Place backfill and fill soil materials in layers not more than 12-inches in loose depth for material compacted by heavy compaction equipment, and not more than 4 inches in loose depth for material compacted by hand-operated tampers. Reduce loose depths as needed to achieve required compactions.
- B. Place backfill and fill soil materials evenly on all sides of structures to required elevations, and uniformly along the full length of each structure.
- C. Compact soil materials to not less than the following percentages of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698 or ASTM D 1557:
 1. Under structures, building slabs, steps, and pavements, scarify and recompact top 12 inches of existing subgrade and each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 95 percent.
 2. Under walkways, scarify and recompact top 6 inches below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 95 percent.
 3. Under lawn or unpaved areas, scarify and recompact top 6 inches below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 85 percent.
 4. For utility trenches, compact each layer of initial and final backfill soil material at 85 percent if in landscaping areas or 95 percent if under structures, pavements, or walks.

3.16 GRADING

- A. General: Uniformly grade areas to a smooth surface, free of irregular surface changes. Comply with compaction requirements and grade to cross sections, lines, and elevations indicated.
 1. Provide a smooth transition between adjacent existing grades and new grades.
 2. Cut out soft spots, fill low spots, and trim high spots to comply with required surface tolerances.
- B. Site Grading: Slope grades to direct water away from buildings and to prevent ponding. Finish subgrades to required elevations within the following tolerances:
 1. Lawn or Unpaved Areas: Plus or minus 1 inch.
 2. Walks: Plus or minus 1 inch
 3. Pavements: Plus or minus 1/2 inch
- C. Grading inside Building Lines: Finish subgrade to a tolerance of 1/2 inch when tested with a 10-foot straightedge.

3.17 SUBSURFACE DRAINAGE

- A. Subdrainage Pipe: Specified in Division 33 Section "Subdrainage."

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- B. Subsurface Drain: Place subsurface drainage geotextile around perimeter of subdrainage trench. Place a 6-inch course of filter material on subsurface drainage geotextile to support subdrainage pipe. Encase subdrainage pipe in a minimum of 12 inches of filter material, placed in compacted layers 6 inches thick, and wrap in subsurface drainage geotextile, overlapping sides and ends at least 6 inches.
 - 1. Compact each filter material layer to 85 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698 with a minimum of two passes of a plate-type vibratory compactor.
- C. Drainage Backfill: Place and compact filter material over subsurface drain, in width indicated, to within 12 inches of final subgrade, in compacted layers 6 inches thick. Overlay drainage backfill with 1 layer of subsurface drainage geotextile, overlapping sides and ends at least 6 inches.
 - 1. Compact each filter material layer to 85 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698 with a minimum of two passes of a plate-type vibratory compactor].
 - 2. Place and compact impervious fill over drainage backfill in 6-inch- thick compacted layers to final subgrade.

3.18 SUBBASE AND BASE COURSES

- A. Place subbase and base course on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- B. On prepared subgrade, place subbase and base course under pavements and walks as follows:
 - 1. Install separation geotextile on prepared subgrade according to manufacturer's written instructions, overlapping sides and ends where called for on details and on plans.
 - 2. Place base course material over subbase course under hot-mix asphalt pavement.
 - 3. Shape subbase and base course to required crown elevations and cross-slope grades.
 - 4. Place subbase and base course 6 inches or less in compacted thickness in a single layer.
 - 5. Place subbase and base course that exceeds 6 inches in compacted thickness in layers of equal thickness, with no compacted layer more than 6 inches thick or less than 3 inches thick.
 - 6. Compact subbase and base course at optimum moisture content to required grades, lines, cross sections, and thickness to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698 or ASTM D 1557.
- C. Pavement Shoulders: Place shoulders along edges of subbase and base course to prevent lateral movement. Construct shoulders, at least 12 inches wide, of satisfactory soil materials and compact simultaneously with each subbase and base layer to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698 or ASTM D 1557 where called for on project plans.

3.19 DRAINAGE COURSE

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- A. Place drainage course on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- B. On prepared subgrade, place and compact drainage course under cast-in-place concrete slabs-on-grade as follows:
 - 1. Install subdrainage geotextile on prepared subgrade according to manufacturer's written instructions, overlapping sides and ends.
 - 2. Place drainage course 6 inches or less in compacted thickness in a single layer.
 - 3. Place drainage course that exceeds 6 inches in compacted thickness in layers of equal thickness, with no compacted layer more than 6 inches thick or less than 3 inches thick.
 - 4. Compact each layer of drainage course to required cross sections and thicknesses to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.

3.20 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent geotechnical engineering testing agency to perform field quality-control testing.
- B. Allow testing agency to inspect and test subgrades and each fill or backfill layer. Proceed with subsequent earthwork only after test results for previously completed work comply with requirements.
- C. Footing Subgrade: At footing subgrades, at least one test of each soil stratum will be performed to verify design bearing capacities. Subsequent verification and approval of other footing subgrades may be based on a visual comparison of subgrade with tested subgrade when approved by Architect.
- D. Testing agency will test compaction of soils in place according to ASTM D 1556, ASTM D 2167, ASTM D 2922, and ASTM D 2937, as applicable. Tests will be performed at the following locations and frequencies:
 - 1. Paved and Building Slab Areas: At subgrade and at each compacted fill and backfill layer, at least 1 test for every 2000 sq. ft. or less of paved area or building slab, but in no case fewer than 3 tests.
 - 2. Foundation Wall Backfill: At each compacted backfill layer, at least 1 test for each 100 feet or less of wall length, but no fewer than 2 tests.
 - 3. Trench Backfill: At each compacted initial and final backfill layer, at least 1 test for each 150 feet or less of trench length, but no fewer than 2 tests.
- E. When testing agency reports that subgrades, fills, or backfills have not achieved degree of compaction specified, scarify and moisten or aerate, or remove and replace soil to depth required; recompact and retest until specified compaction is obtained.

3.21 PROTECTION

- A. Protecting Graded Areas: Protect newly graded areas from traffic, freezing, and erosion. Keep free of trash and debris.
- B. Repair and reestablish grades to specified tolerances where completed or partially completed surfaces become eroded, rutted, settled, or where they lose compaction due to subsequent construction operations or weather conditions.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

1. Scarify or remove and replace soil material to depth as directed by Architect; reshape and recompact.
- C. Where settling occurs before Project correction period elapses, remove finished surfacing, backfill with additional soil material, compact, and reconstruct surfacing.
1. Restore appearance, quality, and condition of finished surfacing to match adjacent work, and eliminate evidence of restoration to greatest extent possible.

3.22 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS

- A. Disposal: Remove surplus satisfactory soil and waste material, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of it off Owner's property.
- B. Disposal: Transport surplus satisfactory soil to designated storage areas on Owner's property. Stockpile or spread soil as directed by Architect.
1. Remove waste material, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of it off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 31 20 00

SECTION 32 12 16

ASPHALT PAVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Hot-mix asphalt patching.
 - 2. Hot-mix asphalt paving.
 - 3. Asphalt Milling
 - 4. Asphalt surface treatments.
 - 5. Pavement-marking paint.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Division 02 Section "Structure Demolition" for demolition, removal, and recycling of existing asphalt pavements, and for geotextiles that are not embedded within courses of asphalt paving.
 - 2. Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for aggregate subbase and base courses and for aggregate pavement shoulders.
 - 3. Division 32 Sections for other paving installed as part of crosswalks in asphalt pavement areas.
 - 4. Division 32 Section "Concrete Paving Joint Sealants" for joint sealants and fillers at paving terminations.

1.3 UNIT PRICES

- A. Work of this Section is affected by unit prices and as defined in Division 1.

1.4 DEFINITION

- A. Hot-Mix Asphalt Paving Terminology: Refer to ASTM D 8 for definitions of terms.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include technical data and tested physical and performance properties.
 - 1. Job-Mix Designs: Certification, by authorities having jurisdiction, of approval of each job mix proposed for the Work.
 - 2. Job-Mix Designs: For each job mix proposed for the Work.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate pavement markings, lane separations, and defined parking

spaces. Indicate, with international symbol of accessibility, spaces allocated for people with disabilities.

- C. Samples: For each paving fabric, 12 by 12 inches minimum if used.
- D. Samples for Verification: For the following products, in manufacturer's standard sizes unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Each paving fabric, 12 by 12 inches minimum.
 - 2. Each type and color of preformed traffic-calming device.
 - 3. Each pattern and color of imprinted asphalt and precut marking material.
- E. Qualification Data: For qualified manufacturer and Installer.
- F. Material Certificates: For each paving material, from manufacturer.
- G. Material Test Reports: For each paving material.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Provide copy of manufacturer's experience for verification of qualifications.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Imprinted-asphalt manufacturer's authorized installer who is trained and approved for installation of imprinted asphalt required for this Project.
- C. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM D 3666 for testing indicated.
- D. Milling Machine: Equipped to prevent air pollution and with system to control slope of mill cut.
- E. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with materials, workmanship, and other applicable requirements of city and DOT for asphalt paving work.
- 1. Measurement and payment provisions and safety program submittals included in standard specifications do not apply to this Section.
- F. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site
 - 1. Review methods and procedures related to hot-mix asphalt paving including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Review proposed sources of paving materials, including capabilities and location of plant that will manufacture hot-mix asphalt.
 - b. Review condition of subgrade and preparatory work.
 - c. Review requirements for protecting paving work, including restriction of traffic during installation period and for remainder of construction period.
 - d. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - e. Review milling process, depth, direction of cut, and depths.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver pavement-marking materials to Project site in original packages with seals

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

unbroken and bearing manufacturer's labels containing brand name and type of material, date of manufacture, and directions for storage.

- B. Store pavement-marking materials in a clean, dry, protected location within temperature range required by manufacturer. Protect stored materials from direct sunlight.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not apply asphalt materials if subgrade is wet or excessively damp, if rain is imminent or expected before time required for adequate cure, or if the following conditions are not met:
 - 1. Prime Coat: Minimum surface temperature of 60 deg F. Not used if paving takes place within 48 hours of final grading and final compaction of road base.
 - 2. Tack Coat: Minimum surface temperature of 60 deg F.
 - 3. Slurry Coat: Comply with weather limitations in ASTM D 3910.
 - 4. Asphalt Base Course: Minimum surface temperature of 40 deg F and rising at time of placement.
 - 5. Asphalt Surface Course: Minimum surface temperature of 60 deg F at time of placement.
 - 6. Minimum temperature for crack sealing is 40 degrees F.
 - 7. Do not proceed with thin asphalt slurry coat until crack sealing has cured for at least 7 days.
- B. Pavement-Marking Paint: Proceed with pavement marking only on clean, dry surfaces and at a minimum ambient or surface temperature of 40 deg F for oil-based materials 55 deg F for water-based materials, and not exceeding 95 deg F.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 AGGREGATES

- A. General: Use materials and gradations that have performed satisfactorily in previous installations.
- B. Coarse Aggregate: ASTM D 692, sound; angular crushed stone, crushed gravel, or cured, crushed blast-furnace slag.
- C. Fine Aggregate: ASTM D 1073 or AASHTO M 29, sharp-edged natural sand or sand prepared from stone, gravel, cured blast-furnace slag, or combinations thereof.
 - 1. For hot-mix asphalt, limit natural sand to a maximum of 20 percent by weight of the total aggregate mass.
- D. Mineral Filler: ASTM D 242 or AASHTO M 17, rock or slag dust, hydraulic cement, or other inert material.

2.2 ASPHALT MATERIALS

- A. Asphalt Cement: AC 20 per ASTM D 3381 for viscosity-graded material except use ductility at 39.2 deg. F., >5 for AC 20 and delete the loss on heating requirement on residue from "Thin-Film Oven Test".
- B. Prime Coat: Not required if paving is done within 48 hours of final compaction.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- C. Tack Coat: ASTM D 977 or AASHTO M 140 emulsified asphalt, or ASTM D 2397 or AASHTO M 208 cationic emulsified asphalt, slow setting, diluted in water, of suitable grade and consistency for application.
- D. Crack seal: Hot-applied Thermoplastic Materials, Asphalt Rubber ASTM D 5078 (Sealing), Rubberized Asphalt ASTM D 1190 and ASTM D 3405 (Sealing), Low Modulus Rubberized Asphalt ASTM 3405 or ASTM D 5078 except softening point 85 degrees c and resistance 30% at 25 degrees C (Sealing), Asphalt Cement ASTM D 3381 (Filling), Mineral Filled Asphalt Cement ASTM D 3381 (Filling), and Fiberized Asphalt Cement ASTM D 3381 (Filling).
- E. Slurry Seal: ASTM D 3628 the residual asphalt shall constitute at least 60% of the emulsion by weight and the Saybolt Furol viscosity of the emulsion at 77 degrees F ASTM D 2170 shall not exceed 50 seconds.
- F. Water: Potable.
- G. Undersealing Asphalt: ASTM D 3141, pumping consistency.
- H. RAP: Rejuvenated Asphalt Pavement, limit RAP in the asphalt mix to not more than 15% of the total asphalt by weight.

2.3 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. Herbicide: Commercial chemical for weed control, registered by the EPA. Provide in granular, liquid, or wettable powder form.
- B. Sand: ASTM D 1073 or AASHTO M 29, Grade Nos. 2 or 3.
- C. Paving Geotextile: AASHTO M 288, nonwoven polypropylene; resistant to chemical attack, rot, and mildew; and specifically designed for paving applications.
- D. Pavement-Marking Paint: Alkyd-resin type, lead and chromate free, ready mixed, complying with AASHTO M 248, Type N, Type F, and Type S; colors complying with FS TT-P-1952.
 - 1. Color: White, Yellow, Blue, and as indicated.
- E. Pavement-Marking Paint: MPI #32 Alkyd Traffic Marking Paint.
 - 1. Color: White, Yellow, Blue, and As indicated.
- F. Pavement-Marking Paint: Latex, waterborne emulsion, lead and chromate free, ready mixed, complying with FS TT-P-1952, Type II, with drying time of less than 45 minutes.
 - 1. Color: White, Yellow, Blue, and as indicated.
- G. Pavement-Marking Paint: MPI #97 Latex Traffic Marking Paint.
 - 1. Color: White, Yellow, Blue, and As indicated.
- H. Glass Beads: AASHTO M 247, Type 1.

2.4 MIXES

- A. Hot-Mix Asphalt: Dense, hot-laid, hot-mix asphalt plant mixes approved by authorities

having jurisdiction; designed according to procedures in AI MS-2, "Mix Design Methods for Asphalt Concrete and Other Hot-Mix Types"; and complying with the following requirements:

1. Provide mixes with a history of satisfactory performance in geographical area where Project is located. Provide mix with the following characteristics:
 - a. Number of compaction blows each end of specimen: 50.
 - b. Satiability based on ASTM D5581: 1200 minimum.
 - c. Flow in 0.01-inch units per ASTM D5581: 10-18.
 - d. Voids in mineral aggregate VMA: 14.
 - e. The percentage of bituminous material by weight added to aggregate will be between 4% and 7% of the weight of the bituminous mixture.
 - f. Limit RAP to no more than 15% of the asphalt material by weight.

2. Surface Course: 3-inch minimum compacted thickness and as indicated on the drawings with aggregate meeting the following gradation table. Note, temporary paving will have less asphalt paving thickness.

1/2 inch	100
No. 4	60-80
No. 16	28-42
No. 50	11-23
No. 200	3-7

3. Asphalt Overlay Course: 1.5-inch minimum compacted thickness and as indicated on the drawings with aggregate meeting the following gradation table.

1/2 inch	100
No. 4	60-80
No. 16	28-42
No. 50	11-23
No. 200	3-7

- B. Emulsified-Asphalt Slurry: Stone slag or other high quality particle or combination of materials with the following properties:

1. Not less than 80% crushed materials
2. Greater than 80% of particles by weight with at least 1 mechanically fractured faces or clean angular faces.
3. Less than 35% wear of aggregate retained on the N0. 8 sieve, ASTM C 131.
4. Polishing greater than 38, ASTM D 3319.
5. Water Absorption less than 1.25%
6. Gradation as follows:

No. 4	100
No. 8	90-100
No. 16	65-90
No. 30	40-65
No. 50	25-42
No. 100	15-30
No. 200	10-20

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that subgrade is dry and in suitable condition to begin paving.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- B. Verify that the road base has been properly compacted and is at the correct line, grade, and slope.
- C. Verify that the road base thickness is as indicated on the project plans.
- D. Verify that sufficient depth at curbs, walks, lips and other vertical edges is available to place the required thickness of compacted asphalt.
- E. Proof-roll subgrade below pavements with heavy pneumatic-tired equipment to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades.
 - 1. Completely proof-roll subgrade in one direction. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph.
 - 2. Proof roll with a loaded 10-wheel, tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than 15 tons or other vehicle with similar axel weight.
 - 3. Excavate soft spots, unsatisfactory soils, and areas of excessive pumping or rutting, as determined by Architect, and replace with compacted backfill or fill as directed.
- F. Proceed with paving only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- G. Verify that utilities, traffic loop detectors, and other items requiring a cut and installation beneath the asphalt surface have been completed and that asphalt surface has been repaired flush with adjacent asphalt prior to beginning installation of imprinted asphalt.

3.2 PATCHING

- A. Hot-Mix Asphalt Pavement: Saw cut perimeter of patch and excavate existing pavement section to sound base. Excavate rectangular or trapezoidal patches, extending 12 inches into adjacent sound pavement, unless otherwise indicated. Cut excavation faces vertically. Remove excavated material. Recompact existing unbound-aggregate base course to form new subgrade.
- B. Portland Cement Concrete Pavement: Break cracked slabs and roll as required to reseat concrete pieces firmly.
 - 1. Pump hot undersealing asphalt under rocking slab until slab is stabilized or, if necessary, crack slab into pieces and roll to reseat pieces firmly.
 - 2. Remove disintegrated or badly cracked pavement. Excavate rectangular or trapezoidal patches, extending into adjacent sound pavement, unless otherwise indicated. Cut excavation faces vertically. Recompact existing unbound-aggregate base course to form new subgrade.
- C. Tack Coat: Apply uniformly to vertical surfaces abutting or projecting into new, hot-mix asphalt paving at a rate of 0.05 to 0.15 gal./sq. yd.
 - 1. Allow tack coat to cure undisturbed before applying hot-mix asphalt paving.
 - 2. Avoid smearing or staining adjoining surfaces, appurtenances, and surroundings. Remove spillages and clean affected surfaces.
- D. Patching: Fill excavated pavements with hot-mix asphalt base mix for full thickness of patch and, while still hot, compact flush with adjacent surface.

3.3 REPAIRS

- A. Leveling Course: Install and compact leveling course consisting of hot-mix asphalt surface

course to level sags and fill depressions deeper than 1 inch in existing pavements.

1. Install leveling wedges in compacted lifts not exceeding 3 inches thick.
- B. Crack and Joint Filling: Remove existing joint filler material from cracks or joints to a depth of 1/4 inch.
1. Clean cracks and joints in existing hot-mix asphalt pavement.
 2. Use emulsified-asphalt slurry to seal cracks and joints less than 1/4 inch wide. Fill flush with surface of existing pavement and remove excess.
 3. Use hot-applied joint sealant to seal cracks and joints more than 1/4 inch wide. Fill flush with surface of existing pavement and remove excess.

3.4 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. General: Immediately before placing asphalt materials, remove loose and deleterious material from substrate surfaces. Ensure that prepared subgrade is ready to receive paving.
- B. Herbicide Treatment: Not used.
- C. Prime Coat: Not use if paving takes place not more than 48 hours after final compaction and grading of road bases. If paving must be delayed significantly, re-grade and re-compact road base or apply Prime Coat. Apply uniformly over surface of compacted unbound-aggregate base course at a rate of 0.15 to 0.50 gal./sq. yd. Apply enough material to penetrate and seal but not flood surface. Allow prime coat to cure.
1. If prime coat is not entirely absorbed within 24 hours after application, spread sand over surface to blot excess asphalt. Use enough sand to prevent pickup under traffic. Remove loose sand by sweeping before pavement is placed and after volatiles have evaporated.
 2. Protect primed substrate from damage until ready to receive paving.
- D. Tack Coat: Apply uniformly to surfaces of existing pavement at a rate of 0.05 to 0.15 gal./sq./yd.
1. Allow tack coat to cure undisturbed before applying hot-mix asphalt paving.
 2. Avoid smearing or staining adjoining surfaces, appurtenances, and surroundings.
 3. Remove and replace items damaged by overspray or clean affected surfaces as directed by architect at no additional cost to owner.

3.5 HOT-MIX ASPHALT PLACING

- A. Machine place hot-mix asphalt on prepared surface, spread uniformly, and strike off. Place asphalt mix by hand to areas inaccessible to equipment in a manner that prevents segregation of mix. Place each course to required grade, cross section, and thickness when compacted.
1. Place hot-mix asphalt surface course in single lift if design thickness is less than 3- inches. If design thickness is more than 3-inches, place in multiple lifts with a minimum thickness of 1.5-inches and a maximum thickness of 3-inches.
 2. Spread mix at minimum temperature of 250 deg F.
 3. Begin applying mix along centerline of crown for crowned sections and on high side of one-way slopes unless otherwise indicated.
 4. Regulate paver machine speed to obtain smooth, continuous surface free of pulls and tears in asphalt-paving mat.

- B. Place paving in consecutive strips not less than 10 feet wide unless infill edge strips of a lesser width are required.
 - 1. After first strip has been placed and rolled, place succeeding strips and extend rolling to overlap previous strips. Complete a section of asphalt base course before placing asphalt surface course.
- C. Promptly correct surface irregularities in paving course behind paver. Use suitable hand tools to remove excess material forming high spots. Fill depressions with hot-mix asphalt to prevent segregation of mix; use suitable hand tools to smooth surface.

3.6 JOINTS

- A. Construct joints to ensure a continuous bond between adjoining paving sections. Construct joints free of depressions, with same texture and smoothness as other sections of hot-mix asphalt course.
 - 1. Clean contact surfaces and apply tack coat to joints.
 - 2. Offset longitudinal joints, in successive courses, a minimum of 6 inches.
 - 3. Offset transverse joints, in successive courses, a minimum of 24 inches.
 - 4. Construct transverse joints at each point where paver ends a day's work and resumes work at a subsequent time. Construct these joints using either "bulkhead" or "papered" method according to AI MS-22, for both "Ending a Lane" and "Resumption of Paving Operations."
 - 5. Compact joints as soon as hot-mix asphalt will bear roller weight without excessive displacement.
 - 6. Compact asphalt at joints to a density within 2 percent of specified course density.

3.7 COMPACTION

- A. General: Begin compaction as soon as placed hot-mix paving will bear roller weight without excessive displacement. Compact hot-mix paving with hot, hand tampers or with vibratory-plate compactors in areas inaccessible to rollers.
 - 1. Complete compaction before mix temperature cools to 185 deg F.
- B. Breakdown Rolling: Complete breakdown or initial rolling immediately after rolling joints and outside edge. Examine surface immediately after breakdown rolling for indicated crown, grade, and smoothness. Correct laydown and rolling operations to comply with requirements.
- C. Intermediate Rolling: Begin intermediate rolling immediately after breakdown rolling while hot-mix asphalt is still hot enough to achieve specified density. Continue rolling until hot-mix asphalt course has been uniformly compacted to the following density:
 - 1. Average Density: 94 percent of reference laboratory density according to ASTM D 6927 or AASHTO T 245, but not less than 92 percent nor greater than 96 percent.
- D. Finish Rolling: Finish roll paved surfaces to remove roller marks while hot-mix asphalt is still warm.
- E. Edge Shaping: While surface is being compacted and finished, trim edges of pavement to proper alignment. Bevel edges while asphalt is still hot; compact thoroughly.
- F. Place asphalt so that final compacted asphalt is even with lip of gutter on curbs that drain away from the curb and gutter (open face or depressed curb and gutter). Place asphalt so that final compacted asphalt is 1/4-inch above lip of gutter on curbs that carry water (slope

of parking lot is towards the curb). In transition areas, use extra care to make sure that no ponds, bird baths, or depressions are left after paving.

- G. Repairs: Remove paved areas that are defective or contaminated with foreign materials and replace with fresh, hot-mix asphalt. Compact by rolling to specified density and surface smoothness.
- H. Protection: After final rolling, do not permit vehicular traffic on pavement until it has cooled and hardened.
- I. Erect barricades to protect paving from traffic until mixture has cooled enough not to become marked.

3.8 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Pavement Thickness: Compact each course to produce the thickness indicated within the following tolerances:
 - 1. Surface Course: Plus 1/4 inch, no minus.
- B. Pavement Surface Smoothness: Compact each course to produce a surface smoothness within the following tolerances as determined by using a 10-foot straightedge applied transversely or longitudinally to paved areas:
 - 1. Surface Course: 1/8 inch.
 - 2. Crowned Surfaces: Test with crowned template centered and at right angle to crown. Maximum allowable variance from template is 1/4 inch.
- C. After paving is complete, pour water on paved areas and identify ponds, bird baths, and depressions. Identify the same at open face and transition sections of curb and gutter. Remove and replace asphalt, curb and gutter, road base, and or sub-base as necessary to fix ponds, bird baths, or depressions at no additional cost to owner.

3.9 SURFACE TREATMENTS

- A. Fog Seals: Apply fog seal at a rate of 0.10 to 0.15 gal./sq. yd. to existing asphalt pavement and allow to cure. With fine sand, lightly dust areas receiving excess fog seal.
- B. Slurry Seals: Apply slurry coat in a uniform thickness according to ASTM D 3910 and allow curing.
 - 1. Roll slurry seal to remove ridges and provide a uniform, smooth surface.

3.10 PAVEMENT MARKING

- A. Do not apply pavement-marking paint until layout, colors, and placement have been verified with Architect.
- B. Allow paving to age for 7 days minimum days before starting pavement marking.
- C. Sweep and clean surface to eliminate loose material and dust.
- D. In slurry coat areas, stripe asphalt as shown after asphalt has aged for 7 days. At 45 days, sweep slurry coat areas to remove loose material and re-stripe entire parking lot.
- E. Apply paint with mechanical equipment to produce pavement markings, of dimensions indicated, with uniform, straight edges. Apply at manufacturer's recommended rates to

provide a minimum wet film thickness of 15 mils.

1. Broadcast glass beads uniformly into wet pavement markings at a rate of 6 lb/gal.

F. Color

1. Yellow: Parking stalls and pedestrian crossings.
2. Blue: Handicap insignia at appropriate stalls.
3. Red: Fire lanes and no parking areas.
4. White: Directional arrows.

3.11 MILLING

- A. Coordinate utility locations
- B. Preserve all active utilities
- C. Mill around or lower utilities at surface such as water valves, catch basins, and manholes.
- D. Tolerances:
 1. Milling depth as indicated on the project plans plus or minus 10%, not uniformly high or uniformity low.
 2. Striation Texture: Uniform, discontinuous, longitudinal, 3/16 inch deep maximum, 3/4 inch center to center
 3. Smoothness: Plus or minus 5/16 inch in 25-feet or prorated for shorter distances.
 4. Cross slope: Plus or minus 1/4 inch in 10-feet or prorated for shorted distances.
- E. Performance:
 1. Mill surfaces to depth shown on plans. For wedge milling, slope so that not less than 1.75% slope is provided for finished asphalt. For block milling, provide uniform slope from lip to lip and a constant depth as shown on the plans.
 2. If milling exposes a smooth underlying surface, mill the smooth surface to make them rough.
 3. Mill off material if it ponds water to provide uniform drainage across the parking lot.
 4. Remove excess material and clean milled surfaces.

3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Thickness: In-place compacted thickness of hot-mix asphalt courses will be determined according to ASTM D 3549.
- C. Surface Smoothness: Finished surface of each hot-mix asphalt course will be tested for compliance with smoothness tolerances.
- D. In-Place Density: Testing agency will take samples of un-compacted paving mixtures and compacted pavement according to ASTM D 979 or AASHTO T 168.
 1. Reference maximum theoretical density will be determined by averaging results from four samples of hot-mix asphalt-paving mixture delivered daily to site, prepared according to ASTM D 2041, and compacted according to job-mix specifications.
 2. In-place density of compacted pavement will be determined by testing core samples according to ASTM D 1188 or ASTM D 2726. Cores will also be measured for compacted thickness. The owner and architect may also direct additional cores to be taken at locations of their choosing to verify final pavement thickness.
 - a. One core sample will be taken for every 1000 sq. yd. or less of installed pavement, with no fewer than 3 cores taken.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- b. Field density of in-place compacted pavement may also be determined by nuclear method according to ASTM D 2950 and correlated with ASTM D 1188 or ASTM D 2726.
 - c. Coordinate the time and locations of all holes so that cores may be filled.
- E. The contractor will replace and compact hot-mix asphalt where core tests were taken.
- F. Remove and replace or install additional hot-mix asphalt where test results or measurements indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.

3.13 DISPOSAL

- A. Except for material indicated to be recycled, remove excavated materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in an EPA-approved landfill.
- 1. Do not allow milled materials to accumulate on-site.

END OF SECTION 32 12 16

THIS PAGE LEFT INTENTIONALLY BLANK

SECTION 32 13 13
CONCRETE PAVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes exterior cement concrete pavement for the following:
 - 1. Driveways and roadways.
 - 2. Parking lots.
 - 3. Curbs and gutters.
 - 4. Walkways.
 - 5. Unit paver base.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for general building applications of concrete.
 - 2. Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for subgrade preparation, grading, and subbase course.
 - 3. Division 32 Section "Concrete Paving Joint Sealants" for joint sealants of joints in concrete pavement and at isolation joints of concrete pavement with adjacent construction.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of blended hydraulic cement, fly ash and other pozzolans, and ground granulated blast-furnace slag.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of manufactured material and product indicated.
- B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete pavement mixture. Include alternate mixture designs when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.
- C. Qualification Data: For manufacturer and testing agency.
- D. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results for compliance of the following with requirements indicated, based on comprehensive testing of current materials:
 - 1. Aggregates. Include service record data indicating absence of deleterious expansion of concrete due to alkali-aggregate reactivity.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- E. Material Certificates: Signed by manufacturers certifying that each of the following materials complies with requirements:
 - 1. Cementitious materials.
 - 2. Steel reinforcement and reinforcement accessories.
 - 3. Fiber reinforcement.
 - 4. Admixtures.
 - 5. Curing compounds.
 - 6. Applied finish materials.
 - 7. Bonding agent or epoxy adhesive.
 - 8. Joint fillers.
- F. Field quality-control test reports.
- G. Minutes of preinstallation conference.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Manufacturer of ready-mixed concrete products who complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.
 - 1. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities."
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
 - 1. Personnel conducting field tests shall be qualified as ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician, Grade 1, according to ACI CP-01 or an equivalent certification program.
- C. ACI Publications: Comply with ACI 301, "Specification for Structural Concrete," unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.
- D. Concrete Testing Service: Engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform material evaluation tests and to design concrete mixtures.
- E. Mockups: Cast mockups of full-size sections of concrete pavement to demonstrate typical joints, surface finish, texture, color, and standard of workmanship.
 - 1. Build mockups in the location and of the size indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
 - 2. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
 - 3. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting construction.
 - 4. Maintain approved mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed pavement.
 - 5. Demolish and remove approved mockups from the site when directed by Architect.
 - 6. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
- F. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."
 - 1. Before submitting design mixtures, review concrete pavement mixture design

and examine procedures for ensuring quality of concrete materials and concrete pavement construction practices. Require representatives, including the following, of each entity directly concerned with concrete pavement, to attend conference:

- a. Contractor's superintendent.
- b. Independent testing agency responsible for concrete design mixtures.
- c. Ready-mix concrete producer.
- d. Concrete pavement subcontractor.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Traffic Control: Maintain access for vehicular and pedestrian traffic as required for other construction activities.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products specified.
 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products specified.
 3. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.
 4. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 FORMS

- A. Form Materials: Plywood, metal, metal-framed plywood, or other approved panel-type materials to provide full-depth, continuous, straight, smooth exposed surfaces.
 1. Use flexible or curved forms for curves with a radius 100 feet or less.
- B. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.

2.3 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Cementitious Material: Use the following cementitious materials, of the same type, brand, and source throughout the Project:
 1. Portland Cement and as specified in Division 3 except that for exterior concrete, the minimum compressive strength is 4500 psi at 28 days for walks and ADA ramps, curb and gutter, and lightly loaded slabs such as the bike rack, seating bench, CT, transformer and other lightly loaded slabs. Use micro mesh in concrete for these areas.

2. Portland Cement and as specified in Division 3 except that for exterior concrete, the minimum compressive strength is 5000 psi at 28 days for heavy loaded slabs such as the fuel island, fuel tank pad, aprons adjacent to the PROM and Truck Wash Buildings, garbage dumpster pad, and concrete drive approaches. Use macro mesh in concrete for these areas.
- B. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33, coarse aggregate, uniformly graded. Provide aggregates from a single source with documented service record data of at least 10 years' satisfactory service in similar pavement applications and service conditions using similar aggregates and cementitious materials.
1. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: 1 inch nominal.
 2. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
- C. Water: ASTM C 94/C 94M.
- D. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.
- E. Chemical Admixtures: Provide admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and to contain not more than 0.1 percent water-soluble chloride ions by mass of cementitious material.
1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
 2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type B.
 3. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
 4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
 5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
 6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type II.

2.4 FIBER REINFORCEMENT

- A. Macro Filament Synthetic Fiber: Polypropylene/polyethylene macro-monofilament fibers engineered and designed for use in concrete pavement, complying with ASTM C 1116, Type III, 2 to 2-1/2 inches long.
1. Products:
 - a. Monofilament Fibers:
 - 1) Euclid Chemical Company (The); Tufstrand SF
 - 2) FORTA Corporation; Forta Ferro.
 - 3) Propex Operating Company Enduro 600
 - 4) Or engineer approved equal.
- B. Micro Filament Synthetic Fiber: Monofilament or fibrillated polypropylene fibers engineered and designed for use in concrete pavement, complying with ASTM C 1116, Type III, 1/2 to 1- 1/2 inches long.
1. Products:
 - a. Monofilament Fibers:
 - 1) Axim Concrete Technologies; Fibrasol IIP.
 - 2) Euclid Chemical Company (The); Fiberstrand 100.
 - 3) FORTA Corporation; Forta Mono.
 - 4) Grace, W. R. & Co.--Conn.; Grace MicroFiber.

- 5) Metalcrete Industries; Polystrand 1000.
- 6) SI Concrete Systems; Fibermix Stealth.
- 7) Or engineer approved equal.

b. Fibrillated Fibers:

- 1) Axim Concrete Technologies; Fibrasol F.
- 2) FORTA Corporation; Forta.
- 3) Euclid Chemical Company (The); Fiberstrand F.
- 4) Grace, W. R. & Co.--Conn.; Grace Fibers.
- 5) SI Concrete Systems; Fibermesh.
- 6) Or engineer approved equal.

2.5 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. dry.
- B. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
- C. Water: Potable.
- D. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming; manufactured for application to fresh concrete.

1. Products:

- a. Axim Concrete Technologies; Cimfilm.
- b. Burke by Edeco; BurkeFilm.
- c. ChemMasters; Spray-Film.
- d. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc.; Aquafilm.
- e. Dayton Superior Corporation; Sure Film.
- f. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Eucobar.
- g. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Vapor Aid.
- h. Lambert Corporation; Lambco Skin.
- i. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; E-Con.
- j. MBT Protection and Repair, ChemRex Inc.; Confilm.
- k. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Sealtight Evapre.
- l. Metalcrete Industries; Waterhold.
- m. Nox-Crete Products Group, Kinsman Corporation; Monofilm.
- n. Sika Corporation, Inc.; SikaFilm.
- o. Symons Corporation; Finishing Aid.
- p. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Certi-Vex EnvioAssist.
- q. Or engineer approved equal.

- E. Clear Waterborne Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B.

1. Products:

- a. Anti-Hydro International, Inc.; AH Curing Compound #2 DR WB.
- b. Burke by Edoko; Aqua Resin Cure.
- c. ChemMasters; Safe-Cure Clear.
- d. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc.; W.B. Resin Cure.
- e. Dayton Superior Corporation; Day Chem Rez Cure (J-11-W).
- f. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Kurez DR VOX.
- g. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Thinfilm 420.
- h. Lambert Corporation; Aqua Kure-Clear.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- i. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; L&M Cure R.
 - j. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; 1100 Clear.
 - k. Nox-Crete Products Group, Kinsman Corporation; Resin Cure E.
 - l. Symons Corporation; Resi-Chem Clear.
 - m. Tamms Industries Inc.; Horncure WB 30.
 - n. Unitex; Hydro Cure 309.
 - o. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Certi-Vex Enviocure 100.
 - p. Or engineer approved equal.
- F. White Waterborne Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 2, Class B.
- 1. Products:
 - a. Anti-Hydro International, Inc.; AH Curing Compound #2 WP WB.
 - b. Burke by Edoco; Resin Emulsion White.
 - c. ChemMasters; Safe-Cure 2000.
 - d. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc.; W.B. Resin Cure.
 - e. Dayton Superior Corporation; Day-Chem White Pigmented Cure (J-10-W).
 - f. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Kurez VOX White Pigmented.
 - g. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Thinfilm 450.
 - h. Lambert Corporation; Aqua Kure-White.
 - i. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; L&M Cure R-2.
 - j. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; 1200-White.
 - k. Symons Corporation; Resi-Chem White.
 - l. Tamms Industries, Inc.; Horncure 200-W.
 - m. Unitex; Hydro White.
 - n. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Certi-Vex Enviocure White 100.
 - o. Or engineer approved equal.

2.6 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber or ASTM D 1752, cork or self-expanding cork.
- B. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059, Type II, non-redispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.
- C. Epoxy Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C 881, two-component epoxy resin, capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces, of class suitable for application temperature and of grade to requirements, and as follows:
- 1. Types: types IV and V, load bearing, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.
- D. Chemical Surface Retarder: Water-soluble, liquid-set retarder with color dye, for horizontal concrete surface application, capable of temporarily delaying final hardening of concrete to a depth of 1/8 to 1/4 inch.
- 1. Products:
 - a. Burke by Edeco; True Etch Surface Retarder.
 - b. ChemMasters; Exposee.
 - c. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc.; Delay S.
 - d. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Surface Retarder S.
 - e. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Expose.
 - f. Metalcrete Industries; Surfard.
 - g. Nox-Crete Products Group, Kinsman Corporation; Crete-Nox TA.
 - h. Scofield, L. M. Company; Lithotex.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- i. Sika Corporation, Inc.; Rugasol-S.
 - j. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Certi-Vex Envioset.
 - k. Or engineer approved equal.
- E. Pigmented Mineral Dry-Shake Hardener: Factory-packaged dry combination of Portland cement, graded quartz aggregate, color pigments, and plasticizing admixture. Use color pigments that are finely ground, nonfading mineral oxides interground with cement.
- 1. Products:
 - a. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc.; Conshake 600 Colortone.
 - b. Dayton Superior Corporation; Quartz Tuff.
 - c. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Surfex.
 - d. Lambert Corporation; Colorhard.
 - e. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; Quartz Plate FF.
 - f. MBT Protection and Repair, ChemRex Inc.; Mastercron.
 - g. Metalcrete Industries; Floor Quartz.
 - h. Scofield, L. M. Company; Lithochrome Color Hardener.
 - i. Symons Corporation; Hard Top.
 - j. Or engineer approved equal.
 - 2. Color: Match Architect's sample or as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- F. PentraSil 244+. Per manufacture recommendations

2.7 PAVEMENT MARKINGS

- A. Pavement-Marking Paint: Alkyd-resin type, lead and chromate free, ready mixed, complying with FS TT-P-115, Type I or II or AASHTO M 248, Type N or F.
- 1. Color: White, Yellow, Blue. See Section 321216 for color locations.
- B. Pavement-Marking Paint: Latex, waterborne emulsion, lead and chromate free, ready mixed, complying with FS TT-P-1952, with drying time of less than 45 minutes.
- 1. Color: White, Yellow, Blue. See Section 321216 for color locations.
- C. Glass Beads: AASHTO M 247, Type 1.

2.8 CONCRETE MIXTURES

- A. Prepare design mixtures, proportioned according to ACI 301, for each type and strength of normal-weight concrete determined by either laboratory trial mixes or field experience.
- 1. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed concrete mixture designs for the trial batch method.
- B. Proportion mixtures to provide normal-weight concrete with the following properties:
- 1. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 4000 psi
 - 2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio at Point of Placement: 0.45
 - 3. Select slump limit from options in subparagraph below or revise to suit Project.
 - 4. Slump Limit: 4 inches, plus or minus 1 inch.
- C. Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in normal-weight

concrete at point of placement having an air content as follows:

1. Air Content: 5-8 percent nominal maximum aggregate size.
- D. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.15 percent by weight of cement.
- E. Chemical Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Use water-reducing admixture, high-range, water-reducing admixture, high-range, water-reducing and retarding admixture, plasticizing, and retarding admixture in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.
 2. Specify admixtures as part of submittal. Verify that admixtures proposed do not adversely affect stained concrete and will not modify colors of stain.
 3. Coordinate acceptability of admixtures with architect.
- F. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement according to ACI 301 requirements as follows:
1. Fly Ash or Pozzolan: 15 percent.
 2. Combined Fly Ash and Pozzolan: 15 percent.
- G. Synthetic Fiber: (Micro Mesh) Uniformly disperse in concrete mix at manufacturer's recommended rate, but not less than 1.5 lb/cu. yd. in all exterior concrete not subject to vehicular traffic and curb and gutter.
- H. Synthetic Fiber (Macro Mesh) Uniformly disperse in concrete mix at manufacturer's recommended rate, but not less than 5 lb/cu. yd. in all exterior concrete subject to vehicular traffic and drive approaches
- I. Color Stain: Add stain to concrete per manufacturers recommendations and to meet color required by architect and owner on areas of stained concrete.

2.9 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M. Furnish batch certificates for each batch discharged and used in the Work.
1. When air temperature is between 85 deg F and 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.
- B. Project-Site Mixing: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M. Mix concrete materials in appropriate drum-type batch machine mixer.
1. For concrete mixes of 1 cu. yd. or smaller, continue mixing at least 1-1/2 minutes, but not more than 5 minutes after ingredients are in mixer, before any part of batch is released.
 2. For concrete mixes larger than 1 cu. yd., increase mixing time by 15 seconds for each additional 1 cu. yd.
 3. Provide batch ticket for each batch discharged and used in the Work, indicating Project identification name and number, date, mixture type, mixing time, quantity,

and amount of water added.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine exposed subgrades and subbase surfaces for compliance with requirements for dimensional, grading, and elevation tolerances.
- B. Proof-roll prepared subbase surface below concrete pavements with heavy pneumatic-tired equipment to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding.
 - 1. Completely proof-roll subbase in one direction. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph.
 - 2. Proof-roll with a loaded 10-wheel tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than 15 tons or similar axel weight vehicle.
 - 3. Subbase with soft spots and areas of pumping or rutting exceeding depth of ½ inch require correction according to requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."
- C. Proceed with concrete pavement operations only after nonconforming conditions have been corrected and subgrade is ready to receive pavement.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Remove loose material from compacted subbase surface immediately before placing concrete.

3.3 EDGE FORMS AND SCREED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Set, brace, and secure edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed guides for pavement to required lines, grades, and elevations. Install forms to allow continuous progress of work and so forms can remain in place at least 24 hours after concrete placement.
- B. Clean forms after each use and coat with form-release agent to ensure separation from concrete without damage.

3.4 JOINTS

- A. General: Form construction, isolation, and contraction joints and tool edgings true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete. Construct transverse joints at right angles to centerline, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. When joining existing pavement, place transverse joints to align with previously placed joints, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Construction Joints: Set construction joints at side and end terminations of pavement and at locations where pavement operations are stopped for more than one-half hour unless pavement terminates at isolation joints.
 - 1. Butt Joints: Use bonding agent at joint locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.

2. Keyed Joints: Provide preformed keyway-section forms or bulkhead forms with keys, unless otherwise indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches into concrete.
- C. Isolation Joints: Form isolation joints of preformed joint-filler strips abutting concrete curbs, catch basins, manholes, inlets, structures, walks, other fixed objects, and where indicated.
1. Locate expansion joints at intervals of 50 feet, unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Extend joint fillers full width and depth of joint.
 3. Terminate joint filler not less than 1/2 inch or more than 1 inch below finished surface if joint sealant is indicated.
 4. Place top of joint filler flush with finished concrete surface if joint sealant is not indicated.
 5. Furnish joint fillers in one-piece lengths. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip joint-filler sections together.
 6. Protect top edge of joint filler during concrete placement with metal, plastic, or other temporary preformed cap. Remove protective cap after concrete has been placed on both sides of joint.
- D. Contraction Joints: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of the concrete thickness, as follows:
1. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint with grooving tool to a 1/4-inch radius. Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate groover marks on concrete surfaces.
 2. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch-wide joints into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before developing random contraction cracks.
- E. Edging: Tool edges of pavement, gutters, curbs, and joints in concrete after initial floating with an edging tool to a 1/4-inch radius. Repeat tooling of edges after applying surface finishes. Eliminate tool marks on concrete surfaces.

3.5 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Inspection: Before placing concrete, inspect and complete formwork installation, steel reinforcement, and items to be embedded or cast in. Notify other trades to permit installation of their work.
- B. Remove snow, ice, or frost from subbase surface and reinforcement before placing concrete. Do not place concrete on frozen surfaces.
- C. Moisten subbase to provide a uniform dampened condition at time concrete is placed. Do not place concrete around manholes or other structures until they are at required finish elevation and alignment.
- D. Comply with ACI 301 requirements for measuring, mixing, transporting, and placing concrete.
- E. Do not add water to concrete during delivery or at Project site.
- F. Do not add water to fresh concrete after testing.

- G. Deposit and spread concrete in a continuous operation between transverse joints. Do not push or drag concrete into place or use vibrators to move concrete into place.
- H. Consolidate concrete according to ACI 301 by mechanical vibrating equipment supplemented by hand spading, rodding, or tamping.
 - 1. Consolidate concrete along face of forms and adjacent to transverse joints with an internal vibrator. Keep vibrator away from joint assemblies, reinforcement, or side forms. Use only square-faced shovels for hand spreading and consolidation. Consolidate with care to prevent dislocating reinforcement, dowels, and joint devices.
- I. Screed pavement surfaces with a straightedge and strike off.
- J. Commence initial floating using bull floats or darbies to impart an open textured and uniform surface plane before excess moisture or bleed water appears on the surface. Do not further disturb concrete surfaces before beginning finishing operations or spreading surface treatments.
- K. Curbs and Gutters: When automatic machine placement is used for curb and gutter placement, submit revised mix design and laboratory test results that meet or exceed requirements. Produce curbs and gutters to required cross section, lines, grades, finish, and jointing as specified for formed concrete. If results are not approved, remove and replace with formed concrete.
- L. Slip-Form Pavers: When automatic machine placement is used for pavement, submit revised mix design and laboratory test results that meet or exceed requirements. Produce pavement to required thickness, lines, grades, finish, and jointing as required for formed pavement.
 - 1. Compact subbase and prepare subgrade of sufficient width to prevent displacement of paver machine during operations.
- M. When adjoining pavement lanes are placed in separate pours, do not operate equipment on concrete until pavement has attained 85 percent of its 28-day compressive strength.
- N. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.
 - 1. When air temperature has fallen to or is expected to fall below 40 deg F, uniformly heat water and aggregates before mixing to obtain a concrete mixture temperature of not less than 50 deg F and not more than 80 deg F at point of placement.
 - 2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow.
 - 3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mix designs.
- O. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and as follows when hot-weather conditions exist:
 - 1. Cool ingredients before mixing to maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
 - 2. Cover steel reinforcement with water-soaked burlap so steel temperature will not

3. exceed ambient air temperature immediately before embedding in concrete.
Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade moisture uniform without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

3.6 FLOAT FINISHING

- A. General: Do not add water to concrete surfaces during finishing operations.
- B. Float Finish: Begin the second floating operation when bleed-water sheen has disappeared and concrete surface has stiffened sufficiently to permit operations. Float surface with power-driven floats, or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power units. Finish surfaces to true planes. Cut down high spots and fill low spots. Refloat surface immediately to uniform granular texture.
 1. Burlap Finish: Drag a seamless strip of damp burlap across float-finished concrete, perpendicular to line of traffic, to provide a uniform, gritty texture.
 2. Medium-to-Fine-Textured Broom Finish: Draw a soft bristle broom across float-finished concrete surface perpendicular to line of traffic to provide a uniform, fine-line texture.
 3. Medium-to-Coarse-Textured Broom Finish: Provide a coarse finish by striating float-finished concrete surface 1/16 to 1/8 inch deep with a stiff-bristled broom, perpendicular to line of traffic.
 4. Coordinate with architect the locations of each type of finish.

3.7 SPECIAL FINISHES

- A. Pigmented Mineral Dry-Shake Hardener Finish: After initial floating, apply dry-shake materials to pavement surface according to manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
 1. Uniformly spread dry-shake hardener at a rate of 100 lb/100 sq. ft. unless greater amount is recommended by manufacturer to match pavement color required.
 2. Uniformly distribute approximately two-thirds of dry-shake hardener over pavement surface with mechanical spreader, allow to absorb moisture, and embed by power floating. Follow power floating with a second dry-shake hardener application, uniformly distributing remainder of material at right angles to first application to ensure uniform color, and embed by power floating.
 3. After final floating, apply a hand-trowel finish followed by a broom finish to concrete.
 4. Cure concrete with curing compound recommended by dry-shake hardener manufacturer. Apply curing compound immediately after final finishing.
- B. Coordinate the locations of finishes with the architect and owner prior to placing concrete.

3.8 CONCRETE PROTECTION AND CURING

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures.
- B. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection.
- C. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing,

screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.

- D. Begin curing after finishing concrete but not before free water has disappeared from concrete surface.
- E. Curing Methods: Cure concrete by moisture curing, moisture-retaining-cover curing, curing compound, or a combination of these as follows:
 - 1. Moist Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:
 - a . Water.
 - b . Continuous water-fog spray.
 - c . Absorptive cover, water saturated and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with 12-inch lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
 - 2. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.
 - 3. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

3.9 PAVEMENT TOLERANCES

- A. Comply with tolerances of ACI 117 and as follows:
 - 1. Elevation: 1/4 inch.
 - 2. Thickness: Plus 3/8 inch, minus 1/4 inch.
 - 3. Surface: Gap below 10-foot-long, unleveled straightedge not to exceed 1/4 inch.
 - 4. Lateral Alignment and Spacing of Tie Bars and Dowels: 1 inch.
 - 5. Vertical Alignment of Tie Bars and Dowels: 1/4 inch.
 - 6. Alignment of Tie-Bar End Relative to Line Perpendicular to Pavement Edge: 1/2 inch.
 - 7. Alignment of Dowel-Bar End Relative to Line Perpendicular to Pavement Edge: Length of dowel 1/4 inch per 12 inches.
 - 8. Joint Spacing: 3 inches.
 - 9. Contraction Joint Depth: Plus 1/4 inch, no minus.
 - 10. Joint Width: Plus 1/8 inch, no minus.

3.10 PAVEMENT MARKING

- A. Do not apply pavement-marking paint until layout, colors, and placement have been verified with Architect.
- B. Allow concrete pavement to cure for 14 days and be dry before starting pavement marking.
- C. Sweep and clean surface to eliminate loose material and dust.
- D. Apply paint with mechanical equipment to produce pavement markings of dimensions indicated with uniform, straight edges. Apply at manufacturer's recommended rates to provide a minimum wet film thickness of 15 mils.

1. Spread glass beads uniformly into wet pavement markings at a rate of 6 lb/gal.

3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Testing Services: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172 shall be performed according to the following requirements:
 1. Testing Frequency: Obtain at least 1 composite sample for each 100 cu. yd. or 5000 sq. ft. or fraction thereof of each concrete mix placed each day.
 - a. When frequency of testing will provide fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
 2. Slump: ASTM C 143/C 143M; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mix. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
 3. Air Content: ASTM C 231, pressure method; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mix.
 4. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below and when 80 deg F and above, and one test for each composite sample.
 5. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M; cast and laboratory cure one set of three standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
 6. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39/C 39M; test 1 specimen at 7 days and 2 specimens at 28 days.
 - a. A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from 2 specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at 28 days.
- C. Strength of each concrete mix will be satisfactory if average of any 3 consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi.
- D. Test results shall be reported in writing to Architect, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.
- E. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
- F. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect.
- G. Remove and replace concrete pavement where test results indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.
- H. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine

compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

3.12 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove and replace concrete pavement that is broken, damaged, or defective or that does not comply with requirements in this Section.
- B. Drill test cores, where directed by Architect, when necessary to determine magnitude of cracks or defective areas. Fill drilled core holes in satisfactory pavement areas with portland cement concrete bonded to pavement with epoxy adhesive.
- C. Protect concrete from damage. Exclude traffic from pavement for at least 14 days after placement. When construction traffic is permitted, maintain pavement as clean as possible by removing surface stains and spillage of materials as they occur.
- D. Maintain concrete pavement free of stains, discoloration, dirt, and other foreign material. Sweep concrete pavement not more than two days before date scheduled for Substantial Completion inspections.

END OF SECTION 32 13 13

THIS PAGE LEFT INTENTIONALLY BLANK

SECTION 32 13 73

CONCRETE PAVING JOINT SEALANTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Expansion and contraction joints within cement concrete pavement.
 - 2. Joints between cement concrete and asphalt pavement.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for sealing nontraffic and traffic joints in locations not specified in this Section.
 - 2. Division 32 Section "Asphalt Paving" for constructing joints between concrete and asphalt pavement.
 - 3. Division 32 Section "Concrete Paving" for constructing joints in concrete pavement.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product indicated.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each type and color of joint sealant required. Install joint-sealant samples in 1/2-inch wide joints formed between two 6-inch long strips of material matching the appearance of exposed surfaces adjacent to joint sealants.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of joint sealant and accessory, signed by product manufacturer.
- D. Qualification Data: For installer and testing agency.
- E. Compatibility and Adhesion Test Reports: From sealant manufacturer, indicating the following:
 - 1. Materials forming joint substrates and joint-sealant backings have been tested for compatibility and adhesion with joint sealants.
 - 2. Interpretation of test results and written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.
- F. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for sealants.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of joint sealant through one source from a single manufacturer.
- C. Preconstruction Compatibility and Adhesion Testing: Submit to joint-sealant manufacturers, for testing indicated below, samples of materials that will contact or affect joint sealants.
 - 1. Use ASTM C 1087 to determine whether priming and other specific joint preparation techniques are required to obtain rapid, optimum adhesion of joint sealants to joint substrates.
 - 2. Submit not fewer than six (6) pieces of each type of material, including joint substrates, shims, joint-sealant backings, secondary seals, and miscellaneous materials.
 - 3. Schedule sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
 - 4. For materials failing tests, obtain joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions for corrective measures including use of specially formulated primers.
 - 5. Testing will not be required if joint-sealant manufacturers submit joint preparation data that are based on previous testing of current sealant products for adhesion to, and compatibility with, joint substrates and other materials matching those submitted.
- D. Product Testing: Obtain test results for "Product Test Reports" Paragraph in "Submittals" Article from a qualified testing agency based on testing of current sealant products within a 36- month period preceding the commencement of the Work.
 - 1. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM C 1021 for testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials to Project site in original unopened containers or bundles with labels indicating manufacturer, product name and designation, color, expiration date, pot life, curing time, and mixing instructions for multicomponent materials.
- B. Store and handle materials to comply with manufacturer's written instructions to prevent their deterioration or damage due to moisture, high or low temperatures, contaminants, or other causes.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
 - 1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer.
 - 2. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.
 - 3. When joint substrates are wet or covered with frost.
 - 4. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- for applications indicated.
5. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products listed in other Part 2 articles.
- B. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products listed in other Part 2 articles.

2.2 MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backing materials, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- B. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.3 COLD-APPLIED JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Multicomponent Jet-Fuel-Resistant Sealant for Concrete: Pourable, chemically curing elastomeric formulation complying with the following requirements for formulation and with ASTM C 920 for type, grade, class, and uses indicated:
 1. Urethane Formulation: Type M; Grade P; Class 12-1/2; Uses T, M, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, O.
 - a. Available Products:
 - 1) Pecora Corporation; Urexpam NR-300.
 - 2) Engineer approved equal.
 2. Coal-Tar-Modified Polymer Formulation: Type M; Grade P; Class 25; Uses T and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, O.
 - a. Available Products:
 - 1) Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Sealtight Gardox.
 - 2) Engineer Approved Equal.
 3. Bitumen-Modified Urethane Formulation: Type M; Grade P; Class 25; Uses T, M, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, O.
 - a. Available Products:
 - 1) Tremco Sealant/Waterproofing Division; Vulkem 202.
 - 2) Engineer approved Equal.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- B. Single-Component Jet-Fuel-Resistant Urethane Sealant for Concrete: Single-component, pourable, coal-tar-modified, urethane formulation complying with ASTM C 920 for Type S; Grade P; Class 25; Uses T, M, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, O.
1. Available Products:
 - a. Sonneborn, Div. of ChemRex, Inc.; Sonomeric 1.
 - b. Engineer Approved Equal.
- C. Type NS Silicone Sealant for Concrete: Single-component, low-modulus, neutral-curing, nonsag silicone sealant complying with ASTM D 5893 for Type NS.
1. Available Products:
 - a. Crafcoc Inc.; RoadSaver Silicone.
 - b. Dow Corning Corporation; 888.
 - c. Engineer Approved Equal.
- D. Type SL Silicone Sealant for Concrete and Asphalt: Single-component, low-modulus, neutral-curing, self-leveling silicone sealant complying with ASTM D 5893 for Type SL.
1. Available Products:
 - a. Crafcoc Inc.; RoadSaver Silicone SL.
 - b. Dow Corning Corporation; 890-SL.
 - c. Engineer Approved Equal.
- E. Multicomponent Low-Modulus Sealant for Concrete and Asphalt: Proprietary formulation consisting of reactive petropolymer and activator components producing a pourable, self-leveling sealant.
1. Available Products:
 - a. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Sof-Seal.
 - b. Engineer Approved Equal.

2.4 HOT-APPLIED JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Jet-Fuel-Resistant Elastomeric Sealant for Concrete: Single-component formulation complying with ASTM D 3569.
1. Available Products:
 - a. Crafcoc Inc.; Superseal 444/777.
 - b. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Poly-Jet 3569.
 - c. Engineer Approved Equal.
- B. Jet-Fuel-Resistant Sealant for Concrete and Tar Concrete: Single-component formulation complying with ASTM D 3581.
1. Available Products:
 - a. Crafcoc Inc.; Superseal 1614A.
 - b. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Poly-Jet 1614.
 - c. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Poly-Jet 3406.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- d. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Poly-Jet 3569.
 - e. Engineer Approved Equal.
 - C. Elastomeric Sealant for Concrete: Single-component formulation complying with ASTM D 3406.
 - 1. Available Products:
 - a. Crafcoc Inc.; Superseal 444/777.
 - b. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Poly-Jet 3406.
 - c. Engineer Approved Equal.
 - D. Sealant for Concrete and Asphalt: Single-component formulation complying with ASTM D 3405.
 - 1. Available Products:
 - a. Koch Materials Company; Product No. 9005.
 - b. Koch Materials Company; Product No. 9030.
 - c. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Sealtight Hi-Spec.
 - d. Engineer Approved Equal.

2.5 JOINT-SEALANT BACKER MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide joint-sealant backer materials that are nonstaining; are compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and are approved for applications indicated by joint-sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.
- B. Round Backer Rods for Cold- and Hot-Applied Sealants: ASTM D 5249, Type 1, of diameter and density required to control sealant depth and prevent bottom-side adhesion of sealant.
- C. Backer Strips for Cold- and Hot-Applied Sealants: ASTM D 5249; Type 2; of thickness and width required to control sealant depth, prevent bottom-side adhesion of sealant, and fill remainder of joint opening under sealant.
- D. Round Backer Rods for Cold-Applied Sealants: ASTM D 5249, Type 3, of diameter and density required to control sealant depth and prevent bottom-side adhesion of sealant.

2.6 PRIMERS

- A. Primers: Product recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting joint-sealant performance.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where indicated or where recommended in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

- A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- C. Install backer materials of type indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
 1. Do not leave gaps between ends of backer materials.
 2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear backer materials.
 3. Remove absorbent backer materials that have become wet before sealant application and replace them with dry materials.
- D. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
 1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
 2. Completely fill recesses provided for each joint configuration.
 3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- E. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
 1. Remove excess sealants from surfaces adjacent to joint.
 2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
- F. Provide joint configuration to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Provide recessed joint configuration for silicone sealants of recess depth and at locations indicated.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clean off excess sealants or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately and replace with joint sealant so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from the original work.

END OF SECTION 32 13 73

THIS PAGE LEFT INTENTIONALLY BLANK

SECTION 32 20 00

SITE SIGNAGE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes: Providing post-mounted site traffic signage where indicated.
- B. Related Documents: Conditions of the Contract, General Requirements, and Drawings apply to the Work of this Section.
- C. Related Sections:
 - 1. Asphalt Concrete Paving: Section 32 12 16
 - 2. Cement Concrete Paving: Section 32 13 13

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit the following:
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's data for each type of sign and post indicated.
- C. Manufacturer's installation instruction, for information only.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer shall have a minimum of five years of experience in the manufacturing of traffic signage of the type specified for this Project.
- B. Codes and Standards: Comply with the City Building Code, latest edition, and other requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

1.4 PRODUCT DELIVERY

- A. Deliver materials in factory packages with factory labels attached.
- B. Cover and protect material in transit and at job site. Damaged or defaced material will be rejected and shall be replaced at no cost to the Owner.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

- A. Provide traffic sign with post where shown on the Drawings and as specified.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Signs: 0.080 aluminum sheet.
- B. Posts: Galvanized Steel flanged channels weighing 4 pounds per foot, length as required for proper mounting height and scheduled foundation embedment depth.
- C. Bolts, Nuts, Washers, and Clamps: Cadmium or galvanized steel. Bolts shall be a minimum of 5/16" in diameter. Clamps shall be two-piece assemblies of at least 14-gage steel or shall be an adjustable steel strap bracket.
- D. Concrete for foundations: 2500 psi minimum, complying with Section 321313.

- E. Concrete for mow strip: 3000 psi minimum, complying with Section 321313.

2.3 SCHEDULE

- A. Handicapped Parking Sign Type 1: 12" x 18", 18 gage steel sheet with baked enamel finish. Sign to have handicapped symbol and text reading "Reserved For Handicapped".
- B. Handicapped Parking Sign Type 2: 12" x 18", 18 gage steel sheet with baked enamel finish. Sign to have handicapped symbol and text reading "Reserved For Handicapped – Van Accessible".
- C. Electric Vehicle Parking Sign Type: 12" x 18", 18 gage steel sheet with baked enamel finish. Sign to have text reading "Reserved Electrical Charging Vehicles Only".
- D. Motorcycle Parking Sign Type: 12" x 18" gage steel sheet with baked enamel finish. Sign to have text reading "Reserved Motorcycle Parking Only".
- E. Service Vehicle Parking Sign Type: 12" x 18", 18 gage steel sheet with baked enamel
- F. Stop Sign Type: 24" x 24", 18 gage steel sheet with backed enamel finish. Sign to have text reading "Stop".

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work.
- B. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Foundation Excavation: Excavate to neat clean lines in undisturbed soil. Remove loose soil and foreign matter from excavation and moisten earth before placing concrete.
- B. Provide forms where required due to unstable soil conditions and for perimeter of sign pole base at grade. Secure and brace forms and foundation tube, sleeve, or anchor bolts in position, to prevent displacement during concreting.
- C. Place concrete immediately after mixing. Compact concrete in place by using vibrators.
- D. Moist-cure exposed concrete for not less than seven days or use nonstaining curing compound.
- E. Trowel exposed concrete surfaces to a smooth, dense finish, free of trowel marks, and uniform in texture and appearance. Provide positive slope for water runoff to perimeter of concrete base. Construct exposed concrete surface (mow strip) in landscape areas with grass or hardscape areas (asphalt or concrete). In landscape areas without grass, do not construct mow strip.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install signs in accordance with manufacturer's drawings, shop drawings, and specifications.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- B. Install sign posts and sign panels plumb, level, and square and in proper planes with other work.
- C. Anchor sign panels securely to sign posts, using fasteners suitable for application and as recommended by manufacturer.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verify that signs are installed in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Tolerances:
 - 1. Out of level: $\pm 1/8$ ".
 - 2. Out of plumb: $\pm 1/4$ ".

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. After installation, clean soiled sign surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions. Protect signs from damage until acceptance by Owner.

END OF SECTION 32 20 00

THIS PAGE LEFT INTENTIONALLY BLANK

SECTION 32 31 13

CHAIN LINK FENCES AND GATES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Chain-Link Fences: Industrial
 - 2. Gates: horizontal slide
 - 3. Swing.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 32 Section "Concrete Paving" for concrete equipment bases/pads for gate, drives, and post concrete fill.
 - 2. Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for site excavation, fill, and backfill where chain-link fences and gates are located.
 - 3. Electrical conduit, conductors, controllers, communication lines, and other ancillary related items from electrical and architectural plans and specifications.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Provide chain-link fences and gates capable of withstanding the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:
 - 1. Minimum Post Size and Maximum Spacing for Wind Velocity Pressure: Determine based on mesh size and pattern specified, and on the following minimum design wind pressures and according to CLFMI WLG 2445:
 - a. Wind Speed: 90 mph.
 - b. Fence Height: 8-feet
 - c. Line Post Group: IA, ASTM F 1043, Schedule 40 steel pipe
 - d. Wind Exposure Category: B
 - e. Fabric spacing 2-inch maximum
 - 2. Determine minimum post size, group, and section according to ASTM F 1043 for framework up to 8 feet high, and post spacing not to exceed 10 feet.
- B. Lightning Protection System: Maximum grounding-resistance value of 25 ohms under normal dry conditions.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for chain-link fences and gates.
 - 1. Fence and gate posts, rails, and fittings.
 - 2. Chain-link fabric, reinforcements, and attachments.
 - 3. Gates and hardware.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show locations of fences, gates, posts, rails, tension wires, details of extended posts, extension arms, gate swing, or other operation, hardware, and accessories. Indicate materials, dimensions, sizes, weights, and finishes of components. Include plans, gate elevations, sections, details of post anchorage, attachment, bracing, and other required installation and operational clearances.
 - 1. For installed products indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data[signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation].
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts or 6-inch (150-mm) lengths of actual units showing the full range of colors available for components with factory-applied color finishes.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of chain-link fence and gate indicated.
 - 1. Polymer-coated steel wire (for fabric) in 6-inch lengths.
 - 2. Polymer coating, in 6-inch lengths on shapes for posts, rails, wires, and gate framing.
- E. Product Certificates: For each type of chain-link fence,[operator,] and gate, signed by product manufacturer.
 - 1. Strength test results for framing according to ASTM F 1043.
- F. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- G. Field quality-control test reports.
- H. Maintenance Data: For the following to include in maintenance manuals:
 - 1. Polymer finishes.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed chain-link fences and gates similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
 - 1. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of data for chain-link fences and gates, including Shop Drawings, based on testing and engineering analysis of manufacturer's standard units in assemblies similar to those indicated for this Project.

- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a member company of the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Person currently certified according to NETA ETT, or the National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies, to supervise on-site testing specified in Part 3.
- C. Emergency Access Requirements: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for gates serving as a required means of access.
- D. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
 - 1. Include 10 ft. length of fence and gate complying with requirements.
 - a. Approval of mockups is also for other material and construction qualities specifically approved by Architect in writing.
 - b. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless such deviations are specifically approved by Architect in writing.
 - 2. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
- E. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify layout information for chain-link fences and gates shown on Drawings in relation to property survey and existing structures. Verify dimensions by field measurements.
- B. Interruption of Existing Utility Service: Do not interrupt utility services to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Architect no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of utility services.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of utility services without Architect's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, local manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work.

2.2 CHAIN-LINK FENCE FABRIC

- A. General: 8 feet tall Provide fabric in one-piece heights measured between top and bottom of outer edge of selvage knuckle or twist. Comply with ASTM A 392, CLFMI CLF 2445, and requirements indicated below:
 - 1. Steel Wire Fabric: Polymer-coated wire with a diameter of 0.192 inch
 - a. Mesh Size: 2 inches
 - b. Weight of Aluminum Coating: ASTM A 491, Type I, 0.4 oz./sq. ft.
 - c. Weight of Metallic Zinc Coating: ASTM A 392, Type II, Class 1, 1.2 oz./sq. ft. with zinc coating applied after weaving.
 - d. Weight of Zn-5-Al-MM Aluminum-Mischmetal Alloy Coating: ASTM F 1345, Type III, Class 2, 1.0 oz./sq. ft.
 - e. Polymer Coating: ASTM F 668, Class [1] over metallic-coated steel wire.
 - 1) Color: As selected by Architect and owner from manufacturer's full range complying with ASTM F 934.
 - f. Coat selvage ends of fabric that is metallic coated before the weaving process with manufacturer's standard clear protective coating.
 - 2. Aluminum Wire Fabric: ASTM F 1183, with mill caustic-cleaned finish, and wire diameter of 0.192 inches.
 - a. Mesh Size: 2 inches.
 - 3. Selvage: Twisted top and knuckled bottom.

2.3 INDUSTRIAL FENCE FRAMING

- A. Posts and Rails: Comply with ASTM F 1043 for framing, ASTM F 1083 for Group IC round pipe, and the following:
 - 1. Group: IC, round steel pipe, yield strength 50,000 psi.
 - 2. Fence Height: 8 feet.
 - 3. Strength Requirement: Heavy industrial according to ASTM F 1043.
 - 4. Post Diameter and Thickness: According to ASTM F 1043.
 - 5. Post Size and Thickness: According to ASTM F 1043.
 - a. Top Rail: 1.66 inches.
 - b. Line Post: 2.375 inches.
 - c. End, Corner and Pull Post: 2.875 inches.
 - d. Swing Gate Post: According to ASTM F 900 4-inch diameter, 8.65-lb/ft.
 - e. Horizontal-Slide Gate Post: According to ASTM F 1184.
 - 1) Openings up to 12 Feet: Steel post, 2.875-inch diameter, and 4.64-lb/ft.
 - 2) Openings Wider Than 12 Feet: Steel post, 4-inch diameter, and 8.65-lb/ft.
 - 3) Guide posts for Class 1 horizontal-slide gates equal the gate post height, 1 size smaller, but weight is not less than 3.11 lb/ft.; installed adjacent to gate post to permit gate to slide in space between.

6. Coating for Steel Framing:
 - a. Metallic Coating:
 - 1) Type A, consisting of not less than minimum 2.0-oz./sq. ft. average zinc coating per ASTM A 123/A 123M or 4.0-oz./sq. ft. zinc coating per ASTM A 653/A 653M.
 - 2) Type B, zinc with organic overcoat, consisting of a minimum of 0.9 oz./sq. ft. of zinc after welding, a chromate conversion coating, and a clear, verifiable polymer film.
 - 3) External, Type B, zinc with organic overcoat, consisting of a minimum of 0.9 oz./sq. ft. of zinc after welding, a chromate conversion coating, and a clear, verifiable polymer film. Internal, Type D, consisting of 81 percent, not less than 0.3-mil- thick, zinc pigmented coating.
 - 4) Type C, Zn-5-Al-MM alloy, consisting of not less than 1.8-oz./sq. ft. coating.
 - 5) Coatings: Any coating above.
 - b. Polymer coating over metallic coating.
7. Aluminum Finish: Mill finish complying with ASTM B 429.

2.4 TENSION WIRE

- A. General: Provide horizontal tension wire at the following locations:
 1. Location: Extended along bottom of fence fabric.
 2. Location:
- B. Metallic-Coated Steel Wire: 0.177-inch- diameter, marcelled tension wire complying with ASTM A 817, ASTM A 824, and the following:
 1. Metallic Coating: Type I, aluminum coated aluminized, with the following minimum coating weight:
 - a. Class 3: Not less than 2 oz./sq. ft. of uncoated wire surface.
 - b. Matching chain-link fabric coating weight.
 2. Metallic Coating: Type III, Zn-5-Al-MM alloy with the following minimum coating weight:
 - a. Class 2: Not less than 1 oz./sq. ft. (305 g/sq. m) of uncoated wire surface.
 - b. Matching chain-link fabric coating weight.
- C. Aluminum Wire: 0.192-inch- diameter tension wire, mill finished, complying with ASTM B 211, Alloy 6061-T94 with 50,000-psi minimum tensile strength.

2.5 INDUSTRIAL SWING GATES

- A. General: Comply with ASTM F 900 for single or double swing gate types.
 1. Metal Pipe and Tubing: Galvanized steel. Comply with ASTM F 1043 and ASTM F 1083 for materials and protective coatings.

2. Metal Pipe and Tubing: Aluminum. Comply with ASTM B 429 and ASTM F 1043 for materials and protective coatings.
- B. Frames and Bracing: Fabricate members from round, galvanized steel or aluminum tubing with outside dimension and weight according to ASTM F 900 and the following:
 1. Gate Fabric Height: Same height as the adjacent fence height
 2. Leaf Width: As indicated on project plans
 3. Frame Members:
 - a. Tubular Steel 1.90 inches.
- C. Frame Corner Construction:
 1. Welded or assembled with corner fittings and 5/16-inch- diameter, adjustable truss rods for panels 5 feet wide or wider.
- D. Extended Gate Posts and Frame Members: Extend gate posts and frame end members above top of chain-link fabric at both ends of gate frame 12 inches.
- E. Hardware: Latches permitting operation from both sides of gate, hinges, center gate stops and keepers for each gate leaf more than 5 feet wide. Fabricate latches with integral eye openings for padlocking; padlock accessible from both sides of gate.

2.6 INDUSTRIAL HORIZONTAL-SLIDE GATES

- A. General: Comply with ASTM F 1184 for single or double slide gate types.
 1. Classification: Type II Cantilever Slide, Class 1 with external roller assemblies.
 2. Metal Pipe and Tubing: Galvanized steel. Comply with ASTM F 1184 for materials and protective coatings.
 3. Metal Pipe and Tubing: Aluminum. Comply with ASTM F 699 for materials and protective coatings.
- B. Frames and Bracing: Fabricate members from round or square, galvanized steel or aluminum tubing with outside dimension and weight according to ASTM F 1184 and the following:
 1. Gate Fabric Height: 8 feet.
 2. Gate Opening Width: As indicated on project plans.
 3. Frame Members:
 - a. Tubular Steel or Aluminum: 1.90 inches round
 4. Bracing Members:
 - a. Tubular Steel or Aluminum: 1.66 inches minimum.
- C. Frame Corner Construction:
 1. Welded frame with panels assembled with bolted or riveted corner fittings and 5/16-inch- diameter, adjustable truss rods for panels 5 feet wide or wider.
 2. Type I Overhead Slide Gates: Assembled with corner fittings including 5/16-

inch- diameter, adjustable truss rods for panels 5 feet wide or wider.

- D. Extended Gate Posts and Frame Members: Extend gate posts and frame end members above top of chain-link fabric at both ends of gate frame 12 inches.
- E. Roller Guards: As required per ASTM F 1184 for Type II, Class 1 gates.
- F. Hardware: Latches permitting operation from both sides of gate, locking devices, hangers, roller assemblies and stops fabricated from galvanized steel or mill-finished Grade 319 aluminum-alloy casting with stainless-steel fasteners. Fabricate latches with integral eye openings for padlocking; padlock accessible from both sides of gate.

2.7 FITTINGS

- A. General: Comply with ASTM F 626.
- B. Post and Line Caps: Provide for each post.
 - 1. Line post caps with loop to receive tension wire or top rail.
- C. Rail and Brace Ends: Attach rails securely to each gate, corner, pull, and end post.
- D. Rail Fittings: Provide the following:
 - 1. Top Rail Sleeves: Pressed-steel or round-steel tubing or Aluminum Alloy 6063 not less than 6 inches long.
 - 2. Rail Clamps: Line and corner boulevard clamps for connecting intermediate and bottom rails in the fence line-to-line posts.
- E. Tension and Brace Bands: Pressed steel or Aluminum Alloy 6063.
- F. Tension Bars: Steel or Aluminum, length not less than 2 inches shorter than full height of chain-link fabric. Provide one bar for each gate and end post, and two for each corner and pull post, unless fabric is integrally woven into post.
- G. Truss Rod Assemblies: Steel, hot-dip galvanized after threading or Mill-finished aluminum rod and turnbuckle or other means of adjustment.
- H. Tie Wires, Clips, and Fasteners: According to ASTM F 626.
 - 1. Standard Round Wire Ties: For attaching chain-link fabric to posts, rails, and frames, complying with the following:
 - a. Hot-Dip Galvanized Steel: 0.148-inch-diameter wire; galvanized coating thickness matching coating thickness of chain-link fence fabric].
 - b. Aluminum: ASTM B 211; Alloy 1350-H19; 0.192-inch- diameter, mill-finished wire.
- I. Finish:
 - 1. Metallic Coating for Pressed Steel or Cast Iron: Not less than 1.2 oz. /sq. ft. zinc.
 - 2. Aluminum: Mill finish.

2.8 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

- A. Materials: Portland cement complying with ASTM C 150, Type I aggregates complying with ASTM C 33, and potable water for ready-mixed concrete complying with ASTM C 94/C. Measure, batch, and mix Project-site-mixed concrete according to ASTM C 94/C.
 - 1. Concrete Mixes: Normal-weight concrete air entrained with not less than 3000-psi compressive strength 28 days, 3-inch slump, and 1-inch maximum size aggregate.
- B. Materials: Dry-packaged concrete mix complying with ASTM C 387 for normal-weight concrete mixed with potable water according to manufacturer's written instructions.

2.9 GROUT AND ANCHORING CEMENT

- A. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Premixed, factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107. Provide grout, recommended in writing by manufacturer, for exterior applications.
- B. Erosion-Resistant Anchoring Cement: Factory-packaged, nonshrink, nonstaining, hydraulic-controlled expansion cement formulation for mixing with potable water at Project site to create pourable anchoring, patching, and grouting compound. Provide formulation that is resistant to erosion from water exposure without needing protection by a sealer or waterproof coating and that is recommended in writing by manufacturer, for exterior applications.

2.10 FENCE GROUNDING

- A. Conductors: Bare, solid wire for No. 6 AWG and smaller; stranded wire for No. 4 AWG and larger.
 - 1. Material above Finished Grade: Aluminum.
 - 2. Material on or below Finished Grade: Copper.
 - 3. Bonding Jumpers: Braided copper tape, 1 inch wide, woven of No. 30 AWG bare copper wire, terminated with copper ferrules.
- B. Connectors and Grounding Rods: Comply with UL 467.
 - 1. Connectors for Below-Grade Use: Exothermic welded type.
 - 2. Grounding Rods: Copper-clad steel.
 - a. Size: 5/8 by 96 inches.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for site clearing, earthwork, pavement work, and other conditions affecting performance.

1. Do not begin installation before final grading is completed, unless otherwise permitted by Architect.
2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Stake locations of fence lines, gates, and terminal posts. Do not exceed intervals of 500 feet or line of sight between stakes. Indicate locations of utilities, lawn sprinkler system, underground structures, benchmarks, and property monuments.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install chain-link fencing to comply with ASTM F 567 and more stringent requirements specified.
 1. Install fencing on established boundary lines inside property line.

3.4 CHAIN-LINK FENCE INSTALLATION

- A. Post Excavation: Drill or hand-excavate holes for posts to diameters and spacings indicated, in firm, undisturbed soil.
- B. Post Setting: Set posts in concrete at indicated spacing into firm, undisturbed soil.
 1. Verify that posts are set plumb, aligned, and at correct height and spacing, and hold in position during setting with concrete or mechanical devices.
 2. Concrete Fill: Place concrete around posts to dimensions indicated and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Protect aboveground portion of posts from concrete splatter.
 - a. Exposed Concrete: Extend 2 inches above grade; shape and smooth to shed water.
 - b. Concealed Concrete: Top 2 inches below grade to allow covering with surface material.
 - c. Posts Set into Concrete in Sleeves: Use steel pipe sleeves preset and anchored into concrete for installing posts. After posts have been inserted into sleeves, fill annular space between post and sleeve with nonshrink, non-metallic grout or anchoring cement, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions, and finished sloped to drain water away from post.
 - d. Posts Set into Voids in Concrete: Form or core drill holes not less than 5 inches deep and 3/4 inch larger than OD of post. Clean holes of loose material, insert posts, and fill annular space between post and concrete with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout or anchoring cement, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions, and finished sloped to drain water away from post.
- C. Terminal Posts: Locate terminal end, corner, and gate posts per ASTM F 567 and terminal pull posts at changes in horizontal or vertical alignment of 15 degrees or more.
- D. Line Posts: Space line posts uniformly at 10 feet o.c.

- E. Post Bracing and Intermediate Rails: Install according to ASTM F 567, maintaining plumb position and alignment of fencing. Install braces at end and gate posts and at both sides of corner and pull posts.
 - 1. Locate horizontal braces at midheight of fabric 8 feet or higher, on fences with top rail and at 2/3 fabric height on fences without top rail. Install so posts are plumb when diagonal rod is under proper tension.
- F. Tension Wire: Install according to ASTM F 567, maintaining plumb position and alignment of fencing. Pull wire taut, without sags. Fasten fabric to tension wire with 0.120-inch-diameter hog rings of same material and finish as fabric wire, spaced a maximum of 24 inches o.c. Install tension wire in locations indicated before stretching fabric.
 - 1. Top Tension Wire: Install tension wire through post cap loops.
 - 2. Bottom Tension Wire: Install tension wire within 6 inches of bottom of fabric and tie to each post with not less than same diameter and type of wire.
- G. Top Rail: Install according to ASTM F 567, maintaining plumb position and alignment of fencing. Run rail continuously through line post caps, bending to radius for curved runs and terminating into rail end attached to posts or post caps fabricated to receive rail at terminal posts. Provide expansion couplings as recommended in writing by fencing manufacturer.
- H. Bottom Rails: Install, spanning between posts.
- I. Chain-Link Fabric: Apply fabric to inside of enclosing framework. Leave 2 inches between finish grade or surface and bottom selvage, unless otherwise indicated. Pull fabric taut and tie to posts, rails, and tension wires. Anchor to framework so fabric remains under tension after pulling force is released.
- J. Tension or Stretcher Bars: Thread through fabric and secure to end, corner, pull, and gate posts with tension bands spaced not more than 15 inches o.c.
- K. Tie Wires: Use wire of proper length to firmly secure fabric to line posts and rails. Attach wire at 1 end to chain-link fabric, wrap wire around post a minimum of 180 degrees, and attach other end to chain-link fabric per ASTM F 626. Bend ends of wire to minimize hazard to individuals and clothing.
 - 1. Maximum Spacing: Tie fabric to line posts at 12 inches o.c. and to braces at 24 inches o.c.
- L. Fasteners: Install nuts for tension bands and carriage bolts on the side of the fence opposite the fabric side. Peen ends of bolts or score threads to prevent removal of nuts.

3.5 GATE INSTALLATION

- A. Install gates according to manufacturer's written instructions, level, plumb, and secure for full opening without interference. Attach fabric as for fencing. Attach hardware using tamper-resistant or concealed means. Install ground-set items in concrete for anchorage. Adjust hardware for smooth operation and lubricate where necessary.

3.6 GROUNDING AND BONDING

- A. Fence Grounding: Install at maximum intervals of 1500 feet except as follows:
 - 1. Fences within 100 Feet of Buildings, Structures, Walkways, and Roadways: Ground at maximum intervals of 750 feet .
 - a. Gates and Other Fence Openings: Ground fence on each side of opening.
 - 1) Bond metal gates to gate posts.
 - 2) Bond across openings, with and without gates, except openings indicated as intentional fence discontinuities. Use No. 2 AWG wire and bury it at least 18 inches below finished grade.
- B. Protection at Crossings of Overhead Electrical Power Lines: Ground fence at location of crossing and at a maximum distance of 150 feet on each side of crossing.
- C. Fences Enclosing Electrical Power Distribution Equipment: Ground as required by IEEE C2, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Grounding Method: At each grounding location, drive a grounding rod vertically until the top is 6 inches below finished grade. Connect rod to fence with No. 6 AWG conductor. Connect conductor to each fence component at the grounding location, including the following:
- E. Bonding Method for Gates: Connect bonding jumper between gate post and gate frame.
- F. Connections: Make connections so possibility of galvanic action or electrolysis is minimized. Select connectors, connection hardware, conductors, and connection methods so metals in direct contact will be galvanically compatible.
 - 1. Use electroplated or hot-tin-coated materials to ensure high conductivity and to make contact points closer in order of galvanic series.
 - 2. Make connections with clean, bare metal at points of contact.
 - 3. Make aluminum-to-steel connections with stainless-steel separators and mechanical clamps.
 - 4. Make aluminum-to-galvanized-steel connections with tin-plated copper jumpers and mechanical clamps.
 - 5. Coat and seal connections having dissimilar metals with inert material to prevent future penetration of moisture to contact surfaces.
- G. Bonding to Lightning Protection System: If fence terminates at lightning-protected building or structure, ground the fence and bond the fence grounding conductor to lightning protection down conductor or lightning protection grounding conductor complying with NFPA 780.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Grounding-Resistance Testing: Engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field quality-control testing.
 - 1. Grounding-Resistance Tests: Subject completed grounding system to a megger test at each grounding location. Measure grounding resistance not less than two full days after last trace of precipitation, without soil having been moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical

treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural grounding resistance.
Perform tests by two-point method according to IEEE 81.

2. Excessive Grounding Resistance: If resistance to grounding exceeds specified value, notify Architect promptly. Include recommendations for reducing grounding resistance and a proposal to accomplish recommended work.
3. Report: Prepare test reports certified by a testing agency of grounding resistance at each test location. Include observations of weather and other phenomena that may affect test results.

3.8 ADJUSTING

- A. Gate: Adjust gate to operate smoothly, easily, and quietly, free of binding, warp, excessive deflection, distortion, nonalignment, misplacement, disruption, or malfunction, throughout entire operational range. Confirm that latches and locks engage accurately and securely without forcing or binding.
- B. Lubricate hardware and other moving parts.

3.9 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain gates.

END OF SECTION 32 31 13

SECTION 328400

PLANTING IRRIGATION

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes piping, valves, sprinklers, lawn sprinkler specialties, controls, and wiring.

1.2 DEFINITION

1. Circuit Piping: Downstream from control valves to sprinklers, specialties, and drain valves. Piping is under pressure during flow.
2. Drain Piping: Downstream from circuit-piping drain valves. Piping is not under pressure.
3. Mainline Piping: Downstream from point of connection to water distribution piping to and including control valves. Piping is under water distribution system pressure.

1.3 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Minimum Water Coverage:
 1. Irrigation heads in lawn areas shall be spaced 85% of the radius for rotors and 90% of the radius for spray heads.
 2. Shrubs perennials and groundcovers shall have adequate water applied to the root zones to ensure plant health and development.
- B. The irrigation system shall provide the manufacturer's recommended minimum operation pressure to every irrigation head.
- C. Location of Sprinklers and Specialties: Design location is approximate. Make minor adjustments necessary to avoid plantings and obstructions such as signs and light standards.
- D. Minimum Working Pressures: The following are minimum pressure requirements for piping, valves, and specialties, unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Pressure Piping: 200 psig.
 2. Circuit Piping: 150 psig.
 3. Drain Piping: 100 psig.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include pressure rating, rated capacity, settings, and electrical data of selected models for the following:
 1. Valves. Include above ground and underground; general-duty, manual and automatic control, and quick-coupler types.
 2. Valve boxes.
 3. Backflow Preventer

4. Sprinklers
 5. Specialties.
 6. Flow sensor
 7. Controllers
 8. Weather Station
 9. Piping
- B. Maintenance Data: Include in maintenance manuals specified in Division 1. Include data for the following:
1. Submit three (3) copies of typewritten instructions, bound in suitable sized ring binders, recommending procedures to be established by the owner for the maintenance of the system from year to year. This shall include complete instructions for system operation and maintenance, including winterizing and complete instructions on how to drain entire backflow preventer to prevent freezing. Submit manuals with Record Drawings. The manual shall also contain:
 - a. Identification readable from the outside of the cover stating by whom the information was compiled.
 - b. Neatly type-written index near the front of the manual, furnishing immediate information as to the location in the manual of all emergency data regarding the installation.
 - c. Complete nomenclature of all replaceable parts, their part numbers, current cost, and name and address of the nearest vendor of replacement parts.
 - d. Complete outline of future watering schedules and when they should be changed from the initial installation schedule. The initial schedule is calculated for a watering rate to establish new lawn.
 - e. Copy of all guarantees and warranties issued on the installation showing all dates of expiration.
- C. Record Drawing
1. As installation occurs, prepare accurate record drawings to be submitted prior to final inspection, including:
 - a. Detail and dimension changes made during construction.
 - b. Significant details and dimensions not shown in the approved Contract Documents.
 - c. Field dimensioned locations of valve boxes, manual drains, automatic drain valves, quick-coupler valves, control wire runs not in mainline ditch, and both ends of sleeves.
 - d. Take dimensions from permanent constructed surfaces or edges located at or above finish grade.
 - e. Take and record dimensions at time of installation.
 2. Provide reduced copy of record drawing at half-size with color key circuits, and laminate both sides with 5 mil thick or heavier plastic. Mount on 1/4-inch plywood board. Drill two (2) one half inch holes at top of board and hang on hooks in Custodial Room or as directed by Architect.

1.5 GUARANTEE

- A. Submit one-year written guarantee signed by Underground Sprinkler Contractor, agreeing to repair or replace all defects in material, equipment and workmanship.
- B. Guarantee shall also cover repair of damage to any part of the premises resulting from leaks or other defects in material, equipment and workmanship to the satisfaction of the Owner. Repairs, if required, shall be done promptly at no cost to the Owner.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of irrigation, piping, and irrigation components based on specific types and models indicated.
- B. Work and materials shall be in accordance with latest rules and regulations, and other applicable state or local laws. Nothing in approved Contract Documents is to be construed to permit work not conforming to these codes.
- C. Pre-Installation Meeting: Schedule meeting after excavation of trenches and installation of sleeves, but prior to installation of pipe.

1.7 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Maintain uninterrupted water service to building during normal working hours. Arrange for temporary water shutoff with Owner.
- B. Coordinate lawn irrigation piping with work specified in Division 2 Section "Landscaping."
- C. Coordinate lawn irrigation piping with utility work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Backfill Material

1. Backfill for irrigation pipe in the landscape shall consist of sand, native material or topsoil with no rocks larger than 1/4 inch in any dimension for pipe bedding haunches and initial backfill above the pipe. Above the initial back fill, the trench shall be filled soil with not debris or rocks greater than 1 1/2 in any direction. Architect shall approve on-site material for backfill operation
2. Backfill for irrigation sleeves under pavement shall consist of granular material with not rock size larger 1/4 inch in any dimension up to the base for the paving above the pipe.
3. Imported backfill material, as required, shall be clean soil, free from organic material, trash, debris, rubbish, broken cement, asphalt material, or other objectionable substances and approved by the Architect.

B. Drainage Fill Material

1. 3/4-inch washed gravel.

2.2 COMPONENTS

A. Pipe and Fittings:

1. Pipe shall be continuously and permanently marked with Manufacturer's name, size, schedule, type, and working pressure.
2. All irrigation piping shall be Schedule 40 PVC for pipe sizes 1" through 3" and class 200 for pipe sizes 4" and larger.
3. Mainlines shall have PVC schedule 40 fitting for pipe sizes 1" through 1 1/2", PVC schedule 80 for pipe sizes 2" through 3".
4. Remote Control Valve connection to mainline shall be PVC SST tee or epoxy coated double strap saddle.

B. Pipe Connection Material:

1. P-70 primer.
2. 711 solvent/glue

3. Teflon Tape
- C. Sleeves:
1. Schedule 40 PVC pipe. Sleeve diameter shall be two times larger than pipe that is to be installed in sleeve. For sleeves under 4" diameter shall be PVC schedule 40. For sleeves 4" and larger shall be Class 200 PVC or PVC Sewer Pipe
 2. Wire sleeves shall be 2inch PVC pipe or electrical tubing.
- D. Sprinkler Heads:
1. Spray Heads: Rain Bird RD1800 P30, HE VAN, U Series, MPR, for all spray sprinkler heads.
 2. Rain Bird RVAN 1724, RVAN, RVAN-14 Rotary Nozzles and 5000 MPR.
- E. Sprinkler Risers:
1. Quick coupling valves shall have an adjustable riser, three ell swing joint assembly, unless detailed otherwise on the Drawings. These swing joint fittings shall be schedule 80 gray PVC for nipples and elbows unless otherwise approved. Horizontal nipple parallel to side of lateral line shall be 8 inches long minimum. All other nipples on swing joint riser shall be of length required for proper installation of quick coupling valve.
 2. Stationary spray pop-up sprinkler heads, shrub spray heads, stationary spray sprinkler heads and rotors heads shall have risers made up one of the following ways:
 - a. Risers for irrigation heads with inlet size of 1/2 inch shall be swing pipe 14 inches long minimum and 24 inches maximum. Swing pipe with spiral barb fittings and street ell shall be assembled according to plan details. Equal as approved by Architect before bidding.
 - b. Riser for irrigation heads with 3/4 to 1 inch inlets shall have a swing joint assembly. Install according to details on drawings.
- F. Valves:
1. Remote Control Valves: Rain Bird PEB-PRS-D with pressure regulation.
 2. Manual Drain Valves: Nibco Brass Ball Gas Cock with Teflon seat or approved equal. Brass ball valve shall have "T" handle on main lines and shall be in valve boxes on lateral lines.
 3. Isolation Valves with cross handles: Matco-Norca 513T bronze gate valve or approved equal.
 4. Quick Coupling Valve: Rainbird 44NP on secondary water systems or 44LRC on culinary water systems or approved equal with corresponding 2049 unlock key and 44K valve key.
 5. Stop and Waste Valve: 2" Mueller Mark II Oriseal.
 6. Flow Sensor Rainbird FS-150-P.
 7. Master Valve: Rainbird PEB valve.
- G. Valve Boxes:
1. For manual drain ball valve - 6" diameter valve box with appropriate lid. Larger size or square if required for access to valve handles.
 2. For circuit and valves – Carson1220 Jumbo Box or approved equal.
 3. For isolation and quick coupler valves – 10 "diameter valve box with appropriate lid.
 4. Valve box supports - Standard size fired clay paving bricks without holes.
 5. All valve boxes are to have locking lids.
- H. Drip Irrigation:
1. Drip Irrigation Valves: Rain Bird X CZ-100 PRB-COM.
 2. Drip Tubing shall be:
 - a. Rain Bird XT 700 distribution tubing or approved equal.
 - b. Rain Bird 1/4-inch distribution tubing or approved equal.
 3. Drip tubing fittings shall be:
 - a. Rain Bird barbed insert fitting or Rain Bird compression fitting.

- b. Rain Bird 1/4-inch barb transfer fittings.
 - c. Figure 8 closure for end of line.
 - d. Rain Bird removable flush cap.
 - e. Rain Bird diffuser bug cap
 - f. Rain Bird 1/4-inch tubing stake.
 - g. Drip line tie downs stake shall be Rain Bird TDS-50 with bent 12 gauge galvanized steel staple or approved equal.
4. Drip emitter shall be Rain Bird Xeribug XB-PC or Rain Bird pressure compensating modules.
 5. Drip outlet devices shall be Rain Bird Xeri-Bird 8 multi-outlet or 6 outlet manifolds.
 6. Inline Drip Line shall be Rain Bird XFS-O4-18 Dripline. Install on the soil surface.

I. Control wires:

1. Two Wire Cable:
 - a. Control cable from controller to valve decoders shall be 14-guage Rainbird Maxi-Cable.
 - b. Install all two-wire cable in electrical conduit. Place a coupling fitting on the ends of the pipe to protect wire jacket from sharp edges of the pipe when it is pulled through.
 - c. Control wire from decoder to irrigation valve shall be UF-UL listed, copper conductor direct burial size 14. Color code each valve's wire differently from other valve wires in a decoder group. Do not use green color-coded wire.
 - d. All wire splices shall be made with 3M DBY-6 waterproof connectors.
 - e. Surge protectors shall be Rain Bird LSP-1, FD-401 TURF or FD-601 TURF with built in surge protection.
 - f. All two wire lines shall have Decoder Cable Fuse Devices at indicated intervals for line maintenance and grounding the two-wire line.
2. Single strand Control Wires between decoders and valves:
 - g. Control wire shall be UF-UL listed, color coded copper conductor direct burial size 14. Do not use green color-coded wire.
 - h. All wire splices shall be made with 3M DBY-6 waterproof connectors.

J. Expansion Curls:

1. Expansion curls shall be provided within three (3) feet of each wire connection to solenoid and at least every three hundred (300) feet in length. Expansion curls are formed by wrapping 36" of wire around a rod or pipe 1" or more in diameter, then withdrawing the rod for single strand wire and loosely coiled for two wire cable).

K. Automatic Controller:

1. Rainbird ESP-LXD Decoder Controller.
2. Rainbird ETC-LX Cartridge.
3. Rainbird FD-TURF Two-Wire Decoders.

L. Backflow Preventer: Zurn 375 XLB reduced-pressure backflow assembly.

1. Submit other components recommended by Manufacturer for Architect's review and acceptance prior to installation.
2. Provide components necessary to complete and make system operational.

M. WYE Strainer:

1. Zurn model SXL WYE Strainer

N. Flow Sensor:

1. See Irrigation Schedule for Flow Sensor.

O. Rain Freeze Sensor:

1. See Irrigation Schedule for Rain Freeze Sensor.

P. Other Components:

1. Submit other components recommended by Manufacturer for Architect's review and acceptance prior to installation.
2. Provide components necessary to complete and make system operational.
3. If required, provide pressure booster pump and all associated equipment as required to make pump operational.
4. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents. Deliver extra materials to Owner.
 - a. Two valve box cover keys.
 - b. Two quick coupler keys with brass hose swivel.
 - c. Two manual drain valve keys.
 - d. Two sets of sprinkler wrenches for adjusting, cleaning or disassembly of each type of sprinkler.
 - e. Two each of any other tools required for any other equipment.

2.3 MIXES

A. Concrete for Thrust Blocks on irrigation pipe 3" and larger:

1. One cu. ft. cement, 2 cu. ft. sand, 4 cu. ft. gravel, and 5 gallons minimum to 6 gallons maximum water.
2. Mix thoroughly before placing.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Site Verification of Conditions: Perform pressure test at stub-out on main water line provided for irrigation system, or at near-by fire hydrant.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. During construction and storage, protect materials from damage and prolonged exposure to sunlight.
- B. Work damaged during course of work of this Section shall be replaced or repaired at no additional cost to Owner. If damaged work is new, repair or replacement shall be performed by installer of original work.
- C. All lateral lines shall run as is possible within planting areas and avoid conflict with the location of plant materials. Where trenching is required in proximity to plant materials care shall be taken to avoid damage to roots. Do not cut existing tree roots measuring over 2 inches in diameter.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. TRENCHING AND BACKFILLING

1. Pulling of pipe is not permitted.
2. When digging on project site, the area shall be "Blue Staked" to identify the approximate location of all known underground utilities and structures.

3. Excavation work shall be as deep and as wide as required to safely perform the work, such as making main line connections or forming vaults. Where trenching is done in established lawn; care shall be taken to keep the trenches only as wide as is necessary to accomplish the work.
4. If more than one line is required in a single trench, that trench shall be deep and wide enough to allow for at least 3 inches of separation between pipes. Install the piping in a manner for easy repair in the future.
5. Over-excavate trenches 2 inches and bring back to indicated depth by filling with backfill material as specified under PART 2 - PRODUCTS. Separate out rocks larger than 1-1/2 inch in any direction uncovered in trenching operation from excavated material and remove from areas to receive landscaping.
6. Cover pipe both top and sides with 2 inches of backfill material as specified under PART 2 - PRODUCTS. Place and compact remainder of backfill to within 5 inches of finish grade as specified in Related Sections. Top 5 inches of backfill shall be topsoil as specified in Related Section.
7. Do not cover pressure main, sprinkler pipe, or fittings until pressure test has been completed and Architect has inspected and approved the system.
8. All trenches shall be backfilled and then saturated with water sufficiently to insure no settling of the surface after lawn is planted.
9. Any existing utility lines damaged during excavating or trenching shall be repaired immediately after notification of the utility owner and to his/her satisfaction. Should utility lines be encountered, which are not indicated on the plans, the Project Representative shall be notified. The repair of any damage shall be done as soon as possible by the Contractor or the utility owner, and proper compensation will be negotiated by the Owner. Such utility locations shall be noted on the "as built" drawings.

B. EXCAVATION BEYOND EXCAVATION LIMITS

1. Where it becomes necessary to excavate beyond the limits of normal excavation lines to remove rock or other interfering objects, the void remaining after the removal of the object shall be backfilled with suitable material and compacted as per the "Earthwork" section and this specification section. The removal of all rock or other interfering objects and the backfilling of voids left by such removals shall be at the expense of the Contractor.

C. SLEEVING

1. Contractor is responsible to coordinate the installation of the sleeving with the work of other trades, (i.e., concrete, asphalt paving, etc.).
2. Sleeve irrigation water lines and control wires under walks and paving. Extend sleeves 6 inches minimum beyond walk or pavement edge. Cap sleeves until pipes and wires are installed to keep sleeve clean and free of dirt and debris.
3. Use one water pipe maximum per sleeve. Sleeve control wiring in separate sleeve.
4. Position sleeves with respect to buildings and other obstructions so pipe can be easily removed.

D. GRADES AND DRAINING

1. Slope piping so system can be completely drained.
 - a. Slope pipe to drain to control valve box where possible.
 - b. Where this is not possible, slope pipe to a minimum number of low points. At these low points, install:
 - 1) 3/4-inch manual drain.
 - 2) Install 2-inch Class 200 PVC pipe over top of manual drain and cut at finish grade.
 - 3) Install rubber valve cap marker flush with finished grade.
 - 4) Provide pea gravel sump at outlet of each manual or automatic drain. Sump shall be 1 cubic foot of gravel with top of gravel 6 inches below drain.
 - 5) Do not use automatic drain valves.
 - c. Slope pipes under parking areas or driveways to drain outside these areas.

E. PIPE INSTALLATION

1. Install pipe in manner to provide for expansion and contraction as recommended by Manufacturer.
2. Unless otherwise indicated on approved Drawings, install main lines and lateral lines connecting rotor pop-up sprinklers with minimum cover of 18 inches based on finished grade. Install remaining lateral lines with minimum of 12 inches of cover based on finish grade.
3. Install pipe and wires under driveways or parking areas in specified sleeves 18 inches minimum below finish grade or as shown on approved Drawings.
4. Locate sprinkler heads no closer than 12 inches from building foundation. Heads immediately adjacent to mow strips, walks, or curbs shall be one inch below top of mow strip, walk, or curb and have one to 3 inches clearance between head and mow strip, walk, or curb.
5. Cut plastic pipe square. Remove burrs at cut ends prior to installation so unobstructed flow will result.
6. Make solvent weld joints as follows:
 - a. Do not make solvent weld joints if ambient temperature is below 40 deg. F.
 - b. Clean mating pipe and fitting with clean, dry cloth and apply one coat of P-70 primer to each.
 - c. Apply uniform coat of 711 solvent to outside of pipe.
 - d. Apply solvent to fitting in a similar manner.
 - e. Re-apply light coat of solvent to pipe and quickly insert into fitting.
 - f. Give pipe or fitting a quarter turn to insure even distribution of solvent and make sure pipe is inserted to full depth of fitting socket.
 - g. Hold in position for 15 seconds minimum or long enough to secure joint.
 - h. Wipe off solvent appearing at outer shoulder of fitting.
 - i. Do not use excessive amount of solvent thereby causing obstruction to form on inside of pipe.
 - j. Allow joints to set at least 24 hours before applying pressure to PVC pipe.
7. Treaded connections shall be made with teflon tape.

F. BACKFLOW PREVENTER INSTALLATION

1. Install backflow preventer per manufacturer's recommendation and state and local codes.
2. Set the height of the backflow preventer to provide a minimum clearance of 12 inches between the bottom of the backflow preventer and the ground below and 4 inches of clearance between the top of the backflow preventer and the top of the backflow preventer enclosure.

G. IRRIGATION CONTROLLER

1. Install irrigation controller per manufacturer's recommendation and with proper grounding for surge and lightning protection.

H. EARTH GROUNDING:

1. Earth Grounding rods and/or plate(s) shall provide a minimum resistance of 10 ohms or less. A minimum of one rod is required but second rod a plate or multiple rods and plates may be required if the rods or plates resistance are over 10 ohms.
2. Ground rods and plats shall be attached to ground wire by Cadweld Connection.
3. Electrical discharge areas for rods and plates are to be kept moist. Install in lawn area or provide irrigation for to maintain soil moisture as needed.
4. Install Ground Enhancement Materials if necessary to improve soil conductivity.
5. Provide inground surge protection for irrigation controller as per details and environmental conditions.
6. Install in line surge protectors for two wire control systems every 500 feet or every 5 decoders which every is smallest and at the end of each two-wire path over 25'.
7. Install earth grounding according to manufacturer's recommendations.

I. FLOW SENSOR

1. Install flow sensor per manufactures' recommendations'. Set flow sensor in a location where there is at least 10 upstream and 5 downstream diameters of pipe having a straight uninterrupted flow.

J. Rain Freeze Sensor

1. Install flow sensor per manufactures' recommendations'.

K. REMOTE CONTROL VALVES AND VALVE BOXES

1. Install control wires, and valves in accordance with Manufacturer's recommendations and per electrical code.
2. Install valves, in plastic boxes with locking reinforced heavy-duty plastic covers. Locate valve box tops at finish grade. Do not install more than two valves in a single box.
3. Place gravel a minimum of 6 inches deep below valve for drainage. Extend washed gravel 3 inch minimum beyond limits of valve box. \Maintain 4 inch minimum between bottom of valve and top of gravel and 3 inches minimum clearance between the top of the valve to the bottom of valve cover. Set valve boxes over valve so all parts of valve can be reached for service. Set cover of valve box even with finish grade. Valve box shall be reasonably free from dirt and debris.
4. Install 3/4-inch brass ball valve in valve box on downstream side of automatic valves if lateral line slopes toward valve box.

L. WIRING

1. Install all two-wire cable in electrical conduit.
2. Place all waterproof wire splice connectors inside valve boxes.
3. Install Decoder Cable Fuse Device in a splice box at all junction in the two-wire path and in all long runs. Properly ground the Decoder Cable Fuse Device.

M. OTHER VALVES

1. Install quick coupling valves in appropriate locations in valve boxes.
2. Install isolation valves, Master control Valves and Flow Sensors according to details plans and manufactures recommendations.
3. Install any other equipment required by local authorities according to local codes and requirements in order to make this system complete

N. SPRINKLER HEADS

1. Prior to installation of sprinkler heads, open control valves and use full head of water to flush out system.
2. Set sprinkler heads and quick-coupling valves perpendicular to finish grade.
3. Do not install sprinklers using side inlets. Install using base inlets only.
4. Set sprinkler heads at a consistent distance from existing walks, curbs, and other paved areas and to grade. See "Pipe Installation" section.

O. SPRINKLER HEADS

1. Prior to installation of sprinkler heads, open control valves and use full head of water to flush out system.

P. TREE DRIP LINES

1. Install tree inline drip rings according to manufactures' recommendations and project details.

Q. DRIP IRRIGATION

1. Drip irrigation components shall be installed according to manufactures' recommendations and project details.
 - a. Place tubing on top of landscape fabric and under planting bed mulch.
 - b. All drip tubing shall be held in place by soil staples. Soil staples shall conform to the following:
 - i. Sandy Soil: One staple every three (3) feet and two (2) staples on each change of direction (tee, elbow or cross).
 - ii. Loam Soil: one staple every four (4) feet and two (2) staples on each change of direction (tee, elbow or cross).
 - iii. Clay Soil: one staple every five (5) feet and two (2) staples on each change of direction (tee, elbow or cross).
 - c. Join all ends of tubing when possible. Install a removable flushing cap at points on the system to drain the tubing. At ends not used for flushing install a figure eight closure.
2. Point source drip line emitters installation shall conform to the following:
 - a. All drip tubing shall have bug cap at end of 1/4 inch distribution tubing.
 - b. All drip tubing shall be held above mulch by 1/4 inch tubing stake.
 - c. Install point source drip according to irrigation schedule.
 - d. Space the point of water application evenly around the plants.
 - e. For trees requiring emitter flows greater than 2 gph install a water well to hold the water so it can adequately soak in.
3. Inline drip tubing installation shall conform to the following:
 - a. Inline drip lines shall have a minimum of one line-flushing valve on each exhaust header and an air / vacuum relief valve at all high points in the system.

R. TESTING

1. Notify Architect two working days minimum prior to testing.
2. Test pressure lines at 100 psi minimum for 6 hours minimum and make certain there are no leaks before backfilling.
3. After backfilling, perform an operating test of the entire system. Operate the entire system through one cycle of the controller for checking coverage and assuring the absence of leaks. Repair water lines, valves, or connections which show evidence of leakage.
4. Any portion of the system which shows defects or leakage shall be repaired to the satisfaction of the Architect and the Owner or be replaced. After all repairs or replacements have been made and approved by the Architect, the above required test shall be made again.

S. ADJUSTMENT

1. Adjust heads to proper grade when turf is sufficiently established to allow walking on it without appreciable harm. Such lowering or raising of heads shall be part of original contract with no additional cost to Owner.
2. Adjust sprinkler heads for proper distribution and so spray does not fall on building.
3. Adjust watering time of valves to provide proper amounts of water to all plants.

T. SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

1. At the point of substantial completion of work outlined in these plans, the landscape contractor shall contact owner representative and arrange for a walk through, to verify the property installation of the system. A coverage test will be done, and the system installation inspected and a punch list of final items needing completion made.

U. FINAL INSPECTION

1. Final inspection at the end of work shall be made with the owner's representative and irrigation contractor. A letter of acceptance shall be given by the owner to the contractor at the completion of the punch list and the delivery of as-built irrigation plans.

V. AS-BUILT

1. The Contractor shall keep as work is installed, an accurate record of exact dimensioned locations, grades, elevations, color of hot and spare wires, splice boxes and the size of all underground piping, valves and drains. Dimensions shall be indicated distances from columns, buildings, curbs and similar permanent features on the site. This information shall be recorded on a print as the work progresses, but shall be permanently recorded in an AutoCAD format, which shall be given to the Project Representative before the project is accepted along with two paper copies.

W. CLEAN-UP

1. Remove from site all debris resulting from work of this section.

END OF SECTION 02810

SECTION 329113

SOIL PREPARATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This section includes:
1. Perform soil preparation work.
 2. Furnish and apply soil amendments.
 3. Perform fine grading work required to prepare site for paving finish grading and for landscape finish grading.

1.2 REFERENCES

- A. Reference Standards:
1. ASTM International:
 - a. ASTM D1557-09, 'Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Product literature and chemical /nutrient analysis of soil amendments and fertilizers.
- B. Informational Submittals:
1. Field Quality Control Submittals:
 - a. Submit tests on imported and site topsoil by licensed laboratory before use.
 - 1) Before use, topsoil shall meet minimum specified requirements and be approved by Architect.
 - 2) If necessary, submit proposed amendments and application rates necessary to bring topsoil up to minimum specified requirements.
 - b. Submit report stating location of source of imported topsoil and account of recent use.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Topsoil:
1. Topsoil used in landscaped areas, whether imported, stockpiled, or in place, shall be fertile, loose, friable soil meeting the following criteria:
 - a. Chemical Characteristics:
 - 1) Acidity / alkalinity range: pH 5.5 to 8.0.
 - 2) Soluble Salts: less than 3.0 mmhos/cm.
 - 3) Sodium Absorption Ratio (SAR): less than 6.0.
 - 4) Organic Matter: greater than one percent.
 - b. Physical Characteristics:
 - 1) Gradation as defined by USDA triangle of physical characteristics as measured by hydrometer.
 - a) Sand: 15 to 60 percent
 - b) Silt: 10 to 60 percent
 - c) Clay: 5 to 30 percent
 - 2) Clean and free from toxic minerals and chemicals, noxious weeds,

rocks larger than 1-1/2 inch in any dimension, and other objectionable materials.

3) Soil shall not contain more than 2 percent by volume of rocks measuring over 3/32 inch in largest size.

- c. Fertility Requirements:
 - 1) Nitrate-nitrogen ppm > 20
 - 2) Phosphorous ppm > 15
 - 3) Potassium ppm > 150
 - 4) Iron ppm > 10

B. Soil Amendments:

- 1. Incorporate following soil amendments into topsoil, either import or stockpiled, used on site. Adjust application rates and add amendments that shall bring the soil to comply with soils test:
 - a. Acceptable Soil Amendments And Application Rates:
 - 1) Sulfur - 0.5 lbs. per 1000 sq. ft.
 - 2) Equal as approved by Architect before installation.
 - b. Acceptable Fertilizers And Application Rates:
 - 1) Lawns: Phosphorus 1-2 lbs per 1000 sq. ft., Potassium 2 lbs. per 1000 sq.ft., and Nitrogen 2-4 lbs. per 1000 sq. ft.
 - 2) Shrubs: Phosphorus 1-2 lbs per 1000 sq. ft., Potassium 2 lbs. per 1000 sq.ft., and Nitrogen 1-2 lbs. per 1000 sq. ft.
 - 3) Equal as approved by Architect before installation.
 - c. Acceptable Soil Conditioners And Application Rates:
 - 1) Type One Acceptable Products.
 - a) Soil conditioner that meets the required fertilizer and soil amendments stated above can be used at the discretion of the contractor.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PERFORMANCE

A. Protection of In-Place Conditions: Protect utilities and site elements from damage.

B. Soil Amendments:

- 1. Add specified soil amendments at specified rates to lawn areas.
- 2. Roto-till or otherwise mix amendments evenly into top 4 inches of topsoil.
- 3. Incorporate and leach soil amendments which require leaching, such as gypsum, within such time limits that soil is sufficiently dry to allow proper application of fertilizer and soil conditioners.

C. Surface Preparation:

- 1. Landscaping and Planting Areas:
 - a. Before grading, dig out weeds from planting areas by their roots and remove from site. Remove rocks larger than 1-1/2 inches in size and foreign matter such as building rubble, wire, cans, sticks, concrete, etc.
 - b. Before beginning maintenance period, plants shall be in at least as sound, healthy, vigorous, and in approved condition as when delivered to site, unless accepted by Architect in writing at final landscape inspection.
 - c. Remove imported paving base material present in planting areas down to natural subgrade or other material acceptable to Architect.

D. Performance:

1. Do not expose or damage existing shrub or tree roots.
2. Tolerances:
 - a. Landscaping and Planting Tolerances:
 - 1) Maximum variation from required grades shall be 1/10 of one foot.
 - 2) To allow for final finish grades of planting areas, fine grade elevations before placing topsoil and mulch are:
 - a) Sod Areas: 5.5 inches below top of walk or curb.
 - b) Planter Bed Areas: 16 inches below top of walk or curb.
3. Do not expose or damage existing shrub or tree roots. Redistribute approved existing topsoil stored on site. Remove organic material, rocks and clods greater than 1-1/2 inch in any dimension, and other objectionable materials.
4. Slope grade away from building as specified. Direct surface drainage in manner indicated on Drawings by molding surface to facilitate natural run-off. Fill low spots and pockets with specified fill material and grade to drain properly.

END OF SECTION 329113

SECTION 329200

TURF AND GRASSES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes sodded and seeded lawns and re-vegetative plantings.

1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced Installer who has completed landscaping work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this project and with a record of successful landscape establishment.

1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaged Materials: Deliver packaged materials in containers showing weight, analysis, and name of manufacturer. Protect materials from deterioration during delivery and while stored at site.
- B. Seed: Deliver seed mixes in original containers showing analysis of seed mixture, percentage of pure live seed, year of production, net weight, date and location of packaging.
- C. Sod: Harvest, deliver, store, and handle sod according to the requirements of the American Sod Producers Association's (ASPA) "Specifications for Turfgrass Sod Materials and Transplanting/Installing."

1.4 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Utilities: Determine location of above grade and underground utilities and perform work in a manner which will avoid damage. Hand excavate, as required. Maintain grade stakes until removal is mutually agreed upon by parties concerned.
- B. Excavation: When conditions detrimental to plant growth are encountered, such as rubble fill, adverse drainage conditions, or obstructions, notify Architect before planting.

1.5 COORDINATION AND SCHEDULING

- A. Coordinate installation of planting materials during normal planting seasons for each type of plant material required.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. General Warranty: The special warranty specified in this Article shall not deprive the Owner of other rights the Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrently with, other warranties made by the Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.
- B. Special Warranty: Warrant the following living planting materials for a period of one year after date of Substantial Completion, against defects including death and unsatisfactory growth, except for defects resulting from lack of adequate maintenance, neglect, or abuse by Owner, abnormal weather conditions unusual for warranty period, or incidents that are beyond Contractor's control.
 - 1. Lawns
 - 2. Re-vegetative Areas
- C. Remove and replace dead materials immediately unless required to plant in the succeeding planting season.

- D. A limit of one replacement of each plant material will be required, except for losses or replacements due to failure to comply with requirements.

1.7 LAWN MAINTENANCE

- A. Begin maintenance of lawns immediately after each area is planted and continue until acceptable lawn is established, but for not less than the following periods:
 - 1. Sodded Lawns: 30 days after date of Substantial Completion and second full mowing has been performed.
 - 2. Seeded Lawns: 60 days after date of Substantial Completion and third full mowing has been performed.
- B. Maintain and establish lawns by watering, fertilizing, weeding, mowing, trimming, replanting, and other operations. Roll, regrade, and replant bare or eroded areas to produce a uniformly smooth lawn.
- C. Watering: Provide and maintain temporary piping, hoses, and lawn-watering equipment to convey water from sources and to keep lawns uniformly moist to a depth of 4 inches.
 - 1. Water lawn at the minimum rate of 1 inch per week.
- D. Mow lawns as soon as there is enough top growth to cut with mower set at specified height for principal species planted. Repeat mowing as required to maintain specified height without cutting more than 40 percent of the grass height. Remove no more than 40 percent of grass-leaf growth in initial or subsequent mowings. Do not delay mowing until grass blades bend over and become matted. Do not mow when grass is wet.
- E. Post-fertilization: Apply fertilizer to lawn after first mowing and when grass is dry.
 - 1. Use fertilizer that will provide actual nitrogen of at least 1 lb. per 1000 sq. ft. of lawn area.

1.8 RE-VEGETATIVE PLANTING MAINTENANCE

- A. Maintain re-vegetative plantings by watering un-mown grass a minimum of one (1) inch every two weeks and spot weeding out invasive plants. Regrade and replant bare or eroded areas to produce a uniformly vegetative stand of plants.
- B. Watering: Provide and maintain temporary piping, hoses and lawn-watering equipment to convey water from sources to keep re-vegetative seeding areas irrigated by periodically soaking the seeding area to a depth of 4 inches.
- C. Water re-vegetative grass plantings at the minimum rate of 1 inch per week. Water sloped areas frequently for short periods of time to avoid erosion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOD

- A. Certified turfgrass sod complying with ASPA specifications for machine-cut thickness, size, strength, moisture content, and mowed height, and free of weeds and undesirable native grasses. Provide viable sod of uniform density, color, and texture of the following turfgrass species, strongly rooted, and capable of vigorous growth and development when planted.
 - 1. Species: Kentucky Bluegrass (*Poa pratensis*), a minimum of three cultivars.

2.2 SEED MIX

- A. Seed Mixes shall be delivered in the original sealed packages bearing the producer's guaranteed analysis for percentage of mixtures and pure live seed. The mix shall be 99% weed free. Seed shall be labeled in conformance with U. S. Department of Agriculture rules and regulations and the Federal Seed Act and applicable state seed laws.

2.3 TOPSOIL

- A. Provide approved imported topsoil required to bring surface to specified elevation relative to walk or curb.

2.4 FERTILIZER

- A. Commercial Fertilizer: Complete fertilizer of neutral character, with some elements derived from organic sources and containing following percentages of available plant nutrients:
 - 1. For lawns, provide fertilizer with not less than 16% nitrogen (of which 50% will be organic), 16% available phosphoric acid and 8% soluble potash. Provide nitrogen in a form that will be available to lawn during initial period of growth.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas to receive landscaping for compliance with requirements and for conditions affecting performance of work of this Section. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 LAWN, DETENTION BASIN AND ORCHARD GRASS PLANTING PREPARATION

- A. Loosen sub grade to a minimum depth of 4 inches. Remove stones larger than 1-1/2 inches in any dimension and sticks, roots, rubbish, and other extraneous materials.
- B. Spread planting soil mixture to depth required to meet thickness, grades, and elevations shown, after light rolling and natural settlement. Do not spread if planting soil or sub grade is frozen.
 - 1. Place approximately 1/2 the thickness of planting soil mixture required. Work into top of loosened sub grade to create a transition layer and then place remainder of planting soil mixture.
 - 2. Allow for sod thickness in areas to be sodded.
- C. Preparation of Unchanged Grades: Where lawns are to be planted in areas unaltered or undisturbed by excavating, grading, or surface soil stripping operations, prepare soil as follows:
 - 1. Till surface soil to a depth of at least 6 inches. Apply required soil amendments and initial fertilizers and mix thoroughly into top 4 inches of soil. Trim high areas and fill in depressions. Till soil to a homogenous mixture of fine texture.
 - 2. Clean surface soil of roots, plants, sods, stones, clay lumps, and other extraneous materials harmful to plant growth.
- D. Grade lawn and grass areas to a smooth, even surface with loose, uniformly fine texture. Roll and rake, remove ridges, and fill depressions to meet finish grades. Limit fine grading to areas that can be planted in the immediate future. Remove trash, debris, stones larger than 1-1/2 inches in any dimension, and other objects that may interfere with planting or maintenance operations.
- E. Moisten prepared lawn areas before planting when soil is dry. Water thoroughly and allow surface to dry before planting. Do not create muddy soil.
- F. Restore prepared areas if eroded or otherwise disturbed after fine grading and before planting.
- G. Topsoil depth shall be a minimum of 4 inches.

3.3 SODDING NEW LAWNS

- A. Lay sod within 24 hours of stripping. Do not lay sod if dormant or if ground is frozen.
- B. Lay sod to form a solid mass with tightly fitted joints. Butt ends and sides of sod; do not stretch or overlap. Stagger sod strips or pads to offset joints in adjacent courses. Avoid damage to sub grade or sod during installation. Tamp and roll lightly to ensure contact with sub grade, eliminate air pockets, and form a smooth surface. Work sifted soil or fine sand into minor cracks between pieces of sod; remove excess to avoid smothering sod and adjacent grass.
 - 1. Lay sod across angle of slopes exceeding 1:3.
 - 2. Anchor sod on slopes exceeding 1:6 with wood pegs spaced as recommended by sod manufacturer but not less than 2 anchors per sod strip to prevent slippage.
- C. Saturate sod with fine water spray within 2 hours of planting. During first week, water daily or more frequently as necessary to maintain moist soil to a minimum depth of 1-1/2 inches below the sod.

3.4 HYDROSEED, BLUE GRAMA LAWN, ORCHARD GRASS AND DETENTION BASIN SEED MIX

- A. Seed Mix: See plant schedule for seed mix and rate of application.
- B. Hydro-seed Mulch: Wood Fiber Mulch shall be a wood material which has been shredded, pulverized, or dissolved into small fibers. The mulch shall have been processed so that it will have no germination and so that it forms a blotter-like ground cover. The material shall be air dry and contain no more than 15% moisture by weight.
- C. Combine seed mixture at the specified rate in plant schedule with wood fiber mulch at a rate of 2,000 pounds per acre and organic tackifier, filling the tank with water, agitating these materials into a well mixed slurry suspension, and spraying the mixture under pressure onto the prepared seed bed.

3.5 CLEANUP AND PROTECTION

- A. During landscaping, keep pavements clean and work area in an orderly condition.
- B. Protect landscaping from damage due to landscape operations, operations by other contractors and trades, and trespassers. Maintain protection during installation and maintenance periods. Treat, repair, or replace damaged landscape work as directed.

3.6 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS

- A. Disposal: Remove surplus soil and waste material, including excess subsoil, unsuitable soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of it off the Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 329200

SECTION 329300

PLANTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes trees, shrubs and mulches.

1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced Installer who has completed landscaping work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this project and with a record of successful landscape establishment.
- B. Provide quality, size, genus, species, and variety of trees, shrubs and plants indicated, complying with applicable requirements of ANSI Z60.1 "American Standard for Nursery Stock."
- C. Measurements: Measure trees and shrubs according to ANSI Z60.1 with branches and trunks or canes in their normal position. Do not prune to obtain required sizes. Take caliper measurements 6 inches above ground for trees up to 4-inch caliper size, and 12 inches above ground for larger sizes. Measure main body of tree or shrub for height and spread; do not measure branches or roots tip-to-tip.

1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Trees and Shrubs: Deliver freshly dug trees and shrubs. Do not prune before delivery, except as approved by Architect. Protect bark, branches, and root systems from sun scald, drying, sweating, whipping, and other handling and tying damage. Do not bend or bind-tie trees or shrubs in such a manner as to destroy natural shape. Provide protective covering during delivery. Do not drop trees and shrubs during delivery.
- B. Handle balled and burlapped stock by the root ball.
- C. Deliver trees, shrubs, ground covers, and plants after preparations for planting have been completed and install immediately. If planting is delayed more than 6 hours after delivery, set planting materials in shade, protect from weather and mechanical damage, and keep roots moist.
 - 1. Set balled stock on ground and cover ball with soil, peat moss, sawdust, or other acceptable material.
 - 2. Do not remove container-grown stock from containers before time of planting.
 - 3. Water root systems of trees and shrubs stored on site with a fine-mist spray. Water as often as necessary to maintain root systems in a moist condition.

1.4 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Utilities: Determine location of above grade and underground utilities and perform work in a manner which will avoid damage. Hand excavate, as required. Maintain grade stakes until removal is mutually agreed upon by parties concerned.
- B. Excavation: When conditions detrimental to plant growth are encountered, such as rubble fill, adverse drainage conditions, or obstructions, notify Architect before planting.

1.5 COORDINATION AND SCHEDULING

- A. Coordinate installation of planting materials during normal planting seasons for each type of plant material required.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. General Warranty: The special warranty specified in this Article shall not deprive the Owner of other rights the Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrently with, other warranties made by the Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.
- B. Special Warranty: Warrant the following living planting materials for a period of one year after date of Substantial Completion, against defects including death and unsatisfactory growth, except for defects resulting from lack of adequate maintenance, neglect, or abuse by Owner, abnormal weather conditions unusual for warranty period, or incidents that are beyond Contractor's control.
 - 1. Trees
 - 2. Shrubs
 - 3. Plants
- C. Remove and replace dead planting materials immediately unless required to plant in the succeeding planting season.
- D. Replace planting materials that are more than 25 percent dead or in an unhealthy condition at end of warranty period.
- E. A limit of one replacement of each plant material will be required, except for losses or replacements due to failure to comply with requirements.

1.7 TREE, SHRUB AND PLANT MAINTENANCE

- A. Maintain trees, shrubs and plants by pruning, cultivating, watering, weeding, restoring planting saucers, and resetting to proper grades or vertical position, as required to establish healthy, viable plantings. Spray as required to keep trees and shrubs free of insects and disease. Restore or replace damaged tree wrappings. Maintain trees, shrubs and plants for the following period:
 - 1. Maintenance Period: 60 days following Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TREE AND SHRUB MATERIAL

- A. General: Furnish nursery-grown trees and shrubs conforming to ANSI Z60.1, with healthy root systems developed by transplanting or root pruning. Provide well-shaped, fully-branched, healthy, vigorous stock free of disease, insects, eggs, larvae, and defects such as knots, sun scald, injuries, abrasions, and disfigurement.
- B. Grade: Provide trees and shrubs of sizes and grades conforming to ANSI Z60.1 for type of trees and shrubs required. Trees and shrubs of a larger size may be used if acceptable to Architect, with a proportionate increase in size of roots or balls.
- C. Label each tree and shrub with securely attached, waterproof tag bearing legible designation of botanical and common name.
- D. Label at least 1 tree and 1 shrub of each variety and caliper with a securely attached, waterproof tag bearing legible designation of botanical and common name.

2.2 SHADE AND FLOWERING TREES

- A. Shade Trees: Single-stem trees with straight trunk, well-balanced crown, and intact leader, of height and caliper indicated, conforming to ANSI Z60.1 for type of trees required.
- B. Small Trees: Small upright or spreading type, branched or pruned naturally according to species and type, and with relationship of caliper, height, and branching recommended by ANSI Z60.1.
- C. Provide balled and burlapped trees.

2.3 CONIFEROUS EVERGREENS

- A. Form & Size: Normal-quality, well balanced, coniferous evergreens, of type, height, spread and shape required, complying with ANSI Z60.1.

2.4 BROADLEAF EVERGREENS

- A. Form & Size: Normal-quality well-balanced, broad leaf evergreens, of type, height, spread, and shape required, complying with ANSI Z60.1.

2.5 SHRUBS AND PERENNIALS

- A. Form and Size: Shrubs with not less than the minimum number of canes required by and measured according to ANSI Z60.1 for type, shape, and height of shrub.
- B. Provide balled and burlapped or container shrubs/perennials.

2.6 TOPSOIL

- A. Provide approved imported topsoil required to bring surface to specified elevation relative to walk or curb.

2.7 FERTILIZER

- A. Commercial Fertilizer: Complete fertilizer of neutral character, with some elements derived from organic sources and containing following percentages of available plant nutrients:
 - 1. For trees and shrubs, provide fertilizer with not less than 20% nitrogen (of which 50% will be organic), 10% available phosphoric acid and 5% soluble potash.

2.8 MULCHES

- A. Organic Mulch: Organic mulch, free from deleterious materials and suitable as a top dressing of trees and shrubs, consisting of one of the following:
 - 1. Type: Soil pep at perennial and surface-rooting ground cover locations.
 - 2. Type: Long strand, shredded bark at tree, shrub and ground cover locations not specified above to receive soil pep.
- B. Rock Mulch: Angular rock size: 1 ½" minus. Color to be selected by client.

2.9 BOULDERS

- A. Boulders: Two Man and Three Man (24 - 36 inches average dimension) boulders, color which compliments the building and as approved by Landscape Architect before installation. Install as instructed on drawings.

2.10 WEED-CONTROL BARRIERS

- A. Weed Control Barrier: 5 oz. woven, needle-punched polypropylene fabric. DeWitt Pro 5 Weed Barrier or Architect's approved equivalent:

2.11 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Antidesiccant: Water-insoluble emulsion, permeable moisture retarder, film forming, for trees and shrubs. Deliver in original, sealed, and fully labeled containers and mix according to manufacturer's instructions.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas to receive landscaping for compliance with requirements and for conditions affecting performance of work of this Section. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Layout individual tree and shrub locations and areas for multiple plantings. Stake locations, outline areas, and secure Architect's acceptance before the start of planting work. Make minor adjustments as may be required.

3.3 PLANT BED PREPARATION

- A. Loosen sub grade of planting bed areas to a minimum depth of 6 inches. Remove stones larger than 1 inch in any dimension and sticks, roots, rubbish, and other extraneous materials.
- B. Spread planting soil mixture to depth required to meet thickness, grades, and elevations shown, after light rolling and natural settlement. Place approximately 1/2 the thickness of planting soil mixture required. Work into top of loosened sub grade to create a transition layer and then place remainder of planting soil mixture.
- C. Till soil in beds to a minimum depth of 8 inches and mix with specified soil amendments and fertilizers.
- D. Topsoil depth shall be a minimum of 12 inches.

3.4 EXCAVATION FOR TREES AND SHRUBS

- A. Pits and Trenches: Excavate with bottom of excavation slightly raised at center to assist drainage. Loosen hard subsoil in bottom of excavation.
 - 1. Balled and Burlapped Trees and Shrubs: Excavate approximately 3 times as wide as ball diameter and equal to ball depth.
 - 2. Container-Grown Trees and Shrubs: Excavate as specified for balled and burlapped stock adjusted to size of container width and depth.
- B. Dispose of subsoil removed from landscape excavations. Do not mix with planting soil or use as backfill.
- C. Obstructions: Notify Architect if unexpected rock or obstructions detrimental to trees or shrubs are encountered in excavations.
- D. Drainage: Notify Architect if subsoil conditions evidence unexpected water seepage or retention in tree or shrub pits.
- E. Fill excavations with water and allow to percolate out, before placing setting layer and positioning trees and shrubs.

3.5 PLANTING TREES AND SHRUBS

- A. Set balled and burlapped stock plumb and in center of pit or trench with top of ball raised above adjacent finish grades as indicated.
 - 1. Place stock on undisturbed or compacted topsoil.
 - 2. Remove burlap and wire baskets from top half of rootball or mire if rootball is stable. Do not remove from under balls. Remove pallets, if any, before setting. Do not use planting stock if ball is cracked or broken before or during planting operation.
 - 3. Place backfill around ball in layers, tamping to settle backfill and eliminate voids and air pockets. Backfill to consist of one (1) part topsoil and one (1) part native soil clean and free from toxic mineral and chemicals, noxious weeds, rocks larger than 1-1/2 inch in any dimension, and other objectionable materials. When pit is approximately 1/2 backfilled,

water thoroughly before placing remainder of backfill. Repeat watering until no more is absorbed. Water again after placing and tamping final layer of backfill.

- B. Set container-grown stock plumb and in center of pit or trench with top of ball raised above adjacent finish grades as indicated.
 - 1. Carefully remove containers so as not to damage root balls.
 - 2. Place stock on undisturbed or compacted topsoil.
 - 3. Place backfill around ball in layers, tamping to settle backfill and eliminate voids and air pockets. Backfill to consist of one (1) part topsoil and one (1) part native soil clean and free from toxic mineral and chemicals, noxious weeds, rocks larger than 1-1/2 inch in any dimension, and other objectionable materials. When pit is approximately 1/2 backfilled, water thoroughly before placing remainder of backfill. Repeat watering until no more is absorbed. Water again after placing and tamping final layer of backfill.
- C. Dish and tamp top of backfill to form a 3-inch-high mound around the rim of the pit. Do not cover top of root ball with backfill.

3.6 TREE AND SHRUB PRUNING

- A. Prune, thin, and shape trees and shrubs as directed by Architect.
- B. Prune, thin, and shape trees and shrubs according to standard horticultural practice. Prune trees to retain required height and spread. Unless otherwise directed by Architect, do not cut tree leaders; remove only injured or dead branches from flowering trees. Prune shrubs to retain natural character. Shrub sizes indicated are size after pruning.

3.7 PLANTING PLANTS

- A. Space plants as indicated.
- B. Dig holes large enough to allow spreading of roots, and backfill with planting soil. Work soil around roots to eliminate air pockets and leave a slight saucer indentation around plants to hold water. Water thoroughly after planting, taking care not to cover plant crowns with wet soil.

3.8 MULCHING

- A. Mulch backfilled surfaces of pits, trenches, planted areas, and other areas indicated.
- B. Weed-Control Barriers: Install weed-control barriers according to manufacturer's recommendations, before mulching. Completely cover area to be mulched; lapping edges a minimum of 6 inches. Do not place weed-control barriers in perennial and surface-rooting ground cover locations.
- C. Place shredded bark mulch at all tree, shrub and in all planter locations. Trees shall have a minimum of 3' radius of organic mulch around the trunk.
- D. Organic Mulch: Apply the following average thickness of organic mulch and finish level with adjacent finish grades. Do not place mulch against trunks or stems.
 - 1. Thickness: 3 inches at tree, shrub land planter locations.
- E. Angular Rock Mulch: Apply the following average thickness of rock mulch and finish level with adjacent finish grades. Angular rock to be less than 1 1/2 inch in any dimension. Color to be selected by client.
 - 1. Thickness: 3 inches at tree and shrub locations.

3.9 INSTALLATION OF MISCELLANEOUS MATERIAL

- A. Apply antidesiccant using power spray to provide an adequate film over trunks, branches, stems, twigs, and foliage.
 - 1. When deciduous trees or shrubs are moved in full-leaf, spray with antidesiccant at nursery before moving and again 2 weeks after planting.

3.10 CLEANUP AND PROTECTION

- A. During landscaping, keep pavements clean and work area in an orderly condition.
- B. Protect landscaping from damage due to landscape operations, operations by other contractors and trades, and trespassers. Maintain protection during installation and maintenance periods. Treat, repair, or replace damaged landscape work as directed.

3.11 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS

- A. Disposal: Remove surplus soil and waste material, including excess subsoil, unsuitable soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of it off the Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 329300

SECTION 33 05 00

COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR UTILITIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Piping joining materials.
 - 2. Transition fittings.
 - 3. Dielectric fittings.
 - 4. Sleeves.
 - 5. Identification devices.
 - 6. Grout.
 - 7. Flowable fill.
 - 8. Piped utility demolition.
 - 9. Piping system common requirements.
 - 10. Equipment installation common requirements.
 - 11. Painting.
 - 12. Concrete bases.
 - 13. Metal supports and anchorages.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Exposed Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions.
- B. Concealed Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.
- C. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- D. DI: Ductile Iron pipe

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Dielectric fittings.
 - 2. Identification devices.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- B. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with ASME A13.1 for lettering size, length of color field, colors, and viewing angles of identification devices.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- B. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices after completing covering and painting if devices are applied to surfaces.
- C. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Formwork, reinforcement, and concrete requirements are specified in Division 03.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
 - 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness, unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
 - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
 - 2. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick, unless otherwise indicated; and full-face or ring type, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

- E. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:
 - 1. PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.
- F. Fiberglass Pipe Adhesive: As furnished or recommended by pipe manufacturer.

2.2 TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. Transition Fittings, General: Same size as, and with pressure rating at least equal to and with ends compatible with, piping to be joined.
- B. Transition Couplings NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller:
 - 1. Underground Piping: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
 - 2. Aboveground Piping: Specified piping system fitting.
- C. AWWA Transition Couplings NPS 2 and Larger:
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
 - b. Dresser, Inc.; DMD Div.
 - c. Ford Meter Box Company, Inc. (The); Pipe Products Div.
 - d. JCM Industries.
 - e. Smith-Blair, Inc.
 - f. Viking Johnson.
 - 3. Description: AWWA C219, metal sleeve-type coupling for underground pressure piping.
- D. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings:
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Spears Manufacturing Co.
 - b. Engineer approved equal.
 - 3. Description: PVC one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions.
- E. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions:

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Colonial Engineering, Inc.
 - b. NIBCO INC.
 - c. Spears Manufacturing Co.
 - d. Engineer approved equal.
- F. Flexible Transition Couplings for Underground Nonpressure Drainage Piping:
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
 - b. Fernco, Inc.
 - c. Mission Rubber Company.
 - d. Plastic Oddities.
 - e. Engineer approved equal.
- G. Description: ASTM C 1173 with elastomeric sleeve, ends same size as piping to be joined, and corrosion-resistant metal band on each end.

2.3 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. Dielectric Fittings, General: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials or ferrous material body with separating nonconductive insulating material suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
- B. Dielectric Unions:
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. Epco Sales, Inc.
 - d. Hart Industries, International, Inc.
 - e. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
 - g. Engineer approved equal
 3. Description: Factory fabricated, union, NPS 2 and smaller.
 - a. Pressure Rating: 200 psig minimum.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

b. Dielectric Flanges:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. Epco Sales, Inc.
 - d. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - e. Engineer approved equal
3. Description: Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 and larger.
 - a. Pressure Rating: 200 psig) minimum.

D. Dielectric-Flange Kits:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico, Inc.
 - c. Central Plastics Company.
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 - e. Engineer approved equal
3. Description: Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges, NPS 2- 1/2 and larger.
 - a. Pressure Rating: 200 psig minimum.
 - b. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
 - c. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
 - d. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.

E. Dielectric Couplings:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Calpico, Inc.
 - b. Lochinvar Corporation.
 - c. Engineer approved equal
3. Description: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining, NPS 3 and smaller.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- a. Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F
 - b. End Connections: Threaded.
- F. Dielectric Nipples:
- 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Perfection Corporation.
 - b. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - c. Victaulic Company.
 - d. Engineer approved equal.
 - 3. Description: Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining.
 - a. Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
 - b. End Connections: Threaded or grooved.

2.4 SLEEVES

- A. Mechanical sleeve seals for pipe penetrations are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- B. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- C. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.
- D. Cast-Iron Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Molded PVC Sleeves: Permanent, with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- F. PVC Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- G. Molded PE Sleeves: Reusable, PE, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

2.5 IDENTIFICATION DEVICES

- A. General: Products specified are for applications referenced in other Division 33 Sections. If more than single type is specified for listed applications, selection is Installer's option.
- B. Equipment Nameplates: Metal permanently fastened to equipment with data engraved or stamped.
 - 1. Data: Manufacturer, product name, model number, serial number, capacity,

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

operating and power characteristics, labels of tested compliances, and essential data.

2. Location: Accessible and visible.

2.6 GROUT

- A. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.

1. Characteristics: Post hardening, volume adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.7 FLOWABLE FILL

- A. Description: Low-strength-concrete, flowable-slurry mix.

1. Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I, portland.
2. Density: 115- to 145-lb/cu. ft.
3. Aggregates: ASTM C 33, natural sand, fine and crushed gravel or stone, coarse.
4. Aggregates: ASTM C 33, natural sand, fine.
5. Admixture: ASTM C 618, fly-ash mineral.
6. Water: Comply with ASTM C 94/C 94M.
7. Strength: 100 to 200 psig at 28 days.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPED UTILITY DEMOLITION

- A. Refer to Division 01 Section "Cutting and Patching" and Division 02 Section "Selective Structure Demolition" for general demolition requirements and procedures.

- B. Disconnect, demolish, and remove piped utility systems, equipment, and components indicated to be removed.

1. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
2. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping. Fill abandoned piping with flowable fill, and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material.
3. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
4. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make operational.
5. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to Owner.

- C. If pipe, insulation, or equipment to remain is damaged in appearance or is unserviceable, remove damaged or unserviceable portions and replace with new products of equal capacity and quality.

3.2 DIELECTRIC FITTING APPLICATIONS

A. Dry Piping Systems: Connect piping of dissimilar metals with the following:

1. NPS 2 and Smaller: Dielectric unions.
2. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12: Dielectric flanges or dielectric flange kits.

B. Wet Piping Systems: Connect piping of dissimilar metals with the following:

1. NPS 2 and Smaller: Dielectric couplings or dielectric nipples or nipples.
2. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 : Dielectric nipples.
3. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 8: Dielectric nipples or dielectric flange kits.
4. NPS 10 and NPS 12: Dielectric flange kits.

3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 33 Sections specifying piping systems.

B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on the Coordination Drawings.

C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

D. Install piping to permit valve servicing.

E. Install piping at indicated slopes.

F. Install piping free of sags and bends.

G. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

H. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.

I. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.

J. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.

K. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs.

1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
2. Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
 - a. PVC or Steel Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than NPS 6.

L. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- M. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections for roughing-in requirements.

3.4 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 33 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- E. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
- F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
- G. Grooved Joints: Assemble joints with grooved-end pipe coupling with coupling housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts according to coupling and fitting manufacturer's written instructions.
- H. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813 water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy (0.20 percent maximum lead content) complying with ASTM B 32.
- I. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
- J. Pressure-Sealed Joints: Assemble joints for plain-end copper tube and mechanical pressure seal fitting with proprietary crimping tool to according to fitting manufacturer's written instructions.
- K. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cemented Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
 - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
 - 2. ABS Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2235 and ASTM D 2661 appendixes.
 - 3. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.
 - 4. PVC Pressure Piping: Join schedule number ASTM D 1785, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D 2672. Join other-than-schedule-number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D 2855.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

5. PVC Nonpressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.
 6. PVC to ABS Nonpressure Transition Fittings: Join according to ASTM D 3138 Appendix.
- L. Plastic Pressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3139.
- M. Plastic Nonpressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3212.
- N. Plastic Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657.
1. Plain-End PE Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
 2. Plain-End PE Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.
- O. Bonded Joints: Prepare pipe ends and fittings, apply adhesive, and join according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
 3. Install dielectric fittings at connections of dissimilar metal pipes.

3.6 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Install equipment level and plumb, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference with other installations. Extend grease fittings to an accessible location.
- C. Install equipment to allow right of way to piping systems installed at required slope.

3.7 PAINTING

- A. Painting of piped utility systems, equipment, and components is specified in Division 09 painting Sections.
- B. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.

3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Piping Systems: Install pipe markers on each system. Include arrows showing normal

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

direction of flow.

1. Plastic markers, with application systems. Install on insulation segment if required for hot noninsulated piping. Place direct bury marker 12-18 inches above top of pipe but not less than 12-inches below finish grade.

3.9 GROUTING

- A. Mix and install grout for equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.
- B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
- C. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.
- D. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.
- E. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.
- F. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.
- G. Place grout around anchors.
- H. Cure placed grout.

END OF SECTION 33 05 00

THIS PAGE LEFT INTENTIONALLY BLANK

SECTION 33 41 00
STORM UTILITY DRAINAGE PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes gravity-flow, nonpressure storm drainage outside the building, with the following components:
 - 1. Special fittings for expansion and deflection.
 - 2. Cleanouts.
 - 3. Drains.
 - 4. Precast concrete manholes, inlet boxes, catch basins.
 - 5. Cast in place inlet boxes and catch basins and manhole bases over existing pipes.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- B. CP: Non-reinforced concrete pipe.
- C. RCP: Reinforced concrete pipe.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Gravity-Flow, Nonpressure, Drainage-Piping Pressure Rating: 10-foot head of water. Pipe joints shall be at least silttight, unless otherwise indicated.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Special pipe fittings.
 - 2. Drains.
 - 3. Storage.
 - 4. Pipes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For the following:
 - 1. Manholes: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and frames and covers. Include design calculations, and concrete design-mix report for cast-in-place manholes.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

2. Catch Basins and Stormwater Inlets. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and frames, covers, and grates.
 3. Stormwater Detention Structures: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, frames and covers, design calculations, and concrete design-mix report.
- C. Coordination Drawings: Show pipe sizes, locations, and elevations. Show other piping in same trench and clearances from storm drainage system piping. Indicate interface and spatial relationship between manholes, piping, and proximate structures.
- D. Profile Drawings: Show system piping in elevation. Draw profiles at horizontal scale of not less than 1 inch equals 50 feet and vertical scale of not less than 1 inch equals 5 feet. Indicate manholes and piping. Show types, sizes, materials, and elevations of other utilities crossing system piping.
- E. Field quality-control test reports.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store plastic manholes, pipe, and fittings in direct sunlight.
- B. Protect pipe, pipe fittings, and seals from dirt and damage.
- C. Handle manholes according to manufacturer's written rigging instructions.
- D. Handle catch basins and storm water inlets according to manufacturer's written rigging instructions.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Storm Drainage Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
 1. Notify Architect, Construction Manager, and Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of service. Coordinate interruptions during weekly meetings and at pre-construction meeting.
 2. Do not proceed with interruption of service without Architect's, Construction Manager's, and Owner's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include local pre-cast manufacturers but are subject to approval of the engineer and architect.

2.2 PIPING MATERIALS

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- A. Refer to Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article for applications of pipe, fitting, and joining materials.

2.3 CONCRETE PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Reinforced-Concrete Sewer Pipe and Fittings: ASTM C 14, Class I, II or III, with bell-and-spigot ends and gasketed joints with ASTM C 443, rubber gaskets.
- B. Piping in paragraph below is available in 5 classes and 3 wall thicknesses, and in NPS 12 to NPS 144. Not all classes and wall thicknesses are available. Joints are gasket type. Contractor, at his option, may use non-reinforced pipe for sizes up to 21-inches if structural requirements based on load on pipe are not exceeded for that pipe. If reinforced pipe is selected, choose the pipe class and wall thickness to suit availability and structural requirements based on loads and cover.
- C. Reinforced-Concrete Sewer Pipe and Fittings: ASTM C 76, with bell-and-spigot ends and gasketed joints with ASTM C 443, rubber gaskets.
 - 1. Class I, Wall [A] [B].
 - 2. Class II, Wall [A] [B] [C].
 - 3. Class III, Wall [A] [B] [C].
 - 4. Class IV, Wall [A] [B] [C].
 - 5. Class V, Wall [B] [C].

2.4 ADS PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. HDPE Storm Sewer Pipe and Fittings: ASTM F2648 with water tight joints.
 - 1. Joint performance: pipe shall be joined using bell and spigot joint meeting ASTM F2648. Joints shall be watertight according to ASTM D3212. Gaskets shall be installed by the pipe manufacture and covered with a removable cover to ensure the gasket is free of debris.
 - 2. Fittings: Fittings shall conform to ASTM F2306. Bell and spigot connections shall utilize a spun-on or welded bell and valley or saddle gasket meeting the watertight joint performance per ASTM F2306.
 - 3. Joint Performance: Field testing of joint performance shall be according to ASTM F2487.
 - 4. Installation: Installation shall be in accordance with ASTM D2321 and manufacture recommended guidelines.

2.5 NONPRESSURE-TYPE PIPE COUPLINGS

- A. Comply with ASTM C 1173, elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition coupling, for joining underground nonpressure piping. Include ends of same sizes as piping to be joined, and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
- B. Sleeve Materials:
 - 1. For Concrete Pipes: ASTM C 443, rubber.
 - 2. For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

3. For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
 4. For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.
- C. Unshielded Flexible Couplings: Elastomeric sleeve with stainless-steel shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
 - b. Fernco Inc.
 - c. Logan Clay Products Company (The).
 - d. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
 - e. NDS Inc.
 - f. Plastic Oddities, Inc.
 - g. Engineer approved equal.
- D. Shielded Flexible Couplings: ASTM C 1460, elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Cascade Waterworks Mfg.
 - b. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
 - c. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
 - d. Engineer approved equal.
- E. Ring-Type Flexible Couplings: Elastomeric compression seal with dimensions to fit inside bell of larger pipe and for spigot of smaller pipe to fit inside ring.
1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Fernco Inc.
 - b. Logan Clay Products Company (The).
 - c. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
 - d. Engineer approved equal.

2.6 PRESSURE-TYPE PIPE COUPLINGS

- A. Reducing or transition, metal, bolted, sleeve-type, reducing or transition coupling, for joining underground pressure piping. Include 150-psig minimum pressure rating and ends of same sizes as piping to be joined.
- B. Tubular-Sleeve Couplings: AWWA C219, with center sleeve, gaskets, end rings, and bolt fasteners.
1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Cascade Waterworks Mfg.
 - b. Dresser, Inc.; DMD Div.
 - c. Ford Meter Box Company, Inc. (The); Pipe Products Div.
 - d. JCM Industries.
 - e. Romac Industries, Inc.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- f. Smith-Blair, Inc.
 - g. Viking Johnson.
 - h. Engineer approved equal.
 - 2. Center-Sleeve Material: Manufacturer's standard.
 - 3. Gasket Material: Natural or synthetic rubber.
 - 4. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.
- C. Split-Sleeve Couplings: With split sleeve with sealing pad and closure plates, O-ring gaskets, and bolt fasteners.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Brico Industries.
 - b. Engineer approved equal.
 - 2. Sleeve Material: Manufacturer's standard.
 - 3. Sleeve Dimensions: Of thickness and width required to provide pressure rating.
 - 4. Gasket Material: O-rings made of EPDM rubber, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 5. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.

2.7 SPECIAL PIPE FITTINGS

- A. Ductile-Iron Flexible Expansion Joints: Compound fitting with combination of flanged and mechanical-joint ends complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include 2 gasketed ball-joint sections and 1 or more gasketed sleeve sections, rated for 250-psig minimum working pressure and for offset and expansion indicated.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. EBAA Iron Sales, Inc.
 - b. Romac Industries, Inc.
 - c. Star Pipe Products.
 - d. Engineer approved equal.
- B. Ductile-Iron Deflection Fittings: Compound coupling fitting with ball joint, flexing section, gaskets, and restrained-joint ends complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include rating for 250-psig minimum working pressure and for up to 15 degrees of deflection.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. EBAA Iron Sales, Inc.
 - b. Engineer approved equal.
- C. Ductile-Iron Expansion Joints: Three-piece assembly of telescoping sleeve with gaskets and restrained-type, ductile-iron, bell-and-spigot end sections complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include rating for 250-psig minimum working pressure and for expansion indicated.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Dresser, Inc.; DMD Div.
 - b. EBAA Iron Sales, Inc.
 - c. JCM Industries.
 - d. Smith-Blair, Inc.
 - e. Engineer approved equal.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

2.8 CLEANOUTS

- A. Gray-Iron Cleanouts: ASME A112.36.2M, round, gray-iron housing with clamping device and round, secured, scoriated, gray-iron cover. Include gray-iron ferrule with inside calk or spigot connection and countersunk, tapered-thread, brass closure plug.
1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Josam Company.
 - b. MIFAB Manufacturing, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
 - d. Wade Div.; Tyler Pipe.
 - e. Watts Industries, Inc.
 - f. Watts Industries, Inc.; Enpoco, Inc. Div.
 - g. Zurn Industries, Inc.; Zurn Specification Drainage Operation.
 - h. Engineer approved equal.
 2. Top-Loading Classification(s): Light, Medium, Heavy, and Extra-heavy duty depending on location and expected driving load on cleanout.
 3. Sewer Pipe Fitting and Riser to Cleanout: ASTM A 74, Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.
- B. PVC Cleanouts: PVC body with PVC threaded plug. Include PVC sewer pipe fitting and riser to cleanout of same material as sewer piping. Place in grey iron housing with clamping device and round, secured, scoriated, gray-iron cover.
1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Canplas Inc.
 - b. IPS Corporation.
 - c. NDS Inc.
 - d. Plastic Oddities, Inc.
 - e. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - f. Zurn Industries, Inc.; Zurn Light Commercial Specialty Plumbing Products.
 - g. Engineer approved equal.

2.9 DRAINS

- A. Gray-Iron Area Drains: ASME A112.21.1M, round body with anchor flange and round secured grate. Include bottom outlet with inside calk or spigot connection, of sizes indicated.
1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Josam Company.
 - b. MIFAB Manufacturing, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
 - d. Wade Div.; Tyler Pipe.
 - e. Watts Industries, Inc.
 - f. Watts Industries, Inc.; Enpoco, Inc. Div.
 - g. Zurn Industries, Inc.; Zurn Specification Drainage Operation.
 - h. Engineer approved equal.
 2. Top-Loading Classification(s): Medium and heavy duty depending on location and

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

expected driving load.

- B. Gray-Iron Trench Drains: ASME A112.21.1M, 6-inch to 12-inch-wide top surface, rectangular body with anchor flange or other anchoring device, and rectangular excluded aluminum secured grate per Weber State Standard. Include units of total length indicated and number of bottom outlets with inside calk or spigot connections, of sizes indicated.

1. Trench Manufacturers:

- a. Josam Company.
- b. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
- c. Wade Div.; Tyler Pipe.
- d. Watts Industries, Inc.
- e. Watts Industries, Inc.; Enpoco, Inc. Div.
- f. Zurn Industries, Inc.; Zurn Specification Drainage Operation.
- g. Poly Drain, ABT
- h. Engineer approved equal.

2. Grate Manufacturers

- a. Grating Systems, Inc. (Ogden, Utah).
- b. Ohio Gratings, Inc.
- c. Balco, Inc.
- d. Engineer approved equal.

3. Top-Loading Classification(s): Medium, heavy, and extra-heavy duty.

2.10 MANHOLES

- A. Standard Precast Concrete Manholes: ASTM C 478, precast, reinforced concrete, of depth indicated, with provision for sealant joints.

1. Diameter: 48 inches minimum, unless otherwise indicated and as needed for pipe sizes.
2. Ballast: Increase thickness of precast concrete sections or add concrete to base section, as required to prevent flotation.
3. Base Section: 9-inch minimum thickness for floor slab and 4-inch minimum thickness for walls and base riser section, and having separate base slab or base section with integral floor.
4. Riser Sections: 4-inch minimum thickness, and lengths to provide depth indicated.
5. Top Section: Eccentric-cone type unless concentric-cone or flat-slab-top type is indicated. Top of cone of size that matches grade rings.
6. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 990, bitumen or butyl rubber.
7. Resilient Pipe Connectors: ASTM C 923, cast or fitted into manhole walls, for each pipe connection.
8. Steps: Not used.
9. Adjusting Rings: Interlocking rings with level or sloped edge in thickness and diameter matching manhole frame and cover. Include sealant recommended by ring manufacturer.
10. Grade Rings: Reinforced-concrete rings, 6- to 9-inch total thickness, to match diameter of manhole frame and cover.
11. Manhole Frames and Covers: Ferrous; 24-inch ID by 7- to 9-inch riser with 4-inch-minimum width flange and 26-inch- diameter cover. Include indented top design with lettering cast into cover, using wording equivalent to "STORM SEWER."

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- a. Material: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18 ductile or ASTM A 48, Class 35 gray iron, unless otherwise indicated and to match existing manhole frames and covers.
 - b. Protective Coating: Foundry-applied, SSPC-Paint 16, coal-tar, epoxy-polyamide paint; 15-mil minimum thickness applied to all surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Cast-in-Place Concrete Manholes: Construct of reinforced-concrete bottom, walls, and top; designed according to ASTM C 890 for A-16 (ASSHTO HS20-44), heavy-traffic, structural loading; of depth, shape, dimensions, and appurtenances indicated.
1. Ballast: Increase thickness of concrete, as required to prevent flotation.
 2. Resilient Pipe Connectors: ASTM C 923, cast or fitted into manhole walls, for each pipe connection.
 3. Steps: Not used.
 4. Adjusting Rings: Interlocking rings with level or sloped edge in thickness and diameter matching manhole frame and cover. Include sealant recommended by ring manufacturer.
 5. Grade Rings: Reinforced-concrete rings, 6- to 9-inch total thickness, to match diameter of manhole frame and cover.
 6. Manhole Frames and Covers: Ferrous; 24-inch ID by 7- to 9-inch riser with 4-inch-minimum width flange and 26-inch- diameter cover. Include indented top design with lettering cast into cover, using wording equivalent to "STORM SEWER."
- a. Material: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18 ductile or ASTM A 48, Class 35 gray iron, unless otherwise indicated and to match existing frames and covers.
 - b. Protective Coating: Foundry-applied, SSPC-Paint 16, coal-tar, epoxy-polyamide paint 15-mil minimum thickness applied to all surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.

2.11 CONCRETE

- A. General: Cast-in-place concrete according to ACI 318/318R, ACI 350R, and the following:
1. Cement: ASTM C 150, Type II.
 2. Fine Aggregate: ASTM C 33, sand.
 3. Coarse Aggregate: ASTM C 33, crushed gravel.
 4. Water: Potable.
- B. Portland Cement Design Mix: 4000 psi minimum, with 0.45 maximum water-cementitious materials ratio.
1. Reinforcement Fabric: ASTM A 185, steel, welded wire fabric, plain.
 2. Reinforcement Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed steel.
- C. Ballast and Pipe Supports: Portland cement design mix, 3000 psi minimum, with 0.58 maximum water-cementitious materials ratio.
1. Reinforcement Fabric: ASTM A 185, steel, welded wire fabric, plain.
 2. Reinforcement Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed steel.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

2.12 POLYMER-CONCRETE, CHANNEL DRAINAGE SYSTEMS

- A. Description, General: Modular system of precast, polymer-concrete channel sections, grates, and appurtenances; designed so grates fit into channel recesses without rocking or rattling. Include number of units required to form total lengths indicated.
- B. Manufacturers:
 - 1. ABT, Inc.
 - 2. ACO Polymer Products, Inc.
 - 3. Innovative Plastics Products, Inc.
 - 4. Mea-Josam Div.; Josam Company.
 - 5. Strongwell; Lenoir City Div.
 - 6. Engineer approved equal
- C. Sloped-Invert, Polymer-Concrete Systems: Include the following components:
 - 1. Channel Sections: Interlocking-joint, precast, modular units with end caps. Include inside width and depth as indicated with rounded bottom, with built-in invert slope of 0.6 percent and with outlets in number, sizes, and locations indicated. Include extension sections necessary for required depth.
 - a. Frame: Include gray-iron or steel frame for grate.
 - 2. Grates with manufacturer's designation "Heavy Duty," with slots or perforations that fit recesses in channels.
 - a. Material: Gray iron.
 - 3. Covers: Solid gray iron, if indicated.
 - 4. Locking Mechanism: Manufacturer's standard device for securing grates to channel sections.
- D. Narrow-Width, Level-Invert, Polymer-Concrete Systems: Include the following components:
 - 1. Channel Sections: Interlocking-joint, precast, modular units with end caps. Include 5- inch inside width and 9-3/4-inch deep, rounded bottom, with level invert and with NPS 4 outlets in number and locations indicated.
 - 2. Grates with slots or perforations that fit recesses in channels.
 - a. Material: Gray iron.
 - 3. Covers: Solid gray iron, if indicated.
 - 4. Locking Mechanism: Manufacturer's standard device for securing grates to channel sections.
- E. Wide-Width, Level-Invert, Polymer-Concrete Systems: Include the following components:
 - 1. Channel Sections: Interlocking-joint, precast, modular units with end caps. Include 8- inch inside width and 13-3/4-inch-deep, rounded bottom, with level invert and with outlets in number, sizes, and locations indicated.
 - 2. Grates with slots or other openings that fit recesses in channels.
 - a. Material: Gray iron.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

3. Covers: Solid gray iron, if indicated.
 4. Locking Mechanism: Manufacturer's standard device for securing grates to channel sections.
- F. Supports, Anchors, and Setting Devices: Manufacturer's standard, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Channel-Section Joining and Fastening Materials: As recommended by system manufacturer.

2.13 CATCH BASINS

- A. Standard Precast Concrete Catch Basins: ASTM C 478, precast, reinforced concrete, of depth indicated, with provision for sealant joints.
1. Base Section: 6-inch minimum thickness for floor slab and 4-inch minimum thickness for walls and base riser section, and having separate base slab or base section with integral floor.
 2. Riser Sections: 4-inch minimum thickness, and lengths to provide depth indicated.
 3. Top Section: Flat-slab-top type with hole for frame and grate is indicated.
 4. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 990, bitumen or butyl rubber.
 5. Adjusting Rings: Interlocking rings with level or sloped edge in thickness and shape matching catch basin frame and grate. Include sealant recommended by ring manufacturer.
 6. Grade Rings: Include 2 or 3 reinforced-concrete rings, of 6- to 9-inch total thickness, that match frame and grate.
 7. Steps: Not Used.
 8. Pipe Connectors: ASTM C 923, resilient, of size required, for each pipe connecting to base section. Size sections and box or manhole to fit pipes without necessary
- B. Cast-in-Place Concrete, Catch Basins: Construct of reinforced concrete; designed according to ASTM C 890 for structural loading; of depth, shape, dimensions, and appurtenances indicated.
1. Bottom, Walls, and Top: Reinforced concrete.
 2. Channels and Benches: Concrete.
 3. Steps: Not used.
- C. Frames and Grates: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18, ductile iron designed for A-16, structural loading. Include flat grate with small square or short-slotted drainage openings.
1. Size: 24 by 24 inches minimum, unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Grate Free Area: Approximately 50 percent, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Frames and Grates: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18, ductile iron designed for A-16, structural loading. Include 24-inch ID by 7- to 9-inch riser with 4-inch minimum width flange, and 26-inch- diameter flat grate with small, square or short-slotted drainage openings.
1. Grate Free Area: Approximately 50 percent, unless otherwise indicated.

2.14 STORMWATER INLETS

- A. Gutter Inlets: Horizontal gutter opening, of materials and dimensions indicated. Include

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

heavy-duty frames and grates. All grates to be bicycle safe.

- B. Combination Inlets: Vertical curb and horizontal gutter openings, of materials and dimensions indicated. Include heavy-duty frames and grates.

2.15 PIPE OUTLETS

- A. Head Walls: Cast-in-place reinforced concrete, with apron and tapered sides.
- B. Riprap Basins: Broken, irregular size and shape, graded stone according to NSSGA's "Quarried Stone for Erosion and Sediment Control."
- C. Filter Stone: According to NSSGA's "Quarried Stone for Erosion and Sediment Control," No. FS-2, No. 4 screen opening, average-size, graded stone.
- D. Energy Dissipaters: According to NSSGA's "Quarried Stone for Erosion and Sediment Control," No. A-1, 3-ton average weight armor stone, unless otherwise indicated.

2.16 DRY WELLS

- A. Description: ASTM C 913, precast, reinforced, perforated concrete manholes with ring and cover, frame and grate, or lid as indicated and include the following:
 - 1. Floor: Cast-in-place concrete support ring.
 - 2. Cover: Liftoff-type concrete cover with cast-in lift rings.
 - 3. Wall Thickness: 4 inches minimum with 1-inch diameter or 1-by-3-inch maximum slotted perforations arranged in rows parallel to axis of ring.
 - a. Total Free Area of Perforations: Approximately 15 percent of ring interior surface.
 - b. Ring Construction: Designed to be self-aligning.
 - 4. Filtering Material: ASTM D 448, Size No. 24, 3/4- to 2-1/2-inch washed, crushed stone or gravel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavation, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."

3.2 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Pipe couplings and special pipe fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Use nonpressure-type flexible couplings where required to join gravity-flow, nonpressure sewer piping, unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Flexible or rigid couplings for same or minor difference OD pipes.
 - b. Unshielded, increaser/reducer-pattern, flexible or rigid couplings for pipes

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- with different OD.
 - c. Ring-type flexible couplings for piping of different sizes where annular space between smaller piping's OD and larger piping's ID permits installation.
 - 2. Use pressure-type pipe couplings for force-main joints.
 - B. Special Pipe Fittings: Use for pipe expansion and deflection. Pipe couplings and special pipe fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below, unless otherwise indicated.
 - C. Gravity-Flow, Nonpressure Sewer Piping: Use[any of] the following pipe materials for each size range:
 - 1. PVC water-service pipe; PVC Schedule 40, water-service-pipe fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
 - 2. PVC sewer pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
 - 3. Class [1] [2] [3], nonreinforced-concrete sewer pipe and fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
 - 4. Ductile-iron culvert pipe, ductile-iron standard or compact fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
 - 5. Reinforced-concrete sewer pipe and fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
 - 6. Corrugated steel pipe and fittings, standard and special-joint bands, and banded joints.
 - 7. Corrugated aluminum pipe and fittings, standard and special-joint bands, and banded joints.
 - 8. Corrugated PE pipe and fittings, silttight couplings, and coupled joints.
 - D. Force-Main Pressure Piping: Use[any of] the following pipe materials for each size range:
 - 1. PVC Schedule 80, water-service pipe; PVC Schedule 80, water-service-pipe fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
 - 2. Ductile-iron pressure pipe; ductile-iron standard or compact fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
 - 3. PVC pressure pipe, PVC pressure fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.

3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans and details indicate general location and arrangement of underground storm drainage piping. Location and arrangement of piping layout take design considerations into account. Install piping as indicated, to extent practical. Where specific installation is not indicated, follow piping manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Install piping beginning at low point, true to grades and alignment indicated with unbroken continuity of invert. Place bell ends of piping facing upstream. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.
- C. Install manholes for changes in direction unless fittings are indicated. Use fittings for branch connections unless direct tap into existing sewer is indicated.
- D. Install proper size increasers, reducers, and couplings where different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings are connected. Reducing size of piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- E. Tunneling: Install pipe under streets or other obstructions that cannot be disturbed by

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

tunneling, jacking, or a combination of both.

- F. Install gravity-flow, nonpressure drainage piping according to the following:
1. Install piping pitched down in direction of flow, at slope indicated.
 2. Install piping with restrained joints at tee fittings and at changes in direction for pressure pipe. Use corrosion-resistant rods, pipe or fitting manufacturer's proprietary restraint system, or cast-in-place concrete supports or anchors.
 3. Install piping with cover indicated.
 4. Notify engineer of clearance problems that would result in changes to grade and alignment.
 5. Install hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook."
 6. Install ductile-iron culvert piping according to ASTM A 716.
 7. Install ductile-iron and special fittings according to AWWA C600 or AWWA M41.
 8. Install corrugated steel piping according to ASTM A 798/A 798M.
 9. Install corrugated aluminum piping according to ASTM B 788/B 788M.
 10. Install PVC cellular-core piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.
 11. Install PVC sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.
 12. Install PVC profile gravity sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.
 13. Install nonreinforced-concrete sewer piping according to ASTM C 1479 and ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual."
 14. Install reinforced-concrete sewer piping according to ASTM C 1479 and ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual."
- G. Install force-main pressure piping according to the following:
1. Install piping with restrained joints at tee fittings and at horizontal and vertical changes in direction. Use corrosion-resistant rods, pipe or fitting manufacturer's proprietary restraint system, or cast-in-place concrete supports or anchors.
 2. Install piping with line and grade as indicated or below frost line if not indicated.
 3. Install ductile-iron pressure piping according to AWWA C600 or AWWA M41.
 4. Install ductile-iron special fittings according to AWWA C600.
 5. Install PVC pressure piping according to AWWA M23 or ASTM D 2774 and ASTM F 1668.
 6. Install PVC water-service piping according to ASTM D 2774 and ASTM F 1668.

3.4 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Basic pipe joint construction is specified in Division 33 Section "Common Work Results for Utilities." Where specific joint construction is not indicated, follow piping manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Join gravity-flow, nonpressure drainage piping according to the following:
1. Join ductile-iron culvert piping according to AWWA C600 for push-on joints.
 2. Join ductile-iron and special fittings according to AWWA C600 or AWWA M41.
 3. Join corrugated steel sewer piping according to ASTM A 798/A 798M.
 4. Join corrugated aluminum sewer piping according to ASTM B 788/B 788M.
 5. Join corrugated PE piping according to CPPA 100 and the following:
 - a. Use silttight couplings for Type 1, silttight joints.
 6. Join PVC cellular-core piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 891 for solvent-cement joints.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

7. Join PVC sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM D 3034 for elastomeric seal joints or ASTM D 3034 for elastomeric gasket joints.
 8. Join PVC profile gravity sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 for elastomeric seal joints or ASTM F 794 for gasketed joints.
 9. Join nonreinforced-concrete sewer piping according to ASTM C 14 and ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual" for rubber-gasket joints.
 10. Join reinforced-concrete sewer piping according to ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual" for rubber-gasket joints.
 11. Join dissimilar pipe materials with nonpressure-type flexible or rigid couplings.
- C. Join force-main pressure piping according to the following:
1. Join ductile-iron pressure piping according to AWWA C660 or AWWA M41 for push-on joints.
 2. Join ductile-iron special fittings according to AWWA C660 or AWWA M41 for push-on joints.
 3. Join PVC pressure piping according to AWWA M23 for gasketed joints.
 4. Join PVC water-service piping according to ASTM D 2855 for solvent-cemented joints.
- D. Join dissimilar pipe materials with pressure-type couplings.

3.5 CLEANOUT INSTALLATION

- A. Install cleanouts and riser extension from sewer pipe to cleanout at grade. Use same pipe type as sewer line that the cleanout is connected to. Install piping so cleanouts open in direction of flow in sewer pipe.
1. Use light-duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in earth or unpaved foot-traffic areas.
 2. Use medium-duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in paved foot-traffic areas.
 3. Use heavy-duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in vehicle-traffic service areas.
 4. Use extra-heavy-duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in roads areas.
- B. Set cleanout frames and covers in earth in cast-in-place concrete block, 12 inches around outside of cover. At contractor's option, a square block can be used that is at least 12-inches wider than the cover. Set with tops 1 inch above surrounding earth grade.
- C. Set cleanout frames and covers in concrete pavement with tops flush with pavement surface.

3.6 DRAIN INSTALLATION

- A. Install type of drains in locations indicated.
1. Use light-duty, top-loading classification drains in earth or unpaved foot-traffic areas.
 2. Use medium-duty, top-loading classification drains in paved foot-traffic areas.
 3. Use heavy-duty, top-loading classification drains in vehicle-traffic service areas.
 4. Use extra-heavy-duty, top-loading classification drains in roads areas.
- B. Embed drains in 4-inch minimum depth of concrete around bottom and sides.
- C. Fasten grates to drains if indicated.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

- D. Set drain frames and covers with tops flush with pavement surface.
- E. Assemble trench sections with flanged joints.
- F. Embed trench sections in 4-inch minimum concrete around bottom and sides.

3.7 MANHOLE INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install manholes, complete with appurtenances and accessories indicated.
- B. Install precast concrete manhole sections according to ASTM C 891.
- C. Construct cast-in-place manholes as indicated.
- D. Install PE sheeting on earth where cast-in-place-concrete manholes are to be built.
- E. Set tops of frames and covers flush with finished surface of manholes that occur in pavements. Set tops 3 inches above finished surface elsewhere, unless otherwise indicated.

3.8 CATCH BASIN INSTALLATION

- A. Construct catch basins to sizes and shapes indicated.
- B. Set frames and grates to elevations indicated.
- C. Align boxes so that frame and grates are square to adjacent sidewalks, curbs or roadways.

3.9 STORMWATER INLET AND OUTLET INSTALLATION

- A. Construct inlet head walls, aprons, and sides of reinforced concrete, as indicated.
- B. Construct riprap of broken stone, as indicated.
- C. Install outlets that spill onto grade, anchored with concrete, where indicated.
- D. Install outlets that spill onto grade, with flared end sections that match pipe, where indicated.
- E. Construct energy dissipaters at outlets, as indicated.

3.10 DRY WELL INSTALLATION

- A. Excavate hole to diameter of at least 24 inches greater than outside of dry well. Do not extend excavation into ground-water table.
 - 1. Install filter fabric as indicated. Provide sufficient filter fabric to lap sliced areas at least 12-inches.
- B. Install precast, concrete-ring dry wells according to the following:
 - 1. Assemble rings to depth indicated.

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

2. Extend rings to height where top of cover will be approximately 8 inches below finished grade.
3. Backfill bottom of inside of rings with filtering material to level at least as indicated on plans.
4. Extend effluent inlet pipe 12 inches into rings and terminate into side of tee fitting.
5. Backfill around outside of rings with filtering material to top level of rings and to depth indicated.
6. Install cover over top of rings.

3.11 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Place cast-in-place concrete according to ACI 318/318R.

3.12 DRAINAGE SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Assemble and install components according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Install with top surfaces of components, except piping, flush with finished surface.
- C. Assemble channel sections to form slope down toward drain outlets. Use sealants, adhesives, fasteners, and other materials recommended by system manufacturer.
- D. Embed channel sections and drainage specialties in 4-inch minimum concrete around bottom and sides.
- E. Fasten grates to channel sections if indicated.
- F. Assemble channel sections with flanged or interlocking joints.
- G. Embed channel sections in 4-inch minimum concrete around bottom and sides.

3.13 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect nonpressure, gravity-flow drainage piping in building's storm building drains specified in Division 22 Section "Facility Storm Drainage Piping."
- B. Connect force-main pressure piping to building's storm drainage force mains specified in Division 22 Section "Facility Storm Drainage Piping." Terminate piping where indicated.
 1. Use commercially manufactured wye fittings for piping branch connections. Remove section of existing pipe; install wye fitting into existing piping; and encase entire wye fitting, plus 6-inch overlap, with not less than 6 inches of concrete with 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi.
 2. Protect existing piping, manholes, and structures to prevent concrete or debris from entering while making tap connections. Remove debris or other extraneous material that may accumulate.
- C. Connect to sediment interceptors specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste Interceptors."

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

3.14 CLOSING ABANDONED STORM DRAINAGE SYSTEMS

- A. Abandoned Piping: Close open ends of abandoned underground piping indicated to remain in place. Include closures strong enough to withstand hydrostatic and earth pressures that may result after ends of abandoned piping have been closed. Use either procedure below:
 - 1. Close open ends of piping with at least 8-inch-thick, brick masonry bulkheads.
 - 2. Close open ends of piping with threaded metal caps, plastic plugs, or other acceptable methods suitable for size and type of material being closed. Do not use wood plugs.
- B. Abandoned Manholes and Structures: Excavate around manholes and structures as required and use one procedure below:
 - 1. Remove manhole or structure and close open ends of remaining piping.
 - 2. Remove top of manhole or structure down to at least 36 inches below final grade. Fill to within 12 inches of top with stone, rubble, gravel, or compacted dirt. Fill to top with concrete.
- C. Backfill to grade according to Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."

3.15 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Materials and their installation are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving." Arrange for installation of green warning tape directly over piping and at outside edge of underground structures.
 - 1. Use warning tape or detectable warning tape over ferrous piping.
 - 2. Use detectable warning tape over nonferrous piping and over edges of underground structures.

3.16 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect interior of piping to determine whether line displacement or other damage has occurred. Inspect after approximately 24 inches of backfill is in place, and again at completion of Project.
 - 1. Submit separate reports for each system inspection.
 - 2. Defects requiring correction include the following:
 - a. Alignment: Less than full diameter of inside of pipe is visible between structures.
 - b. Deflection: Flexible piping with deflection that prevents passage of ball or cylinder of size not less than 92.5 percent of piping diameter.
 - c. Crushed, broken, cracked, or otherwise damaged piping.
 - d. Infiltration: Water leakage into piping.
 - e. Exfiltration: Water leakage from or around piping.
 - 3. Replace defective piping using new materials, and repeat inspections until defects are within allowances specified.
 - 4. Reinspect and repeat procedure until results are satisfactory.
- B. Test new piping systems, and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended,

SLC Mosquito Abatement District

or repaired, for leaks and defects.

1. Do not enclose, cover, or put into service before inspection and approval.
 2. Test completed piping systems according to authorities having jurisdiction.
 3. Schedule tests and inspections by authorities having jurisdiction with at least 24 hours' advance notice.
 4. Submit separate report for each test.
 5. Gravity-Flow Storm Drainage Piping: Test according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, UNI-B-6, and the following:
 - a. Exception: Piping with soiltight joints unless required by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - b. Option: Test plastic piping according to ASTM F 1417.
 - c. Option: Test concrete piping according to ASTM C 924.
 6. Force-Main Storm Drainage Piping: Perform hydrostatic test after thrust blocks, supports, and anchors have hardened. Test at pressure not less than 1-1/2 times the maximum system operating pressure, but not less than 150 psig
 - a. Ductile-Iron Piping: Test according to AWWA C600, "Hydraulic Testing" Section.
 - b. PVC Piping: Test according to AWWA M23, "Testing and Maintenance" Chapter.
- C. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
- D. Replace leaking piping using new materials, and repeat testing until leakage is within allowances specified.

3.17 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior of piping of dirt and superfluous materials.

END OF SECTION 33 41 00